

HEART
A Physiologic and Clinical Study
of Cardiovascular Diseases



One of the murals painted by Diego Rivera for the National Institute of Cardiology of Mexico City. Some of the contemporary cardiologists can be recognized.

(Through the courtesy of Prof. I. Chavez, Director of the Institute.)

By
ALDO A. LUISADA, M.D.

*Assistant Professor of Medicine, Director of Division of Cardiology,
at the Chicago Medical School, and Teaching Grant of the
National Heart Institute of the U.S. Public Health Service
Principal Attending Physician (Assistant Staff) and Chief of Cardiac Clinics
The Mount Sinai Hospital, Chicago
Chief of Service of Cardiologist
La Jolla J. Channon Park Sanitarium*

With a Foreword by
HERMAN J. BIUMGART
*Physician in Chief, Beth Israel Hospital
Professor of Medicine, Harvard Medical School*

SECOND EDITION



BALTIMORE
THE WILLIAMS & WILKINS COMPANY
1954

FIRST EDITION 1949

COPYRIGHT 1954
THE WILLIAMS & WILKINS COMPANY
Made in United States of America

Library of Congress
Catalog Card Number
54-9974

COMPOSED AND PRINTED BY
WATKINS PRESS INC
E T MO 2 M L S A

To my son Claude

FORWORD

The advance in our knowledge of the heart and the vast accumulation of literature render surveys of the entire field, such as the present text, of great value. The task is Herculean for there is practically no medical discipline or field of biological science which has not contributed materially to our comprehension of the cardiovascular system in health and disease. The author brings to this undertaking unusual qualifications. He is a brilliant investigator in the pathologic physiological mechanism of cardiac disorders, such as the pathogenesis of pulmonary edema. Extensive research in clinical pharmacology and many clinical studies including graphic registration of cardiac phenomena illustrate his wide interest and experience.

In cardiology, as with medicine in general, many issues are still sub judice. It is well that from time to time the current status of these problems be reviewed and individual opinions be expressed fearlessly though they may encounter doubt, debate or even disapproval. Progress will be accelerated by thus defining more vividly the gaps in our knowledge, further speculation, clinical observation and research will be promoted. The excellent survey of European as well as American thought made available in this text, the description of mechanical registration of cardiac action and heart sounds and the reviews of many diseased states with the aid of diagrammatic illustrations are exceptional and heighten the usefulness of this book.

H. L. BLUMGART

Preface to the Second Edition

Medical progress advances at a fast pace and nowhere is this so clearly evident as in *cardiology*. Eight years have elapsed between the first preparation of *Heart* and that of the present edition and each chapter had to be completed, modified, or rearranged.

Three new chapters have been added to the book: Cardiovascular Syphilis, which briefly summarizes data presented in other parts of the book; Prognosis of Cardiovascular Diseases; and The Social and Legal Aspects of Heart Disease, which discusses several controversial and important problems of cardiology.

Chapters on the following subjects have been completely rewritten: technical examination, rheumatic fever, congenital heart diseases, chronic cor pulmonale, coronary heart disease, pulmonary edema, heart failure, drugs, management, prescriptions, and treatment of emergencies.

In other chapters, one or more sections were added or modified. Among them are: physiology of the electrocardiogram, endocardial sclerosis, Libman-Sacks disease, congenital anomalies of the large veins, superior and inferior caval syndromes, surgical treatment of valvular defects, and amyloid heart.

One hundred figures have been added while 160 have been deleted. As a result, the total number of illustrations has decreased. Among the new figures, 22 were reproduced from another book of the author, *The Heart Beat*, through the courtesy of the Paul B. Hoeber Co.

In spite of the many additions, the text is only slightly longer than in the first edition. This was obtained through deletion of paragraphs or words which seemed of lesser importance or had become obsolete. Thus, the usefulness of this book for consultation was not impaired.

The author wishes to thank his coworkers, all of whom have contributed to present changes and developments with stimulating discussions or keen observations.

It is to be hoped that this book will be useful to both undergraduate and postgraduate students and will simplify their task in mastering the various functions and dysfunctions of the *Heart*.

A A L

Preface to the First Edition

This book has been written for the large group of physicians who desire to increase their knowledge of heart disease. Difficult technical terms have, therefore, been avoided and complex technical discussion dispensed with wherever possible. It is the opinion of the author that some of the fundamentals contained in this text should all be of value to heart specialists.

The title of the book—*Heart*—is the result of the preponderance of material devoted to physiology of the heart and vessels and to the pharmacology of the drugs useful in the treatment of heart disease. Thus material which can be gathered only by consulting numerous sources may be found in this volume. Such a compilation of material has been possible because of my clinical and experimental laboratory associations. Naturally the practical importance of any new experimental study and the physiological approach to clinical problems have always been given due consideration.

To my knowledge this volume is illustrated by a far larger number of engravings than any similar book. I resorted as far as possible to the use of sketches of graphic schemes and photographs in order to avoid lengthy descriptions and to simplify the subject. Whenever an original graphic reproduction did not lend itself to simple interpretation a sketch was substituted.

In spite of my desire to follow the classic description pattern, some differences will be found between this book and other books of cardiology. They are due to the following reasons:

1) The etiological classification of heart diseases, a scheme of beautiful simplicity, had the unexpected result of leading many practitioners to mental laziness in formulating an exact diagnosis. For this and for didactic reasons I have avoided basing the description of heart disease on etiology alone. The diseases have been classified on the basis of anatomical clinical syndromes and correlation with the etiology has been made as often as possible. A detailed discussion of differential diagnosis has been added to each disease in order to aid the practitioner.

2) Personal studies on cardiovascular diseases gave me an outlook somewhat different from that of other authors. An attempt has been made to keep the expression of personal views within the most moderate limits. In spite of this some chapters will show features distinctive from those of other books; this could not be avoided without disowning over twenty years of research. A more personal approach will be found in the discussion of the following problems: function and dysfunction of the peripheral arteries; peripheral signs of aortic insufficiency; murmurs of valvular diseases; low blood pressure; adhesive pericarditis; paroxysmal pulmonary edema; congestive failure; treatment of the cardiac patient; and graphic methods, particularly phonocardiography. The emphasis given to phonocardiography

is due first to my belief that this method will have an ever increasing importance in cardiology and, second to the possibility of giving visual evidence to murmurs which are easily forgotten when described only by words

Having been associated with Henri Vaquez and Paul D. White, cardiologists, with Cesare Frugoni and Giuseppe Zagari, internists with Otto Loewi, Ernest P. Pick and David Rapport, biologists I wish to state that their teachings have deeply influenced my work. My friendship with the late Soma Weiss and chiefly with Hermann L. Blumgart and his pupils also led to a significant increase of my knowledge in different fields

Acknowledgment is made of the patient work of Dr. E. Stanley Landy and Alba Fallace di Credico in revising the manuscript

The publishers Williams & Wilkins, have been very helpful and deserve a special word of thanks for their courtesy and co-operation

I wish to acknowledge the kindness of the publisher Cappelli of Bologna for permitting the reproduction of a certain number of illustrations from my book *Cardiologia* published in 1938

A A L

Contents

Foreword	vii
Preface to 2nd Edition	ix
Preface to 1st Edition	xi
I History of Cardiology	1
II Development and Structure of the Cardiovascular System	9
III The Normal Function of the Heart and Vessels	29
IV The Clinical Study of the Cardiac Patient	72
V The Technical Study of the Cardiac Patient	88
VI Causes of Cardiovascular Diseases—Mode of Origin of Cardiovascular Disturbances	173
VII Classification of Cardiovascular Diseases	186
VIII The Rheumatic Disease	189
IX Cardiovascular Syphilis	201
X Diseases of the Endocardium	202
XI The Valvular Defects of the Left Heart	217
XII The Valvular Defects of the Right Heart	259
XIII Simple Shunts Between the Greater and the Lesser Circulation	278
XIV Combined Defects of the Heart	299
XV Complex Malformations of the Heart	310
XVI Disturbances of the Heart Rate and of the Heart Rhythm	329
XVII Clinical Syndromes Due to Diffuse Myocardial Lesions	367
XVIII The Heart in Metabolic Vitamin and Endocrine Disturbances	402
XIX The Diseases of the Coronary System and Myocardial Infarction	413
XX Diseases of the Pericardium	441
XXI Diseases of the Large Vessels	463
XXII Hypertension of the Greater Circulation and Hypertensive Heart Disease	491
XXIII Hypertension of the Lesser Circulation and Pulmonary Heart Disease	507
XXIV Hypotension—Shock	517
XXV Diseases of the Peripheral Arteries	525
XXVI Diseases of the Veins	539
XXVII Border Line Syndromes of Cardiology	546
XXVIII Associated and Complex Cardiac Diseases	553
XXIX Paroxysmal Cardiorespiratory Attacks	555
XXX Heart Failure	563
XXXI The Cardiac Patient as an Obstetrical and Surgical Risk	579
XXXII Action of Drugs Useful for the Cardiac Patient	583
XXXIII Social and Legal Aspects of Heart Diseases	604

XXXIV	Prognosis of Cardiovascular Diseases	608
XXXV	Management of the Cardiac Patient	610
XXXVI	Medical Treatment of Common Cardiac Conditions	614
	Prescriptions	625
	Diets	629
	Summary of Treatment in Cardiovascular Emergencies	638
	Index	641

History of Cardiology

The fields of study on which modern cardiology is based are the following: anatomy, physiology, pathology, pharmacology, physics, general medicine, surgery, roentgenology, physical diagnosis and comparative biology.

Chronological listing of important events is undoubtedly a sketchy and incomplete way of describing them. Still it has a certain importance as it enables students of the subject to grasp at a glance the conditions of a part of medicine in any particular year and also makes it possible to remember trends of thought and tendencies of this or that period.

As a rule historical studies should include only the scientists of the past since their work can be considered with a certain time perspective. However inasmuch as cardiology has made tremendous advances in the last twenty years some of the masters to whom we owe much are still alive. This makes it imperative that their names be mentioned even though future workers will be able to evaluate their work better than those of the present.

The following chronological list starts from 1500 namely from the beginning of modern times. The nationality applies to the birthplace of the investigator; the country named is the place of residence where the work was done whenever this was different from the original place of birth.

The Sixteenth Century

- 1530—Leonardo Botallio (Italian France)
Description of the foramen ovale
1543—Andreas Vesalius (Belgian Italy)
Anatomical description of the human

heart, clinical diagnosis of the aneurysms

- 1543—Miguel Servet (Servetus) (Spainard)
1553—Rinaldo Colombo (Italian)
Description of the lesser circulation
1554—Ambrose Paré (French) Aortic aneurysms ascribed to syphilis
1571—Andrea Cesalpino (Italian) Description of the greater circulation
The heart is recognized as the center of the circulation

The Seventeenth Century

- 1603—Fabrizio di Acquapendente (Italian)
Description of the valves of the peripheral veins
1628—William Harvey (English Italy)
Amplification of the theory and further demonstration of the circulation of blood without any interruption
1661—Marcello Malpighi (Italian) Proof of the capillary circulation description of the capillaries

The Eighteenth Century

- 1708—Antony van Leeuwenhoek (Dutch)
Conception of the pulse
1715—Raymond Vieussens (French) Description of the coronary circulation description of mitral stenosis
1726—Francesco I. Albertini (Italian) Use of inspection and palpation for lo

The lesser circulation had been previously described by Ibn an Nafis (Arab) but his studies already three centuries old had been forgotten

- eating the apex beat and for the evaluation of cardiac enlargement
- 1728—Giovanni Maria Lancisi (Italian) Studies on the mechanism of sudden death First evaluation of the importance of calcification of the coronary arteries and of cardiac enlargement (coronary heart disease) Description of functional tricuspid insufficiency in congestive failure
- 1733—Stephen Hales (English) Experimental study of blood pressure
- 1749—Jean Baptiste de Sénac (French) Textbook on heart diseases quinine treatment of palpitation of the heart
- 1750—Albrecht v. Haller (Swiss Germany) Studies of physiology of the heart Description of the calcification of the pericardium
- 1761—Giovanni Battista Morgagni (Italian) Studies on the pathology of many lesions of the heart and of the vessels including calcification of the coronary arteries Description of the syndrome of *pulsus rarus permanens* (later called Stokes-Adams syndrome)
- 1761—Leopold Auenbrugger (Austrian) Studies on percussion cardiac dullness
- 1768—Wilhelm Heberden (English) Clinical description of angina pectoris
- 1770—Luigi Galvani (Italian) Discovery of animal electricity
- 1777—Lazzaro Spallanzani (Italian) The development of the embryonic heart Studies on the capillary circulation Laws of hemodynamics
- 1780—William Withering (English) Introduction of digitalis in the treatment of congestive failure
- the organic from the functional disorders of the heart Interpretation of thrills Description of tricuspid stenosis
- 1815—Joseph Hodgson (English) Textbook on the diseases of the arteries and veins studies on syphilitic aortitis and syphilitic aortic insufficiency (Hodgson's disease)
- 1818—John Cheyne (Irish) Description of periodic respiration Cheyne-Stokes respiration
- 1819—Réné T. H. Laennec (French) Textbook on auscultation invention of the stethoscope
- 1822—Richard Bright (English) Studies on nephritis and repercussions of this disease on the heart
- 1832—Dominic John Corrigan (Irish) Description of the clinical picture of aortic regurgitation Corrigan's pulse
- 1839—Joseph Skoda (Czechoslovakian) Studies on the apex beat Diagnosis of the aneurysms of the abdominal aorta Textbook on percussion and auscultation
- 1839—Johannes E. Purkinje (Czechoslovakian Germany) Studies of histology of the myocardium the net work of Purkinje Description of toxic symptoms caused by digitalis
- 1840—Jean Baptiste Bouillaud (French) Book on rheumatic fever its importance as a cause of heart disease Rheumatic fever was called Bouillaud's disease
- 1840—Johannes S. C. Schweigger (German) The first galvanometer
- 1846—Carl F. Ludwig (German) Perfusion of the isolated mammalian heart
- 1846-1856—Rudolph L. H. von Virchow (German) Thrombosis and embolism Pulmonary embolism and infarction Studies on aortic hypoplasia
- 1854—Armand Trousseau (French) Paracentesis of the pericardium
- 1854—William Stokes (Irish) Textbook of

The Nineteenth Century

- 1806—Jean Nicolas Corvisart (French) Classical textbook of cardiology Studies on the dilatation and hypertrophy of the heart Separation of

cardiology, periodic Cheyne Stokes respiration the Adams Stokes syndrome

1854—Claude Bernard (French) The experimental method in physiology The vasoconstrictor nerves

1855—Karl v Vierordt (German) The first sphygmograph

1855—Albert v Koelliker (German) Biological demonstration of the action currents of the heart

1861—Paul Louis Duroziez (French)—Description of the double murmur over the femoral artery in aortic insufficiency studies on the hemodynamics of this disease Studies on pure mitral stenosis Duroziez's disease

1861—Auguste Chauveau (French) Studies on the intracardiac pressure of the horse

1862—Maurice Raynaud (French) Studies on the vaso-spastic syndrome of the extremities Raynaud's syndrome

1862—Austin Flint (American) Description of the functional diastolic apical murmur in aortic insufficiency the Austin Flint murmur

1866—Thomas B Peacock (British) Text book of congenital heart diseases

1867—Thomas Lauder Brunton (Scotch) England and Germany) Studies on the capillaries Use of nitrites in angina pectoris

1867—Pierre C F Potain (French) Description and study of the pulsations of the jugular veins

1868—Heinrich Quincke (German) Study on the capillary pulse in aortic insufficiency Quincke's pulse

1868—Nativelle (French) Isolation of digitoxin

1871—Ila de Cyon (Polish France and Russia) Description of the depressor nerve Cyon's nerve

1871—Henry P Bowditch (American) Studies of physiology of the myo-

cardium the law of all or none the staircase phenomenon

1872—Ludwig Traube (German) Description of pulsus alternans Study on the double tone of the femoral artery in aortic insufficiency the double tone of Traube

1872-1877—Luigi Luciani (Italian Italy and Germany) Study on the esophagocardiogram and on the pulse waves of the respiratory curve Studies on the periodic activity of the frog's heart the periods of Luciani

1873—Adolf Kussmaul (German) Periarthritis nodosa The paradoxical pulse in adhesive pericarditis Kussmaul's pulse

1875—Erocole G Galvagni (Italian) Oral auscultation Studies on adhesive pericarditis

1875—Carl von Rokitsansky (German) Studies on septal defects of the heart and many other congenital anomalies

1876—Julus Cohnheim (German) The paradoxical embolism Pulmonary edema Experimental studies on many cardiovascular diseases Studies on amyloid degeneration of the myocardium

1877—Aristide Stefani (Italian) Studies on diastole of the heart and on the function of the arteries Pericardial fistula

1877—John W Gordon (British) The first ballistocardiogram

1878—William S Oliver (English)	} Studies on the traumatic signs of aortic aneurysms the signs of Oliver Cardarelli
Antonio Cardarelli (Italian)	
1878—William H Welch (American Germany)	

Studies on paroxysmal pulmonary edema

1879—Henri Roger (French) Study of the clinical syndrome due to interven-

tricular septal defect Roger's disease

1879—Leonard Landolt (German) Physiology of the heart textbook of physiology

1881—Sigmund A. Basch (German) Description of the sphygmomanometer

1881—Luigi M. Concato (Italian) Studies on polyserositis; Concato's disease

1883—Otto Schmiedeknecht (German) Experimental studies on digitalis

1883—Adolf Fick (German) Determination of blood flow

1883—Augustus Désiré Waller (French) Graphic demonstration of the action currents of the heart

1883—Étienne J. Marey (French) Textbook on the graphic method in experimental sciences and in clinical studies the Marey tambour

1883—Pierre C. E. Potain (French) Studies on gallop rhythms the opening snap of mitral stenosis

1883—William Osler (Canadian, Canada, U. S. A. and England) Studies on bacterial endocarditis the Osler nodes

1887—Jean Martin Chareot (French) Intermittent claudication

1888—Étienne L. A. Fallot (French) Studies on blue babies the trilogy and the tetralogy of Fallot

1888—Graham Steell (English) Description of the diastolic pulmonary murmur in mitral stenosis the Graham Steell murmur

1888—Arnaud (French) Isolation of ouabain

1889—Léon Bouvier (French) Description of paroxysmal tachycardia Bouvier's disease

1891—Friedrich Trendelenburg (German) Studies on the veins the operation of Trendelenburg for varicose veins

1891—Scipione Riva-Rocci (Italian) Description of the mercury type of sphygmomanometer the apparatus of Riva-Rocci

1893—Wilhelm His Jr (German) Demonstration of the auriculoventricular bundle the bundle of His

1893—Kurt Huerthle (German) Electrical records of heart sounds

1896—Wilhelm K. Roentgen (German) Description of the X ray

1896—Friedel Pick (German) Studies on adhesive pericarditis with liver cirrhosis the Pick syndrome

1897—Victor Erlenmenger (German) Studies on congenital heart diseases the Erlenmenger complex

1897—William H. Broadbent (English) Studies on pericarditis

1898—Edmond Delorme (French) Surgery of the heart in adhesive pericarditis

1899—Henri Huchard (French) Textbook of cardiology Studies on hypertension and on aortitis the hypertensive Huchard's syndrome

The Twentieth Century

1900—Daniel H. Williams (American) First successful suture of cardiac wound

1900—Guede Pagano (Italian)	} Description of the carotid sinus reflexes
Luigi Siciliano (Italian)	

1901—Abel Ayerza (Argentine) Clinical description of the black cardiacs the syndrome of Arrillaga and Ayerza

1901—Luis Morquio (Uruguayan) Description of congenital heart block

1902—T. W. Engelmann (German) Studies on the properties of the myocardium the law of all or none

1902—Rudolph Brauer (German) Costal resection in adhesive pericarditis

1902—James Mackenzie (English) Monograph on the pulse

1902—Friedrich H. L. Moritz (German) The orthodiagram of the heart

1903—H. F. Wald & Hering (German) Description of atrial fibrillation in animals

1903—Willem Finthoven (Dutch) Description

- tion of the string galvanometer
Different studies of electrocardiography The first phonocardiograms
- 1903—Karel F Wenckebach (Dutch Germany and Austria) Studies on cardiac arrhythmias the Wenckebach periods Quinidine in the treatment of heart disease
- 1904—Max Cloetta (French) Isolation of the active principles of digitalis purpurea
- 1904—Ludwig Aschoff (German) Studies on myocarditis the Aschoff nodules Studies on the structure of the normal heart the node of Aschoff Tawara
- 1905—Nikolai S Korotkow (Russian) The auscultatory method and the clinical measurement of diastolic pressure
- 1905—Jakob Pal (Austrian) Studies on vascular crises
- 1905—Pietro Crocco (Italian) Studies on aortic aneurysms Studies on percussion of the heart
- 1906—August v Wassermann (German) The Wassermann test
- 1906—Albert Fraenkel (German) The first intravenous injections of strophanthin in congestive failure
- 1906—Landell Henderson (American) Measurement of volume changes of the heart in animals The cardiometer Studies on cardiac output
- 1907—Arthur Keith and Martin Flack (English) Description of the sino auricular node the node of Keith and Flack
- 1907—Guido Banti (Italian) Studies on venous cirrhosis of the heart
- 1907—Adolf Sahli (German) Studies on sphygmologometry Classic book of physical diagnosis
- 1908—Federico Battistini (Italian) Clinical diagnosis of the ball thrombus of the left atrium
- 1908—James Mackenzie (English) Studies on atrial fibrillation
- 1908—Sunao Tawara (Japanese Germany) Studies on the normal heart the node of Aschoff Tawara
- 1908—Maude Abbott (Canadian) Studies on congenital heart diseases
- 1908—Leo Buerger (American) The syndrome of thromboangitis obliterans of the young Buerger syndrome
- 1909—Friedrich Trendelenburg (German) Embolotomy in pulmonary embolism operation of Trendelenburg
- 1909—Michel Victor Pachon (French) The oscillogometer studies on blood pressure
- 1909—Carl J Rothberger (Austrian) Studies on atrial fibrillation and premature beats
- 1909-1910—Camille Lian and Henry Vaquez (French) The theory of isolated right and left cardiac failures
- 1909-1910—Thomas Lewis (English) The clinical diagnosis of atrial fibrillation Studies on arrhythmias Monograph on graphic registration of the heart beat
- 1910—Hans v Recklinghausen (German) Studies on the pulse studies on blood pressure
- 1910-1914—Maximilian Sternberg (Austrian) The pericarditis episteno-cardiaca Studies on aneurysms of the heart
- 1909-1910—Hugo Schottmuel } Studies on
ler (German) } bacterial
Emanuel Libman } endocar
(American) } ditis
- 1910—Walter Straub (German) Studies on the isolated frog's heart the Straub heart
- 1910—W P Obrastzow and N D Strashkesko (Russian) Studies on coronary thrombosis
- 1912—Theodore Goett and Julius Roenthal (German) First studies of roentgen kymography
- 1912—Francisco C Arrillaga (Argentine) Arteritis of the pulmonary artery and arteriosclerosis of the pulmonary

- vessels the syndrome of Arrillaga and Ayerza
- 1912—Ernest H Starling (English) Studies on the heart lung preparation in dogs the law of the normal heart or Starling's law
- 1912—James B Herrick (American) Description of the clinical picture of myocardial infarction
- 1913—Henri Vaquez and Émile Bordet (French) Roentgenology as an auxiliary branch of cardiology a well known textbook
- 1914—Richard C Cabot (American) Classification of heart diseases
- 1914—Otto Frank (German) Technique of recording the heart sounds the Frank capsule
- 1914—Franz Volhard (German) Studies on nephritis and hypertension
- 1915—Thomas C Allbutt (British) Studies on hypertension
- 1915—Hans Mautner and Ernst Peter Pick (Austrian) Studies on the venous sinuses of the liver and the lungs
- 1919—Adolf Spitzer (Austrian) Studies on the pathogenesis of congenital heart disease the Spitzer theory
- 1919—Augusto Murri (Italian) The law of the damaged heart or Murri's laws
- 1920—Peter Savi (Austrian) Use of a mercurial diuretic
- 1920—Harold E B Pardee (American) The coronary T wave of the electrocardiogram the Pardee T wave
- 1920—Louis Gallavardin (French) Monograph on blood pressure Multiple studies of cardiology
- 1921—Herbert Asmann (German) Classic textbook of roentgenology
- 1921—Réné Lutembacher (French) Studies on arrhythmias of the heart Studies on congenital heart diseases the Lutembacher's syndrome
- 1921—Thomaso Jonnesco (Rumanian) Surgical treatment of angina pectoris by sympathectomy
- 1921—Henri Vaquez (French) Classic text book of heart diseases Multiple works on heart diseases
- 1921—Otto Loewi (Austrian) Studies on the vagal substance of the frog's heart
- 1921—Robert Tigerstedt (Finn Germany) Textbook of physiology of the circulation Multiple experimental studies on the heart and vessels
- 1921—1926—Charles Aubry (French) and Cesare Pezzi (Italian France) Monograph on congenital heart disease Monograph on gallop rhythms Multiple studies of cardiology
- 1924—August Krogh (Danish) Studies on the capillaries Monograph on this subject
- 1924—Tiburcio Padilla (Argentine) Monograph of electrocardiography
- 1924—Johann G Moenckeberg (German) Textbook of pathology of the heart Studies on arteriosclerosis
- 1925—Nikolai Anitschkow (Russian) Studies on arteriosclerosis studies on myocarditis
- 1926—Herbert Elias and Adolf Teller (Austrian) Studies on congestive failure
- 1926—David Scherf (Austrian Austria and U S A) Studies on disturbances of the atrial myocardium multiple studies of cardiology
- 1927—Karel F Wenckebach (Dutch Germany and Austria) and H Winterberg (Austrian) Classic textbook of arrhythmias of the heart
- 1927—Henri Frédéricq (Belgian) Studies on the physiology of the myocardium
- 1927—Ludolph Brauer (German) Studies on pericarditis the Brauer's operation in adhesive pericarditis
- 1927—Hans E von Hering (German) Studies on carotid sinus reflexes
- 1927—Herrmann L Blumgart (American) and Soma Weiss (Hungarian U S A) Studies on circulation time
- 1928—Carl J Wiggers (American) Text book of physiology of circulation

Studies on hemodynamics of valvular and septal defects

1928-1929—Aldo A. Turada (Italian Italy Austria U S A) Studies on acute pulmonary edema Monograph on hypotension the syndrome of hypophygmia

1929—Walter Forstmann (German) Catheterization of the human heart

1930—Frank N. Wilson (American) Studies on bundle branch block and on precordial leads

1931—Ernst Fdons (German) Textbook of cardiology

1931—Hermann Rein (German) Physiology of coronary circulation description of the Thermoströmuhr

1931—Paul D. White (American) Well known textbook of cardiology Multiple studies of cardiology

1931-1934—Peter Stumpf (German) Eduard Zdansky (Austrian) Sidney Hirsch (American) Pietro Cignolini (Italian)	} Studies of roentgenky mography
--	--

1932—Luigi Condorelli (Italian Austria and Italy) and Max Hochrein (German working in the U S A and Germany) Studies and monographs on coronary circulation and coronary heart disease

1932—Arthur Grollman (American) Studies on cardiac output

1933—Herrmann L. Blumgart Samuel Levine and David Berlin (American) Thyroidectomy in heart failure and angina pectoris

1933—Adalbert v. Bogaert (Belgian France) Studies on chronaxia of the myocardium and of the bundle of His

1933—Arthur Stoll (Swiss) Isolation of the glycosides of digitalis lanata

1933—Wilhelm Dressler (Austrian Austria and moved to U S A) Studies on

pulsations of the chest wall, studies on tricuspid stenosis

1933—Cornelle Heymans (Belgian) Studies on the carotid sinus

1934—Harry Goldblatt (American) Experimental hypertension caused by renal ischemia the Goldblatt kidney

1934—Pedro Cosío (Argentine) Book of physical diagnosis in cardiology

1934-1939—Claude S. Beck (American) and I. O. Shaughnessy (British) Various surgical attempts at revascularization of the myocardium

1936-1941—Camille Lian and coworkers (French) Multiple studies and monograph of phonocardiography and collective auscultation

1937—Hugo Roesler (Austrian) Textbook of roentgenology of the heart

1937—Augustín Castellanos *et al* (Cuban) Angiocardiography in children

1939—Oscar Orías and Eduardo Braun-Menéndez (Argentine) Monograph of clinical phonocardiography

1939—E. M. Organ and M. A. Poston P. H. Fletcher and V. C. Scott (American) Successful sulfonamide treatment in acute bacterial endocarditis

1939—Robert E. Gross (American) Surgical ligation of patent ductus arteriosus

1939—George P. Robb and Israel Steinberg (American) Visualization of the cardiac chambers in the adult

1939—Isaac Starr (American) Studies of ballistocardiography

1944—Foundation of the National Institute of Cardiology in Mexico City

1941-1948—André Cournand (French U S A) and coworkers Studies on pulmonary circulation and cardiac output by catheterization of the right heart

1941—Louis N. Katz (American) Textbook of electrocardiography Multiple studies of experimental and clinical cardiology

1942-1947—Emanuel Goldberger (Ameri

- can) Studies of unipolar electrocardiography
- 1944—Ico Ioeve *et al* (American) Successful penicillin treatment of subacute bacterial endocarditis
- 1945—Alfred Blalock and Helen B Tausig (American) Surgical treatment of the tetralogy of Fallot
- 1945—C Crafoord and G Nylin (Swedish) Robert F Cross (American) Surgical treatment of coarctation of the aorta
- 1945—George C Henny and Bert R Boone (American) The electrokymograph
- 1946—Maurice Marchal (French) Studies of densigraphy of the lungs
- 1947-1949—Aldo A Jursada (Italian U S A) Felix G Fleischner (Austrian U S A) and coworkers Studies of electrokymography of the heart great vessels and lungs in normal subjects and in clinical conditions
- 1947—Helen B Tausig (American) Text book of congenital heart diseases
- 1948—Foundation of the National Heart Institute in the U S A
- 1948—Myron Prinzmetal (American) The method of radiocardiography
- 1947-1948—Maurice Lenègre *et al* (French) Antonio Battro *et al* (Argentine) and Hans Hecht (Swiss U S A) Intracardiac electrocardiography
- 1948—Claude S Beck (American) A M Vineberg (Canadian) and M Fautoux (Canadian) Revascularization of the ischemic heart coronary neurectomy
- 1950—Robert C Brock (British) Surgical dilatation of the stenotic pulmonary valve
- 1949-1951—Charles P Bailey (American) Commissurotomy of mitral stenosis Various interventions in valvular defects
- 1949-1952—David Scherf (Austrian, U S A) and coworkers Myron Prinzmetal (American) Experimental and clinical studies on atrial fibrillation and premature contractions Monographs on the former (M P) and the latter (D S)

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 CASTIGLIONI A *A History of Medicine* New York Knopf 1941
- 2 FIDENS E *Krankheiten des Herzens* Berlin Springer 1929
- 3 HERRICK J B *A Short History of Cardiology* Baltimore Thomas 1942
- 4 LUISADA A A *Bull Hist Med* 1944 suppl 3 157
- 5 DICERENT H E *Einfuehrung in die Medizin* Leipzig 1931
- 6 LAQUEZ H *Les Maladies du Cœur* Paris Baillière 1928
- 7 WHITE P D *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1944
- 8 WILLIUS F A AND KEYS T F *Cardiac Classics* St Louis Mosby 1941
- 9 FISCHER I *Biographisches Lexicon der herorragender Aerzte der letzten funfzig Jahre* Wien Urban und Schwarzenberg 1933
- 10 HUFBOTTER F H AND VIERORDT H *Biographisches Lexicon der herorragender Aerzte aller Zeiten und Voelker* Wien Urban und Schwarzenberg 1929
- 11 WILLIUS F A AND DRY T J *A History of the Heart and Circulation* Philadelphia Saunders 1948

Development and Structure of the Cardiovascular System

Development of the Cardiovascular System

In an early stage of embryonic life the heart is represented by a simple elongated tube (the *primitive cardiac tube*). Various circular narrowings soon separate five different structures which follow each other in the direction of the blood stream. They are called the *sinus venosus*, the *atrium*, the *ventricle*, the *bulbus cordis*, and the *common arterial trunk* (figs. 1 and 2).

Elongating the cardiac tube then bends and twists itself forming an S with the venous end toward the back and the left and the arterial end upwards and toward the front (fig. 1). Further changes occur rapidly as the venous end moves upward behind the arterial end and at the same time undergoes a movement of torsion. At this stage a deep *atrioventricular groove* separates the *venous part* (*primitive atrium* plus *sinus venosus*) from the *arterial part* of the heart (*primitive ventricle* plus *bulbus cordis*). Therefore at this time the heart fundamentally consists of only two chambers like that of the fish (*bilocular heart*) (fig. 2).

Later on each side of the primitive atrium a bulge appears (future atrium) and the round *atrioventricular opening* flattens into a transverse one into which the *atrioventricular valves* develop. The primitive ventricle soon shows an anterior and a posterior groove separating the right half from the left. The right ventricle though small is lengthened by the *bulbus cordis* and looks larger than the left. The primitive atrium and ventricle and the *bulbus* are then each divided into two separate cavities

by *septa* or walls. A *vertical septum*² arising in the upper part of the back wall of the atrium proceeds downward toward the *atrioventricular opening*, and fuses with another *septum*³ which has divided the latter. By the time the fusion is complete a *defect* has developed in the lower part of the interatrial wall.⁴ However this first opening is soon covered by a *third formation*⁵ which develops to the right of the first and parallel to it. As this new wall develops upward from below and never reaches the end a *second opening* will remain in the upper part of the septum called the *foramen ovale*⁶ (fig. 3). This is the foramen which is still open in the newborn. It is guarded on its left side by the first septum which acts like a *valve*. Thus blood may pass through the foramen but only from the right to the left atrium and not in the opposite direction.

At this stage we have a heart made of three chambers: two communicating atria plus one ventricle similar to that of the amphibia (*trilocular heart*).

An *interatrial muscular septum* growing upwards from the apex then fuses with the interatrial septum and divides the two ventricles. Anteriorly it fuses with the septum which has meanwhile developed in the *bulbus cordis*. The two ventricular chambers communicate for a time through an *interventricular foramen*.

² This septum is called *septum primum*.

³ This formation is called *septum intermedium*.

⁴ This is called *first oval defect* or *foramen ovale primum*.

⁵ It is formation is called *septum secundum*.

⁶ This defect is called *foramen ovale secundum* or *foramen Botalli*.

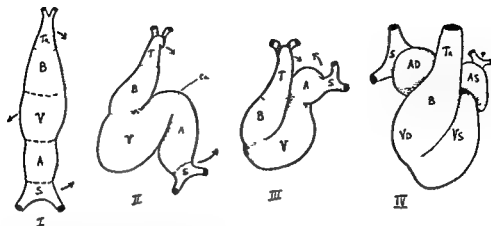


FIG 1 Early stages of development of the heart (Adapted from Ichon) I II III are seen from the left IV is a frontal view S sinus venosus A atrium Ca atrial canal B bulbus cordis Y ventricle T arterial trunk Yd right ventricle Ys left ventricle

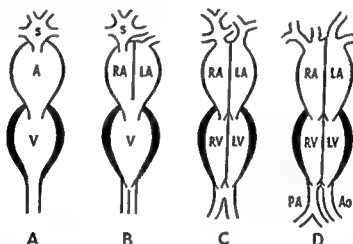


FIG 2 The hearts of different vertebrates A fish (shark) B amphibia (frog) C reptiles (alligator) D mammals RA right atrium LA left atrium RV right ventricle LV left ventricle S sinus venosus AO aorta PA pulmonary artery (Adapted from Huxsley's *Comparative Anatomy* Courtesy of Blackiston Co.)

Shortly afterwards the *common arterial trunk*¹ is divided by another structure into two separate vessels, the *aorta* and the *pulmonary artery*. The division proceeds until the interarterial septum meets with the septum of the bulbus cordis on one end and with the aorto-pulmonary septum on the other.

Four *endocardial cushions* are present at the end of the bulbus. In the process of division the right and left cushions are also divided so that on each side of the septum

three endocardial swellings will be left the future *semilunar cusps* of the aorta and pulmonary artery (fig 4).

Six *arterial arches*² arise from the arterial trunk go toward the back and open into two large vessels (*dorsal aortae*). These arches are at first symmetrical but soon become asymmetrical owing to the early atrophy of the first second and fifth arch. The third arch participates to the formation of the carotid arteries the fourth and sixth

¹ They are also called *arteries of the branchial arches*

² This is also called the *truncus arteriosus*

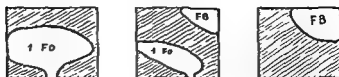


FIG 3 Development of the interatrial septum from the left 1 Fo first foramen ovale 2 Fo second foramen ovale or foramen Botalli (Adapted from *Arca's Developmental Anatomy* Courtesy of W. B. Saunders Co.)

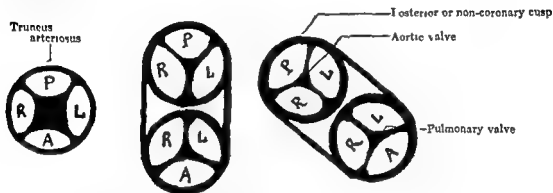


FIG 4 Scheme explaining the development and names of the semilunar valves of the aorta and pulmonary artery (Grant's *Method of Anatomy* The Williams & Wilkins Co.)

also develop into vessels of primary importance. The fourth artery will form the aortic arch on the left side and the proximal portion of the subclavian artery on the right.

The sixth artery will form the right branch of the pulmonary artery on the right side, the left branch and the ductus arteriosus on the left (fig 5).

The mammalian embryo recapitulates all stages of development which can be encountered in lower vertebrates.

The gradual increase in volume and pressure which occurs at the higher levels of the scale leads to elimination of the right ventricular aorta and leaves only two outlets: the left aorta and the pulmonary artery.

In conclusion, there are two main phases of cardiovascular development: the first concerns itself with the formation of the atrioventricular loop; the second with the absorption of the bulbus, the development of the septa and that of the inflow and outflow tracts of the ventricles.

The following processes are of paramount importance: a) formation of the bulbus

cordis; b) torsion of the primitive tube; c) formation of the main septa (interatrial, interventricular, bulbar, interarterial septa); d) incorporation of the sinus venosus into the right atrium and of the bulbus cordis into the ventricles; e) evolution of the arterial arches; and f) closure of the foramen ovale of the ductus arteriosus and of the ductus venosus. If any of these fundamental processes is modified or incomplete, congenital heart disease occurs. The torsion of the primitive tube has special importance for the future development of the heart.

THE FETAL CIRCULATION

The circulation of a 6 month old fetus takes place in the following way:

Maternal blood comes from the placenta through the umbilical vein. This blood, saturated with oxygen, goes largely to the liver (5-7) and partly to the inferior vena cava through a connecting vessel*. The opening of the inferior vena cava into the heart is rather

* This is called the ductus venosus transientis.



FIG 5 The arterial arches and the resulting arteries in man. In black the definitive vessels in white the obliterated sections C common carotid arteries P pulmonary artery S subclavian arteries D ductus arteriosus AA abdominal aorta (Adapted from Aron)

high and nearly median so that its mouth is bisected by the interatrial septum near the foramen ovale. About two thirds of the blood of the inferior vena cava go directly into the left atrium, about one third, on the contrary, enters the right (to b) (fig 6). From the left atrium the blood (received via the inferior vena cava and the pulmonary veins) goes to the left ventricle then to the aorta. In the latter the blood mixes with that coming from the pulmonary artery via the ductus arteriosus and is distributed to the whole body.

The venous blood coming from the head and the upper extremities reaches the right atrium via the superior cava. Directed by a ridge¹⁰ this blood goes straight toward the right atrioventricular valve and after slight admixture with that of the inferior cava enters the right ventricle and proceeds into the pulmonary artery. Part of it goes to the lungs and a large part to the aorta through the patent ductus arteriosus (fig 7). The blood of the abdominal aorta goes not only

¹⁰ This is called the *tubercle of Lower*

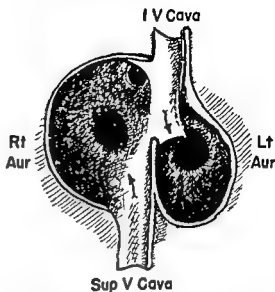


FIG 6 Circulation of the blood in the atria of the fetus. Section of the heart seen from above (after Barron). The arrows indicate the predominant direction of the blood coming from the two venae cavae.

to the lower extremities and to the viscera but also to the umbilical arteries and from them to the placenta.

The main features of the fetal circulation are the following:

a) *Partly oxygenated blood circulates in the inferior vena cava and in the right heart of*

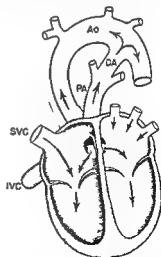


FIG 7 Circulation in the heart and large vessels of a fetus near term. DA ductus arteriosus PA pulmonary artery AO aorta IVC inferior vena cava

the fetus *Blood only partly oxygenated* circulates in the left heart and in the aorta.

b) There is a *double circulation within the right atrium* with only slight mixture of the bloods coming from the two cavae.

c) There are *two shunts* that between the atria and that between pulmonary artery and aorta. The blood passes from the inferior vena to the left atrium via the foramen ovale from the pulmonary artery to the aorta via the ductus.

CHANGES OCCURRING AFTER BIRTH

The main changes brought about by birth are related to the beginning of the pulmonary respiration and the end of the flow of maternal blood from the placenta.

The expansion of the lungs causes a fall of pressure and an increase of flow within the pulmonary artery. A greater amount of blood then returns to the left atrium raising the pressure in this chamber.

The following changes take place:

a) *Closure of the foramen ovale*. This is due to the apposition of the valve like membrane on the opening of the foramen. It takes place as soon as the pressure is reduced in the inferior vena cava and in the right atrium (lack of maternal blood) (5). A rise in pressure in the left atrium due to increase in the pulmonary circulation may also occur. The functional closure is sudden. The anatomical closure may take a few days.

b) *Closure of the ductus arteriosus*. The ductus arteriosus usually closes a few minutes after birth (5-6) owing to the contraction of a muscular ring innervated by vagal fibers. This is possible first because there is a fall of pressure in the pulmonary artery due to the beginning of respiration and second because of the direct action of oxygen upon the musculature of the ductus (8). Among the different possibilities that of a carotid sinus-vagal reflex caused by the higher carotid pressure has also been considered (10). The functional closure of the ductus occurs from a few minutes to a few

days after birth. Anatomical closure on the other hand takes much longer and is due to thrombosis of the ductus and transformation of the latter into a band of fibrous tissue.

c) The closure of the ductus tenosus is brought about by the contraction of a muscular bundle innervated by sympathetic fibers (5-9).

CAUSES OF MALFORMATIONS

Malformations of the heart may be due to developmental arrest, maldevelopment or pathology during fetal life. Arrest of development may cause isolated septal defects or patency of the ductus. Maldevelopment may cause entry of the pulmonary veins into the right atrium, aortic hypoplasia, isolated bicuspid valve or the transposition complexes. Pathology of a normally formed heart may be due to inflammation, glycogen infiltration or abnormality of other organs.

General Outline of the Cardiovascular System

The cardiovascular system is a complex apparatus whose function is that of circulating the blood. Schematically it is composed of a central pump and of an extensive distribution system. At the center is the heart, the largest and strongest organ of the system. Actually the heart is made of two separate parts, the right and the left heart, which work simultaneously, but are connected to separate distributing systems.

The right heart sends its blood through the pulmonary artery to the network of pulmonary vessels, a distribution system which is called the *lesser circulation*.

The left heart sends its blood to the rest of the body through the aorta and a second larger distribution system called the *greater circulation* (figs. 2 and 9).

The blood collected by the general system of veins flows to the right heart by way of the two main venous trunks, the superior and the inferior vena cava. The blood collected by the system of the pulmonary veins

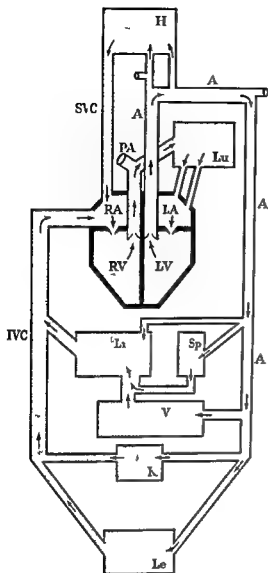


FIG 8 General scheme of the circulation Lu lungs Lu liver Sp spleen K kidneys Le legs H head A aorta PA pulmonary artery V visceral vessels of portal circulation RA right atrium LA left atrium RV right ventricle LV left ventricle

flows to the left heart by way of *four pulmonary veins* (figs 8 and 9)

The blood flowing to each of the two halves of the heart does not enter the main chamber called the ventricle directly but first fills a reception chamber called the *auricle or atrium*. There are therefore four separate chambers or cavities: the two atria and the two ventricles, and each half has an atrium and a ventricle (figs 8 and 9)

Some vascular districts have special features. They are

a) *The hepatic system* where the blood is partly supplied by an artery (the *a. hepatica*) and in larger part is supplied by a very important venous collector (the *v. portae*) (fig 8)

b) *The gastro intestinal splenic system* where the blood flows into the *vena portae* and thence to the liver

Not all organs of the abdomen are included in this latter system as the *kidneys* and the *genital organs* are independent of it (fig 8)

The vessels of the brain and the vessels of the heart also have special features

All large vessels connected to the ventricles are called *arteries* regardless of the type of blood which flows in them. The name is connected to their special structure. The large arteries branch successively into smaller and smaller arteries until the network is made up of minute microscopic vessels having a different structure called *capillaries*. From the capillaries the blood is collected into larger vessels, the smaller veins. These gradually unite into larger collecting trunks, the *veins*, which at last bring the blood back to the main venous collectors and to the heart.

THE HEART

The heart is a thoracic organ located between the two lungs and above the diaphragm. It is the largest and most important organ of the mediastinum. The average weight of the heart is shown in table 1 (17)

The average ratio of heart weight to body weight in the male is 0.43 per cent, in the female 0.40 per cent. In thin persons the ratio is somewhat higher than in fat individuals (39)

The capacity of the cardiac chambers in the adult is the following

Right atrium	31-142 cc
Left atrium	15-64 cc
Right ventricle	25-71 cc
Left ventricle	11-70 cc

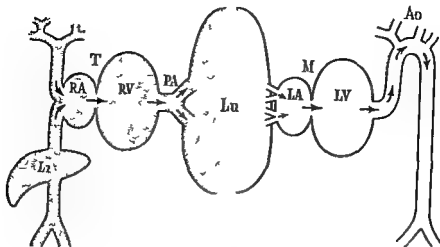


FIG. 0 The circulatory system separated into its main constituents. Symbols as in figure 8

The heart may be schematically divided into

- a) The *pericardium* a sac which contains the heart
- b) The *myocardium* or muscular part of the heart
- c) The *endocardium* or internal membrane which coats the internal surface and forms the valves

The heart is placed obliquely in the thorax with the base toward the right and the back and the apex toward the left and the front.

The heart is made of four sections which contain four cavities: the two atria and the two ventricles. The division of the four sections can be recognized from the outside owing to the existence of grooves where the vessels of the heart itself are located. These are the *atrioventricular groove* and the two *interventricular grooves* (anterior and posterior).

1) The right atrium receives blood brought by the two main venous collectors: the *superior vena cava* and the *inferior vena cava*. It is connected to the right ventricle by means of the *right atrioventricular valve* also called the *tricuspid valve*. It is separated from the left atrium which is on its left by the *interatrial septum*.

The right atrium is at the base of the heart and therefore to the right and posteriorly.

A groove separates the *sinus of the venae cavae* which is a kind of funnel into which these veins open from the rest of the cavity. The opening of the superior vena cava is more anterior than that of the inferior vena cava which is more posterior. Both however open near the septum. The opening of the former has no valve; the opening of the latter has an incomplete semilunar valve (*Eustachian valve*) which may partly prevent a backflow into the vein.

The largest collecting vein of the heart, the *coronary sinus*, also opens into the right atrium near the mouth of the superior vena cava. This is also protected by a thin valve, the *coronary valve*. A small closed funnel, the *right atrial appendage*, goes upwards and toward the front.

2) The *right atrioventricular opening* is placed along a nearly horizontal axis directed toward the front and the left and only slightly downwards. The opening is oval and measures an average circumference of 115 mm (15). It is made of a crescent.

TABLE I

AGE	FEMALES	MALES
yr	cm	cm
1	32.8	42.2
5	50.3	83.7
10	100	130
20	200	310

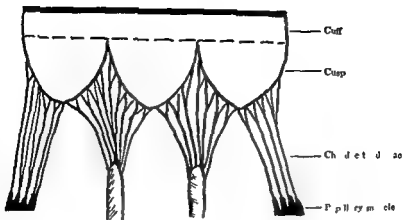


FIG 10 Diagram of the tricuspid valve and of its papillary muscles (After Grant)

like fibrous expansion closed by soft connective fibers. The opening is completed by a valve composed of three leaflets or cusps the tricuspid valve. Each of the leaflets is attached by means of thin tendinous fibers to strong muscles, the papillary muscles, which are connected with the ventricular wall. One of the cusps is inferior (nearer to the diaphragm), one is medial (nearer to the septum) and one is anterior (nearer to the opening of the pulmonary artery) (fig 10). Each papillary muscle

controls the two adjacent halves of two leaflets.

3) The right ventricle receives the blood from the right atrium through the tricuspid valve and pumps it into the pulmonary artery through the semilunar valves. As both openings are at the base of the ventricle, there are two sections in its cavity. One is the inflow chamber, which is posterolateral, the other is the outflow or arterial chamber (also called infundibulum or conus arteriosus) which is anterior and nearer to the septum (fig 11). The ventricle has a semicircular shape when observed in a transverse cut (fig 12). The average thickness of its wall is 4.1 mm at the base (18).

4) The opening of the pulmonary artery is directed obliquely upwards and towards the left. It is round and has an average diameter of 70 mm (10). It is completed by a valve composed of three crescent-shaped leaflets, the semilunar cusps. Each of them has a small nodule in the middle of its free margin (the nodule of Morgagni). The leaflets are not inserted into a fibrous ring, but their base has a fibrous expansion which penetrates between the muscular fibers of the ventricle. Above each cusp is a slight dilatation of the artery, the sinus of Valsalva.

5) The left atrium. This chamber is smaller than the right. It receives the blood from the lungs through four pulmonary veins, two nearer the septum, two others towards the left (fig 12). It is the most posterior of

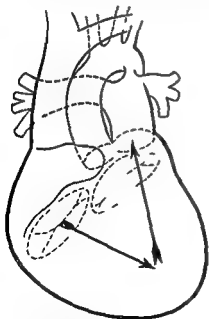


FIG 11 The movement of the blood stream in the cavity of the right ventricle. (Adapted from Zdzanski)

all heart cavities and has therefore a closer contact with the descending aorta than the oesophagus and the spine. The left surface of the interatrial septum is similar to the right already described. A small closed funnel, the *left atrial appendage*, takes a downward turn between left ventricle and pulmonary artery. The left atrium communicates with the left ventricle through the left atrioventricular opening.

6) The left atrioventricular opening has a rounded shape, an oblique axis toward the front, the left and downwards and an average circumference of 101 mm (17). It is formed by a crescent of fibrous tissue closed in front by soft connective fibers. It is completed by the left atrioventricular valve which has two cusps or leaflets. It is called therefore the *bicuspid valve* or more commonly the *mitral valve*. The two valvular cusps are similar to those of the tricuspid except that they are more rectangular. This similarity also exists in the arrangement of both the *tendinal strings (chordae)* and the *papillary muscles*. One of the two leaflets is anterior and medial (it is also called the *aortic leaflet of the mitral valve* owing to its position), the other is posterior and more lateral. The two papillary muscles are also anterior and posterior but each controls the two adjacent parts of the two leaflets of the valve via the tendinal strings (*chordae*).

7) The left ventricle receives the blood from the left atrium through the mitral valve and pumps it into the aorta through the semilunar valves. Here again there are two sections, one is the *inflow chamber* which is more posterior, the other is the *outflow or arterial chamber* (also called *conus arteriosus* or *infundibulum*) which is more anterior. The ventricle has a circular shape when observed in a transverse section (fig. 12). The average thickness of its wall is 10.2 mm (17).

8) The aortic opening is directed obliquely upwards and towards the right and the back. The outflow chamber which leads to it is between the ventricular septum, the

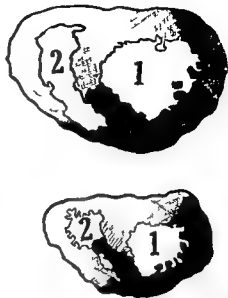


FIG. 17. Transverse sections of the ventricles at two different levels. 1 left ventricle, 2 right ventricle.

two papillary muscles and the antero-medial leaflet of the mitral valve. The opening has an average circumference of 67 mm (15) and is completed by three semilunar cusps. The structure of the valvular apparatus is similar to that of the pulmonary valve. Their names and positions are described in figure 4.

9) The *interventricular septum* is a curved formation separating the two ventricles. It has its concavity toward the left ventricle (fig. 12). Its average thickness is 10 mm (17). It is mostly formed by muscular fibers. However, a triangular area placed at the base of the ventricles is much thinner (2 mm) and consists of fibrous tissue¹¹.

10) The *interatrial septum* is a wall separating the two atria. Its average thickness is 2.5 mm. It is mostly made of muscular tissue. However, its posterior and lower part is thinner and consists of fibrous tissue¹.

This is called the *pars membranacea* and represents the area where the septum closed last.

¹¹ This corresponds to that area where the *foramen ovale* has been occluded by its valve.

THE LARGE ARTERIES

The position and the shape of the two largest arteries the aorta and the pulmonary artery are demonstrated by figures 13, 14 and 15. The pulmonary artery has an average length of 50 mm and an average caliber of 35 mm (15). It soon divides into a right and a left stem, the left being practically the prolongation of the main artery.

The aorta is a large arterial trunk which first goes upwards (*ascending a*) then backwards around the hilum of the left lung (*aortic arch*) and then downwards along the spine (*descending a*). The latter is called *thoracic aorta* above the diaphragm and *abdominal aorta* below it.

The coronary arteries are branches of the ascending aorta. The *innominate artery* (soon dividing into the *right subclavian* and the *right carotid artery*) the *left carotid*

and the *left subclavian* are branches of the aortic arch.

A dilatation present above the aortic valves (called *aortic bulbus*) contains the three sinuses of Valsalva or *aortic sinuses*. These should be called *right* and *left coronary sinuses* and *noncoronary sinus*. A slight narrowing exists between arch and descending aorta, the *aortic isthmus* some times followed by a slight dilatation. A tubular zone of fibrous tissue called the *annulus fibrosus* connects the left ventricle with the aorta proper. This structure arises from the bulbus cordis and forms part of the wall of the aortic sinuses.

Average measures are given in table 2 (15, 17).

Several important considerations concerning the large arteries are the following:

a) The division of the common carotid arteries into *internal* and *external carotid*

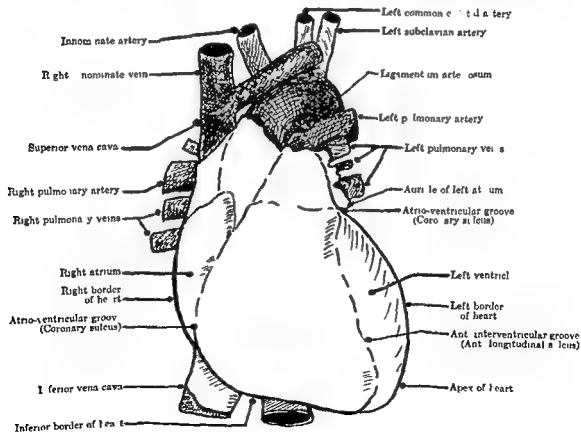


FIG. 13. Frontal view of the heart and large vessels. The pericardium is left white. (After Grant.)

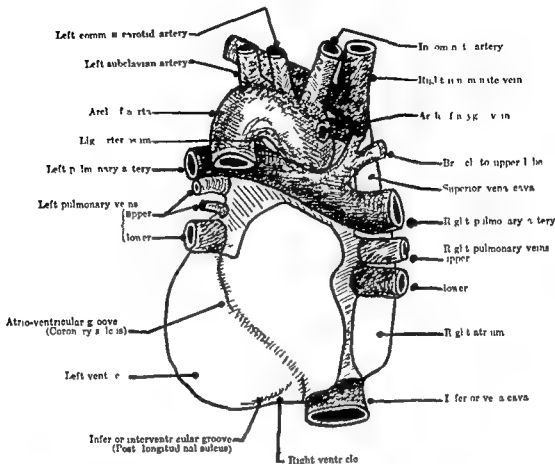


FIG. 14. Posterior view of the heart and large vessels. The pericardium is left white. (After Grant.)

A dilatation is present at the point of branching the *carotid sinus*. The *carotid sinus* is found in the neck at the level of the upper margin of the cricoid cartilage (fig. 17).

b) The division of the abdominal aorta into two large vessels, the *common iliac arteries*, takes place about 10 mm above the umbilicus.

One of the peculiarities of the *venous system* is the following: the veins of the thoracic walls (*intercostal veins*) are afferent to a larger venous collector, the *vena azygos*. The latter originates in the abdomen (where it is connected with the system of the inferior vena cava) and then opens into the superior vena cava. Effect of slow circulation

in the *vena azygos* will be felt in the pleural cavities.

STRUCTURE OF THE PERICARDIUM

The *visceral pericardium* is a thin layer of cells adherent to the heart (*epicardium*). The *parietal pericardium*, on the contrary, is made of a serous layer which is supported by strong fibrous tissue, thus forming a bag or sac. The mediastinal pleura coats a large part of the pericardial sac. A small amount of fluid is normally present in the *pericardial cavity*. It makes the movements of the heart easier.

The base of the pericardial sac adheres to the diaphragm over a triangular area which includes the *fibrous center* and part of the

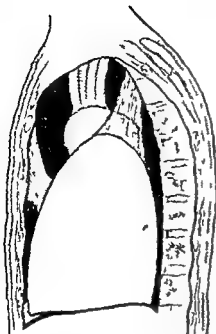


FIG 15 Section of the mediastinum from the left. In black are those parts which are outside the heart and vessels

muscular diaphragm. A thin *hiatus* (space of Larrey) enables the pericardium to contact the peritoneum.

A few thickenings of the pericardium called *ligaments* connect the sac with the surrounding structures (fig. 18). The highest part of the pericardial sac contacts the large vessels, mainly the superior vena cava, the aorta and the pulmonary artery (figs. 13 and 14). There the fibrous tissue of the pericardium

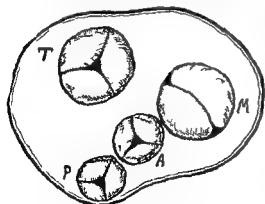


FIG 16 The valves of the heart as seen from the base

TABLE 2

SECTION	DIAMETER	LENGTH
	mm	mm
Ascending aorta	28	50-70
Aortic arch	20-28	—
Thoracic aorta	20	175-200
Abdominal aorta	17-20	130-150

fusion gradually with the external coat of the vessels. On the contrary, the serous layer of the sac is continued by the epicardium. The irregular line of insertion is about 50 mm from the beginning of the pulmonary artery and 68 mm from that of the aorta (10).

The superior vena cava has an extra- and an intrapericardial section. The inferior vena cava has a very short intrathoracic course (10-15 mm). The openings of the two hepatic veins into the cava are either within the diaphragm or slightly above it. In such a case the pericardium coats not only part of the inferior vena cava but also a small portion of the hepatic veins (fig. 19).



FIG 17 The site of the carotid sinus

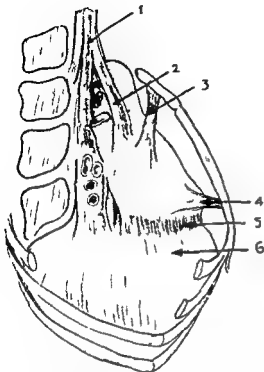


FIG 18 The ligaments of the pericardium 1 2 vertebropericardial ligaments 3 superior sternopericardial ligament 4 inferior sternopericardial ligament 5 phrenopericardial ligament 6 diaphragm The sternum is submitted to traction (From Rouvière)

STRUCTURE OF THE MYOCARDIUM

A section of myocardium parallel to the surface of the heart reveals that the fibers form networks with narrow meshes stretched in one main direction

The cardiac muscle fiber consists of nuclei myofibrils sarcoplasm sarcolemma and intercalated disks. The myofibrils are similar to those of ordinary striated fibers and are composed of the same types of disks. It has been shown in tissue culture that two myocardial cells which are not completely separated by a membrane and seem to have a partially continuous protoplasm may beat with independent rhythms. This favors the view that myocardial cells are *independent* cells.

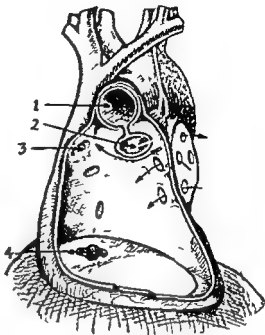


FIG 19 The pericardial sac open and distended 1 aorta 2 pulmonary artery 3 superior vena cava 4 inferior vena cava and hepatic veins (Adapted from Brauer and Fischer)

Atria

The muscular fibers of the atria radiate from a central area which surrounds the opening of the superior vena cava. These fibers are rich in sarcoplasm and are surrounded by a network of thick fibrillary connective tissue. It has been stated that the atrial myocardium has more water and more collagen than the ventricular

Ventricles

According to an old description the ventricles are two muscular sacs enclosed in a third. More recent studies (24-27) show that the myocardium is formed by several muscles which can be dissociated and which possess independent blood supplies.

One of the main parts of the ventricles is made of fibers which start superficially spiral over the external surface of the heart twist themselves around the apex and then

form the internal part of the left ventricle along with the papillary muscles. This muscle is made of two layers called the *superficial sinospiral* and the *superficial bulbospiral* muscle.

A second main part forms the deep layers and the papillary muscles of the right ventricle together with that part of the left ventricle which lies between the deeper and the more superficial parts of the adjacent muscle. This can be divided into three separate muscles: a) One is limited to the wall of the left ventricle and is called the *deep bulbospiral* muscle. b) One is a spiral sheet which surrounds the left ventricle then splits in order to enclose the right ventricle and form its chief muscle layer; it is the *deep sinospiral* muscle. c) The third encircles both ventricles in a spiral scroll manner and is called the *scroll* muscle. The latter three muscles are limited to the upper three quarters of the ventricular mass.

The myocardial fibers (*myofibrils*) are a special kind of striated muscular fibers. They are called incompletely striated and have

as a special character, the property of dividing and uniting repeatedly so that they assume the pattern of a continuous network or *syncytium*. Therefore the isolation of each fiber typical of the skeletal muscles is lacking.

Automatic or Specific System of the Heart

Several formations of a more specific tissue are present in the myocardium (fig. 20). They possess to the highest degree the ability to produce periodic stimuli, a property called *automaticism*. The automatic system can be divided into two parts: the *sinoatrial* and the *atrioventricular*.

a) The *sinoatrial system* consists of the *sinoatrial node* (node of Keith and Flack or a node) and of its *junctional fibers*. The *a node* begins at the union of the superior vena cava with the right atrium and extends like a curved band down to the mouth of the inferior vena cava. It is about 20 to 30 mm long and 2 to 5 mm thick in the adult (22-31). The *junctional fibers* radiate out from the node in all directions and soon

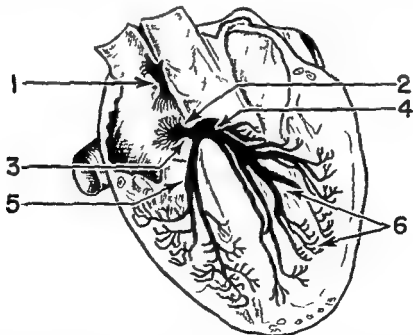


FIG. 20 The specific system of the heart. 1 sinoatrial node. 2 atrioventricular node. 3 bundle of His. 4 left stem and its branches. 5 right stem. 6 left stem.

merge with the common atrial fibers (22). There are no anatomically differentiated bundles in the atria. However certain bundles are preferred because they are shorter. One of them is the *bundle of Bachmann* connecting the right with the left atrium (22). Other bundles connecting the SA node with the AV node have been described on the basis of functional disturbances caused in animals by their ligation (20-21) but not on an anatomical basis. Among them is the *bundle of Wenckebach*.

b) The *atrioventricular system* or *conducting system* is made of the atrioventricular node with the junctional fibers of the bundle of His and of its ramifications. The *atrioventricular node* (*node of Tawara* or *node*) is a rounded formation present in the posterior and lower part of the atrial septum. It is about 5 mm long and 2 to 3 mm wide (31). *Junctional fibers* connect it with the right atrium, the septum and the left atrium (22). Gradually this node becomes a slender bundle, the *bundle of His*, which goes through the fibrous tissue at the base of the ventricles.

The *bundle of His* is 1 to 2 mm in diameter and 10 to 18 mm in length (10-31). It runs in the interventricular septum between the aortic and the tricuspid rings and continues downward toward the base of the septal papillary muscle (24). It is prolonged by the *right stem*, a thinner bundle which subdivides itself into multiple branches within the right ventricle. On the left side, there actually is no main stem (23-24) because of a sudden splintering into multiple thin bundles going toward the left ventricle.

Each subdivision continues branching again and again into smaller branches until individual fibers, the *Purkinje fibers*, connect the conducting system with the common fibers of the ventricles.

In normal human beings the *bundle of His* represents the only muscular connection between atria and ventricles. A variation from

the normal is represented by another connection between right atrium and right ventricle, the *bundle of Kent*, which is normal in lower mammals (22) or by *isolated thin muscular bundles* connecting either atrium with the respective ventricle.

The *conductive tissue* of the heart is somewhat different from the rest of the myocardium. Its fibers are thinner, they are less clearly striated and are mixed with a rich system of nerve cells, nerve trunks and nerve fibrils (24).

THE ENDOCARDIUM

The endocardium is a whitish translucent membrane which coats the whole internal surface of the heart. The usual endocardium is made of three different layers, the most superficial being an endothelium. The valves also have an endothelium supported by connective tissue. The *leaflets of the cardiac valves* normally do not possess blood vessels (15).

THE ARTERIES OF THE HEART

Two arterial vessels supply blood to the heart itself. They are the left and right coronary arteries, branches of the ascending aorta (fig. 21).

The *left coronary artery* partly surrounds the pulmonary artery, then proceeds into the anterior interventricular groove and is prolonged by the *anterior descending* or *interventricular branch* running toward the apex (fig. 21a). This artery gives blood to the anterior surface of the ventricles. A branch of the left coronary artery, the *circumflex branch*, leaves the main trunk early and surrounds the heart, passing along the atrioventricular groove (fig. 21a).

The *right coronary artery* originates from the aorta on the right, follows the anterior part of the atrioventricular groove, then reaches the posterior interventricular groove where a *posterior descending branch* continues it, running toward the apex (fig. 21a). This artery supplies blood to the posterior surface of the ventricles. In 50 per cent of

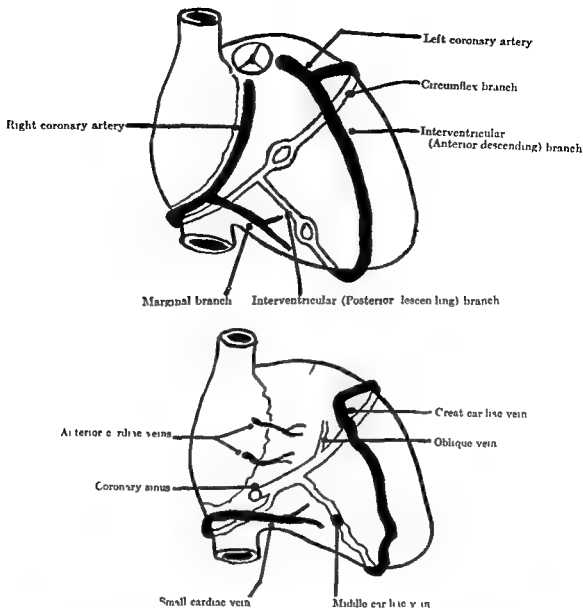


FIG. 21 A (top) the coronary arteries B (bottom) the coronary veins (After Grant)

the cases there is a third small coronary artery the *conus artery* which arises directly from the aorta and supplies the conus arteriosus (40)

In 80 per cent of the cases each atrium is supplied by its respective coronary artery. On the contrary, the *interventricular septum* and the *adjacent part of the ventricles* always have a mixed supply partly from the right and partly from the left coronary artery. However, the left coronary supplies chiefly

the anterior part of the septum, the right chiefly the posterior.

The mouths of the coronary arteries are high enough so that they cannot be closed by the semilunar valves. Each of them is surrounded by a ring or *sphincter* of smooth muscle fibers (26).

The coronary network can be schematically divided into two sections: a) the *larger trunks* which run over the surface of the heart and b) the *smaller vessels* which pene-

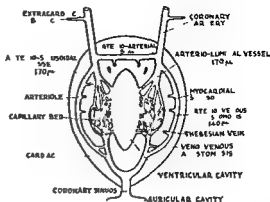
trate deeply into the myocardium and are submitted to the effects of its contraction.

A few anastomotic branches exist at any age between the small coronary arteries and are not particularly developed in older people unless there is coronary heart disease (28-29). These channels may carry blood in either direction and connect the branches of the right with those of the left coronary artery. Moreover, a free anastomosis exists between the capillaries of the two systems.

The coronary pattern is not the same in all hearts (29). In about one half of them the right coronary predominates (group I) in about one third the blood supply is balanced between the two coronaries (group II) the smaller group includes those hearts where the left coronary predominates (group III) (29).

As far as the conducting system is concerned the blood supply to this delicate section of the myocardium has been studied in great detail. The *s a node* receives its blood from one atrial artery only (30). This however is somewhat variable as it may be a branch of either the right or the left circumflex. This artery gives origin to a vascular ring which circles the mouth of the superior vena cava. The main artery of both the *n n node* and the *bundle of His* is the *ramus septi fibrosi* (23, 28, 30), a small branch of the right coronary. However the lowest part of the bundle is supplied by the *ramus limbi dexteri* (25, 28, 30), a branch of the anterior descending artery, i.e. of the left coronary artery.

In addition to the more conventional blood supply the myocardium can be nourished a) through extracardiac anastomoses b) through the Thebesian vessels and c) through reversal of flow in the coronary veins (33) (fig. 22). The most important normal extracardiac anastomoses are between coronary arteries and bronchial arteries through the vasa vasorum of the first part of the aorta and the pulmonary artery. Other anastomoses may occur whenever there is adhesive pericarditis. The Thebesian vessels



COLLATERAL CIRCULATION OF THE HEART

FIG 22 Vessels taking part in the collateral circulation of the heart (From Prinzmetal and co workers Arch Card Mexico Courtesy of the authors)

are the remnants of tortuous spaces which supply blood to the heart of the embryo. These vessels open in the endocardium and make a network which communicates with the capillaries of the myocardium and adds its supply to that of the more conventional coronary arteries. Reversal of the flow in the veins seems possible on the basis of animal experimentation (33-34) and may contribute to the nourishment of the heart.

THE VEINS OF THE HEART

The venous blood of the heart can escape following several routes a) through the *great cardiac vein* which ends in the *coronary sinus* a venous dilatation opening into the right atrium (fig 21b) b) by way of *smaller veins* which run over the surface of the heart and open into the right atrium independently from the above c) through the *Thebesian vessels* which open directly into any of the four heart cavities or d) through *arterio luminal* and *arterio sinusoidal* connections thence into the heart chamber (33, 34)

THE LYMPHATIC VESSELS

The lymphatics of the heart form an extensive subendocardial network better developed in the ventricles. The main col-

lector vessels run into the superficial grooves of the heart and are connected with lymph nodes placed at the bifurcation of the trachea.

Connections between the supradiaphragmatic and the infradiaphragmatic network of lymphatic vessels may have importance in the transmission of bacteria from the peritoneum to the pericardium and vice versa.

STRUCTURE OF THE ARTERIES

Three different layers are present in all arteries: a) the *internal coat* or *tunica intima*, b) the *middle coat* or *tunica media*, and c) the *external coat* or *tunica externa*. Marked differences existing in the structure of the middle coat facilitate the division of these vessels into *large arteries* and *small arteries*.

Large arteries. The internal coat has an *endothelium* supported by connective tissue containing different layers. The middle layer is made of a tremendous amount of elastic tissue with a few muscular cells. The external coat is relatively thin and made of common connective tissue.

Small arteries. The internal coat is made of an *endothelium* supported by an elastic layer. The middle layer is a thick typically muscular coat made of smooth cells arranged in a circular way. The external coat also relatively thick is made of common connective tissue, but also contains an elastic layer.



Fig. 23 Connections between muscular fibers (white) and elastic bundles (black) in a medium sized artery. (Courtesy of Dr. Hans Hilart.)

Both the large arteries and those of medium size have their own vessels in the external coat. These may penetrate the middle layer and are called *vasa vasorum*.

The connections between the muscular and the elastic structures of the arteries are of special functional importance (40, 41) (fig. 23).

The nerves supplying the small arteries form plexuses in the tunica adventitia between this and the media and within the media (44). The arterioles are accompanied by a small number of nerve fibers, usually two or three, while only one fiber may be found in the precapillaries.

STRUCTURE OF THE CAPILLARY SYSTEM

The small arteries or *arterioles* divide into smaller vessels called *precapillaries* or *metarterioles* (32). These lead into channels which connect the arterioles with the venules. The *true capillaries* are side branches of the channels and are connected to each other in most organs making a network like pattern (32).

The aspect of the different capillary systems varies however according to the organ in which they are contained. Among them the *capillary networks* (different organs), the *capillary loops* (skin) and the *anastomotic networks* (intestinal villi) can be recognized. In addition to the specialized capillary beds of various organs there is a basic nutritional type of capillary unit (42, 43). This consists of a central channel which joins a terminal arteriole and a venule. Its initial portion called *metarteriole* has discontinuous muscle cells; the rest is called *nutrient or thoroughfare channel* and has no muscle cells. Branches which come off abruptly from a metarteriole also have some muscle cells; these branches are called the *precapillaries* and their muscles are called the *precapillary sphincters* (fig. 24).

The capillaries are accompanied by fine beaded fibers running close to the vessels or occasionally at some distance from them (44).

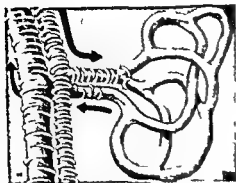


FIG. 21 Arrangement of muscular fibers (white) in the arterial precapillary and venule: the capillaries have no muscular fibers (Courtesy of Dr Han Hsu.)

The capillary wall is made of a thin protoplasmic membrane with multiple nuclei which is made of endothelial cells united by their margins (fig. 21). The capillary is supported by a delicate network of reticular connective tissue with occasional perivascular cells called *homing cells* which should not be mistaken for muscular elements (36).

STRUCTURE OF THE VEINS

The venous wall contains three different coats or tunics. The *internal coat* is similar to that of the artery, having an *endothelium* and an *elastic membrane*. The *middle coat* is much thinner than that in arteries of a similar diameter. It contains *muscular* and *elastic elements* in a network of rather soft connective tissue. The *external coat* is thicker than that in the arteries and may contain muscular elements.

Membranous pockets called *sacculi* can be found in the vein. They are mainly present in the veins of medium size and in those of the limbs. They are made of a double layer of endothelium with a thin layer of connective tissue between them.

Both large and medium veins have their own vessels which run in the external coat and are called *vasa vasorum*.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 LICHOW, A. *Les Maladies Congénitales du Cœur*. Traité de M. L. Int. L. et M. 1958, 1958.

- 2 SUTZER, A. *Virechow's Arch.* 1902, 243, 51.
- 3 BROWN, J. W. *Congenital Heart Disease*. London: J. Bale, 1931.
- 4 ARRY, I. B. *Developmental Anatomy of the Heart*. Philadelphia: Saunders, 1931.
- 5 BARRON, D. H. *Physiol. Rev.* 1944, 24, 1.
- 6 BARTLEY, A. I., BARTHOLOMEW, J., BARRON, D. H., FRANKLIN, K. J. AND LICHOW, A. M. *Brit. J. Radiol.* 1949, 22, 503; and *Am. J. Anat.* 1949, 133, 383.
- 7 FRANKLIN, K. J., BARTLEY, A. I. AND LICHOW, A. M. *J. Anat.* 1949, 84, 5.
- 8 KENNEDY, J. A. AND CLARK, S. I. *Am. J. Anat.* 1941, 136, 140.
- 9 BARRON, D. H. *Anat. Rec.* 1941, 82, 338.
- 10 BARTHOLOMEW, J., KENNEDY, J. A. AND LICHOW, A. M. *J. Physiol.* 1948, 92, 11.
- 11 HERTWIG, E. *Flora der Entwicklungsgeschichte des Menschen und Wirbeltiere*. Jena, 1910.
- 12 CRAY, H. *Anatomy of the Human Body*. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1941.
- 13 LICHOW, A. *Human Anatomy*. 9th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 1940.
- 14 BROWN, J. C. *Cunningham's Textbook of Anatomy*. 13th ed. New York: Oxford Univ. Press, 1941.
- 15 CUNNINGHAM, C. *Textbook of Anatomy of the Human Body*. 13th ed. London: S. E. 1946.
- 16 DE VECCHI, B. *Manuale di Tecniche delle Autopsie*. Milano: Vallardi, 1948.
- 17 VIGNEROT, BIZOT. *Quintessence de l'Anatomie*.
- 18 TASSER, J. *Anatomie de l'Homme*. Jena, 1913.
- 19 LICHOW, A. AND FRANKLIN, K. *Strukturtypen des Kreislaufsystems*. Berlin: Springer, 1948.
- 20 COLOMBINI, I. *Cuore e Circolazione*. 1940, 11, 1.
- 21 COLOMBINI, I. *Zeit. für exp. Med.* 1940, 69, 311.
- 22 SCHWARTZ, D. AND BAXI, I. *J. Clinical Electrocardiography*. St. Louis: M. B. 1940.
- 23 CHARRAULT, L. *Le Mécanisme du Cœur et de l'Anatomie*. Paris: Masson, 1948.
- 24 ROSS, J. S. AND ROSS, R. C. *Am. Heart J.* 1941, 23, 45.
- 25 CROW, D. J. AND BURCE, R. J. *Am. Heart J.* 1945, 29, 1.
- 26 CRAMER, D. A. *Atti. Congressi Internaz. di Med. 11a Meeting, Roma, 1941*, 1945.
- 27 LOWE, T. I. AND WATMAN, W. H. *Brit. Heart J.* 1944, 6, 115.
- 28 CROSS, I. *Art. of Supply to the Heart*. Oxford: Med. Publ. 1941.
- 29 SCHWARTZ, M. J. *Brit. J. Anat.* 1948, 16, 1.

- 30 LASCANO I F *Irrigacion Normal del Védulo de Keith y Flack Ha de His y sus Ramas* Buenos Aires El Ateneo 1912
- 31 WIGGERS C J *Physiology in Health and Disease* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1944
- 32 CHAMBERS Quoted by Wiggers
- 33 BELLET S In *Cyclopedia of Medicine Surgery and Specialties* Philadelphia Davis 1943 3 769
- 34 LENDRUM B KONDO B AND KATZ I N Am J Physiol 1945 143 243
- 35 WEARN J T METTIER S R KILUM T G AND ZHIE (RE I J Am Heart J 1953 9 143
- 36 VOLTERRA M Sperimentale (Florence) 1927 3
- 37 GRANT J C B *An Atlas of Anatomy* Baltimore The Williams & Wilkins Co 1951
- 38 VELANQUEZ T Arch Inst Nat Card Mexico 1950 20 495
- 39 SMITH H L Am Heart J 1928 4 79
- 40 BENNINGHOFF A Zeit Zellforsch u mikr Anat 1927 6 348
- 41 SCHULTZE JENA R S Morph Jahrb 1939 83 230
- 42 CHAMBERS R AND ZWEIFACH B W Am J Anat 1944 70 173
- 43 CHAMBERS R AND ZWEIFACH B W Ann New York Acad Sci 1946 46 683
- 44 MILLER J W J Anat 1918 22 65
- 45 SCHLESINGER M J ZOLL P M AND WESSIER S Am Heart J 1940 38 823

The Normal Functions of the Heart and Vessels

The chief function of the circulation is to carry blood to the tissues in order to maintain a relatively constant condition of the intercellular fluid. Carrying oxygen to and carbon dioxide from the periphery, carrying nourishing substances from the intestine and waste products to the kidneys and liver and carrying specific substances and heat from one organ to another are some of the functions of the circulation.

The circulatory system maintains a constant condition of the internal environment of the cells only by constant work and continuous compensatory reactions.

The Heart

The sole function of the heart is a rhythmic mechanical contraction. This sets the blood in motion throughout the circulatory system. The different parts of the heart have specific roles in the production and utilization of this contraction.

THE MYOCARDIUM

The heart muscle has four fundamental properties: (1) automatism; excitability; conductivity; and contractility.

A fifth property, *tonus*, was admitted until 20 years ago, then was denied. Studies of the author (186) indicate that the *resting length* and the *diastolic length* of the heart fibers vary with different physiological and pharmacological stimuli. This property of modifying the resting length might well be called *intrinsic tonus* and probably has importance in the determination of cardiac volume. However, accurate evaluation of this property is so far purely experimental.

Automatism is the property of producing rhythmic stimuli. Although present in the entire myocardium, this property is highly developed in the specific system (pacemaker and conducting system), and especially in its highest parts, as shown by the different automatic rhythms (page 34).

Excitability is the ability to react to definite stimuli. This property is common to all striated muscles, but has special features in the heart owing to greater duration of the refractory period (page 30).

Conductivity is the ability to receive and transmit stimuli. This property is influenced by the duration of the refractory period.

Contractility is the ability of a muscle to shorten itself, thus performing a definite function. It is therefore common to all striated and smooth muscles.

The *functional properties of the myocardium* have been studied in various experimental preparations. The most important of these are: a) Isolated and perfused heart (frog, turtle, dog) (3); b) Open chest experiments, mechanical transmission of the heart movements (amphibia, mammals) (4, 5); volume tracings (6, 7); c) Heart lung preparations (dog) (8, 9); d) Isolated papillary muscle (cat, dog) (185).

A series of phenomena well known to students of physiology led to recognition of certain heart laws which are described in the following paragraphs:

1) *The law of all or none*. When the heart is stimulated its reaction is of *maximal intensity*, whatever the intensity of the stimulus. (4) The same law is true for an isolated fiber of a skeletal muscle (10) but

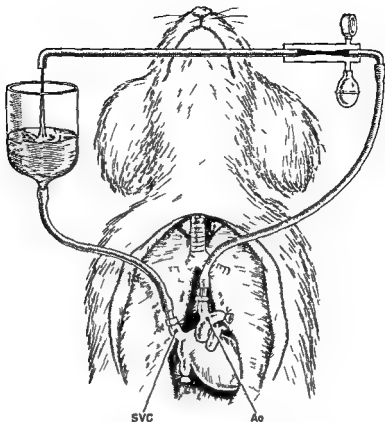


FIG. 25 Sketch of Starling's heart lung preparation. SVC superior vena cava, Ao aorta

not for a complete skeletal muscle owing to the different thresholds of the various fibers stronger stimuli cause more fibers to contract and cause therefore a stronger contraction. Owing to the synzytial structure of the myocardium all normal cardiac fibers have the same threshold and they contract as a single unit.

Variations of the excitability and contractility of the heart muscle because of mechanical (initial length of the fibers) chemical (concentration of H ions) or physiological phenomena (changes of blood supply, fatigue) may change the intensity of reaction to a stimulus (11). This may explain apparent exceptions to the law which holds true when conditions remain constant.

2) *Refractory period* The extreme shortness of the period during which the skeletal muscle is unexcitable (refractory period) causes gradual fusion of contractions and the occurrence of a *tetanus*. This is impossible

in the normal heart muscle (12).¹¹ During contraction the heart muscle does not react to abnormal stimulation (*absolute refractory period*). After the end of contraction the heart muscle becomes more and more excitable until the excitability becomes normal (*relative refractory period*, ref. 12). It is apparent that only exceptionally strong stimuli may induce contraction in this phase and that the stronger the stimulation the sooner a contraction may take place.

3) *Influence of the initial length* Distention of the heart chambers by increased inflow increases the length of the cardiac fibers and leads to proportionally stronger contractions. This property, recognized by

¹¹ Special experimental conditions (abnormally high content of Ca, cooling of the heart or ouabain in addition to rapid stimulations) may lead to occurrence of *tetanus* in the myocardium of the frog (15a) and in that of mammals (186, 187).

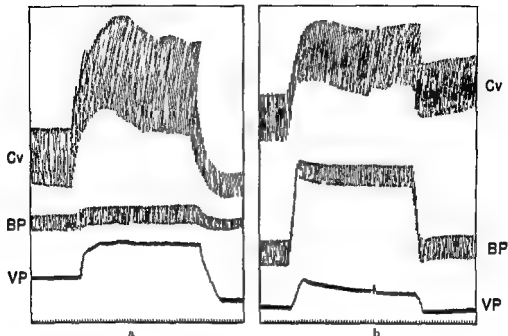


FIG 26 Increase in volume of the heart taking place in a heart lung preparation a The venous return is increased b The peripheral resistance is increased Cv cardiac volume VP venous pressure Bp arterial pressure (Adapted from original tracings of Starling)

Starling (13) is common to all striated muscles¹⁴ The following conclusions were reached on heart lung preparations (fig 26) a) If the venous return to the heart is increased the diastolic volume becomes greater and cardiac output increases (fig 26a) b) If the peripheral resistance is increased cardiac output is maintained constant but the diastolic volume again becomes greater (fig 26b)

A direct relationship between oxygen consumption of the myocardium and initial length of the ventricular fibers i.e diastolic volume has also been demonstrated It should be noted that whenever nervous metabolic or endocrine influences play a role the heart does not follow strictly Starling's law On the other hand a failing heart may fail to respond to such influences and follow more closely such law

4) *Cardiac tonus* The problem of

cardiac tonus has been discussed for a long time Tonus is the sustained partial contraction by virtue of which muscle fibers resist stretching more than they would on account of their inherent elastic properties alone (14) Cardiac tonus is different from the tonus of smooth muscles (the ability to maintain a slow contraction—page 49) and from that of the skeletal muscles (a sustained minimal tetanic contraction) Its existence in experimental cardiac preparations has been proven by the author (186) However the possible importance of this property is still under study

PHYSIOLOGICAL REQUIREMENTS OF THE ISOLATED HEART

The heart of a mammalian when isolated and perfused (17a) maintains a steady and rhythmic contraction under certain conditions The fluid reaching the heart must contain oxygen must be warmed to body temperature and must have a definite pressure

¹ According to subsequent studies (151) tension of the myocardial fiber and not length is the important factor

The hourly oxygen consumption of the isolated mammalian heart averages 3.24 cc per gram of the organ in conditions similar to those taking place in the organism at rest (15).

Temperatures between 26 and 40 C are tolerated causing proportional variations of the heart rate (16).

The isolated heart is very sensitive to changes of the reaction (pH) because it has only a low buffering power (16). A small concentration of lactic acid (0.07 per cent) causes severe arrhythmia.

TABLE 3

Sodium chloride	0.9
Potassium chloride	0.02
Calcium chloride	0.02
Magnesium chloride	0.01
Glucose	0.1
Sodium bicarbonate	0.1
Sodium phosphate	0.005

The chemical composition of the fluid necessary for keeping the heart alive has been studied by *Pinger, Locke* and *Turoch* (17, 32, 33, 43). The best solution is similar to that of mammalian plasma minus proteins is shown in table 3 (17, 43).

Calcium in excess (or in normal concentration but in the absence of potassium) increases the duration of systole and later stops the heart in systole (*calcium rigor*). *Potassium in excess* (or in normal concentration in the absence of calcium) increases the duration of diastole and later stops the heart in diastole (*potassium inhibition*). An increased alkalinity (higher pH) acts like a calcium excess; a decreased alkalinity (lower pH) acts like a potassium excess.

Since a solution not containing solution is also unworkable for the heart it is apparent that an exact calcium-potassium solution

¹⁷ Calcium ions occur only in the application heart either resuscitated or in a state of rigor are more common in the mammalian heart (see also page 13, page 30).

balance is essential for a good myocardial function.

Carbon dioxide has a complex action. In addition to its action on the centers of the medulla (stimulation of the respiratory, vasomotor and vagus centers) an excess of CO₂ acts directly on the myocardium. It depresses automatism (lower rate) and conductivity (prolonged Δ conduction). On the contrary, an insufficient concentration of CO₂ leads to incomplete and shorter diastole with decreased cardiac output.

METABOLISM OF THE HEART MUSCLE

The heart utilizes glucose, fat and perhaps amino acid and lactic acid. Glucose is partially used to restore the glycogen content and partially burned. Lactic acid is removed on a large scale from the blood of the coronary system but its utilization has not been demonstrated so far. Fats are used virtually only when carbohydrates are scarce. Amino acids are not used as such.

The process of muscular contraction is as follows (162). The contractile structure is based on a protein complex actomyosin and on a water-soluble nucleotide, adenosine triphosphate (ATP). Myosin links with ATP by binding Mg and K ions. At high salt concentration the myosin-ATP complex remains separated from actin; at lower salt concentration actin and myosin-ATP unite. The shift in concentration necessary for these changes is brought about by the wave of excitation which spreads into the myocardium. Separated actin and myosin-ATP are straight filaments with high energy (distention). United they dehydrate and shrink forming a shorter, more stable and energy-poor state (contraction). If the fibers are not allowed to shorten ten or develop.

The chemical reactions taking place in the myocardium are similar to those of the skeletal muscles (16). They can be summarized as follows: a) *Adenosine triphosphate*

is broken down to *adenylic acid* and *phosphoric acid* (no oxygen required) b) *Phosphocreatin* is broken down to *phosphoric acid* plus *creatin* (no oxygen required) c) *Glycogen* is broken down to *lactic acid* (no oxygen required), part of the energy resulting from this reaction is utilized for the resynthesis of *phosphocreatin* d) *Lactic acid* is burned with formation of carbon dioxide and water (oxygen necessary) part of the resulting energy is utilized for the resynthesis of *glycogen*

The conversion of *glycogen* to *lactic acid* involves a large number of enzymatic reactions. Under physiological conditions muscle *glycogen* breaks down to *lactic acid* and water providing a large amount of energy. Among the different steps one of the most important is that leading to formation of *pyruvic acid*. When there is a relative lack of oxygen *lactic acid* is present in excess.

In a normal animal both *glycogen* and *lactic acid* may be carried to the heart by the blood since their synthesis may take place in other organs. An important difference between cardiac muscle and skeletal muscle is that the former cannot withstand any major oxygen debt. Therefore cardiac contraction does not continue if the heart does not receive an adequate and continuous oxygen supply.

The metabolism of glucose in the body is aided by a system of co-enzymes containing some well known vitamins. *Thiamin* is a co-enzyme which (with *carboxylase*) makes possible an anaerobic reaction in which *pyruvic acid* is oxidized to *acetaldehyde* and carbon dioxide. *Niacin* and *riboflavin* appear to be necessary in the formation of other co-enzymes which are associated with the carbohydrate metabolism. *Vitamins B₁* and *C* may play some part in oxidation processes *in vivo* but there is as yet no convincing evidence of this. *Vitamin E* seems related somehow to the oxidation system of the muscles.

THE PACEMAKER OF THE HEART AND THE CONDUCTING SYSTEM

Studies on the origin of the automatic impulses of the heart and on the spreading of the stimulus were first made on amphibia (*Stannius Gaskell Kent*). The amphibian heart contains three ganglia *Remak's* (between sinus and right atrium) *Ludwig's* (in the interatrial septum) and *Bidder's* ganglion (in the atrioventricular groove).

Ligation of the sinoatrial junction stops contraction of the atria and ventricle (1st *Stannius ligature*) without changing the contractions of the sinus (17b). A second ligation around the atrioventricular junction (2nd *Stannius ligature*) causes reappearance of ventricular contractions (17b). The common explanation is that the first ligation interrupts the spreading of the stimulus while the second causes contractions of local origin by irritation of either *Bidder's* ganglion or the myocardium itself.

In higher species as in man the *pacemaker* lies either within the sinoatrial node (a node) or in the surrounding tissues (14). Apparently the *pacemaking activity* which is the cause of the heart beat is the result of the spontaneous development of rhythmic oscillations of electric potential (18). Whenever a change of potential of sufficient intensity occurs a propagated discharge is set up and stimulation of the surrounding myocardium takes place. The conduction follows the fibers of the myocardium at variable rates which are directly proportional to the size of the fibers (29). Stimuli set up by the activity of the *pacemaker* usually reach the rest of the heart before any other stimulus has arisen anywhere.

The impulse spreads like a wave¹⁶ in the wall of the right atrium with a speed of 600-1200 mm per second (19) so that the

¹⁶ A wave of excitation is a series of physico-chemical changes accompanied by electrical phenomena and spreading like a wave. As contraction follows excitation a wave of contraction follows the wave of excitation.

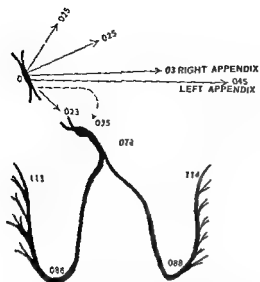


FIG 27 The conduction system of the dog's heart and the approximate times of spread of the impulse in the atrial and ventricular conduction systems. Scheme (From Wiggers *Physiology in Health and Disease* Courtesy of the author and Lea & Febiger)

right atrial appendage receives it about 0.03 second later. As the left atrium is excited only 0.04 sec after the beginning of the impulse, there is little difference in time between the excitations of the right and left atria. This points to a very rapid rate of transmission in the interatrial bundles.

While no special conduction pathways exist for transmission between s.a. node and a.v. node, the stimulus spreads over direct bundles of the interatrial septum.¹⁷ Therefore excitation of the a.v. node precedes that of the right appendage and takes place 0.023 sec after the starting of the impulse (20) (fig. 27).¹⁸

¹⁷ It has been suggested that functionally specialized pathways within the atrial septum connect the S.A. node to the A.V. node (20, 22, 23b). It has also been stated that all fibers going to the A.V. node unite in one point between coronary sinus and fossa ovalis (22).

¹⁸ According to Lewis the speed of transmission of the impulse is as follows:

Purkinje fibers	mm / 4000
Atrial muscle	800
Ventricular muscle	400
A.V. node	200

The descending impulse is definitely delayed on reaching the a.v. node. We do not know as yet whether this is due to higher resistance or to the relay of the impulse to a new center (21). Further progress of the stimulus takes place with great speed in the bundle of His and its branches. As a result the endocardial surfaces of the septum are excited first, then the papillary muscles. Within 0.04 sec after the stimulus has left the a.v. node, the entire endocardial surface of the ventricles is reached, that of the right slightly earlier than that of the left ventricle (fig. 27).

The upper part of the interventricular septum is stimulated first, then the apex of the ventricles, later their base. Transmission from the endocardial surface to the rest of the myocardium follows fibers of the Purkinje system which penetrate almost to the epicardium (29).

Whenever the descending impulse fails to reach the different parts of the myocardium, a lower center becomes the pacemaker of the heart. Experimental and clinical evidence has revealed the automatism of the different centers, i.e. the frequency with which they are able to form stimuli. The different rates in man are as follows:

s.a. node	40 to 150 per min
a.v. node	30 to 50 per min
bundle of His	18 to 30 per min

The study of the electrocardiogram has greatly increased our knowledge of the process of excitation of the heart.

THE ELECTROCARDIOGRAM (126-131)

The human body, like that of any animal, can be considered as a volume conductor, e.g. a medium which permits the conduction of electricity in all three dimensions. Electrical currents generated in any point can reach therefore any other point of the body. Mention should be made, however, of the theory which admits that the resistance of different tissues of the body to transmission of cardiac currents varies consider-

ably, so that the peripheral ICG is influenced only by favorable spots of the heart (28)

Bioelectrical phenomena are similar in all living tissues and are easily studied in unicellular organisms. In any living cell at rest a difference of potential exists between the inside of the cell and the external surface. *The inside of the cell is negative the outside positive.* The electrical charges on the two sides of the membrane are equal in number and opposite in sign forming doublets or dipoles. The membrane is said to be *polarized* and impermeable so that no flow of current takes place.

When the cell is excited and becomes active a sudden decrease in the electrical resistance of the membrane takes place; the negative ions flow outwards and the difference of potential between the inside and the outside decreases. The cell previously polarized becomes *depolarized* by effect of the excitation and its outside becomes negative with respect to the surrounding cells (fig 28). Usually stimulation causes a local depolarization then since the positive external surface is connected with the nega-

tive internal surface by means of the depolarized area an electric current is formed. This current excites and depolarizes in turn the adjoining regions so that a *wave of excitation and depolarization* is gradually propagated. During the spreading of the excitation the positive ions precede the negative.

Immediately following the depolarization of the cell (and during contraction if this is a muscle cell) the process of *repolarization* starts; it results in the restitution of the positive and negative charges to their respective positions along the surface of the membrane. This phenomenon is based on physico-chemical processes of a reparative nature. Repolarization of an isolated cell usually starts in those areas where depolarization first began (fig 28).

The fundamental nature of the processes of excitation and conduction in the unicellular element is similar to that of equivalent phenomena taking place in nerve fibers or muscle cells. It has been said that in the myocardium impulses are conducted more rapidly in a longitudinal than in a transverse direction. However the syncytial nature o-

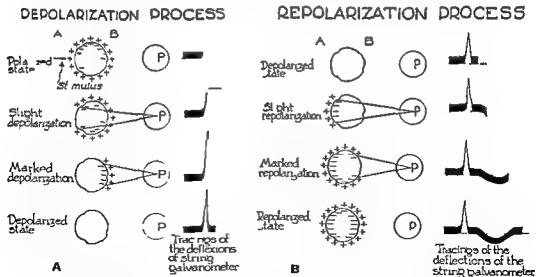


FIG. 28 The processes of depolarization (a) and repolarization (b) in a unicellular organism and the deflections recorded by the galvanometer (slightly modified from Burch and Winsor. Courtesy of the authors and Lea C. Febiger.)

the heart muscle insures conduction in all directions

The wave of depolarization reaches first the subendocardial muscle layers then spreads toward the epicardium. The balance of electrical forces is always such that the endocardial surface of the heart is relatively negative in comparison to the epicardial surface

A diphasic action current is observed under the following conditions: if we have a cell or a round shaped organ and we stimulate one point depolarization starts in a small superficial area gradually that area becomes larger and larger and the change of potential (positive potential) increases up to a maximum which is reached when about one half of the cell or organ is depolarized while the other half is still polarized as further conduction takes place the tracing

gradually drops to the basal line. Repolarization is a slower process causing a wave in the opposite direction (negative potential) which continues until the process is completed. During repolarization the negative ions precede the positive

Cardiac repolarization starts in the subepicardial layers and from them spreads toward the endocardium. This explains the upright final wave of the electrocardiogram

Local injury or cooling of the heart muscle prevents local depolarization and causes block of the impulse. As a result a *monophasic plateau like wave* is observed reaching the level which was reached by R before the injury.¹⁹

The equivalent of an injury to the cardiac muscle is obtained by local application of potassium chloride with resulting partial depolarization the baseline shifts to a positive or negative potential (fig 29)

The ventricles form a kind of irregular shell open at the base in the region of the valves. This causes spreading of potentials which are different according to the area facing the heart and which are revealed by the electrocardiogram (page 124)

The electrocardiogram is a composite curve in which various accidents or waves have definite positions. These waves have been called P, Q, R, S and T (fig 30). The first part of the ECG which is composed of the P wave and of minor accidents is called the *atrial complex* because it bears a definite relationship to the activity of the atria (fig 31). The second part of the ECG, which is composed of the more constant positive waves R and T and of the possible negative waves Q and S is called the *ventricular complex* because it is connected with the activity of the ventricles. More exact details of nomenclature, technical details and reading of ECGs will be given later (page 124)

¹⁹ The difference in potential brought about by pinching the heart muscle, cooling its surface, reducing the blood supply, or applying KCl has been termed the *current of injury*

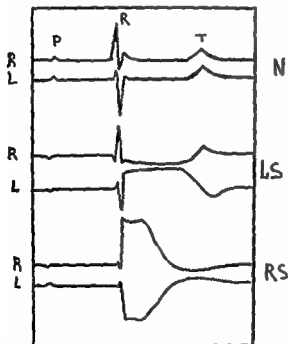


FIG. 29 The electrocardiogram of the frog after a lesion of one side of the heart. N, right (R) and left (L) chest leads before the experiment. LS, same tracings after application of KCl solution to the left side of the heart. RS, same tracing after application of KCl solution to the right side of the ventricle. (From H. Kisch, *Exper. Med. & Surg.* Courtesy of the author.)

Atrial complex. The excitation of the sinoatrial node is not recorded in clinical tracings but may be recorded by means of an intra-atrial electrode (121, 122). As we have no way of detecting it otherwise, we may assume that it precedes the beginning of the P wave by a small fraction of a second (0.01 sec?). The P wave is the result of the depolarization of both atria. It is a blunt round deflection lasting from 0.05 to 0.10 sec in normal individual. *Inactivation of the atria* is usually not revealed by the ECG. Cases with long delay (or block) of the ventricular contraction may show, however, a small dip (called the atrial J wave or T_a) which is due to repolarization of the atrial myocardium.

Atrioventricular interval. The P wave is normally followed by a period of apparent inactivity during which the electrocardiogram reveals no deflection. The sinoatrial impulse which started its descending course at the beginning of the P wave and has reached the AV node during that wave is now performing the following functions not revealed by the ECG: a) activating the AV node, b) spreading through the bundle of His, and c) spreading through the branches of the bundle and Purkinje fibers. For this reason, the interval between initiation of the P wave and that of the ventricular complex (so called P-P interval) represents the following phenomena: a) sino-nodal conduction, b) nodal latency, and c) nodo-

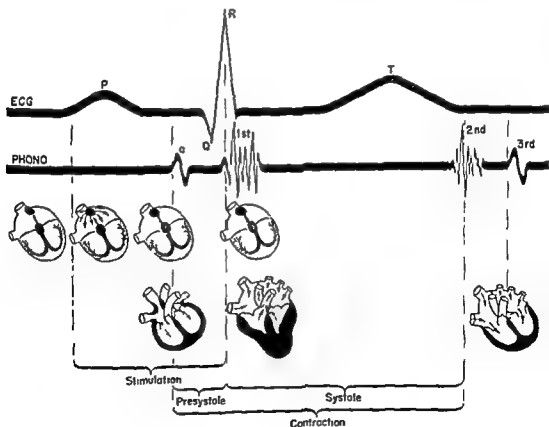


FIG. 10. The different waves of the electrocardiogram and their time relation with the phases of cardiac expansion and contraction. ECG: electrocardiogram; PHONO: sound tracing. The spread of the excitation wave is marked in red.

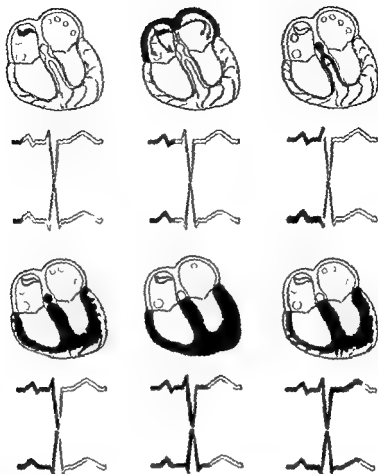


FIG. 31 The various phases of excitation compared with the electrocardiogram. Upper sketches: spreading of stimulus. Lower sketches: electrocardiogram in chest leads from the right (above) and the left side (below).

ventricular conduction. The normal duration of the P-R interval is between 0.12 and 0.20 seconds.

Ventricular complex. The ventricular complex is composed of a rapid initial deflection (QRS) a period of rest and a slow rounded final deflection (T wave). The QRS represents the period between beginning and completion of the ventricular depolarization; the T wave represents the period between beginning and completion of the ventricular repolarization.

THE MECHANICS OF CARDIAC ACTION

The phenomena of cardiac contraction and dilatation have been studied in different ways: a) by introducing manometric tubes

into the different cardiac chambers and recording the pressure changes taking place in them (31a); b) by recording the activity of different parts of the heart in open chest experiments either through direct transmission of the movements (31) or through volumetric changes (6, 7, 31, 36); c) by recording the movements of the chest wall produced by the activity of the heart (animals, human beings); d) by recording the movements of the blood flowing to and from the heart (31c) and of the air in the respiratory passages (31) by effect of cardiac action; and e) by recording the heart sounds together with other manifestations of cardiac activity (14, 39, 40). Since an extensive description of the graphic tracings currently

employed on patients will be given later (chapter 5) only brief reference to them will be made here.

The heart cycle starts with the *contraction of the atria* also called *atrial systole*. A wave of contraction follows that of excitation from above downwards (14) with a very efficient propulsive wave toward the ventricles. A backflow toward the large veins is prevented by the initial contraction of the musculature at the opening of the veins and by the venous pressure which is rather high in this phase. Atrial contraction takes place in a short phase which immediately precedes ventricular contraction and is called *presystole*. As the *atrial valves* are open throughout all stages of atrial contraction the rise in pressure within the atria is not great and the contraction is mainly revealed by movement of blood. Still there is a small increase of ventricular pressure (fig. 34). Atrial contraction is not indispensable because the greatest part of ventricular filling occurs in early diastole. However it completes ventricular filling and contributes to the normal function of the *atrial valves*. In rapid heart action and in mitral stenosis atrial contraction may acquire a much greater importance.

Initiation of ventricular contraction in

creases the pressure in the ventricles and *atrioventricular valves* (tricuspid valves in the right heart mitral valve in the left heart). Immediately afterwards the *contraction of the papillary muscles* prevents an eversion of these valves and permits a further rise of pressure until the pressure existing in the aorta and in the pulmonary artery respectively, is equalized and then exceeded. In this short period the ventricular contraction builds up pressure without causing motion of blood. This short phase is called the *period of tension* or the *period of isometric contraction* because the muscle fibers of the ventricles contract steadily but without any shortening.

As soon as the ventricular pressure exceeds that of the respective artery the *semilunar valves open* and the outflow starts. During this *period of outflow or ejection* the fibrous septum which supports the *atrial valves* is lowered by the contraction of the ventricles and a remarkable increase in size of the atria takes place causing suction of blood from the veins (fig. 32). From beginning to end the ventricular pressure maintains a steady course which is revealed by a kind of *plateau* in the intraventricular tracings.

Despite their apparently delicate struc-

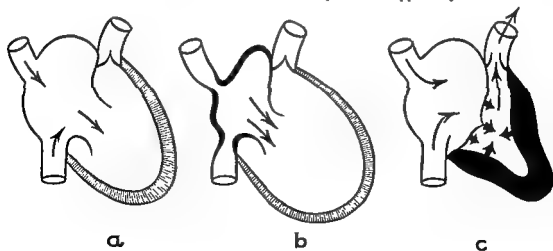


FIG. 32 The muscular events of the heart a mid diastole b presystole c systole. The atrioventricular junction is lowered by the ventricular contraction creating an aspiration in the venoatrial reservoir.

ture the flaps of the *a v* valves have considerable strength and resistance. When closed they do not merely touch but form a surface contact without folds. Closure is started by the eddy currents (37) and increased by the ventricular contraction which immediately follows. Eversion is prevented by the *chordae tendineae* held by the *papillary muscles*. The fact that the musculature of the septum is the first to contract together with the papillary muscles insures a timely closure of the valves. The termination of atrial contraction contributes to the closure of the *a v* valves because the eddy currents set up by the flow through the orifices and a reversal of the gradient of pressure bring the leaflets into position. This is shown by the temporary and periodic insufficiency which frequently develops in cases with incomplete *a v* block. In the event of delayed *a v* conduction there may be a double closure of the *a v* valves the first at the end of atrial contraction the second at the beginning of ventricular systole.

The *semilunar valves* of the aorta and pulmonary artery resemble pockets attached to the wall of the vessel. The blood contained in the pockets keeps the valves away from the wall. Both the reversal of the gradient of pressure created by the sudden cessation of outflow and the eddy currents determine closure of these valves at the end

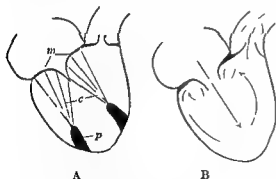


FIG 33 The mechanism of the cardiac valves
A The action of the chordae tendineae on the mitral valve B The importance of turbulent flow and eddy currents in closing the cardiac valves
(From Wiggers *Physiology in Health and Disease* Courtesy of the author and Lea & Febiger)

of ventricular systole. Firm attachment of the valves muscular support from the ventricular base and lateral apposition prevent any possibility of eversion in spite of the lack of chordae tendineae (38).

Each ventricle may be visualized as a pump which keeps the stream circulating in one direction because of the existence of valves.

During *ventricular contraction* all diameters of the heart decrease the base is pulled downward the large vessels are stretched but the apex does not move upward. The spiral arrangement of the muscular bundles of the ventricles makes their contraction very efficient so that the blood is virtually wrung out. It also causes the heart to rotate to the right pressing the apex more firmly against the chest wall. This together with the increased firmness of the ventricular mass will cause the apex beat.

At the end of ventricular systole ventricular pressure drops to zero. Following an extremely brief interval of latence (so-called *protodiastole*) the semilunar valves of the aorta and pulmonary artery close. A short time interval separates this phase from the subsequent opening of the *a v* valves the *isometric relaxation period*. Ventricular filling starts after the end of this period e.g. following the opening of the *a v* valves.

The *interventricular septum* seems to have an important dynamic role (160) and a large part of right ventricular contraction is probably due to this structure.

Filling of the ventricles has the following features:

a) An *initial phase of rapid filling (early diastole)*. This is caused by the difference in pressure between an overfilled atrium and an empty ventricle. Studies showing an active ventricular diastole (36) in this phase have not been supported by later evidence. At this time the entire venoatrial reservoir experiences a drop in pressure due to acceleration of the stream upon the opening of the atrioventricular valves.

b) 1 *phase of slow filling (mid diastole)*. The gradual filling of the ventricles slows

TABLE 4

HEART SOUNDS	VENTRICULAR ACTION	VALVULAR ACTION	HEART SOUNDS
Diastole	Auricles contract ventricles dilate		Fourth (auricular)
Systole			
Tension (isometric contraction)	Ventricles contract	a v valves close semilunar valves open	First
Ejection	Ventricles contract auricles dilate markedly		
Diastole			
Protodiastole		Semilunar valves close a v valves open	Second
Isometric relaxation			
Early diastole	Ventricles dilate quickly while the auricles empty		Third
Mid diastole or slow diastole	Auricles and ventricles fill up slowly		
Late diastole or pre-systole	Auricles contract ventricles dilate		Fourth (auricular)

down the inflow and a gradual pressure rise takes place in the venoatrial reservoir

c) A late phase of rapid filling (presystole) caused by the atrial contraction which completes ventricular filling. The veins and the atria show a sudden increase in pressure as soon as the atrial contraction is completed the ventricles start contracting because the descending stimulus has already reached the ventricular myocardium.

The following time intervals in seconds may be considered typical of a normal heart with a rate of 68

Ventricular systole	
tension	0.06
maximal ejection	0.12
reduced ejection	0.16
	0.34

Ventricular diastole	
protodiastole	0.04
isometric relaxation	0.07
rapid filling	0.10
slow filling	0.20
atrial dynamics	
dynamic interval	0.05
atrial contraction	0.06
	0.52

The Heart Sounds

Auscultation of the normal heart reveals two sounds (or tones) occasionally three. Recording of the heart sounds by means of phonocardiography (page 88) often reveals four sounds (fig. 34).

The first sound takes place at the beginning of ventricular systole and lasts through the tension period and the beginning of the ejection period. The second sound is shorter, it takes place at the end of systole and during the isometric relaxation period. The name *systolic sounds* has been suggested by the author (146) for these two constantly heard sounds. The other two less frequently heard sounds take place during diastole. The name *diastolic sounds* has been suggested for them (146).

Time Relationship of the Heart Sounds

The following dynamic phenomena take place at the time of the heart sounds

a) Systolic sounds

1st sound

Initiation of ventricular systole
closing of the a v valves opening of the semilunar valves

2nd sound

End of ventricular systole closing of the semilunar valves opening of the *a v* valves

*b) Diastolic sounds**3rd sound*

Rapid passive filling of the ventricles

4th sound

Rapid active filling of the ventricles due to atrial contraction

First sound complex It has been proven (147) that the two main vibrations of the first sound complex coincide with those two waves of the cardiogram and of the tracing of intraventricular pressure which are caused by two valvular events (closure of the *a v* valves and opening of the semilunar valves) It has also been shown that the muscular vibrations of the empty heart are extremely faint and barely appreciable (147)

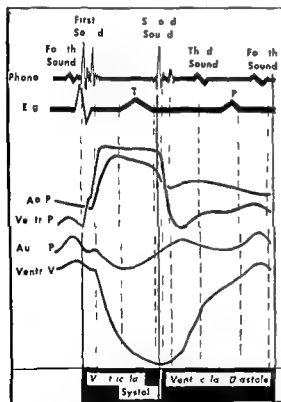


FIG 31 Atrial ventricular and aortic pressures Phonograph sound tracing Ecg electrocardiogram Ao P aortic pressure Ventr P ventricular pressure Atr P atrial pressure Ventr V ventricular volume

However the first sound is the result of both muscular and valvular factors Sudden changes in muscular tension activate first the *a v* valves and then the semilunar valves This rapid succession causes a double vibration of the cardiac wall which is further transmitted to the chest wall including high and low frequency components Although simultaneous with the action of the valves these vibrations are likely to arise in both the valvular and the muscular structures as a response to rapid changes in tension and pressure In other words the first sound is the audible expression of that complex movement of the heart which is also revealed by the first part of the apical thrust

Second sound complex The second sound complex is caused mainly by the closing of the semilunar valve and the resulting vibrations of the heart and the chest wall However vibrations of vascular origin (40-41) and even the opening of the *a v* valves (148) contribute to its formation at least in certain cases

Third sound This sound arises in the ventricular wall as the result of the vibrations caused by the onrush of blood at the moment of rapid passive filling of the ventricles (40-41) The third sound has been attributed to valvular vibrations (a theory which now has only historical interest) or to the apical impact on the chest wall this however may be only a concurrent factor (42)

Fourth sound This sound as clinically recorded arises in the ventricular wall and is caused by the blood rushing into the ventricular chambers because of atrial contraction (40) Earlier vibrations can be attributed to the atrial contraction *per se* but can be recorded only from the esophagus

Fifth sound This sound may appear from 0.08 to 0.16 sec after the third sound and has been attributed to an elastic rebound of the ventricular wall which would set up vibrations in the myocardium and possibly in the cardiac valves (161) However it is possible that this sound merely represents a splitting of the third sound (146)

Further data will be given on page 90

CARDIAC OUTPUT AND RESIDUAL BLOOD

The thoracic and abdominal large veins represent together with the right atrium a *systemic venous reservoir* which contains a large volume of blood under low pressure

The amount of blood ejected into the aorta during each ventricular contraction is called *stroke volume* or *systolic discharge*. It averages between 70 and 80 cc. A similar amount of blood is removed from the systemic reservoir with only 3 to 5 mm. changes in the right atrial pressure.

The average volume of the right ventricle is probably around 50 cc. at the end of systole and around 130 cc. at the end of diastole (152). This means that in the average subject 50 cc. of *residual blood* are left within the right ventricle in normal conditions.²⁰

The pulmonary veins and the left atrium represent a *pulmonary venous reservoir* which is integrated by that of the lungs (page 54). This reservoir is less distensible than the systemic and its pressure changes are wider.

The left ventricle contains about 50 cc. at the end of systole and about 130 at the end of diastole. This means again that 50 cc. of *residual blood* are left within the ventricle at the end of systole. According to Nylin and coworkers (136, 149, 150) from 50 to 71 per cent of the total heart volume during life is represented by residual blood.

The normal volume of the living heart is about 700 cc. 300 cc. represent the volume of the heart muscle. If the stroke volume is 140 cc. (70 cc. from each ventricle) the *residual blood in the heart at the end of systole will be 260 cc.* 100 cc. seem to be left within the two ventricles while the rest is within the atria.

Multiplication of systolic discharge by

the heart rate per minute gives the *minute volume* or *cardiac output*.

In normal conditions the systolic discharge of each ventricle is the same, therefore the flow of blood into the aorta and pulmonary artery is the same. However, small temporary differences may occur; the excess of blood discharged by one ventricle is then absorbed temporarily by the vessels of the systemic or pulmonary systems while a certain amount may be retained in one half of the heart as residual blood.

It is apparent that the heart may increase its output in one of the three following ways:

a) By increasing the systolic discharge and maintaining a constant rate.

b) By accelerating the rate per minute and maintaining a constant systolic discharge.

c) Through reflex changes of ventricular contraction which are independent of right atrial changes. These are made possible by the existence of residual blood within the heart and by the pulmonary reservoir and are frequently correlated with the effect of epinephrine (153, 155).

Cardiac output can be determined on the basis of oxygen consumption if we know how much oxygen is consumed by the tissues per minute and how much oxygen a definite volume of blood (100 cc.) can supply to the tissues. In order to calculate cardiac output in this way, it is necessary to measure the content of oxygen of both the arterial and the venous blood.²¹ Practical

²¹ The average amounts of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the blood of healthy young adults at rest at sea level are approximately the following:

	VEIN BLOOD	ARTERIAL BLOOD
<i>Oxygen</i>		
Volumes per cent	20	15
Saturation	100	0
<i>Carbon dioxide</i>		
Volumes per cent	45	50
Tension	40	46
<i>pH</i>	7.34	7.32

² According to other studies (156) the average residual blood of the right ventricle in man is 100 cc. or 50 cc. per square meter of body surface. This average was made between widely separated figures.

difficulties involved in obtaining the samples instigated the development of indirect methods now in use (page 155). They are based on the determination of the oxygen consumption and the carbon dioxide elimination of the tissues and are exact only if the two following conditions exist:

a) Same output from both ventricles

b) An exact and constant proportion between the gas exchange and the amount of blood circulating in the lungs

The average cardiac output in man under basal conditions² is 3.2 liters per square meter of body surface in 1 minute. It is even more exactly proportional to body weight being about 76 cc per kilo. An average man has a cardiac output of 7.6 liters

4 and 5 per cent of body weight and the hematocrit values for venous blood are 40 to 50 per cent (162).

Circulation time can be measured from a peripheral vein to a peripheral artery from a vein to the lungs or from the lungs to an artery. Average arm to tongue time is 14 sec, average arm to lung time is 7 sec, average lung to cheek time is 11 sec (page 156).

Blood flow has been determined for various organs with the following results (163)

ORGAN	LITERS PER MINUTE
Kidneys	1.3
Brain	0.9
Extremities	1.8
Liver	1.3-1.5

THE HEART RATE

The rate of the heart varies with its size and weight. This general law is true not only in human beings of different ages and sizes but also in animals of different species (46). The heart rate decreases regularly with the increase in weight of the heart following the growth of the organism from childhood to maturity. The length of ventricular systole and that of the P-R interval increase at the same time (46). These facts are shown in table 6.

The average pulse rate in a healthy man is between 61 and 64 if taken in basal conditions. The range may extend between 50 and 100 (121) with the lower rate for trained individuals and the higher for individuals with low excitability of the vagus nerve and high metabolic rate. Women have 7 to 8 beats per minute more than men.

BLOOD VOLUME—CIRCULATION TIME— BLOOD FLOW

The blood volume of mammals can be determined approximately on the basis of a percentage of the body weight. Table 5 gives some average data (145).

In normal man plasma volume is between

² Basal conditions are those excluding muscular activity, disease, extremes of environmental temperatures and food intake within the last 12 hours.

TABLE 6

AGE	BODY WEIGHT	HEART WEIGHT	HEART RATE PER MINUTE	P-R INTERVAL
	kg	gm	per min	sec
Newborn	3.3	23	135	0.11
1 year	9.5	42	115	0.12
2 years	12.0	50	105	0.12
5 years	16.5	65	90	0.13
10 years	26.0	103	78	0.14
15 years	44.0	163	68	0.16
20 years	60.0	220	62	0.18

TABLE 7

ANIMAL	BODY WEIGHT	OXYGEN CONSUMPTION	CARDIAC OUTPUT	1 LSK P. MI	STROKE VOLUME
	kg	/m			l
Ox	500	1740	31 600	60	540
Horse	400	1450	29 000	34	85
Man	70	2500	5 070	0	72
Sheep	50	190	3 980	75	53
Dog	10	255	1 440	100	14

Table 7 gives cardiac output and stroke volume in various species (143)

PRESSURES IN THE CHAMBERS OF THE HEART—FUNCTION OF THE ATRIA

The pressure in the right atrium is higher than intrathoracic pressure but very near to atmospheric pressure. It has been found that in an individual lying down at rest right atrial pressure varies between 0 and +8 mm Hg. Left atrial pressure is slightly higher. The right ventricle has a systolic pressure of +20 to +25 Hg the left ventricle one of 110 to 150 mm Hg. In both ventricles diastolic pressure is zero or at most may reach up to 5 mm Hg (47).

Deep inspiration affects markedly the pressures of the right heart chambers. Right atrial pressure may drop to -7 while right ventricular pressure may drop to +20/-6. On the contrary, cough may raise right atrial pressure to +60 mm Hg and right ventricular pressure to +80 (128).

The thinness and weakness of the right atrial wall and its distensibility account for the fact that the filling volume of this chamber is about twice that of the left atrium (159).

As atrial contraction lasts but a small fraction of the total cycle (about one tenth of a second) the atria remain dilated during most of ventricular diastole and during all of ventricular systole and serve as a reservoir for the blood coming to the heart. The traction developed by the ventricular muscles on the atrioventricular junction dilates the atria and causes suction on the veins during ventricular systole (fig 32)

The atrial appendages seem to have little propulsive function and serve as complementary spaces which fill the deep niches at the base of the heart during ventricular systole.

In conditions different from the normal as in the case of a very fast heart rate diastole shortens tremendously. In such a case atrial contraction includes nearly all of the entire diastole and requires a much greater importance.

Nervous and Chemical Control of Cardiac Activity

Different nerve fibers reach the heart from both the vagus nerves and the sympathetic ganglia. The vagal fibers terminate in ganglia which are situated in the wall of the atria. From these postganglionic fibers carry impulses to the S-A node and the A-V node to the atrial muscle and to the bundle of His. The right vagus supplies a greater number of fibers to the S-A node the left vagus supplies a greater number to the A-V node.

The pre-ganglionic fibers of the sympathetic system leave the thoracic section of the spinal cord and terminate in the three cervical ganglia and in the first five thoracic ganglia (fig 33 and 36). However only postganglionic fibers emerging from the ganglia T2 to T5 seem to have an accelerating effect on the heart (165). As the sympathetic fibers reach only the atrial myocardium the ventricular function is modified by the sympathetic only through the conducting system (118).

The vagus nerve has a persistent and predominant action on the heart as shown by the fast heart rate which follows removal of all autonomic nerve fibers. It slows the heart rate by acting on the pacemaker of the heart thus producing depression of automatism. It weakens the atrial contraction (depression of contractility) and shortens the refractory period of the atria (increase of excitability) (fig 37). The amplitude and duration of the action currents recorded

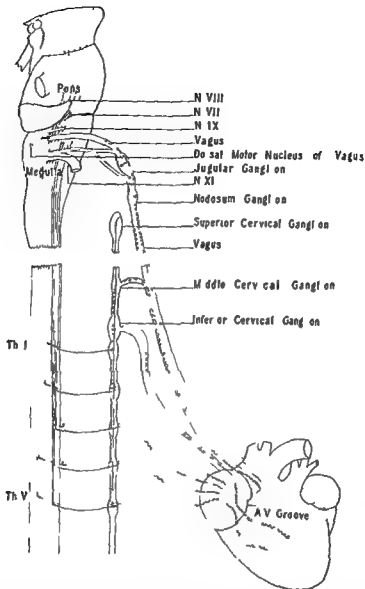


FIG. 3. Schematic diagram of the innervation of the mammalian heart. (From *Physiology in Medicine*, Medical College of Philadelphia and C. V. Mosby Co.)

The red continuous lines represent sympathetic (acceleratory) parasympathetic fibers which end at cells in the inferior, middle and superior cervical ganglia and also in the ganglia of the upper thoracic chain. The continuous line running through the chest represents a series of parasympathetic fibers connecting the various cells. The dotted black lines indicate the sympathetic postganglionic distribution to the heart. The green continuous lines represent vagal parasympathetic fibers and the dotted black lines indicate sensory fibers coursing in the vagus to the medulla (vagus nerve and vagal afferents from the heart chambers) and in the sympathetic strands to the dorsal spinal roots (thoracic I to V). The latter mediate the afferent fibers of the vagus arise from cells of the T-shaped unipolar type situated in both the nodose and jugular ganglia.

from the atrial muscle is severely reduced by stimulation of the vagus.

The vagus carries the impulses through the conducting system (depression of con-

ductivity). The ventricles are affected indirectly by the increased length of diastole which increases their filling and gives a longer interval during which premature

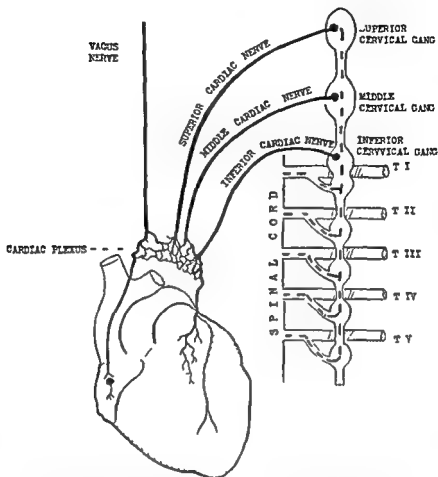


FIG 36 Diagram of the cardiac nerves. Broken lines preganglionic sympathetic fibers (From Best and Taylor *The Physiological Basis of Medical Practice* The Williams & Wilkins Co.)

beats may occur. However, there is some evidence of direct influence of the vagus on the ventricles (105).

The response to vagal stimulation varies according to the existing rate of the atria. If there is rapid normal or slow atrial rate, vagus stimulation slows down that rate. On the contrary, if the atria contract *very rapidly* (400 or more contractions per second), vagal stimulation further increases the rate of discharges and causes atrial fibrillation (164).

The normal heart can be stopped temporarily by excessive vagus stimulation (page 86). However, this pause is not permanent because automatic ventricular contractions soon begin. Stimulation of the right vagus

may cause temporary arrest of the entire heart (action on the pacemaker). Stimulation of the left vagus may cause temporary arrest of the ventricles by blocking the stimuli in the conducting system (action on the a.v. node and on the bundle of His).

The action of the *accelerans* (sympathetic fibers) is less marked. Stimulation of the nerves causes *increased heart rate* (stimulation of automatism) and *increased force of contraction of both atria and ventricles* (stimulation of contractility). The efficiency of the heart muscle increases, probably through decrease of the pH.

Both the actions of the cardiac vagi and the cardiac sympathetic nerves result from the liberation of chemical substances as

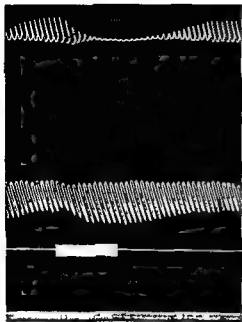


FIG. 37 Action of the vagus on the turtle's heart. Electrical stimulation of the right vagus depresses the contractility of the atrium without impairing the conductivity. A V block takes place on further increasing the intensity of the current. Upper tracing, atrial contractions. Lower tracing, ventricular contractions.

shown by *Loewi* in 1921 (48). Coupling two isolated frog hearts so that perfusion fluid of the first would circulate in the second showed that stimulation of the cardiac nerves of the first heart was followed by similar effects in the second (fig. 38). This result was called "humoral transmission of the nerve effect." Since then it has been demonstrated and is universally accepted that all autonomic and skeletal nerves act by liberating chemical substances. The cardiac vagus acts by liberating *acetylcholine*; the cardiac sympathetic acts by liberating *sympathin* (48-49); an epinephrine like (or *adrenine* like) substance.² *Acetylcholine*

²² It was customary to say that epinephrine and *acetylcholine* act like the sympathetic and the vagus respectively. Demonstration of the humoral nature of nerve action makes it more accurate to say that *sympathetic and vagus fibers act like epinephrine and acetylcholine respectively*.

The term *adrenine* is synonymous with epinephrine and refers to the product of the adrenal

is promptly inactivated by a *cholinesterase* present in the blood and therefore has only a local action at the site of production. On the contrary *sympathin* diffuses into the blood stream and is carried to all parts of the body and has prolonged effects which are added to those of epinephrine (49).

Epinephrine (adrenine) discharged into the blood stream has powerful effects on the heart. Some of them are indirect being due to peripheral effects; others are due either to direct action on the heart or to a synergistic effect with the locally liberated *sympathin* (49). How *acetylcholine* acts is still unknown but the most likely explanation is that it acts by modifying the electrical behavior of the cell membrane (121).

THE SENSORY NERVES OF THE HEART

Habitual stimuli applied to the myocardium do not cause pain (50). On the other hand lesions of the coronary system are a frequent cause of pain.

Animal experimentation and surgical interventions in man demonstrate that *centripetal stimuli originated in the myocardium and coronary vessels follow sympathetic fibers* (118). They reach the central nervous system by way of two *cardiac nerves* traversing the middle cervical and the inferior cervical ganglion. The inferior cervical ganglion is often fused with the first thoracic and has the name of *stellate ganglion* (fig. 35).

Centripetal stimuli coming from the heart proceed along the *white rami communicantes* and the *posterior roots of the thoracic section of the spinal cord* (roots 1 to 5) (see also page 431).

A second path includes the fibers of the *depressor nerve* which predominantly supply the endocardium (118).

Functions of the Pericardium

The functions of the pericardium have been widely discussed and even completely denied. The *pericardial sac* supports the

medulla. The term *adrenalin* refers to the commercial preparations.

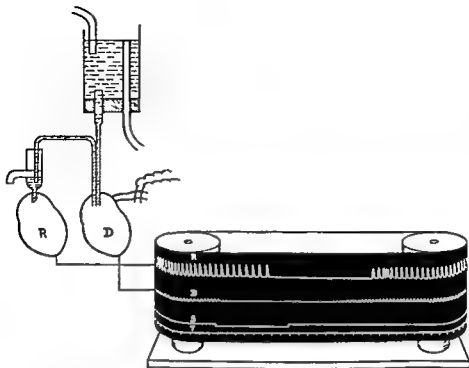


FIG. 38. Loewi's classic experiment demonstrating the humoral transmission of nerve action. Electrical stimulation (S) of the vagus of the heart D first slows heart D and then heart P. The latter is slowed by acetylcholine which was produced by nerve action and passed from one heart to the other.

heart. Having a certain tension due to its connection with other structures it partly determines the shape of the heart (fig. 19). The tension of the pericardium limits the possible distention of the heart. Chemoreceptors have been found in the pericardium (118). Other possible functions will be discussed later (page 60).

Functions of the Arteries

The functions of the arteries cannot be properly evaluated without a full understanding of the general properties of smooth muscles.

Smooth muscles are usually arranged in sheets or layers around hollow organs. The typical contraction of a smooth muscle is sluggish but there is great difference between the smooth muscles of various organs of the body (51).

Smooth muscles including excised arteries exhibit *rhythmic contractions*. These contractions are usually slow and somewhat

irregular but may on the contrary develop more rapidly especially as a reaction to sudden distention. One of the most typical features of smooth muscle is its peculiar tendency to exhibit a sustained persistent contraction called *tonus*. Hollow organs are usually able to adapt themselves to the volume of their content. It has been proven that the pressure of a full organ (stomach, bladder) may be the same when a different amount of fluid is contained in it. Peristaltic contractions do not seem to be essentially influenced by different lengths of the fibers. Nevertheless an increase in tonus will alter the distensibility of an organ whenever a sudden change of pressure is developed in its cavity.

Smooth muscles respond to a great variety of stimuli. *Distention* is one of the most effective especially if rapid (11).

The arterial wall has the unique position of containing a fluid under a very high pressure. As the arterial wall is rhythmically

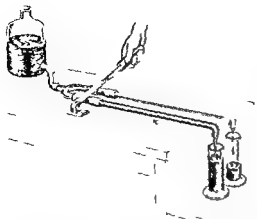


FIG. 39 *Marey's experiment on the action of elasticity of the arteries.* Mechanical interruption of the flow gives different effects in different tubes: poorer flow and interrupted stream in the rigid tube; more abundant flow and continuous stream in the elastic tube.

dilated by each pulse wave it is apparent that the vascular tonus should not be considered as acting like a stopcock on the peripheral vessels. When tonus increases the arteries are still able to dilate at the passage of the pulse wave, but the amplitude of the dilatation will be lessened. Therefore a moderate vasoconstriction decreases the systolic dilatation and the following elastic reaction of the peripheral arteries so that these become more similar to rigid tubes. Only in the extreme degrees of vascular contraction, as with the vascular spasms of minute arterial vessels caused by local irritation, does the artery become a rigid tube.

If the smooth fibers of the arterial wall are stretched by the passage of the blood wave and recoil immediately afterwards it is possible that this recoil is not a purely passive phenomenon. However, the rapidity of the recoil is theoretically against participation of smooth fibers.

Two types of experiments seemed to prove the activity of the arterial wall: a) the recording of potentials from large or medium arteries, timed with the propagation of the pulse and not caused by electrical artifacts (57, 58), and b) the demonstration that

diameter changes are not exactly parallel to pressure changes in normal conditions (60).

The following properties should be admitted:

a) An elastic reaction to the dilatation caused by the pulse wave (*retractility*). This property is maximal in the large arteries so that the aorta may be considered as an elastic reservoir. A muscular reaction to the dilatation caused by the pulse wave (*contractility*) is already said under discussion.

b) A persistent condition called *tonus* maximal in the small arteries. The greater the tonus, the lesser the retractility.

The part played by the elasticity and by the contractility of the arteries is shown by two experiments. The first was devised by Marey and is based on a model in which an elastic tube carries more fluid than a rigid one (fig. 39). The second is devised by the author (55, 56) and is based on a frog preparation not including the heart. A rhythmically interrupted flow leads to greater output. The difference between the output during constant flow and that during interrupted flow is not increased by morphine but is tremendously increased by adrenalin. This was interpreted as indicating that the latter also stimulates rhythmic smooth muscle reaction while the former causes only a steady increase of tonus.

Two different types of disturbance of the arterial function have been demonstrated in cold-blooded animals (60). The first is *tonic rigidity* which occurs whenever the artery is submitted to local irritation or injury and which prevents dilatation of the vessel at the passage of the pulse wave. The second is *arterial paralysis* which occurs under the action of certain drugs or after CNS injury; it causes a condition of the arterial wall which prevents vasomotor constriction.

It has been proven that in normal small arteries slow passive distention is effectively compensated by reactive changes of tonus (191).

Regulation of Circulation and Vasomotor Control

The central nervous system regulates the circulation through a) changes of cardiac output b) changes of arterial resistance and c) changes of venous return. Cardiac output may vary independently of venous return though only for a limited period (utilization of residual blood page 43). Venous return may vary independently of arterial constriction through variations of the capacity of blood reservoirs (page 59) and modifications of venous tonus. The CNS regulates blood pressure through immediate reaction to stimuli of the numerous pressure receptors (page 52) and slower adjustments to other stimuli. Blood pressure is maintained remarkably constant in the presence of frequent changes of cardiac output. This is due to a *regulating center* located in the hypothalamus.

It is possible that vasomotor impulses are mediated by a chemical agent secreted in the arterial wall (enzyme?) which acting on the hypertensinogen of the plasma causes formation of a hypertensive substance (176). If this is confirmed secretion of *renin* by the kidney (page 59) would be but a particular case of a widespread phenomenon of the entire vascular system.

The existence of *vasomotor nerves* was demonstrated by *Claude Bernard* in 1852 (61). The neuro-humoral theory which has been gradually developed in the wake of *Loewi's* studies (48-49) has altered our views on vasomotor innervation. Demonstration that a sympathetic nerve fiber may act through liberation of acetylcholine led to classification of the fibers on a purely functional basis into *adrenergic* and *cholinergic* (62). A fiber which acts by secreting sympathin (epinephrine like action) is said to be *adrenergic*; a fiber which acts by secreting acetylcholine (acetylcholine action) is called *cholinergic*.

The dilatation and constriction of the peripheral arteries is controlled by two main

centers on the floor of the 4th ventricle of the medulla the *vasodilator* and *vasoconstrictor centers*. Secondary centers are present in the spinal cord higher centers in the hypothalamus.

The normal condition of the arteries is that of a balance between nervous impulses namely between *constrictor* and *dilator tonus*. The former predominates as shown by the fact that cutting of the splanchnic nerves doubles the blood flow in the viscera.

The vasomotor tonus is maintained a) by centripetal stimuli coming from various organs or nerve centers b) by the action of chemicals circulating in the blood stream and c) by the stretching effect of arterial blood pressure (168).

Several *endocrine glands* take part in the regulation of the circulation. They are a) the *thyroid* b) the *parathyroids* c) the *posterior pituitary* and d) the *pancreas* (indirectly).

It has been proven that the interplay between *adrenalin* and *nor adrenalin* is important in the control of heart rate and peripheral resistance that several steroids (including those of the adrenal cortex) have a role in the regulation of blood pressure and blood volume and that the liver exerts an important effect on circulation revealed by a higher and more steady arterial pressure (173) an effect which seems connected with the responsiveness of the cardiovascular system to various vasoactive substances (179).

The importance of the vasomotor system lies in the fact that it is more a *blood distributing* than a pressure regulating system. The nervous discharges may be directed not only towards particular areas of the body but also towards arteries of a certain caliber in preference to others.

Multiple *cutaneous cerebral reflexes* occur whenever the skin is stimulated by heat or cold and they seem to have a segmental distribution.

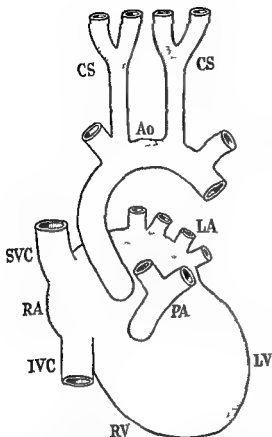


FIG. 40 Location of the specific receptors in the heart and large vessels. In blue, the venopressor system. In red, the arteriopressor system. CS, carotid sinus; IVC, inferior vena cava; SVC, superior vena cava; Ao, aortic arch; PA, pulmonary artery; RV, right ventricle; LV, left ventricle; RA, right atrium; LA, left atrium.

Pressoreceptors and Cardiovascular Reflexes

Definite areas of the large veins of the heart and of the large arteries contain nervous receptors which are sensitive to changes in pressure, the *pressoreceptors*. Distention of the cardiac or vascular wall stimulates these receptors, causing cardiovascular reflexes of paramount importance in the maintenance of circulation. Decrease of the average distention on the other hand causes opposite reactions.

1) *System of the venae cavae and of the right atrium*. Multiple studies (63-66) led to recognition of a mechanism which adapts the heart rate and the arterial pressure to

the venous return. The sensitive receptors are located in the walls of both venae cavae near their opening into the right atrium and in the wall of the latter (fig. 40). The centripetal stimuli reach the vasomotor center and the cardioaccelerans center by means of the vagus nerve. The centrifugal fibers of the accelerans and of the vasoconstrictors complete the reflex arc. Increased venous pressure causes an increase of heart rate (*Bainbridge reflex*, ref. 63a) and blood pressure (64) and a faster respiration (66). However, stretching of the inferior vena cava and of the right atrium may also cause bradycardia, lowering of blood pressure and respiratory inhibition (175-177). The venopressor reflex acting against the depressor reflexes of the large arteries permits the maintenance of a high blood pressure during physical exertion. A different venopressor reflex takes place when venous pressure drops to a very low level (64); it has a particular importance after a severe hemorrhage in preventing a vascular collapse.

In addition to the regulation of arterial pressure in the greater circulation, the cardiovascular reflexes also regulate the pressure in the lesser circulation and in the venous system (67).

2) *System of the aortic arch, of the carotid sinus, and of the cerebral vessels*. This system has a fundamental importance in regulating the arterial pressure. The specific receptors are located in the aortic arch and at the bifurcation of the common carotid arteries (67-68) (fig. 40). Similar receptors have been found in the cerebral vessels (169). Others found in the subclavian arteries (67) and the abdominal aorta (68) have a secondary role.

Near the pressoreceptors are other receptors sensitive to chemical changes of the blood, called *chemoreceptors*. These are located in the aortic body in the carotid bodies and in the cerebral vessels (170).

* The carotid body is a glandular structure containing many sinusoidal vessels located near the carotid sinus bilaterally. The aortic body is a similar structure located in the aortic arch.

The reflex arc based on the pressoreceptors has the following centripetal fibers:

a) For the aortic receptors the fibers of the *depressor nerve* or *nerve of Cyon* (71) which join the *vagus* in man.

b) For the carotid receptors the fibers of the *nerve of Hering* (72) which soon join the *glossopharyngeal nerve*. A thin filament goes from the nerve of Hering to the superior cervical ganglion of the *sympathetic* and another joins the *vagus*. These centripetal fibers reach the *vasomotor center* and the *cardio inhibitor center* in the medulla. The centrifugal part of the reflex is based upon the *vagus* for the heart (63) upon the *sympathetic* for the peripheral arteries (73-74).

Increased pressure in the large arteries is followed by a decrease in heart rate (bradycardia) and a drop in blood pressure (hypotension) (fig. 41). Decreased pressure in the large arteries is followed by increased heart rate (tachycardia) and increased blood pressure (hypertension).

It has been shown that the state of contraction of the arteries where the pressoreceptors are located is important in the regulation of blood pressure. The greater the resistance to stretch the less severe is the reflex. Thus the amount of adrenaline and noradrenaline contained in the blood regulates to some extent the arterial pressure (106).

It has been demonstrated that *action currents* are always present in the carotid nerves (70) and that they increase in intensity during cardiac systole even when blood pressure is normal. When blood pressure is high these currents increase in frequency and intensity; they are present only during systole when blood pressure is low.

The *cardiac reflex* is more sudden than the *vasomotor reflex* but is of shorter duration. The *vagus nerve* accounts for most of the reflex at the beginning while sympathetic inhibition maintains cardiac slowing later (141). If the slowing of the heart is

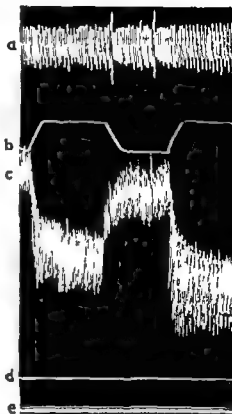


FIG. 41. Reflex changes of the respiration and blood pressure caused by prolonged distention of the carotid sinus in the dog. a: respiration; b: pressure in the sinus (balloon); c: pressure in the femoral artery; d: zero line of arterial pressure; e: time in seconds.

too prolonged *atrial* or *ventricular escapes* arise and maintain circulation until sinus rhythm is resumed. The vagal response to carotid sinus distention occurs *mainly on the side of the stimulation* but there is also a small contralateral reaction. The vasomotor response on the other hand has a large *crossed component* (141).

The connection of the vasomotor center with the adrenal glands may determine a prolonged hypertensive reaction by means of epinephrine secretion whenever blood pressure drops too much in the aorta and the carotid arteries.

The changes of heart rate and blood pressure which take place in normal people in changing from recumbent to erect position

and vice versa are deeply influenced by carotid sinus reflexes

External compression of the carotid sinus in man causes a sudden drop in blood pressure through direct mechanical stimulation of the receptors. On the contrary compression of the common carotid artery causes an increase in blood pressure by decreasing the distention of the carotid sinus

Carotid and aortic impulses may change the respiratory rate (fig. 41) if sufficiently intense carotid stimuli may even reach the cerebral cortex (irradiation of reflexes) (76)

The *aortic body* and the *carotid bodies* are sensitive to changes in the concentration of CO_2 and O_2 and to changes of the pH of the blood. Reflexes starting from these organs may change the heart rate the blood pressure level and the respiratory rate. In particular *lack of oxygen causes a reflex vasoconstriction*. Normal regulation in man is not influenced by the carotid bodies (7). Abnormal and pathological conditions on the other hand are followed by reflex actions involving these bodies. Both hormones and drugs may act on them

3) *System of the pulmonary artery and veins and of the left atrium*. Specific receptors sensitive to pressure changes are present in the pulmonary artery and veins and in the wall of the left atrium (78-80-177). Distention of walls of these chambers causes bradycardia and a drop of pressure both in the lesser and the greater circulation. The centripetal path of the reflex is the vagus the centrifugal goes along both sympathetic and vagus

4) *System of the ventricles and of the coronaries*. The walls of both cardiac ventricles (mainly those of the left) and the coronary vessel are very sensitive to adequate stimuli. Distention of the cavities chemical irritation and lack of blood in the coronary vessels have been shown to be particularly effective (81-86-177) and are followed by pain and by multiple reflexes

The complex function of the e regulating

mechanisms may be summarized by admitting *two fundamental systems*, one *venocardiac* the other *cardio pulmo arterial*

Injection of certain drugs (veratridine nicotine ATP etc) into the coronary arteries of the cat or the left coronary of the dog causes apnea bradycardia and a fall of blood pressure (*von Beold Jarisch reflex* (188-189). This reflex is still obscure and does not seem to be caused by action on chemoreceptors

Marx's law originally stated that the heart rate varies in inverse proportion with the level of the blood pressure high blood pressure causing bradycardia and vice versa. This law is actually the result of cardiovascular reflexes and may be considered true within limits

Pulmonary Circulation

The blood of the right ventricle reaches the left atrium after having passed through the lungs. The amount of blood passing through the lesser circulation (lungs) should be the same as that passing through the greater circulation (all the rest of the body) in a given time. An exception to this general rule is made by the reservoir function of the pulmonary vessels (see below)

The volume of blood contained in the pulmonary vessels is modified by the relative discharge of the two sides of the heart and these are affected by dynamic changes of the systemic circulation

The *capacity* and the *extensibility* of the pulmonary vessels are such that a severe increase in blood flow may be accommodated by them with only slight changes in pressure

The *speed* of the pulse wave in the pulmonary circulation has been measured in man and found about one third of that of the greater circulation (182)

The *mean pressure* in the *pulmonary artery* is approximately 18 mm of mercury about one sixth that of aortic pressure. Figures taken from numerous studies in dogs give 40/10 mm Hg as average figures

of *systolic/diastolic pressure* with a *pulse pressure* of 30. In human beings the pressure is 25-30/10.

Pulmonary venous pressures vary between 3 and 12 mm Hg. The pressure in the capillaries of the lungs is about one sixth of that of the capillaries of the greater circulation.

In the course of normal breathing the pressures of the pulmonary artery and veins fall during inspiration and rise during expiration even when the heart rate is regular. Increased inspiratory capacity of the pulmonary bed exceeding the increased discharge of the right ventricle seems to be the cause for these periodic changes (87).

The capillaries of the lungs are surrounded by air and are practically in contact with the atmosphere. These minute vessels are very distensible and have a tremendous surface which may average 140 square meters. Their capacity may be influenced by

a) Changes of the intrathoracic pressure due to respiration

b) Changes in the output of the right ventricle due to variation of venous return and not proportional to the resistance met in the left atrium

c) Vasomotor phenomena of the pulmonary vessels

The pulmonary circulation is very adaptable to changes in volume of the circulating blood (87-87) owing to two different mechanisms

a) Opening of *reserve capillaries* usually closed

b) Existence of large *muscular veins* able to collect blood and to empty later by contraction (88)

These mechanisms enable the lung to act as a *blood reservoir* preventing noxious effects on the left heart (86-180). The lungs normally contain one fifth of the blood volume.

The question of innervation of the pulmonary arteries has been the source of discussions and numerous investigations. The relatively weak contractility of these vessels and the fact that their active contraction is

often prevented and opposed by changes of the heart function render definite conclusions difficult. Both the vagi and the sympathetic nerves seem to bring vasodilators and vasoconstrictors to the lungs (84). Pharmacological evidence seems to indicate that *adrenergic fibers dilate* and *cholinergic fibers constrict the pulmonary arteries* in the intact organism.

Constriction of the pulmonary veins demonstrated in rabbits and guinea pigs (89) is still doubtful in man.

Coronary Circulation

The circulation of the coronary arteries may be schematically divided into two parts: that of the larger vessels *running on the surface of the heart* and that of the smaller vessels *penetrating into the walls of the heart*.

Blood pressure tracings of the main coronary trunks are similar to aortic tracings. Their mean pressure varies with that of the general arterial pressure and averages about *one fifth of that of the aorta*.

The *coronary blood flow* is large averaging about 5 per cent of the total cardiac output. In the dog the right coronary artery receives about one fifth of the total coronary inflow, the left coronary artery four fifths.

The flow in the small intramural coronary arteries of the left ventricle is influenced by the following factors:

a) Mean aortic pressure

b) Aortic diastolic pressure (a large part of the flow takes place during diastole)

c) Ventricular contraction itself which opposes arterial flow (squeezing of the capillaries however accelerates venous flow)

d) Vasomotor actions

e) Pressure of the right atrium against which the coronary veins must empty

The velocity of blood flow diminishes during ventricular contraction (91) without however dropping too low (14). This is due to the fact that the rise of pressure taking place in the aorta during early systole is able to overcome the greater resistance

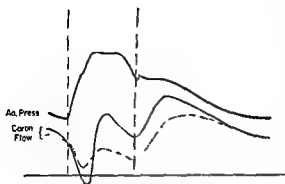


FIG. 42 The flow of blood in the left coronary artery. Double wave the higher of the two is in diastole. Upper tracing pressure in the aorta. Lower continuous tracing flow in the main coronary artery. Lower dotted tracing flow in the intramural branches. (Adapted from Wiggers.)

due to muscular contraction. Even if blood flow is greater during diastole, a substantial flow also takes place during systole (14) (fig. 42).

The coronary vessels are largely supplied with afferent and efferent fibers (118). The majority of the studies dealing with the problem of coronary innervation indicate that the sympathetic carries vasodilator fibers of adrenergic type and the vagus brings vasoconstrictor fibers of cholinergic type. Further evidence shows that stimulation of the stellate ganglia causes an increase in coronary flow independent of blood pressure changes (92). Clinical evidence confirms the existence of reflex disturbances of the coronaries especially in the presence of gastric or gall bladder lesions.

Reflexes of cardiac origin regulate the coronary flow increasing it with increased cardiac output and within physiological limits with increased cardiac rate.

Reflexes of extracardiac origin have great importance. It has been proven that distention of the stomach, esophagus, gall bladder or bile duct is followed by reduction of the coronary flow through the action of parasympathetic fibers (135). The same result follows distention of the carotid sinus.

Coronary blood flow increases with exer-

cise; this is due to increased aortic pressure, coronary vasodilation (apparently due to decreased action of the vagus) or both.

The rich innervation of the coronary vessels enables the nervous system to regulate their caliber in proportion to the work of the heart. The fact that some sensory nerve fibers supply the coronary arteries with one branch and the myofibrils with another makes possible peculiar axon reflexes (118).

The effect of heart rate on the coronary flow of the denervated heart is the following (132): at slow rates acceleration increases the flow; at average rates changes of the heart are without effect; at rapid rates acceleration of the heart decreases coronary blood flow. In spite of possible reflex regulation, a very rapid heart rate is accompanied by impairment in the coronary flow.

The coronary arteries contain an unusually large number of longitudinal and spiral muscle fibers in the media (167). Contraction of these fibers dilates the vessels. Thus sympathetic dilatation may be obtained through a different structural arrangement and not through a different functional reaction from that of other arteries.

The chemical composition of the blood deeply affects the volume of coronary flow. Anoxia increases the coronary flow with a maximal dilatation of the vessels when arterial saturation falls to 50 per cent of normal (in the intact animal). Isphyxia is followed by similar changes and it seems that the vasodilation is connected with accumulation of products of muscular metabolism owing to incomplete oxidation (adenosine, adenylic acid, adenine, etc.).

In the denervated heart coronary flow is independent of changes of cardiac output as long as heart rate and mean aortic pressure are constant. However, reflexes modify this in the innervated heart.

The decrease of coronary flow due to the muscular contraction of the heart is considerably greater in the left ventricle than

in the right. However, most of the studies dealing with intramyocardial pressure were made on denervated preparations. Compensatory reflexes oppose the paradoxical decrease of blood supply as the work of the heart becomes greater (132-133). While ventricular contraction opposes the flow of blood through the capillaries, it squeezes the blood out of them and increases the flow in the coronary sinus. It is possible that coronary sinus outflow occurs only during diastole (134).

As already stated (page 25) the coronary blood flow returns to the cardiac cavities through the coronary sinus, the superficial cardiac veins, the Thebesian veins, and the sinusoidal vessels. The major portion of the blood from the left ventricle flows through the coronary sinus while the greater part of that from the right ventricle flows through the anterior cardiac veins into the right atrium. Only a small amount of blood reaches the cavities through the other vessels in normal conditions.

The pressure changes of the coronary sinus have been studied in man (171). Apart from respiratory variations, three positive waves have been noted in the tracing: one pre-systolic due to atrial contraction, one systolic due to ventricular contraction, and the third due to increased flow in diastole.

The action of drugs on the coronary circulation is summarized in table II (132).

Hepatic and Portal Circulations

The liver receives blood not only from the hepatic artery in which the blood flows under a high pressure, but also from the portal system which carries blood that has passed through the capillaries of the gastrointestinal apparatus and of the spleen. The arterial supply of the liver (about one-fourth of the total volume of blood entering the liver) insures an adequate amount of oxygen. The pressure of the arterial vessels is lowered by resistance to a level at which it does not interfere with the flow of portal

blood into the liver. Arterial blood and portal blood meet in the peripheral part of the lobules where they enter the sinusoids. The mixed blood proceeds through the large channels to the center of the lobule where it enters the branches of the hepatic veins. It is then collected into larger and larger veins until it reaches the inferior vena cava. The average amount of blood passing through the liver has been estimated as equivalent to over one-fifth of cardiac output (100b).

It is apparent that the portal blood is in the unique position of passing through two capillary systems. Therefore, the pressure in the hepatic capillaries is very low (3-4 mm Hg). As the walls of these capillaries are permeable to plasma proteins, the effective osmotic pressure will also be about 3-4 mm Hg. Lymph is formed with great ease and contains a percentage of protein as high as that of the blood.

Complex regulatory mechanisms exist in the hepatic vessels. They were demonstrated in dogs by Mautner and Piel (89) and confirmed in human beings (93-94). Spiral or annular bands acting like sphincters exist at the junction of the hepatic veins with the cava, near the central veins within the liver, and in the sinusoids. Both the terminations of the portal veins and those of the hepatic arteries may contract and vasoconstriction of the mesenteric vessels may also occur; therefore, multiple changes may take place. It is not clear as yet whether a sluice or throttle mechanism exists in man or whether there is a diffuse contraction of the entire hepatic venous system (178).

The hepatic veins contract under the action of certain chemicals (peptone, histamine, digitalis) and relax under the action of others (epinephrine). We know little as yet about innervation of the hepatic veins. While most splanchnic arterioles are constricted by epinephrine, those of the small intestine seem to dilate (16).

TABLE 8

INCREASED CORONARY FLOW	DECREASED CORONARY FLOW	MECHANISM
Nitrites ++		Dilatation of the vessels (greater than blood pressure drop?)
Digitalis glycosides in therapeutic doses	Digitalis glycosides in toxic doses	Vasoconstriction connected with vagus stimulation?
Xanthines especially theophylline ++ and aminophylline +++		Vasodilation (greater than blood pressure drop?)
Morphine +		Due to central action?
Papaverine +++ and Abellin +++++		Direct action on smooth muscles of the coronary arteries
	Foreign proteins pituitrin pitressin angiotonin	Direct action on smooth fibers of coronary arteries
Adrenalin ephedrine		Direct dilatation of the small vessels possible constriction of large coronary arteries (in man) compensated by increased blood pressure
Thyroxin		Action probably connected with tachycardia and increased blood pressure
Acetylcholine mechohyl doryl— in small dose	Acetylcholine mechohyl doryl— in large dose	These actions may vary from one species to another and with the dose
Atropine		Through inhibition of vagal stimuli
Coramin	Nicotine	
Nembutal insulin histamin	Histamin	The results are different in the various species and may vary with the dose

It has been demonstrated that in shock the liver becomes the seat of formation of a vaso depressor material (VDM) which makes the terminal arterioles refractory to the action of epinephrine. The possibility that this substance is a normal component

of the blood and takes part in the regulation of blood pressure, has been advocated (143)

Splenic Circulation

The vascular spaces of the splenic pulp have a large capacity and may contain a

large percentage of the blood volume. We owe to *Barcroft* (95) the knowledge that the spleen is an organ of different size under varying conditions. The comparative size of animal spleen has been shown to differ under the influence of emotion, exercise, hemorrhage, asphyxia, pregnancy, and death. As both the capsule and the trabeculae of this organ contain smooth muscle, the conception of spleen contractility was soon established. However, muscle fibers are poorly distributed in the human spleen (96) and undeniable rhythmic changes of the spleen volume were attributed to variations of blood flow (97). Negative assertions (98) justify the following conservative view. There is no doubt that the volume of the spleen may vary under different conditions and a percentage of the contained blood may be mobilized; there is no question that the spleen may shrink under the effect of sympathetic stimuli or epinephrine. We do not know whether this is due to contraction of the arterial musculature or to that of other elements of the spleen.

Blood Reservoirs

We have seen that many organs of the body containing a large amount of blood may act as *blood reservoirs* or *blood depôts*. These are the lungs, the liver, and the spleen. The *large veins* all over the body possibly also the *large arteries* may act as reservoirs. The *subpapillary plexus* of the skin also constitutes a reservoir of considerable volume. Concurrent dilatation of large sections of the *capillary network* may alter the capacity of the vascular system completely and may have the function of blood depôt.

In addition to these more mechanical examples of reservoirs we should keep in mind that many organs and tissues are able to store tremendous amounts of fluid, thereby preventing great changes in the composition of the blood. Among them the liver, the peritoneal cavity, and the skin are the most important.

Experiments based on the rapid intravenous injection of physiologic salt solution amounting to even three times the blood volume have been made in dogs without impairing the life of the animals. This would not be possible if water were not removed from the blood very rapidly (99).

Renal Circulation—Renal Pressure System

The average weight of the heart approximates that of the kidneys. More than one fifth of the total blood volume (1200 cc) flows through the kidneys in 1 minute (100). This tremendous blood flow is apparently due to the high degree of development of the glomerular apparatus and to the high pressure of the renal artery.

Histological studies (101) seem to indicate the existence of specialized secretory cells in the wall of the afferent glomerular arterioles. These might be the source of a proteolytic enzyme called *renin*, which is normally present but is excreted in greater amount if abnormal local conditions of circulation occur (102).

It was thought that *anoxia* was the cause of release of renin. It seems now that the kidney contains *pressure-receptors* and that *renin* is released when blood pressure drops below 80 mm Hg in the renal arterioles (174).

Action of renin on a fraction of blood plasma leads to formation of a new substance called *angiotonin* or *hypertensine*. This is probably a polypeptide and exerts a powerful hypertensive action through direct stimulation of the smooth muscles of the peripheral arteries. Angiotonin is rapidly destroyed in normal conditions by the action of another enzyme present in the blood and in many organs called *angiotonin inhibitor* or *hypertensinase*.

This hormonal action of the kidney may be important in physiological conditions associated with low blood pressure and in the clinical syndrome of hypotension and

certainly is important in clinical hypertension

In addition to the better known renal pressor system (see above) another pressor substance has been described. This was called *vasoexcitatory material* (VEM) and potentiates the action of epinephrine on the arterioles. The possibility that this substance is definitely important in shock takes part in the normal regulation of blood pressure has been advocated (143). This substance differs from hypertensin because it has no direct action on smooth muscles and it may be produced *in vitro* in the absence of blood plasma components (143).

Branches of both the sympathetic and the vagus nerves reach the kidneys. Stimulation of one splanchnic nerve results in reduction of urine volume on the same side. If the renal nerves are previously cut, however, stimulation of one of the splanchnic nerves causes a profuse flow of urine. This shows that sympathetic fibers constrict the renal vessels and that increased pressure in the renal artery (as obtained by nerve stimulation after cutting of the renal nerves) causes increased filtration in the glomeruli.

The kidneys have a very important role in maintaining a normal plasma volume and a normal osmotic balance between intravascular and extravascular fluids.

Cerebral Circulation

A feature of the cerebral circulation is the impossibility of great expansion of its vascular bed owing to the rigid walls of the skull. A greater oxygen supply to the brain is assured more through increase in the speed of blood than by dilatation of the vessels. Therefore important variations of the intracranial flow are dependent upon the level of blood pressure in the general circulation. However, vasomotor actions have also been demonstrated (103). These have importance when localized because changes in one vascular district may be compensated by opposite changes in another

and are not hindered by the bony structure of the skull. Sympathetic fibers are vasoconstrictor just as in the visceral districts. Vascular spasms have been demonstrated by direct experimental observation (104) and have importance in human pathology.

It should be remembered that carbon dioxide independently of any general effect is a powerful dilator of the cerebral vessels.

Functions of the Veins—Control of Venous Return

The return of blood through the venous system is due only partly to remaining force after it has passed through one or more capillary systems. Many different mechanisms have been recognized which favor the venous return.

- a) Contractions of the veins (105–107)
- b) Decreasing pressure in the large veins due to the action of the heart (systolic suction, page 39)
- c) Aspirating effect of the low pressure existing in the thorax on the right atrium and the large veins
- d) Action of skeletal muscles on the nearest veins

e) Action of respiration

Respiration develops a multiple action on the heart and on the veins. During inspiration the diaphragm contracts and exerts pressure downwards. As a result the following changes will take place:

- a) The intrathoracic pressure becomes lower and the intra-abdominal pressure higher, favoring a blood movement from the abdomen to the thorax.
- b) The liver is compressed by the diaphragm and wrung out (108–142).
- c) The pericardial sac is distended and its complementary sinuses open, favoring the filling of the atria (108). The mouths of both cavae but mainly that of the inferior cava are dilated.

As a result, the blood moves from the portal circulation to the heart mainly during inspiration (108). The blood of the lower extremities and that of the head on

the contrary shows less marked changes and a more constant course. Still a remarkable inspiratory collapse of the superficial veins of the neck may be observed.

Central regulation controls tonus and contractility of the veins. Venous constriction leads to reduction of venous vascular volume; this temporarily increases venous return and may raise central venous pressure (if the right heart cannot elevate its output). Carotid sinus, aortic, pulmonary and atrial reflexes are involved in the regulation of venous tonus. Acidosis and anoxia cause venous contraction and increase venous pressure.

Venous pressure varies with the caliber of the vessels. It is about 33 mm Hg (40 cm H_2O) in the *venules*, about 6 mm Hg (8 cm H_2O) in the *large veins* and very close to 0 before entering the *right atrium* (page 40). The normal pressure in the veins of the arm is about 5 mm Hg (7 cm H_2O) with the arm at the level of the right atrium. A pressure gradient of 3 to 4 mm Hg exists in the normal circulation between a vein of the arm and the right atrium.

The pulsating pressure existing in the arterial system is damped out by the arterioles and it is normally *not* transmitted to the capillaries. It has been stated that in conditions of high temperature, hyperthyroidism or sleep pulsations can be observed in the capillaries or veins. It is quite probable however that the rhythmic changes in color of the skin are due only to pulsation of the arterioles. Venous pulsations may be due to rapid flow through the *capillaries* or to transmission from the nearest artery.

Functions of the Capillaries

The main function of the arteries and veins is to maintain an adequate blood flow through the capillaries in order to preserve the essential aim of the circulation. This is the transfer of water, dissolved substances and gases from the blood to the extracapillary spaces and from these to the blood.

The arterioles, the capillaries and the

venules seem to constitute an *organic unit* having a variable capacity. The number of venules containing an active flow varies constantly but a progressive restriction of blood flow may take place without interrupting the continuous flow to the veins. This is made possible by the existence of *preferential channels* having a central position and, occasionally, an anatomical differentiation (144). Direct visualization shows a periodic constriction and dilatation of the terminal arterioles and precapillaries which is independent of the larger arteries (144). The interchange of material through the capillary wall occurs mainly *between the cells and not through them* (144).

The capillary wall is permeable to all plasma constituents of small molecular size. The plasma proteins on the contrary are made up of larger molecules and do not pass through this wall unless it is damaged. The smallest of the plasma proteins is the *albumin* molecule which is still 350 times heavier than that of glucose.

Dissolved oxygen is more concentrated in plasma than in tissue fluids and therefore moves out of the blood by simple diffusion.⁴

The plasma proteins being nondiffusible exert *osmotic pressure* on the capillary wall tending to retain and attract water. This avoids the possibility of too much fluid being lost with resultant emptying of the capillaries. This osmotic pressure is largely due to the albumin molecules.⁵ The capillary blood pressure on the other hand tends to push water through the wall and is called, therefore, *filtration pressure*.

As known, the largest amount of oxygen is carried by the red cells and not by the plasma. However, as soon as oxygen passes from the plasma to the tissues the red cells rapidly unload their oxygen so that the whole process is carried on uniformly and quickly.

⁴ It is now recognized that the capillary wall is not completely impermeable to *water* and of restricted rate of diffusion exists for *albumin* and *globulin* so that their *osmotic pressure* is reduced to from 10 to 20 per cent of that it would be under conditions of free diffusion.

A perfect balance is always present between capillary filtration pressure and osmotic pressure unless severe changes develop

Direct experiments have proven that in any given capillary at the level of the heart water is lost from the plasma at the arterial end and is taken up at the venous end. In capillaries below the level of the heart gravity adds to the filtration pressure and there tends to be a loss of water from the capillaries.

In the capillaries of the pulmonary circulation there is little tendency towards any outward filtration of water under normal conditions. This is because their blood pressure is less than the osmotic pressure. On the other hand blood pressure is high in the capillary loops of the renal glomerulus even approaching the arterial pressure so that a large amount of water is filtered from them into the lumen of the Bowman's capsule.

The balance of fluid exchange is also maintained by delicate vasomotor adjustments which vary the surface over which outward filtration takes place (145). It has been maintained that outward filtration takes place chiefly in the preferential channels while inward filtration occurs in the true capillaries having marked variations of flow and pressure as a result of contraction of the precapillary sphincters (145).

The normal pressure in the capillaries is about 20 mm Hg both in man and in the other mammals. The average pressure is determined by a) the *vis a tergo* (arterial pressure) b) the resistance to outflow (venous pressure) c) the balance between filtration pressure and osmotic pressure d) mechanical pressure of the surrounding tissues and e) capillary contractility.

Localized effects on the feeding artery and on the vein of outflow may cause diffuse changes. Local contractility may influence the pressure in an individual capillary.

It is now known that the dynamic function of the arteriole is the regulation of the resistance from arteries to capillaries. The

metarterioles on the other hand undergo periodic dilatations and constrictions at intervals of 15 sec to 3 min. These may well control the patency and the filling of groups of capillaries (14-119).

Arteriovenous anastomoses are present in the human skin. They are usually closed under normal conditions and at room temperature but open under critical conditions rapidly shunting a certain amount of blood without its having to pass through the capillaries with loss of temperature (109). A different view admits that these are capillaries always have a vigorous circulation and offer little resistance to the blood flow in contrast to the true capillaries.

Microscopic observation of the human capillaries in the nail bed gives the opportunity to observe that a single capillary may undergo the following changes:

- a) Complete disappearance: evidence of tonic contraction of its wall.
- b) Complete filling without evidence of any active influence on its content.
- c) Slow progression of large bead-like dilatations whose motion is slower than that of the red cells in the lumen (117).

The forces which determine changes of the capillaries are on the one hand the activity of the *reticulus* (110) (opening and closing of the capillaries) and, on the other hand the activity of the *endothelium*. This is endowed with some kind of *tonus*, a property which is analogous to the elasticity of other structures and may be modified by poisons or drugs (184).

The term *vasomotion* has been used in reference to periodic vasomotor activity of the terminal vascular bed which is due to contractions and relaxation of the smooth muscles of the precapillary organs (184).

Evidence of innervation of the capillaries should be considered as inconclusive. Regulation of the capillary flow is obtained through arteriolar and venular changes plus direct action of products of the metabolism.

Capillary resistance to flow is regulated by

two hormones (190). *Cortisone increases capillary resistance while a somatotrophic anterior pituitary hormone (STH) decreases it*. Normal capillary resistance seems to reflect a balance between the two hormones.

Whenever the skin is stimulated by physical agents (stroking heat cold ultra violet light etc.) capillary dilatation takes place preceded by dilatation of the arterioles. The arteriolar dilatation seems caused by a reflex (*axon reflex*) the capillary dilatation is due to formation of a *histamine like substance* in the area of irritation. Most of the changes in capillary diameter which occur when a tissue passes from rest to an active state are the result of lack of oxygen and accumulation of metabolism products.

Blood Pressure

Blood pressure or more correctly arterial blood pressure continuously oscillates between two extremes. The maximum corresponds to the peak of the pulse in a pressure curve and is called *systolic pressure* because it takes place during the systolic contraction of the ventricles. The minimum corresponds to the foot of the pulse in a pressure curve and is called *diastolic pressure* because it takes place at the end of ventricular diastole just prior to the arrival of the following wave (fig. 43).

The basic factors which influence the blood pressure can be studied on experimental models.

The two fundamental data of the blood pressure are *mean pressure* and *pulse pressure* (figs. 43 and 44).

Mean blood pressure rises when one of the following changes takes place

- The rate of the pump increases
- The systolic discharge increases
- The peripheral resistance increases

It falls on the contrary if any of these factors decrease.

Pulse pressure is increased by any of the following changes

- Decreased heart rate
- Increased systolic discharge

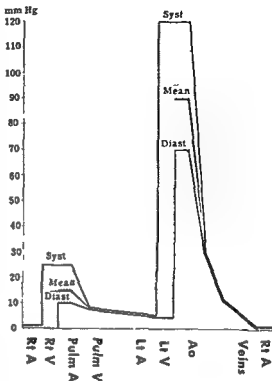


FIG. 43 The pressure in the various sections of the cardiovascular system

- Decreased extensibility of the aorta
- Decreased peripheral resistance

It decreases on the contrary if any of these factors varies in the opposite sense.

It is apparent that the combination of changes of pulse pressure and mean pressure can modify the systolic and the diastolic pressure these being only the secondary expressions of the basic pressure elements.

Studies of the changes of the pressure in an elastic system show that the pulse pressure gradually decreases while the mean pressure is nearly constant (113). A *system of rigid tubes* on the contrary shows a gradual drop of the mean pressure with barely any change of the pulse pressure (fig. 45). These facts have a certain bearing on the study of the pressure in different arteries of the same individual.

If the tubes are rigid a rapid increase in the pressure of the fluid as it enters the tube produces a compression wave which

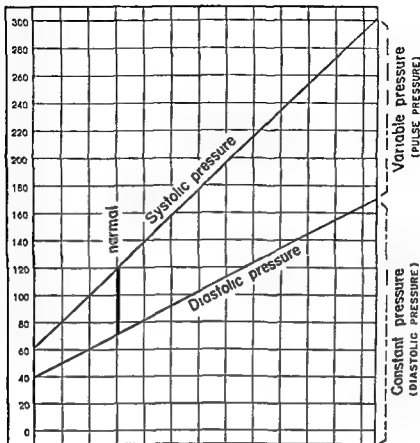


FIG 44 The different elements of blood pressure in the normal subject and in the common deviations from norm

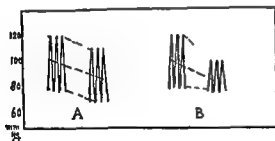


FIG 45 Changes occurring in the oscillating pressure of a system of tubes A rigid tubes B elastic tubes

travels with the velocity of sound to the end of the system. The increased pressure causes increased flow but the rate of increase of the latter is slower than that of the former because of inertia of the fluid (121). If the tubes are distensible as are blood vessels they present changes in caliber and

length which make up the visible pulsation. The pressure wave is transmitted more slowly than in rigid tubes and is damped out faster by the imperfect elasticity of the system (121).

Blood pressure presents continuous *rhythmical fluctuations*. These may be due to the following causes (123)

- 1) Changes of cardiac activity
- 2) Effect of respiratory activity
 - a) Mechanical effect of the respiratory pump mechanism
 - b) Irradiation of impulses from the respiratory to the vasomotor center (*Traube Hering waves*)
- 3) Rhythmical variations of tone of the vasomotor center much slower than respiration (*S Mayer waves*)

The blood pressure has different average

levels in the various species as shown by table 9 (14a)

The average level of blood pressure in man is 120 mm Hg for the systolic and 75 mm Hg for the diastolic. Extreme ranges of normal blood pressure are 150 and 90 for the systolic, 90 and 60 for the diastolic (11a).

Blood pressure level in the first part of life can be seen in table 10 made from Allen's data (11a).

It is now agreed that systolic blood pressure rises until the age of 16 then drops about 10 mm until the age of 18 (11a). Diastolic pressure reaches a level of about 75 mm between 14 and 16 and then remains constant. There is an unusual degree of lability between 17 and 20 years of age. Then blood pressure becomes stabilized with an average of 120/70 for men and 113/70 for women and does not change with age unless pathological processes occur. This means that normal figures vary between 90/60 and 150/90 and that these extremes should be considered as borderline figures as long as they are recorded in basal conditions (note 22 page 44).

The blood pressure tends to be higher in broad built persons than in thin slender individuals (14b).

Blood pressure varies physiologically under the action of emotion, physical exercise, meals, temperature changes, etc. The complex of changes due to meals and sleep usually reaches 25 mm Hg for the systolic and 10 mm for the diastolic in bedridden patients (11b). The average minimum is found between 3 and 5 a.m. the average maximum between 3 and 5 p.m. (11b).

¹The old rule that normal systolic pressure increases with age and that it is equivalent to 100 plus the age of the person is based on actual data and can be used as a rule of thumb (17²). However, such an increase is not caused by a physiological process but by a frequent and benign aging of the arteries. Therefore while no therapeutic measure is justified in a man of 60 who has a systolic pressure of 160, another 60-year-old man may have a systolic pressure of 120 without deviating from normal.

TABLE II Mean blood pressure of various animals (carotid artery)

ANIMAL	MEAN PRESSURE mm Hg
Horse	100-190
Cow	120-160
Calf	160-180
Sheep	90-140
Goat	120
Pig	140-180
Dog	120-150
Cat	140-180

The mean pressure of the dog is lower than indicated by the above figures reported from Dukes (14a). Normal dogs have a mean pressure of 120 to 140 mm Hg.

TABLE 10

	NEWBORN 1 YEAR	2 10 YEARS	15 20	30 40 YEARS	10 12 YEARS	13 14 YEARS	15 16 YEARS
Systolic pressure	43-50	60	65	91	99	104	120
Diastolic pressure	—	—	—	—	60	65	76

The fall in blood pressure along the arterial system depends upon the relative sizes and lengths of the different vessels. Thus while capillaries are the narrowest vessels, their great number and short length combine to make them offer less resistance to flow than the arterioles which are the site of the greatest pressure drop.

The Arterial Pulse

The left ventricle empties itself at each beat into the aorta. The aorta offers little resistance to the flow of blood. Its distensibility is such that there is a variable resistance according to the heart rate and the rapidity of pressure changes.

When the pressure rises suddenly (ventricular systole) the aortic volume has a considerable increase amounting to the creation of a new space (aortic reservoir). When the pressure falls (ventricular diastole) the retraction of the wall can be compared to the reexpansion of blood from the reservoir.

into the arterial system so that the pressure tends to be maintained in spite of the lack of flow from the heart

The *pulse wave* caused by the contraction of the heart travels through the aorta and large vessels much faster than the rate at which the blood flows toward the periphery. The difference becomes considerable in the abdominal aorta and in the large arteries of the lower extremities. The difference disappears on the other hand in the arterioles as the pulsating pressure is converted into steady pressure and flow.

At every point of its progress the pulse wave is accompanied by a stretching of the arterial walls resulting in the enlargement of the vessel and by an acceleration in the flow of blood. At the closure of the semilunar valves the recoil of the aorta maintains the onward drive of the blood. At this time the peripheral arteries are still undergoing distention but they return to their smaller size as the excess of blood flows through the capillaries. The distention caused by the emptying of the left ventricle into the aorta spreads through the arterial system toward the periphery in the form of a wave which is felt as the pulse.

The central pulse of the aorta is characterized by

a) A sudden rise (opening of aortic valves)

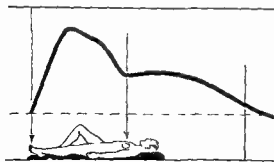


FIG. 46 When the front of the pulse wave reaches the most distant capillaries the end of the wave is still in the left ventricle. Normal person. Duration of ejection period of a systole 0.21 seconds. Time necessary for reaching the arteria dorsalis pedis 0.20 seconds. Speed 11 meters per second.

b) A *systolic plateau* with an occasional peak (systolic ejection)

c) A sudden fall called the *incisura* (closing of aortic valves)

d) A few rapid after vibrations

e) A slow secondary wave called the *diastolic wave*

f) A slow descent until the next wave starts

The shape of the *systolic part of the pulse* may vary according to four factors: ventricular ejection, transmission time of the pulse wave, reflected waves, and flow through the arterioles. Vasoconstriction tends to cause a steeper rise by reducing the peripheral flow, while vasodilatation produces a rounded shape with slow descent before the incisura (120).

The *peripheral pulse* is different from the central pulse. The curve is more rounded, the incisura becomes like a rounded valley, and the diastolic wave like a gently rounded hill. The distance between the peak of the main wave and the peak of the diastolic wave increases toward the periphery, showing that the latter has less speed (fig. 62).

The peripheral pulse represents a *basic pressure wave* created in the aorta and transmitted toward the periphery, *plus waves reflected from the periphery*. These reflected waves are projected back into the aorta almost simultaneously and create by summation a large pressure oscillation or *standing wave* within the large arterial reservoir (183). This summated wave rises just after the foot of the basic wave has reached the femoral artery, so that the two waves merge. As a result, the *systolic peak of the femoral pulse is higher than that of the aortic pulse*.

A sudden increase in speed takes place with the passage of the pulse; then the blood flow slows down.

It should be remembered that the length and speed of the pulse wave are such that the latter includes nearly all the arterial system. When the front of the wave is in the arterial dorsalis pedis, the end of it is flowing into the aorta (fig. 46). However, an extremely rapid

heart rate may lead to the existence of more than one wave in the arterial system (117)

The velocity of the pulse wave in man varies according to the type of artery. It is about 5 meters per second in the more elastic aorta, about 3 meters per second in the more muscular iliac and brachial arteries (120-181)

Regulation of the Respiration: Correlations Between Respiratory System and Circulation

The activity of the respiratory center, which is located in the medulla, is modified by a chemical and a reflex mechanism.

Chemical regulation is based on the results of either carbon dioxide or pH changes on the respiratory center. Any increased content of CO_2 (hypercapnia) as well as any decreased pH (acidosis) leads to increased activity of the respiratory center.

The reflex action may be either excitatory or inhibitory. Distention of the carotid sinus and of the aorta depresses the respiration. Distention of the large veins increases the respiration. Stimuli arising in the lungs and various other organs may act in different ways upon the respiratory center. Stimulation of the chemoreceptors of the carotid and aortic bodies on the other hand may temporarily increase the depth and rate of respiration. It should be kept in mind that respiratory changes induced by chemoreceptors take place virtually only in emergencies and not as a response to physiologic phenomena. Asphyxia, high altitude, flying, prolonged under sea swimming and intravenous drug administration should be considered outside this range.

Inspiration increases the filling pressure of the right atrium and the amplitude of the variations of right atrial pressure due to atrial contraction. The greater filling pressure leads to greater output of the right ventricle. This however is largely accommodated in the pulmonary vessels and left ventricular output may be decreased. A little later the left ventricle receives an increased flow so that both systolic and

pulse pressure rise in the systemic circulation (138)

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 ENGELMANN T W Arch Anat Phys 1902 443 also Pfluegers Arch 1896 65 109 and 535
- 2 SCHELLONG Deut med Woch 1906 31 867
- 3 STRAUB H Bioch Zeit 1910 28 394
- 4 GASKELL W H J Physiol 1883 4 43 1884 5 46 and 1888 7 1 Also in Schaefer's Textbook of Physiology Edinburgh Pentland 1900
- 5 a) LUDWIG C Zeit f rat Med 1840 7 303
b) ENGELMANN T W Pfluegers Arch 1897 61 357
- c) FRANK O In Tigerstedts Handbuch der physiol Methoden 1913 2 (4) 1-6
- d) STRAUB H In Abderhaldens Handbuch der biolog Arbeit meth 1923 5 (4) 911
- 6 HENDERSON Y Am J Physiol 1906 16 325
- 7 ROTHBERGER J Pfluegers Arch 1907 118 353
- 8 STARLING E H et al J Physiol 1914 48 357 and 465
- 9 KATZ L N et al Am J Physiol 1945 143 504
- 10 PRATT F H AND EISENBERGER J P Am J Physiol 1919 49 1
- 11 BARD P Macleod's Physiology in Modern Medicine 9th Ed St Louis Mosby 1941
- 12 a) BOWDITCH H P Ber der Saechsichen Ges der Wiss 18/1
b) HOFF H E Yale J Biol & Med 1942 14 635
- 13 STARLING E H AND VISSCHER M B J Physiol 1917 62 243
- 14 WIGGERS C J Physiology in Health and Disease 4th Ed Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1944
- 15 IVANS C L AND STARLING E H J Physiol 1914 49 67
- 16 BEST C H AND TAYLOR M B The Physiological Basis of Medical Practice Baltimore The Williams & Wilkins Co 1930
- 17 a) LANGENDORFF O Pfluegers Arch 1895 61 791 and Erg Phys 1905 4 764
b) STANNIUS Arch Anat Phys 1857 85
- 18 BOZLER E Am J Physiol 1917 136 543
- 19 LEWIS T MEAKINS J AND WHITE P D Phil Tr London Ser B 1914 205 375
- 20 FRYSTER J A E AND MEEK W G Heart 1914 15 119 and Am J Physiol 1927 61 114 and 130

- 21 a) CÉRALDEL E. *Le Mécanisme du Cœur et ses anomalies* Paris Masson 1928
- b) VAQUEZ H AND DONZELOT L *Les Troubles du Rythme Cardiaque* Paris Balliere 1928
- 22 CONDORELLI L *Zeit exp Med* 1929 68 493
- 23 ROBB J S AND ROBB R C *Am J Physiol* 1936 115 43
- 24 LEWIS T *Diseases of the Heart* London Macmillan 1933 Also *Clinical Disorders of the Heart Beat* New York Hoeber 1916 Also *The Mechanism and Graphic Registration of the Heart Beat* London Shaw 1925
- 25 a) EPPINGER H AND ROTHBERGER C J *Wien klin Woch* 1909 22 1091
- b) ROTHBERGER C AND SCHERF D *Zeit exp Med* 1927 53 797
- 26 HOFF H E NAHLM L H AND KIRSCH B *Am J Physiol* 1941 131 687 and 700
- 27 KIRSCH B NAHLM L H AND HOFF H E *Am Heart J* 1940 20 174
- 28 KATZ L *Am Heart J* 1937 13 1
- 29 HOFF H F *New England J Med* 1941 225 228 and 194 231 529
- 30 KIRSCH B NAHLM L H AND HOFF H F *Am Heart J* 1940 20 174
- 31 a) MAREY F J *La Circulation du Sang* Paris Masson 1881
- b) LUCIANI L *Fisiologia dell Uomo* 6th Ed Milan SFL 1923
- c) STRALE H In *Handb der biol Arbeitsmethoden* 1923 5 (4) 880
- 32 RINGER S Numerous articles published in *J Physiol* from 1882 to 1886
- 33 IOKE F B *Zentralbl Phys* 1901 14 670
- 34 LUISADA A A *Am Heart J* 1942 23 66
- 35 SMITH J R *Am Heart J* 1944 28 661
- 36 STEFANI A *Contributi alla Fisiologia del Cuore e dei Vasi* Reprinted by R Acc dei Lincei (Rome) 1916 11 663
- 37 CERADINI C *Cazz Med Ital Lomb (Milan)* 1871 also LUCIANI (31b)
- 38 TIGERSTEDT R *Die Physiologie des Kreislaufs* Berlin Springer 1921-1923
- 39 HOLSSAY B A *Iresse Méd* 1936 44 1353
- 40 ORIAS O AND BRAUN MENÉNDEZ F *The Heart Sounds in Normal and Pathological Conditions* New York Oxford Univ Press 1939
- 41 RAFFAORT M AND SPRAGLE H H *Am Heart J* 1941 21 257 and 1942 23 591
- 42 BOYER H H *Am Heart J* 1942 23 797
- 43 SOLLMAN T 4 *Laboratory Guide in Pharmacology* Philadelphia Saunders 1922
- 44 GROLLMAN A *The Cardiac Output of Man in Health and Disease* Baltimore Thomas 1932
- 45 a) STARR I RAWSON A J SCHROEDER H A AND JOSEPH N R *Am J Physiol* 1939 127 1
- b) COLRVAND A AND CO WORKERS *J Clin Investigation* 1942 21 287 and 1945 24 106
- 46 LUISADA A A MALTNER H AND WEISZ L *Arch Intern* 1941 58 562
- 47 a) FIEVRE AND MAURICE Report to the Société Française de Cardiologie 1944
- b) RICHARDS D W COLRVAND A ET AL *Am J Physiol* 1942 136 115
- c) LAGERLOF H AND WERKÖ L *Acta Phys Scand* 1918 16 75
- 48 LOEWI O *Pfluegers Arch* 1924 208 130 and 1925 208 634
- 49 CANNON W B AND ROSENBLUTH A *Autonomic Neuro Effector Systems* New York Macmillan 1937
- 50 HARVEY Quoted by BERT AND TAYLOR (16)
- 51 FISCHER L *Physiol Rev* 1944 24 407
- 52 a) HERTZLE K *Pfluegers Arch* 1912 147 582 also 1915 162 303 304 309 and 413 also 1923 200 49
- b) ILER CHAKOFF *Peripheral Arterial Circulation* (Russian) Moscow State Medical Publ House 1930
- 53 MARE F *Pfluegers Arch* 1916 163 151
- 54 FRENCHELL C *Frg inn Med* 1930 37 100
- 55 LUISADA A A AND TREMONTI P *Lo Sperimentale* (Florence) 1928 82 401
- 56 TREMONTI P *Arch Pharmac Sperm (Rome)* 1928 46 119 120 and 145
- 57 LUISADA A A *Zeit exp Med* 1933 61 437 440 and 460
- 58 a) DINGERS M *Zeit exp Med* 1934 64 754
- b) UCHIMARU L AND OBIL F *Zeit Kreislauff* 1940 32 667
- 59 HERTZLE K *Pfluegers Arch* 1935 236 380 and *Zeit Kreislauff* 1934 26 273
- 60 MARCEAL M F *J Phys Path Cen* 1938 22 15 and 33 and 1939 37 536 Also *Fxp Med and Surg* 1948 6 13
- 61 BERNARD C *Leçons sur la Physiologie du Système Veux* Paris 1878
- 62 DALE H H *J Physiol* 1933 80 108
- 63 a) BAUMBRIDGE F A *J Physiol* 1915 50 65
- b) SAKSA K AND MIYAZAKI H *J Physiol* 1920 54 203
- c) NOBLE J F *Am J Anat* 1937 61 203
- 64 McDOWALL R J A *J Physiol* 1934 85 51 also *Physiol Rev* 1935 15 98

- 65 ANREP G V AND SECALL H V Heart 1925 III 61
- 66 HARRISON T R AND CO WORKER Am J Physiol 1937 100 414
- 67 HEYMANS C New England J Med 1938 219 147
- 68 HEYMANS C BOUCKAERT J J AND REGNIER P *Le Sinus Carotidien et la Zone Homologue Cardio tortique* Paris Doin 1933
- 69 McDOWALL R J S J Physiol 1934 83 361 and 371
- 70 HUERTHE K AND KOCH F Pfluegers Arch 1935 235 360
- 71 LYON DE C *Les Vessels du Cœur* Paris Alcan 1906
- 72 HERING H I Pfluegers Arch 1924 206 291
- 73 THOMAS C B AND BROOKS C M Am J Physiol 1935 113 130 and 1936 120 195
- 74 BACQ Z M BROUHA I AND HEYMANS C Arch int Pharmacol et Ther 1934 48 439
- 75 BRONK D W AND STELLA G J Cell & Comp Physiol 1932 1 113
- 76 KILCH B *Lectures at the International University of Santander* Koeln Kuschert 1934
- 77 DRIPPS R D AND COMROE J H Am J Med Sci 1944 208 681
- 78 SCHWIECK H Pfluegers Arch 1935 236 206
- 79 BRUNELLI B Arch Farmac Sper 1933 56 501 and Fis e Med (Rome) 1933 4 781 812 and 887
- 80 IARIN V V Am Rev Soviet Med 1944 1 251 and Am J Med Sci 1944 214 167
- 81 DALEY DE B I AND VERNEY E B J Physiol 1927 82 330
- 82 CATALDI G M Arch Mal Cœur 1935 28 604
- 83 RUBINO A Folia Med (Naples) 1937 III 1168
- 84 JARISCH A Arch Kreislauff 1940 7 260
- 85 HOCHREIN M Deut Ges Kreislauff 1935 8 5 and Arch Kreislauff 1939 14 24
- 86 HOCHREIN M AND KELLER C J Klin Woch 1934 III 1393
- 87 DALY DE B I Physiol Rev 1933 13 149
- 88 SUBSTRAND T Quoted by BARD (11)
- 89 MALTNER H AND LICK F P Muench med Woch 1915 (2d) III 1141 and Bioch Zeit 1927 127 72
- 90 ENGL D J Physiol 1941 99 161 and 1943 102 281
- 91 ANREP G V CRICKSHANK E V DOWNING A C AND SUBBA RAU A Heart 1927 14 111
- 92 GREGG D L AND SHIPLEY R I Am J Physiol 1944 141 382
- 93 KATZ L V AND ROBBARD S J Pharmacol & Exper Therap 1939 67 407
- 94 SYNDER C D Physiol Rev 1942 III 54
- 95 BRADCROFT J Am J Med Sci 1910 179 1
- 96 GIULI G Arch Ital Anat Ist Ist 1939 10 123
- 97 GRINDLEY J H AND HERRICK J F Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1938 13 663
- 98 RAVENNA I Arch int med 1940 66 879
- 99 ZAK F Wien Klin Woch 1930 43 1589
- 100 a) SMITH H W *The Physiology of the Kidney* New York Oxford 1937 Also J Mt Sinai Hosp 1943 10 41 108
b) BRADLEY S E Bull New England Med Cent 1945 7 294
- 101 GOORWAGHTIGH N Bruxelles Med Abstr JAMA 1939 113 2457
- 102 a) GOLDBLATT H LYNCH J HANZAL R F AND SCHMIEVILLE W W J Exp Med 1934 59 347
b) BRAUN MENÉNDEZ E PASCIULO J C JELOIR L F MUÑOZ J M AND VAQUINI A C *Hipertension Arterial* Neofrogna Buenos Aires El Ateneo 1943
- 103 COBB M Assoc Res Nerv & Ment Dis 1929 9 458
- 104 RISER M In *Le Spasme Vasculaire* by HEYMANS AND BROUHA Clermont Fer rand Imprimerie de l'Avenir 1937
- 105 HOOKER D P Physiol Rev 1921 1 112
- 106 GOLLWITZER MEYER K Erg der Phys 1927 34 1145
- 107 McDOWALL R J M Physiol Rev 1935 III 98
- 108 SCHUR M Erg inn Med 1934 47 348
- 109 GRANT R T AND WIKO L F Heart 1929 15 103
- 110 VOLTERRA M Arch Mal Cœur 1927 20 451
- 111 KROGH A *Anatomie und Physiologie der Capillaren* Berlin Springer 1924
- 112 LUISADA A A Zeit exp Med 1929 65 774
- 113 LUISADA A A *Ipotensione e Iposfigmia Deficienze di Circolo* Rome Pozzi 1929
- 114 ALVAREZ W C AND STANLEY L I Arch int Med 1930 46 17
- 115 ALLEY F V *Normal Blood Pressure* In Stroud's *Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945 (vol 2)
- 116 LUISADA A A Rif Med (Naples) 1925 41 817

- 117 LUISADA A A Arch Mal Coeur 1927 20 60
- 118 a) ILECHKOVA I Bull de Biol et de Méd Expér 1936 1 6 402
- b) LAURENTIEV B I Am Rev Soviet Med 1946 3 229
- 119 a) ZWEIFACH B W Am J Anat 1936 37 60 473 and Cold Spring Harbor Symp Quant Biol 1940 8 216
- b) LONDER L in Howell's Textbook of Physiology Philadelphia Saunders 1946
- 120 LAMPORT H In Howell's Textbook of Physiology Philadelphia Saunders 1946
- 121 HAMILTON W F In Howell's Textbook of Physiology Philadelphia Saunders 1946
- 122 HOFF H C In Howell's Textbook of Physiology Philadelphia Saunders 1946
- 123 SCHWEITZER A J Physiol 1945 104 21
- 124 LLISADA A A PLUBINO A AND CANELLA C Cardiol (Basel) 1931 1 280
- 125 HECHT H Am Heart J 1940 32 39
- 126 ASHMAN R AND HULL E Essentials of Electrocardiography New York Macmillan 1944
- 127 BURCH G AND WINOR T A Primer of Electrocardiography Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1945
- 128 SODI PALLARES D Nuevas Bases de Electrocardiografía Ed del Inst Nac de Cardiol Mexico 1945
- 129 A HMAN R AND CO WORKERS Am Heart J 1943 25 16 and 36 1943 26 473 and 490
- 130 BAYLEY H R Am Heart J 1944 27 607
- 131 WILSON F N AND CO WORKERS Am Heart J 1931 7 203 307 and 305 1934 10 46 and 176
- 132 RATNOFF O D AND ILITZ M Medicine 1946 25 283
- 133 GREGG D F AND SHIPLEY R E Mo Cone Cardiovasc Dis 1944 13 14
- 134 JOHN ON J R AND WIGGERS C J Am J Physiol 1937 118 38
- 135 GILBERT N C LE ROY G V AND FENN G K Am Heart J 1940 20 519
- 136 NYLIN G Am Heart J 1943 25 598
- 137 McMICHAEL J AND SHARPEY SCHAFER I P Brit Heart J 1944 6 33
- 138 LALON H D BLOOMFIELD R A AND COURNAND A Am J Med 1946 1 315
- 139 COUNNAND A Bull New York Acad Med 1947 23 27
- 140 a) ROBINSON S C AND BRUCE M Arch Int Med 1939 64 409
- b) BRUCE M Cardiol (Basel) 1940 4 160
- 141 WANG S C AND BOHLEN H L Am J Physiol 1947 150 12 and 722
- 142 ECKSTEIN R W GRAHAM C R LIEBOW I M AND WIGGERS C J Am J Physiol 1947 148 745
- 143 SHORR F ZWEIFACH B W FURCHGOTT R F AND BAEZ S Trans Assoc Am Physicians 1947 60 28
- 144 CHAMBER R AND ZWEIFACH B W Ann New York Acad Sci 1946 46 679 also Physiol Rev 1947 27 436
- 145 DILKE H H The Physiology of Domestic Animals 6th Ed Ithaca Comstock Publ Co 1947
- 146 LUISADA A A Acta Med Scand 1952 142 (Suppl 766) 685
- 147 LUISADA A A ALIMURUNG M R AND LEWIS I Am J Physiol 1952 168 226
- 148 LUISADA A A MENDOZA F AND ALIMURUNG M R Brit Heart J 1949 11 41
- 149 NYLIN G Am Heart J 1945 30 1 and Brit Heart J 1946 7 51
- 150 NYLIN G AND HEDLUND S Am Heart J 1949 37 543
- 151 FRIEDMAN C E Am Heart J 1950 39 397
- 152 McMICHAEL J AND SHARPEY SCHAFER I I Brit Heart J 1944 6 33
- 153 STEAD F A AND WARREN J V Arch Int Med 1947 80 237
- 154 DE LALMA J R AND REIS H A Am J Physiol 1945 156 377
- 155 HAMILTON W F AND REMINGTON J W Am J Physiol 1945 153 287
- 156 BING R J HILMBECKER R AND FALHOLT W Am Heart J 1951 42 483
- 157 SPADOLINI L Arch di Fis 1949 1950 49 166 and 257
- 158 MALAMANI V BOBBA P AND BALDRIGHI C Folia Card 1951 9 229
- 159 LITTLE R C Am J Physiol 1949 158 237
- 160 CLUNER R UNGERLEIDER H I AND HIRSHLIFER I Interamer Congress of Card Chicago 1948
- 161 SZENT YÓRGGYI A Science 1949 110 411
- 162 PRICE P B J A M A 1951 145 781
- 163 FRIEDBERG C K Diseases of the Heart Philadelphia Saunders 1949
- 164 a) LEWIS TH DRURY A N AND OTHER Heart 1971 8 311 and 341
- b) SCHERF D AND TERRANOVA R Am J Physiol 1949 159 137
- c) IBIMZETAL M AND CO WORKERS The Auricular Arrhythmias Springfield Thomas 1950
- 165 IETTERSON L H Circ 1950 2 351
- 166 HEYMANS C AND VAN DEN HEUVEL HEYMANS C Circ 1951 4 581
- 167 DIANCIC V Zeit Kreislauf 1941 34 99
- 168 FOIKOW B Acta Phys Scand 1949 17 289

- 169 ROBBARD S AND SAKAI H *Am J Physiol* 1950 168 234
- 170 TAYLOR R D AND PAGE I H *Circ* 1951 4 184
- 171 CLIBERTON J W HALPERIN M H AND WILKIN R W *Am Heart J* 1949 37 942
- 172 RISSEK H I AND ROTH M M *Am Heart J* 1946 32 468
- 173 POLI G AND ROSSI C R *Arch di Fis* 1949 48 143
- 174 DIVRY A *Arch Int Phys* 1951 59 211
- 175 GHEORGHIU P AND COLLABORERS *Bulet Stint Bucurest* 1950 2/2 50
- 176 DE LA BARREDA I DE MOLINA A F AND JIMENEZ DIAZ C *Bull Inst Med Res* 1948 1 53
- 177 MIADO D M AND COLLABORERS *Am J Med Sci* 1950 220 707
- 178 THOMAS W D AND FINEK H F *Am J Physiol* 1949 158 303
- 179 PAGE I H *Am J Physiol* 1950 160 471
- 180 LEVY M N AND BERNH R M *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1949 72 147
- 181 SCHNABEL T G RASHKIND W J AND PETERSON L H *Am J Physiol* 1950 163 749
- 182 FLEISCHNER F G ROMANO F J AND LUISADA A A *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1948 67 530
- 183 HAMILTON W F AND DOW I *Am J Physiol* 1939 125 48
- 184 WEIFACH B W *Third Confer on Factors Regulating Blood Pressure* New York J Macy Jr Found 1949
- 185 CATTELL MCK AND GOLD H J *Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1938 62 116
- 186 LUISADA A A AND WEISS M *Am J Physiol* 1954 176 123
- 187 WHITEHORN W V *XIX International Congress Physiology Montreal* 1953
- 188 VON BEZOLD A AND HIRT L *Untersuch physiol Lab Wuerzburg* 1867 1 73
- 189 JARICH A AND ZOTTERMAN Y *Acta Phys Scand* 1948 16 31
- 190 KRAMER J *XIX International Congress of Physiology Montreal* 1953
- 191 FOLKOW B *Acta Phys Scand* 1950 27 99

The Clinical Study of the Cardiac Patient

The study of the cardiac patient is based upon history, physical examination and technical study

History

The importance of the history cannot be overemphasized. However the value of history is based on its accuracy. An adequate history is taken only by a man with clinical experience who knows how to elicit and evaluate the evidence given by the patient.

In the appraisal of the patient's complaints two points should be kept in mind: 1) There is no symptom which is absolutely typical and can be accepted as evidence of heart disease. 2) A patient may have severe lesions of the cardiovascular apparatus without any symptoms. Therefore not only the practitioner but also the cardiologist to whom a cardiac patient has been referred must bear in mind that the patient in question may not be a cardiac patient at all. In the following list of common complaints different causes which may be responsible for the symptoms have been indicated.

CHIEF COMPLAINT

Palpitation is a common complaint based on the awareness of the heart beat. It often results from emotional disturbance and may not imply heart disease. It may be caused by increased force of cardiac action, rapid heart rate or irregular heart action. Therefore tachycardia and arrhythmias as well as heart failure are usually accompanied by palpitation. It may be due to abnormal increase or decrease of blood pressure. Palpitation is often related to hormonal unbalance (puberty, menopause, hyperthyroidism), fever and even gastrointestinal disorders or emotion.

Exertional dyspnea may be caused by early heart failure. On the other hand it may be due to anemia, gastrointestinal disorders, emotional factors, fever and pulmonary diseases. *Paroxysmal dyspnea* is nearly always due to heart disease but may be confused with bronchial asthma and vice versa. The possible occurrence of such attacks should be kept in mind and adequate information requested.

Precordial pain upon exertion is frequently associated with heart disease. However it may be caused by emotional factors, acute pericarditis or pleuritis, pleuropericardial adhesions, gastrointestinal disorders or anemia. Even wider is the range of possible causes of *persistent precordial pain*, as intercostal neuralgia and acute lesions of abdominal viscera may be mistaken for cardiac attacks. Precordial pain due to coronary insufficiency is usually located within the left anterior axillary line and is seldom circumscribed to a small area. It frequently radiates to the left shoulder, the back, the left side of the neck, or the left arm and hand. In the last case the ulnar side of the hand is typically predilected. It is frequently a deep, oppressive pain and may be felt at the base of the xiphoid process.

Fatigability (asthenia) is a frequent sign of cardiovascular disease. It is frequently caused however by anemia, lack of physical training, fever, pulmonary lesions, gall bladder and liver diseases, renal diseases and malnutrition.

Cough is a common symptom of heart disease. It may be caused by pulmonary congestion, pulmonary edema, pulmonary infarction, aortic aneurysm or aortitis, chronic bronchitis and other less frequent diseases (26).

Hemoptysis is not unusual in heart disease. It may be caused by pulmonary congestion or edema, aortic aneurysm, pulmonary infarction or arterio-sclerosis. It is particularly frequent in diseases with active congestion of the lungs (patent foramen ovale, patent ductus, Eisenmenger's syndrome) and in those having passive (or both active and passive) congestion of the lungs (mitral stenosis, Lutembacher's syndrome). It is favored by varicosities of the bronchial veins, arterio-sclerosis of the pulmonary arterioles or abnormality in the coagulation of the blood.

Nosebleeds (epistaxis) are common in rheumatic fever. *Hoarseness (dysphonia)* may be evidence of cardiovascular lesions; however, it is frequently observed in pulmonary and mediastinal lesions.

Swelling of the legs (edema) is often due to cardiac failure. It may be caused by bilateral varicose veins; it may be favored by hepatic and renal lesions, anemia, myxedema and vitamin deficiency through changes in the osmotic properties of the blood.

Paroxysmal attacks of giddiness, dizziness or fainting (vertigo, syncope) are frequently caused by cardiovascular lesions. On the contrary, they may be due to anemia, undernourishment, diseases of the nervous system or changes of blood pressure (hypertension, hypotension).

Jaundice (icterus) is occasionally due to heart disease (through the influence that it has upon the liver) or follows pulmonary infarction. It is, however, much more frequently caused by lesions of the biliary system.

Epigastric distress or heaviness, hyperacidity, and belching may be the result of cardiac disease. These disturbances are more often due to gastrointestinal or gallbladder disorders and to vitamin deficiencies.

Sleeplessness (insomnia) is a common sign of cardiovascular disease but may be due to numerous other diseases and to mental upset.

Headache (cephalgia) during of the

course or disturbances of vision may be caused by cardiovascular disease, metabolic disorders, local conditions or diseases of the nervous system.

PRESENT ILLNESS

In recording the details of the 'present illness' the circumstances and modalities under which the different symptoms appeared and the sequence of their occurrence should be carefully recorded.

Information concerning how much exertion above that which is customary for the patient would cause either dyspnea or precordial pain is of value. This may supply an index about the functional efficiency of the heart when allowance is made for other conditions causing the same result (age, obesity, pulmonary emphysema, anemia, etc.). The number of pillows required for sleep may be taken as an index of the degree of orthopnea (shortness of breath relieved by upright position).

Attacks of *paroxysmal dyspnea* and *pulmonary edema* are often reported only if the physician describes their picture without, however, exerting suggestive influence on the patient.

When trying to ascertain the features of some acute attack, personal observations of the patient and those of members of his household and of other physicians should be requested and properly evaluated.

PAST HISTORY

This may reveal important data in evaluating the possible cause of heart disease. A history of tonsillitis, chorea, joint pains or nosebleeds or of long periods of malaise and weakness may indicate the previous occurrence of *rheumatic fever*. A negative statement about any of these data does not exclude that rheumatic fever may have occurred. A history of streptococcal infections, diphtheria or scarlet fever, of nephritis, syphilis, tuberculosis, diabetes or bronchial asthma is often significant.

A negative statement about venereal dis-

case (including such family data as repeated abortions or stillbirths and the occurrence of a single benign ulcer) does not exclude the possibility of *syphilis*

The use of *drugs* (digitalis nitroglycerine quinidine xanthines barbiturates sulfonamides thyroid extract) and their effects should be recorded

A review of the systems at this point may elicit further symptoms which will be helpful in establishing date of onset and extent of damage

Family and social history marital history occupational history and knowledge of habits and vices complete the clinical history and should be recorded with the customary rules of history taking

Physical Examination

The importance of physical examination has decreased since many accurate technical methods of study have become available. It is still of great importance to the cardiologist and even more to the practitioner who may not have the free use of such methods

The orthodox teaching is that physical examination should include inspection palpation percussion and auscultation. This may lead to a stereotyped method of examination (1) One should see which is the special objective to attain in the particular case and use any available method in reaching it. This includes both physical and technical methods

GENERAL EXAMINATION

The general examination gives a first impression which may be of use after a more detailed examination

In the first place the general data of the patient will be noted. These include sex age build height and weight nutrition decubitus mental state and color

Erythema or *nodules* may be significant in rheumatic disease *petechiae* in subacute bacterial endocarditis

Among the various decubitus the *sitting* (orthopneic) position the *bent forward*

(*genupectoral*) position, and the *squatting* position (children) are particularly significant

The type of breathing and the presence of cough, and sputum should be noted

The existence of pallor cyanosis edema of the face or jaundice will be noted. As far as cyanosis is concerned its distribution (nose earlobes nails hands feet etc.) and its severity are of importance. In some cases an increase in cyanosis after exertion or after exposure to cold is significant

Cyanosis (kyanos = blue) is typical of rheumatic lesions of the mitral valve. Cyanosis is constant in the complex congenital heart diseases with shunting of the blood from the lesser to the greater circulation. Severe cyanosis is also constant in chronic lesions of the lungs with resulting *cor pulmonale*. Cyanosis may be a sign of heart failure and is frequent in polycythemia. A local cyanosis may be due to peripheral vascular disease. If the feet are more cyanotic than the hands this may indicate that a severe congenital malformation of the heart is present: the blood flows from the pulmonary artery into the aorta through the ductus and supplies largely the lower extremities (24). Exercise may accentuate this type of cyanosis

Subicterus (slight jaundice) is frequent in the lesions of the tricuspid valve in constrictive pericarditis and in certain systemic or infectious diseases (rheumatic disease *syphilis*). It is also common after pulmonary infarctions

Hands feet and nose should be examined in order to ascertain the existence of clubbing and of nodes or nodules. Clubbing may be present in chronic *cor pulmonale* (through the pulmonary lesions) subacute bacterial endocarditis and congenital heart disease. Nodes may be a sign of subacute bacterial endocarditis nodules of rheumatic disease

Existence distribution and severity of peripheral edema should be recorded. One should observe the extension and turgidity of collateral veins visible venous net

works spider angiomas and swollen lymph nodes

Before starting a more detailed examination the physician should also note temperature respiratory rate pulse rate and blood pressure

Examination of the pulse has lost much of the importance it had in the past Still it may yield much valuable information in the hand of an experienced physician

The following data will be noted

a) Whether the pulse is *regular (rhythmic)* or *irregular (arrhythmic)* If irregular the possibility that the irregularity occurs either *occasionally* or *periodically (allorhythmic pulse)* should be investigated If the irregularity occurs periodically a possible connection with the phases of respiration should be investigated This is easily done by asking the patient first to breathe deeply and slowly (increase of the irregularity) and then to hold his breath (disappearance of the irregularity) The occasionally irregular pulse is called *intermittent pulse* One of the most common types of allorhythmic pulse is the *bigeminal pulse* a small pulse due to a premature beat closely follows the main pulse wave (page 349)

b) Whether the pulse is *rapid* or *slow* The rate of the pulse (number of pulsations per minute) should be noted A very slow pulse rate (80 in an infant 60 in a child 40 or less in an adult) suggests heart block

c) Whether the pulse is *celer (collapsing)* or *tardus* A *pulse celer* is that which quickly dilates the artery (typical in aortic insufficiency) A *pulsus tardus* is that which dilates the artery slowly (typical in aortic stenosis)

d) Whether the pulse is *small* or *large* *soft* or *hard* The first quality deals with the

Blood pressure measurement is actually part of the technical study of the patient However every physician is supposed to take blood pressure and this should be done before the examination of the different systems Details of blood pressure measurements will be given later (page 159)

volume of the pulse the second with the ease or difficulty of compressing the artery up to the point of disappearance of the pulse namely with the pulse pressure A *small pulse* may be found in low blood pressure mitral or aortic stenosis heart failure myocardial infarction and occasionally in hypertension A *large pulse* is typical of hypertension and may also be found in the tetralogy of Fallot A condition of *rigidity* of the arterial wall may be noted as evidence of arterio-sclerosis

e) Whether it is a *pulsus alternans* This type of pulse is perfectly regular but shows the alternate occurrence of larger and smaller pulse waves (page 373)

f) Whether it is a *dicrotic pulse* having a second small wave after the peak of the main wave In some cases the dicrotic pulse should be differentiated from the bigeminal or alternating pulse

Comparison of the two radial pulses may reveal a smaller pulse on the left side as in some cases of ductus arteriosus aneurysm of the aortic arch or atherosclerosis In the case of aneurysm the left pulse often is also delayed More exceptionally small pulse on the right side may be caused by aneurysms complex congenital lesions or atherosclerosis

A comparison of the radial with the femoral pulse may reveal a small femoral pulse (coarctation of the aorta embolism or thrombosis of the abdominal aorta) or on the contrary a large and strong femoral pulse (aortitis aortic insufficiency) A delay of the femoral pulse may be caused by aneurysm of the abdominal aorta

A *thrill* either over the forearm or over the femoral artery may be found in aortic regurgitation patent ductus arteriosus aortitis fever hyperthyroidism or arterio-venous fistula

Palpation of the *temporal arteries* and of the *arteria dorsalis pedis* on both sides completes the general examination and may reveal local changes of pulsation In vascular diseases of the lower extremities palpation of the popliteal femoral and posterior tibial

arteries may give additional valuable information

REGIONAL EXAMINATION

Regional examination may follow the usual rules. In the examination of the head special attention should be paid to the existence of *exophthalmos* (protrusion of the eyes) and related ocular signs suggesting hyperactivity of the thyroid gland. Failure of the pupils to react to light (*Argyll Robertson sign*) and their irregularity or inequality may suggest syphilis. The *eye grounds* have a special importance in hypertension. The mouth and throat may reveal chronic infections or evidence of vitamin deficiency.

The examination of the neck apart from the existence of a large thyroid gland (suggesting a thyrotoxic heart) and of a *tracheal tug* (evidence of aortic aneurysm) should be devoted to the study of the vessels of the neck.

It is not always easy to distinguish the pulsations of the jugular veins from those of the carotid arteries. The *arterial pulsation* is rapid, limited, forceful and easily palpable. The *venous pulsation* on the contrary is slow, undulant and diffuse and seems to disappear when the finger is placed on the pulsating area.

Increased pulsation of the carotid arteries is typical of aortic regurgitation, hypertension, aortitis, aortic aneurysm, atherosclerosis of the aorta, patent ductus arteriosus and the tetralogy of Fallot. It is not uncommon in endocrine disorders (menopause), emotional states, anemia or fever. Inequality between the right and left carotids may be found in aneurysm of the aortic arch (including dissecting aneurysm), patent ductus arteriosus and more rarely atherosclerosis of the aorta. A strong pulsation above the right clavicle may be caused by aneurysm or by persistence of the right aortic arch.

The *jugular veins* may be constantly engorged, presenting only some degree of collapse during expiration. This is due to an

obstacle to the passage of blood from the veins into the heart (blocked venous return) and is typical of the superior caval syndrome.

The veins may show strong pulsations. If these are of a physiological type (three for each apex beat (page 99)) they are evidence of increased activity of the heart. They are common therefore in mitral valve defects, hypertension, anemia and hyperthyroidism. Congestive failure is usually accompanied by strong jugular pulsations, evidence of high pressure in the right atrium.

An abnormal type of jugular pulsation with systolic expansion takes place in regurgitation of the tricuspid valve and is a valuable diagnostic sign (page 270).

Auscultation of the jugular veins reveals three dull sounds if the waves are high. It may reveal a *confused continuous murmur* (*venous hum*, *bruit du diable*) in children or anemic patients.

Auscultation of the carotid arteries and of the suprasternal notch (2) is useful in differentiating various cardiac murmurs.

Examination of the thorax. Chest deformities will be noted because they may have relationship to heart disease. Abnormal *bulges* and *pulsations* of the chest outside the conventional precordial area are usually due to either an enlarged heart or aneurysms. *Arterial pulsations* in the intercostal spaces indicate the development of arterial collateral circulation, evidence of contraction of the aorta.

Examination of the pleura and of the lungs will be made carefully. Pleural effusion common in congestive failure, evidence of pulmonary emphysema, wheezing rales common in cardiac asthma and moist rales of small caliber, evidence of alveolar transudation, should be looked for and recorded.

The presence of *rales* may contribute to a correct diagnosis. Rales are common in conditions associated with a higher pressure of the pulmonary circulation (mitral valve defects, patent foramen ovale, transposition

of the large vessels (Eisenmenger complex) they are uncommon in those associated with a lower pulmonary pressure (tricuspid stenosis or atresia, pulmonic stenosis or atresia certain cases of adhesive pericarditis)

Areas of pulmonic consolidation may be evidence of pulmonary infarctions

Examination of the abdomen may yield several important data. The most significant are

a) Existence of *ascites*, which is more frequently seen in tricuspid valve lesions, constrictive pericarditis and polyserositis

b) *Enlargement of the spleen* which is common in bacterial endocarditis as well as in acute infections and usually absent in rheumatic disease

c) *Enlargement of the liver*. This is frequently a sign of congestive failure. It may be present however in tricuspid lesions and in constrictive pericarditis even without failure. It may be caused by liver. *The liver may show active pulsations* which are appreciated by palpation (tricuspid regurgitation)

d) *Epigastric pulsations* caused by abnormal dynamics of either the heart or the abdominal aorta

e) Existence of *collateral veins* over the abdominal surface may have importance in the evaluation of a complex cardio-hepatic syndrome

Examination of the legs. The presence of edema, the superficial veins and the pulsations of the femoral, popliteal, tibial and pedal arteries will be investigated. The study of the arteries may require the use of an *oscillometer* (page 160). Changes in the color and temperature of the skin in different positions and after exertion may have importance

EXAMINATION OF THE HEART

Inspection

Inspection is the oldest method of examination. A first glance at the precordial area reveals whether there are *small venous*

dilatations as frequently seen in chronic cardiac patients. These are sometimes related to anterior pericardial adhesions. It shows whether or not there is *bulging* of this area which is evidence of enlargement of the heart but is far more severe when heart disease has started at an early age (or is congenital). In infants and children marked left-sided bulge may indicate severe enlargement of the right heart (24)

Any movement of the precordial area should be carefully observed. Among them the following should be considered

a) *The point of maximum impulse* (so-called *apex beat* or *apex impulse*). This is a positive pulsation which takes place during ventricular systole. It is usually located in the 4th or 5th left interpace on or within the midclavicular line. Absence of this pulsation does not constitute an abnormality because an apex beat is present only in 20 per cent of normal adults (23)

The apex beat is more lateral in stocky short individuals; it is nearer to the midline in thin long persons. A change from the recumbent to the standing position alters the position of the apex beat by causing a moderate drop and some rotation of the heart; this tends to rest lower and more vertically

A *systolic depression* in the area of the apex beat is a definite abnormality which may be caused by enlargement of the right ventricle or adhesive pericarditis

b) *Multiple pulsations* in different intercostal spaces are usually the sign of an enlarged heart animated by strong contractions. Exceptionally they may be observed in young individuals with a thin chest especially during excitement

c) A *small bulge* animated by *strong expansive pulsations* is usually a sign of aneurysm

d) A *massive movement of the chest* (see *saw movement*). One region of the chest presents a forward thrust while another is being depressed (3). It may be caused by tricuspid insufficiency, severe dilatation of the

aorta plus aortic insufficiency or adhesive pericarditis

e) A positive pulsation in the *2nd right interspace* is evidence of aortic dilatation in the *2nd left interspace* of pulmonary dilatation. A *positive pulsation at the epigastrium* is due to vertical position of the heart or right ventricular enlargement and is frequently encountered in pulmonary emphysema.

f) *Enlargement and predominance of either ventricle* is revealed by the following movements (3). If the left ventricle predominates the left thoracic wall moves suddenly to the left in systole, the right thoracic wall moving inwards at the same time. If the right ventricle predominates there is a sudden forward thrust of the median area and epigastrium with a retraction of the lateral walls (page 200).

g) Dilatation of the aortic arch is often revealed by a *visible pulsation in the region of the suprasternal notch*.

Palpation

Palpation is also a long established method of examination well known to ancient Egyptian and Greek doctors. Its importance has been reemphasized in our time (3). Through palpation one may localize the apex beat even when it is faint or invisible. The best procedure is the following: first the palm of the hand is applied to the precordium in order to obtain a general impression; then search for the apical thrust will be made using the tips of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th fingers.

Many details of the apex beat can be recognized by palpation. Among them the existence of a *double impulse* (as in cases with a gallop rhythm) is one of the more significant.

Palpation may also reveal a *snap* in the 2nd interspace on either side of the sternum. This is caused by the closure of the semilunar valves and is present when pressure is high either in the aorta (snap at the right of sternum) or in the pulmonary artery

(snap at the left of sternum). A distinct pulsation in the 3rd left interspace may be found whenever the conus of the right ventricle is enlarged as in cases of mitral stenosis.

Palpation may reveal the existence of a *thrill*. This is the tactile expression of vibrations arising in the heart and causing also a murmur. The poor sensitivity of the hand in comparison with the ear is responsible for the fact that usually only the murmur of valvular stenosis is accompanied by a thrill (loud and low pitched vibrations). A thrill seldom accompanies valvular insufficiency and thus only if there is rupture or eversion of the cusps (aortic valve) or rupture of a chorda (mitral valve—4). The sensitivity of the fingers to vibrations of cardiac origin in the range of murmurs is so far below that of the ear that search for a thrill has become a matter of academic curiosity (30).

The following thrills can be palpated:

a) A *diastolic thrill either at the apex or over the 4th left interspace* is evidence of narrowing of the mitral valve.

b) A *systolic thrill at the apex* is usually due to a rapid undulation and vibration caused by myocardial damage.

c) A *systolic thrill over the 2nd right interspace* is caused by narrowing of the aortic valve occasionally by an aortic aneurysm.

d) A *systolic thrill over the 2nd left interspace* is caused by narrowing of the pulmonary valve, patency of the ductus arteriosus or extreme dilatation of the pulmonary artery.

e) A *systolic thrill in the 3rd-4th interspaces near the sternum* is evidence of communication between the two ventricles (*septal defect*).

Palpation should be also made with both hands (*bimanual palpation*). It may confirm the existence of massive movements of the chest wall.

Palpation of the precordium is completed by palpation of the epigastrium and of the

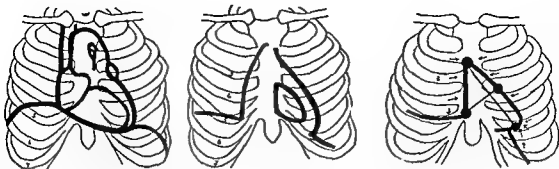


FIG 4 Percussion of the cardiac area a Projection of the heart and large vessels on the surface of the chest b Absolute (inner profile) and relative (outer profile) cardiac dullness on percussion c Cardiac area and diameters with palpated percussion

liver. If the right hand is placed over the left lobe of the liver and the left hand on the right lobe and moderate pressure is applied one may appreciate an expansive pulsation of the liver, an important sign of tricuspid regurgitation. This hepatic pulsation is different from the aortic pulsation (abrupt limited to the epigastrium) and from that of the enlarged right ventricle (limited between xiphoid process and left costal border (3)). Details of epigastric pulsations and liver pulsations will be given later (pages 98 and 99).

Lastly, edema of the precordial wall may be recognized by palpation. It is a sign of purulent pericarditis if localized.

To sum up, palpation is the method of choice in studying the character and location of the cardiac impulse and is useful in detecting abnormal pulsations.

Percussion

Percussion of the heart was introduced by Auenbrugger in 1761 (5) even though it is possible that it was used by the great masters of the Egyptian and Greek schools (6).

Percussion of the heart aims at the localization of cardiac dullness and therefore evaluation of the cardiac size. Training and experience are necessary but the results are valuable whenever x-ray is not available.

The area of absolute dullness is a small area of dull sound obtained by light percussion. It represents that area of the heart which

is not covered by the margins of the lungs (fig. 47). It may disappear in pulmonary emphysema. The area of relative dullness is a much larger area than the former. It nearly coincides with the cardiac apex and is much nearer on the right to the real limit of the heart (fig. 47). The fact that there is no absolute coincidence between relative dullness and projection of the organs in the region of the base is due to the deep position of some organs (fig. 48). The area of relative dullness is obtained by strong percussion.

The method of percussion matters little as long as it is constantly employed so that one becomes expert in its use. Percussion involves not only the sense of hearing but also that of touch because the finger used as a pleximeter feels the induced vibrations (7).

Different methods for measuring the heart dullness have been described. The author's view is that measurement of the horizontal distance between apex and mid-sternal line (transverse diameter) has no real value, varying too widely between normal subjects of different build. Far better is the measurement of the following two diameters:

a) A longitudinal or oblique diameter between the 2nd right costal cartilage (fixed point) and the apex (fig. 47).

b) A broad diameter between the cardio-hepatic angle and the left border perpendicular to the other (fig. 47).

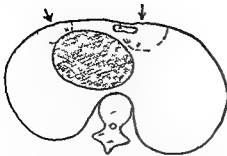


FIG 48 Causes of error in percussion of the heart On the left side of the chest dulness is 1 or 2 centimeters *outwards* of the actual limits on account of the curvature of the ribs and the superficial position of the apex On the right side of the chest dulness is 1 or 2 centimeters *inwards* of the actual border on account of the flat surface of the chest and the deep position of the right atrium (After COSSIO)

The oblique diameter is normally from 8 to 9 cm and measures chiefly the size of the left ventricle The transverse diameter is normally from 7 to 8 cm and measures chiefly the size of the right ventricle Even when the transverse diameter is not measured it will be kept in mind that the distance between right cardiac border on the 4th rib and the midline is increased by right ventricular enlargement

The first phase of delimitation of the cardiac dulness is that of drawing the *left border* by percussing horizontally along the intercostal spaces from left to right The apex will be recognized by percussion made along different rays or spokes The *cardiohepatic angle* will be defined by first percussing along the right midclavicular line from above downwards then along the intercostal spaces from right to left

In normal individuals the manubrium of the sternum gives a clear resonant sound the *cardiohepatic angle* is a right angle the *dulness in the 3rd left interspace* does not exceed 2 cm

Dulness in the 2nd and 3rd right interspaces may be caused by dilatation of the ascending aorta aneurysm of the aorta persistence of the right aortic arch mediastinal lesions pericardial effusion adhesive pericarditis or tetralogy of Fallot

Dulness in the 2nd and 3rd left interspaces may be caused by dilatation of the left atrial appendage the pulmonary conus or the pulmonary artery This sign may be found in mitral stenosis patent ductus arteriosus or aneurysm of the pulmonary artery

The *cardiohepatic angle* becomes obtuse in the following lesions pericardial effusion, right atrial enlargement due to tricuspid lesions atrial septal defect or congestive failure pleuropericardial adhesions

Occurrence of the apex beat *within* the area of dulness is a sign of pericardial effusion

The presence of an area of dulness between the spine and the left scapula may be caused by left atrial enlargement as well as by pericardial or pleural effusion

To sum up percussion is still a valuable method for recognition of the heart size and shape

Auscultation

Auscultation of the heart is probably an old method of examination We have however only indirect evidence of its use until *Laennec* in 1819 (8) established it on a systematic basis and described the first stethoscope More recent contributions (9 10) have enhanced the value of this method by explaining the physical laws of auscultation Also contributions brought by phonocardiography have explained some pitfalls of auscultation

The stethoscope The stethoscope is an instrument which provides a closed acoustic system for transmitting the sounds originated within the thorax to the observer's ear The transmission is effected by the air contained in the system The stethoscope ends in a chest piece which may be an open bell or a flat chamber closed by a membrane When the bell is applied to the skin the latter acts like a membrane whose acoustic properties vary according to the pressure of the bell (10)

Large bells transmit low pitched sounds

better, small bells are used for better localization of murmurs. On the other hand large bells collect much better the low pitched sounds originating in the ventricles like the third and fourth sound and the gallop sounds. The best tubing for a stethoscope seems to be a short one (25 cm) with a bore of 3 mm (31). An improvement of the stethoscope is the *electrically amplifying stethoscope*. This is useful for physicians who are hard of hearing and for adjusting the intensity to the best level of audibility.

Human ear. The human ear can be considered as the receptor end of an acoustic system. It is well known that it is an imperfect instrument. Knowledge of its limitations may explain some of the failures of auscultation and certain unavoidable discrepancies between clinical impression and objective graphic data. The limitations may be summarized as follows:

i) Pure tones of different pitch and the same intensity are heard as tones of different intensity.

b) The ear more easily detects changes of pitch than changes of intensity (except in the lower frequency range where changes of pitch may not be detected at all). As a result a *higher pitched* tone may be heard as a *louder* tone.

c) The ear is sensitive to vibrations between 20 and 20 000 cycles per second; however sensitivity is poor for the lower pitched vibrations and becomes gradually better for the higher pitched. The heart is the source of vibrations between 5 and 800 per second (soft murmurs occasionally reach 1000). Therefore *many cardiac vibrations are in the range of infra sounds (nonaudible sounds)* while others are heard only if very loud or by particularly sensitive and trained observers.

d) The scale of sensitivity of the ear with regard to frequency increases very rapidly on a *logarithmic ratio*. In the frequency band of 1 000 cycles a given increase of intensity results in the same increase in loudness

while in higher frequency bands lesser increases of intensity cause the same result.

e) In the presence of certain loud or high pitched sounds the ear may be unable to detect weaker or lower pitched sounds which follow immediately. This phenomenon is called *masking*.

Physical characteristics of the heart sounds and murmurs. Cardiac vibrations include frequencies between 0 and 1000 per second (10). Those between 0 and 5 per second have no acoustic value. The vibrations taking place during diastole (third and fourth sound) and small vibrations at the beginning and end of the first and second sound have frequencies between 5 and 50 per second while most of the other vibrations of these sounds are between 50 and 100 per second. The *low pitched rumbles* are made of vibrations between 50 and 140 only occasionally including components between 140 and 400. The *friction rubs* include vibrations between 140 and 660 per second. The *high pitched murmurs* are composed of vibrations between 140 and 660 per second only occasionally including components between 660 and 1000. The latter are found only in some of the soft murmurs and have the same pitch of those vibrations which are set up by normal breathing.

Areas of auscultation. Clinical experience has shown that sounds and murmurs which originate in a definite valve are usually heard best in a specific area or the precordium.

The classic and well known scheme should be somewhat modified. The author's view is that the following areas should be considered (fig. 49).

a) Sounds and murmurs arising in the *mitral valve* are heard best in the 4th left interspace at the apex or along the left cardiac border. They are well transmitted to the left axilla and if very loud to the left side. Murmurs due to regurgitation are transmitted much farther than those due to narrowing of the valve. They are louder in expiration.

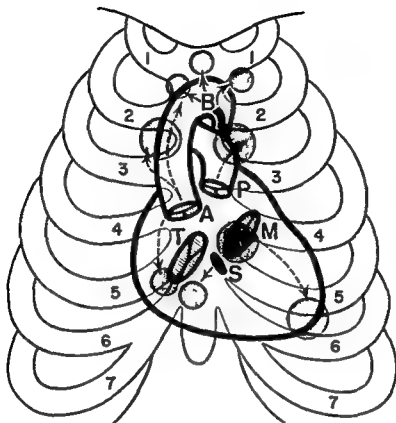


FIG. 43 Areas of auscultation (red) as compared with projection of the valves and defects (black) A aortic valve P pulmonic valve T tricuspid valve M mitral valve B ductus arteriosus S ventricular septal defect

b) Sounds and murmurs arising in the *tricuspid valve* are heard at the base of the xiphoid process or in the 4th and 5th right interspaces. They have a poor transmission. They are louder in inspiration (34).

c) Sounds and murmurs arising in the *aortic valve* are heard best over the 2nd right interspace. If due to stenosis they radiate to the suprasternal notch (2-33) and along the carotid arteries. If due to regurgitation they may be heard along the sternum and even at the xiphoid process. If the murmurs are loud they are transmitted to the spine.

d) Sounds and murmurs arising in the *pulmonic valve* can be heard in the 2nd left interspace with a narrow area of transmission. If due to stenosis they are transmitted to the left clavicle and the back; if caused by insufficiency to the 3rd right interspace.

e) Murmurs arising in a *ventricular septal defect* are heard best in the 3rd or 4th left interspace near the sternum; they are rarely transmitted toward the apex and are frequently transmitted toward the right side.

f) Murmurs arising in the *patent ductus arteriosus* are heard best in the 2nd left interspace, with wide transmission to the 2nd right interspace, the suprasternal notch and the carotid arteries.

g) Murmurs due to *coarctation of the aorta* are heard best in the back between the left scapula and the spine (32).

Cardiac murmurs can be classified in the following way: *Valvular*—due to damage of the cardiac valves causing either stenosis or insufficiency (rheumatic, bacterial, arteriosclerotic or congenital); *Myocardial*—caused by damage to heart muscle resulting in

relative stenosis or insufficiency (myocarditis myocardial dysfunction secondary to metabolic anemic avitaminic coronary or pericardial heart disease) *Hematic*—due to severe changes of blood composition favoring whirlpools (usually during systole) *Vascular*—due to primary or secondary dilatation of the aorta or pulmonary artery leading to either relative insufficiency or relative stenosis (lucetic hypertensive pulmonary or congenital dilatation dilatation due to increased blood volume) *Abnormal structural*—due to congenital shunts or severe malformations *Extracardiac*—(cardio pulmonary cardio serous)

Murmurs apparently innocuous may be due to

a) Initial rheumatic heart disease (dilatation or edema of mitral ring edema of mitral leaflets or papillary muscles structural lesion or functional distention of pulmonary artery initial aortic stenosis)

b) Mild congenital heart disease (pulmonic stenosis aortic stenosis coarctation of the aorta atrial or ventricular septal defect)

- c) Anemia
- d) Pregnancy
- e) Unknown

Special remarks should be made concerning murmurs in infants and children (24) A loud systolic murmur may be heard shortly after birth and subsequently disappear it is probably caused by the blood passing through the ductus which is subsequently obliterated Persistence of a loud rasping systolic murmur for some weeks indicates the existence of a congenital malformation but localization of the murmur is not possible on account of the small size of the heart Diastolic murmurs are seldom heard under one year of life A continuous murmur suggests patency of the ductus

Whenever the 2nd sound is split this indicates the existence of both the aortic and the pulmonic openings splitting is not heard in atresia of one of them or in persistence of the truncus arteriosus

It has been stated that from 30 to 50 per cent of children have a functional (frequently musical) systolic murmur over the 2nd or 3rd left interspace (38) It is the author's belief that this murmur even though frequently benign is not always so It may be caused by early rheumatic heart disease mild pulmonic stenosis or atrial septal defect

Further details about intracardiac murmurs will be given later (page 93) It should be added that typical transmission of the cardiac murmurs has been questioned and even denied (11) It is the author's view that while very loud murmurs may be transmitted in all directions by soft and bony structures most cardiac murmurs of average intensity are transmitted to typical areas because they follow the stream of blood which is causing them

Murmurs may be soft (high pitched) rough (low pitched) and occasionally musical When low pitched a murmur may be called a rumble

The phase of a murmur should be noted A murmur may be in early systole mid systole or late systole and may continue throughout systole A murmur may also be in early diastole in mid-diastole or in pre systole and it may continue throughout diastole A murmur may show an increasing loudness (murmur in crescendo typical of mitral stenosis) or a decreasing loudness (murmur in decrescendo typical of aortic insufficiency)

Indication of the intensity of the systolic murmurs can be done by dividing them in six gradations (14) as follows

Grade 1 = the faintest audible murmur having an appreciable duration

Grade 2 = a slight murmur

Grade 3 = a moderate murmur

Grade 4 = a loud murmur

Grade 5 = a very loud murmur

Grade 6 = the loudest possible murmur

Grade 2 to 6 murmurs are usually caused

by organic heart disease (14) A grade 1 or 2 murmur may be connected with increased velocity of the blood flow and the latter is often related to anemia or rapid heart action as experimental studies have demonstrated (15)

A particular type of auscultation is that which can be effected during apnea by means of a gastric tube introduced into the esophagus and connected with the stethoscope (25) Heart sounds and murmurs are heard very clearly the murmur of mitral regurgitation is heard with special clarity with the tip of the tube at 20 to 40 cm from the dental arch

Routine auscultation of the heart should proceed in the following way

First *the two normal heart sounds* should be noted their absolute and relative intensity the area where they are heard best their timbre and their duration will be recorded The timbre depends upon additional vibrations (extra sounds murmurs) which being near are confused with the basic sounds The 1st sound is normally louder at the apex the 2nd sound at the base This is easily explained as the 1st sound is more influenced by the closure of the mitral valve the 2nd by the closure of the semilunar valves In physiological conditions the 2nd sound is slightly louder over the 2nd right interspace than over the left (except in young children and infants where the opposite is frequently true) This is due to the fact that the closure of the aortic valves gives a snapping sound better heard on the right than on the left while closure of the pulmonic valves gives a softer sound owing to lower pressure of the pulmonary artery

Iteration in the sounds of the heart is often as important as cardiac murmurs However, judgment of the intensity of the 1st and 2nd sound for a given individual may be difficult In the timing of the heart sounds and murmurs it is customary to listen first at the base of the heart where the sharp 2nd sound is easy to detect Then,

by moving the stethoscope toward the apex, the observer tries to retain the position of the same sound in relation to other phenomena

Marked diminution of the intensity of the 1st sound at the apex may be evidence of myocardial weakness *Marked accentuation of the 1st apical sound* is often found in mitral stenosis

Accentuation of the 2nd aortic sound is found in patients with hypertension atherosclerosis or syphilis of the aorta *Accentuation of the 2nd pulmonic sound* is found in patients with mitral stenosis or cor pulmonale and may be interpreted as evidence of increased pressure in the pulmonary artery *Decreased intensity of the 2nd sound* is found in aortic and pulmonic stenosis respectively

The existence of *additional sounds during diastole* (triple and quadruple rhythms) should be noted

General Classification of the Triple and Quadruple Rhythms (29)

While the occurrence of one extra sound in diastole is a common cause of triple rhythm (*gallop rhythm*) and that of two extra sounds in diastole of quadruple rhythm (*train wheel rhythm*) other possibilities should be considered Actually a triple rhythm can be due also to the occurrence of one of the following phenomena a) an opening sound or snap of the mitral valve or b) a split second sound because of bundle branch block or high pressure in the pulmonary artery Again a quadruple rhythm may be due to addition of a diastolic sound plus splitting of the second sound on account of bundle branch block (37)

Therefore the following possibilities should be considered

I Triple Rhythms

A Diastolic (page 370)

- a) Atrial (or 4th sound)
- b) Ventricular (or 3rd sound)
- c) Summation (3rd plus 4th)

B *Systolic* (page 433)

a) Apical

b) Basal

C *Opening snap* (or sound) of the mitral valve (page 228)

D *Split second sound*

II *Quadruple Rhythms*

A *Trun wheel rhythm* (loud 3rd and 4th sounds)

B *Loud 3rd or 4th, and split second sound*

C *Systolic plus diastolic sound*

D *Split second sound plus opening snap of the mitral valve*

Splitting of the 2nd sound at the base is due to non-simultaneous closure of the aortic and pulmonic valves and is more often heard over the pulmonic area. Occasional or periodic splitting may be physiological especially in children. A definite reduplication on the contrary suggests increased pulmonic pressure or bundle branch block. *Splitting of the 1st sound* may be due to a loud and separate occurrence of the two valvular components of the 1st sound (37-36) (page 91). It is never caused as formerly believed by bundle branch block (37).

The observer should further listen for the presence of *friction rubs* which are evidence of pericarditis.

To sum up auscultation is an invaluable aid in the diagnosis of valvular defects (murmurs) in the recognition of lesions of the myocardium (extra sounds) splitting of the second sound (gallop) and in the diagnosis of aneurysms.

Practical applications of phonocardiography which in the author's view is superior to clinical auscultation have not made the latter obsolete. As a matter of fact *auscultation should always precede phonocardiography*.

Functional Tests

Functional tests aim at evaluating the reserve capacity of the heart muscle, the reactions of the cardiovascular system when

placed under strain and the reactivity of the autonomic nervous system.

Exercise test The simplest functional test is that represented by exercise. Even though a standard exercise test is impossible one should try to adapt the severity of the test to the age, weight and training of the patient (page 129). Such a test has a real value when effected in a comparative way and on the same patient. The patient should be asked to bend 10 or 20 times on his knees.

Normal subjects show a moderate increase of the heart rate (from 70 to 100) and of the respiratory rate (from 12 to 15 or 16) and of systolic pressure (from 120 to 130-135). *These changes should not last more than 2 minutes.* Heart failure is revealed by dyspnea, rapid heart rate, irregularity of the pulse and blood pressure drop with reduced pulse pressure. Occasionally blood pressure may rise more than in normal subjects because of accumulation of carbon dioxide in the blood. When the changes of heart rate and respiration last too long they represent a definite abnormality even if they lie within the normal range of variation. Patients with coronary heart disease may complain of precordial pain and may reveal premature contractions. Valvular murmurs usually increase in intensity.

A special type of exercise test is the *two step Master test* which was devised for coronary patients (page 129).

Cold pressor test (page 161)

Valsalva and Mueller test The *Valsalva test* is an attempted forced expiration with closed glottis (16). The *Mueller test* is an attempted forced inspiration with closed glottis (17). The first is obtained by inviting the patient to strain as he does when straining at stools.

The Valsalva test in normal individuals gives a tremendous decrease in amplitude of pulse even to the point of disappearance. The heart rate becomes slow at first (in creased intrathoracic pressure) then rapid (anoxemia) then slow again after the end

of the test (carotid sinus reflex) Systolic blood pressure may drop to zero during the test but rises to 130-140 mm Hg afterwards

The Mueller test increases the heart rate during the test decreases it afterwards

X ray studies have shown that the heart becomes smaller during the Valsalva test (decreased venous return), and larger during the Mueller test (increased venous return) In both cases however the change is moderate Important changes and abnormalities occur in congenital heart diseases (patent ductus arteriosus) and in latent congestive failure

Carotid sinus reflex—stimulation of the vagus The study of the carotid sinus reactivity may have importance in many patients This may be obtained in two ways

a) By placing the patient on a *tilting bed* and studying the changes of the pulse as he passes from the horizontal to the head down position (stimulation of the carotid sinus caused by distention) This is the most physiological stimulation and may be accomplished in an even simpler way by studying the patient first in standing and then in a recumbent position The pulse rate decreases 10 to 20 beats per minute in the latter and further 10 to 20 in the head down position

b) By massaging the sinus region of one side with the fingers Compression of the sinus from the outside is an *abnormal* stimulation of the pressoreceptors It usually obtains remarkable results in patients with hypersensitive carotid sinus but may cause no changes in normal individuals The compression will be tried first on one side then on the other never on both sides simultaneously Slowing of 10 to 20 per minute is normal extreme bradycardia or stoppage of the heart is abnormal

Reflex stimulation of the vagus may be obtained by compressing the eyeballs with a steady and firm pressure (*oculocardiac reflex*) It has been shown that this test causes a stimulation of both the vagus and

the sympathetic (21) the first usually predominating The heart rate slows down only 5 to 10 beats per minute in the average subject Patients with hyperactivity of the vagus nerve may show cardiac arrest and disappearance of the pulse for many seconds Ventricular escapes usually appear after a few seconds in such patients and maintain the circulation The test will be made with the patient lying supine on a couch and the pressure will be applied with thumb and index finger of the right hand The patient usually does not feel the suspension of the heart beat

No dangers are involved in these tests except in patients with severe coronary heart disease where the maneuvers are contraindicated

Pharmacological Tests

Different tests use the action of drugs for the study of cardiovascular functions

Atropine sulphate—1 mg by subcutaneous injection (heart block bradycardia)

Amyl nitrite—1-2 drops by inhalation (angina pectoris heart block tachycardia) (page 129)

Quinine hydrochloride—0.5 gm by subcutaneous or intravenous injection (a very paroxysmal tachycardia ventricular tachycardia premature beats)

Mechoyl chloride—10-20 mg by intravenous injection (paroxysmal tachycardia)

Adrenaline hydrochloride—0.5-1 mg by subcutaneous injection (low blood pressure bradycardia angina pectoris)

Dosage and mode of action of these drugs will be given in chapter XXXII

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 BRAMWELL C General Cardiology In *The Principles and Practice of Cardiology* by BRAMWELL AND KING London Oxford Univ Press 1912
- 2 LUCADA A A Rass Internaz Clin Ter (Naples) 193 IE 733
- 3 DRESSLER W Die Brustwandpulsationen Vienna Maudrich 193 Also *Clinical Cardiology* New York Hoeber 1912

- 4 WHITE I D *Heart Disease* 3rd Ed New York Macmillan 1944
- 5 ALFENBRUGGER L Translated and reprinted *Cardiac Classics* by WILLIS and KEYS St Louis Mosby 1941
- 6 MULLER H *Hippokrates der Cronne* Berlin Hippokrates Verlag 1926
- 7 FRUCONI C Riv Crit Clin Med 1910 11 p 44 45 46
- 8 LAENNEC R Translated and reprinted *Cardiac Classics* by WILLIS and KEYS St Louis Mosby 1941
- 9 ORIAS O AND BRAUN MEXENDEZ F B *The Heart Sounds in Normal and Pathological Conditions* New York Oxford Univ Press 1939
- 10 RAPPAFORT M B AND SPRAGLE H B Am Heart J 1941 21 20, and 1942 23 31
- 11 LEVINE S AND EIKOFF W B Arch Int Med 1914 31 293
- 12 GROCCO P Ann Univ Lab Perugia 1887/1888 3 131 and 161
- 13 PALMIRI G G In *Tratt di Semeiotica* by VIOLA Milan Vallardi 1933
- 14 LEVINE S A *Clinical Heart Disease* Philadelphia Saunders 1937
- 15 LLISADA A A AND MALTNER H Exper Med & Surg 1943 1 287
- 16 VALSALVA A M *Opera* Venice Pitteri 1740
- 17 MUELLER J (1838) Quoted by LUCIANI (22)
- 18 CROWDEN C P AND HARRIS H A Brit Med J 1909 1 439
- 19 ASCHER B Wien Klin Woch 1908 21 1570
- 20 DAGNINI Comun Soc Medico Chir Bologna June 17 1908
- 21 DANIELOPOULU AND CO WORKER Arch Mal Coeur 1923 16 161 and Bull Soc Med Hop de Paris 1923 47 386
- 22 LUCIANI L *Fisiologia dell Uomo* Milan S F L 1923
- 23 NIEHAUS F W AND WRIGHT W D Am Heart J 1915 30 600
- 24 TALAMIC H V *Congenital Malformations of the Heart* New York Commonwealth Fund 1947
- 25 LIAN C Arch Mal Coeur 1940 33 221
- 26 MACBRYDE C M *Signs and Symptoms Their Clinical Interpretation* Philadelphia J B Lippincott Co 1947
- 27 CARRAL Y DE TERESA R *Semiologia Cardiovascular* Inst Nac de Cardiol Mexico 1947
- 28 ORTIZ RAMIREZ T Arch Lat Amer Cardiol y Hematol 1933 8 115
- 29 LLISADA A A AND ROITMAN M Arch Inst Card Mexico 1948 18 345
- 30 COUNIHAN T H RAPPAFORT M B AND SPRAGLE H B Circ 1951 4 716
- 31 RAPPAFORT M B AND SPRAGLE H B Am Heart J 1951 42 600
- 32 LIAN C AND DANG VAN CHUNG Iressa Med 1950 88 585
- 33 LIAN C Acta Card 1949 3 49
- 34 RIVERO CARVALLO J M Rev Esp Card 1950 4 493
- 35 LLISADA A A MENDOZA F AND ALIOL RAG M R Brit Heart J 1940 11 41
- 36 LLISADA A A ALIOL RAG M R AND LEWIS I Am J Physiol 1952 168 276
- 37 LLISADA A A AND CONTRA S J Mt Sinai Hosp (New York) 1952 19 70
- 38 ASH R Penn Med J 1941 44 494

The Technical Study of the Cardiac Patient

The study of a cardiac patient is based upon data obtained through taking of history physical examination and technical examination. The technical data can be used fully only if correlated with the history and the physical findings of the patient.

Some technical methods represent an extension and completion of our senses. It could be said that fluoroscopy is inspection in depth, orthodiagraphy a more perfect percussion, cardiography and sphygmography a more perfect palpation and phonocardiography a finer and more perfect auscultation. On the other hand, electrocardiography, electrokymography and balistocardiography have no counterpart in the methods of physical examination and supply data which otherwise would be unavailable.

Cardiovascular dynamics causes vibrations of the chest wall which are spread over a wide frequency range from 0 to 1000 per second. These vibrations can be detected in various ways by physical or technical examination according to the frequency.

On account of the undeniable connection existing between high and low frequency vibrations of the thoracic and abdominal walls a common terminology should be used for the various waves. Therefore the terms 1, 2, 3, 4 and their subdivisions (1a, 1b, 2a, 2b) which refer to the heart sounds (page 90) should be used for other graphic tracings in order to indicate those waves which take place at the time of the heart sounds.

Tracings of the Heart Sounds (Phonocardiograms or Stethograms)

The purpose of phonocardiography is the graphic registration of the sounds and murmurs which originate in the heart and

vessels, consequent to cardiac action. Therefore the essential principles of phonocardiography cannot be dissociated from those of clinical auscultation (page 80).

Two methods were chiefly used by the pioneers of phonocardiography (1-6). The first utilized a microphone in combination with a string galvanometer (1), the second a capsule with a small mirror attached to the vibrating membrane (2). Both systems were imperfect and accordingly, of limited use. More recently, phonocardiography has been based on the use of a crystal microphone and an amplifying electrocardiograph (7).

THE PHONOCARDIOGRAPH

The phonocardiograph is composed of two main parts: the stethograph amplifier and the microphone with the chest piece.

Stethograph amplifier. This part of the system is usually incorporated in a larger apparatus which also records electrocardiograms and sphygmograms. The stethograph amplifier employs thermionic vacuum tubes based on a resistance-capacity coupled circuit. This is completely independent of another similar circuit which is used for electrocardiography.

The microphones. A microphone is a device which transforms sound waves into equivalent electrical pulsations.

The *piezoelectric crystal microphone* is based on the principle that stresses set up in a crystal of Rochelle salt (or quartz) by sound waves vary proportionately the output of electric potentials. The natural period of the crystal is about 10,000 cycles per second. Even if this is somewhat lowered by the diaphragm, the result is still far above the frequency of the vibrations set

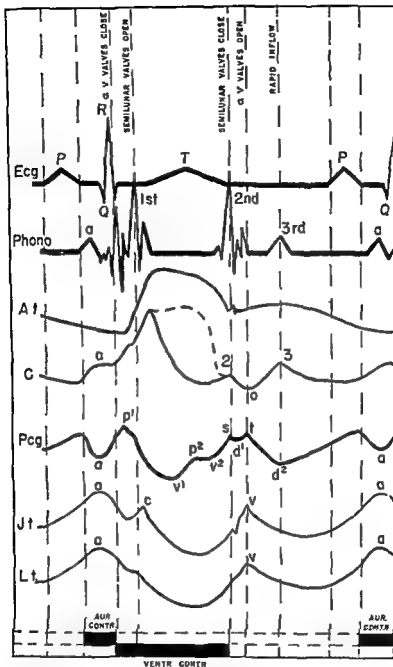


FIG 50 Time relationship of the different waves of various tracings Ecg electrocardiogram Phono phonocardiogram At aortic tracing (carotid or subclavian tracings) C cardiogram Pcg pneumocardiogram Jt jugular tracing Lt liver tracing AUR CONTR atrial contraction VENTR CONTR ventricular contraction

up by the heart. This type of microphone has been developed into different models, one of which is used for cardiography (page 95) while the following two are used for phonocardiography (7)

a) *The stethoscopic microphone.* In this microphone a special case contains the cartridge and an acoustic high pass filter. This filter eliminates the vibrations of extremely low frequency having importance

only for the mechanical cardiogram and protects the crystal from sudden high pressures. The filtering is made by a duct or channel which allows free passage of all vibrations above 30 per second while it arrests or decreases the slower vibrations. Moreover the response of the stethoscopic microphone has a rising characteristic so that the higher the pitch of the sound the better it is transmitted. *The resulting tracing corresponds to that auditory picture which is presented to the ear by an average stethoscope.* It is used for the study of both the relatively slow and the relatively high frequencies and includes many vibrations which being barely audible or not audible on account of their pitch can be termed as infra sounds.

b) *The logarithmic microphone.* The over all frequency response of this microphone is equivalent to the sum of the curve of the human audiogram plus that of the average acoustic stethoscope. The resulting response is a graphic picture of the heart sounds as they are perceived by the average observer. A special filter attenuates the low frequency components of the sounds or murmurs the over all decrease is compensated by the amplifier of the stethograph which increases the sound vibrations on a logarithmic scale (other deficiencies of the ear naturally cannot be reproduced). The resultant trac-

ing gives a good transcription of the high pitched or soft murmurs, like the aortic diastolic murmur.

The galvanometer employed for recording these tracings has the ability to reproduce vibrations up to 600 per second in the stetho cardiette up to 1000 per second in the twin beam.

In one of the latest apparatus a single microphone is used and either a stethoscopic or a logarithmic record can be obtained by flipping a switch which changes the electrical characteristics of the microphone.

THE HEART SOUNDS IN THE PHONOCARDIOGRAM

The so called heart sounds are noises i.e. *impure tones* composed of a number of vibrations different in frequency and in intensity. Each component imparts a distinctive quality to the whole sound. Even high pitched sounds usually have some low pitched component and vice versa.

The phonocardiogram of a normal subject may record up to four heart sounds (7-10) (figs 51-52-53a). It is customary to call the two loudest and most commonly heard sounds (or tones) the first and the second sound. As already said (page 41) the first of them takes place during early ventricular systole the second at the end of ventricular systole. For this reason

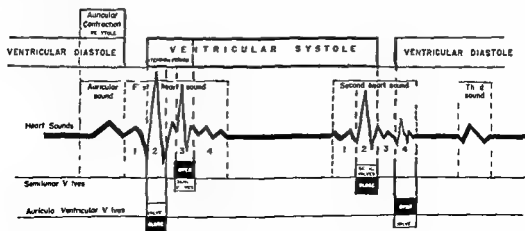


FIG 51 The vibrations of the sound tracing (phonocardiogram) and the valvular events of the heart

they have been called *the two normal systolic sounds* (197). The other two less constant sounds are the third and fourth sound which take place during diastole. According to the same classification they should be called *the two normal diastolic sounds* (197).

Systolic Sounds

The first sound. It has been stated (7-9) that four factors take part in the formation of this sound: the atrial, the muscular, the valvular and the vascular. Actually the muscular factor is revealed only indirectly through the effect that the contraction has on the position of the valves. The atrial factor is to be taken into consideration only in children where the fourth sound may seem to continue into the first. Therefore only the vascular factor may occasionally cause separate vibrations. The main vibrations are due to a single complex musculo-valvular mechanism (page 42) even if separate elements (or components) may be frequently identified within this sound (194). Five different parts have been described. *Part I* is a small low pitched vibration which coincides with or slightly follows the R wave of the electrocardiogram. Cases with a V block or atrial fibrillation present this vibration therefore it should be considered as coincident with and caused by ventricular tension (195). *Part II* consists of one or two large vibrations which are indirectly caused by the closure of the aortic valves (figs 51 and 52). This part of the sound precedes the rise of the pulse in the carotid and subclavian tracings. *Part III* is made of smaller vibrations which may include vibrations of the myocardium or the chest wall. *Part IV* consists of one or two large vibrations. It is caused indirectly by the opening of the semilunar valves of the aorta and pulmonary artery (page 42). This part corresponds with the rise of the pulse of the subclavian and carotid arteries and the end of rise in the tracing of intraventricular pressure. *Part V* takes place during the ejection period. It is made of

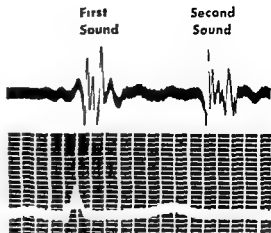


FIG. 52 Normal phonocardiogram. The first sound has a very clear splitting due to separate development of the two valvular components. The second sound also seems split on account of the large opening sound (os) of the mitral valve. Woman of 35, no heart disease.

one or two slow vibrations with superimposed rapid vibrations. It is caused by distention of the large arteries and by the whirlpools of blood flowing into them.

The second sound. It is caused by the rapid succession of the closure of the semilunar valves of the aorta and pulmonary and the subsequent opening of the aortic valves as well as by the causes of these valvular events (page 42). Four parts or components can be distinguished within the sound (7-9). *Part I* consists of one or two low pitched and small vibrations which coincide with the beginning of protodiastole. This part of the sound coincides with the end of the T wave of the electrocardiogram and the incisura of the pulse in the tracings of the carotid and subclavian tracings. *Part II* consists of one diphasic or triphasic vibration of high pitch and high amplitude. It is caused by closure of the semilunar valves. *Part III* consists of one or two low pitched vibrations of small amplitude due to shaking of the heart and vessels and representing aftervibrations. *Part IV* is due to the opening of the aortic valves and the result of this event on the ventricular wall. In most normal

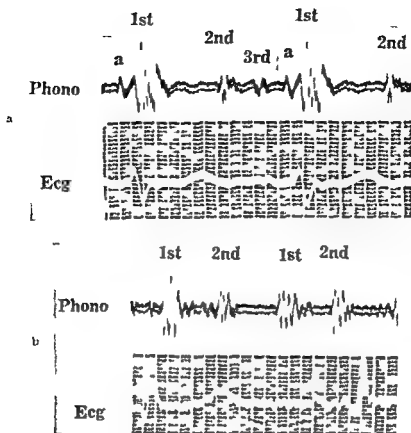


FIG. 53 Normal heart sounds compared with the electrocardiogram a The four heart sounds in a normal young man b Fetal heart sounds and maternal electrocardiogram

subjects this vibration is extremely small or even imperceptible. However normal subjects can present in this phase a single large low pitched vibration which has been called the *opening sound of the mitral valve* (os) (184) (fig. 52). This part of the sound coincides with a) the lowest point of the linear tracing of the apex or midprecordium (point 2b of cardiogram) b) the t wave of the phlebogram (this wave may follow os) c) a notch which is often present in the electrocardiogram of the left ventricle.

Diastolic Sounds

The diastolic sounds are usually two the third and fourth sound. They may be fused in a single sound-complex whenever there is severe tachycardia (page 370). The possible existence of a *fifth sound* following the third has been advocated by *Calo* (196)

while the author admitted in text the possibility of splitting of the third sound (197).

The third sound is not always recorded. It is more common in children, adolescents and young adults with a slender body and a flat chest. It consists of a single slow vibration usually not larger than one third or one fourth of the second sound. The third sound occurs at the peak of the phase of rapid passive filling (page 40) and coincides with a) the peak of wave d of the apex cardiogram b) the end of rapid relaxation in the electrocardiogram of the left ventricle.

The fourth sound (atrial sound) is recorded frequently as a small low pitched vibration having a height of about one third to one fourth of the first sound. It may consist of a diphasic or even triphasic vibration. It may be followed by a small after vibration. It is recorded best at the

apex or midprecordium especially in the left decubitus but may be recorded at the epigastrium as well. It is favored by tachycardia and is more common in children and adolescents. The fourth sound is only indirectly related to the atrial contraction. A comparison between tracings recorded via the esophagus and tracings recorded at the apex has shown that the fourth sound takes place earlier in the former than in the latter. This shows that the sound recorded at the apex is only the result of an impact of the blood pushed by the atrial contraction against the ventricular wall. The fourth sound takes place at the peak of the last phase of ventricular diastole that of rapid active filling, due to the atrial contraction.

Fetal Sounds

The fetal sounds can be recorded by the use of a stethoscopic microphone and a large funnel (fig. 53b). A rubber strap is placed around the abdomen of the mother and the microphone is placed where auscultation reveals the fetal sounds. A simultaneous electrocardiogram of the mother is recorded in order to exclude the possibility that the sounds are caused by pulsations of the mother's arteries. The latter would present the same rate as that of the mother's heart.

Murmurs

Systolic murmurs. A systolic murmur is revealed by the phonocardiograph as a series of vibrations of different pitches. Only in certain cases does the tracing present regular vibrations of a single frequency; then auscultation reveals a musical or "sea gull" murmur. The following types of systolic murmurs can be observed:

a) A *prolongation of the second phase* of the first sound.

b) A *prolongation of the total duration* of the first sound which lasts beyond the peak of the c wave of the jugular tracing or even the peak of the main wave of the carotid tracing.

c) A *murmur in decrescendo*. It ends before the second sound and is composed of

vibrations of different pitches. It is typical of *mitral regurgitation* and is recorded best at the apex in the left decubitus.

d) A *diamond shaped murmur*. The vibrations start soon after the end of the first sound, increase toward the middle of systole, decrease later. They are made of various frequencies with predominance of the medium type. The murmur is typical of *absolute or relative stenosis of the aorta or pulmonary artery*. The peak of the murmur corresponds to that of the pulse in the carotid tracing.

e) A *loud all systolic murmur*. This is typical of *severe aortic or pulmonary stenosis*. It covers the first sound, lasts throughout all systole and ends with the second sound which may not be visible.

f) A *low grade all systolic murmur*. This is usually made of *high pitched vibrations* and lasts throughout all systole. It is recorded mostly at the apex and may occur in *mitral regurgitation* especially in children.

Basal diastolic murmurs. The following types can be recognized:

a) A *prolongation of the second aortic or pulmonary sound*. The second sound is made of three or four vibrations in *decrecendo*. It is typical of *initial aortic or pulmonary insufficiency*.

b) A *diastolic murmur in decrescendo*. It is typical of *advanced aortic or pulmonary insufficiency*. The murmur starts as a *prolongation of the second sound* and gradually decreases in intensity until it disappears during mid diastole. If the vibrations are regular there is a *sea gull cry* type of murmur. The murmur may be separated from the second sound by a brief interval (198).

Apical diastolic murmurs. Frequently the murmurs are loudest over the mid precordium and should be called *rumbles* on account of the predominance of low frequency vibrations.

a) *Early-diastolic rumble*. Following the second phase of the second sound there is a pause or silence then an *opening snap* of the *mitral valve*. This vibration is followed immediately by a variable number of irregular vibrations at times only three or four

One or two louder vibrations may correspond to the peak of the wave of rapid filling. On the other hand the vibrations may continue throughout most of diastole, increase in presystole and continue until the following first sound.

b) *Presystolic murmur*. It corresponds to that short phase of diastole preceding the first sound during which occurs the atrial contraction. It frequently presents a type in *crescendo* and its vibrations continue with those of the first sound. However in certain cases the murmur decreases before the beginning of the first sound (199).

Continuous murmur. This type of murmur is typical of *fistulas* between vessels. It frequently has the auditory type of a *machinery murmur* and is found in *patent ductus arteriosus* and *arteriovenous fistulas* (fig 183). The duration of the murmur is such that it does not coincide exactly with the cardiac phases; it usually is loudest at the end of systole, covers the second sound and then decreases in diastole.

TECHNIQUE OF PHONOCARDIOGRAPHIC EXAMINATION

The phonocardiogram has not become familiar to physicians because of lack of familiarity with the technique and lack of knowledge relative to the interpretation of the records.

The only requirement for the *examining room* is relative isolation from outside noises. The patient should be placed on a cot supported by pillows in a semi-recumbent position. Thus other types of records can be taken at the same time. The patient should be stripped to the waist and covered by a sheet so that different parts of the precordial area may be successively exposed. He should be instructed to hold his breath on a signal from the observer so that any interference with respiratory sounds may be avoided. A rubber strap tied around the chest of the patient (above the right shoulder and below the left arm) holds a microphone over any point of the chest.

Both the *choice of the microphone* and that of the *areas to be studied* require a preliminary examination on the part of the physician. During routine examination the latter should quickly evaluate the most outstanding features of auscultation and mark the necessary points.

The first step in the study of a *phonocardiographic record* is the recognition and localization of the different sounds and murmurs so that each of them can be named. This is based on comparison of the time at which they occur with the time of occurrence of waves of other simultaneously recorded tracings. For each sound one should examine a) *location* (phase of systole or diastole) b) *duration* c) *amplitude* d) *frequency of the vibrations*. Further studies should be made in order to compare sounds and murmurs observed in one cycle with others observed in a following cycle (changes caused by respiration, alternation, arrhythmias) and in order to compare sounds and murmurs obtained over different areas.

The *routine phonocardiographic examination* should be done in the following way. One lead of the electrocardiogram is selected on account of the best development of the various waves and is used throughout. If the waves are small an increased voltage (2 cm per mv) is used. *Five tracings are recorded*: apex, mid precordium, pulmonary artery, aorta, tricuspid. The stethoscopic microphone with the large funnel is used (in children or persons with a bony chest the medium or small funnel should be preferred). After each tracing the logarithmic microphone with a similar funnel is substituted to the stethoscopic and a second record is taken. In case of soft murmurs, the diaphragm chest piece is used for the logarithmic tracing. When using a twin beam the switch from one to the other type of tracing can be done without changing microphone.

The *special phonocardiographic examination* includes tracings taken outside the conventional areas, records in special

phases of respiration (inspiratory or expiratory apnea) tracings in special positions (patient sitting or bent forward) functional tests and simultaneous tracings of various kinds (phonocardiogram and low frequency tracing of the apex, phonocardiogram and carotid or jugular tracing etc.)

Phonocardiography has been developed slowly on account of technical difficulties. Its importance is becoming greater from year to year. One should bear in mind that auscultation and phonocardiography are two inseparable approaches to the study of the same phenomena. Therefore whenever auscultation is useful, phonocardiography also is of help for diagnosis.

Phonocardiography should not be considered merely as a way to check and confirm auscultatory findings. It is *more accurate than auscultation* because it is not hampered by various physiological and psychological limitations inherent in auscultation. Having control of subsonic and borderline bands of vibrations, *phonocardiography covers a more extensive range*.

Differential diagnosis is considerably aided by phonocardiography in patients with the following diseases: rheumatic heart diseases with valvular lesions, luetic heart disease with aortic valve damage or aortitis, calcific aortic stenosis, congenital malformations of the heart and large vessels, bacterial endocarditis, adhesive and constrictive pericarditis, conditions associated with extensive myocardial damage (myocarditis, coronary heart disease, hypertensive heart disease) and disturbances of the heart rate and rhythm.

Low Frequency Tracing of the Precordium (Cardiography)

The name *cardiogram* was given in the past only to records of the apex beat. It is now possible to obtain records from nearly every point of the precordial area, any of them may bear the same name with added indication of the area, i.e. apex cardiogram, cardiogram—2nd left interspace, etc.

These tracings were studied first by means of plain *tambours* (18) then by the use of a *tambour* with a metal spring and a button (19) and later by a *tambour* or funnel connected to a Frank's capsule (22, 23). Two methods have been used recently: linear cardiography and manometric cardiography.

LINEAR CARDIOGRAPHY (21, 201)

The *linear microphone* is a crystal microphone which has the characteristics of recording all mechanical vibrations from 0 to 1000 cycles per second, set up by cardiac action without any distortion (7). The value of the electrical potential is proportional to the intensity of the vibrations. As the low frequency vibrations are even 10,000 times larger than those of the cardiac sounds, the degree of amplification needed to register the former is so small that the latter are recorded only as minute notches or not at all.

MANOMETRIC CARDIOGRAPHY (202)

The chest piece is connected by a short piece of hard tubing to the tube of an electro-manometer. The latter is provided with a high sensitivity microphone and the whole system is filled with air.

Comparative studies (201) have shown that only slight differences are present between tracings of linear and manometric cardiography. They consist of slightly larger rapid waves in the former, slightly larger slow waves in the latter. For various practical reasons, linear cardiography is still preferable to manometric cardiography.

The usual technique of recording is the following: The patient is placed in a supine or semirecumbent position with complete muscular relaxation. A rubber strap is placed around his chest. A low funnel of 5 cm in diameter with a side opening is screwed onto a stethoscopic microphone placed over any point of the precordium and held in place by the rubber strap. Thus

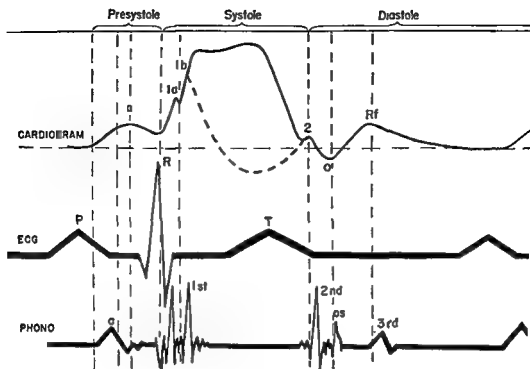


FIG. 54 The cardiogram with its physiological variations compared with the electrocardiogram and phonocardiogram

two simultaneous tracings can be recorded one of them is a tracing of the high frequency vibrations of the chest corresponding to a stethoscopic phonocardiogram the other is a low frequency tracing of the chest or cardiogram. The funnel records pulsations from about two intercostal spaces in the adult.

The following areas of the precordium can be investigated: apex, midprecordium, pulmonary area, aortic area, and tricuspid area.

The normal precordial tracing (figs. 54, 55 and 57) is the resultant of several factors:

a) Movements of the heart (especially of the apex) together with better contact of the ventricular wall with the chest wall due to rotation of the apex and stiffening of the ventricular mass during the tension period.

b) Changes in volume of the heart due to decrease of the ventricular mass during ejection and its increase during diastole.

c) Pulsations of the large arteries more or less directly transmitted.

The movements of the heart are particularly well recorded over the apex when the subject is either lying on his left side or sitting. The volume changes are recorded better over the mid precordium in the supine position. The arterial pulsations are recorded best at the base.

A small upright and rounded wave can be observed in the cardiogram during presystole (wave 4). This is related to atrial contraction and is caused by rapid inflow of blood entering the ventricles as proven by cases of complete heart block. The curve starts to rise at the beginning of ventricular systole; the onset of motion occurs between the Q and R waves of the electrocardiogram and with the first slow wave of the phonocardiogram in cases of atrial fibrillation. This rise due to hardening of the ventricular mass during the tension period reaches a peak which is simultaneous with that part of the first sound indicating the closure of the aortic valves (point 1a). Following a notch the curve frequently rises again at the be-

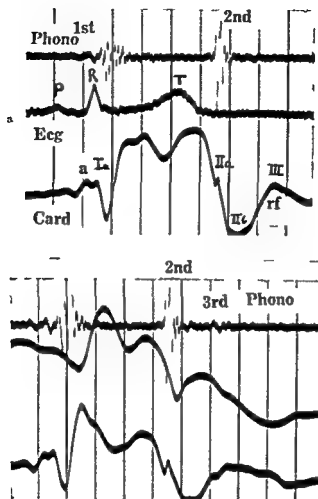


FIG. 55. Cardiograms recorded at the apex in a normal individual in the supine position with positive plateau LCG and sound tracing. Comparison of the cardiogram and sound tracings.

beginning of ejection simultaneously with the opening of the semilunar valves (point 1b).

Two main types may be seen. In the first a systolic plateau constitutes the main part of the tracing; this indicates predominance of motion phenomena in the tracing. In the second a deep inverted wave occurs during most of systole, changes of volume having predominance over evidence of motion. In both tracings the curve has a notch which is simultaneous with the closure of the semilunar valves (point 2a). From this point on the various cardiograms are similar whatever direction the waves had during systole.

Since diastole is in two phases of rapid inflow, the diastolic waves in the tracing are the wave of rapid diastole. This is usually a peak is simultaneous with the sound (point 3). A notch in the vibration of the heart which is simultaneous with the point occurs at the end of the wave of rapid diastole. Therefore the wave of rapid diastole is the same in all tracings (opening of the semilunar valves, point 2b). The second



caused by *atrial contraction* and takes place just before the following ventricular systole (point 1)

REGIONAL VARIATIONS

a) *Pulmonary area* The waves are usually small but amplification facilitates their study. There is a *relatively high presystolic wave* and a *well defined positive wave during early systole*. The former is probably due to contraction of the *left atrium* indirectly transmitted through intermediate organs. Whenever there is a pulsation during the ejection period this is caused by the *pulse of the pulmonary artery (wave p)*.

b) *Aortic area* The waves are usually small. There is a *well defined wave during the tension period* and a *positive wave during early systole*. The former is transmitted from the *left ventricle*; the latter is an *arterial wave* caused by the *pulse of the ascending aorta (wave p)*. Closure of the aortic valves is marked by a notch.

c) *Tricuspid area* The cardiogram shows a *high presystolic wave*, small systolic notches and a *well defined early diastolic wave*. The first is probably due to the *contraction of the right atrium* because of the proximity of this chamber; the latter is due to *rapid inflow* into the right ventricle.

Cardiography has lost much of its importance for the diagnosis of arrhythmias of the heart, having been replaced by electro-

cardiography. It still has a place in the study of valvular and septal defects. Interesting cardiographic data may be found in cases of hypertensive or coronary heart disease or cor pulmonale. In all of them cardiography may be used in order to recognize the phase and significance of the sounds recorded by phonocardiography. The value of cardiograms for recognition of diastolic sounds is great and is superior to that of jugular tracings. Cases of adhesive pericarditis and of aortic aneurysm often require an accurate cardiographic study. Personal studies (201) have shown that the comparison of the apex cardiogram with the epigastric tracing is of value for recognition of right or left ventricular enlargement.

Epigastric Tracing

Epigastric tracings were recorded long ago by students of cardiology (25, 26, 27). The present technique is identical with that of cardiograms (page 95). The bell should be placed as high as possible in the epigastric triangle, even to the extent of including part of the xiphoid process, but more on the left side. The patient may be studied in either the supine or the sitting position. The latter gives rise to larger respiratory oscillations which however can be avoided by using a special filter. A rubber strap keeps the microphone in place without undue pressure. If an epigastric tracing is recorded together with an apex phonocardiogram, two microphones should be used: one should be placed over the apex, the other is used as a support for the bell over the epigastrium. The bell of the latter should be connected to a linear microphone and the tracing is recorded by the electrocardiograph.

NORMAL EPIGASTRIC TRACING

The following factors should be considered:

a) Pulsations transmitted through the diaphragm from the heart, mainly the right heart.

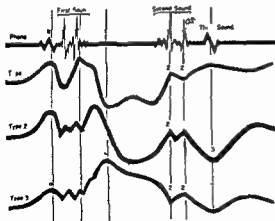


FIG. 56. Different types of epigastric tracings.

b) Effect of changes of intrathoracic pressure on the diaphragm

c) Pulsations of the liver

d) Pulsations of the abdominal aorta

Epigastric tracings are by no means identical. Even in different normal individuals an amazing variety of records can be obtained (fig. 56). Some parts of the tracing are common to all while others vary. Again a terminology similar to that of the cardiogram is suggested.

A high positive wave is usually present during *presystole* (wave 4). During the *period of tension* the curve either falls below the base line or has two small notches caused by the two valvular events of this phase (1a and 1b). A positive wave may be present in the phase immediately following however in most tracings a deep *negative plateau* takes place during a large part of systole. A positive wave simultaneous with the arterial pulse occurs in others (wave p). Closure of the semilunar valves is marked on all records by a well defined notch (2a) which may be either upright or inverted. The *opening of the aortic valves* is well defined in most records (2b). *Rapid filling* of the ventricle is also indicated by a deep wave which may be either upright or inverted (wave 3).

The *presystolic wave* is largely due to the mechanical movement of the *right atrium* transmitted through the diaphragm. The two notches 1a and 1b when present are caused by the valvular events of early systole and probably more by those of the right heart. The *high systolic wave* represents the beginning of a systolic plateau abruptly interrupted by the following *systolic collapse*. It is likely that the plateau is due mostly to motion of the right ventricle the collapse to its volume changes. The high wave of other tracings on the contrary occurs later in systole and is a *transmitted aortic pulsation*.

Different types of tracings can be recognized (fig. 56). *Type 1 tracings* reveal the predominant influence of ventricular events

during systole and early diastole. *Type 2 tracings* show mainly the effect of changes of intrathoracic pressure. *Type 3 tracings* are largely influenced by the aortic pulsations but still show effect of motion during presystole and early systole. Effect of thoracic pressure changes during diastole. *Type 4 tracings* are pure hepatic tracings and occur when the enlarged liver occupies the epigastrium (page 103 figs. 58 and 59b).

If it is true that the right heart has a particular influence on the epigastric tracing information about dynamics of the right atrium and ventricle will be obtained by the study of this record. Simultaneous (or immediately subsequent) tracings of the apex and the epigastrium complete therefore our knowledge of the dynamics of the two halves of the heart. The atrial wave of the tracing is larger in the epigastric tracing than in any other record of cardiac pulsations. In cases where a hepatic tracing is necessary this should always be compared with the epigastric tracing in order to avoid confusion between liver pulsations and transmitted pulsations. Comparison of the epigastric tracing with the apex cardiogram is of value for recognition of right or left ventricular enlargement (201).

Jugular Vein Tracing (Phlebogram)

Venous pulsations may be very striking and accordingly they were described early and studied in detail (28-31). Increasing progress of electrocardiography lessened the importance of the phlebogram. More recent studies related in general to phonocardiography and particularly to cases of bundle branch block and mitral stenosis again made use of venous tracings.

Early studies were made by lightly applying a funnel over the bulb of the right jugular vein. The funnel was connected with a Marey tambour. Necessity of avoiding any even slight compression of the vein led to description of many ingenious devices such as a little sambucus ball moving a delicate lever (32). Progress was later made

by substituting a Frank's capsule for the Marey's tambour. Later a small mirror reflecting a light beam was pasted on the skin of the cervical region or the patient was directly interposed between the source of light and the camera (33).

The best system consists of a spectral applicator and a crystal microphone (21). The *applicator* is a double circular cup. The inner chamber is used for picking up the venous pulsations; the outer chamber connected with the bulb develops a suction for fastening the cup to the patient's skin. The venous pulsations set up changes of pressure in the funnel. These are transmitted through a short tube to a linear microphone which converts them into equivalent electric pulsations. The electric waves are recorded

by the camera after amplification and transmission to a galvanometer.

The *suction cup* is applied either over the external jugular vein or over the jugular bulb. The right side of the neck is usually preferred owing to the greater proximity of the great veins to the right atrium. In normal people and in most patients the venous pulse is recorded in supine position with the head nearly at the level of the heart. In cardiac patients a good tracing can sometimes be obtained in a semirecumbent position because of the higher venous pressure. In persons with low venous pressure a tracing can be obtained either by placing the head slightly lower than the heart or by slightly compressing the vein.

The normal venous tracings show three

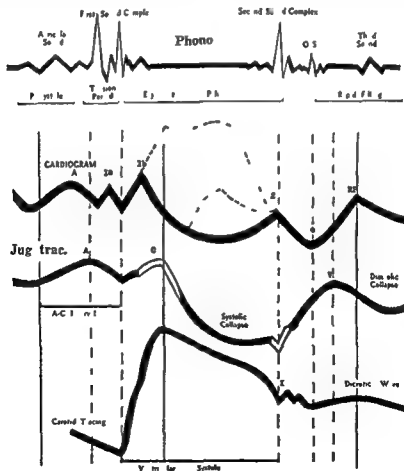


FIG. 5—The jugular tracing (phlebogram) compared with the other tracings. In black, that part of the tracing which has a venous origin. In white, that part of the tracing which has an arterial origin.

positive and three negative waves (30) (figs 57, 58 and 59a)

The *presystolic wave (a)* is positive and occurs during and after atrial contraction. It is usually a rounded wave followed by a sharp drop during early tension of the ventricles. However tracings recorded through an amplifier frequently present a tall and peaked presystolic wave.

The *systolic wave (c)* is positive and occurs during early systole after the opening of the semilunar valves. It is a peaked wave followed by a long and slow depression (x or *systolic collapse*) which lasts through most of the ejection period and slightly beyond it. Toward its end a little notch may mark the closure of the semilunar valves.

The *early diastolic wave (b)* is also positive. It is a peaked wave which coincides with the opening of the a.v. valves and marks therefore the beginning of ventricular filling. This is followed by a depression (y or *diastolic collapse*). When diastole is long another small positive wave (h) may be found after it.

Two types of jugular tracings are most commonly recorded in normal subjects.

a) The *atrial pressure type*. Here the c wave is characterized by a sharp decline at the onset of systolic ejection and during the traction on the atrio-ventricular septum just as in atrial pressure curves.

b) The *modified arterial type*. The c wave is high and rapid due to impact of an adjacent artery. It often resembles the first part of a central arterial pulse.

It has been shown (36) that each wave of the venous tracing is the result of changes of volume of pressure and velocity. The relation between these three factors (volume, pressure and velocity) varies from moment to moment. It seems likely moreover that in high venous pressure changes of pressure predominate over changes of volume because the veins are already distended.

The *presystolic (a) wave* is undoubtedly related to the contraction of the right atrium as shown by the fact that it is absent in

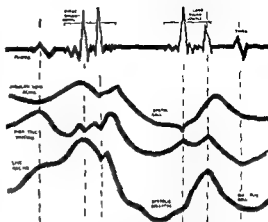


FIG. 58 The jugular tracing compared with the hepatic and epigastric tracings

cases of atrial fibrillation. Its beginning marks the beginning of atrial contraction, its peak the end of the same phase. The a wave is largely a pressure wave with additional volume and velocity components. Actual regurgitation of blood is minimal in normal subjects but may become more important when venous pressure is high and the superior vena is dilated. The wave occurs about 0.10 second after the corresponding rise of pressure within the right atrium. The wave is much larger when simultaneous contraction of the atria and ventricles leads to important regurgitation of blood into the venous system as in nodal rhythm, nodal premature beats and a.v. block.

The *systolic (c) wave* is a pressure wave. In many cases it is due to transmission of the strong pulsation of the underlying subclavian or carotid artery, and the wave is an unavoidable artefact. In other cases the wave is venous and is caused by an arterial pulsation transmitted from the ascending aorta to the superior vena cava. The same is true of the small notch marking the closure of the semilunar valves (fig. 57). It has been shown (39, 40, 41) that occasionally a double (c) wave may be seen, the first component being due to closure of the tricuspid valve, the second to arterial pulsation.

The *early diastolic wave (b)* is connected to the opening of the tricuspid valve. The

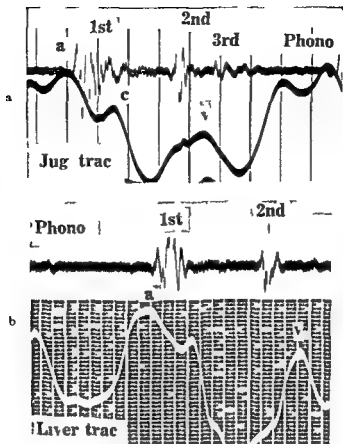


FIG 50 a Jugular tracing of a normal young man in the supine position Phonocardiogram
b Hepatic tracing of a normal young man Phonocardiogram

rise preceding its peak is the expression of the gradual filling of the right atrium. Therefore the *a* wave is chiefly a volume wave. However, as the fall of the curve is caused by the opening of the tricuspid valve, the descending limb is almost exclusively due to a drop in pressure.

A depression occurs during early tension of the ventricles. Its depth is greater when the interval between atrial and ventricular contractions is longer. The depression (*x*) (systolic collapse) occurs during the ejection phase of ventricular systole. It is due to suction caused on the venous system by the outflow of blood from the thorax and by the downward movement of the *a* septum. It is, therefore, a wave due to increased speed of the blood and decreased volume of the vein.

The depression (*y*) (diastolic collapse) fol-

lows the *x* wave. Slow filling of the right atrium terminates this depression. Sometimes it is followed by a small positive wave which has been attributed to floating of the tricuspid valve.

There is no constant relation between the waves of the phlebogram and those of the electrocardiogram, except for a close time relationship between the intervals *a* *c* and *P* *Q*.

The waves of the jugular and hepatic tracings practically coincide except for the *x* wave which is nearly absent in the latter.

The fourth (atrial) sound slightly precedes the peak of the *a* wave of the venous tracing. This coincidence is due to the fact that both events follow the atrial contraction. The fourth sound is due to the blood hitting the ventricular wall while it takes

some time for the transmission of the α wave from the right atrium to the vein. The descending limb of the α wave is so slow that it ends after the start of the first sound.

The main vibration of the *second sound* precedes the peak of τ by about 0.10 second while the *third sound* falls during the descending limb of τ , e.g. 0.06-1 to 0.078 second later. However, there may be a much shorter interval between τ and the third sound and there may even be coincidence. This fact due to occasional slower transmission of the τ wave reduces the importance of the jugular tracing for identification of an early diastolic sound.

The jugular tracing is of definite value a) in valvular defects chiefly tricuspid lesions b) in heart failure with functional insufficiency of the tricuspid valve c) in bundle branch block and d) in cases with low voltage of the P wave of the electrocardiogram or where the former is masked by other waves. The jugular tracing gives information concerning mechanical events of the right heart. In this respect it still holds a special place together with the hepatic and epigastric tracings among graphic methods.

Record of Pulsations of the Liver (Hepatic Tracing)

The hepatic tracing is recorded without difficulty when the liver is enlarged or lowered. Tracings of normal individuals are obtained less readily.

The hepatic tracing was studied many years ago (20-12). The importance of this record is due to the fact that 1) the liver is influenced by changes of flow and pressure in the inferior vena cava and 2) there is no underlying arterial vessel (corresponding to the carotid artery under the jugular vein) which may affect the record. Old records were obtained by means of Marey tambours (20-37-43-44). More recent studies of normal hepatic tracings were made by means of Frank's capsule (4a).

Modern procedure is based on the fact

that a crystal microphone of a linear type transforms pulsations of the air contained in the applicator into electrical waves. These are recorded by the galvanometer of an electrocardiograph and are transcribed photographically or by direct writing methods. Another sound or mechanical tracing should be simultaneously recorded in order to time accurately the waves. Whenever the waves are small and magnification is necessary a preamplifier may be introduced between the crystal microphone and the galvanometer. The sensitivity of the linear microphone is such that the round bell normally used for taking low frequency tracings of the chest is sufficient for recording hepatic tracings. A microphone connected to the cup as a support is placed over the right upper quadrant of the abdomen and is held by a rubber strap. If respiration is forceful and irregular the microphone may be held by hand; however, this procedure is not recommended because slight movements of the hand may be recorded by the microphone. In normal individuals the same procedure may be used on that part of the liver which crosses the epigastrium by firmly applying the cup below the right costal arch. Respiratory movements possess an amplitude far greater than the hepatic waves; therefore it is necessary for the patient to hold his breath for a few seconds during the taking of the tracing. If the patient is unable to do so, closing of the nose and mouth by hand for a few seconds may be necessary. Otherwise a high pass electric filter may be used. This reduces the amplitude of all slow waves so that the shape of certain hepatic waves is somewhat changed. Detection of a plateau might be more difficult with the use of the filter.

The hepatic tracing shows a *small positive wave during presystole* (a wave) (figs 58 and 59b). It is due to presystolic swelling of the liver when atrial contraction arrests the venous inflow. Regurgitation of blood in presystole is minimal in normal

individuals while it may be important in subjects with high venous pressure. The a wave of the jugular tracing and that of the hepatic tracing are practically simultaneous. However, the jugular a wave may precede the hepatic a wave, especially if the former is recorded through an amplifier. The rise of the a wave of the hepatic tracing precedes the 1st sound at the apex by about 0.15 sec. Tracings of patients with high venous pressure and distended liver may present an atrial wave which is much higher in the hepatic than in the epigastric tracing, proving the hepatic origin of this wave. In exceptional cases a double presystolic wave may be recorded. The first (a) is transmitted through the diaphragm via the epigastrium; the second (a^1) is a real hepatic wave.

The beginning of ventricular contraction is revealed by a small positive wave (wave 1) probably transmitted through the diaphragm; following this there is a deep collapse. In normal individuals the *systolic collapse* recorded below the right costal arch is far deeper than that recorded below the left costal arch. Therefore the former is the result of decreased hepatic volume while the latter is due to rise of the diaphragm with decrease of abdominal pressure. Sometimes a small notch can be seen during that part of the 1st sound which coincides with the opening of the semilunar valves and during the wave 1b of the cardiogram; it is probably transmitted through the diaphragm.

The tracing rises gradually at first, rapidly later, with a peak (1 or 2b) at the time of the opening of the tricuspid valve. Following this the curve falls, forming a *deep and rounded negative wave*, variable in shape and depth because of the effect of respiration on venous return. The lowest point of this wave coincides with the wave of rapid filling of the cardiogram and should be named 3. It may also be called *diastolic collapse*.

It should be kept in mind that a right ventricular impact is transcribed as an early systolic wave followed by a deep depression

while the positive hepatic pulse of tricuspid insufficiency consists of a positive systolic plateau (page 270).

In conclusion, the normal hepatic tracing is formed by a *deep negative wave, the systolic collapse*. This is preceded by an *atrial positive wave* and is followed by a *diastolic collapse* (figs. 58 and 59b). The main causes for these waves are changes of flow in the inferior vena cava. Smaller notches may be transmitted from the heart through the diaphragm.

The hepatic tracing may yield important data in diseases of the tricuspid valve in heart failure and in constrictive pericarditis. The absence of an underlying artery giving a powerful systolic pulsation may make the hepatic tracing superior to the jugular vein tracing.

Pulsations of the Heart Recorded Through the Esophagus (Esophagocardiogram)

The esophagocardiogram was first recorded by using a Marey tambour (48-56) then by a Frank capsule (57-58). The linear microphone should be preferred and gives accurate tracings. A phonocardiogram can be recorded together with the esophagocardiogram.

The best type of stomach tube is one of 5 mm. internal bore. This may be connected to a rubber cylinder having a metal support or a small balloon slightly distended by air. The tube should be marked in centimeters and should be radio opaque so that its penetration may be followed by fluoroscopy. It should be kept in mind that the esophagus curves in its lower section and proceeds from the vicinity of the spine into the anterior mediastinum below the heart. According to the position of the tip, four types of curves can be obtained.

a) At the aortic level, 25 to 30 cm. from the dental arch.

22 A thin (0.1 mm.) rubber membrane tied around the tip of a stomach tube may be used for the purpose.

b) At a high atrial level, 30 to 35 cm from the dental arch

c) At a low atrial level 35 to 40 cm from the dental arch

d) At the ventricular level 40 to 45 cm from the dental arch

Each of the tracings present interest. However, those of positions b and c are the most important.

a) *Tracing at the aortic level* The characteristics of this are the following: A small negative wave during presystole 0.05 to 0.08 after the beginning of P in the electrocardiogram (wave 4); a small diphasic wave at the beginning of systole with inscription of the first large vibration of the first sound (wave 1a); a deep systolic collapse during the ejection period interrupted by a small positive wave simultaneous with the c wave of the jugular tracing; a rapid rise coinciding with the second sound and the incisura of the carotid pulse (wave 2a); a rapid rise with a positive peak at the time of the third sound (wave 3).

b) *Tracing at the high atrial level* Usually, a negative wave is present during presystole (wave 4); a positive peak is simultaneous with the first sound (wave 1); then there is a small dip and a small peak synchronous with the c wave of the jugular tracing; later a rounded negative wave occurs during ejection and culminates with a positive peak at the time of the second sound (wave 2); last a negative peak is present during rapid filling of the ventricles (wave 3).

c) *Tracing at the low atrial level (true atrial tracing)* (fig 60) There is a negative wave during presystole with a peak which follows by 0.03-0.04 that of the P wave of the electrocardiogram (wave 4); this wave may be double peaked. After this and starting after R a small positive wave (wave 1a) occurs during the first part of the first sound. This is followed by a small drop and another small positive wave synchronous with the second part of the first heart sound (wave 1b). Then there is a systolic collapse and a positive or negative peak at the time of the

second sound (wave 2). Rapid ventricular filling is marked by a deep collapse (wave 3).

d) *Tracing at the ventricular level* The presystolic wave (4) is more frequently positive than negative. The systolic collapse is poorly visible. There are large vibrations caused by the valvular events and simultaneous with the heart sounds 1a, 1b, 2a. Rapid filling is marked by a high positive wave called 3.

Several factors act on the intra-esophageal pressure and give rise to the waves of the esophagocardiogram.

a) *The variations of intrathoracic pressure* One of the main effects is the deep systolic collapse of the tracing at the aortic level.

b) *The changes in volume of the left atrium* This chamber is in the near proximity of the esophagus and its presystolic contraction causes a negative wave in the tracing at the low atrial level (sometimes also in that at the high atrial level). Lowering of the atrio-ventricular floor by the left ventricle causes the systolic collapse at the low atrial level.

c) *The pulsation of the descending aorta* It may be observed in the tracing recorded at the high atrial level as a positive systolic wave.

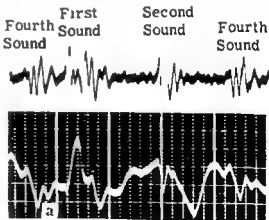


FIG 60 Sound tracing from the esophagus and esophagocardiogram at high atrial level in a normal adult

d) *The impact of the ventricular contraction* It can be observed in most tracings chiefly during the tension period

e) *The vibrations of the heart sounds* These are inscribed in most of the tracings

Until a few years ago the esophagocardiogram had a unique position This tracing recorded at the atrial level presented direct evidence of the movements of the left atrium Its usefulness was particularly marked in patients with a systolic murmur where a differential diagnosis between rheumatic mitral disease and other cardiac diseases was necessary At present electrokymography represents an easier and better tolerated method of study Still esophagocardiography presents some interest In particular whenever a fluoroscope and an electrokymograph are not available the esophagocardiogram may be the method of choice

Pulsations of the Heart Recorded Through the Air Passages (Internal Pneumocardiogram)

Physiologic studies of the past (59-60) showed that the heart beat is accompanied by changes of pressure within the thorax causing a movement of air through the nostrils and mouth In the presence of disease this movement may be so great that the observer becomes aware of it (61-63) Older studies were made through the use of either a Marey tambour (64-65) or a Frank's

capsule (66) The use of the pneumotachograph connected to a Frank's capsule (67) or to a string anemometer (68a) later permitted a more careful study of the different waves A study of the pneumocardiogram by means of an *intrabronchial catheter* (68) confirmed that the recorded waves are caused mainly by differences between inflow to and outflow from the chest

Use of the *linear microphone with a filter* and recording of the pneumocardiogram together with a phonocardiogram constitutes the present technique (69) The filter is used for decreasing the intensity of the slow respiratory waves without curtailing the rapid pulsations caused by the heart beat²⁰ A rubber tube is connected to the microphone It ends in an olive which is inserted in one of the nostrils of the patient The patient is placed in a comfortable sitting position with complete muscular relaxation A semi-recumbent position may also be employed The patient is instructed to breathe normally through the nose with his mouth closed

The normal pneumocardiogram has five negative waves each having a definite connection with some phase of cardiac action Only two positive waves are usually present but as the junction between some of the negative waves may become more positive and reach a point above the base line they may increase in number (figs 50 and 61)

A negative wave (a) is present during presystole Residual arterial outflow from

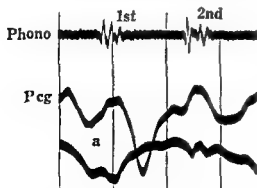


FIG 61 A normal pneumocardiogram (Pcg) compared with a sound tracing (Phono)

²⁰ The electrical filter does not remove every trace of the low frequency waves caused by respiration Thus some waves may be seen in the pneumocardiogram in one cycle and not in another because of the unlike rhythms of respiration and cardiac action These respiratory components are more marked in children and excitable adults Pneumocardiographic waves may be differentiated from respiratory waves because they occur in every succeeding cardiac cycle although they may be somewhat modified in contour Difference between different cycles however is more than an artefact it is partly due to changes of venous return by effect of the different respiratory phases

the thorax plus the cessation of venous return causes a suction of air and therefore a depression in the pneumocardiogram. Later a small positive wave is simultaneous with the wave *1a* of the apex beat before the rise of the carotid pulse. The *av* valves are slightly raised at the beginning of the tension period, then are lowered by the contraction of the papillary muscles. This movement creates a slight aspiration of blood into the right atrium with a resulting small outflow of air from the thorax. This notch is called *p¹* (contraction of the papillary muscles or first positive wave).

During the first half of systole blood leaves the thorax through the branches of the aortic arch and abdominal aorta. Considerable aspiration of air into the thorax exists in this phase with a resulting negative wave in the pneumocardiogram. This wave which is often the most marked of all has been called *u¹* (1st ventricular wave).

After the first part of systole the aspiration exerted on the veins by the increased negative pressure within the thorax and by the lowering of the atrioventricular septum causes a quick inflow into the right atrium (as shown by the jugular and hepatic tracings) which may be greater than the outflow of arterial blood. The pneumocardiogram shows an upright notch which usually does not reach the zero line but may occasionally become positive. The pulsations of the pulmonary arteries and of the tracheal and nasopharyngeal vessels also contribute to the formation of this wave (wave *p²* = peripheral pulse or 2nd positive wave).

Little blood enters the thorax during the second half of systole since the right atrium is nearly filled. At the same time the blood continues to flow into the peripheral vessels and another negative wave occurs in the pneumocardiogram: evidence of a suction of air into the thorax. This wave (*u* = second ventricular wave) is at times larger than *u¹*.

An upright notch (*s* = semilunar takes) occurs simultaneously with the 2nd sound

and with the incisura of the carotid pulse. A small downward wave (*d¹*) or a straight line occurs later.

The opening of the tricuspid valve causes a sudden rush of blood from the venoatrial reservoir into the right ventricle. The moment of transition is indicated by an upright notch which may become a decidedly positive wave (*u* wave = tricuspid valve opening). It occurs simultaneously with the point *e* of the cardiogram and with or before the peak of the *t* wave of the jugular tracing. An increased amount of blood leaves the thorax at the time of the diastolic wave in the aorta. Blood flows from the large veins into the right atrium but its amount is less than that which leaves the thorax through the arteries. Therefore an inflow of air into the thorax occurs revealed by a deep negative wave in the pneumocardiogram (*d* = second diastolic wave). The peak of the wave *rf* of the cardiogram and the 3rd heart sound occur at the point of maximum depression of *d*.

Normal persons show larger waves of the pneumocardiogram during inspiration, smaller waves during expiration. The best tracings are obtained either in a sitting or in a semi-recumbent position with the patient completely relaxed. Other positions (such as supine, sitting erect, sitting bent forward or standing) may produce important changes in the pneumocardiogram (68) which can be explained as the result of an altered venous return. In general the difference between the sitting and semi-recumbent positions is unimportant. Somewhat different results have been obtained by others employing different techniques (68b).

Arterial Pulse Tracings (Sphygmograms)

A sphygmogram is a tracing of the changes in volume of an artery consequent to internal changes in pressure. It can be divided into three types: aortogram, cervical sphygmogram, and peripheral sphygmogram.

The old sphygmographs recorded the pulse

tion of the radial artery by placing over it a button with a tension such that the extra arterial approximated the intra arterial diastolic pressure (Marey's principle) First systems of levers or tambours amplified the excursions of the arterial wall (18 19 70-73) Then an improved record was obtained by the use of a pneumatic cuff inflated to a known pressure and of a differential capsule (oscillometric capsule of Pachon Bouhette) (74) Further improvement was obtained by using a Frank's optical capsule and by photographic recording The optic method was later adapted to the differential capsule as well as to an open cup pressed to the skin over the carotid artery The latest improvement is the combination of pneumatic cuff differential capsule and crystal microphone (154) (p 161)

The aortogram may be recorded readily over three points the 2nd right interspace the suprasternal notch and the abdomen (fig 62) The first record, already described with the cardiogram shows a typical aortic pulse but still has some waves caused by cardiac action The second type of aortogram is nearly free from cardiac waves Whenever the aortic arch is dilated or blood pressure is increased excellent tracings are obtained in this area The abdominal aortogram is recorded about 1 inch above the umbilicus Poor results are obtained when the abdomen is distended or obese In lean individuals on the contrary it is obtained easily In aortic lesions this tracing is of interest

In all three types of aortogram a small cup connected to a linear microphone is

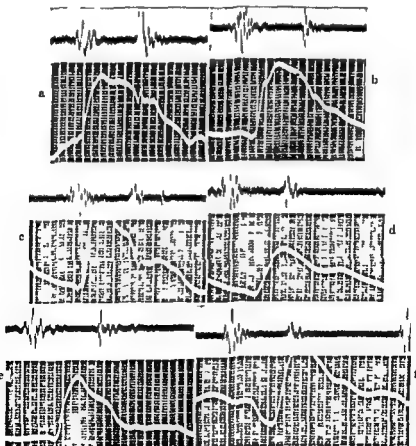


FIG 62 Pulse in different arteries compared with the sound tracing over the aortic area in normal young people a suprasternal notch b abdominal aorta c subclavian artery d radial artery e femoral artery f tibial artery

pressed against the skin over the vessel. In the case of the suprasternal notch the pressure is made by hand in the other two instances a rubber band holds the cup. The simple way is to use the microphone as support for the cup. Thus a simultaneous recording of the arterial sounds is possible.

The *cervical pulse* may be obtained over either the carotid or the subclavian artery. The best way to obtain such a tracing is again by the use of an open cup pressed on the artery either behind the sternocleidomastoid (carotid) or above the clavicle (subclavian) (fig 62).

The *peripheral pulse* of the extremities (arm forearm wrist thigh leg foot) is recorded easily by an apparatus consisting of a double chamber pneumatic cuff connected to a linear microphone and an amplifier (75). It utilizes both the principle of the differential manometer and that of the crystal microphone. It has the advantage that the records are taken from a cuff maintained at a constant pressure while the pressure is modified at will in another cuff. Furthermore it gives two simultaneous records that of the arterial pulse and that of the arterial sounds. Therefore in addition to sphygmographic purpose the apparatus may be used also for graphic recording of the blood pressure (page 161).

The pulse of the fingers or toes can be recorded by means of a photoelectric cell (transillumination of the part) (173).

AORTIC TRACING

The aortogram is essentially a tracing of central pulse (fig 61 a, b). Tracings recorded in normal subjects at the 2nd right inter-space or at the suprasternal notch may present additional waves due to changes of cardiac volume and inscription of vibrations which are simultaneous with the heart sounds.

An atrial wave in presystole (*wave 4*) a small wave during the tension period (*wave 1a*) and a wave of rapid filling in early

diastole (*wave 3*) may be observed. The tracing shows a steep rise at the beginning of ejection and a small depression in the ascending limb of the pulse (*anacrotism*). This is followed by a slower rise to a rounded peak and a slow decline. The end of ventricular contraction and the onset of ventricular relaxation are marked by a sudden drop of the tracing (*incisura*). After this one or more coarse vibrations take place indicating the rebound of the blood on the closed aortic valve then a slow decline of the tracing can be seen.

As soon as the ascending aorta and the aortic arch are dilated the blood wave moves rapidly into the abdominal aorta and reaches the arteries of the legs. The movement of blood during systole is complicated by the low natural frequency of the aortic wall and by reflected waves from regions with sudden narrowings and branchings (73). It has been proven that the pulse wave presents gradual changes so that it gradually acquires a higher peak and a simpler contour. This is due to the existence of a standing wave created by alternate accelerations and decelerations (203). The arch and the upper part of the descending aorta accommodate more blood during the first part of ejection, the lower aorta and its branches, more blood during the second half. For this reason the abdominal aortogram has a more pointed peak and shows less well the various details of the tracing.

The aortogram is of interest in

- a) Diffuse enlargement (aortitis) or local dilatations (aneurysms) of the ascending aorta and aortic arch due to luetic heart disease (2nd space and suprasternal notch)
- b) Aortic stenosis (2nd space and suprasternal notch)
- c) Coarctation of the aorta (abdominal aorta)
- d) Arteriosclerotic dilatation of the abdominal aorta (abdominal aorta). Differential diagnosis with tumors or masses with transmitted pulsation.

CENTRAL PULSE

The tracing of a central pulse as recorded over the *carotid area* reveals the following details (fig 62)

a) One or two small waves are present during presystole and during the tension period of the ventricles

b) There is a rapidly *ascending phase* (the *anacrotic slope*) which frequently presents a change of speed (*anacrotic depression*) The rise of the curve coincides with that large vibration of the 1st sound which is caused by opening of the aortic valves

c) The *peak* or *summit* of the *percussion wave* is attained at about the middle of systole and is followed by a slight depression

d) A second more rounded wave (*tidal wave*) occurs during the second part of systole and is followed by the beginning of the *descending phase* (*catacrotic slope*)

e) In coincidence with the main vibration of the 2nd sound (closure of the aortic valve) the curve presents a sudden drop (*incisura*) often followed by one or two small vibrations

f) The curve rises again forming a slow positive wave the *dicrotic wave*

g) Later the tracing gradually falls to its lowest level which is attained just prior to the rise of the following pulse wave

Reflected waves from peripheral subdivisions may be superimposed on the curve if this is taken at a high level of the carotid artery (upper carotid pulse) the changes are noticeable during early ejection soon after the time of the *incisura* They occur earlier if there is hypertonus or sclerosis of the wall so that the speed of the pulse wave is increased On the contrary low tonus of the wall is revealed by a high peaked tracing

The *small waves* which precede the rise of the pulse curve are transmitted from the heart The first is caused by atrial contraction, the second by bulging of the aortic valve during the tension period The rapid, ascending phase of the pulse curve is due to the *ejection of blood* into the aorta The *anacrotic change of slope* is due to the fact

that at first the inertia prevents a large displacement of blood while later a more rapid flow occurs (76) The tonic elastic reaction of the aorta may also contribute to it The formation of a *summit* when about one half of the blood has left the left ventricle may be attributed to the fact that the volume of blood entering the aorta is then smaller than that leaving the aorta through the various branches The *tidal wave* seems due to the summation of the still moving wave with multiple waves reflected from the periphery

The aorta and the left ventricle are still a single chamber at the beginning of ventricular diastole Ventricular relaxation causes a sharp drop of pressure in the aorta which is quickly terminated by closure of the semilunar valves this causes the *incisura* While pressure eddies complete the closure of the aortic valve the retraction of the aortic wall forces blood toward the heart as well as toward the periphery This sets up a negative wave which follows the main wave (*incisura*) After closure of the aortic valve the blood column rebounds from its surface and sets up a second positive wave (*dicrotic wave*) which follows the main wave toward the periphery

The tracing of the central pulse is useful mainly for timing the waves of other tracings For example hepatic tracings or electrokymograms are frequently timed by means of a carotid tracing The tracing of the central pulse gives accurate information about the time of opening of the aortic valve (rise of the pulse) and its closure (*incisura* of the pulse) Therefore this tracing presents interest in bundle branch block Abnormal patterns are found in atherosclerosis of the aorta coarctation of the aorta aortic stenosis and aortic insufficiency The tracing helps in the differential diagnosis of these conditions

PERIPHERAL PULSE

The peripheral pulse of normal subjects is much simpler than the central pulse The ascending phase is straight the *incisura* is

replaced by a rounded depression. The diastolic wave is also rounded. After the diastolic wave other secondary vibrations may occur (figs 62-63).

The reaction of the peripheral arteries deepens the pre-diastolic notch transforming it into a valley and rounds out the diastolic wave. Therefore the peripheral pulse shows no evidence of the tidal wave.

The abnormal sphygmogram may show marked variations:

a) The water hammer type has a steep ascending slope and a rapid drop. There is a turbulent condition at the front of the wave which may be revealed by a small anacrotic notch and is felt as a thrill upon palpation (76). It is typical of aortic regurgitation.

b) The anacrotic pulse has a deep notch in the ascending slope. It is found in aortic stenosis, hypertension, and marked bradycardia (pages 252).

c) The diastolic pulse has a high diastolic wave. It is found in fever, anemia, and hyperthyroidism.

d) *Pulsus alternans* is a regular pulse which has alternatively a large and a small wave. It is found in cases with severe myocardial damage (page 373).

e) *Pulsus paradoxus* is the name for the periodical waxing and waning of the pulse connected with respiration and is typical of constrictive pericarditis (page 454).

A measurement which seems to have a certain clinical value is that of *crest time*. This is measured in seconds between the rise of the pulse and the highest point of the main wave (204). Normal crest time of the radial pulse is between 10 and 16 per cent of the total duration of the pulse cycle from rise of one pulse to rise of the next.

THE ABSOLUTE SPHYGMOGRAM

The sphygmogram is a pressure tracing of the artery. However, it does not reveal that important element of pressure which is between the foot of the wave and zero. In order to quickly evaluate the different elements a diagram has been suggested

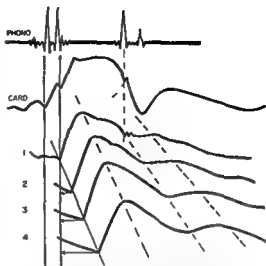


FIG. 63. Modification of the accidents of the pulse tracing from the central to the peripheral arteries. PHONO, sound tracing; CARD, cardiogram; 1, subclavian pulse; 2, brachial pulse; 3, radial pulse; 4, tibial pulse.

which is called the *absolute sphygmogram*. In this diagram the ordinates represent pressure as measured by clinical evaluation while the abscissae represent time and are modified by the pulse rate.

The sphygmogram can be used for the following studies:

1) *Speed of the pulse wave*. For this purpose the sphygmogram should be recorded together with another tracing. If speed from the heart to a certain artery is studied a cardiogram may be used. However the simplest way is to record the heart sounds simultaneously over the aortic area and the arterial pulse. The distance between the second large vibration of the 1st sound (opening of the semilunar valves) and the rise of the pulse wave gives the speed of the wave if compared with the time lines of the record. When on the other hand one wishes to record the speed of the pulse wave in a certain artery, two simultaneous sphygmograms are recorded over different points of the artery. It is a good precaution to take them at the level of the diastolic pressure in order not to alter the local flow.

2) *Shape of the pulse wave* Three records should be taken at diastolic pressure at mean pressure and at two thirds of the way from the diastolic upwards. The latter may show great prominence of all secondary waves including the anacrotic notch.

3) *Study of arterial sounds (phonoarteriogram)* The sound tracing is automatically recorded together with the sphygmogram by using the above described apparatus (pages 107 and 161).

4) *Irregularity of the heart* Simultaneous electrocardiograms and sphygmograms are taken. The former gives information about the type of arrhythmia, the latter shows the peripheral effect of the disorder.

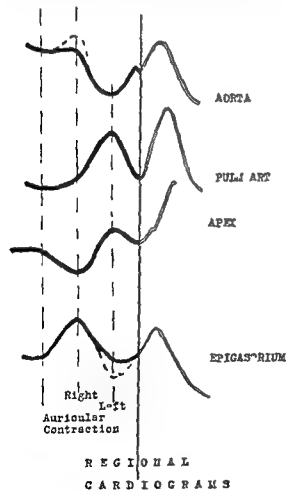


FIG 64 The atrial wave in the tracings recorded over different areas of the chest

5) *Study of the peripheral circulation* The study of the arterial pulse may be very important in cases of arteritis, thrombosis or embolism. The pneumatic cuff is successively applied to different sections of the limb and the sphygmogram is recorded at the lowest pressure capable of giving a good record. Crest time is measured in both the tracing of the medium sized arteries and in that of fingers or toes.

6) *Measure of stroke volume* A method for calculating stroke volume on the basis of the study of the pulse was described (200). As the difference between the values found by this and those found by the Fick method may reach 50 per cent, the method is unreliable.

The Diastolic Waves in the Various Tracings

1) *Atrial wave* The interval between right and left atrial contractions is so small in normal individuals that very little difference in the time of appearance of the waves is to be expected. Even so, a marked difference can be found between apex and epigastrium. On the contrary, patients with fibrosis of the atrial myocardium are more apt to give evidence of increased delay between right and left atrial contraction. Studies made on such patients (201) have proven the following data (fig 64).

a) Tracings recorded over the 2nd right interspace frequently show left atrial contraction as a downward wave. Tracings recorded over the 2nd left interspace frequently show it as a high positive wave.

b) Tracings of the apex usually show a positive wave for left atrial contraction, sometimes preceded by a negative wave for right atrial contraction.

c) Tracings of the epigastrium show mainly the effect of right atrial contraction, which is revealed by a high positive wave. Sometimes a negative phase follows this at the time of left atrial contraction.

The tracings of the apex and epigastrium seem to show the effect of presystolic filling.

of the respective ventricle while the waves recorded at the base seem due to indirect transmission of the atrial waves.

The atrial wave (wave 4) presents good development and an unusual height in certain types of patients (201) a large atrial wave in the 2nd and 3rd left interspaces is present in most cases of rheumatic heart disease with mitral lesions or mitral plus aortic defects. A large atrial wave in the epigastric tracing is found in cases of cor pulmonale in some of them the atrial wave of the epigastric tracing is much larger than that of the apical tracing.

In cases of a ν block the atrial waves are high both at the epigastrium and at the apex. In all of them the atrial waves are far more pronounced in the low frequency tracings than in the phonocardiogram.

B Wave of rapid filling The wave of rapid filling (wave 3) may present typical changes. In a large percentage of cases with mitral stenosis this wave is low and poorly defined. This indicates *slow filling of the left ventricle due to mitral obstruction* (page 229).

Mechanical Events During Systole

The simplest way to obtain data concerning systole is by means of the carotid pulse tracing. The rise of the pulse wave occurs within 0.02 second from the opening of the semilunar valves of the aorta the incisure within 0.03 second from their closure. However this time relationship occurs between carotid pulse and left ventricular ejection. Exact knowledge about the right ventricle is more difficult. It is true that both the jugular and the hepatic tracings are influenced by right ventricular systole. However both have many disadvantages. The utilization of the jugular tracing is impaired by delay of the waves over mechanical events of the heart marked variability of the waves and the influence of left ventricular systole (c wave notch 2). That of the liver tracing is impaired by delay of the waves over mechanical events of the heart influence of transmitted pulsations

through the diaphragm and influence of changes of thoracic pressure.

Two other tracings should be preferred to the venous tracings. They are the *internal pneumocardiogram* and the *epigastric tracing*. The former records opening and closing of the valves of the right heart through their effect on intrathoracic pressure. The latter records mechanical events of the right heart through transmitted pulsation of the right ventricle.

Record of the Vibrations of the Body Caused by Heart Dynamics (Ballistocardiogram)

A ballistocardiogram is a tracing of the movements of the human body as a result of cardiac action. The Σ may be recorded either in the lying position (longitudinal movements) or in the sitting position

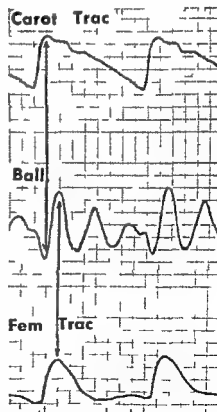


FIG. 63. Ballistocardiogram carotid tracing and femoral tracing

(vertical movements) The original apparatus of Starr (78) consisted of a bed suspended from the ceiling and restrained by a spring. Motions of the body were followed by small oscillations of the bed and were magnified by a moving mirror and an optical system. A modification of this (205) consists of the critical damping of all waves. The electromagnetic and the photoelectric (206) types are smaller and simpler. Both use a crosspiece placed over the legs of the patient. The oscillations of the body are picked up by a magnet in the former by a phototube in the latter. The resulting electrical pulsations are recorded by the galvanometer of an electrocardiograph.

The photoelectric apparatus consists of a) a crosspiece of light wood containing the source of light and placed transversely over the legs of the patient and b) a phototube contained in a separate unit and so placed that the light beam enters the opening thus revealed by a prism projecting the light on a frosted glass at the top of the unit. The phototube is connected with the galvanometer of an electrocardiograph. Accurate records are obtained only with a completely immobile table and with a light beam absolutely perpendicular to the phototube. The tracings can be recorded by a direct writing or photographic electrocardiograph at speeds of 10, 25, 50 or 75 mm per second.

Calibration can be obtained by hitting the foot of the bed (in the case of Starr's method) or the head of the patient (in the case of the magnetic or photoelectric methods) with a known force. However it is preferable to place a small scale exerting a known force (600 gm) against the head of the patient then release it suddenly. There should be an upward displacement of 20 mm in the tracing.

The main complex of the ballistocardiogram is the triphasic wave H-I-J-K-L (figs 65, 66 and 67). The interpretation of this is based on the following principles:

a) Any acceleration of the blood in the main arterial trunks is accompanied by a

movement of the body in the opposite direction, any deceleration of the blood is accompanied by a movement of the body in the same direction.

b) Rapid ejection causes displacement of a large mass of blood and acceleration first in a headward direction (ascending aorta) then in a footward direction (descending aorta).

c) The braking effect of the branchings and smaller vessels particularly in the lower extremities results in a deceleration.

The ballistocardiogram consists of the rapid succession of positive and negative waves; the time relationship of each peak is easily ascertained on the other hand only the first branch of a wave should be considered the second branch being already the main component of the following wave (fig 67).

The most useful graphic tracings for the interpretation of the BCG are the phonocardiogram and the arterial tracings while the other tracings are of help only in special cases.

F wave The beginning of the cardiac cycle which should be called F (207) occurs from 0.02 to 0.04 second before the first vibration of the first sound.

G wave The first part of this small negative (footward) wave is made of a descending branch which is simultaneous with the initial part of the first sound. The peak of G takes place at the time of that large vibration of the first sound which marks the closing of the a.v. valves.

H wave The ascending branch of this small positive (headward) wave takes place during the central part of the first sound complex. Its peak coincides with that large vibration of the first sound which marks the opening of the semilunar valves and the rise of the carotid pulse.

I wave The descending branch of this large negative (footward) wave starts at the beginning of ejection together with that vibration of the first sound which marks the opening of the semilunar valves. Its nega-

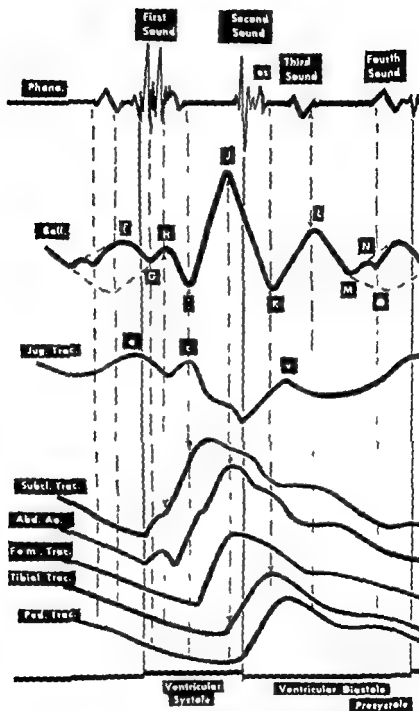


FIG. 60 Time relationship between the various waves of the ballistocardiogram and those of other tracings

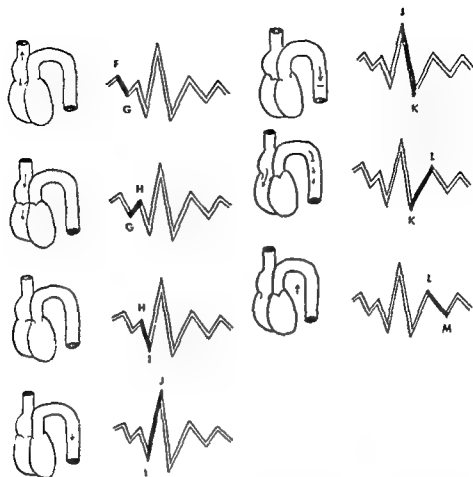


FIG. 6—The waves of the ballistocardiogram and the mechanism of their production

tive peak coincides with the peak of the carotid pulse

J wave The ascending branch of this large positive (headward) wave takes place during the first half of ventricular ejection. The peak precedes considerably the second sound. It is simultaneous with the peak of the femoral pulse.

A wave The descending branch of this deep negative (footward) wave takes place during the end of systole and during the isometric relaxation period. Therefore it overrides the main vibration of the second sound at least in normal subjects. It is simultaneous with a small vibration of the second sound complex which marks the opening of the aortic valves. It coincides with the peak of the tibial pulse and slightly precedes that of the pedal pulse.

L wave The ascending branch of this positive (headward) wave takes place in early diastole during rapid passive filling of the ventricles. Its positive peak follows the third sound by a short interval (0.04 to 0.06 second). It takes place during the dicrotic wave of the pulse in the aortic arch as revealed by suprasternal and carotid tracings.

M wave This negative (footward) wave is variable in shape and is markedly affected by the heart rate. Its descending branch takes place during mid diastole. Its negative peak may coincide with the dicrotic wave of the abdominal aorta and of the tibial arteries. On the other hand there may be a single wide negative wave with a peak at the time of the fourth sound.

Respiration modifies considerably the height of the various BCG waves by changing the position of the heart in relation to the long axis of the body and the venous return to either ventricle. It is typical to observe an increased height of the I and J waves in inspiration, a decrease in expiration.

Ballistocardiograms have been studied in an attempt to estimate either *stroke volume*²¹ or *cardiac strength*. Should the accuracy of calculations for measuring them be confirmed, ballistocardiography would represent an easy and practical way for determination of the σ values. Even if absolute values should be inaccurate, variations of the values in the single case would still be of clinical and experimental interest.

The patterns revealed by the tracing are of value in coarctation and in atherosclerosis of the aorta. Abnormal patterns are present in coronary heart disease, peripheral arteriosclerosis, bundle branch block, hypertension and heart failure. Future experience should prove whether or not these patterns are more typical or more easily detected than with other graphic methods.

Tracings of Volume (Plethysmograms) and Temperature Changes of Different Parts of the Body

A *plethysmogram* is a tracing of the volume change of some part of the body as affected by changes in its blood content. In order to obtain such a tracing the body section should be enclosed in a rigid container. The in- and outflow of blood should be unhampered by the membrane which insures closure of the container around the part of the body. The most common plethysmograms are those of the limbs (forearm, leg), or parts of them (fingers, toes). A plethysmogram of the intestines is possible in man (80-84).

General rules (80). The container has rigid walls. It is closed around the limb by means of a rubber membrane carefully applied. Water at body temperature fills the container and transmits volume changes to a recording apparatus which should work with very little change of tension at any level. Air transmission has been also used but is less exact. Every rapid undulation of the tracing is an arterial pulsation. Every slow movement of the curve is caused by change in the blood content, often due to changes of vascular tone.

Plethysmography of either the *forearm* or the *leg* was used by various authors (18-81-82). That of the *ear* did not find many applications. Plethysmogram of *one finger* (83) has also been used with good results in the study of peripheral circulation.

Tracings of volume changes have been employed chiefly in the study of the peripheral circulation for testing the action of drugs on the vessels and for evaluating the reactivity of the autonomic nervous system.

Evaluation of the blood flow in different regions may be obtained by *separate skin temperature measurements*. The apparatus consists of a small temperature sensitive electric unit connected to a recording instrument. Accurate measurements of axillary skin surface in any area, sublingual or rectal temperature are indicated on a dial or recorded automatically on a chart. As changes

¹ The method is based on

a) Measurement of aortic section (σ) by ultrasonography

b) Pulse pressure (PP) measurement by sphygmomanometry

c) Determination of the speed of the pulse (σ) through comparison of carotid and femoral tracings

d) Determination of length of the pulse wave (l) from peak of the main wave to peak of the diastolic wave

Stroke volume (V) is calculated by formula 1

$$(1) \quad V = \frac{2PP}{E}$$

E is the coefficient of elasticity of the vascular segment from the aorta to the femoral artery and is calculated by formula 2

$$(2) \quad E = \frac{106 \times \sigma^2}{S \frac{l}{4}}$$

106 is the specific gravity of the blood

of blood flow and temperature in a certain area are parallel the simultaneous recording of different temperatures may be substituted for plethysmography

The plethysmogram of various superficial parts of the body can be obtained also by means of a photoelectric cell coupled with a galvanometer (173). Extremely interesting results have been obtained by this method. Five types of waves the faster superimposed on the slower have been observed.

a) *Pulse waves* caused by the contraction of the heart. They represent the differences between arterial inflow and venous outflow at each cardiac beat. They have a cardiac rhythm and their amplitude varies considerably following vasomotor changes. They are smaller with vasoconstriction.

b) *Respiratory deflections*. They follow the respiratory rate and are due to respiratory fluctuations of both the arterial and the venous flow.

c) *Alpha waves*. These waves are present in all parts of the body; they are not related to variations of arterial pressure but seem due to local changes of vascular tone. Their rate is about 10 times per minute.

d) *Beta waves*. These are large slow and irregular waves occurring at a rate of about 1 to 2 per minute.

e) *Gamma waves*. These are the slowest of all including cycles of from 1 to 8 hours. They represent extensive changes in volume.

The study of the pulse of the fingers and toes should be correlated with that of the radial and tibial pulses and their *crest times* should be compared (208). In normal subjects *digital crest time* is equal to or not longer than 4 per cent above *radial crest time*. The increased amplitude of the pulse after exertion is used as a functional test about the efficiency of the peripheral arteries.

Electrocardiogram

The old observation that electrical phenomena occur during heart action was fol-

lowed by attempts to record them on a tracing by means of a *capillary electrometer*.

At the beginning of the twentieth century, Schuegger described the first *string galvanometer* and soon afterwards Einthoven applied this instrument to the graphic registrations of cardiac electric currents (85).

The physical principle upon which the string galvanometer is based is the same as that used in electric motors. The moving part of the instrument is a very fine filament called the *string* which carries the current to be registered and moves in proportion to its magnitude. The movement is magnified by an optical system and recorded on a photographic film.

With this galvanometer Einthoven succeeded in laying down the fundamental rules of electrocardiography. However Einthoven's original apparatus was large cumbersome and rather intricate. As time went on the electrocardiograph was perfected so that today it is a portable instrument capable of simple operation.

In Germany not many years after the first string galvanometer was described a rotating mirror and coil type instrument was perfected with sufficient sensitivity to register cardiac potentials (*mirror galvanometer*). This did not receive wide recognition being more sluggish than the string galvanometer.

With the perfection of the thermionic vacuum tube which took rapid strides in the early 20's it became possible to register electrocardiograms by means of oscillographic units coupled with electronic amplifiers. *Electronic electrocardiographs* are popular because of their flexibility, high galvanometer speed and fine photographic detail.

Bedside electrocardiography has been made possible by the fact that modern apparatus is light compact and accurate so that the physician can easily carry it with him. Even simultaneous recording of electrical, mechanical, and sound tracings can be effected at the patient's home.

Prolonged vision of the electrocardiogram

is possible by means of a *cardioscope* or an *oscilloscope*. The *cardioscope* is based on the property of fluorescent substances of retaining their induced light for some time. The *oscilloscope* is a cathode ray apparatus which projects a beam of light on a screen.

The *continuous study* of the electrocardiogram has been made possible by another apparatus which records the electric currents of the heart continuously on a micro film (87). The study can be continued for 24 hours and even during the patient's sleep without any assistance. The interesting parts of the film can be magnified.

The *direct writing* method avoids the need for photographic processing of the film and is now currently used. The possibility of immediate inspection of the film renders this method preferable whenever delicate multiple tracings are recorded and for bedside use. The method is based on the color change of a special film caused by a heated stylus. Ink writing devices are less perfect and can be used only for mass work.

TECHNIQUE

Calibration. Evaluation and comparison of electrocardiograms (ECG's) includes the knowledge that a certain height of deflection corresponds to a certain difference of potential. Therefore all apparatus are provided with a calibration device. This consists of a button which introduces a current of 1 millivolt into or excludes a resistance of 1 millivolt from the circuit. The button is depressed while the film is moving and the sensitivity is adjusted until a positive deflection of 1 centimeter is recorded. The button for calibration (or standardization) is also used in order to check the characteristics of the apparatus. The angles of the rectangle should be square with minimal evidence of rounding. Otherwise an incorrect picture of the various waves would be obtained.

Electrodes. The normal limb electrodes are 3 x 5 cm rectangles of German silver. The

chest electrodes made of the same alloy are round and have a diameter of 3 cm.²²

Preparation of the patient. A supine or semirecumbent position is preferable because it insures complete muscular relaxation and avoids superimposition of currents of skeletal muscles on those of the heart. A long wide and comfortable cot with adjustable back can be used. If the patient has orthopnea his back should be raised and propped up with pillows. If the tracing is taken in the sitting position a large chair should be used. The feet of the patient should be raised from the floor and should rest on a nonmetallic low stool. It may be necessary to shave the chest and limbs of a male patient if there is excess of hair. In general however a generous supply of *electrode jelly*²³ avoids the need for this procedure.

Electrocardiographic leads. *Bipolar lead* is the name given to any lead using two electrodes placed at the opposite sides of and at some distance from the source of electric currents (heart). The record represents the algebraic summation of two potentials of opposite polarity. Examples are the old *standard leads*. *Semiunipolar lead* is the name given to any lead using one electrode near the source of the electric currents (heart) while the other is at a greater distance. The record again represents the algebraic summation of two potentials one of them is of a high value because it is recorded near the source the other has a smaller value because it is recorded at a greater distance from the source of currents. Examples are the old *lead I* (anterior posterior) and the various *CF* and *CR* leads. *Unipolar lead* is the name given to that lead using one electrode near the source of electric currents (heart) while the other is in an area of zero potential (e.g. at an infinite distance from the source of currents). The record represents the expression of the

²² In infants and young children a chest electrode of 1½ cm in diameter should be used.

²³ This contains sodium chloride or zinc sulfate pumice powder and glycerine.

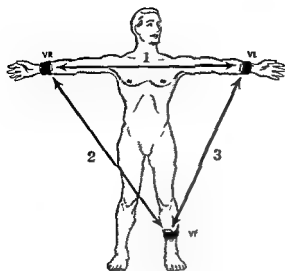


FIG 68 The classic bipolar limb leads and the unipolar limb leads of the electrocardiogram

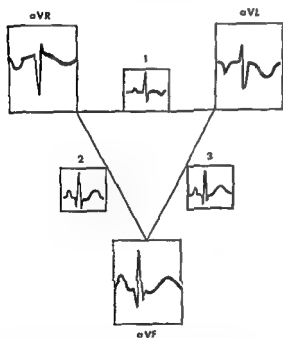


FIG 69 Electrocardiogram of a normal person. Unipolar and classic bipolar limb leads. The voltage of the latter has been purposely reduced in order to focus the attention on the former.

'absolute' changes of potential in the area lying under the electrode near the source of currents (heart) because it registers the difference in potential between that point and zero. The concept of a 'zero potential electrode' is extremely valuable but of difficult

realization. The best solution seems to be the central terminal of Wilson (see below). In both the semi-unipolar and the unipolar leads the electrode placed near the heart is called the *exploring electrode* while the other is called *semi-indifferent* or *indifferent*.

A Standard limb leads The standard limb leads were the only ones used from 1905 to 1935 and are still currently employed. These *bipolar limb leads* are the following (fig 68): *lead 1* connecting the right with the left arm; *lead 2* connecting the right arm with the left leg; *lead 3* connecting the left arm with the left leg. Each bipolar limb lead represents the algebraic summation of the potentials of two limbs.

Lead 1 reports the variations of potential of the left lateral cardiac wall minus those of the atrial and ventricular cavities; *lead 2* the variations of potential of the diaphragmatic surface of the heart minus those of the atrial and ventricular cavities; *lead 3* the variations of potential of the diaphragmatic surface of the heart minus those of the left lateral cardiac wall.

B The 'unipolar' limb leads Following Wilson's suggestion (177) it is possible to study the variations of potential of any point of the body without interference from currents of other points. In order to do this the three limbs are connected by three wires and three resistances of 5000 ohms or more. To this central point of connection called the *central terminal* is attached one of the cables of the electrocardiograph. Based on the principle of Einthoven's triangle the central terminal is supposed to have zero potential and to act as an *indifferent electrode* (18). The other cable of the electrocardiograph is connected with any point of the body by means of an electrode called the *exploring electrode*. In the case of the limb leads the exploring electrode is connected successively with the right arm,

¹⁸ Actually the central terminal has small changes of potential which can be disregarded in clinical tracings.

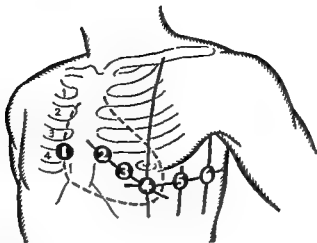


FIG 70 Various locations of the electrodes for the chest leads. The outline of the heart has been made larger in order to show that point 4 may be within the apex in the case of an enlarged heart

the left arm and the left leg. The three tracings are called V_R , V_L and V_F (fig 68).

It has been suggested (175) to eliminate the electrical resistances of the central terminal and to disconnect the wire of the limb under study in order to increase the amplitude of the waves. These leads are called *augmented unipolar leads* and their symbols are aVR , aVL and aVF . Successive studies (212) have confirmed that disconnecting the wire of the extremity under study does not change the shape and polarity of the waves while increasing their magnitude. On the other hand, the presence of the resistances is necessary in order to have a central terminal of zero potential. Therefore present day technique embodies the best features of the Wilson terminal but with alternate disconnection of the wire of the terminal from the limb under study. For simplicity's sake the symbols of the three limb leads with this technique can be called R , L and F . Connection of the three wires with the central terminal and disconnection of the wire of the limb under study is obtained automatically in most modern apparatus.

C. The chest leads. Semi-unipolar chest leads have been taken for several years by placing one electrode on the chest while the galvanometer was connected with the

electrode of any of the limbs. The symbols used were chest right arm = CR leads, chest left arm = CL leads, chest left leg = CF leads.

The *unipolar chest leads* are now generally accepted. They are taken by placing a round *exploring electrode* on the chest while the galvanometer is connected with Wilson's central terminal (*indifferent electrode*). The symbols used are C_1 leads or simply V leads.

Six chest locations (leads V_1 to V_6) are now commonly used (fig 70). To these several others have been added for use in special cases: a) *three posterior locations* for the study of high posterior potentials of the heart (leads V_7 , V_8 , V_9), b) *one xiphoid or ensiform location* for the study of postero-diaphragmatic potentials (V_E), c) *three high antero-lateral locations* for the study of the high antero-lateral potentials (high V_4 , high V_5 , high V_6), d) *one high right sternal lead* for the study of right atrial potentials (high V_1), e) *three right chest leads* for the study of potentials of the right heart in cases with right heart enlargement (V_{3R} , V_{4R} , V_{5R})²⁵ and f) *four esophageal*

²⁵ V_1 is the topographic equivalent of V_2 on the right chest. V_{3P} is the equivalent of V_3 on the right chest. V_{4I} is the equivalent of V_4 on the right chest.

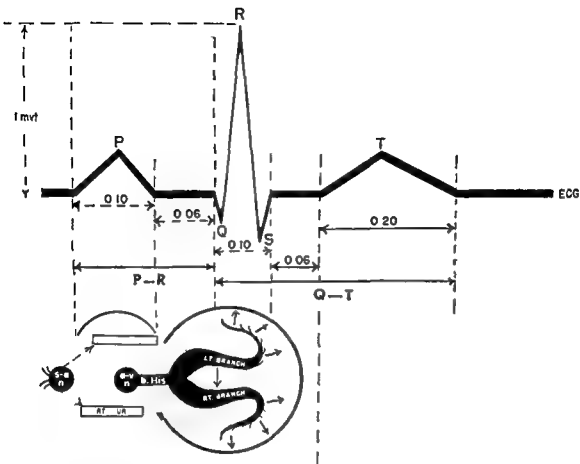


FIG 71 Duration and height of the waves and intervals of the electrocardiogram Comparison with a scheme indicating origin and spread of the stimulus

leads for the study of postero inferior potentials (left atrial and ventricular)

THE WAVES OF THE ELECTROCARDIOGRAM AND THEIR INTERPRETATION

The Electrocardiogram in General

The *electrocardiogram* (ECG) is a composite curve in which various accidents or waves have a definite position. These waves are called P, Q, R, S, and T (fig 71). The first part of the ECG composed of the P wave and of minor accidents is called the *atrial* (or *auricular*) *complex* because it bears a definite relationship to the activity of the atria (auricles). The second part of the ECG composed of an initial rapid complex QRS and a low final deflection (T) is called the *ventricular complex* because it is connected with the activity of the ventricles.

Atrial complex The excitation of the S-A node is not recorded in clinical tracings but can be recorded by means of an intra atrial electrode. As there is no way of detecting it in routine cases it is assumed that it precedes the beginning of P by a small fraction of a second (0.05 sec?). The P wave is the resultant of the *activation* (or *depolarization*) of both atria. It is a blunt deflection lasting from 0.08 to 0.10 second in normal individuals. Whenever transmission of the impulse to the left atrium is impaired or the wall of the left atrium is distended or hypertrophied the P wave shows a double peak or a diphasic configuration. In such cases the first or upward phase of P is due to the right atrium the second or downward phase of P is due to the left. This is frequently apparent in leads V1, aVF, and 3.

Inactivation (or repolarization) of the atria is usually not revealed by the ECG. However, cases with prolonged Δ conduction or a Δ block may show a small dip called the atrial T wave (*Ta wave*) due to repolarization of the atrial myocardium.

Atrioventricular interval The P wave is normally followed by a period during which the electrocardiogram reveals no deflection. The stimulus starts to spread at the beginning of P and reaches the Δ node during P activation of the Δ node and diffusion along the bundle of His takes place between P and Q. The interval between the initiation of P and that of QRS (called *P R interval*) measures the sum of a) sino nodal and sino atrial conductions b) nodal latency and c) nodo-septal conduction. Normal duration of the P R interval is between 0.12 and 0.20 second.

The *ventricular complex* is composed of a rapid initial complex the *QRS complex* and a slow final wave the *T wave*. The beginning of the initial complex may be represented by a small *Q wave*. This is explained by the fact that depolarization starts on the left side of the septum and spreads from there toward the right side of this structure. While the small Q wave of chest leads V_1 to V_6 is a septal Q, the small R wave of chest leads V_1 to V_2 has been explained as due to depolarization of either the septum or the right ventricle. After this initial stage the wave of depolarization spreads along the Purkinje fibers into the ventricular walls from the endocardium toward the epicardium. This causes the upward deflection R of the tracing. As the left ventricular mass is greater its potentials are greater than those of the right, the sum of depolarization of the ventricles is revealed as an upward deflection in V_5 to V_6 as a downward deflection in V_1 to V_2 . When depolarization has spread to the subepicardial layers the cavity and surface of the ventricles reach a stage of equilibrium and no changes of potential are recorded. The phase of balancing of the forces is represented by the descending

branch of R. For these reasons *QRS represents the period between beginning and completion of ventricular depolarization*.

The *T wave* reflects the stage of *ventricular repolarization*. It is sometimes followed by a small positive wave the *U wave*, the mechanism of production of which is still obscure.

The *atrial contraction* takes place during the second half of P and during the first isoelectric period. It can be measured approximately by the distance from the peak of P to that of Q. The *ventricular contraction* starts during QRS and lasts throughout the second isoelectric period and during T. It can be measured approximately by the distance from the peak of Q to the end of T (so called *Q T interval*). According to an agreed standardization the earliest upward wave is called R, any downward preceding wave is called Q, any downward following wave is called S. If a second upward wave follows S it is called R' and this may be followed by S' (fig. 73 I).

The Three Intervals of the Electrocardiogram

The P R interval That part of the tracing which is between the beginning of P and the beginning of QRS is called the P R interval (it should be called more accurately P Q) (fig. 71). The importance of this interval is that it measures the time necessary for the atrioventricular conduction. When the P R interval is prolonged there is a disturbance of conduction either in the atrial myocardium or (more usually) in the tissues of the Δ node and bundle of His. This may occur a) in congenital heart disease b) in acute myocarditis c) in myocardial fibrosis caused by coronary arterio-sclerosis or following an acute inflammatory process d) after digitalis e) during vagal stimulation. A very common cause of prolongation of P R is rheumatic carditis. On the contrary, P R is usually normal in the thyrotoxic heart and in bacterial endocarditis.

The QRS interval This interval is measured from the beginning of the first rapid

wave to the end of the last. The QRS interval measures the time required by the stimulus to spread to and through the ventricular wall. When prolonged it indicates *impaired spreading of the stimulus* either in the septum (bundle branch block) or within the ventricular wall (intraventricular block, perinfarction block, focal block). Exceptions are represented by ventricular premature beats, ventricular tachycardia and the preexcitation syndrome (Wolff Parkinson White syndrome).

The Q T interval This interval measures the duration of electrical systole of the ventricle. Its duration varies with the heart rate becoming shorter with a more rapid rate and vice versa.²⁴

Aspect: Duration and Nomenclature of the Different Waves

The *P wave* may be modified as far as voltage (tall or low), duration (broad) and configuration (notched, slurred, diphasic, peaked or gothic). It is usually upright in leads I and II, may be occasionally inverted in III, frequently small or inverted in some of the chest leads and is normally inverted in aVR. It is usually blunt and

²⁴ The figures of the expected Q T or average Q T are obtained by means of Bazett's formula $QT = A \sqrt{RR}$ (A is equivalent to 0.37 second in men and 0.40 in women). The ratio between the actual Q T and the expected Q T ($r = \text{act Q T} / \text{exp Q T}$) indicates whether or not the duration of electrical systole is prolonged. Any ratio higher than 1 indicates prolongation. Calculation of the ratio can also be made by the use of a nomogram.

Expected Q T

RATE	AVERAGE	MINIMUM	MAXIMUM
	sec		
50	0.43	0.39	0.47
60	0.39	0.35	0.43
70	0.36	0.32	0.40
80	0.34	0.30	0.38
90	0.32	0.28	0.36
100	0.30	0.26	0.34
110	0.29	0.25	0.33
120	0.27	0.23	0.31

lasts from 0.06 to 0.11 sec in the normal subjects (fig. 71).

QRS complex The initial ventricular complex may be monophasic, diphasic or polyphasic. Slurring or notching is more common in aVF and in lead III. Normal amplitude is from 7 to 15 mm but it may be much larger in chest leads. It lasts from 0.06 to 0.10 sec in normal subjects. The QRS complex has a different nomenclature according to the direction of the first wave and to the number of subsequent waves. This can be conveyed to the reader by using capitals or small letters according to the height of the waves and by giving to each wave its symbol in sequence (fig. 73 I).

The *T wave* may be modified as far as voltage (tall or low), polarity (positive or negative) and configuration (diphasic, symmetrical or asymmetrical). It is normally upright. However, it is normally inverted in aVR and may be inverted in aVL; it is normally inverted in V1 and V2 (or even V3 and V4) in infants. It lasts from 0.16 to 0.25 second.

The *ST segment* may be isoelectric (normal), displaced upwards or downwards. The direction and form of the ST segment may indicate the difference between the coronary (or cone shaped) T wave and the digitalis T wave (fig. 73 II). It normally follows the basal line but may be slightly raised (not more than 1 mm = 1/10 mV). The displacement may reach about 2 mm in the chest leads.

Special Features of Certain Leads

A Unipolar right arm lead (I, R aVR or R) The ECG presents typically inverted waves: the P wave, the main rapid ventricular deflection and the T wave are directed downwards. The heart has its base directed upwards and toward the right; the thin vascular and atrial walls contribute little to the tracing and leave free passage to the stronger ventricular potentials. The stimulus, after reaching the septum and the endocardial surface of the ventricular walls

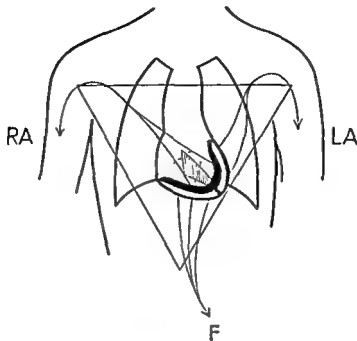


FIG. 72 The spreading of potentials from the normal heart in average position. In red endocardial or cavitary potentials. In blue epicardial potentials from left ventricle. In green epicardial potentials from right ventricle. (From Holzmann)

spreads outwards toward the epicardium. This causes a vector directed away from the electrode (so called *negative potentials within the cavities*) and explains the inverted QRS and T waves of VR (fig. 72). The QRS complex is similar to that obtained by introducing an electrode within the upper part of the right atrial cavity. The currents of both ventricles are recorded. This lead is only slightly influenced by the position of the heart within the chest.

B Unipolar left arm lead (I, L, aVL or I') This lead has usually positive waves. The picture strongly varies according to changes in position of the heart with subsequent shifting of the electric axis. It reflects the variations of electric potential presented by the anterior and lateral epicardial surfaces of the heart.

C Unipolar left leg lead (VF, aVF or I') This lead has usually positive waves. It is strongly influenced by the position of the heart within the chest and by the resulting shifting of the electric axis of the heart. It

reflects the variations of electric potential presented by the posterior and diaphragmatic epicardial surfaces of the heart.

D Standard leads (1, 2 and 3) These present normally positive waves. P may be diphasic in 3. QRS may have a deep S in 1 or an rS in 3 if the electric axis of the heart is unusually shifted to the left. T may be inverted in 3 due to the same cause.

E Chest leads The anterior surface of the heart including parts of both ventricles lies closer to the surface of the body (anterior chest wall and left axilla) than any other part of the heart. Leads from various anterolateral points of the chest (V1 to V6) resemble *direct epicardial leads* more than any other lead from the body surface. Still it should be kept in mind that they are not identical with them because the tracing is much less influenced by the small fraction of muscle lying in contact with the electrode and it includes potentials from the surrounding areas. For this reason an intrinsic

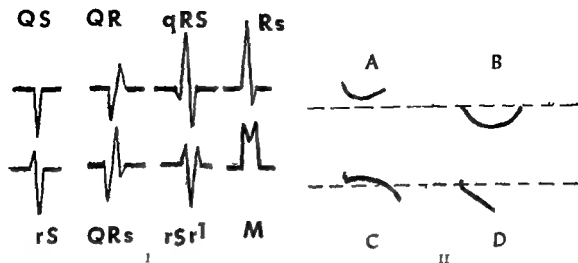


FIG. 73 I Possible changes of the ventricular complex II Possible changes of the ST tract (black) and T wave (dotted) A raised ST B depressed ST C cove shaped ST and inverted T D b T and T changes due to digoxins

deflection⁷ cannot be recognized in a chest electrocardiogram

V1 and V2 give the best information about right ventricular potentials (fig 74) V1 records the potentials of the diaphragmatic or postero inferior aspect of both ventricles. The R wave is smallest in V1 and increases gradually in height from V1 to V5 or V6 where it is tallest (fig 74) The S wave is deepest in V1 or V2 and decreases gradually from right to left until it disappears. Q waves are present over the left side of the precordium but are small. Normal QRS should not last more than 0.10 second. In V1 the intrinsicoid deflection begins 0.006 to 0.02 second after the onset of QRS. In V5 or V6 it starts about 0.035 second after it. The T waves are upright in all leads but may be inverted in V1 (occasionally in V2). It should be noted that in certain normal subjects V1 and V2 seem to present an inverted initial deflection (type QS) on account of the extreme smallness of R. The

S T segment may be slightly above the base line. This displacement usually does not exceed 1 mm but may reach 2 mm.

NORMAL VERSUS ABNORMAL ELECTROCARDIOGRAMS

It is impossible to draw a sharp line between normal and abnormal tracings. In reaching a decision the observer must consider the possible occurrence of a certain variation in the ECG of a normal person. Statistical tables have been made and reference to them may be useful. However, personal experience and additional clinical and laboratory data determine whether or not an abnormality should be considered pathological.

PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS

1) Electrocardiography may be useful for an exact evaluation of the atrial and ventricular rates and for the location of the pacemaker. Thus diagnosis of abnormal rhythms and their focus of origin is made possible.

2) The electric axis can be determined. Dextrocardia can be diagnosed. The data are of help in the study of congenital malformations, valvular disease, chronic cor pulmonale etc.

⁷ Intrinsic deflection is the name given to the sharpest and largest downward deflection which represents depolarization of the muscle under an electrode. The similar deflection recorded by the chest leads is called intrinsicoid deflection and is supposed to represent depolarization of the heart muscle in the area which is nearest to the electrode.

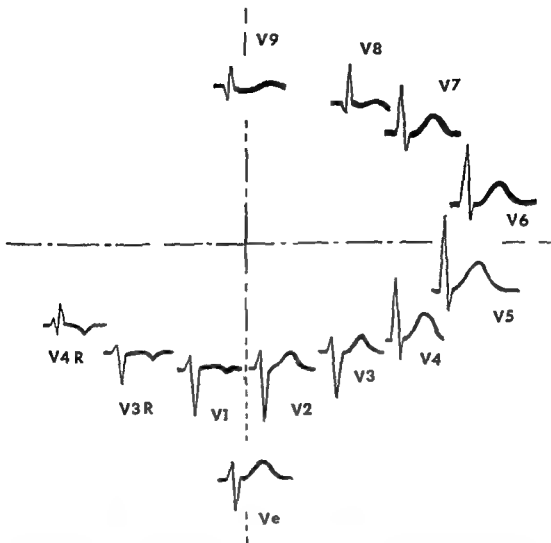


FIG. 4 The electrocardiogram in the various chest leads of a normal subject

3) Delayed atrial conduction or block, bundle branch block or intraventricular block are recognized.

4) Evidence of diffuse myocardial damage or metabolic unbalance is obtained. This includes infectious lesions and digitalis effect.

5) Evidence of localized myocardial ischemia or damage is secured. This is of great importance for the diagnosis of coronary heart disease and the differential diagnosis with pulmonary infarction, dissecting aneurysm of the aorta, and pericarditis.

It should be emphasized that in most

conditions repeated registration of electrocardiograms is necessary; then interpretation will be far more accurate than after a single tracing.

In requesting an electrocardiogram the physician should give information about the following points: a) presence of valvular defects; b) level of blood pressure; c) administration of digitalis or allied drugs or other drugs acting on the myocardium (quinidine, emetine, insulin); clinical diagnosis; no is or reason for requesting a tracing.

The time relationships between the elec-

trocardiographic waves and those of other tracings are the following.

a) Initial evidence of right atrial contraction (mechanical cardiogram, electrokymogram, atrial sound by esophageal route) is found 0.04 to 0.06 after the rise of P. The atrial sound recorded at the apex follows the peak of P by a longer interval.

b) The beginning of any evidence of ventricular contraction (mechanical cardiogram, electrokymogram, first sound at apex) is found between Q and R coinciding with R or between R and S.

c) The end of the T wave usually coincides with the end of mechanical systole of the ventricle. However a dissociation between the two phenomena may occur in abnormal conditions.

d) There is no relationship between the U wave and the phase of rapid ventricular filling.

ESOPHAGEAL FLECTROCARDIOGRAM

A thin rubber tube ending with a metal tip and carrying inside it the connecting wire is introduced through the nose or mouth (better if under fluoroscopic control). The tip is used as an *exploring electrode* while the indifferent electrode is represented by Wilson's central terminal. Thus the tracings are unipolar esophageal leads and should be marked with the symbols VE_s and a notation of the depth of the electrode from the nostrils or the dental arch.

A different method employed by the author made use of a rubber tube with two silver rings at 10 mm from each other and two internal wires. This bipolar esophageal lead presents certain advantages because it gives larger atrial deflections (92). Four standard esophageal leads should be studied: 1) VE_s 30-35—atrial lead; 2) VE_s 35-40—low atrial lead; 3) VF_s 40-45—ventricular lead; 4) VE_s 45-55—low ventricular lead.

At the atrial level (position 1) the P wave is prominent and shows an 'intrinsic' deflection similar to that usually seen in the ventricular complex. A deep inverted in-

trial ventricular deflection and an inverted T wave are normally seen. The nearness with the left atrium explains the high voltage and the diphasic aspect of the atrial complex. The ventricular wave is inverted and indicates cavity potentials which spread through the thin atrial wall. In position 2 transitional tracings are obtained. In position 3 usually a different pattern is observed. It consists of a positive P, an initial ventricular complex with a qR or QR pattern and a diphasic or positive T wave. Considerable differences are noted according to the position of the heart. In position 4 the electrode has reached the diaphragmatic surface of the heart and records a tracing similar to VE or aVF : a positive P, variable QRS patterns usually positive but occasionally inverted T waves.

The differentiation between a Q caused by normal cavity potentials and a Q due to posterior myocardial infarct is based on the fact that in the first instance there is a QS pattern and an inverted T wave while in the case of infarction there frequently is a qR pattern and T may be upright.

INTRACARDIAC FLECTROCARDIOGRAM

A catheter for cardiac catheterization with a small silver electrode connected to the silver mandril is introduced into the cavities of the right heart following the usual technique of right heart catheterization (page 157). The position of the tip of the catheter is determined by means of fluoroscopy, pressure readings and oxymetry. The endocardial electrode is connected with the wire commonly used for chest leads and serves as an *exploring electrode*. The central terminal completes the circuit.

Intracardiac leads can be considered as direct leads from the endocardial surface of the heart. The atrial electrogram consists of a series of rapid deflections (S e t o waves) and a final slow wave (Ta). S has been considered as due to the activity of the a-n node and precedes by 0.05 second

the onset of P in the limb leads. The T_a wave represents the final phase of repolarization of the atria and is visible only in cases of A-V block. The interval from the beginning of P in the limb leads to the end of T_a measures from 0.34 to 0.42 second but may be much longer.

The *right ventricular electrogram* recorded directly from the ventricle shows an initial positive deflection (r) due to depolarization of the septum (and possibly of the right ventricle) = large inverted deflection (S) and an inverted T wave. The *left ventricular electrogram* shows a QS type of initial ventricular complex; there may be some degree of elevation of ST possibly due to pressure of the catheter. The P wave is positive. Above the aortic valve the electrogram has an atrial type and presents negative P and T waves and an initial complex of the qR type.

FUNCTIONAL TESTS

Several functional tests have been suggested in order to evaluate the efficiency of the coronary system. They can be used whenever the history of a patient seems to indicate coronary heart disease while the electrocardiogram is normal. The most used are the anoxemia test and the exercise test.

1) *Anoxemia test* (209). It is performed in the following way. The patient inhales a mixture of 10 per cent oxygen with nitrogen which is insufficient for the normal oxygen supply to the tissues. A tracing is recorded before the test and at 5 minute intervals during the inhalation for 20 minutes. Normal persons have only slight electrocardiographic changes consisting of decreased height of T in all leads and occasionally an inversion of T in leads 2 and 3.

A positive test consists of the following changes:

a) The sum of ST deviations in leads 1, 2, 3 and V₄ should be greater by 3 mm or more than in the control tracing.

b) There is a partial or complete reversal of the direction of the T wave in 1 accom-

panied by ST deviation of 1 mm or more in this lead.

c) There is a complete reversal of the direction of the T wave in V₄ regardless of any associated ST deviation in this lead.

A tank of 100 per cent oxygen is incorporated in the circuit so that oxygen can be rapidly administered if needed.

2) *The two step exercise test* (210). Since normal persons submitted to excessive exercise may present electrocardiographic changes, the exercise has been standardized for age, weight and sex. The procedure is the following. The weight of the subject and a control electrocardiogram are recorded. Then the patient is invited to walk up one side of a two step stool¹⁸ and down the other. He makes a trip only when a count is given and the required number is completed in 1½ minutes. The electrocardiogram is then recorded and at 2 and 6 min. after cessation of the exercise.

Criteria for an abnormal electrocardiographic response are:

a) Depression of ST of more than 0.5 mm below the isoelectric level in 1, 2 or V₄.

b) Change from an upright T wave to an isoelectric or inverted T wave (or becoming upright of a previously inverted T).

c) Onset of arrhythmias immediately after exercise.

3) *Amyl nitrite test* (211). After a short rest in recumbent position the ECG is recorded. Then an ampule of amyl nitrite is broken and the patient is instructed to breathe deeply. As soon as flushing of the face occurs an ECG is again recorded and the tracing is repeated at 1 minute intervals until normalization.

The sudden drop of blood pressure caused by amyl nitrite determines coronary insufficiency whenever the coronary arteries are sclerotic. Evidence of abnormal response is displacement of ST of more than

This stool is made of two steps having a height of 23 cm. (or 9 inches). It is easily built by a carpenter.

1 mm from the base line flattening or inversion of the T wave in any lead and premature contractions. This test is harmless because the ischemia is of short duration and the vasodilating properties of the drug prevent functional disturbances. The result of the test usually coincides with that of the two step exercise test.

ELECTRICAL AXIS

According to an assumption of Einthoven the right shoulder, left shoulder and left hip form the apices of a triangle. If it is assumed that they are equidistant from the center of the triangle and that the heart is located at this center, if it is further admitted that the conducting media are homogeneous, various important calculations can be made from the tracings recorded in the standard limb leads.

Positive and negative charges (dipoles) appear on the surface of a cell whenever there is a change in the permeability of its membrane. Each charge can be thought of as exerting a force and its magnitude is proportional to the strength of the charge. Each charge exerts its greatest force along a line which connects the charges (from the negative to the positive) and which repre-

sents the *direction* of the force. These two elements, magnitude and direction as well as *sense* have been used in order to represent the charges as *vectors*.

The electrical field around the heart is the result of depolarization and repolarization of several fibers; the combined effect can be found by determining the *sum of the vectors* representing the various charges, or *manifest vector*. The force resulting from this vector can be easily determined by drawing perpendicular lines from the origin and end of the vector line to each side of the triangle. These perpendiculars indicate the magnitude and sense of the deflections in leads I, 2, 3 at any instant. At the beginning of depolarization the septum is activated from left to right; at the end of this phase, the postero-basal region of the left ventricle is activated from right to left. This causes the various vectors forming the initial QRS complex. The phenomena associated with repolarization and causing the T wave can also be projected onto the three lines resulting in another vector (fig 7a).

The concept of the equilateral triangle (a rough approximation) was used by Einthoven in order to calculate the magnitude of electromotive forces of the heart as projected

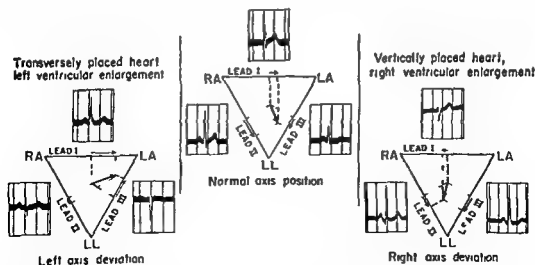


FIG 7a Determination of axis deviation. Conventional geometrical construction to determine degree and direction of the electrical axis. (From H. Hecht. Courtesy of the author and Charles C. Thomas Publisher.)

on the *frontal plane* of the body. Determination of the *electrical axis* and measure of the *axis deviation* on the basis of the above method have been made in clinical cases for several decades. This procedure is the following (fig 7c):

a) The magnitudes of either P QRS or T in leads 1 and 3 (mmV) are traced upon two sides of an equilateral triangle inscribed within a circle marked in degrees in order to determine the mean axes of P QRS or T. That of QRS is the most commonly studied.

b) Perpendicular lines are drawn from the points obtained.

c) A line is drawn from the center of the triangle to the point of intersection of the perpendiculars. This line represents the direction and magnitude of the electrical forces projected upon the frontal plane of the body.

d) The line drawn in step c is prolonged to intersect the circle and the *degree of inclination* of the axis is read directly on the circle.

In general the term *electric axis* is used and applied to the axis of QRS. Degrees from 0 to +90 represent *normal axis*. Degrees from 0 to -90 represent *left axis deviation*; degrees from +90 to +180 represent *right axis deviation*. A right axis deviation indicates that the potentials of the left arm are lower than those of the right. A left axis deviation indicates that they are higher. Determination of the axis by plotting the direction and height of the waves is a practical but only approximate procedure. A correct procedure should be based on plotting both the *direction and the surface of the waves*.

A *system of six axes* by which determination of the electrical axis by the use of either the standard or the unipolar limb leads is possible has also been described.

VECTORCARDIOGRAM (221)

The line indicating the axis has direction, magnitude and sense. Therefore it can

be called a *vector*. Such a vector can be constructed for each of the points and for each of the waves of an electrocardiogram. All vectors have their origin at zero and vary in direction and size according to the changes of the electrical field of the heart recorded in the electrocardiogram. Each of these vectors is called an *instantaneous electrical axis*. The end points of the various vectors can be connected by a line which describes a *loop* for each electrocardiographic wave (loop of P, loop of QRS, loop of T). The largest diameter of each loop is identical with the *modal electrical axis* of a given deflection. The loop connecting the end points of all possible instantaneous axes called *frontal vectorcardiogram* has an irregular shape and can be constructed graphically. However a simpler way is that of connecting the electrocardiographic wires with an *oscilloscope*. Then the light beam of a cathode ray tube traces automatically the outline of the loop on the fluorescent screen. A photograph of this loop may be used to reproduce the *vectorcardiogram*.

Various geometric arrangements have been suggested for placing the electrodes necessary to record the various vectors not only in the frontal plane but also in the antero-posterior plane.

The vector method represents a different point of view in comparison with other methods of interpretation of the electrocardiogram even when the same electrode positions are used and the same deflections are studied. The vector method has the following advantages over empirical methods basing their interpretation on the pattern of the various leads:

- a) It simplifies clinical interpretation by eliminating the need to memorize patterns.
- b) It is more accurate and objective because the deflections are reduced to a few simple measurements of the electrical field.
- c) It is easier to separate normal tracings

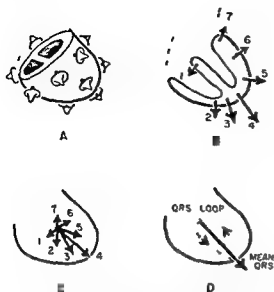


FIG. 76 The QRS vectors of the heart. A Each QRS vector is directed perpendicularly to the surface of the region where it is generated. The T vectors have a similar direction in the normal subject. B Frontal plane cross section of the heart illustrating the magnitude, direction and effective source of resultant QRS vectors from instant to instant during a single QRS cycle. C The instantaneous vectors from the previous figure are drawn as if they all originated at the same point, the relative zero point of the electrical field in the frontal plane. D The pathway of the terminus of the QRS vector from instant to instant in a single QRS cycle (QRS loop) and the mean of the instantaneous vectors (mean QRS vector) as projected in the frontal plane of the body. (From Grant and Estes courtesy of the authors and the Blackiston Co.)

and positional changes from tracings caused by myocardial abnormalities.

However vectorcardiography can only supplement and should not supplant conventional methods of pattern interpretation (fig. 76).

VENTRICULAR GRADIENT

The term *gradient* (G) is used to indicate the rapidity of a variation (like those of pressure, temperature or electricity). As this variation is characterized by three values, e.g., *case*, direction and magnitude, it complies with the definition of a vector. When a muscular fiber is stimulated the

currents generated by the stimulus can be theoretically considered as the resultant of two monophasic waves of opposite polarity. Comparison of the *surfaces* or *areas* (A) of these waves shows that they are identical. Being of opposite polarity, their algebraic sum is zero and there is no gradient. If the waves have a different duration, then the algebraic sum of the areas of the two waves is not equal to zero and represents a *gradient* of value x .

In the mammalian heart several conditions (high pressure, low blood supply) contribute to slow down the process of depolarization in the subendocardial layers. Therefore the subendocardial layers which were depolarized first are repolarized last. For this reason the areas of QRS (A QRS) and T (A T) which represent the resultant of the various vectors of depolarization and repolarization in the subendocardial and subepicardial layers have surfaces of different values. The difference between the two surfaces is the *ventricular gradient*. A similar comparison can be repeated for the atrial potentials in order to study whether or not there is an *atrial gradient*.

A change of the area of T (AT) may be the result of changes of the area of QRS (A QRS) because variation of the order of depolarization of the various bundles is necessarily followed by a corresponding change in their order of repolarization. In other words, a change of the area of T may be the result of an abnormality of QRS, as in ventricular hypertrophy, bundle branch block, ventricular extrasystoles, or the preexcitation syndrome. There is a *secondary change* of T and the gradient is normal. On the contrary, a change of the area of T may be due to abnormal metabolism of certain areas of the myocardium which does not affect QRS; there is a *primary change* of T and this is revealed by a *modification* of the ventricular gradient.

A wave or deflection of the electrocardiogram may be defined by its duration in seconds and by its height in microvolts (or

tenths of a millivolt) The e two factors determine the area included in one wave The same geometrical construction which is used for determination of the electrical axis may be employed in order to obtain the area of a certain wave from the areas found in two standard limb leads The area of QRS (called A QRS) is the mean electrical axis of QRS is two dimensional and is identical with the frontal vectorcardiogram for QRS The area of T (AT) is the mean electrical axis of T and has the same respective properties

THE ELECTROCARDIOGRAM IN THE VARIOUS POSITIONS OF THE HEART

The electrocardiograms of normal subjects were recorded for many years only by means of the standard limb leads It soon became apparent that the patterns of certain normal subjects were similar to those of patients with abnormal hearts In particular the ECG of the vertical heart sometimes was confused with that of right ventricular hypertrophy that of the horizontal heart with the tracing of left ventricular hypertrophy A new era was opened with the study of unipolar chest leads and unipolar limb leads

The heart of a normal subject may be in different positions within the chest Accordingly a greater or lesser part of either ventricle may face one or the other shoulder or the left leg Tracings recorded by means of the unipolar limb leads explain the cause of several physiologic variants which are necessarily followed by variants of the tracings in the standard limb leads

Several types of rotations of the heart have been recognized Those around the anteroposterior axis cause the vertical semivertical intermediate semihorizontal and horizontal rotation Those around the longitudinal axis cause the clockwise and counterclockwise rotation Those around the transverse axis cause the forward and backward rotation of the apex Certain displacements around one of the e axes are

usually accompanied by displacement around another thereby limiting the number of possibilities Judgment on whether the heart is vertical or horizontal can be drawn by comparing aVL with aVF or leads 1 with 3 The low esophageal leads give a pattern which is similar to that of aVF Thus in the vertical heart they present a left ventricular pattern in the horizontal heart a right ventricular pattern It should be emphasized that correlation between anatomical shifts and rotations and electrocardiographic rotations is only approximate and sometimes nonexistent

The average vertical heart has nearly always some degree of clockwise rotation around its longitudinal axis Therefore the right ventricle becomes more anterior V3 and occasionally V4 may show a right ventricular pattern rS The unipolar lead of the right shoulder may present a QS complex and an inverted T wave because it faces the cavity of the left ventricle (fig 77) If a severe clockwise rotation is present, the vertical heart presents a right ventricular pattern not only in V3 and V4 but also in V5 and even in V6 In all types of vertical heart the main direction of QRS in aVL is directed downwards in aVF upward Mnemonically they look like two hands directed toward each other (the same is true for leads 1 and 3) (fig 79)

The average horizontal heart is usually accompanied by some degree of counterclockwise rotation around the longitudinal axis Therefore leads V4 to V6 face the epicardial surface of the left ventricle and have a qR pattern (fig 78) Even though seldom found in normal subjects an horizontal heart may have a marked counterclockwise rotation around the longitudinal axis Then all chest leads V1 to V6 have a qR pattern because they face the epicardial surface of the left ventricle and the unipolar lead of the left shoulder has an inverted T An important differential point between this type of physiologically horizontal heart and one with left ventricular hypertrophy

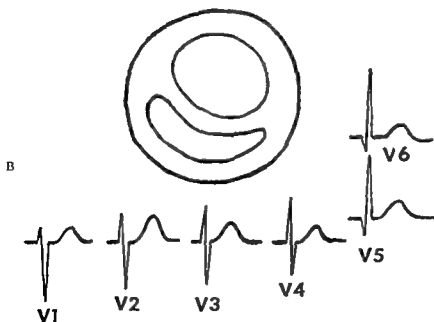
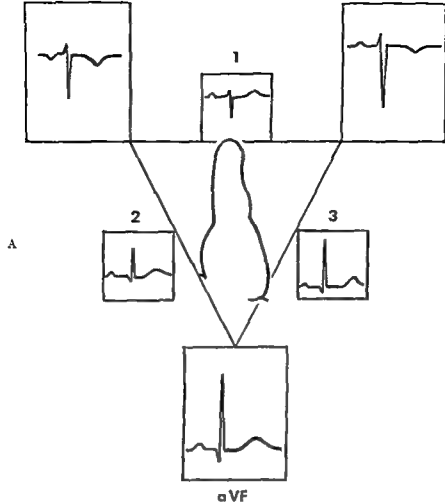


FIG 7 A Electrocardiograms in the classic bipolar and in the unipolar limb leads of a person with vertical heart Scheme B Electrocardiograms in the chest leads of a person with vertical heart Scheme

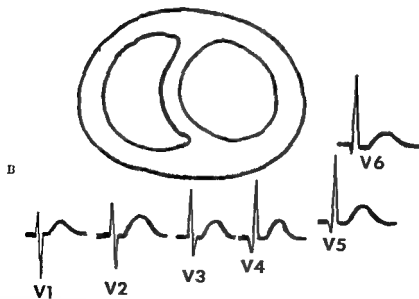
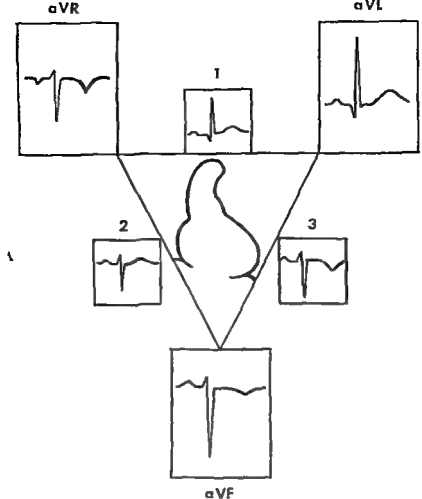


FIG 78 A Electrocardiograms in the classic bipolar and in the unipolar limb leads of a person with horizontal heart Scheme B Electrocardiograms in the chest leads of a person with horizontal heart Scheme

is that in the latter the downward T in aVL is associated with depressed ST wide QRS and inverted T in the chest leads.

Forward rotation of the apex is rare in a normal subject. If present V1 and V2 have a right ventricular pattern, aVL has an upright T (it may have an inverted T if there is counterclockwise rotation).

Varied clockwise rotation around the longitudinal axis causes the right ventricle to become anterior. Then all chest leads may show a right ventricular pattern rS.

In all types of *horizontal heart* the main deflection of QRS in aVL is directed up

wards in aVF downwards and the same is true for leads 1 and 3. Mnemonically, they look like two hands directed away from each other (fig. 79).

Fetal electrocardiogram It may be recorded by means of an electroencephalograph or with an electrocardiograph having an increased sensitivity (2-3 cm per millivolt). The best leads are those on the maternal abdomen; most authors have employed a vertical lead from the epigastrium or umbilical region to the suprapubic region. Transverse or diagonal leads have been used also.

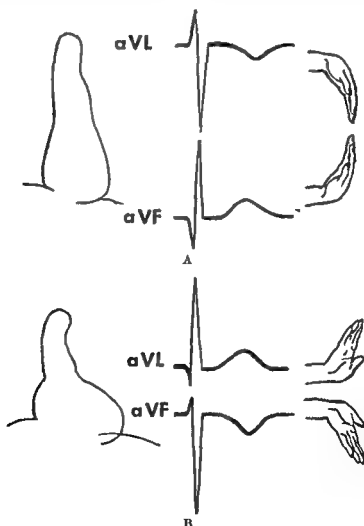


FIG. 79. Right (A) and left (B) axis deviation in the various positions of the heart and mnemonic key based on comparison of leads aVL and aVF.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM OF THE CHILD

At birth the standard leads reveal *right axis deviation*; the unipolar limb leads indicate a *vertical heart*; the chest leads reveal a *predominance of the R over the S waves*. The T waves are inverted, diphasic, or isoelectric from V1 to V4, V5 and even V6. As the child grows older a tendency to diphasic m of the complex with actual pre-existence of S is noted. At the age of 10 usually an adult type of electrocardiogram is recorded and the T wave is usually upright in V4.

Roentgenology (Radiology)

Application of the x-ray apparatus to the examination of the heart and large vessel supplies important data about the size, shape, position and movements of these organs.

Roentgenology includes fluoroscopy or thodiagraphy and teloradiography which can be accomplished by most radiologists. It further includes roentgenkymography, roentgen cinematography, electrokymography and angiocardiology.

FLUOROSCOPY

Fluoroscopy is the procedure which should be carried out as a first step before any further x-ray study. Proper adaptation of the pupils to the dark is necessary. This can be obtained either by long waiting in a dark room or by wearing red goggles for some time prior to the examination. X-ray intensity should not exceed 5 milliamperes. Gloves and apron protection and reduction of the aperture by the shutters are customary protections for the observer.

Skeletal detail, costophrenic angles, motion and position of the diaphragm, mediastinum and lungs will be observed as a preliminary procedure. Then the heart is observed in the three classic positions:

- a) *Postero-anterior (PA)* = chest toward the observer
- b) *Left anterior oblique (LAO)* = left shoulder toward the observer, rotation of 45 degrees (fig 80)
- c) *Right anterior oblique (RAO)* = right shoulder toward the observer, rotation of 45 degrees (fig 80)

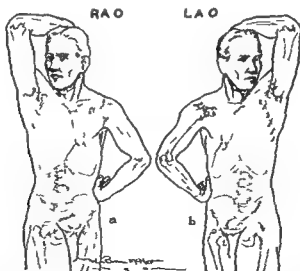


FIG 80 Positions for anterior oblique views. Degree of rotation to be determined for each individual by means of fluoroscopy. a right anterior oblique view b left anterior oblique view. (From *Clinical Roentgenology of the Cardiovascular System* 2nd Ed. Courtesy of Dr H. Roesler and Charles C. Thomas Publisher)

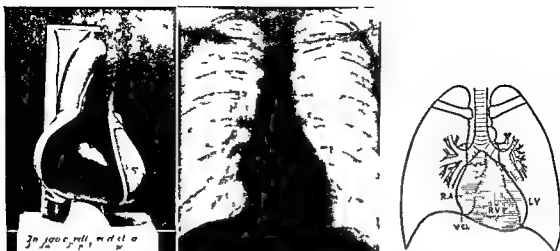


FIG 81 The heart in posteroanterior position (P A) Left model Center actual x ray film Right isolation of the different elements R A right atrium R V right ventricle L V left ventricle V C I vena cava inferior

In most cases it will be also useful to study

d) Right or left lateral view

e) Dorsal position (AP) = the patient's back toward the observer

Correlation of the different parts of the heart with x ray models and x ray findings is shown in figures 81 to 84

Postero anterior (fig 81) The right border of the heart (to the left of the observer) is formed from above downwards by superior vena cava ascending aorta right atrium and in certain cases (on deep inspiration) the right ventricle. The left

border of the heart (to the right of the observer) is formed from above downwards, by aortic arch (aortic knob) pulmonary artery with its left branch (pulmonary knob) left atrial appendage and left ventricle

Left anterior oblique (fig 82) The anterior border (to the left of the observer) is formed by the ascending aorta and the right ventricle. The posterior border is formed by the left atrium and the left ventricle

Right anterior oblique (fig 83) The anterior border (to the right of the observer) is formed from above downwards by



FIG 82 The heart in left anterior oblique (L A O) T trachea A aorta P pulmonary artery L A left atrium R V right ventricle L V left ventricle



FIG 83 The heart in right anterior oblique (RAO) (see figure 81)

the aortic arch the pulmonary artery the infundibulum of the right ventricle and a thin anterior portion of the left ventricle. The posterior border (to the left of the observer) is formed by the aorta and the left atrium.

The right anterior oblique gives the earliest view of left atrial enlargement and of enlargement of the pulmonary artery. The left anterior oblique confirms the left atrial enlargement and clearly shows an early dilatation of the ascending aorta.

Slight enlargement of the left atrium is present when the left atrial shadow cannot be dissociated from that of the vertebral column at a 45° angle but only at a 65° angle. A great enlargement exists if the two shadows cannot be dissociated even in the lateral positions.

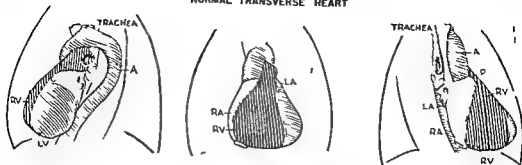
Lateral views The lateral positions show that a clear space exists both before and behind the cardiac shadow (fig 84). Both may become obscure in mediastinal and pericardial processes and in cardiac enlargement. Enlargement of the descending aorta may obscure the posterior space. *Enlargement of the right ventricle increases the anterior contact between cardiac shadow and sternum thus decreasing the anterior clear space.*

The fluoroscopic examination consists not only of appreciating changes of size and shape of the different parts of the heart but also of evaluating cardiac dynamics. The observer can easily follow the systolic contraction of the ventricles and the systolic expansion of the large arteries. The atrial contraction is better observed when



FIG 84 The heart in left lateral position (LL)

NORMAL TRANSVERSE HEART



NORMAL VERTICAL HEART

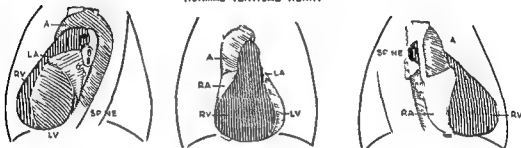


FIG. 85 The normal transverse heart compared to the normal vertical heart (Courtesy of Dr Herrmann and the C V Mosby Co)

the heart rate is slow. In addition to the pulsation of the pulmonary artery it is possible to observe in certain conditions a rapid systolic expansion of the hilar vessels. This was called the *hilar dance* (104) and is caused by increased pulse pressure in the pulmonary arterial vessels as typically seen in pulmonary regurgitation.

Abnormal systolic traction of the heart on the left diaphragm (adhesions), the presence of a large pulsating shadow (aneurysm), intracardiac calcifications (calcification of the heart valves) and extracardiac calcifications (pericardial calcification) should be looked for and interpreted.

Administration of a *barium meal* to the patient permits the study of the esophagus and its relationship with the descending aorta and the left atrium. When enlarged the parts make a definite and sharp defect in the esophageal shadow.

Administration of any *gas producing drink* permits a better view of the lower heart

border because the gas accumulating in the stomach facilitates visualization (105).

The *Valsalva* and the *Mueller tests* cause opposite changes in the size of the heart which are of interest (106) (page 80).

The *cardiac apex* is actually a rounded nose just above or below the diaphragm or bisected by it. In cases where the diaphragm is high localization of the position of the apex may be difficult. It is necessary then to ask the patient to breathe slowly and deeply and the extreme inspiratory position frequently reveals the apex.

A scheme of fluoroscopic observations follows:

POSTEROANTERIOR

1) Lungs

- a) Vascularity
 - normal
 - decreased
 - increased
- b) Hilar shadows
 - normal (with or without expansive pulsations)

decreased
increased (with or without expansive pulsations)

2) Basal Peduncle

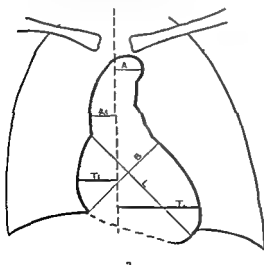
- a) Normal
- b) Enlarged
- c) Aortic arch
 - normal
 - enlarged
 - small
 - absent
- d) Pulmonary arch
 - normal
 - straight
 - enlarged
 - absent
- e) Vena cava superior
 - normal
 - enlarged
 - pulsating
- f) Thymus

3) Cardiac Contour

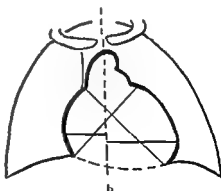
- a) Heart enlarged
 - to the left
 - to the right
 - totally
- b) Phymic pulsations of the right atrium

LEFT ANTERIOR OBLIQUE

- a) Amount of rotation necessary to clear the spinal column (check with a barium swallow) for evaluating the size of left atrium



a



b

FIG. 56 The different diameters of the heart and aorta: a in the adult b in the infant A1 + A2 aorta T1 + T2 transverse diameter B broad diameter L long diameter

- b) Relationship between right ventricle and anterior chest wall
- c) Relationship between right ventricle and ascending aorta
- d) Pulmonary window

RIGHT ANTERIOR OBLIQUE

- a) Size of the right ventricle
- b) Size of the pulmonary conus
- c) Size and development of the aortic arch
- d) Size and configuration of the left atrium (check with a barium swallow)

ORTHODIAGNAPHY

Orthodiagraphy is the most accurate method for measurements of the size of the heart. The method used in fluoroscopy does not eliminate the distortion and the enlargements of the cardiac shadow caused by the divergent course of the x-ray beams. In order to avoid this cause of error, an immobile glass screen is placed in front of the fluoroscope. Then the x-ray tube and the fluoroscopic screen are moved to different points, taking care that at each station only the central part of the beam (revealed by a lead mark) coincides with the profile of the heart. The observer successively records the most important landmarks of the heart (apex, left border, right border, etc.) marking with a pencil the different

stations either on the glass or on a special paper. Later, the profile of the heart is drawn by connecting the different points (orthodiagram). As the orthodiagram represents an actual size reproduction of the heart measurements can be made with a fair degree of accuracy on the tracing.

The following diameters can be drawn on the frontal orthodiagram (fig. 86)

Long diameter which extends from the junction of the cardiac shadow with the vascular pedicle on the right to the apex on the left (actually to the junction of the left ventricle with the diaphragm)

Broad diameter which is the greatest diameter of the cardiac shadow perpendicular to the long diameter. In order to draw a single line it may be necessary to artificially extend the lower right heart border following the natural curve.

Transverse diameter which is the sum of the longest transverse lines to the right and left heart borders from the midline.

Evaluation of cardiac enlargement can be made only by knowing the normal size of the heart at any height, weight and age of the patient. A complex table of the transverse diameter in comparison with all these variables has been made for the orthodia-

TABLE 12 Average heart measurements for orthodiagrams based on age

PATIENT AGE	HEART	
	Transverse diameter	Long diameter
7-9	mm	mm
10-29	125	135
30-39	130	140
40-45	135	135

gram (107) and a simpler one for the teleroentgenogram (108). As simplicity is the basis for any clinical study and no exact formula can take care of all variables so that a certain margin of approximation should be always considered a simplified table is shown here both for the orthodiagram and the teleroentgenogram. The table of the transverse diameter of the heart is made from data of Ungerleider (108).

A more complete appreciation of the cardiac diameters is possible however if both the long and broad diameters are measured. The accompanying tables have been made from data of Moritz Diellen and Groedel (107b). They represent average figures which may vary by about 10 per cent in both directions in different individuals. The fact that the figures of the German authors for the transverse diameter are higher than those of Ungerleider can be partly explained

TABLE 11

HEIGHT	WEIGHT	TRANSVERSE DIAMETER	
		Orthodiagram	Teleroentgenogram
in	lbs	mm	mm
60-64	83-97	95	100
60-68	97-104	100	105
60-72	101-121	104	110
60-76	110-140	109	115
60-80	120-157	114	120
60-84	130-165	119	125
60-88	141-178	123	130
60-92	152-192	128	135
60-96	163-207	133	140
60-100	175-222	138	145
60-104	187-237	143	150
60-108	200-253	147	155
60-112	210-270	152	160
60-116	220-284	156	164

TABLE 13 Average heart measurements for orthodiagrams based on height, weight and sex

	PATIENT		THORAX		HEART	
	Height	Weight	Transverse section	Transverse diameter	Long diameter	Broad diameter
		lbs		mm		
Males	60-64	88-110	220	110	120	90
	64-72	110-165	270	125	130	100
	"	165	290	130	140	100
Females	58-65	58-110	210	105	115	90
	62-65	100-130	230	115	120	90
	65	130	250	120	130	90

by the fact that their orthodiagrams were taken in the supine position

The diameter of the aortic arch can be measured by making the sum of the two lines from the midline to the maximum extensions to right and left borders of the vascular pedicle. This diameter may not be accurate because the shadow of the superior vena cava or other mediastinal structures may interfere. Another procedure is that of completing the natural curve of the aortic knob

TELEROENTGENOGRAPHY

A photographic record of the heart is taken on a film by using a distant source of x ray. The tube is placed at 2 meters (6.5 feet) so that its rays are practically parallel. The magnification of the cardiac shadow over the actual size is about 5 per cent, a fact which should be considered in taking cardiac measurements. When making the exposure the subject is properly centered and respiration should be suspended in inspiration. The exposure should be taken in the erect position if possible.

The size of the cardiac shadow may vary considerably from systole to diastole and since diastole is usually longer the picture is more often taken in diastole showing a somewhat larger heart.

In measuring the diameters attention should be paid to the fact that an *extrapericardial fat pad* may obscure the apex, that deformity of the thorax may render the accurate determination of the heart size difficult and that a high diaphragm also may considerably displace the heart and change the profile.

Measurements of cardiac and aortic sizes can be made on teleroentgenograms by the same method as that used on orthodiagrams. Comparison of the transverse diameter with height and weight has been given already (see table).

Determination of the heart volume has been tried either on the basis of the frontal area

or by considering the three dimensions in both frontal and lateral pictures (109). This is still in the experimental stage and needs further study.

A set of diameters has also been proposed for studying the enlargement of the individual heart chambers (110). In spite of all speculations these diameters add little to our knowledge.

ROENTGENALMOGRAPHY

This is a special technique for recording the movements of the heart on a film. In order to record the pulsations of numerous points along the cardiac borders simultaneously a grid with multiple slits is used. One type employs many horizontal slits (111a), another on the contrary many adjustable slits which are placed perpendicularly to the different sections of the cardiac shadow (111b). During suspended respiration the film is moved about 12 mm in 1 to 2 seconds so that 1 to 3 complete cardiac cycles are recorded. As the film moves downward the beginning of exposure is at the lower margin.

When the lead diaphragm of the fluoroscope is narrowed to a thin slit, single points of the cardiac border can be seen to pulsate inward and outward with cardiac systole and diastole. If an x ray film is substituted for the fluoroscopic screen and either the film or the grid is made to move at constant speed the pulsation of a point of the border is recorded as a section of a curve.

Atrial, ventricular and vascular waves can be observed. To interpret them one should turn the film 90° counterclockwise (and look into a mirror) for the study of the left cardiac border, 90° clockwise for the study of the right cardiac border. Each trough is the result of an inward movement (systole contraction depression), each crest is caused by an outward movement (diastole expansion pulsation) (fig. 87).

A complete description of the waves will be given later (page 147) on account of the

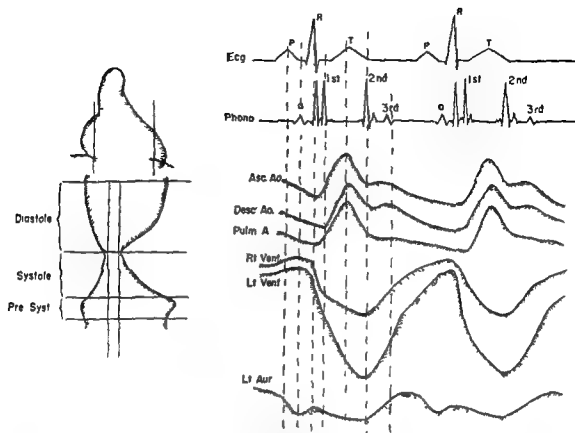


FIG 8—Roentgenkymographic tracings compared with the electrocardiogram and phonocardiogram. To obtain the tracings special rotations and magnification of the film are necessary. At left actual motions of the two margins at ventricular level (magnified and placed near each other)

similarity of the electrokymographic and roentgenkymographic waves

The technical limitations in the use of roentgenkymography are 1) Difficulty of applying the apparatus in a position perpendicular to the contour to be plotted because of the rigidity of the slits 2) Short duration of the records obtained (only three or four cycles in Stumpf's multiple slit kymograph) 3) Insufficient speed of the tracings 4) Poor distinction and small amplitude of the waves 5) Inability to record simultaneously other tracings such as an electrocardiogram a phonocardiogram or a sphygmogram Attempts to overcome these weaknesses by faster recording over a longer period of time or densometric transcription did not result in a great improvement

ELECTROKYMOGRAPHY²²

Following unsuccessful attempts by several authors (112a) Henny and Boone (112b) developed the first practical apparatus in 1945 and called it *electrokymograph*. They applied it to the study of border motions of the right atrium the aortic and pulmonary knobs and the left ventricle. A year later Marchal (112c) built independently a similar device for the study of density changes of the lungs. In 1947 the author working with Fleischer and Rappaport (113) described an instrument which operated on the same principle as that of Henny and Boone but combined several modifications. With this

²² Alternate terms suggested fluorocardiography (113) kinedensigraphy (112c)

systematic study of the border motions and density changes of the heart great vessels and lungs was made in several positions of the subjects

The setup for electrokymography consists of 1) fluoroscope 2) pick up fastened to the fluoroscopic screen (photo-multiplier tube slitted diaphragm and small fluorescent strip) 3) electrical arrangement to transform a c into d c and device for rapid changes of amplification 4) electric filter suppressing the flicker of the x ray tube 5) galvanometer transcribing the tracing on a moving film 6) microphone to be connected with a sound recorder and 7) device for electrical tracing of the carotid pulse

Any upright fluoroscopic stand can be used for the seated patient for children or sick patients a horizontal table is used A commercial tilt table can be employed for both purposes

The main part of the apparatus is an electron multiplier phototube A strip of fluorescent screen is cemented to the glass cover of the phototube in front of the cathode When the x rays strike this screen the light generated by the screen is picked up by the cathode transformed into equivalent electrons amplified and fed into the electrocardiographic channel Thus the electrical output varies in proportion to the amount of x rays which reach the fluorescent screen A good analysis of the waves can be done only if the film moves at speeds of between 50 and 100 mm per second If on the other hand one is interested in the magnitude of the waves film speeds of between 2.5 and 10 mm per second should be used

The polarity of the apparatus is so arranged that an increase of light causes a downward movement of the tracing Therefore a drop of the curve indicates either an inward motion of the cardiac border (border tracing) or a decrease in the thickness of the structure (densogram) The former may be due to either contraction or displacement

Any wave occurring before the first large vibration of the first sound is *presystolic* any wave occurring after the last vibration of the second sound is *diastolic* any wave taking place between the beginning of the first sound and the end of the second is *systolic*

In general the tracings should be recorded during voluntary apnea in an intermediate phase because it has been shown that the pulsations of the lung (and to a lesser extent those of the hilar shadows and pulmonary artery) are greater in inspiration than in expiration It is difficult however to obtain reliable tracings in children patients in failure and patients with chronic lung diseases who are unable to control their respiration because of dyspnea A high pass filter made of several condensers is then interposed between the electrokymograph and the galvanometer this filter modifies the time constant so that the tracing does not wander off the paper A slight error proportional to the amount of reduction and consisting of a slight change of phase and configuration of the waves is the result Therefore such filter should not be used in cases where plateau like waves are suspected because these are basically altered by the device

Several standard positions for the slit can be used with the patient in either the sitting or the recumbent position (fig 89) As a routine with the patient in the postero-anterior position one starts on the left side plotting the apex of the heart the upper part of the left ventricle the appendage of the left atrium (often better visualized by a 10° to 15° rotation toward one of the oblique positions) the pulmonary knob and the aortic knob

On the right side one traces the right atrium the ascending aorta (10° left oblique) the superior vena cava (seldom satisfactory) and the inferior vena cava (deep inspiration) one can also plot the right hilar shadow and the peripheral pulmonary pulsations (these are densograms)

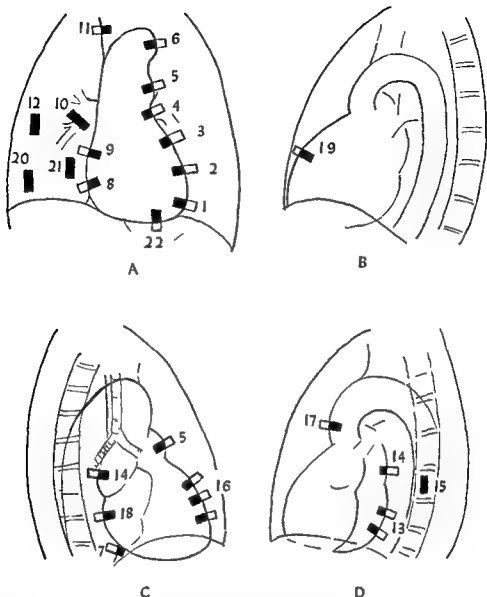


FIG. 55 Standard positions of the heart for recording electrograms. Locations for order tracings are marked with black and white rectangles. Positions for lensograms are marked with black rectangles. 1 Postero-anterior position 2 3 Higher positions on left ventricle 4 left auricular appendage 5 pulmonary artery 6 aortic arch 7 9 right atrium 10 right hilum 11 superior vena cava 12 and 20 right lung 13 pulmonary veins 14 left ventricle (inferior aspect) B Left lateral 19 right ventricle C Right anterior oblique 5 pulmonary artery inferior vena cava 14 left atrium III left ventricle (anterior aspect) 18 right atrium D Left anterior oblique 13 left ventricle (posterior aspect) 14 left atrium 15 descending aorta 17 ascending aorta

The left oblique is used for the study of the left atrium, the descending aorta and the posterior aspect of the left ventricle. The right oblique is used for the study of the left atrium and the anterior aspect of the left ventricle.

The pulsation of the right ventricle is best picked up in the straight lateral view, just above the point where it separates from the anterior chest wall (the best tracings are obtained with the subject in the recumbent position). The pulmonary veins can be

studied with the stethoscope placed vertically between convexity of the right atrium and right hilum in the posteroanterior position.

In the study of the various cardiovascular structures, the following data should be considered:

a) *Amplitude of pulsation* It can be evaluated by comparing the amplitude of pulsation of one structure with that of another if they are recorded with the same degree of amplification.

a) *Shape and time of various waves* They can be evaluated by the use of optimum amplification and by tuning the waves of the EKG with those of other record.

c) *Abnormal movements* Transmitted and inherent pulsations can be differentiated by comparing a border tracing with a densitogram of the same organ.

d) *Dissociation between various chambers* (dissociation between the atria, bundle branch block, A-V block). This study is best accomplished by simultaneously recording the pulsations of two chambers (two electrokymographs).

The Waves of the Normal Tracing and Their Interpretation

It should be kept in mind that the electrokymogram (EKG) is used for the study of entirely different structures: atrial, ventricular, arterial and venous (figs 89 and 93). According to the structure and its function, the tracing should be compared with a physiological or clinical tracing of atrial or ventricular contraction or of arterial or venous pulsation.

The EKG tracings represent the summation of volume changes of a chamber or vessel motions due to rotation or total shift of the heart and tractions from other structures. In particular, each atrium shows the effect of traction by its respective ventricle.

Left ventricle (fig 90) apex. A small positive wave can be recorded immediately before or during the first group of vibrations of the first sound. This is due to left atrial

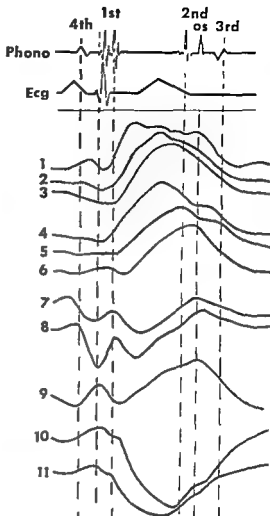


FIG 89 Comparison of various schematic electrokymograms with the phonocardiogram (phono) and the electrocardiogram (Ecg). Electrokymograms: 1 ascending aorta, 2 aortic arch, 3 descending aorta, 4 pulmonary artery, 5 hilum, 6 lung, 7 right atrium, 8 left atrium, 9 pulmonary veins, 10 left ventricle, 11 right ventricle.

contraction which pushes a certain amount of blood into the left ventricle. The tension period is accompanied by a small depression, probably due to torsion of the heart. The main ventricular wave consists of a large downward deflection which starts at the time of that large vibration of the first sound which is due to opening of the aortic valve. The descending branch of this wave reaches

its lowest point at a time which varies in different subjects and with various positions on account of variable influence of rotation and displacement of the apex. In most cases this point slightly precedes that large vibration of the second sound which is due to closure of the aortic valve. The brief interval corresponds to the protodiastole. Early diastole is marked by a small rebound and a rapidly ascending slope which ends at the time of the third heart sound (phase of rapid filling) then by a more gradual slope or a horizontal line which continues until the beginning of the following cycle. The isometric relaxation period lies between the

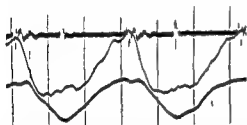


FIG. 90 Simultaneous electrokymograms of the left ventricle. Upper tracing phonocardiogram. Middle tracing Lh1 of the apex. Lower tracing Lh2 of the left ventricular margin at medium level. There seems to be precession of the apex due to its rotation during the tension period.

lowest point of the ventricular wave and the beginning of the rebound in early diastole.

Contour of the left ventricle. The waves reproduce volume changes of the ventricle more faithfully and denote to a lesser degree the effect of motion.

Other points on the ventricular surface. The left ventricle can be studied in various projections such as the left anterior oblique (posterior aspect) and the right anterior oblique (anterolateral aspect). Tracings recorded in the oblique positions present the same type of waves as the left margin in the P A position except that they are smaller, the lowest part of the main wave is frequently made of a shallow curve.

Right ventricle. Indirect evidence of right

ventricular activity may be found in tracings of the right atrium in the P A view; however the data cannot be considered accurate because of influence from venous return. The best tracings are recorded in the lateral views with the slit placed where the cardiac shadow separates from that of the anterior chest wall or just below this spot.

Left atrium (figs. 89 and 93). The typical tracing shows a rapid downward wave in presystole starting about 0.14 second before the first sound. If the heart rate is rapid there may be only one slow wave in diastole with a negative peak at the end of left atrial contraction. This peak usually coincides with the first vibration of the first sound but may take place slightly before. If a fourth (atrial) sound is present it occurs during the first (downward) branch of the atrial wave. The presystolic wave is deeper in patients with left atrial hypertrophy and disappears in patients with atrial fibrillation. After this wave the tracing rises sharply to a small positive notch during the first part of the first sound. After this two negative waves are present: one in systole and the other in diastole. The systolic collapse of the left atrium is related to the dynamics of the left ventricle. The left ventricular contraction lowers the interventricular septum and creates a suction within the atrial cavity which is slowly compensated by increased flow of blood. Therefore an inward movement of the free atrial wall takes place. The highest level of the tracing is reached slightly after the end of systole when the mitral valve opens. After this positive notch there is a diastolic collapse which is probably due to passive flow of blood into the left ventricle after the opening of the mitral valve.

Right atrium. The tracing recorded over the margin of the right atrium is similar to that of the left (fig. 89). Contraction of the atrium during presystole is manifested by a small and rounded downward wave. After this the tracing either reaches the

baseline or rises above it but drops again during ventricular systole. The latter is manifested by a sharp downward wave (*systolic collapse*) which is usually deeper than the atrial wave. The subsequent course of the atrial tracing varies with the position of the subject. In the sitting position the tracing rises slowly and attains its maximum height at the time of tricuspid opening; in the recumbent position the rise is quicker and there may be a convex line which brings the tracing above the baseline. Another drop however takes place after the opening of the tricuspid valve (*diastolic collapse*). In summary there is a presystolic collapse, a systolic collapse and frequently an early diastolic collapse.

Ascending aorta (fig 91) The tracing of the ascending aorta presents a typical pattern. It has an early systolic drop, a rapid rise, an early peak, a slight descent (or none at all) during the second half of systole, a small incisura, a high and occasionally prolonged wave after the incisura. The lowering of the aortic root by ventricular systole and the medial displacement of the ascending aorta by rotation of the heart in the same phase apparently reduce the height of the aortic wave. Opposite movements taking place in diastole add their effect to that of the diastolic wave and create a high positive wave. The proximity of the ascending aorta to the left ventricle may contribute to the fact that in some subjects the profile of the aortic pulse during systole greatly resembles a tracing of intraventricular pressure.

Aortic arch (fig 91) The tracing of the aortic arch presents a) a small positive wave during the first part of the first sound probably due to a rise of the aortic valve during isometric contraction; b) a sharp rise after the second large vibration of the first sound (opening of the aortic valve); c) an anacrotic depression in the first part of systole; d) a peak during the last part of systole but well before the second sound; e) a predicrotic notch which may coincide

with or last slightly beyond the second sound; f) a diastolic wave which is usually small and rounded; and g) a few small aftervibrations.

Descending aorta (fig 91) Since the descending aorta does not present a sharp contour on fluoroscopy only a densogram is possible in normal subjects. The tracing is similar to that of the aortic arch but shows a slight delay in the rise of the pulse in comparison with that in the arch.

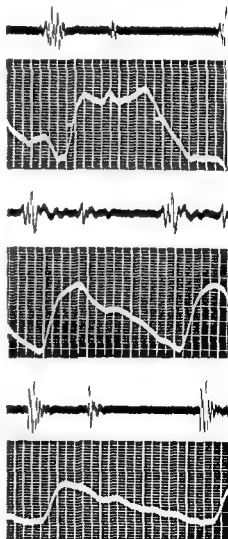


FIG 91 Electrocardiograms of the aorta
a ascending aorta (slight rotation toward LAO)
b aortic arch (PA) c d descending aorta (LAO)

Pulmonary artery (fig 92) The tracing of the pulmonary arch is usually easily obtained. However a large left hilar shadow or a dilated descending aorta may modify the tracing. The pulmonic pulsation starts with the opening of the pulmonic valve (second part of the first sound) and rises sharply; occasionally with an anacrotic depression. The peak is reached at about two thirds of ventricular systole. The pre-dicrotic notch is deep and occurs 0.06 and

0.08 second after the main vibration of the second sound. The dicrotic wave is well defined and has a peak from 0.10 to 0.12 second after the main vibration of the second sound. Another positive wave may be seen in late diastole.

Hilar shadows (fig 92) The tracings of the hilar shadows are *densograms* and represent the variations of opacity of the hilar regions caused by changes in the blood content. The amplitude of the normal hilar pulsation is between one half and two thirds of that of the pulmonary arch. Following a small drop the tracing presents a large positive wave about 0.04 second after the pulse of the pulmonary artery, and 0.12 second after the beginning of the first sound. The peak of the pulse wave is reached at or about the time of the main vibration of the second sound. It may be followed by a small notch and by a small dicrotic wave. The positive wave of the hilar pulse indicates the arrival of the arterial pulse into the branches of the pulmonary artery. However the pulsations of the pulmonary veins also influence the tracing and the early systolic depression may be due to acceleration of the venous flow.

Pulmonary veins The typical tracing shows a *presystolic positive wave* (increased volume) synchronous with the negative wave (contraction = decreased volume) of the left atrial tracing. Later on a *systolic collapse*, a *positive peak* at the time of mitral valve opening and a *diastolic collapse* are present. In other words the tracing is a typical venous tracing.

Lungs (fig. 92) The *densogram* of the lung is a tracing which resembles that of the hilum. However there are some differences: there is a greater delay in the rise of the pulse wave (this takes place about 0.04 second after the rise of the hilar pulse); there may be a greater delay of the peak (this occurs from 0.08 to 0.10 second after the main vibration of the second sound); the curve is more rounded and exhibits no evidence of a dicrotic wave.

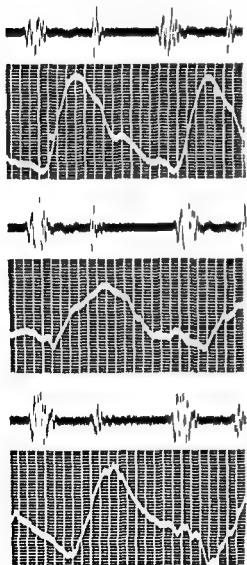


FIG. 92 Electrocardiograms of the pulmonary arterial wave a pulmonary knob b right hilum c visible base of the right lung

Superior cava Occasionally it is possible to obtain a record similar to the jugular tracing and which shows the three typical, positive waves *a*, *c*, and *x*. Smaller vibrations are frequently superimposed.

Inferior cava There is a small presystolic positive wave due to slower flow of blood at the time of atrial contraction (*a* wave). This is followed by a deep negative wave (*systolic collapse*). Then follows a slow rise culminating in a single or double wave about 0.10 second after the second sound (*x* wave). This is due to slow engorgement of the vein until the tricuspid valve opens. The subsequent drop reaches its maximum after the middle of diastole (*diastolic collapse*). No *c* wave is present.

The tracing of the inferior vena cava is similar to the hepatic tracings of normal subjects and is the result of the same physiologic phenomena.

The method is simple to handle accurate and satisfactory for the study of cardiac and vascular structures. It may be applied to the study of

- a) Physiology and pharmacology of the heart and vessels
- b) Rheumatic and luetic heart disease
- c) Congenital heart disease
- d) Coronary heart disease
- e) Pericarditis and adhesive pericarditis
- f) Aneurysms and mediastinal tumors

ANGIOCARDIOGRAPHY

Angiocardiography was first described for the study of the pulmonary vessels (114a) and then applied to the visualization of the cardiac chambers in children (114b). Later it was modified so that visualization of the cardiac chambers in the adult was made possible (115-116).

Present technique consists of the rapid intravenous injection of 30 to 50 cc of 70 per cent diodrast (2 seconds or less) in the adult (1 cc per kilo in children). The arrival of undiluted contrast medium into the heart takes place about 3 seconds later when a series of roentgenograms is started. When circulation is slower the correct exposure

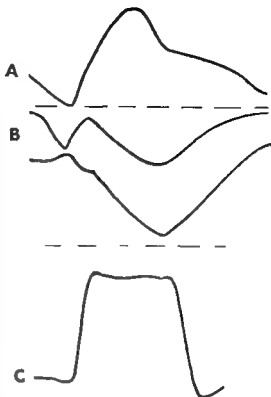


FIG 93 The various electrokymographic patterns A Pattern of expansion (aortic arch pulmonary arch hilum lungs) B Pattern of contraction (atria ventricles) C Pattern of intravenous pressure (ascending aorta normal left atrium mitral regurgitation left ventricle in aort)

time is found by means of circulation time tests (page 156).

In order to obtain complete vision of the various chambers it is often necessary to obtain several films at extremely short intervals. This can be obtained by various devices. Most of them including the roll film magazine driven by a motor unit take films at half second intervals.

According to the timing of the exposure two main pictures can be obtained that revealing the chambers of the right heart (*right angiocardiography*) and that revealing the chambers of the left heart (*left angiocardiography*) (figs 94 to 97).

The left anterior oblique gives the best picture of the heart. The different cardiac

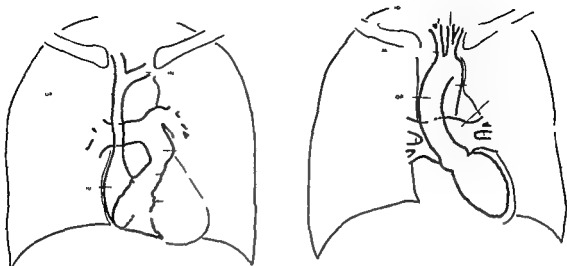


FIG 94 Idealized angiocardigraphic outlines in posteroanterior projection A right heart B left heart (From Dotter and Sternberg's *Angiocardiography* Courtesy of the authors and of Paul H. Hoeber Inc.)

chambers are then visualized one after the other so that important informations about the shape and size of the chambers the size of the valvular openings and the condition of the septa can be secured

Among the disadvantages of this procedure are a) nearly constant thrombosis of the vein b) unpleasant general sensations during the injection c) need for general anesthesia in infants and children d) occasional febrile reaction and e) some mortality (about 0.5 per cent)

Angiocardiography is particularly useful in the complex congenital malformation of the heart and large vessels

COMPLEMENTAL PROCEDURES

Whenever difficulties in the interpretation of x-rays of the heart are found complementary maneuvers may be used

They are

- a) Distention of the stomach by gas (gas producing mixture in water)
- b) Distention of the transverse colon by air (injection of air via the rectum)
- c) Diagnostic pneumothorax (customary technique of pneumothorax injection of air under negative pressure with manometric control)

d) *Diagnostic pneumoperitoneum*. This is done by injecting from 1 to 2 liters of air in the peritoneal cavity by means of a blunt needle. The procedure is used in order to visualize the lower border of the heart and the upper border of both the liver and spleen. It is used almost exclusively in cases with ascites (page 457)

e) *Diagnostic pneumopericardium*. This procedure is adopted only in cases with pericardial effusion. The injection of air is preceded by evacuation of fluid (page 448)

f) *Diagnostic pneumomediastinum* (117-118). This procedure gives visualization of the anterior mediastinum whenever the obscuration is caused by enlargement of the heart. Anterior adhesions are often visualized. Mediastinal tumors and extensive adhesions persist as dense shadows. Injection of 40 to 60 cc of air is made in the anterior mediastinum by means of a curved needle sliding along the posterior surface of the sternum (fig 98). The procedure seems devoid of danger.

g) *Administration of a barium meal* for the study of the esophagus and its relationship to the heart and aorta

In conclusion, *roentgenology of the heart* supplements the information obtained by

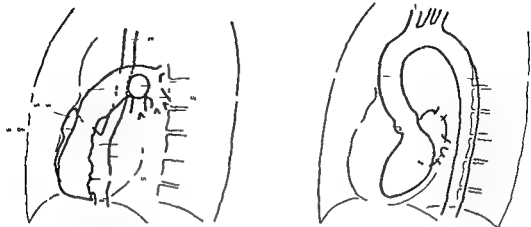


FIG 95 Idealized angiocardigraphic outlines in the left anterior oblique projection A right heart B left heart (From Dotter and Sternberg's *Angiocardiography* courtesy of the authors and of Iul B Hoeber Inc)

other methods and gives exact data about the size shape and position of the heart and large vessel

Tracings of the Atomic Discharges of Radioactive Materials Within the Heart (Radiocardiography)

The passage of radioactive substances through the cardiac chambers can be graphically recorded with the aid of a Geiger

Mueller tube The carefully shielded Geiger Mueller tube is placed in front of the precordium and is connected with a count rate meter and either an ink writing device (217) or a direct writing electrocardiograph as used by the author (218) The curve records the concentration of a radioisotope in the structures underlying the tube as represented by the number of disintegrations of the radioactive element per unit of time

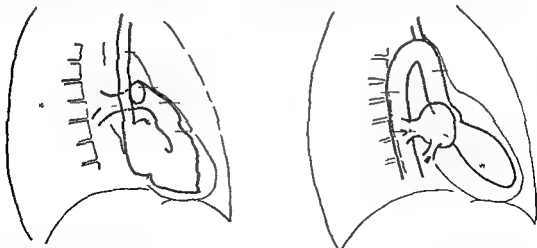


FIG 96 Idealized angiocardigraphic outlines in the right anterior oblique projection A right heart B left heart (From Dotter and Sternberg's *Angiocardiography* courtesy of the authors and of Iul B Hoeber Inc)

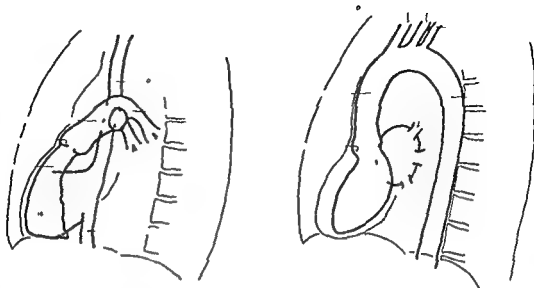


FIG 97 Idealized angiocardigraphic outlines in the left lateral projection A right heart B left heart (From Dotter and Sternberg's *Angiocardigraphy* courtesy of the authors and of Paul B. Hoeber Inc.)

In the original description the curve was corrected for the random bursts by taking the mean of the counts over a half second period. In the suggested modification the characteristics of the counter and the electrocardiograph are so adjusted that a slower curve representing the mean of counts is automatically recorded.

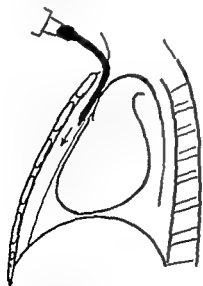


FIG 98 Technique of introduction of air in the performance of anterior pneumomediastinum

Either radiosodium (Na^{24}) in a dose of 100 to 200 microcurie (217) or diiodo fluoresceine (I^{131}) in a dose of 20 to 50 microcurie (218) can be injected into an antecubital vein. The latter has a half life of 7 days and is eliminated in extremely minute daily amounts so that no special precautions in the handling of urine and feces are necessary.

The tracing consists of two main waves sometimes connected by a plateau like transitional zone. The first wave is sharp; it starts from 0.2 to 2 seconds after the injection and lasts from 3 to 4 seconds. It is due to penetration of the drug into the right heart and therefore it is called *R wave*. The second wave is more rounded and may be lower; it starts 5 to 7 seconds after the injection and lasts 5 to 7 seconds. It is due to penetration of the drug into the left heart and therefore it is called *I wave*. Return of the tracing to norm indicates that all the blood containing the isotope has left the heart.

The method may be used for the determination of residual blood within the heart. It may give interesting data in heart failure.

chronic cor pulmonale, coronary heart disease, congenital shunts, adhesive pericarditis and obstructions to the venae cavae. Slower passage of blood to or through one of the ventricles is revealed. Controversial problems concerning right and left heart failure may be solved by the use of this technique.

Determination of Cardiac Output and of the Blood Gases

CARDIAC OUTPUT

Knowledge of the oxygen consumption per minute and of the rate of oxygen yielded by a definite amount of blood to the tissues can be used for calculating the amount of blood which is necessary in order to deliver this oxygen (121). The first is determined by measuring the amount of oxygen taken from the air in 1 minute, the second by the difference between the volumes per cent of oxygen in the mixed venous blood and in the arterial blood. Mixed venous blood can be withdrawn in man from the pulmonary artery during right heart catheterization (page 157) while arterial blood can be obtained by puncture of the brachial or femoral artery. Thus it is possible to use this *direct method* in man.

Numerous *indirect methods* have also been developed for determination of oxygen content of the arterial and venous bloods (122). They are based upon the rate of absorption of a foreign gas through the lungs.

A technique for calculating cardiac output is based on a simple equation (125) ⁴⁰. The most common procedure however is that of rebreathing a mixture of 15 per cent

Cardiac output =

$$\frac{\text{O}_2 \text{ consumption (normal)} - \text{O}_2 \text{ consumption (rebreathing)}}{\text{Arterial O}_2 \text{ content (normal)} - \text{Arterial O}_2 \text{ content (rebreathing)}}$$

The procedure involves the determination of oxygen consumption and two analyses while breathing deeply from a bag of nitrogen for 20 to 30 seconds.

acetylene in air from a 3 liter bag until a homogeneous mixture is obtained in the lungs bag system (122). Samples of this gas are analyzed for oxygen and nitrogen or acetylene at the beginning, after 5 and after 23 seconds from the beginning of rebreathing. These methods are valuable but have certain limitations; their accuracy should not be overestimated. Other methods are based upon the intravenous injection of a nondiffusible dye (213), radioactive material or tagged red cells (214) and the determination of their mean concentration in the blood of a peripheral artery.

The cardiac output per minute of an average normal individual under basal conditions (page 44) has been found to be 5.6 liters (124) with variations caused by the difference in size and weight of different individuals. Division of the figure of cardiac output by that of the heart rate per minute gives the figure of *systolic discharge* which averages 84 cc (page 43).

BLOOD GASES

Determination of the oxygen and carbon dioxide content of the arterial and venous blood may have different purposes in addition to that of evaluating cardiac output. Among them are:

a) *Determination of oxygen intake by the blood in the lungs.* It is reduced in pulmonary diseases and in heart failure.

b) *Evaluation of oxygen transportation to the tissues.* Slow circulation due to heart failure deprives the tissues of oxygen to a greater extent. This is known as *stagnation anoxemia*.

c) *Recognition of blood mixture caused by congenital shunts.* If blood passes from the lesser to the greater circulation, the arterial blood contains a lower percentage of oxygen (incomplete saturation).

Venous (right atrial) blood is aspirated through a thin catheter after its introduction through an arm vein into the right atrium (page 157). *Arterial blood* is obtained directly through puncture of one of the

femoral arteries at the groin. Precautions should be taken that the blood sample does not come in contact with the air. One of them is the presence of paraffin oil in the syringe. The sample is transferred to a blood gas apparatus (*Van Slyke or Scholander*). Then all oxygen is freed from the hemoglobin by the addition of potassium ferricyanide or carbon dioxide is freed from combination by the addition of acid.

The oxygen capacity is evaluated by exposing the blood to air and determining the amount which it contains after saturation. The ratio of oxygen content to oxygen capacity per 100 cc gives the *percentage saturation of the blood with oxygen*. If the oxygen capacity is 20 cc and the arterial blood contains only 19 cc, there is a saturation of 95 per cent. If the venous blood contains 15 cc of oxygen its saturation is 75 per cent. In certain cases of congenital heart disease the oxygen saturation has been found as low as 58 per cent (127-128).

The following figures may be considered normal for the blood:

Oxygen capacity	19-22 vol %
Arterial content	18-21 vol (94-96%)
Venous content	10-16 vol (60-80%)
pH (serum)	7.3-7.4

Blood Quantity and Circulation Time

BLOOD QUANTITY

Evaluation of the blood quantity can be determined in patients but the figure must be considered as actually referring to the amount of circulating blood. Present technique is far from accurate but, as the range of clinical variations is far wider than the margin of error, interesting results can be obtained. The methods are based on the intravenous injection of a colloidal dye which promptly diffuses into the plasma but is not absorbed by the tissues (120). If determination of the dye is then made in the venous blood at regular intervals, knowledge of the amount of circulating blood will be obtained. One of the most frequently used dyes is Evans blue.

The following technique is used (216):

a) A sample of blood is obtained and the plasma-corpuseles ratio is obtained by using the hematocrit.

b) Ten cc of physiologic salt solution containing 20 mg of Evans blue is injected into an antecubital vein.

c) At regular intervals, samples of blood are removed from the vein by means of another syringe. Sodium oxalate is mixed with these samples then they are centrifuged. Comparison of the samples with known standards is made by means of a colorimeter. In normal individuals mixing of the dye with the blood is complete in 9 minutes after the injection. In congestive failure the mixing time may be prolonged to 15 minutes or more.

Normal individuals have an average of 77.5 grams of blood per kilogram. Accumulation of blood in the blood reservoirs and slow circulation of blood in capillary districts may change the amount of circulating blood in a remarkable way. Whenever the amount of the circulating blood is increased the term *plethora* is used.

CIRCULATION TIME

Circulation time is studied by means of the intravenous injection of a chemical substance and by the study of its effect after it has passed through a certain part of the circulatory apparatus.

Three types of circulation time tests are used: a) arm to periphery, b) arm to lung, and c) lung to periphery.

Arm to periphery. Circulation of these chemicals includes part of the venous circulation, the heart, the pulmonary circulation, and part of the arterial circulation. The drugs used are studied through the effects they have on the carotid body or the respiratory center (sodium cyanide (129), papaverine (130a), aminophyllin (131)) on the color of the face (histamine (132)) on the taste (saccharine (133), decholin (134)) on the color of the pupil or oral mucosa with ultra-violet radiation (fluorescein (135)). In the

author's opinion the easiest test is the decholin test

Arm to tongue time with Na dehydrocholate (decholin) The injection is made in a superficial vein of the forearm. Three cc of a 20 per cent solution of decholin (134) are injected within 3 seconds. The arrival of the drug at the tongue is felt by the patient as a bitter taste. The arm to tongue time averages 15 seconds from the end of the injection.

Arm to lips time with fluorescein This is to be preferred in infants and children. About 0.7 cc per 5 kg of body weight of a 5 per cent sodium fluorescein in 5 per cent sodium bicarbonate is rapidly injected into an antecubital vein. The room is darkened and an ultraviolet lamp concentrated on the lips reveals greenish fluorescence as soon as the drug reaches the oral mucosa. Circulation time varies from 5 to 8 seconds (average 6.0) from birth to 2 years from 9 to 12.5 seconds (average 8.5) from 2 to 13 years.

Arm to lung (136) This test is made by rapidly injecting one third cc of ether plus one half cc of physiologic saline solution. The arrival is marked by the subjective (patient) and objective (observer) perception of ether vapor in the breath of the patient. Arm to lung time is short, averaging from 4 to 8 seconds.

Lung to ear (215) The patient is made to inhale nitrogen. The decreased oxygen saturation of the arterial blood is revealed by an electrical oximeter applied to the earlobe. Average lung to ear time in the adult is 5.12 seconds.

The arm to periphery tests show a shorter time whenever there is a shunt between lesser and greater circulations with blood passing from the former to the latter. They show a prolonged time in congestive failure and may demonstrate either a slower pulmonary circulation (arm to lung) or a slower peripheral circulation (lung to ear).

Catheterization of the Heart

I. Catheterization of the right heart The method is based on the introduction of a

thin catheter into one of the superficial veins of the forearm. The catheter is carefully pushed through the venous system until it reaches the heart (123, 124, 183). A single lumen catheter (size 9 French) of woven silk and radio opaque with the orifice at the tip is employed. It is 100 to 125 cm in length, flexible but stiff enough to permit rotation without buckling. The patient lies on a fluoroscopic table with a spot film device. Observations are intermittent and exposure of each part of the body is as brief as possible.

An incision is made through the skin over the median basilic vein of either side under local anaesthesia and in aseptic conditions. The catheter is threaded into the vein and advanced under fluoroscopic control until it reaches the various chambers of the heart.

The catheter is passed into the axillary vein, the superior cava and the right atrium, hence into the right ventricle, the main trunk of the pulmonary artery and either of its branches.

Clotting of blood in the catheter is prevented by a continuous perfusion of normal saline solution from a reservoir.

This method can be used for several studies which include pressure determinations, gas studies and intracardiac electrocardiography.

4. Pressure measurements (cardiomanometry) Pressure of the cardiac chambers or vessels should be taken by means of graphic records. These are obtained through the use of a manometer (an electromanometer is preferable) and supply information also about phasic changes of pressure.

As venous spasm may prevent introduction of the catheter, it is advisable to push this as far as possible and to proceed to the various pressure and oxygen determinations during withdrawal. The following records can be taken: a) pulmonary capillary pressure, b) pulmonary artery pressure, c) right ventricular pressure, d) right atrial pressure and e) superior caval pressure.

Pulmonary capillary tracing This is essentially a venous tracing, the waves being

due to changes of pressure transmitted from the pulmonary veins through the capillaries of the lungs. The tracing shows a positive atrial wave an early systolic dip followed by a systolic collapse and an early-diastolic rise and a mid diastolic collapse. Differences between this tracing and that of the right atrium are a higher mean pressure a delay of the waves of about 0.08 seconds and a deeper diastolic collapse. Mean pressure is about +3 mm Hg.

Pulmonary artery tracing It is a typical arterial tracing (page 108). The *anacrotic notch* is usually well visible. The *pcal* is rounded (except if artefacts mar the record with superimposed vibrations). The *incisura* is deep. The *dicrotic wave* is well visible and followed by a few aftervibrations. Pressures vary between +20 to +25 (systolic) and +5 to +8 (diastolic).

Right ventricular tracing The tracing presents the plateau like configuration which is typical of intraventricular pressure tracings. A small positive wave indicates completion of filling by the atrial contraction. A rapid rise of the curve takes place during the tension period and terminates with a small notch which marks the closure of the tricuspid valve. After further rise a second notch marks the opening of the pulmonary valve. During ejection a steady line is typical (plateau like curve) but a rounded contour may be observed. A sudden drop indicates the end of ejection. This is followed by two vibrations the first marks the closure of the pulmonary valve the second the opening of the tricuspid valve. Rapid filling is usually not accompanied by rise in pressure proving that the right ventricle dilates gradually with the incoming blood. Pressures vary between +20 to +25 (systolic) and 0 (diastolic).

Right atrial tracing The tracing presents a small positive wave in pre-systole due to atrial contraction. This is followed by a depression (systolic collapse) during ventricular contraction. The pressure rises during the latter part of systole and reaches a peak

at the time of tricuspid valve opening. Following this there is a slow fall of pressure until the following atrial contraction. The pressure varies between 0 and 3 mm Hg with marked respiratory oscillations.

Various calculations can be made upon data supplied by cardiomanometry. The most important are a) determination of mitral area b) determination of mitral regurgitant area and c) determination of regurgitant flow. The c determinations involve complex mathematical formulas and their accuracy has not been established as yet. If confirmed they would have a special importance in mitral valve lesions.

Two interesting refinements of technique are catheterization of the renal veins (188) or the coronary sinus (189).

Oximetry Oximetry is done by evaluating chemically or photoelectrically the oxygen content and saturation of samples of blood drawn through the catheter. It is likely that within a few years oximetry will be done graphically and automatically from the tip of the catheter.

Evaluation of oxygen saturation supplies essential data for calculation of both the systemic and the pulmonary blood flow. The existence and size of a shunt can also be determined.

The estimated systemic blood flow (Q_s) is equal to oxygen consumption in the tissues (i.e. oxygen intake in the lungs) divided by the difference between oxygen concentration in the aorta or peripheral artery¹ (C_{ao}) and in the right atrium (C_{ra})

$$Q_s = \frac{O}{C_{ao} - C_{ra}}$$

The estimated pulmonary flow (Q_{pa}) is equal to oxygen consumption divided by the difference between oxygen concentration of the blood of the left atrium (C_{la})² and that

¹The blood sample is usually drawn from the brachial radial or femoral artery.

²This is of course identical with that of a peripheral artery if there are no shunts between the ventricles or the large arteries.

of the blood in the pulmonary artery (Cpa)

$$Q_{pa} = \frac{O_2}{Cl_a - Cl_{pa}}$$

When the oxyhemoglobin concentration of the arterial blood is decreased far below the normal figure of 96 per cent either right to-left shunt or pulmonary pathology will be suspected

In the study of persons without congenital heart disease it has been found that when multiple samples of blood are obtained from different chambers the greatest normal variation in oxygen content between *superior vena cava* and *right atrium* is 2.3 volumes per cent between *right atrium* and *right ventricle* 1.8 volumes per cent and between *right ventricle* and *pulmonary artery* 0.5 volumes per cent Therefore in any given case a rise of more than this amount indicates the entry of oxygenated blood into the chamber through a shunt The existence of a moderate shunt however is compatible with a difference which is still within the above mentioned variations

II *Catheterization of the left heart or aorta*
Catheterization of the human aorta has been used for the study of aortic pressure pulses The procedure seems to be no more hazardous than catheterization of the right heart The contour of the pulse closely resembles that of the aortic pulse in the dog Catheterization of the *left atrium* has been done in cases of atrial septal defect by passing the catheter through the defect *Catheterization of the left ventricle* has been attempted in man first in cases with aortic regurgitation then in normal subjects The technique is based on isolation of the left brachial artery introduction of the catheter into the artery penetration of the catheter into the aortic arch then through the aortic valve into the left ventricle The procedure is to be advised against on account of the dangers which it entails (rupture of the aorta occlusion of a coronary artery rupture of an aortic leaflet attacks of ventricular tachycardia or flutter) The tracing of pres-

sure of the left ventricle is similar to that of the right ventricle in regard to the various details The systolic pressure is similar to that of the aorta the diastolic pressure is 0 in normal subjects

Together with determination of oxygen content measurement of pressure within the chambers of the right heart and the pulmonary vessels is of great importance in the diagnosis of congenital heart diseases Low speed tracings are used in order to obtain objective determinations of pressure High speed tracings are useful for the study of the various details of the curves and for solving problems of cardiac physiology in the normal and diseased heart Important observations have been made in congestive failure chronic cor pulmonale tricuspid valve defects and constrictive pericarditis The shape of the tracing may have a diagnostic value in the last two types of disease

Arterial Pressure (Blood Pressure)

DIRECT REGISTRATION

Direct registration of pressure in man is possible through puncture of either the brachial or the femoral artery and use of a manometer (139-143) Although this method is invaluable and may be used in particularly important cases the procedure of inserting a cannula into the artery of a patient is a decided limitation from a clinical standpoint Moreover possible errors exist owing to spastic contraction of the artery psychic factors difficulty at times in ascertaining the exact zero level and occasional errors in the transmission of pressure

The pressure of the *pulmonary artery* can be recorded directly through a catheter passed along the arm veins into the heart (page 157) It can be recorded directly by means of a needle introduced through the anterior chest wall under x-ray control (187)

INDIRECT REGISTRATION

Indirect registration of pressure is the common clinical procedure and is based

on either the oscillatory or the auscultatory method

Oscillatory Method

The first practical oscillometer was the *Pachon apparatus* (144) still in common use though somewhat modified. It is composed of an aneroid manometer which indicates the cuff pressure and of a constantly balanced manometric capsule which indicates the magnitude of the arterial oscillations. The procedure is repeated step by step every 5 mm Hg as the cuff pressure is brought down from above systolic to below diastolic pressure.

As the cuff pressure is gradually lowered the following phases occur (fig 99)

a) Oscillations of small amplitude caused by the ram action of the pulsating stump of the occluded artery. These are called *supramaximal oscillations* and start far above systolic pressure.

b) An abrupt increase in amplitude of the oscillations marking the level of the *systolic pressure*.

c) A progressive increase in the amplitude of the oscillations until a maximum is reached then a gradual decrease. This is called the *phase of maximal oscillations*.

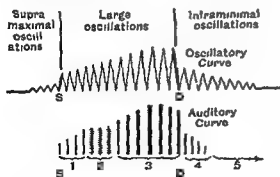


FIG 99 Comparison of curves obtained by the use of the oscillatory and auditory methods for estimating arterial pressure. Curves to be read from left to right showing vertical correspondences between the levels of S (systolic pressure) and D (diastolic pressure). The figures below the auditory curve refer to the five phases of sound: 1 clicks, 2 loud sounds with murmurs, 3 thuds, 4 muffled sounds, 5 no sound.

d) An abrupt decrease of the amplitude of the oscillations marking the *diastolic pressure*.

e) Some small terminal oscillations progressively decreasing called the *inframinimal oscillations*.

The level of diastolic pressure, first thought to coincide with the maximal oscillation, was later placed much lower where a marked change in amplitude occurs (145-147).

A double pouch cuff was later applied to the oscillometer (148) thereby suppressing the supramaximal oscillations and easing the reading of systolic pressure.

The data which can be secured by the use of the oscillometer are the *systolic pressure*, the so-called *mean pressure*, the *diastolic pressure* and the *oscillometric index*.⁴

These data can be obtained over any limb or section of a limb and are very helpful in the study of the peripheral circulation. Cases with vascular disease, coarctation of the aorta, auscultatory gap (page 252) or low intensity of the arterial sounds especially indicate the use of the oscillometer.

Auscultatory Method

This is based on the original apparatus of *Riva Rocci* and on the *Korotkoff method* (152). A pneumatic cuff is applied around the arm and a stethoscope is placed over the brachial artery below the cuff. Auscultation of the artery is then made during the decompression of the cuff from a high level (higher

⁴ It was thought that the level of the maximal oscillation would indicate the clinical mean pressure, e.g. that continuous pressure which would be equivalent to the clinical rhythmic pulsation. In spite of many studies (149-150) proof that this is obtained is still lacking. In most cases a conventional mean pressure placed midway between systolic and diastolic is sufficient.

Oscillometric index is the amplitude of the largest oscillation at any pressure level. The figures of the index are the conventional figures of the oscillometer's quadrant.

than the systolic pressure) Five distinct phases may be successively heard (fig 99)

- a) Faint dull sounds
- b) Louder sounds each followed by a hissing murmur
- c) Very loud and booming sounds no longer followed by murmurs
- d) Muffled sounds or thuds
- e) Complete silence

It was soon recognized that the *systolic pressure is marked by the first sound which appears* On the contrary differences of opinion have been expressed as to location of the diastolic pressure Contradictory official statements are made (153-217) The author's belief is that *the true level of diastolic pressure is where the arterial sounds become muffled*

Auscultatory blood pressure can be evaluated also at the lower part of the leg by placing the stethoscope over the *arteria dorsalis pedis* Still the most common and the only comparatively accurate reading is obtained on the arm

Among the possible causes of error which may lead to wrong readings the *auscultatory gap* should be mentioned This is caused by soundless arterial pulsations between the levels of systolic and diastolic pressures This phenomenon which is even more misleading when the gap is either at the upper or at the lower border (gap open upwards or gap open downwards) has been found in heart failure hypertension aortic stenosis and by the author in severe bradycardia *The auscultatory gap has been connected with the presence of a change of speed in the front of the pulse wave (anacrotism) (149)*

GRAPHIC REGISTRATION

Graphic registration of blood pressure can be accomplished routinely by means of a device which simultaneously registers both the pulse and the sounds of an artery (154) This graphic device eliminates the human element in the appreciation of the physiologic signs and gives an objective and permanent document

The apparatus consists of

- a) A double chambered pneumatic cuff (upper part = pressure chamber lower part = registration chamber)
- b) A manometer with valve and pump
- c) A differential crystal microphone
- d) The recording apparatus (electrophonic cardiograph)

The lower chamber is inflated far below diastolic pressure (20 mm) the upper chamber, on the other hand is inflated above systolic then gradually deflated During deflation a continuous tracing of both the arterial sounds and the arterial pulsations is recorded

In the *pulse tracing* the systolic pressure is revealed by the first sharp oscillation the diastolic pressure is revealed by the *first wave which is undistorted during its negative phase*

In the *sound tracing* systolic pressure is revealed by the *first distinct sound* which occurs at the time of the first oscillation of the pulse tracing The diastolic pressure is revealed by the *first muffled and small sound vibration* and corresponds to the above mentioned change in the pulse tracing

Graphic tracings can be obtained on any section of the limbs They are especially valuable in cases with difficult evaluation of blood pressure and in vascular disease

The graphic method requires a few seconds for the registration A continuous tracing of the blood pressure is still not obtainable in patients despite many attempts in this direction

OFFICIAL TESTS

Among the different tests which have been described for the study of vascular reactivity either in patients with abnormal blood pressures or in those with peripheral vascular disease the following two deserve special mention

Cold Pressor Test (156)

After a rest of 20 to 60 minutes in a supine position and several determinations of

blood pressure in one arm the patient's hand on the opposite side is immersed in iced water. Further readings are made at the end of 30 and 60 seconds. Then the hand is removed from the water and more readings are made.

Normal people experience an average increase of about 12 mm of systolic and 11 mm of diastolic pressure with a maximum variation of 22 mm Hg.

Hypertensive people have a much greater increase, with an average of about 30 mm systolic and 20 diastolic.

Patients with essential hypertension have an even greater reaction (page 201).

Static Blood Pressure Test (157)

After a preliminary period of rest in the supine position the cuff of an sphygmometer is applied to the forearm of the patient. A first reading is made with the forearm at the level of the right atrium (hand on a pillow). A second reading is made with the hand passively held as high as possible above the body (*raising test*). A third reading is made

with the hand passively hanging out of the bed as far below the level of the body as possible (*lowering test*).

Normal people experience a decrease of about 20 mm systolic and 20 mm diastolic in the raising test and an increase of the same proportion in the lowering test. *Hypotensive patients* at times show a curious reaction consisting of marked increase of the pulse pressure in the raising test and marked reduction of the pulse pressure in the lowering test (page 521).

BLOOD PRESSURE IN VARIOUS DISTRICTS

Blood pressure is slightly lower at the forearm than at the arm; it is slightly higher at the leg than at the arm (fig. 100). This relationship varies in valvular defects, hypertension, hypotension, or aortic lesions.

Venous Pressure

Before the determination of venous pressure the patient should rest in the recumbent position for 15 to 20 minutes. The vein which is used for the determination (usually one of

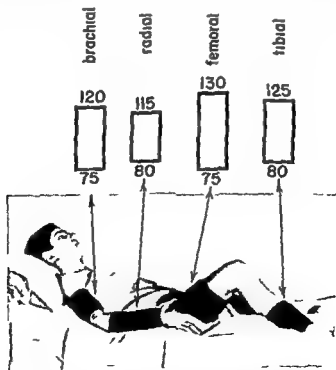


FIG. 100 Normal blood pressure in different arteries

the superficial veins of the forearm) should be on a level with the right atrium. Two methods can be used.

DIRECT METHOD

The apparatus consists of an 18 gauge needle connected by means of rubber tubing to a manometer and to a container of normal saline or citrate solution (15S).

Both the zero point of the manometer and the arm vein are placed 10 cm above the level of the bed. The needle is inserted into the vein after compressing its proximal end and saline solution is permitted to enter the vessels. The point at which the fluid stops flowing represents the venous pressure level.

A quicker method measures the column of blood directly in an I shaped glass manometer (159). Another modification is represented by the use of an aneroid manometer (160). In all these methods readings are made in centimeters of water (actually saline or citrate solution).

INDIRECT METHOD

This method makes use of a small metal air chamber covered by a glass disc which is fastened over a vein of the forearm or hand. The chamber is connected with a water manometer and a pump. Air is pumped in until the vein collapses and the pressure at that moment represents the venous pressure (163).

Normal venous pressure varies between 4 and 11 cm of water by all methods and shows different physiological and pathological variations (164).

Venous pressure is decreased in all veins in shock (page 520) and is increased in all veins in congestive failure (page 571) as well as in constrictive pericarditis (page 450). Normal pressure in the veins of the arms with elevated pressure in the veins of the legs is found in ascitis, pregnancy, various surgical conditions of the abdomen, the inferior caval syndrome (page 464) and certain cases of constrictive pericarditis (pages 454 and 458). Normal pressure in the veins of the legs with

elevated pressure in the veins of the arms is found in the superior caval syndrome (page 463) in certain aneurysms of the aorta (page 480) and in some cases of constrictive pericarditis (pages 454 and 458).

FUNCTIONAL TESTS

A test which can be employed to evaluate the efficiency of the right heart is based on the compression of the right upper quadrant of the abdomen. In normal individuals the temporary increase of venous return to the heart does not affect the venous pressure of the arm. In initial heart failure a rise of 1 to 5 cm of water may occur after 1 minute of compression (16).

The venous filling test. This functional test consists of the occlusion of the proximal section of the vein by means of the blood pressure cuff. The latter is inflated up to the level of diastolic pressure after introducing the needle into the vein. The duration of venous pressure increase and the level reached by the latter are recorded (162). As any connection with the right heart is blocked, the level of venous pressure is dependent upon the work of the left ventricle. The time necessary for reaching it is dependent upon the freedom of flow through the small peripheral vessels. The normal time is from 90 to 115 seconds with a maximum of 3 minutes in elderly people (163). The level of venous pressure reached at the end of this time is between 6 and 7 cm of water (163b).

The oscillations of venous pressure may be studied by means of continuous graphic tracings (186). They reveal rapid changes due to transmitted arterial pulsations, slower changes connected with respiration and very slow undulations of the tracing caused by variations of venous tonus.

CAPILLARY PRESSURE AND RESISTANCE

Measurement of the capillary pressure can be made either by a direct or by an indirect method.

Direct Measurement

A micropipette controlled by a micro manipulator is introduced into a capillary under microscopic observation. The pipette is filled with saline solution flowing from a container, and is connected to a manometer. Pressure is applied until only a few red cells remain at the tip of the pipette. Normal readings are 32 mm Hg in the arterial limb, 20 in the loop, and 12 in the venous limb (165a).

Indirect Measurement

Indirect measurement of the capillary pressure is obtained by compressing the capillary loops of the nail bed under microscopic observation. The pressure necessary for stopping the flow of blood in one of the capillaries is the capillary pressure of that single loop. The procedure consists of observing the nail bed under oblique light after having applied cedar oil over the skin. An enlargement of 100 diameters is sufficient. The compression is obtained in different ways by various apparatus.

The *Kylin* device consists of a glass disc compressing the skin (166). The pressure of a chamber partly made of extensible rubber pushes the disc downwards on the nailbed. Visualization of the loops is obtained through the disc. Many technical objections have been raised against this device which gives inaccurate results (167).

Another apparatus has been described by the writer (167). It consists of a round metal chamber covered by a flat glass top. The finger is introduced into the chamber and a special device avoids air escape around its root. The compression is exerted by the air surrounding the finger thereby avoiding any faulty transmission. A manometer pump and microscope complete the apparatus. The capillary pressure as recorded by the indirect method varies between 15 and 25 mm Hg.

CAPILLARY RESISTANCE

The original method for testing capillary resistance (168) has been slightly modified

(169). A pneumatic cuff is applied to the arm and is successively inflated at 30, 50 and 60 mm Hg. Each test is prolonged for 15 minutes. A circle 6 cm in diameter, is marked on the anterior surface of the elbow before the pressure is applied and petechial hemorrhages are counted later in this area. Normal subjects show no hemorrhages with any of the three pressures. Occurrence of petechiae is an expression of reduced capillary resistance (increased capillary fragility), a condition which is frequently encountered in subacute bacterial endocarditis as well as in other diseases outside of the realm of cardiology.

Other Laboratory Methods

EXAMINATION OF THE BLOOD

Routine blood examination is important in many cases of heart disease.

Anemia may be the cause of many cardiovascular signs and symptoms. *Polycythemia* may be the cause of cyanosis and of different symptoms. The presence of *abnormal endothelial cells* has been described in subacute bacterial endocarditis. An increased

TABLE 14 Hematologic values (172)

DETERM.	UNIT	NORMAL VALUE
Bleeding time	—	Below 4½ min
Clotting time	10	5-8 min
Sedimentation rate (two methods)	4	Less than 40 mm/min
	4	Less than 10 mm/hr
Hematocrit (percent age volume of packed red cells)	■	Male 40-54% female 34-47%
Hemoglobin	0.05	14-16 gm/100 cc
Mean corpuscular volume	—	80-94 cu μ
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin	—	27-32 μ g
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration	—	33-38%

number of white blood cells may be due to myocardial infarction a reduced number contraindicates treatment with sulfa drugs. Further data will be given in the following chapters.

SEDIMENTATION RATE, SEROLOGY, BLOOD CULTURE, PROTHROMBIN LEVEL

The rate of settling of red blood cells in blood containing an anticoagulant gives a very valuable index of inflammation and often of infection.

No standard method for determining the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) has been adopted. In common use are the procedures of Westergren, Cutler, Rourke and Ernstene and Wintrobe and Landsberg. Numerous others have been described including several micromethods utilizing capil-

lary blood and more elaborate systems using apparatus with photographic records of sedimentation rate. The Westergren value represents mm of fall in 1 hour while the Rourke Ernstene reading is expressed in mm settled during the fastest minute.

Rourke Ernstene method (190). Special tubes are used having a capacity of 12 to 12½ cc and graduated in 2 mm divisions. Three cc of blood are drawn without venous stasis into a dry syringe and transferred immediately to a tube containing 2 mg of heparin. The blood is allowed to stand for at least 15 minutes but not for more than 3 hours. When the test is ready to be started the blood is again mixed by inverting the tube back and forth for 2 to 3 minutes; the sedimentation tube is filled to the zero mark and placed in the vertical position. The de-

TABLE 15 Blood plasma or serum values (172/191)

TEST	METHOD	MEASURED QUANTITY	NORMAL VALUE
Amino acids (CO ₂ of carboxyl carbon)	Plasma	■	5-8 mg /100 cc
Bilirubin (van den Bergh test)	Serum	2	Direct 0.4 mg /100 cc
Calcium	Serum	2	9-11 mg /100 cc
Carbon dioxide (content)	Serum	0.5	26-28 mEq /liter
Chloride	Serum	0.5	500-630 mg /100 cc
Cholesterol esters	Serum	0.5	65% of total cholesterol
Glucose	Blood	0.1	80-120 mg /100 cc (fasting)
Magnesium	Serum	2	1.5-3 mEq /liter
Nonprotein nitrogen	Serum	0.5	25-35 mg /100 cc
Urea nitrogen	Serum	1	10-15 mg /100 cc
Uric acid	Serum	1	2-4 mg /100 cc
Oxygen			
Capacity	Blood	3	19-21 vol %
Arterial content	Blood	3	18-21 vol %
Arterial percentage saturation	—	—	91-96%
Venous content	Blood	3	10-16 vol %
Venous percentage saturation	—	—	60-80%
pH (reaction)	Serum	0.2	7.35-7.45
Phosphorus inorganic	Serum	0.2	2.5-4.5 mg /100 cc
Potassium	Serum	3-4	4.1-5.7 mEq /liter
Protein			
Total	Serum	0.5 (macro) 0.05 (micro)	6-8 gm /100 cc
Albumin	Serum	0.5	3.5-5.5 gm /100 cc
Globulin	Serum	0.5	1.5-3 gm /100 cc
Sodium	Serum	0.5	136-145 mEq /liter

concentration test and the dilution test are simple and useful (171)

The concentration test is done by putting the patient on a diet containing a minimum of fluid and excluding all fluids for 12 hours. The urine is collected every 2 hours its amount and specific gravity are recorded.

The dilution test is made by giving the patient from 1200 to 1500 cc of water early in the morning. The urine is collected every 2 hours and the same data recorded.

The specific gravity of the urine rises up to 1030-1035 in a normal person after the concentration test. It drops to 1003-1005 after the dilution test. The entire amount of fluid will be eliminated within 4 hours in a normal person.

In hypertensive patients the routine urine examination will be supplemented by the separate analysis of the urine of each kidney by an intravenous pyelogram and by special functional tests.

SPUTUM

Examination of the sputum may be of interest in chronic pulmonary conditions which may cause *chronic cor pulmonale*.

BASAL METABOLISM

Determination of the basal metabolism is important a) when the possibility of a thyroid heart is considered b) in cases of thyroid insufficiency c) in angina pectoris d) in congestive failure and e) in hypertension.

Thyroidectomy or radioactive iodine therapy have been advocated in the last three conditions and a preliminary study of the BMR is imperative.

VITAL CAPACITY

The measurement of vital capacity in cardiac patients may be of interest. The test is done by using a common spirometer and its practicability has been enhanced by the appearance of small portable apparatus.

The patient is instructed to take the fullest possible inspiration to close his lips

around the mouthpiece of the instrument and to effect a forceful complete expiration. The number of cubic centimeters of the expired air represents the vital capacity which varies from 2 to 3 liters. Special tables give the average expected figure on the basis of sex, height and weight.

Reduction of vital capacity may be due to lack of training, weakness or pulmonary conditions. When these factors are excluded the reduction may be attributed to pulmonary congestion. Repeated tests are of greater value than a single test as they help to follow the progress of cardiovascular inefficiency. When a sharp drop in vital capacity is recorded it may be attributed to either pulmonary congestion or poor function of the diaphragm on account of liver enlargement. However, only a marked enlargement of the liver inhibits the free movement of the diaphragm. Therefore if no increase of the size of the liver is detected by palpation and there are no apparent bronchial conditions, a sharp drop in vital capacity may be accepted as evidence of engorgement of the vessels of the lungs.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. FENTHOVEN, W. Arch. Neerl. Sciences. Ex. actes et Natur. 1907, 12, 401.
2. FRANK, O. Zeit. Biol. 1908, 50, 241 and 1914, 64, 125.
3. GERHARTZ, H. Die Registrierung des Herzschesalles. Berlin, 1911.
4. OHM, R. Venenpuls und Herzschatlregistrierung. Berlin, Hirschwald, 1914.
5. WIGGER, C. J. AND DEAN, A. L. Am. J. Physiol. 1917, 33, 476.
6. TRENDLENBURG, F. Klaenge und Geraeusche Methoden und Ergebnisse der Klangforschung. Berlin, Springer, 1935.
7. RAPPAPORT, M. S. AND SPRADLE, H. B. Am. Heart J. 1941, 21, 251 and 1942, 23, 591.
8. HOLDSAY, B. A. Presse Méd. 1939, 2, (1), 353.
9. ORIAS, O. AND BRAY, MENÉNDEZ, F. The Heart Sounds in Normal and Pathological Conditions. New York, Oxford Univ. Press, 1939.
10. WOJFERTH, C. C. Heart Sounds. In Cyclo-

- pedia of Medicine* Philadelphia Davis 1943 vol 3
- Also WOLFERTH C C AND MARGOLIES A
Heart Sounds In Stroud's *Diagnosis and Treatment of Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945 vol 1
- 11 TAQUINI A C AND BRAUN MENÉNDEZ F
Rev Soc Arg Biol 1935 11 410
 - 12 BRAUN MENÉNDEZ I AND SOLARI I A
Rev Soc Arg Biol 1936 III 112
 - 13 CAIRO A AND ORIAS O Rev Arg Card
1937 4 71
 - 14 LUISADA A A Arch Int 1943 60 498
and Bull New England Med Center
1945 7 183
 - 15 LUISADA A A AND MAUTNER H Exper
Med & Surg 1943 1 282
 - 16 MELIK GLEINASSARIAN E A Zeit ges
exper Med 1932 81 390
 - 17 RUTIER D AND VAN BOCAERT A Arch
Mal Coeur 1934 27 558
 - 18 MAREY J J *Physiologie Médicale de la Circulation du Sang* Paris Delahave 1963
Also *La Méthode Graphique dans les Sciences Expérimentales* Paris Masson 1885
 - 19 JAQUET Muench med Woch 1902 also
Verh Congr inn Med 1901 19 579
 - 20 FRANK O AND HE S O Verh 2o Kongr
inn Med Vienna April 1908 (Wiesbaden
Bergmann 1908)
 - 21 MILLER A AND WHITE I D Am Heart
J 1944 21 504
 - 22 WEITZ W Deut Arch klin Med 1917
124 134
 - 23 WEBER A Zeit exper Iath Ther 1920
21 202
 - 24 COLO P Rev Arg Cardiol 1913 10 145
 - 25 MACKENZIE J *The Study of the Pulse Arterial Venous and Hepatic and of the Movements of the Heart* New York Macmillan 1902
 - 26 DRESCHER W *Die Brustuntersuchungen* Vienna Maudrich 1933 Also Arch Int
Med 1937 III 225 437 441 654 and 663
 - 27 FICK A Wien Arch inn Med 1928
15 340
 - 28 FRIEDRICH A Deut Arch klin Med
1865 1 241
 - 29 POTAIN I C I Mem Soc Méd Hôp
Paris 1867 4 3
 - 30 MACKENZIE J Am J M Sci 190 134 17
 - 31 WENCKEBACH K F Zeit klin Med 1899
36 151
 - 32 OHM R Zeit exper Iath Ther 1912 11 531
 - 33 PARKINSON J Heart 1915 6 54
 - 34 CIBON A G Lancet 1907 2 1380
 - 35 HIRCHFELDER A D Am J M Sci 1906
132 375
 - 36 CAIRO A *El Pulso Venoso Normal* Buenos Aires S de Amorrotu 1942
 - 37 LEWIS T *The Mechanism and Graphic Registration of the Heart Beat* London Shaw and Sons 1925
 - 38 WENCKEBACH K F AND WINTERBERG H
Die Unregelmässige Herztätigkeit Leipzig Engelmann 1927
 - 39 Rühl J Zeit exper Iath Ther 1903 6 619
 - 40 FIDENS I *Die Krankheiten des Herzens und der Gefässe* Berlin Springer 1909
 - 41 LUISADA A A Rev Arg Cardiol 1942
9 169
 - 42 MACKENZIE J Am J M Sci 1906 134 12
 - 43 VAQUEZ H *Maladies du Cœur* Paris Bail lière 1925
 - 44 HAY J *Graphic Methods in Heart Disease* London Oxford Univ Press 1921
 - 45 KAPFF W Deut Arch klin Med 1914
113 451
 - 46 HITZENBERGER K Wien Arch inn Med
1903 III 451 and 1904 9 205
 - 47 DRESSIER W *Clinical Cardiology* New York Hoeber 1912
 - 48 LUCIANI L *Fisiologia dell Uomo* Milan III I L 1903
 - 49 KRONFELDER H AND MELTZER S J Arch
f ges Phys 1893 Suppl Festgabe 338
 - 50 JOACHIM G Berl klin Woch 1907 42 210
 - 51 FRIÉRIQU I Arch de Biol 1887 7 230
 - 52 LACE D Rif Med (Naples) 1900 25 533
564 and 594
 - 53 VAQUEZ H CIERI A AND FAMEIN C
Bull Soc Med Hôp 1900 28 802
 - 54 LIAN C Arch Mal Coeur 1909 2 391
 - 55 WEBER A Muench Med Woch 1913 60
(II) 553
 - 56 WEITZ W AND SCHALI I Deut Arch klin
Med 1919 129 309
 - 57 BOECKELMAN A J Frg inn Med 1900
36 91
 - 58 TAQUINI A C *Exploracion del Corazon por Via Esofagica* Buenos Aires El Ateneo
1936
 - 59 JANDORS *Physiologie des Menschen* Wien 1880
 - 60 MOSO A Arch di Bizzozzero 1878 2 4
 - 61 LUCIANI I Arch di Bizzozzero 1877 2 2
 - 62 CALABANI I Clin Med Ital 1904 III 436
 - 63 CHEE MANN New York Herald March 3
1885
 - 64 FISCHER C Muench med Woch 1903 50
891
 - 65 LANG G Deut Arch klin Med 1912
108 35
 - 66 KLEWITZ F Deut Arch klin Med 1918
124 460

- 67 LUISADA A A Min Med (Turin) 1923 8 1139
- 68 a) HOLZLOEHNER E Zeit Biol 1932 92 713
b) GROEDEL F M Exper Med & Surg 1915 3 361
c) BLANCE A F SECLER R C AND LANARI A An Cated Pat Clin Tuberc (Buenos Aires) 1945 7 1
- 69 LUISADA A A Am Heart J 1942 23 676
- 70 v FREY M AND KREHBI L Arch Anat Phys (Phys sect.) 1890 31
Also v FREY M Die Untersuchung des Iulues Berlin 1891
- 71 SCHLILF Berl klin Woch quoted by H STRAUB Ueberhalten Handb biol Arbeitsmeth 1927 8 (4) 361
- 72 FRANK O AND PITTER J Zeit Biol 1907 49 70
- 73 WICHERS C J Pressure Iulues in the Cardiovascular System New York Longmans Green and Co 1925
- 74 LACHON V Presse Méd 1913 21 729 Also GALLAVARDIN L Presse Méd 1927 30 776
- 75 RAPPAFORT M B AND LUISADA A A J Lab & Clin Med 1944 30 638
- 76 BRAMWELL C In The Principles and Practice of Cardiology by BRAMWELL AND KING London Oxford Univ Press 1947
- 77 BRAMWELL C DOWNING A C AND HILL A V Heart 1933 10 280
- 78 STARR I AND CO WORKERS Am J Physiol 1939 127 1 and 1941 134 403 also J Clin Investigation 1940 19 437 also Am Heart J 1943 26 81
- 79 WICHERS C J Physiology in Health and Disease 4th Ed Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1944
- 80 STRAUB H Plethysmographie In ABERHALDEN's Handb der Arbeitsmeth 1922 8 (4) 417
- 81 MONA A Arch Ital Biol 1894 1 130
- 82 McLELLER O Arch Anat Phys (Phys Section) 1904 Suppl 703
- 83 SOLDATI OF I CABANNE F A AND INTHOUVE A S Rev Arg Cardiol 1941 11 393
- 84 WEBER I Arch Anat Phys (Phys section) 190 293
- 85 INTHOVE W Arch ges Phys 1895 60 101 also Ann Physik 1903 11 1059 and 1914 11 187
- 86 ASHER G AND HOECKER F Am Heart J 1938 16 51
- 87 LIKOFF W B PAPPAPORT M B AND IFFVING S A Am Heart J 1944 28 95
- 88 MACLEOD A C WILSON F N AND BARKER I S Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1930 27 586
- 89 WILSON F N Am Heart J 1930 5 509
- 90 WOOD AND WOOLFERTH J Clin Investigation 1937 11 815
- 91 GROEDEL F M Deut Ges Kreislauff 1933 also Cardiol (Basel) 1940 4 1
- 92 LUISADA A A Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1935 19 71
- 93 a) LIBERSON A AND LIBERSON F Proc Exper Biol & Med 1934 31 441
b) BROWN W H Am Heart J 1936 12 1
- 94 Am Heart Assoc and Cardiac Soc of Great Britain and Ireland Am Heart J 1939 15 107 and 1943 26 535
- 95 WILSON F N JOHNSTON F D MACLEOD A G AND BARKER I D Am Heart J 1934 9 447
- 96 WHITE P D New England J Med 1944 231 863
- 97 LINTHOVE W Arch ges Phys 1909 122 517
- 98 INTHOVE W AND CO WORKERS Arch ges Phys 1913 150 715
- 99 American Heart Assoc Am Heart J 1943 25 528
- 100 KATZ L V Electrocardiography Philadelphina Lea and Febiger 1941
- 101 CALABRESI M Elettrocardiografia Clinica Bologna Cappelli 1935
- 102 KREUTZER R Rev Arg Card 1944 11 740
- 103 a) GOLDBERGER F Am Heart J 1945 30 341
b) WILSON F N Form of the Electrocardiogram In STROLD's Diagnosis and Treatment of Cardiovascular Disease Philadelphia Davis Co 1945 vol I
- 104 IZZI C Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1927 11 391
- 105 AWMANN H Die klinische Roentgendagnostik der inneren Erkrankungen Leipzig Vogel 1934
- 106 CROWDER G P AND HARRIS H I Brit M J 1929 1 433
- 107 a) HODGES F J AND FRYSTER J A F Arch Int Med 1926 37 707
b) UNGERLEIDER H E AND GUBNER R Am Heart J 1947 34 494 Also UNGERLEIDER H E In STROLD's Cardiovascular Disease Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 108 a) GROEDEL F M Die Roentgendagnostik der Her- und Gefaessekrankungen Berlin Neusser 1912 Also Die Poentgenuntersuchung des Herzens Muenchen Lehmann 1924
b) MORITZ

- c) DIETLEN Her und Gefaesse im Roentgenbild Leipzig Barth 1923
- 109 COMEAU W J AND WHITE P D Am J Roentgenol 1939 17 158
- 110 VAQUEZ H AND BORDET I *Le Coeur et l'Aorte* Paris Baillière 1928
- 111 a) STUMPF P WEBER H H AND WELTZ G A *Roentgenkymographische Beuegungslehre innerer Organe* Leipzig Thieme 1936
- b) CINOLINI I *Roentgenchimografia Cardiac e Regmografia* Bologna Cappelli 1934
- 112 a) HECKMANN A *Erg inn Med* 1937 III 569
- b) HENNY G C AND BOONE B R Am J Roentgenol 1945 III 217 Also HENNY G C BOONE B R AND CHAMBERLAIN W F Am J Roentgenol 1947 57 409
- c) MARCHAL M *Ctr Acad Sciences* 1946 222 93 and *Arch Mal Coeur* 1946 39 345
- d) LIAN C AND MINOT G *Arch Mal Coeur* 1946 39 339
- 113 a) LUISADA A A FLEISCHNER F G AND RAPPAFORT M B *Meet Am Heart Assoc* June 1947
- b) LUISADA A A FLEISCHNER F G AND RAPPAFORT M B *Am Heart J* 1948 35 336 and 348
- c) LUISADA A A AND FLEISCHNER F G *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1948 III 436
- d) FLEISCHNER F G ROMANO F J AND LUISADA A A *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1948 67 535
- 114 a) ICAS MONIS IOPPO DE CARVALHO AND ALMEIDA IMA *Iresse Méd* 1931 39 996
- b) CASTELLANOS A PEREIRA R AND GARCIA A *Presse Méd* 1938 46 1474
- 115 ROBB G I AND STEINBERG I *Ann Int Med* 1939 III 12
- 116 GRIFFMAN A STEINBERG M F AND SMITH M I *Am Heart J* 1941 41 365
- 117 CONDORELLI I *Min Med (Turin)* 1936 27 (1) 81
- 118 CONDORELLI I *Cardiol (Basel)* 193 1 96
- 119 ROHLER H *Clinical Roentgenology of the Cardiovascular System* Baltimore Thomas 1943
- 120 KATH N M ROWNSTREE L C AND CERACHTY J T *Arch Int Med* 1915 III 547
- 121 FICK Sitzung ber phys med Ges zu Wuerzburg 1870 16
- 122 GROLLMAN A *The Cardiac Output of Man in Health and Disease* Baltimore Thomas 1932
- 123 FORSMAN W *Muench med Woch* 1931 78 489
- 124 a) COURVAND A AND CO WORKERS *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1941 46 462 also *J Clin Investigation* 1915 24 106
- b) BURWELL C S AND DEXTER I *Mo Conc Cardio Dis* 1947 16 4
- 125 DONAL J A JR *J Clin Investigation* 1937 16 879
- 126 BOCK A V AND CO WORKERS *J Physiol* 1929 68 277
- 127 WHITE P D *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1944
- 128 TALBOTT J H AND CO WORKERS *Am Heart J* 1941 22 754
- 129 ROBB G F AND WEISS S *Am Heart J* 1934 9 2
- 130 a) ELEK S R AND SOLARE S D *Am Heart J* 1949 24 821
- b) BERK L AND SAFEIKA N *Am Heart J* 1945 30 365
- 131 KOTTER H AND SARNOFF S J *J Lab Clin Med* 1943 III 812
- 132 a) WEISS S ROBB G F AND BLUMGART H I *Am Heart J* 1929 4 1
- b) BLUMGART H I AND WEISS S *J Clin Investigation* 1927 4 15 149 173 199 399 and 505 and 1928 5 343 and 379 and 1929 6 103
- 133 HITZIG W M KING J T AND FINEBERG A M *Arch Int Med* 1935 55 112
- 134 a) WITFRITZ M DEUTSCH J AND BRULL Z *Med Klin* 1931 III 956
- b) CARCILL S C *New England J Med* 1933 209 1089
- 135 IAN C AND BARRAS I *Bull Mem Soc Hôp Paris* 1930 64 175 and 19
- 136 HITZIG W M *Am Heart J* 1935 10 1080
- 137 GROSS D *Am Heart J* 1945 30 19
- 138 BRUMLIK J *Klinica Vrozenych poruch Srdce a cev (Prague)* 1937 II 109
- 139 CALATI G *Cuore e Circ (Rome)* 1925 9 441
- 140 POULET P DODGE E AND BOLCOMONT R *Bull Acad Med* 1932 107 27
- 141 VAN BOCAERT A BEERMAN J LEQUINE J AND SAMAIN L *Iresse Méd* 1931 42 701
- 142 CHOTY R *Iresse Méd* 1934 III 1355
- 143 DAMPIER W AND TOMAN J *Am J Physiol* 1937 101 110
- 144 LACHON V *Iresse Méd* 1913 III 229
- 145 MACMILLAN J A AND MELVIN C S *Heart* 1913 14 5 133
- 146 CALLAVERDIN L *Iresse Méd* 1922 30 76
- 147 LACHON V AND FABRE R *Bull Mem Soc Biol* 1921 84 871 and 1923 89 601
- 148 CALLAVERDIN I *La Tenacitè Artielle en Clinique Paris* Ma son 1923

- 149 FABRE I *La Mécanique des Phénomènes Sphjgmonométriques* Paris Doin 1923
- 150 GLFY I AND GOMEZ D M Presse Méd 1931 **II** 284 also J Ihyg Iath Gen 1931 29 35
- 151 PIVA ROCCI S Gazz Med di Torino (Turin) 1906 47 981
- 152 KOROTKOW N S Mitt klin med Akad (St Petersburg) 1903 11 365 and Arch Int Med 1910
- 153 Am Heart Assoc and Cardiac Soc Great Britain and Ireland Am Heart J 1939 18 93
- 154 RAPPAPORT M B AND LUISADA A A J Lab & Clin Med 1944 29 638
- 155 a) VON RECKLINGHAUSEN H Zeit Klin Med 1930 113 1 91 157 433 and 663
b) BAZETT H C AND LAPLACE L B Am J Ihyiol 1933 103 371 and 1935 112 187
- 156 HINE I A AND BROWN G L Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1937 7 337 and Am Heart J 1938 11 1
- 157 LUI ADA A A Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1974 8 201
- 158 MORITZ F AND TABORA D Deut Arch klin Med 1910 98 445
- 159 TAYLOR F A AND CO WORKERS Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1930 27 867
- 160 CLAUDE H AND CO WORKERS Rev Méd 1914 34 393
- 161 OPFFENHEIMER B **II** AND HITZIO W M Am Heart J 1936 12 257
- 162 GOYAERTA A Presse Méd 1924 **III** 161
- 163 a) VILLARET M St Girona F AND JUSTIN BESSANCON L La Pression Les neurve Péripherique Paris Masson 1930
b) CASTELLOTTI F Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1925 9 112
- 164 SCHLEITER H G Venous Pressure In STROUD's Cardiovascular Disease Philadelphia Davis 1915 vol II
- 165 a) LANDIS F M Heart 1930 **II** 209 and Lihual Rev 19 4 14 404
b) DE CRAFT A C AND KOSSMANN C I Capillary Circulation In STROUD's Cardiovascular Disease Philadelphia Davis 1915 vol II
- 166 KATIN I Zentralbl inn Med 1971 **II** 783
- 167 LUISADA A A Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1976 10 53
- 168 IFFIE C Muench Med Woch 1911 58 16/3
- 169 COETHLIN G F Skand Arch Ihyg 1931 61 22
- 170 RABINOWITZ M A AND CO WORKERS Am Heart J 1931 7 57
- 171 VOLHARD F AND FAHR T Die Brightsche Nierenkrankheit Berlin Springer 1914
- 172 Data reported from New England J Med 1916 234 274 The source of the original data is quoted in the article
- 173 a) MATTHES K Arch exper Iath Pharm 1935 179 695
b) HERTZMAN A H Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1937 **IV** 290 also Am J Physiol 1938 124 328
c) DILLON J B AND HERTZMAN A B Am Heart J 1941 **II** 172
- 174 a) LUISADA A A RERINO A AND CANELLA C Cardiol (Basel) 1937 1 280
b) LÉVÈGRE J AND MALRICE P Arch Mal Coeur 1915 58 298
c) HECHT H Am Heart J 1946 32 39
- 175 GOLDBERGER E Unipolar Lead Electrocardiography Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1947
- 176 BURCH G AND WINSOR T A Primer of Electrocardiography Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1915
- 177 a) WILSON F N AND CO WORKERS Am Heart J 1934 9 447 and 1944 27 10 Also Trans Assoc Am Phys 1941 61 253
b) KOSSMANN C E AND JOHNSTON F **II** Am Heart J 1935 10 975
- 178 MEYERS G B AND KLEIN H A Am Heart J 1943 35 727
- 179 HOLMANN M Klinische Elektrokardiographie Zuerich Fretz and Wasmuth 1915
- 180 SODI PALLARES D Nuevas Bases de Electrocardiografia 2nd Ed Ed del Inst Nac de Cardiol 1949
- 181 a) SPRAGUE H B AND WHITE P D J Clin Investigation 1925 1 389
b) BATTRO A AND BIDOGGIA H Am Heart J 1917 33 604
- 182 a) BERNSTEIN P AND MANN H Am J Obst & Gynec 1947 **III** 21
b) BLODHEIM S H Am Heart J 1947 **III** 35
- 183 SOMMER M C Radiology 1947 48 411
- 184 LUISADA A A MENDOZA F AND ALIQUILANG M M Brit Heart J 1949 11 41
- 185 LUISADA A A ROMANO F J AND TORRE J M Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1943 3 308
- 186 JANDOLO C AND DE RYSKY C Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1915 **II** 91
- 187 VACAREZZA R F IANARI A AND ALBERTI A A J Rev Arg Cardiol 1946 **III** 203
- 188 DEXTER I Radiology 1947 48 451
- 189 BING R J AND CO WORKERS Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1941 66 739
- 190 FOURKE M D AND ERNSTEN A C J Clin Investigation 1930 8 515

- 191 GOTTSLIER J AND CHAPIN M J Maine M A 1942 III 10
- 192 LUISADA A A HANTMAN H AND WEINZ L Cardiol (Basel) 1944 8 63
- 193 DUKE H H *The Physiology of Domestic Animals* 6th Ed Ithaca Comstock Publ Co 194
- 194 LUISADA A A ALMERUNG M R AND LEWIS L Am J Physiol 1952 168 226
- 195 COUNIHAN T MEISER A L RAPPAPORT M B AND SPRAGUE H B Circ 1951 3 30
- 196 CALO A Tunisie Med 1950 N 4
- 197 LUISADA A A Acta Med Scand 1952 142 (Suppl 266) 685
- 198 WELLS B G RAPPAPORT M B AND SPRAGUE H B Am Heart J 1949 37 586
- 199 LUISADA A A AND MONTE P Ann Int Med 1950 III 56
- 200 LUISADA A A *The Heart Beat The Graphic Methods in the Diagnosis of Cardiovascular Disease* New York P Hoeber 1953
- 201 LUISADA A A AND MAGRI G Am Heart J 1952 44 545
- 202 JOHNSTON F D AND OVERY D C Circ 1951 3 579
- 203 HAMILTON W F AND DOW P Am J Physiol 1939 125 45 & 60
- 204 HERTZMAN A H AND DILLON J H Am Heart J 1940 20 150 and Am J Physiol 1941 150 12
- 205 VICKERSON J L Federation Proc 1945 4 201
- 206 DOCK W AND TAUBMAN F Am J Med 1949 7 251
- 207 LUISADA A A AND CONTRA S Acta Card 1951 6 847
- 208 DILLON J B AND HERTZMAN A B Am Heart J 1941 21 1/2
- 209 LEVY R L WILLIAMS N T BRUCE H G AND CARR H A Am Heart J 1941 21 634
- 210 MASTER A M Ann Int Med 1950 32 842
- 211 CONTRA S HARING O M AND GOLDSTEIN W Circ 1952 III 250
- 212 RAPPAPORT M B WILLIAMS C AND WHITE P D Am Heart J 1949 III 837
- 213 HAMILTON W F AND COLWELLERS Am J Physiol 1931/1932 99 534 and 1918 153 309
- 214 WELLS B G Am Heart J 1949 37 543
- 215 CALLEBAUT J IRQUIN J AND DENOLIN H Acta Card (Brussels) 1950 5 137
- 216 GREGERSEN M J Lab & Clin Med 1944 29 1266
- 217 Recommendations of Am Heart Assoc JAMA 1951 147 632
- 218 a) PRINZMETAL M AND COLWELLERS Science 1948 108 340
b) PRINZMETAL M AND COLWELLERS JAMA 1949 139 617
- 219 LUISADA A A GOLDFARB A R MAGRI G AND BAFFIAN R Science 1953 117 209
- 220 DOTTER CH T AND STEINBERG I *Angio cardiography* New York Hoeber 1951
- 221 GRANT R P AND FETTER F H *Spiral ECG for Cardiography* New York Blackiston 1951

Causes of Cardiovascular Diseases—Modes of Origin of Cardiovascular Disturbances

Causes of Cardiovascular Diseases

The etiology of diseases of the cardiovascular system is such an important subject that it deserves an exhaustive description. However, only a summary will be given in the following pages while each chapter will contain a paragraph devoted to discussion of specific etiology.

Abnormal circulation may result from the following possibilities:

1) It may be caused by a purely functional disorder such as a sudden attack of rapid heart beat or a regurgitation due to dilatation of the mitral ring.

2) It may be caused by a functional disorder which is related to a structural lesion as the shortness of breath of a patient with a lesion of the aortic valve or the swelling of the legs of a patient with pericardial effusion.

There is also another possibility: namely,

3) The occurrence of a structural lesion which does not cause any sign or symptom.

This means that the physician should always bear in mind the double sequence of events and recognize both the abnormality in structure and the functional disorder.

Any cause of structural lesion or any cause of disturbed function may be at the basis of heart disease.

A structural lesion may be due to either an *abnormal development* during fetal life (congenital lesion) or soon after birth or to an *acquired process* (acquired lesion). It may be caused by an acute, subacute or chronic inflammation or it may be due to a process of atherosclerosis.

Even though many possible causes of heart disease are known, the gradual

disappearance of certain infections has reduced the main causes of heart disease to two: *rheumatic disease* and *arteriosclerosis*. The former originates myocardial, pericardial and valvular lesions; the latter causes the great majority of the coronary lesions and of the cerebrovascular accidents and possibly the majority of cases of hypertensive heart disease. For this reason, even though no etiological agent escapes accurate study, rheumatic and arteriosclerotic heart diseases are the object of concerted efforts for prevention and therapy.

According to official data, the cause of death in the United States in 1950 was as follows: cardiovascular disease, 31.4 per cent; other causes, 48.6 per cent. Cardiovascular disease included arteriosclerosis (47.5 per cent), myocardial degeneration (coronary heart disease) (9.4 per cent), vascular lesions affecting the central nervous system (20.9 per cent), hypertension (13.0 per cent), rheumatic heart disease (3.0 per cent) and various others (6.2 per cent).

At the same date, 9 million were estimated having cardiovascular renal disease, 5 million heart disease and 4,600,000 hypertension.

A RHEUMATIC DISEASE (RHEUMATIC FEVER) (page 189)

According to a widespread belief, rheumatic fever is a *collagen disease*. The concept of collagen disease is a departure from conventional thinking because it introduces the concept of tissue disease in contrast to that of organ disease. This concept signifies that in certain disease, *the structural changes lie in the connective tissue and*

in the vascular walls of the entire body. The diseases include rheumatic fever, rheumatoid arthritis, lupus erythematosus, scleroderma, Buerger's disease, polyarteritis nodosa, and dermatomyositis. The structural changes of the connective tissue include necrosis followed by proliferation and fibrosis and a variable degree of vascular involvement. It is admitted that collagen diseases represent a general reaction of the mesenchymal tissues with changes of the ground substance of the connective tissue as a response to allergic, toxic, or bacterial influence. If the various stimuli set in motion definite correlated processes, the final effect on the connective tissue may be identical. It has been said that the alarm reaction and the adaptation syndrome represent similar processes. This is conceivable because all three groups of steroid hormones of the adrenal cortex exert a deep influence upon the ground substance of the connective tissue through changes of membrane permeability or by a direct action.

It should be kept in mind that in the causation of rheumatic fever two major factors are involved: a) *predisposition* to the disease which seems to be transmitted as a recessive mendelian factor, and b) the result of an *infection* with the hemolytic streptococcus. The connection between streptococcus and disease seems represented by an allergic reaction; the predisposition seems to consist of an inherited abnormal sensitivity to a specific antigen, possibly favored by hormonal unbalance (page 189).

Rheumatic disease is the most frequent cause of lesions of the endocardium with resulting deformity of the cardiac valves. It also causes myocardial, pericardial, and vascular lesions and occasionally serous, pulmonary, renal, and cerebral lesions (page 190).

B. MICROBES AND OTHER ORGANISMS

Different bacteria may cause cardiac lesion. If the heart is not previously weakened by some process, only extremely

virulent germs are able to produce primary heart disease. Among them, the *Streptococcus hemolyticus* is the most frequent, followed by the *Pneumococcus*, the *Meningococcus*, the *Gonococcus*, different *Staphylococci*, and the *Typhoid bacillus*. The germs may cause an *acute bacterial endocarditis* or an *acute myocardial or pericardial process*, resulting at times in the formation of pus.

When on the contrary the bacteria are less virulent, they may localize on the cardiac structures only if they have been previously damaged by another process. In such cases they cause a slow progressive syndrome called *subacute bacterial endocarditis*. Localization on the myocardium or pericardium is seen less frequently in such cases of endocarditis. The most frequent invader among the milder germs is the *Streptococcus viridans*, but a wide variety of organisms may act in the same way, even including *amebae*, *spirilli*, and *fungi* (page 200).

In many cases the germs originate in *focal infections* traveling through the blood stream to reach the heart. However, routine interventions on the tonsils, the teeth, and the appendix have caused little change in the frequency of both rheumatic heart disease and bacterial infections. This should advise caution concerning too radical extirpations as a preventive measure.

Syphilis was a common cause of cardiovascular lesions, but its importance is decreasing. The most frequent localization of the *Treponema* is the ascending aorta with common extension to the aortic valves. Aortitis, aortic aneurysm, aortic insufficiency, and lesions at the mouths of the coronary arteries are frequent (page 201).

Direct localization of the *tubercle bacillus* on the heart and vessels is rare but possible. Chronic pericarditis or polyserositis is on the other hand relatively frequent. Repercussions on the heart of mediastino-pericardial lesions and of chronic lesions of the lungs due to tuberculosis cause typical clinical entities.

Among the *parasitic diseases* those caused

by malaria amebiasis and the South American trypanosomiasis should be mentioned

C ARTERIOSCLEROSIS

Arteriosclerosis is a common cause of heart disease. The most frequent localization is on the coronary arteries resulting in different clinical pictures. However lesions of the aorta and of the peripheral arteries may cause various cardiovascular pictures and lesions of the renal arteries are believed to be an important factor in the so-called *essential hypertension*. Thus probably arteriosclerosis is the most common cause of cardiovascular disease.

For a long time arteriosclerosis was considered as the disease of the aged. However studies on the frequency of coronary heart disease have shown how frequently it is present in relatively young people. The part played by the metabolism of cholesterol is still incompletely known but is definitely preponderant (page 525).

D HYPERTENSION

Hypertension is a cause of heart disease because its lasting effects may result in heart strain and finally in heart lesions. On the other hand there may be a clinical syndrome causing important symptoms without the existence of hypertensive heart disease. Therefore hypertension will be considered as a disease in itself and described as such (page 491).

The connections between heart and kidneys and the fact that high blood pressure when prolonged creates abnormal cardiac work and coronary flow should be emphasized.

A counterpart of hypertension of the greater circulation is represented by hypertension of the lesser circulation which causes strain of the right ventricle (*cor pulmonale*) (page 507).

E CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

The great majority of congenital abnormalities of the heart and large vessels is

due to a disturbance of development taking place in an early stage of intra uterine life (14). The development of the cardiac septa and the torsion of the primitive cardiac tube take place between the 5th and the 8th week of development. Any interference with these processes alters the relationship between the different parts so that serious deformities result. Some of the more common abnormalities are caused by *incomplete torsion* preventing obliteration of the right aortic arch with closure of the left or fusion of the right with the left (15).

Heredity is important in some cases as shown by the association of congenital heart disease with abnormality of various organs. However the most common cause of congenital heart disease lies in the conditions surrounding the embryo (14). Abnormal conditions may be caused by disease or by toxic or otherwise depressing conditions acting on the mother during early pregnancy. Among them *lues* may play a role (14) but *rubella* (German measles) acting between the 5th and 8th week of pregnancy seems to have the greatest importance (26).

The possibility that viruses other than rubella may injure the fetus without killing it is being considered. However there is no proof of this fact so far.

It should not be forgotten that some of the common congenital lesions are due to the fact that one or more changes which normally occur at or after birth do not take place (closure of the foramen ovale and of the ductus arteriosus).

F DISORDERS OF NUTRITION—BLOOD DISEASES—ENDOCRINE DISORDERS

Nutritional deficiencies sometimes may cause heart disease. The most common is *vitamin B deficiency* because this vitamin has an important part in the metabolism of the cardiac muscle.

Anemia may cause dilatation of the heart

¹ This leads to conditions which more or less reproduce those existing in reptiles where the persistence of the right aorta is normal.

relative insufficiency of the valves, coronary insufficiency and even congestive failure

Polycythemia is a frequent cause of vascular complications including coronary and cerebral thrombosis

Among the endocrine disorders the chief cause of heart disease is represented by *thyroid disturbances* (page 407) The importance of *hyperthyroidism* (*thyrotoxicosis*) is such that its possibility should be always kept in mind whether or not other cardiac diseases are present

Deficiency of the thyroid may also be a cause of heart disease as shown by the enormous size of the heart in some cases of *myxedema* (page 408) As this tremendous enlargement is caused by improper muscle metabolism a similarity between beriberi heart and myxedema heart has been advocated

Diabetes is frequently associated with early arterio-sclerosis including coronary arterio-sclerosis The arterial lesion seems to be favored by the metabolic disorder and is not specific Repercussions of diabetes on cardiac metabolism are less known Over 50 per cent of all diabetics die as a result of cardiovascular lesions (16)

Abnormal secretion of *epinephrine* is a possible cause of vascular disorders both when the secretion is increased (*adrenal tumors*) and when it is deficient (*Addison's disease*) In the latter case a simultaneous cortical deficiency usually adds its effects to the deficiency of the adrenal medulla

GLASS FREQUENT CAUSES OF HEART DISEASE

These are represented by *tumors* of the heart *parasites* of the heart *trauma* to the heart and *deformity of the thorax*

II LESIONS OF UNKNOWN ETIOLOGY

The cause may be at the basis of cardiac and vascular disorders Among them *von Gierke's disease* affecting the myocardium *endocardial fibrosis* and *Buerger's disease* affecting the peripheral vessels are well known examples

I FUNCTIONAL DISTURBANCES

Cardiovascular diseases become apparent largely through functional disorders of the circulation

In some cardiac patients *the entire syndrome is purely functional* Many cases having *premature beats* or *paroxysmal tachycardia* and most of those with *neurocirculatory asthenia* or *hypotension* have no recognizable cardiovascular lesions

A second category of patients suffers from functional disorders but these are connected with a lesion which at times may be only suspected while at other times it is obvious Many patients suffering from essential hypertension angina pectoris or dyspnea are in this group The complaint is definitely connected with the anatomical lesion but the part played by the functional elements varies from case to case and may lead to quite different disorders even if the lesions are equivalent

It is appropriate to note that *an exact evaluation of the anatomical lesion is often impossible* The data supplied by the x ray are largely influenced by functional elements Those supplied by the electrocardiograph are partly modified by functional elements and may be misleading Those obtained by the pathologist are usually collected at a later date when a progressive process has increased the severity of the lesion or even complicated the case Any attempt to overestimate the anatomical lesions may be refuted by mentioning similar cases where an equivalent lesion was well tolerated and was recognized only at autopsy

J STRAIN AND STRESS

The part played by mental and physical strain and by severe effort cannot be discussed in general In each clinical entity and in each case these factors should be properly evaluated Even if there is a tendency on the part of many patients to overemphasize the importance of strain in the causation of some disturbance this possibility should not be dismissed too lightly Numerous publica-

tions debate the importance of this element which has many legal and insurance aspects.

The value of the stress syndrome as a cause of cardiovascular disturbances has been repeatedly emphasized (29). Changes of the pituitary and cortico-adrenal functions are now recognized as important in several syndromes, from rheumatic fever (and in general the collagen diseases) to the syndrome of shock.

Mode of Origin of Some Cardiovascular Disturbances

HEART MURMURS

A heart murmur may be due either to lesion of one of the valves or to abnormalities in the size of the cardiac chambers in the function of the myocardium or in the composition of the blood (page 409). Each valve may present one of the two following abnormalities:

- a) An imperfect closure of the leaflets (insufficiency, incompetence, regurgitation)
- b) A narrowing (stenosis)

Both a-v valves and both semilunar valves may be considered together as far as

murmurs are concerned because they open and close at the same time.

Insufficiency of the A-V Valves

These valves close at the beginning of systole and open after the end of this phase. If the leaflets do not close properly during systole a backflow from the ventricle into the respective atrium takes place and a murmur arises during this phase (*systolic murmur*). It is usually a *soft murmur* which starts soon after the 1st sound complex and gradually decreases in intensity (fig. 101) (*murmur in decrescendo*).

Insufficiency of the Aortic and Pulmonic Valves

These valves close at the end of systole and open again only at the beginning of the ejection period of the following cycle. If they do not close properly regurgitation of blood from the artery into the ventricle occurs during diastole. The murmur produced is loud at the beginning of this phase and then gradually decreases. Therefore there is a *soft blowing diastolic murmur* having its

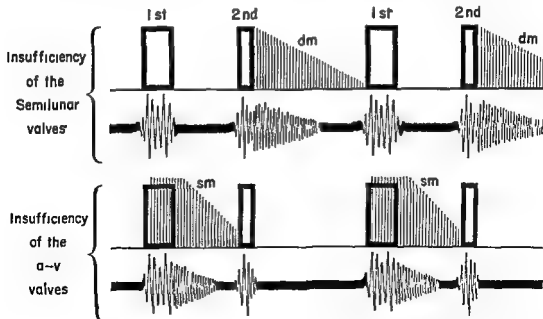


FIG. 101. Murmurs caused by valvular insufficiency. Above the auditory impression. Below the vibrations of the sound tracing. 1st first sound 2nd second sound dm diastolic murmur sm systolic murmur

maximum intensity immediately after the main vibration of the 2nd sound complex (fig 101) (*murmur in decrescendo*)

Stenosis of the A V Valves

The blood passes through the *a v* valves during diastole (ventricular filling). Narrowing of one of these valvular openings causes a *diastolic murmur*. This murmur is rough and harsh as are all murmurs caused by stenosis. It is loud during the two phases of rapid filling of the ventricles (page 40) namely early diastole and presystole (fig 102). The latter will be even more apparent to the ear because it is more high pitched and is prolonged by the first sound (*murmur in crescendo*).

Stenosis of the Aortic and Pulmonic Valves

The blood passes through these valves during the ejection period of ventricular systole. Therefore if one of these openings is narrow there is a *systolic murmur*. This is usually *harsh* and *rough* and reaches a maximum at the time of the peak of the pulse wave (fig 102). (*diamond shaped murmur in the tracings*)

The cause of the murmurs due to organic lesions has been debated: some authors advocating the role of whirlpools and others that of vibrations of solid structures. Studies of Bondi have given an experimental basis to the theory that the murmurs are due to turbulence of the blood. However the possibility of vibrations of the solid structures cannot be absolutely excluded, especially in the case of severe valvular narrowing with a loud murmur.

A *systolic murmur of one of the a v valves* may be caused by the following functional elements (fig 103 I)

a) Abnormal modality of contraction of the ventricles. This may be caused by myocarditis or myocardial weakness.

b) Failure of valvular closure because of enlargement of the opening. This is present with severe dilatation of the ventricles (*relative insufficiency*).

c) Increased blood flow or rapid cardiac action. Turbulence of the blood and myocardial elements may both play a role.

d) Low viscosity of the blood, as in severe anemia.

A *diastolic murmur of one of the a v*

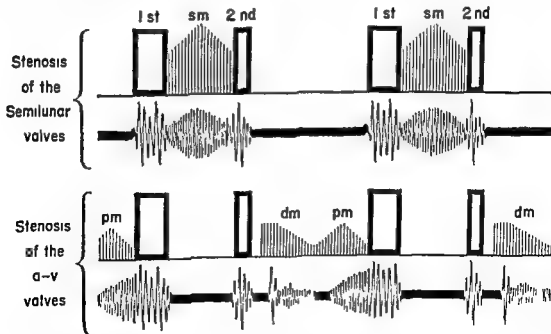


FIG 102 Murmurs caused by valvular stenosis. Above the auditory impression. Below the vibrations of the sound tracing. pm presystolic murmur. Other symbols same as those in figure 101.

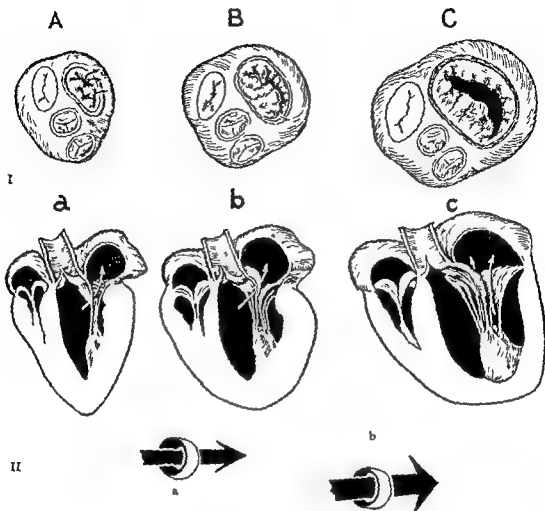


FIG. 103. I Murmurs caused by structural and relative insufficiency of the mitral valve. A organic insufficiency. B relative insufficiency due to stretching of the papillary muscles. C relative insufficiency due to dilatation of the ring. (From Hirschfelder's *Diseases of the Heart* and to the courtesy of The J. B. Lippincott Co.) II Diagram to illustrate relation between size of valvular orifice (ring) and velocity or volume of blood flow (arrow) in creating cardiac murmurs. a normal. b increased flow. (From Bramwell and King.)

valves may be caused by the following functional elements

- Dilatation of one ventricle without proportional dilatation of the valve opening (relative stenosis) (16) (fig. 104)
- Presence of extra sounds during diastole simulating a diastolic rumble (page 237) (pseudo stenosis)

A systolic murmur of one of the semilunar valves may be due to the following functional elements

- Dilatation of the vessel not accompanied by

companied by dilatation of either the opening or the ventricle (relative stenosis)

- Stretching of the ring causing a triangular opening (functional stenosis trigonization) (17)

c) Increased flow which is equivalent to a relative stenosis (fig. 103 II)

A diastolic murmur of either the aortic or the pulmonary takes may be due to the following functional causes

- Extreme dilatation of one of the ventricles

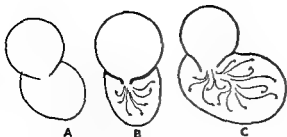


FIG 104 A normal mitral orifice B organic mitral stenosis—large left atrium narrow mitral valve C relative or functional mitral stenosis—normal mitral valve large left ventricle

- b) Lack of support due to incomplete rupture of the vessel (only in the tortia) (18)
- c) High pressure in the artery

CYANOSIS

Cyanosis is an abnormal blue color of the skin and mucous membranes. Often it is more marked over the lip, nose, earlobes, and nailbeds, or it may be present only in the extremities (*acrocyanosis*). *Cyanosis* is due to an abnormally high amount of reduced hemoglobin in the capillary blood.

It is necessary that the amount of reduced hemoglobin be increased at least 30 per cent above the normal level in order to have a visible cyanosis (*threshold of cyanosis*). Thus a patient with a severe anemia (e.g. under 50 per cent hemoglobin) even though severely anoxic has not enough reduced hemoglobin in the capillary beds to show cyanosis.⁴⁶

Two mechanisms of cyanosis are possible: the central and the peripheral (19).

Central Cyanosis

This is caused by the fact that the arterial blood is poor in oxygen on account of insufficient oxygen intake in the lungs (fig. 105). It may be caused by

- a) *Pulmonary lesions of an obstructive type* (atelectasis, pneumonia, bronchial obstructions, emphysema, fibrosis)

It has been said that four factors are involved in cyanosis: the *I* factor (lungs = oxygenation), the *D* factor (periphery = deoxygenation), the *alpha* factor (venous-arterial shunt), and the *T* factor (total Hb content of blood).

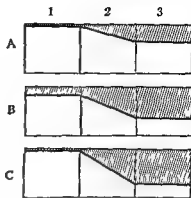


FIG 105 Diagram of the percentage of reduced hemoglobin (shaded) and oxyhemoglobin in the blood in cases of cyanosis: 1 arteries, 2 capillaries, 3 veins. A normal B central cyanosis with decreased oxygen content in the arterial blood C peripheral cyanosis with normal oxygen content in the arterial blood and greater loss in the capillaries (From Cossio)

- b) *Low oxygen tension in the air* (high altitude flying, high mountains)

c) *Existence of a shunt* with passage of blood from the lesser to the greater circulation (congenital defects) or from a pulmonary artery to a pulmonary vein (congenital or a fistula). At least 30 per cent of the blood must flow from the shunt into the arterial system in order to cause visible cyanosis in the absence of anemia.

- d) *Small volume of the blood reaching the lungs* (pulmonic stenosis)

Peripheral Cyanosis

This is caused by slow circulation in the peripheral capillaries with the result that more oxygen is ceded by the blood to the tissues (fig. 105).

- This may be due to a) heart failure
- b) venous obstruction (local cyanosis)
- c) improper function of the peripheral vessels (*acrocyanosis*)
- d) abnormal structure of the capillaries, often found in congenital heart disease, or
- e) abnormal composition of the blood as in *polycythemia*.

Central cyanosis is a diffuse universal color. If it is due to disturbed oxygen intake as in chronic or pulmonary oxygen administration may decrease the blue color.

If central cyanosis is due to a shunt any increase of intrathoracic pressure like that caused by crying *increases* the amount of blood passing through the shunt and therefore the cyanosis.

In all these cases the difference in the oxygen saturation of the arterial and venous blood (*arterio venous difference*) is *normal*.

Peripheral cyanosis may be diffuse or localized. It is *diffuse* when due to heart failure intra or extracardiac obstruction or abnormal development of the capillary network. It is *localized* when caused by venous obstruction (thrombophlebitis, venous compression) or by local disturbance of the peripheral circulation (cyanosis of the extremities or acrocyanosis). In peripheral cyanosis the *hot bath test* and *elevation of the limb* relieve the cyanosis. In all these cases the difference in the oxygen saturation of the arterial and venous blood (*arterio venous difference*) is *increased*.

Mixed Cyanosis

Mixed cyanosis caused by both central and peripheral elements is not unusual. Patients with heart failure often have both a peripheral and a pulmonary slowing of the circulation. Thus a central factor is added to the main peripheral factor. Patients with congenital malformations of the heart may also have malformations of the capillaries. Thus a peripheral factor is added to the main factors which are central (shunt often also pulmonary ischemia). If heart failure occurs in these patients another factor is added (20).

EDEMA OF TISSUES AND EFFUSION OF SEROUS CAVITIES

Edema in general is a serous infiltration of the interstitial tissue. When present in the subcutaneous tissue it is called *subcutaneous edema* when diffuse over the whole body it is called *anasarca*.

Typical *cardiac edema* is present mainly in the *lower parts of the body* (*dependent edema*) in the legs when the patient stands

or sits and over the sacrum and the back when he lies down. The name *gravitational edema* is due to the apparent action of gravity in causing this type of edema. On the contrary edema resulting from other causes such as renal dysfunction is less influenced by gravity and starts typically on the dorsal aspect of the hands and on the eyelids.

A renal patient sooner or later may have cardiac insufficiency, a cardiac patient sooner or later has renal and hepatic dysfunctions. For this reason each category of patients has a definite type of edema at the beginning but often develops a mixed type later.

Initial cardiac edema is revealed by the fact that the finger compressing the skin against a solid bony plane (malleolus shin) leaves a well defined depression (*pitting edema*). When the edema is recent the skin is smooth and shiny when the edema persists the skin becomes dry and peels off. If it lasts a long time the skin becomes thick and brown.

As previously stated (page 61) the passage of fluid through the capillary wall is influenced by both hydrostatic and osmotic pressures (fig 105). Hydrostatic pressure favors filtration of fluid and is influenced by both arterial and venous pressure. Osmotic pressure is particularly dependent upon the content of blood proteins. As the hydrostatic pressure is higher at the arterial than at the venous end of the capillary and the osmotic pressure normally is constant a double movement of water takes place under normal conditions. *Water leaves the capillary wall at the arterial end and reenters at the venous end* (fig 105).

In *cardiac edema* the venous pressure is higher than normal the effect of gravity adds to it in the dependent parts and the filtration pressure will be higher than the osmotic pressure enhancing fluid escape through the capillary wall (fig 106). In *renal edema* the osmotic pressure becomes too low because of loss of albumin. There

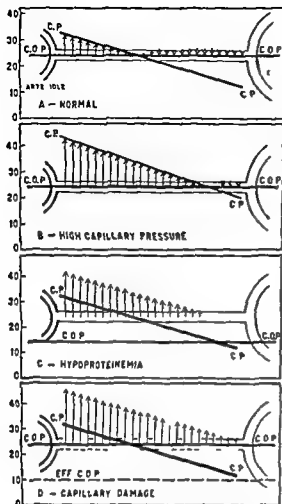


FIG 106 Diagram illustrating filtration and absorption through the capillary wall in relation to capillary blood pressure (C.P.) and colloid osmotic pressure of the plasma proteins (C.O.P.) (The figures at the left are pressures in mm Hg) a Normal In the arteriole end of the capillary where capillary pressure exceeds colloid osmotic pressure fluid leaves the vessel (upward arrows) At the venous end where the opposite conditions exist fluid is drawn into the capillary (downward arrows) b Increased filtration due to high capillary blood pressure c Increased filtration due to lowered colloid osmotic pressure d Increased filtration due to capillary damage Loss of protein through the capillary wall then reduces the effective colloid osmotic pressure of the blood (Courtesy of Dr F M Landis)

for fluid escapes through the capillary walls into the tissues (fig 106)

The following list indicates the various factors leading to edema in cardiac patients (27) (fig 106)

Elevated capillary pressure Increased venous pressure Increased blood volume Increased intrapleural (intrathoracic) pressure

Lowered colloid osmotic pressure Loss of albumin (urine ascites etc) Inadequate protein intake Dietary restriction and impaired absorption Impaired synthesis of plasma proteins Anemia and hepatic damage (chronic cases) Increased blood volume

Damage to capillary wall Anoxemia from cyanosis or anemia

Lymphatic obstruction Increased venous pressure effects Decreased physical activity and poor muscular tonus

Capillary dilatation Increased filtering surface

Low tissue pressure Predilection of certain tissues for early edema Loss of weight and poor muscular tonus

High salt (NaCl) intake Increases edema if water is available

High fluid intake Increases edema if salt (sodium ion) is available

Warm environment Increases all types of edema

Disturbed innervation Increases edema of paralyzed extremities

Miscellaneous Vitamin deficiency? Hormonal abnormalities? Unknown factors

Other diseases Edema of mixed etiology in cardiac disease associated with liver disease nephritis or anemia

CLUBFINGERS

Clubbing of the fingers toes and occasionally tip of the nose is caused by swelling without any other apparent abnormality and is often unnoticed by the patient Clubbing of the fingers and toes is typical of congenital heart disease with cyanosis However it may be present in chronic conditions of the lungs (pulmonary abscess bronchiectasis) Clubbing of the fingers is common also in subacute bacterial endocarditis and has been observed in chronic infections not associated with heart disease or cyanosis Congenital heart



Fig 107 Clubfingers in congenital heart disease

diseases and pulmonary lesions have one important factor in common the type of cyanosis (central cyanosis). The other conditions on the other hand have the factor of chronic infection in common. Therefore two different causes seem to be at the basis of this condition which is still somewhat mysterious.

Clubfingers are accompanied by no lesion of the bony structures as shown by the x-ray only the soft parts are enlarged while the nails are curved (*watch glass nails*) (fig 107).

The capillaries (possibly only the anastomoses) of the soft parts are dilated and a rapid circulation seems to be present in them (21). Abnormality of the lymphatic circulation is also probably present.

It should be emphasized that patients with acquired valvular defects having cyanosis do not present clubbing of the fingers.

DYSPNEA

The name *dyspnea* is applied to any form of augmented and labored breathing associated with unpleasant sensations. There is usually an increased respiratory rate and

an abnormal ratio of inspiration to expiration.

Three main types of dyspnea exist:

a) *Exertional dyspnea* (*effort dyspnea*) in which shortness of breath is caused by physical exercise.

b) *Continuous dyspnea*: which is present all the time.

c) *Paroxysmal dyspnea* in which a sudden attack of shortness of breath has no apparent connection with effort.

In the last two types the shortness of breath is increased by the recumbent position and decreased by sitting or standing; therefore the name *orthopnea*. On the contrary dyspnea decreased by supine position occurs in cases with ball valve thrombus or intracardiac pedunculated tumor and may be observed in certain patients with deformity of the chest.

A particular type of exertional dyspnea may be observed in congenital heart diseases. Children with certain malformations of the heart (pulmonic or tricuspid stenosis, tetralogy of Fallot) crouch after effort in a *squatting position* and breathe heavily (28). It is likely that such a position increases venous return and forces more

blood through the lungs by compressing the abdominal viscera

In some cardiac patients a *periodic type of breathing* may occur (*Cheyne Stokes respiration*)

The following factors should be considered a) engorgement of the pulmonary capillaries with decreased alveolar space and slower circulation b) accumulation of carbon dioxide and lactic acid in the blood c) increased venous pressure in the cerebral circulation and d) reflexes

Chemical determinations fail to detect any changes in the blood returning from the brain to the heart (22) Therefore a greater emphasis is given to reflex elements due to stimuli arising in the lungs as well as in the various cardiac and vascular receptors (24-25)

These factors are analyzed in detail in chapters XXX and XXX

ENLARGEMENT OF THE HEART

Cardiac enlargement is a common and important sign of heart disease. However heart disease may be present with little or no enlargement

Whenever an increase in the work of the heart is required *the heart dilates*. This physiological dilatation is demonstrated in a striking way by heart lung preparations (page 30). If the increased work persists for a long time, the myofibrils undergo *hypertrophy* and a greater thickness of walls is present. A further increase in work may call for further dilatation

However dilatation of the heart may also occur without a greater demand of work if lesions of the cardiac walls lead to reduced efficiency. Therefore two causes of dilatation are present a) a greater demand on the heart and b) a reduced efficiency

The latter is typical of cardiac failure and was the only cause known to older physicians. *Coronary heart disease* and *myocarditis* are the two most common causes of reduced efficiency. It should be further noted that any extreme degree of hyper-

trophy gradually leads to reduced efficiency of the coronary vessels and therefore to coronary insufficiency. Prolonged coronary insufficiency frequently causes an increase of connective tissue (*myocardial fibrosis*) which contributes to the increase of thickness of the ventricular wall

Not only dilatation but also hypertrophy may be *reversible* if the cause of the change disappears

When the greater demand is limited to only one chamber dilatation and hypertrophy may be so limited. They may extend later to the other chambers but only to a lesser extent. A typical example of this occurs in certain valvular defects and in hypertension. Hypertension of the greater circulation places a greater demand on the left ventricle, hypertension of the lesser circulation on the right

A *sectional enlargement* may lead to predominant localization of coronary sclerosis and myocardial fibrosis in the wall of the affected chamber. It may cause changes of the electric axis and auscultatory signs (triple rhythm) limited to one part of the heart

The classic division of hypertrophy into *concentric* and *eccentric* should be abandoned since it has no real meaning. The greater or lesser dilatation found in the postmortem examination largely depending on whether the heart stopped in systole or diastole had much to do with the original division

Decreased cardiac work may lead to *cardiac atrophy* if it is prolonged for years. This atrophy which consists of decreased thickness of the ventricular walls and is accompanied by alterations of the myofibrils has been described in constrictive pericarditis (chapter 20) chronic neoplasms and chronic infections (29)

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 McILWEN C. Rheumatic Heart Disease. In *Cyclopedia of Medicine*. Philadelphia Davis 1913. Also in *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease*. Philadelphia Davis 1911
- 2 COBURN A. F. *The Factor of Infection in the*

- Pneumatic Stn* Baltimore The Williams & Wilkins Co 1931
- 3 a) SWIFT H F AND CO WKEER J A M A 1928 93 46
- 1) SWIFT H F *Plemonic Feet* Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine New York Nelson 1941 vol 1
- 4 SCHWENTKER F F AND COMPTON F C J Exper Med 1939 70 223
- 5 SCHWEINBERG AND WARREN Personal communication Unpublished notes
- 6 SCHLEINER B AND CO WKEER Lancet 1933 1 1143
- 7 FABLES G H AND CO WKEER Lancet 1937 2 41
- 8 a) BIRKHALL K E J Infectious Dis 1928 43 29
- 1) COPEMAN W R C Ann Rheum Dis 1941 4 37
- 9 RAVENH P Ann Rheum Dis 1939 1 167 and 1940 2 1 also Min Med Torino 1939 (1) 20
- 10 DIONISI A *Anatomia Patologica della Malattia Pome Ferri* 1927
- 11 GALLANCA Quoted by DIONISI 10
- 12 ZIEHMAN Quoted by DIONISI 10
- 13 KERN F Arch Int Med 1943 76 88
- 14 ABBOTT M E AND DAWSON W T Internat Clin 1934 4 100 Also Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine New York Nelson 1941 vol 11
- 15 SPITZER A *Leber die Urachen und den Mechanismus der Zerstörung des Herzes* Berlin Springer 1910
- 16 WHITE I D *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1944
- 17 CHILHOLM D I Am Heart J 1937 13 35
- 18 IERRY TH M Arch Int Med 1942 70 60
- 19 COLOPAPA Circulatorio Buenos Aires El Ateneo 1943
- 20 COLOPAPA AND BERSON KY G Arch Mal Copur 1933 23 19
- 1 a MENDELWITZ M J Clin Investigation 1941 20 113
- 11 MAUER F F Am Heart J 1947 34 62
- 22 MEAN DAVIES AND MEAKINS Quoted by WIGGERS 23
- 23 WIGGERS C J *Physiology in Health and Disease* Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1944
- 4 HARRISON W C *Failure of the Circulation* Baltimore The Williams & Wilkins Co 1939
- 25 LUTHER A A Medicine 1941 20 229
- 26 a) SWAN C AND CO WKEER Med J Australia 1943 2 301 1944 1 407 and 1946 1 643 Also J Obst & Gynec Brit Emp 1949 56 501
- b) ABELSON AND VAN DELLEN T P J A M A 1949 140 1210
- 27 STROUD W D AND VANDER VEER J B Pennsylvania M J 1940 May
- 28 TATUM H C *Conital Malformations of the Heart* New York The Commonwealth Fund 1947
- 29 HELLERSTEIN H K AND SANTIAGO-STEVENSON D Circ 1950 1 93

Classification—Diagnosis

Classification

The classification of diseases is always difficult. As already pointed out the so-called cardiovascular diseases are mere clinical entities—collections of signs and symptoms having a variable connection with cause, lesion and functional disturbance.

Until the beginning of the century classifications were based upon *structural lesions* (1). Then greater emphasis was placed on the *functional state* of the heart and vessels (2) and the importance of the lesions was underestimated.

A third phase developed when Cabot (3) properly emphasized the value and meaning of *cause* in the diagnosis and classification of heart diseases. The latter is most important because different lesions frequently associated may be placed together under a single heading (rheumatic heart disease, syphilitic heart disease, arteriosclerotic heart disease, hypertensive heart disease). The first etiological classification (3) was undoubtedly incomplete but it was later supplemented by the addition of many other clinical pictures (4-6).

It is now recognized that none of the three fundamental elements of diagnosis—*causation*, (etiology), *lesion*, (anatomical pathology) and *functional disorder* (physiology) can be omitted. Therefore three separate classifications have been proposed (6, 7).

Since the classifications are well known they are presented in an abridged form in order to ease reference.

I ETIOLOGICAL CLASSIFICATION

- 1 Congenital defects
- 2 Rheumatic disease

- 3 Bacterial infection
 - Acute
 - Subacute
- 4 Syphilitic disease
- 5 Parasitic disease
- 6 Thyroid disease
 - Hyperthyroidism (thyrotoxicosis)
 - Hypothyroidism (myxedema)
- 7 Hypertensive disease
 - Systemic (and hypertensive heart disease)
 - Pulmonary (and cor pulmonale)
- 8 Atherosclerotic disease
 - Coronary
 - Valvular
 - Vascular
- 9 Toxic disease
 - Minerals
 - Bacterial toxins
 - Other organic toxins
- 10 Neoplastic disease
- 11 Traumatic disease
- 12 Functional disease
 - Neurocirculatory asthenia and neurosis
 - Arrhythmias

II STRUCTURAL CLASSIFICATION

- 1 Displacement of the heart
 - Congenital
 - Acquired
- 2 Change in size
 - Atrophy
 - Hypertrophy
 - Dilatation
- 3 Myocardial disease
 - Congenital
 - Inflammatory
 - Fibrotic
 - Infarction
- 4 Cardiac aneurysm
- 5 Cardiac rupture
- 6 Congenital anomalies of cardiac chambers or septa
- 7 Endocardial disease
 - Congenital defects
 - Inflammation
 - Sclerosis
 - Valvular deformities
- 8 Pericardial disease
 - Congenital

- Inflammation
- Infusion
- Adhesion
- Calcification
- Pneumopericardium hemopericardium
- Neoplasms
- 9 Vascular disease
 - Coronary
 - Aorta
 - Pulmonary artery
 - Peripheral arteries

III FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION

- 1 Disturbances of the heart rhythm and rate
 - A Changes of vago sympathetic origin
 - S a tachycardia
 - S a bradycardia
 - Sinus arrhythmia
 - S a standstill
 - Wandering pacemaker
 - Ventricular escape
 - A v nodal rhythm
 - B Disturbances of the pacemaking function
 - Irregular beats
 - Paroxysmal tachycardia
 - Atrial flutter
 - Atrial fibrillation
 - Obscure ectopic rhythms
 - Ventricular fibrillation
 - C Disturbances of conduction
 - Short P R interval
 - A v block
 - Idioventricular rhythm
 - Intra atrial block
 - Intra ventricular block
 - Abnormal axis deviation
- 2 Faulty cardiac efficiency
 - Congestive failure
 - Pulsus alternans
 - Neuro circulatory asthenia
 - Valvular incompetence
 - Angina pectoris
 - Adams Stokes syndrome
- 3 Faulty vascular efficiency
 - Hypertension
 - Hypotension
 - Vascular spasm
 - Vascular dilatation

Discussion of the common cardiac and vascular diseases can be made on the basis of only one of the criteria of classification (cause lesion disturbance). However this is impossible because it would overlook many important aspects and many possible

occurrences. Therefore two possible courses are open

1) To describe the cardiovascular diseases on an *etiological basis* and then to consider them on a *structural basis*. This has been done in a well known book of cardiology (*P D White* (4))

2) To describe the cardiovascular diseases in a purely *clinical order* cause nature of the lesions and disturbed function are listed in each case. This has been done in another well known clinical book (*S A Levine* (8))

A *clinical anatomical line* will be followed in the present book. Practical considerations have led to the grouping of minor lesions, disturbances of function or even signs in the same chapters where the most important syndromes have their place.

Further classifications may be useful for dividing the patients on the basis of their functional capacity and the restriction of their physical activity. The following was prepared by the New York Heart Association

FUNCTIONAL CAPACITY OF CARDIAC PATIENTS

Class I Patients with *no limitation of physical activity*

Class II Patients with *slight limitation of physical activity* (On ordinary physical exertion fatigue, palpitation, dyspnea or anginal pain are experienced)

Class III Patients with *marked limitation of physical activity* (The above symptoms are caused by less than ordinary activity)

Class IV Patients who are *unable to carry on any physical activity without discomfort* (Symptoms of cardiac insufficiency or cardiac pain are present at rest)

THERAPEUTIC CLASSIFICATION OF CARDIAC PATIENTS

Class A Patients whose physical activity need not be restricted

Class B Patients who should be advised against severe or competitive efforts

Class C Patients whose ordinary physical activity should be *moderately restricted* and whose more strenuous habitual efforts should be discontinued

Class D Patients whose ordinary physical activity should be *markedly restricted*

Class I Patients with cardiac disease who should be at *complete rest* (bed or chair)

POTENTIAL HEART DISEASE

Patients in whom no cardiac disease is discovered but whose course should be followed by periodic examinations because of the presence or history of an etiological factor which might cause heart disease

POSSIBLE HEART DISEASE

Patients with symptoms or signs referable to the heart but in whom a diagnosis of cardiac disease is uncertain

Diagnosis

Diagnosis should include the following

- a) Recognition and evaluation of the *functional disturbance* (functional diagnosis)
- b) Recognition of the *structural lesion* if any (anatomical diagnosis)
- c) Recognition of the *cause* of the disturbance and of the lesion (etiological diagnosis)

The order in which the three types of diagnoses should be made is that outlined above. It is self evident that knowledge of the previous or present existence of a disease does not imply cardiac damage and that physical or technical data demonstrating such damage are required before admitting it.

When the previous occurrence or the existence of such a disease is unknown to the patient and clinical data (serology, hematology, apparent lesions of other organs or exposure to infection) are lacking, etiological diagnosis will be admitted only as a probability. On the other hand in many cases only the functional disturbance is apparent. Knowledge that this is not based on structural lesions or impossibility to determine the latter may induce the physician to leave the structural diagnosis in the realm of possibility or probability.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 VAQUEZ H *Les Maladies du Cœur* Paris Baillière 1924
- 2 MACKENZIE Quoted by WHITE (5)
- 3 CABOT R C J A M A 1914 63 1461
- 4 WHITE I D AND MYERS M M J A M A 1921 77 1414
- 5 WHITE P D *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1944
- 6 N Y Heart Assoc *Nomenclature and Criteria for Diagnosis of Diseases of the Heart* New York Little and Ives 1953
- 7 SHRAGLE H B AND WHITE I D (*Classification of Cardiovascular Diagnosis In Modern Cyclopedia of Medicine* Philadelphia Davis 1945)
- 8 LEVINE S A *Clinical Heart Disease* Philadelphia Saunders 1945
- 9 VAQUEZ H AND DOYSELOT I *Les Troubles du Rythme Cardiaque* Paris Baillière 1926
- 10 GALLAVARDIN L J *Med* Lyon 1931 10 489

Rheumatic Disease

Rheumatic Fever, Acute Rheumatism, Rheumatic Polyarthritis

Rheumatic disease is a chronic condition characterized by active often febrile stages and quiescent or silent stages

Cause

Rheumatic disease is the result of a complex process which takes place in certain predisposed individual as a reaction to bacterial invasion. Thus a complete understanding of its mechanism includes a double problem that of the agent and that of the host.

Agent It is now admitted that the only agent of rheumatic disease is the *Streptococcus hemolyticus beta group A* (2). This agent is the common cause of the streptococcal sore throat with or without scarlatina, form rash and of erysipelas. It is frequently present in the throats of patients with upper respiratory infections or diphtheria.

The action of a specific *filterable virus* possibly carried by the streptococcus has been advocated (6-9) but no convincing evidence has been brought forward in its favor.

The host While there is no proof that only certain individuals may become rheumatic, evidence has been collected demonstrating the importance of *hereditary factors* (10). Predisposition to rheumatic disease seems to be transmitted as a recessive gene. Therefore it is particularly important in the offspring of two rheumatic patients. The inherited tendency to rheumatic disease may be a hormonal defect that prevents metabolism of surplus globulin (18).

The reaction During a streptococcal infection, antibody globulin forms in excessive amounts circulating plasma volume

increases and large amounts of the globulin penetrate the tissues. Increase of serum globulin, fall of serum albumin and instability of fibrinogen seem to be the result of an *allergic reaction*, possibly of the hyperergic type (3-5). Among the various theories, one advocates development of auto antibodies as a result of denaturation of certain tissues caused by the toxins of the streptococcus. The allergic theory explains the usually observed *latent period* of 12-20 days between upper respiratory infection and onset of rheumatic disease.

Epidemiology Rheumatic disease is one of the most widespread illnesses. It is difficult to evaluate its real extent on account of frequently silent onset, poor symptomatology (especially in children) and variability of symptoms in different countries.

Rheumatic disease is said to be more frequent in the cold and temperate regions than in the tropical. However, statistics based on the occurrence of rheumatic heart disease show that the difference is far less marked than expected. Therefore it is possible that a large part of the difference is due to greater frequency of arthritis in the northern regions.

Atmospheric conditions leading to sudden chilling seem to favor the onset of the disease. Not only cold and humid weather but also variability of the temperature may be important as concurrent elements.

Rheumatic disease is more frequent in the crowded sections of large cities than in the country. Poorer families living in damp houses are more subject to it. This is probably due to the concurrence of various factors including increased possibility of

transmission of the agent and modified resistance of the body (poor nourishment)

The importance of a *stress reaction* has been advocated (49). This was suggested by the frequency of rheumatic disease in children of school age in young recruits of the Army and under the stress of emergencies. It should be noted however that all these conditions increase the possible transmission of streptococcal infections. However the importance of pituitary and adrenal elements in combating inflammation and allergy has been demonstrated. Therefore exhaustion of these glands following repeated stress may contribute to the particular type of reaction that causes rheumatic disease.

Rheumatic disease is most common in adolescents and young adults. However it may occur in young children and even in infants. It should be kept in mind that the younger the patient the more difficult is the diagnosis so that apart from a few well documented cases knowledge of rheumatic fever in the first years of life is gained only through occasional autopsies or indirectly by finding well established rheumatic heart disease in children between 3 and 5.

Rheumatic disease may initiate in mature or old individuals (50). This occurrence even though not common should not be considered as exceptional.

The influence of *focal infections* such as tonsillitis, gingivitis and chronic sinusitis or otitis media has been emphasized. There is no doubt that removal of the foci is sometimes followed by improvement in the signs of the disease. On the other hand preventive removal of the tonsils, teeth and appendix has failed to change the frequency of rheumatic disease.

Lesions

Myocardium. The essential lesions present in the interstitial tissue are the *Aschoff bodies*. They are rounded fusiform or spindle shaped nodules in close relation to

the arterioles. They range in size from 0.1 to 0.8 mm and are seldom visible to the unaided eye. They consist of a) a central necrotic zone containing fibrin, b) typical giant cells with one or more nuclei arranged in the center (not in a circle as in Langhans cells) and c) a marginal ring of lymphocytes, plasma cells and polymorphonuclear leukocytes (fig. 108).

Endocardium. Inflammation of the endocardium is almost always present. It is more frequent but by no means exclusive, of the valves of the left heart. The typical lesion is represented by minute cauliflower like *vegetations* 1 to 2 mm in diameter situated in a row along the line of closure of the valves. These *vegetations* or *terrucae* may cover the entire line of closure of the mitral valve (fig. 111) while the aortic and tricuspid valves are more often affected only in part (13). The *vegetations* begin very early and lead to formation of scar tissue. Lesions of the same type may be found in the parietal endocardium and on the chordae.

Gross coarse lesions occur frequently in the endocardium of the left atrium accompanied by *Aschoff bodies* (14, 15). The area of involvement may be small or it may affect the entire surface of the atrium. After healing the lesion becomes scarred and may become calcified.

Pericardium. Serofibrinous pericarditis is common either in localized areas or diffuse. *Aschoff bodies* are frequently found in the pericardium. Formation of an abundant effusion is not unusual. *Adhesions* frequently develop during the healing stage.

Blood vessels. Specific lesions have been described in the aorta (16), coronary arteries (14) and pulmonary artery (17) as well as in the peripheral arterioles. *Venous thrombosis* is rare.

Aschoff bodies often develop in the adventitia of the coronary arterioles. They probably last for weeks or even months.

Among the vascular lesions the most frequent blood vessel is various other vessels (18) nose and throat (19) deserve mention.

sinusitis or earaches more rarely gastro intestinal disturbances (diarrhea abdominal pain nausea vomiting) In some cases a long history of *loss of weight gastrointestinal symptoms* and *malaise* reveals that the disease had really started long before the apparent beginning

It has to be emphasized that *rheumatic disease is a chronic condition whose symptoms are often mild or latent* Acute and severe attacks may be superimposed upon this condition but statistical evidence shows that acute episodes may be absent

Fever The degree of fever is an index of the intensity and persistence of the disease The temperature usually ranges between 102 and 104°F (38.5 to 39.5°C) High temperature is observed in some cases (105 to 108°F or 40 to 42°C) with delirium stupor and convulsions rapid pulse and cyanosis After the acute stage the temperature may have an irregular subfebrile course sometimes of a long duration

Pulse The pulse rate is usually proportional to the fever However extreme pain raises the pulse rate and cardiac involvement is frequently accompanied by an abnormally high pulse rate or arrhythmia A *rapid pulse* is evidence of a cardiac lesion especially if the patient is in the subacute or chronic stage While *tachycardia* is the most common occurrence *bradycardia* or *severe respiratory arrhythmia* may occur

Sweating Severe and profuse sweating is typical of rheumatic disease and is frequently followed by a diffuse rash (*subcutanea*)

Arthritis This is a frequent but not necessary manifestation In children joint involvement may be so mild or transitory as to be represented by the so called *growing pains* and is frequently absent The success is involvement of *many joints* both large and small is typical Arthritis is usually accompanied by redness swelling tenderness and increase in local temperature Any slight movement and even the slightest touch then may cause intense pain

Nodules Subcutaneous nodules are characteristic of the disease They vary from 1 mm to 2 cm are not tender, and are mainly localized in the surroundings of the joints

Erythema Various types of skin manifestations have been described but the most constant is *erythema marginatum* This consists of a series of reddish macules usually appearing on the trunk and more rarely on the limbs The macules are from 5 to 10 mm in diameter then increase rapidly in size while their center becomes normal again The evolution of a single area may take place within a few hours These manifestations may appear months before or after an acute rheumatic attack They indicate the existence of the rheumatic condition in its chronic form

Petechiae have been described in some cases

Kidneys Albuminuria is rather frequent during the acute stages Red cells and casts may be observed for 4 to 10 weeks after the onset of an acute attack indicating congestion and cloudy swelling of the renal parenchyma

HEART

Rheumatic carditis is the most common result of rheumatic disease Diagnosis often centers upon recognition of carditis especially in children

The most important data are the following

a) Evidence of cardiac enlargement (x ray)

b) Auscultatory changes consisting of murmurs triple rhythm friction rubs (auscultation phonocardiography)

c) Changes of rate and rhythm (pulse ECG)

d) Evidence of involvement of the conducting bundles irritability of the myocardium and abnormal duration of ventricular systole (ECG)

e) Clinical data (precordial pain congestive failure)

Evidence of cardiac enlargement is sup

pled by serial chest films. The oblique positions should be always taken in order to detect changes in the size of the left atrium.

The *auscultatory changes* are important; however, they may be misleading especially in ambulatory case. On the one hand suggesting an already established valvular damage, on the other hand frequently being accepted as *innocent manifestations*.

A *triple rhythm* is common. It is evidence of strain of either ventricle, more often the left and is favored by tachycardia and by delayed Δ conduction. It may be of either the *ventricular* or the *summation* type (page 370).

The most common murmurs are *systolic* and found over the pulmonic area and the apex. (o1) The *pulmonic murmur* is usually a grade 2 or 3 systolic murmur which may be soft or harsh and even musical. The statement that a musical murmur is usually innocent (o2) cannot be accepted by the author who observed that a musical murmur may appear and disappear in the course of rheumatic disease. This murmur may be explained with relative stenosis of the pulmonic valve on account of dilatation of the pulmonary artery (page 267). The latter may be connected with arteritis or may be due to increased pressure of the pulmonary circulation (left ventricular strain, mitral incompetence). The *apical murmur* is a grade 1 or 2 systolic murmur which is usually soft but may be musical (seagull cry). It is a myocardial murmur in the first few weeks or months of the disease and is due to the carditis which causes *insufficiency of the mitral valve* through dilatation of the mitral ring or edema of the papillary muscles. The latter might explain the possible musical quality of the murmur. In later stages a valvular lesion is established and a valvular murmur is present.

A *diastolic rumble* is not unusual. It may be misleading because it simulates the mur-

mur of organic mitral stenosis. It is probably due to relative stenosis of the mitral valve because of left ventricular dilatation (page 237).

A *systolic or early-diastolic aortic murmur* may be heard. This is usually of late appearance being due to organic lesion of the aortic valve. It should be stated, however, that a *soft early-diastolic aortic murmur* may be heard during the acute stage and then may sharply decrease or even disappear. The mechanism of production of this murmur is still obscure.

Changes of the heart rate and rhythm. The most common feature is an increased heart rate due to *sinus tachycardia* (page 329), *sinus bradycardia* (page 330) with a rate of 50 to 60 and *sinus arrhythmia* (page 332) may be observed in certain cases. *Premature beats* are not unusual and may reveal either a focal or a more diffuse myocardial lesion (page 346).

A lesion of the conducting bundles may lead to periodic irregularities (incomplete Δ block) or slow rate of the ventricles (complete Δ block) (page 355). *Atrial fibrillation* and *paroxysmal attacks of tachycardia* may occur frequently in conjunction with congestive failure.

Percarditis is not unusual. It starts with the auscultatory finding of *friction rubs* over the precordial area. This phase is frequently followed by a phase of *effusion* (page 444).

Congestive failure is due to active carditis. It implies a severe prognosis because the *myocardium* of these patients responds less readily to digitalis than that of chronic cardiac patients. However, children with severe failure and enlarged heart whose outlook seems very poor frequently present an amazing recovery. This is due to healing of the myocardial lesions and to the fact that the valvular lesions are usually slight unless previous attacks have occurred.

BLOOD

A *leucocytosis* is the rule during the acute stages with figures between 12,000 and

The term *functional insufficiency* should be avoided because this is frequently considered as a harmless or innocent phenomenon.

20 000 per cmm and occasionally higher figures (1a) Polymorphonuclears predominate. The count may range between 10 000 and 15 000 in the chronic stages indicating the existence of a persistent infection.

A secondary anemia is typical of the rheumatic disease. The most frequent is *hypochromic anemia* with reduction of hemoglobin far outranging the decrease in the number of red cells.

The rate of sedimentation of the red blood cells is a valuable index of infection even if not specific. From the normal figures of 7 (males) to 11 (females) values of 50 to 80 may be reached. The rate drops as soon as improvement occurs but it often remains between 20 and 40 for a long time.

The *mucin-clot prevention test* for measurement of streptococcal *hyaluronidase* in the blood serum shows high figures in rheumatic disease during the active stage. The mean titer was found 550 as compared to 30 to 36 in normal subjects (52). The *antistreptolysin titer* is also elevated from a base line of 250 it may rise to above 500. However children below 5 have a much lower base line. As this titer indicates streptococcal infection it is of value only in cases with questionable diagnosis of rheumatic disease. Cardiac surgery has revealed the possibility of active pericarditis in cases with normal sedimentation rate and normal antistreptolysin titer.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM

The *electrocardiogram* reveals the various changes of rate and rhythm. It may show a broadening of QRS and changes of S, T and U due to pericarditis. The most typical changes are:

a) A *prolongation of the P R interval* (grade 1 A-V block) which is observed in about one fifth of the cases. It should not be considered specific because it may take place in any type of myocarditis (22). It is due not only to anatomical lesions (edema or Aschoff bodies in the bundle of His) but also to *vagal stimulation* (23, 24). If the latter is not due to irritation of the vagus

center in the medulla (23) but to a reflex it is likely to be the result of a diffuse myocardial involvement. Thus the meaning of the prolonged P R interval may change from that of a local to that of a diffuse lesion.

b) A *prolongation of the Q T interval* which measures the duration of ventricular systole (page 124) (43). This is an extremely common occurrence having important diagnostic and prognostic meanings.

c) Various changes of the P and T waves may be observed in one or more leads through a serial study of the electrocardiograms. A change of the electric axis may be due to ventricular dilatation.

PHONOCARDIOGRAM

The sound tracing of patients with rheumatic disease supplies data which are of help for confirmation or clarification of the auscultatory findings and also often for establishing a correct diagnosis (51).

The most common findings are (fig. 109):

1) A *prolonged first sound* or a *systolic murmur* at the apex and midprecordium. This may be a murmur in decrescendo or may consist of a few regular vibrations of high pitch and small amplitude during the central phase of systole (sea gull cry type of murmur).

2) A *systolic pulmonary murmur* which is normally diamond shaped and lower pitched than the apical murmur.

3) A *split second sound* over the pulmonary area.

4) Increased loudness of the third sound at the apex creating a triple rhythm (older terminology — gallop rhythm) (p. 370).

5) A loud and low pitched *diastolic rumble* over the midprecordium (only in severe carditis with cardiac enlargement).

APEX CARDIOGRAM (LOW FREQUENCY TRACING)

The cardiogram may be useful in order to ascertain the phase of the additional diastolic sound and in the differentiation between loud third sound (ventricular

gallop) and opening snap of the mitral valve. The latter has a more serious meaning because it indicates a well established lesion of the mitral valve and probably an initial mitral stenosis.

ELECTROKYNOGRAM

Electrocardiographic tracings of the left atrium present great interest (51). Some cases of rheumatic disease with a systolic murmur present a normal tracing; others present evidence of increased pressure and initial regurgitation; most of them however present a new plateau-like pattern indicating mitral regurgitation (p. 219). Thus the EKG of the left atrium permits to evaluate the nature of the systolic murmur and the severity of mitral regurgitation.

Course

Rheumatic disease presents an *inactive stage* and *stages of activity*. The former is revealed only by the scars left by the inflammatory process, chiefly those causing valvular defects. Active rheumatic disease occurs either in the form of *repeated acute attacks* or as a *latent persistent activity of inflammation*.

The classic description of the clinical picture is unsatisfactory because it applies only to the most apparent phases of the disease. Rheumatic disease has been divided into four stages (55): a) preparatory, b) pre-rheumatic, c) obvious rheumatic (classical or allergic) and d) quiescent.

The *preparatory phase* may start early in infancy and is revealed by irritability, fatigability, poor appetite, labile cardiac rate with rapid sleeping pulse and a short systolic blowing murmur. Diagnosis is difficult and only a suspicion of rheumatic tendency can be advanced.

The *initial rheumatic phase* is characterized by more marked fatigability, occasional joint and muscle pains, emotional instability, nose-bleeds, acute abdominal pain and recurrent upper respiratory infections. Low grade fever, tachycardia,

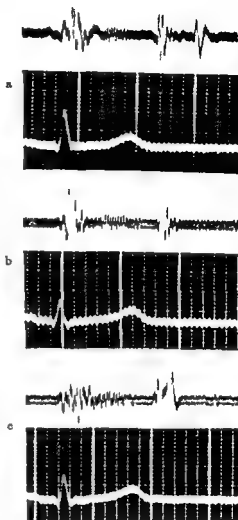


FIG. 109. Phonocardiograms in a boy of 8 with rheumatic disease. a) Apex short systolic murmur, ventricular type of triple rhythm. b) Mitral systolic murmur over third left interspace. c) Prolonged first sound, systolic murmur, and split second sound over pulmonary area.

slight changes of P-P, fullness of the pulmonary cone, cardiac murmurs, and high sedimentation rate are present. In some cases this represents the only obvious stage so that the subsequent evolution of the carditis leading to typical valvular defects may take place without more striking symptoms.

The *obvious rheumatic phase* with the

classical symptomatology including polyarthritides chorea and severe carditis occurs only in a minority of cases. This stage is connected with exudative allergic phenomena and has been considered as a stress reaction. It has been stated that these obvious cases are becoming less frequent and that prophylaxis is able to prevent only this stage and not the evolutionary cardiac lesion. However this pessimistic view is not justified.

Following the obvious phase the patient continues with mild carditis or passes into a *quiescent stage*. If carditis continues prognosis is less good. Bacterial endocarditis is more frequent and less readily treated by antibiotics and survival seldom lasts beyond 30 to 40 years of age. On the contrary if the quiescent stage is reached prognosis is good and the life-span is normal unless recurrences cause new damage and a new cycle.

Several clinical types have been recognized.

a) A *fulminating type* which is rare and occurs almost exclusively in children (21). The disease is accompanied by high temperature, leucocytosis and heart failure. Death may occur after a few days of sickness.

b) *Chronic active type*. The evidence of activity decreases slowly without entirely disappearing. A subacute or chronic state exists for many months or even years. During this time anemia, malaise, fatigability, low grade fever and high sedimentation rate persist. Once the patient has recovered a remarkable reduction in size of the heart takes place (fig. 110).

c) *Recurring type*. This is a rather frequent clinical form. The periods of activity occur every few years separated by long periods of inactivity during which cardiac efficiency is good.

d) *Persistently inactive type*. One single attack starts the disease which after a few months becomes inactive. No further attacks occur. This type is rather rare.

e) *Latent type*. The acute attack is so mild that it is not recognized. Differential diagnosis may be difficult but the subsequent course usually reveals the true nature of the disease. This type is frequent.

Sudden death may occur in a small percentage of cases. The cause of the fatalities seems to be *acute allergic coronaritis* superimposed upon a low grade rheumatic carditis (41).

Diagnosis

The diagnosis is easy when the complete picture with evidence of carditis and joint manifestations is present. In some cases there is knowledge of an old attack of rheumatic disease and it is known that rheumatic heart disease is present with typical valvular lesions. The diagnostic problem is then limited to ascertaining whether or not a new episode represents a *new attack* of the disease. In such cases attention should be paid to fever, increased sedimentation rate, changes of the electrocardiogram, changes in the type of cardiac murmurs, antistreptolysin titer and evidence of cardiac enlargement or apparent congestive failure. When present they indicate activity of the disease and may be useful for diagnosis in doubtful cases.

All these data will also have great importance in cases with multiple acute joint lesions where suspicion of *tubercular polyarthritides type Poncet* is justified by other tubercular lesions.

The P R interval has been repeatedly investigated owing to its importance in the diagnosis of rheumatic heart disease. Intervals of 0.18" to 0.24" are not normal for children but have on rare occasions been recorded without any pathology (20). Therefore a variation of the P R interval in successive tracings is even more significant than one single finding. However it should be known that spontaneous variations in the length of P R are occasionally seen in healthy children (20).

The increase in the duration of the Q T

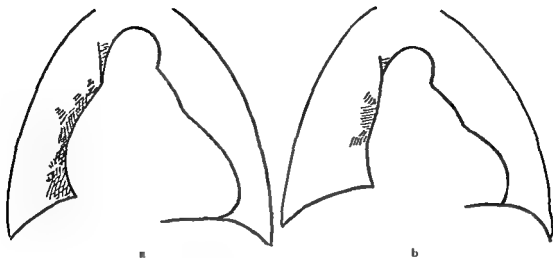


FIG. 110 Dilatation of the heart (a) and its subsequent reduction in size (b) during and after acute rheumatic disease. No pericarditis murmurs present in a. (Inspired by originals of Paul D. White.)

interval on the contrary has a definite diagnostic importance.

The phonocardiogram and the electrokymogram of the left atrium have proven of help in the evaluation of cardiac murmurs (51).

The differential diagnosis between *rheumatic heart disease* and *bacterial endocarditis* is frequently necessary. It will be discussed later (page 000).

Hyperthyroidism with its accompanying tachycardia, cardiac murmurs, and even low grade fever may simulate rheumatic heart disease. The lack of joint or skin manifestations, the absence of increased sedimentation rate and leucocytosis, and the electro- and phonocardiographic data are of help in excluding rheumatic disease.

Sickle cell anemia, *leukemia*, and *undulant fever* sometimes lead to the erroneous diagnosis of rheumatic disease. Careful blood and serologic studies and the electro- and phonocardiographic data usually lead to the correct diagnosis.

Prognosis

The mortality of acute attacks of rheumatic disease in patients having undamaged hearts prior to the onset has been evaluated as between 1 and 4 per cent. About 20 to 30

per cent of rheumatic children either do not develop evidence of cardiac disease or develop signs which later disappear. Their prognosis is undoubtedly good.

Once rheumatic heart disease is apparent the prognosis is definitely worse. However, it is impossible to say what the course will be after the first attack. The real entity of the lesions is usually apparent only after some years when valvular defects are established.

It should be kept in mind that a certain percentage of rheumatic patients become *cardiac cripples* and may be obliged to lead a sedentary life.

Before accepting the existence of murmurs as evidence of already established valvular damage, it should be considered that they may be due to active carditis causing dilatation of the heart. Moreover, undeniable evidence of valvular defects may later disappear (30). This probably occurs with slight valvular lesions which are compensated by the heart muscle.

When valvular defects are established, their accurate evaluation is important. Valvular insufficiency is less important than valvular stenosis; tight stenosis has a more serious prognosis than slight stenosis. Onset of stenosis at an early age is more serious

than when it develops later lesions of many valves have a worse prognosis than the lesion of one valve

After establishment of a chronic condition of rheumatic inactive heart disease the prognosis will be influenced by a) Heart size b) Evidence of heart failure c) Age activity sex and possibility of avoiding strenuous exertion d) Possibility of new attacks of rheumatic disease or bacterial endocarditis (e) Possible influence of prophylaxis

Treatment

I Prophylaxis Prevention of attacks should be attempted a) in children of rheumatic parents or having rheumatic siblings b) in patients with an acute streptococcal sore throat, and c) in patients who have recovered from an acute attack of rheumatic disease

Prophylaxis can be done with *sulfadiazine* (17)* (0.5 gm twice a day) or *oral penicillin* (18) (200 000-300 000 units twice a day) It has given good results (31-34) causing a remarkable decrease of rheumatic disease or rheumatic recurrences In patients with an acute streptococcal infection large doses of penicillin by injection (or *sulfab* by mouth) should be used in order to terminate quickly the infection Oral prophylaxis should be continued for 2 to 4 years or until the adolescent is out of school

II Therapy Three drugs have shown definite utility but their relative merits are still discussed They are ACTH cortisone

and *salicylates* All three of them decrease rheumatic activity ACTH and cortisone were started following the studies of Hench and co workers (34) Their effects may not be statistically different from those of aspirin Still individual cases benefit from one of the drugs and not from the others Therefore subsequent individual trials are sometimes necessary ACTH and cortisone seem slightly more rapid in their initial action *salicylates* have greater effect on joint manifestations Therefore ACTH (74) or cortisone (75) seem to be more appropriate in cases with acute congestive failure or heart block while *salicylates* (14-16) are more indicated in polyarthritis and in milder cases It should be kept in mind

a) That both ACTH and cortisone require supportive therapy with mercurials potassium administration and salt restriction because they favor water and salt retention

b) That they may cause secondary disturbances (Cushing's syndrome hirsutism amenorrhea)

c) That all three drugs depress the inflammatory and exudative processes with out abolishing them therefore they should be given for a long time until the natural course of the disease is approaching its end

d) That all three drugs should be given in gradually decreasing doses in order to avoid the flare up which may follow a sudden withdrawal

The duration of treatment should last at least 6 weeks and probably 8 weeks or more A hormonal treatment may be prolonged or integrated by *salicylate* therapy

Doses of the three drugs are shown in table 17

Patients using cortisone or ACTH experience a sharp curtailing of water and salt elimination Therefore patients using the 3 drugs should be treated with mercurial diuretics restriction of sodium in the diet and administration of potassium by mouth in order to avoid onset of congestive failure

Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin) by mouth

TABLE 17 Six week treatment of rheumatic disease—daily dose

PERIOD	ACTH	E T O E		ASPI IN
	mg	mg		gm/kg
1st-4th day	120-140	240	300	0.10
5th-7th day	100-120	150	240	0.08
2nd week	80-100	100	140	0.04
3rd week	60-80	75	100	0.06
4th week	40-60	50	75	0.03
5th and 6th week	20	30-50		0.03

(14) can be used instead of the classic treatment with sodium salicylate and alkali. An adequate salicylate blood level is between 30 and 40 mg per cent (27). This blood level should be evaluated at regular intervals. Administration of *ascorbic acid* (67) prevents possible dangers of prolonged salicylate therapy.

Aminopyrine (15) in dose of 0.3 gm four or five times a day occasionally gives striking results. The possibility of idiosyncrasy resulting in granulocytopenia must be kept in mind and administration of the drug will be promptly discontinued if the white blood count is below 6,000.

Bedrest is very important. In certain cases it should be prolonged for several months because it avoids the strain placed by exertion on the damaged heart and therefore limits the extent and severity of cardiac lesions. The difficulty of such treatment in children is overcome and its possible side effects are prevented if treatment is effected in specialized institutions where the young patients' minds are kept occupied.

Acute carditis seems to be favorably influenced by *oxygen therapy* and may also improve by the intravenous administration of *glucose* and *insulin* (46). *Digitalis* is used if there is evidence of failure or the heart rate is above 140. Toxic symptoms revealed by nausea and vomiting, premature beats or persistent tachycardia should be avoided. The fact that the myocardium of these patients is more excitable than the average indicates the need for caution in the dosage of digitalis. Among the various glycosides *gitalin* (7) has the best results on account of its wide margin between therapeutic and toxic dose.

Climate. Even if the change of climate does not fulfill all the wonders which have been described, it may have an important part in preventing recurrence of attacks. Dry, warm locations are the best. If the patient is unable to move to a completely new climate, at least care should be taken that

he does not live in a crowded section and in a damp and poorly heated house. He should not go out on humid and windy days and should avoid strenuous exercise and competitive sports for some years.

Tonsillectomy. In spite of the limited statistical results, tonsillectomy in children having large or infected tonsils is a good precaution.

Rheumatoid Arthritis

It is usually stated that the hearts of patients with rheumatoid arthritis are normal. However, in contrast with the usually negative clinical finding, post mortem studies reveal rheumatic heart lesions in about one half of the cases (3, 39). This indicates either late on or mild rheumatic lesions of the heart. It also suggests the possibility of a closer relationship between the two diseases.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. SWIFT H. F. a) *Rheumatic Fever*. In Nelson's Loose Leaf Medicine. New York: Nelson, 1941.
Also b) J. Exper. Med. 1921 39: 49.
Also c) J. A. M. A. 1934 90: 906.
2. a) COBURN A. F. AND FAYLI I. H. J. Clin. Investigation 1933 18: 141.
b) COBURN A. F. *The Facts of Infection in the Rheumatic State*. Baltimore: The Williams & Wilkins Co. 1931.
c) COBURN A. F. AND YOUNG D. C. *The Epidemiology of Hemolytic Streptococcus During World War II in the U. S. Navy*. Baltimore: The Williams & Wilkins Co. 1943.
3. a) WEINTRAUB W. Ber. klin. Woch. 1913 35: 1331.
b) KLINCK F. Arch. Arch. path. Anat. 1930 278: 433.
c) FREEMAN J. *Lecture on Chronic Rheumatic Diseases*. London: Lewis, 1932.
4. SCHWENKER I. F. AND CHAMBERLAIN J. C. J. Exper. Med. 1939 70: 299.
5. SCHWENKER AND WARREN. Personal communication. Unpublished studies.
6. SCHWENKER I. F. AND CHAMBERLAIN J. C. J. Exper. Med. 1939 70: 299.
7. JACOBSON C. H. AND CHAMBERLAIN J. C. J. Exper. Med. 1939 70: 299.

- 8 a) BIRKHAU K E J Infectious Dis 1978 43 280
- b) COPEMAN W S C Ann Rheum Dis 1944 4 37
- 9 RAVENNA P a) Ann Rheum Dis 1939 1 167 and 1940 2 1
- b) Arch Ital Anat Istol Pat 1934 5 473
- c) Min Med (Turin) 1936 (I) 702
- 10 a) WILSON M G *Rheumatic Fever* New York Commonwealth Fund 1940
- b) IALL J R *The Epidemiology of Rheumatic Fever* 2nd Ed New York Metropolitan Life Insurance Co 1943
- c) READ F CROCO A AND TALUSSIO H B Am J Hyg 1938 27 719
- 11 SACKS B Am Heart J 1976 1 2
- 12 LUSADA A A AND ANTONIAZZI E Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1931 15 89
- 13 IIBMAN E J A M A 1923 80 813
- 14 MACCALLUM W G a) Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1924 35 329 and J A M A 1925 84 1845
- 15 VON GLAHN W C Am J Path 1926 2 1
- 16 IAPPENHEIMER AND VON GLAHN Am J Path 1926 2 15
- 17 KUCER M A AND LEPTIN I F Arch Path 1928 6 247
- 18 GRAY AND AITKEN Quoted by SWIFT (1a)
- 19 HOLSTI O Arb a d Path Inst d Univers Helsingfors 1924 5 110 and 1928 5 401
- 20 URRUTIA D M AND LAISMAN S B La Enfermedad Reumatica Santiago La Sud America 1941
- 21 McEWEN C *Rheumatic Heart Disease in Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 22 CANDEL S AND WHEELOCK M C Ann Med 1945 23 309
- 23 BRUNN H G Am Heart J 1937 13 413
- 24 KEITH J D Quart J Med 1938 7 29
- 25 BEYERSBACH G Mo Conc Cardio Dis 1941 10 n 5
- 26 SWILL K WEGRIA R AND LELAND J J A M A 1944 125 1173
- 27 COBURN A F Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1943 74 435
- 28 MEYER D D AND BERTL H Proc Soc Exper Biol Med 1943 52 234
- 29 WATSON R F ROTHBARD E AND SWIFT H F J A M A 1944 125 274
- 30 BLAND I F DICKETT JONES T AND WHITE I D J A M A 1936 107 569
- 31 COBURN A F AND MOORE I V J Clin Investigation 1939 18 147
- 32 THOMAS C H AND CO WORKER J A M A 1941 116 531
- 33 CHANDLER C A AND TALUSSIO H B Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1943 72 49
- 34 THOMAS C B J A M A 1944 126 490
- 35 YOUNG D AND SCHWABER J B Am Heart J 1941 28 1
- 36 BOYER N H New England J Med 1943 228 509
- 37 a) COBURN A F *Mass Chemoprophylaxis* Publ 234 Govt Print Office Washington D C 1944
- b) WESSELHOEF C AND WEINSTEIN I New England J Med 1945 232 531
- 38 a) RICH A R AND GREGORY J F Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1943 73 239
- b) CAVALLI I A Arch Path 1947 44 119
- 39 a) ROBLES G J Arch Card Mexico 1948 18 74
- b) ROSENBERG I F BISHOP L F WEINTRAUB H J AND HENCH I S Arch Int Med 1950 85 751
- 40 MILLER A KOHN K H AND MACLEAN H J A M A 1949 136 536
- 41 GRIFFITH G C AND HUNTINGTON R W Ann Int Med 1948 25 293
- 42 MAGALHAES GOMES I *Diagnostico das Formas Antomo Clinicas da Cardite Reumatica* Jornal do Commercio Rio de Janeiro 1947
- 43 TARAN L M AND SZILAGYI N Am Heart J 1947 34 96
- 44 SAMPTON J J AND KAPLAN I C Am J M Sci 1946 212 321
- 45 CAHALL L Med Clin North America Nov 1946 1332
- 46 TARAN I M Med Clin North America May 1947 557
- 47 COCHI C Riv Clin Ped (Florence) 1947 45 31
- 48 BRADLEY W H Proc Roy Soc Med 1950 43 973
- 49 SPLEY H J Clin Endocrinol 1940 6 117
- 50 KALFMAN I AND POLIAKOFF H Ann Int Med 1950 32 889
- 51 LUSADA A A AND MACRI G Am Heart J 1952 44 545
- 52 ASH R Am Heart J 1949 36 50
- 53 a) HARRIS T N Am J M Sci 1949 217 14
- b) HARRIS T N FRIEDMAN S AND HALP C F Pediatrics 1949 3 815
- 54 HENCH I S SLODUM C R LUFFAY H F AND HENDALL I C J A M A 1950 144 1377 and Arch Int Med 1950 85 545
- 55 TARAN I M Bull St Francis Sanit 193 10 9

Cardiovascular Syphilis

The agent of lues *Treponema pallidum* is the cause of several clinicopathological pictures. While both congenital and acquired lues may cause cardiovascular lesions these are most usually found in the acquired type. Patients with luetic heart disease may be of any age from birth to old age the largest group however is between 30 and 50 years old.

Evidence of cardiac and vascular lesions usually becomes apparent from 10 to 30 years after the initial infection.

The most common processes are the following: a) *aortitis* (page 475) b) *aortic aneurysm* (page 478) and c) *aortic insufficiency* (page 238). Less frequent lesions include d) *luetic arteritis of peripheral vessels* (page 30) e) *luetic coronaritis* (page 414) and f) *luetic myocarditis* (page 385).

Early syphilis may give changes of the electrocardiogram due to myocardial lesions which are as yet not clinically evident (1).

Treatment

Treatment aims at improving the functional conditions of the heart and arresting the luetic process without causing harm to the patient. An adequate therapy of syphilis in the early stages prevents cardiovascular lues.

When cardiovascular lues is present treatment should be started cautiously in order to avoid sudden reactions*. If severe lesions are present the patient should be kept in bed during the early phase of treatment.

If there is congestive failure this will be

* The two most fearful reactions are *shock* and the *Herzheimer flare up* of the disease. In patients with latent heart failure irreversible failure may result.

treated before undertaking any important antiluetic therapy. However moderate doses of *potassium iodide* may be given without harm. Then the following scheme will be used:

a) A 2 week intensive course of treatment with *iodides* potassium iodide 1 to 3 gm daily by mouth.

b) A 2 week course of treatment with *mercury* daily inunctions with strong mercurial ointment (4 gm). KI is continued.

c) A 6 week course of treatment with *bismuth* 10 per cent bismuth subsalicylate in peanut oil may be used one weekly in intramuscular injection. KI is continued.

d) A 12 week course of treatment with *arsenicals* gradually increasing doses of *mapharsen* by weekly intravenous injections (10 to 30 mg). During this course KI is discontinued. Instead of arsenicals *penicillin* can be used. A five million unit course of *procaine G penicillin* in aqueous solution (19) is given in 10 days (1 daily injection of 500 000 units). (2). Following this either a course of bismuth (see b) or a second course of penicillin may be necessary. It is possible that the entire treatment may be reduced to 8 weeks (2 weeks iodide 4 weeks bismuth 2 weeks penicillin) but definite conclusions are still not available.

During this treatment digitalis diuretics vasodilators diet and other useful procedures may be used if necessary as in other cardiac patients.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. STEIGER H. P. CHARLOTTE N. C. AND LDEIKEN J. *Am Heart J* 1947 34 6/4
2. STOKES J. H. WOLFEARTH C. C. LDEIKEN J. FALK M. S. AND FORD W. T. *J. A. M. A.* 1951 147 943

Diseases of the Endocardium

Endocarditis

Endocarditis is an acute subacute or chronic disease due to an inflammatory lesion of the endocardium. It usually results in a permanent deformity of the cardiac valves.

Cases of endocarditis have been classified in different ways:

a) According to the *cause* they are divided into toxic, rheumatic and bacterial.

b) According to the *lesion* they are divided into verrucose, polypoid, ulcerative and sclerotic.

c) According to the *severity* they are divided into benign and malignant.

d) According to the *course* they may be acute, subacute or chronic.

The belief that the terms *benign rheumatic* and *verrucose* on the one hand and *malignant bacterial* and *ulcerative* on the other may be interchangeable is common. In most of the cases this is correct, but it is by no means always so.

Benign Endocarditis

A benign endocarditis is one which usually has a favorable course.

CAUSE

Benign endocarditis may occur during the course of different acute diseases such as diphtheria, scarlet fever, pneumonia, gonorrhea, typhoid fever and grippe. An even milder form may be present during tuberculosis or chronic pyogenic infections. Lastly, syphilis should be mentioned because an extension of the infective process from the aorta to the aortic valves is common. In some of these cases there is a direct localiza-

tion of the main agent of the disease, in others of associated germs.

The endocardial lesion also may be caused by toxins. Experimental studies have shown the possibility of causing valvular lesions by injecting bacterial toxins or foreign proteins and even through starvation and autolysis. This may explain the accidental finding of slight valvular lesions without any apparent cause. However, all these possible causes are of secondary importance in comparison with the most frequent of all rheumatic disease.

As already pointed out (page 190) a rheumatic endocarditis is admitted in cases where a definite and complete clinical picture of rheumatic disease is present in the history. It is also known that the same lesion occurs in many cases with the history of chorea, scarlet fever, erysipelas, streptococcal sore throat and even diphtheria. In most of these cases the endocarditis is not caused by the *Streptococcus* or the diphtheria bacillus but is due to either the more complex relationship between *Streptococcus* and rheumatic disease (page 189) or an associated lesion. Cases of rheumatic endocarditis without any history of acute disease are frequently encountered.

LESIONS

The most frequent localization of the lesion in the valves of the left heart led to the belief that the mechanical element plays an important role as these valves are submitted to a much more severe strain than those of the right heart. In general the first attack of rheumatic disease causes a lesion of the mitral valve with or without a similar lesion of the aortic valves. On the

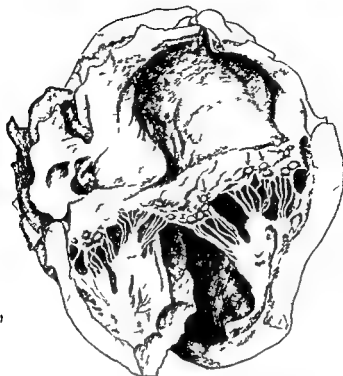


FIG. 111 The verrucae in rheumatic endocarditis

contrary benign endocarditis due to the *Pneumococcus*, *Gonococcus* or *Staphylococcus* has a greater tendency to cause a lesion of the aortic valve first.

Whenever a greater strain is applied to the valves of the right heart they become the preferred seat of endocarditis. This applies primarily to patients who already have mitral valve lesions with a higher than normal pressure in the pulmonary circulation, as well as to newborn babies and patients with congenital malformations of the heart. The latter may not only present inflammation of the cardiac valves but also of the communicating orifices or of the ductus arteriosus. In general the tricuspid is a more common site of localization than the pulmonic valve.

Rheumatic endocarditis is typically accompanied by the production of *verrucae*. These are usually present along the free margin of the leaflets but they may invade the entire valvular surface (Fig. 111) as well

as the parietal septal and papillary endocardium.

The first stage is represented by redness and swelling of the valves; the second, by the production of minute granulations, the *verrucae* which gradually become firmer and more resistant; and the third stage by the formation of scar tissue which deforms and retracts the valves and may even narrow the valvular openings.

The *verruca* is formed over an initial necrosis of the endothelium by exudation of coagulable fluid and the development of a mass which forms like a minute thrombus (1). However a proliferation of inflammatory cells in the subendocardial tissue seems to precede the superficial changes. Aschoff bodies have been found in the valves (page 108).

Subendothelial fibrous plaques and endocardial fibrosis of the left atrium are considered signs of previous rheumatic endocarditis (2).

Nonrheumatic endocarditis may have the verrucose type. However it may cause a mild inflammation with swelling and redness of the endocardium without any formation of verrucae. When the acute stage is over *fibrosis of the valves and of the septal endocardium* remains. If thickening and shortening of the cusps result it may be difficult to distinguish the process from that caused by rheumatic disease. Fibrosis of the parietal and chordal endocardium may be followed by shortening of one or more chordae tendineae causing valvular insufficiency.

Tuberculous endocarditis (rare) may produce miliary tubercles with or without ulceration. Simple fibrosis of the endocardium caused by tubercular toxins is frequent.

Syphilitic endocarditis often causes an adhesion of the cusp ends of the aortic valve against the aortic wall resulting in valvular insufficiency. The fibrosis which follows the acute process may extend to the medial cusp of the mitral causing insufficiency of that valve.

The process of *scarring* of all types of benign endocarditis results in the *fibrosis* of the tissues previously involved. This is a frequent cause of valvular defects. Fibrosis is usually accompanied by the production of minute vesels in the valves which may further favor lesions caused by bacteria. Fibrosis may be followed by *calcification*.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

There are no definite signs of the endocardial lesion in its early stage most of those previously described being signs of *carditis* in general. It is possible that a certain *dulness of the 1st sound* and a *soft systolic murmur* are due to edema and inflammation of the mitral valve however myocarditis and ventricular dilatation may produce the same result.

In cases of rheumatic disease these signs of carditis will be sufficient for admitting the existence of endocarditis as a prob-

ability. In other cases on the contrary, it will be necessary to follow the case further before accepting the evidence. A *prolonged and loud systolic murmur* persisting after the acute stage of the disease is the proof that there has been an endocarditis.

TREATMENT

Treatment of benign endocarditis is the same as that of the basic disease. That of rheumatic disease has been discussed previously (page 198).

Bacterial Endocarditis (Malignant Endocarditis)

Malignant endocarditis is almost always caused by bacteria. Therefore malignant and bacterial endocarditis have become synonymous even if the identification is not always exact.

Acute Bacterial Endocarditis

CAUSE

A variety of bacteria may be the cause of this type of disease. The most common is *Streptococcus hemolyticus* but different other strains of *Streptococci* (occasionally including *S. viridans*) have been found. The *Pneumococcus*, *Meningococcus*, *Staphylococcus* are possible agents; other bacteria may cause this disease.

Malignant endocarditis is often due to an association of bacteria. Among them the possibility of an acute streptococcal endocarditis in patients with rheumatic disease should always be considered.

Acute malignant endocarditis may follow puerperal sepsis, carbuncle, pulmonary abscess, osteomyelitis, purulent cholangitis, meningitis or pneumonia. It may occur during acute miliary tuberculosis. In a few cases due to various bacteria and in most of those due to nonhemolytic streptococci no febrile illness precedes the endocarditis which seems to appear suddenly.

LESIONS

The typical lesion of acute malignant endocarditis consists of rapidly formed



FIG. 112. Acute bacterial endocarditis. 1 polypose formation on a valve. 2 ulceration of a valve.

valvular ulcerations. The initial stage of congestion and edema may last only a few hours and is immediately followed by a process of necrosis and ulceration. There may be formation of *soft vegetations* (fig. 112) which soon soften and slough off forming numerous small *emboli*. The necrosis first causes a depression and later a *valvular aneurysm*. When this breaks perforation of the valve takes place. Sudden *breaking of chordae tendineae* may be due to the same process. *perforation of the ventricular septum* may occur as the result of acute purulent myocarditis.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The patients present the signs of a severe *sepsis*. They also complain of *palpitation*, *dyspnea*, *precordial pain* and a *smothering feeling*. The *pulse is weak* and may be *irregular* as the result of myocardial lesions. The heart is dilated. Auscultation reveals rapid changes in the findings. *The heart sounds become dull and weak and murmurs appear*.

The appearance of both *mitral* and *tricuspid systolic murmurs* is very frequent.

Aortic or pulmonic diastolic murmurs also occur often. These murmurs may change from hour to hour, now soft then harsh, later musical now brief then prolonged. A murmur due to stenosis of one valve may appear then disappear again owing to the softening and splitting of a mass which obstructed a valvular opening. *Breaking of a valve or rupture of a chorda* may be a

further cause of valvular defects revealed by *auscultation*.

Small hemorrhagic petechiae may appear having a greater frequency on the palms of the hands and on the soles of the feet.

Janeway lesions. These are small erythematous and partially hemorrhagic areas which occur mostly on the palms, the soles and the tips of the fingers and toes. They have no gray center and are not tender. They are from 1 to 4 mm in diameter and blanch on pressure.

CLINICAL TYPES

Two types have been described.

Pseudo typhoid type. The initial stage may simulate typhoid fever. Meteorism, vomiting, diarrhea and abdominal pain are among the first symptoms. The fever presents wide oscillations and there is *chill*. The pulse is rapid, irregular and unstable. There is severe *dyspnea*. *The liver and spleen are enlarged*. There may be *erythema*. There is severe anemia (often hemolytic anemia) and high grade leukocytosis.

Pyohemic type. This type starts suddenly. The fever is typical of the purulent infections. The patient is delirious or confused. There may be signs of meningeal involvement. There is acute glomerulonephritis. The heart is enlarged, the liver and spleen are very large. *Multiple metastatic abscesses* are formed because of purulent emboli which originate from the cardiac valves. *Arteritis* and *phlebitis* are common. *Stin*

embolisms are frequent hemorrhagic petechiae are formed with a gray center the embolus. They are usually tender.

Several other varieties exist having greater or lesser severity of the above described signs. Among the possible complications perforation of the cardiac septa is worthy of mention.

An important type is that occurring in the aged where the course is often fulminating and the diagnosis is often obscure because of the patient's prostration (5).

DIAGNOSIS

The general diagnosis of sepsis is easy and is confirmed by positive blood culture. The recognition of loud variable cardiac murmurs (among them a diastolic aortic murmur frequently appears) and the occurrence of embolic phenomena are fundamental in the diagnosis of acute malignant endocarditis. This diagnosis should not be made without a positive blood culture and the typical cardiac findings.

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis was constantly unfavorable until the development of chemotherapy led to the cure of some cases. It is still serious.

TREATMENT

The only effective methods of treatment are with the sulfonamides or with penicillin and other antibiotics. They may prevent the occurrence of endocarditis if given during pneumonia meningitis or erysipelas. If they are given during endocarditis they may cure the patients if the treatment is initiated early and continued without interruption until the results are attained. The dose of penicillin varies from 300,000 to 1 or 2 million units every 24 hours.

Cases of bacterial endocarditis caused by organisms which are not affected by penicillin should be treated by means of streptomycin or other antibiotics.

Blood transfusions may be helpful.

The diet should be bland as with any acute infectious disease (Diet I).

Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis (Endocarditis Lenta—Disease of Osler Libman 6, 7)

The division of bacterial endocarditis into acute and subacute has been criticized (8) on the basis that the same germs may cause both types. It is the author's view that a clinical separation is still justified.

CAUSE

The great majority of cases is caused by nonhemolytic Streptococci of either the alpha (*S. viridans*) or the gamma (*S. an hemolyticus*) variety. Some cases are due to the Hemophilus influenzae, Gonococcus Meningococcus germs of the Brucella group and others. The Enterococcus is not exceptional the others are very rare. Last infection by higher organisms (Monilia Leptothrix Actinomyces, Histoplasma) must be mentioned. Their reported incidence is increasing (10).

MODE OF ORIGIN

This type of endocarditis almost always occurs in patients already having valvular lesions or congenital abnormalities. The most frequent occurrence is in patients with rheumatic heart disease and mitral or aortic lesions. Congenital defects are frequently involved with localization on the valves on the rim of a septal opening or in the patent ductus.¹⁰ Syphilitic lesions of the aortic valves may predispose to subacute bacterial endocarditis. Arteriosclerotic atherosclerosis may occasionally become the seat of the endocarditis (11-13).

¹⁰ In this latter case the name of subacute bacterial arteritis is justified as well as in the cases where the germs are localized in an arteriovenous aneurysm.

The incidence of subacute bacterial endocarditis in congenital lesions is the following (12):

	per cent
Ventricular septal defect	42
Patent ductus arteriosus	28.6
Pulmonary stenosis	19
Bicuspid aortic valve	17.4
Syndrom of Fallot	12.5

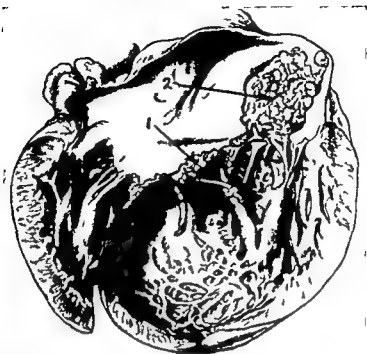


FIG 113 Subacute bacterial endocarditis. Active lesions over the mitral valve (1) and in the posterior wall of the left atrium (2) (Courtesy of Dr E Libman)

The germs may be present in some focus (tonsils teeth etc) and may enter the blood stream after a surgical intervention (frequently after removal of a diseased tooth) *No localization on the endocardium occurs however without a previous lesion*. Simultaneous occurrence of new rheumatic lesions in the course of subacute bacterial endocarditis may occur (3 8)

The old endocardial lesions seem to predispose the tissues to bacterial implantation on the one hand by providing suitable means for reaching the deep structures of the valves (newly formed vessels toxic and degenerative processes) and on the other hand by increasing the strain and stress on the valves (9)

LESIONS

The most important lesion is constituted by *soft polypoid vegetations* on the valves the parietal endocardium and occasionally the large arteries (congenital defects) They

are greenish or grayish friable at first firmer later. They are larger than rheumatic vegetations and occasionally may determine *ulceration perforation or rupture* of either the valves or the chordae (fig 113)

The vegetations are composed of fibrin blood elements platelets and bacteria. The latter frequently are adherent to the surface of the vegetations. Early in the course of the disease embolic fragmentation of the valves occurs.

Infarcts are encountered frequently in visceral organs (pleen kidneys brain) and are seen more rarely in the lungs (except with congenital defects where they are more common). Minute and multiple emboli frequently are transported to the brain kidneys pleen retina and skin frequently occurring in shower like episodes. *Arteritis* and *capillaritis* are frequent. The former leads to the formation of aneurysms and is often due to penetration of the germs into the *intima vasorum*.

The healing process occurs first in the deeper portions of the lesion and causes a characteristic spongy aspect (9)

Myocardial lesions are far more frequent and extensive than previously thought (13, 14 42 43) Miliary infarcts and interstitial and perivascular infiltrates or scars are the most common findings

The most constant renal lesion is *focal glomerulonephritis* described by Loehlein (16) This is due to endothelial lesions followed by thrombosis of minute vessels Diffuse glomerulonephritis and larger infarctions are not uncommon

In conclusion the pathologic changes of subacute bacterial endocarditis consist of

1) Development of soft vegetations on previously damaged valves or congenital defects

2) Dissemination of minute bacterial emboli into both the lesser and the greater circulations

3) Occasional transportation of massive emboli with gross infarctions

4) Various inflammatory changes depending upon the particular response of the organ or tissue involved

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

The onset of the disease is usually *slow and insidious* The patient is known as a rule to be a cardiac and the first manifestations consisting of *weakness fatigue and vague pains* may not be observed However if they are noticed and the temperature is taken, *fever* is discovered Occasionally a *sudden onset* with sharp increase in temperature and possibly *chill* is observed Headache abdominal pain vertigo urinary symptoms dyspnea palpitation or precordial pain may be present at the beginning

Once the disease is established the most frequent symptoms and signs may be grouped under general embolic and cardiac (7b)

1) *General symptoms* They are due to toxemia *Fever* is a constant feature It may

be irregularly remittent or intermittent It is usually low at first, higher later It may present slow undulations disappearing at times for one or two weeks then becoming higher It may simulate malaria or brucellosis *Chills* are not constant but may occur *Profuse sweating* is constant when the temperature has sharp oscillations *Progressive anemia* is also constant It is usually an hypochromic anemia due both to hemolysis and poor regeneration There is a moderate *leucocytosis* (occasionally *leucopenia*) with *monocytosis* *Weakness*, *breathlessness* and *exhaustion* are caused by anemia *toxemia* and fever *Nausea* and *vomiting* may occur, *loss of appetite* is practically constant *Diffuse pains tenderness of the sternum* and *joint pains* are common

2) *Multiple symptoms caused by either embolism or local inflammation* These symptoms are extremely variable owing to the variety of vessels and organs which may be affected There may be blocking of either large or small arteries The capillaries may be affected by embolism or by local inflammation Embolism may cause weakness or paralysis of an extremity hemiplegia visual disturbances and pulmonary myocardial splenic or renal infarctions *Albuminuria* and microscopic or gross hematuria may be seen

3) *Cardiac signs and symptoms* These are due to the underlying valvular defects or congenital abnormalities and to the superimposed vegetations *Cardiac enlargement* is frequent *Cardiac murmurs* are present since the onset because of the already present valvular lesions The murmurs will be modified

a) By addition of *myocardial murmurs* due to the anemia with secondary cardiac dilatation

b) By addition of *new valvular murmurs* due to the vegetations and perforations of the valves (both regurgitation and stenosis of a valve may gradually appear)

Atrial fibrillation is rare but less so than previously thought (34) *Heart block* is rare

and occurs only when a concomitant myocarditis with involvement of the septum is present

Some of the clinical signs deserve further mention

Pallor of the skin and mucous membranes is constant. It is less apparent when the patient is cyanotic

Clubbing of the fingers and toes is frequent but not constant. It is very significant if it appears during the course of the disease but has no meaning when present before the onset (possible congenital cardiac defects). Clubbing may recede if the patient recovers or enters the bacteria-free stage (7b)

Elechia with or without a pale yellowish center are commonly seen. They may be present in the conjunctivae on the fundus or on the palate. They may be isolated or occur in showers. They are easily caused by artificially raising the venous and capillary pressure

Oster nodes. These nodes occur in about one half of the cases; they are small raised red lesions often of the size of a pea which are observed mostly on the fingertips under the nails or on the soles of the feet. They are always tender and disappear after 4 to 5 days usually without suppuration (*false whitlows*). The latter however may occur if there is bacterial association (7b). These nodes which have been attributed to embolization may be also the result of inflammation possibly toxic or allergic (17)

Janeway lesions. These are small erythematous and partially hemorrhagic lesions of 1 to 4 mm in size which may be macular or papular in character. They occur mostly on the palms, the soles and the tips of the fingers and toes. They are present occasionally over the extremities and trunk. These lesions are never tender or painful

Enlargement of the liver and spleen is constant; that of the latter more so than that of the former

LABORATORY FINDINGS

Electrocardiogram

There usually is *sinus rhythm*. A *prolongation of the P-R interval* reaching from 0.21" to 0.36" has been described in about 15 per cent of the cases (7b). It is possible however that this may have been caused by a concomitant rheumatic carditis (8). *Pre-mature beats* are present at times

Phonocardiogram

This gives the tracings of the different murmurs. It may be useful for obtaining objective evidence of the changes occurring from day to day

X-ray

The X-ray reveals the changes in size of the heart and in general the results of both the underlying original lesions and the new valvular defects

Blood

Red cell counts are often between 3 and 3.5 million, *hemoglobin* between 60 and 70 per cent. *White cell counts* are variable. They show a moderate leucocytosis at times but leucopenia has been encountered. The highest white cell counts are present with visceral infarction. A high polymorphonuclear count is present in cases with leucocytosis; a high lymphocyte count in those with leucopenia. Sometimes the blood contains large histiocytes or endothelial cells and their number is increased by rubbing the ear before taking the blood

The *sedimentation rate* is usually accelerated in the active stage of the disease

Blood culture. Blood cultures repeatedly made are usually positive in the *active stage* and negative in the *bacteria-free stage*. They reveal *S. viridans* in about 90 per cent of the cases; other germs in the others. Attention should be paid to the possibility of fungi which are likely to be interpreted as due to faulty technique

The *Wassermann test* has been found positive in some cases of subacute bacterial endocarditis without septicemia

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The disease may pass spontaneously into a *quiescent stage* in which the blood does not contain bacteria (*bacteria free stage of Libman*) and the cardiac lesions are healing. The patients then may show evidence of great improvement but they may still suffer from cardiac and renal insufficiency, progressive anemia, embolic accidents or vascular aneurysms. If no effective treatment has been undertaken and the patient survives the disease may return to an *active stage* and follow its course to the fatal end.

Spontaneous recovery is rare but possible.

The chief complications are due to embolism and infarction of different organs. Myocardial and pulmonary infarction are not common; splenic infarction on the other hand is very frequent. *Heart failure* is frequent.

Active rheumatic disease is a possible complication (8). Bacterial endocarditis may reactivate the rheumatic process or may occur during active rheumatic disease. Tender and swollen joints, epistaxis, atrial fibrillation or prolonged P R interval may be evidence of active rheumatic disease when present during subacute bacterial endocarditis.

The anemia may become a complication in itself if severe and untreated. *Pneumonia* is favored by the weakness of the patient. *Ball valve thrombus* of the left atrium has been described (page 214).

VARIETIES

Among the various clinical pictures one is caused by subacute bacterial endocarditis confined to the right side of the heart or the pulmonary artery (44). *Ptechiae* and systemic embolism are rare in such cases while pulmonary embolism is a common occurrence.

DIAGNOSIS

As the early symptoms of the disease are extremely varied in type, subacute

bacterial endocarditis may simulate many other diseases such as grippe, pulmonary tuberculosis, rheumatic disease, typhoid fever, malaria, heart failure, subphrenic abscess, gastric carcinoma, acute appendicitis, meningitis, undulant fever, or leukemia. The diagnosis will be particularly difficult in the aged and in those patients with cardiac symptoms and signs which are either mild or of difficult interpretation.

Differential diagnosis between subacute bacterial endocarditis and other types of endocarditis is always necessary. *Rheumatic endocarditis* is only one manifestation of a widespread disease, myocardial and joint signs are often present, blood culture is negative. In *acute bacterial endocarditis* an extensive primary lesion like osteomyelitis, erysipelas or pneumonia is often present.

In *subacute bacterial endocarditis* the symptoms are due to the endocardial involvement or its complications while the primary focus is usually insignificant or obscure. The diagnosis in difficult cases is aided by the result of blood cultures in the *active stages*.

The diagnosis in the *bacteria free stages* is suggested whenever a patient with valvular defects presents one of the following features: renal insufficiency, severe progressive anemia, multiple emboli, severe splenomegaly or clubbing of the fingers.

PROGNOSIS

Owing to the small percentage of recovery, the prognosis has been invariably unfavorable until the progress of chemotherapy permitted a definite modification of the course. It should be kept in mind that often these patients die through renal or cardiac failure even after subsidence of the infection.

TREATMENT

The difficulty in the treatment of this disease is demonstrated by the great number of drugs and biologicals (tried with varying degrees of success) since its first description.

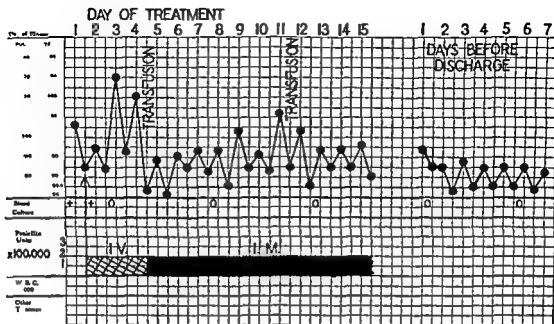


FIG. 114 Chart of a case of subacute bacterial endocarditis treated with penicillin (From Bloomfield and co workers (33) courtesy of the authors and of J. Clin. Investigation.)

A definite step was made with the *heparin sulfonamide* treatment which increased the number of recoveries to about 6 per cent (18-19).

The next step was the *penicillin treatment* which is of great utility (21-23). Penicillin should be given in adequate dosage (from 1 to 20 million units daily) the larger doses being reserved for the most resistant cases. Treatment will be continued for about 1 month then repeated with a higher dosage if blood sterility is not obtained (fig. 114).

Experience has shown that *penicillin* is almost always bactericidal. *Streptomycin* seems to reinforce its action. Therefore penicillin streptomycin treatment succeeds in many penicillin resistant cases - *tetracycline*, *Chloromycetin* and *Terramycin* are bacteriostatic in the average doses while they become bactericidal if used in massive doses (seldom tolerated) or in combination with *streptomycin*. Enterococcal endocarditis is usually cured by *tetracycline plus Terramycin*. In the other types treatment with

bacteriostatic agents should be followed by *penicillin streptomycin* therapy. Penicillin streptomycin combined therapy seems to be effective even in a 2 week period of treatment whenever the agent is sensitive to penicillin.

If the active agent of the disease is unaffected by penicillin aureomycin or streptomycin, *emetin* or *neoarsphenamine* (higher organisms) should be tried.

The possibility of a combined rheumatic and bacterial endocarditis should be kept in mind in such cases. *penicillin treatment* should be followed by *cortisone* or *aspirin* (page 198). Cortisone should not precede penicillin.

Demonstration that surgical or dental interventions in cardiac patients may lead to occurrence of subacute bacterial endocarditis (page 207) advises the systematic use of either sulfonamides or penicillin before during and after such procedures. This will prevent a large percentage of infections even if some of them still seem beyond prophylaxis.

It is probable that a large majority of the patients can be saved the inevitable percentage of fatalities is due to cardiac or renal failure and to irreversible cerebral lesions. However early treatment may decrease the number of the complications. If cardiac failure occurs the patient should be treated as any other patient in failure.

Administration of large doses of vitamin C (67) may be of great help in view of the importance of this vitamin in healing wounds and its frequent deficiency in prolonged infections. Blood transfusions may be necessary in many cases. Iron therapy will be of use in cases with severe anemia.

A high caloric and high vitamin diet will be given (Diet II) in order to increase the resistance of the patient.

Libman Sacks' Disease

This disease once confused with bacterial endocarditis is actually the result of a systemic lupus erythematosus and is considered a collagen disease (37-40).

LESIONS

Diffuse or focal fibrinous pericarditis occurs frequently. It may result in fibrous pericardial and pleuropericardial adhesions. The endocardium is the site of a nonbacterial verrucous endocarditis which may attack all four valves. The verrucae are frequently found all over the surface of the leaflets as well as over the chordae valve rings valve pockets and the parietal endocardium. The valvulitis is characterized by severe fibrinoid degeneration of the collagen fibers accompanied by necrosis and severe exudation. This leads to formation of granular basophilic masses the so called hematoxylin bodies. No bacteria can be found in the valves. A similar milder type of degeneration can be found in the myocardium. A peculiar type of perivascular fibrosis can be found in the spleen. The kidneys are the site of severe lesions with endothelial proliferation in the glomerular capillaries and the so called wire loop le-

sions. Pulmonary and neurological lesions may be observed. Skin lesions may be present including the typical butterfly pattern on the face.

CLINICAL PICTURE

The clinical picture is similar to that of subacute bacterial endocarditis but no bacteria can be demonstrated in the blood. The blood count reveals leukopenia, thrombopenia and hypochromic anemia.

TREATMENT

Treatment with cortisone or ACTH has brought temporary remissions in several cases and occasional cure. Treatment with sulfadiazine may prevent secondary infections. Exposure to strong light and to sun should be prevented.

Chronic Endocarditis—Endocardial and Valvular Sclerosis—Valvular Calcification

Endocarditis of the benign type may be so mild and so slow in its course as to be completely unobserved. This applies not only to rheumatic endocarditis but also to that caused by bacteria of low virulence and to that caused by syphilis. The latter may be localized on either the parietal or the valvular endocardium without previous aortic localization (24-25). Mild inflammation of the valves has been encountered during chronic sepsis or chronic nephritis. It is likely that the valvular lesion is often due to the action of bacterial toxins and metabolic wastes and not to direct localization of germ.

Endocardial sclerosis is found in one of the most commonly fatal diseases of infancy. The cause of this sclerosis is unknown and it is likely that the endocardial lesion which involves also one or more valves is only a part of the picture. There is good evidence proving that the endocardial sclerosis is the result of extensive subendocardial sclerosis due to coronary insufficiency (page 415). Cardiac enlargement, cyanosis, dyspnea, tachycardia, cough and vomiting

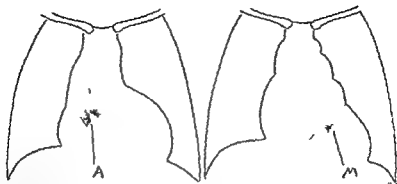


FIG. 115 Calcification of the aortic (A) and mitral (M) valves in two different cases (frontal view) (from Menendes de Oliveira)

are common. Cardiac murmurs are atypical and inconsistent and there is no diagnostic electrocardiographic pattern. The patients die with evidence of circulatory failure.

Chronic endocardial fibrosis seems to be rather common in Central Africa. People presenting this lesion usually die in late maturity or early senility. Is myocardial and coronary lesions are also found it might be that the entire picture is due to coronary heart disease.

Valvular sclerosis is the process by which the cardiac valves are thickened by fibrous connective tissue without too serious deformity. This may be caused by a mild endocarditis as described above, by tubercular toxins, or by a degenerative process without any preceding active inflammation.

Atherosclerosis is a very common cause of valvular sclerosis in the aged. The typical manifestations of this process are (page 526) degenerative processes, atheromata, calcification and even secondary thrombosis. The most common localization is on the aortic and mitral valves. More or less serious valvular defects may result.

Calcification of the cardiac valves is not a rare occurrence and may be due to either previous endocarditis or atherosclerosis. Its most frequent localization is in the mitral and aortic valves. The calcifications appear at the points of greater functional strain, such as the lines of insertion of the valves and then spread to the surrounding struc-

tures. The seat of predilection is the posterior part of the mitral ring (26). Diagnosis of the calcifications during life may be made by means of x-ray (fig. 115). The differentiation between calcification of the posterior semilunar valve or posterior part of the aortic ring and calcification of the ring or anterior valve of the mitral may be difficult. However in the left anterior oblique the anterior mitral valve is a little under and behind the aortic valve (26). Purely atherosclerotic lesions rarely cause valvular disturbances of the mitral valve, still they cause occasional mitral insufficiency and possibly slight mitral stenosis. They may cause severe aortic stenosis (calcific aortic stenosis—page 250).

Anomalies of the Endocardium

Many congenital anomalies of the cardiac valves will be described in the following two chapters devoted to valvular diseases.

Anomalous chordae have been described in many instances forming a system of fine tendinous threads attached to the lower border of the atrial septum to the tricuspid valve and to the right wall of the right atrium. They constitute Chiari's network and may cause loud murmurs and occasionally favor intracardiac thrombosis. They are probably due to remnants of the right venous valve of the fetus (27-29).

Endocardial polyps (pseudo valves) have been found in cases with valvular defects.

in the upper part of the left ventricle near the apex or in the left atrium (27-28). They resemble folds of endocardium and are favored by the abnormally regurgitating blood caused by valvular insufficiency. Their presence may decrease the severity of regurgitation.

Rupture of Mitral Chordae Tendineae

This lesion may be caused by bacterial endocarditis, rheumatic heart disease, myocardial infarction or severe trauma on the chest. Its cause is obscure in some cases (30).

Rupture of the chordae is suggested by the sudden appearance of a loud systolic murmur maximal at the apex and in the 3rd left interspace and accompanied by a thrill. The complete picture of mitral regurgitation develops within a short time. Congestive failure may develop only after several months or years or may be abrupt and severe.

Differential diagnosis includes the rupture of a valvular cusp, rupture of a papillary muscle and perforation of the interventricular septum. The last occurrence produces a murmur directed toward the right (page 284) and no enlargement of the left atrium. Rupture of a papillary muscle has the most serious effects.

Cardiac Thrombosis

Cardiac thrombosis is the formation of firm blood clots adhering to the wall of one of the cardiac chambers.

ATRIAL THROMBOSIS

The most typical thrombi occur in the atria. Thrombosis of the left atrium is common in mitral stenosis and insufficiency, especially when there is aneurysm of the atrium, atrial fibrillation or heart failure.

The atrial thrombus is a globular body, either adherent to the cardiac wall or pedunculated and freely moving (ball thrombus). It may vary from the size of a walnut to that of an egg. A gradual fibrous trans-

formation with penetration of vessels and connective tissue proliferation usually takes place in the adherent thrombi. Fibromyxosarcomas of the endocardium are probably due to transformation of thrombi. Pedunculated thrombi have also been called cardiac polyps.

A lesion of the endocardium is usually the ultimate cause of blood clotting in the atria but this is favored by slow circulation by the extreme dilation of one of the cardiac chambers (aneurysm) and by the weak or absent contraction of their walls (atrial fibrillation).

Thrombosis of the left atrium may be so extensive as to cause obstruction of a large part of the chamber. Sometimes a large clot leaves the wall and nearly occludes the mitral orifice. Terrific dyspnea, precordial pain, extreme pallor and violent and irregular pulsation of the heart with impalpable pulse are the typical signs of this picture which is usually fatal.

A ball thrombus may cause repeated and transitory occlusions of the mitral orifice (more rarely of the tricuspid) without being able to pass through owing to its size (fig. 116). Apart from being the cause of multiple emboli, a ball thrombus may cause a typical picture: dyspnea, pallor and cyanosis, precordial pain and impalpable pulse. The supine position sometimes determines disocclusion of the mitral orifice and sudden improvement.

Not only calcified thrombi but also soft mural thrombi can be recognized under certain conditions by means of x-ray. Undue prominence of the left atrial appendage is frequently due to thrombosis of its wall (41).

Nonembolic peripheral vascular phenomena may occur. They consist of symmetrical ischemia of the legs of all four extremities, the tip of the nose and the ears. They seem to be caused by severe arteriolar constriction and may lead to gangrene (32-36).

A thin pedunculated thrombus may hang through the mitral valve and cause both valvular insufficiency and regurgitation.

The murmurs resulting from this occurrence may be so loud as to keep the patient awake and even to disturb people sleeping in the same room.

VENTRICULAR THROMBOSIS

Mural thrombosis of the ventricular cavity is a frequent complication of myocardial infarction (page 427). Thrombi are usually large and are easily dislodged by the vigorous ventricular contractions. As a result peripheral embolism is a possible complication.

Tumors of the Endocardium

LESIONS

Endocardial tumors may be *primary* or *secondary*. The most common primary tumor is the *fibromyxosarcoma* (31). This is more frequently observed in the left heart and the most common localization is in the *fovea ovalis* of the left atrium. These tumors may be the result of a previous thrombosis; they may be pedunculated or ball like; they may cause valvular occlusion or compression of the coronary arteries. They usually cause paroxysmal attacks often resulting in death.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The patients usually have the clinical picture of congestive failure and they suddenly present one of the following paroxysmal attacks:

- Fainting
- Paroxysmal dyspnea with wheezing and noisy respiration simulating bronchial asthma or mediastinal tumors
- Pulmonary edema
- Anginal pain
- Acute atrial fibrillation or acute a.v. block
- Acute suffocation relieved by the supine position

Examination of the heart reveals a large precordial dulness. Auscultation reveals soft systolic murmurs due to functional insufficiency of the mitral and tricuspid valves or *bi-aortic* murmurs as in no other heart disease.



FIG. 116 Scheme of a ball thrombus occluding the mitral orifice.

Blood pressure may be normal and even high but drops suddenly to the lowest levels compatible with life during the attacks.

The *electrocardiogram* is often normal but it may present persistent deviation of the S-T segment because of pericarditis or compression of the coronary arteries. Acute atrial fibrillation or acute heart block may be present.

Peripheral embolism due to minute parts of the tumor is not uncommon.

COURSE

The course is inevitably progressive as sooner or later the fatality is determined by occlusion of one of the valves by the tumor. One third of the patients die suddenly (31). Others have a longer course with *ice cold extremities* (occasionally associated with gangrene), *extreme cyanosis* and *small or impalpable pulse* (32).

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is possible when a patient having no recognizable valvular coronary or myocardial lesion presents a typical picture as described above. At times the knowledge of a primary tumor in another organ may lead to the correct diagnosis.

Histological study of a peripheral embolus may be of help (33).

The paroxysmal attacks which are alleviated by the supine position are absolutely typical and in contrast to the frequent orthopnea of the cardiac patients. Still they

may be caused by a pedunculated tumor or a pedunculated thrombus or a ball thrombus. Cardiac thrombo is usually occurs in patients with a long cardiac history while cardiac tumors are found more usually in patients without cardiac precedents. On the other hand a fibromyosarcoma may be due to transformation of an old thrombus.

TREATMENT

Surgical removal of endocardial tumors has been suggested but seldom attempted (35).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 SACKS B. *Am Heart J* 1936 1 750
- 2 MACCALLUM W. G. J. A. M. A. 1925 84 1545 Also KOLETSKY S. *Am Heart J* 1945 29 730
- 3 WHITE I. D. *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1944
- 4 a) KEEPER C. G. AND CO WORKERS J. A. M. A. 1913 122 1217
- b) CATALDO R. J. *Ann Int Med* 1946 24 473
- 5 ZEMAN F. D. AND SHEPPARD S. *Am Heart J* 1945 29 597
- 6 OSLER W. *Brit M J* 1885 1 467 522 577 and 607 also *Quart J Med* 1908-09 2 219
- a) LIBMAN E. *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 1906 17 218
- b) LIBMAN E. AND FRIEDBERG C. H. *Sub acute Bacterial Endocarditis* New York Oxford Univ Press 1941
- 8 KELSON S. R. AND WHITE P. D. *Ann Int Med* 1945 22 40
- 9 GROSS L. AND CO WORKERS. *Arch Int Med* 1936 88 620 Also *Am J Pathol* 1937 18 709
- 10 BRAMER R. REINHARD E. H. AND GOODOFF I. I. *Am Heart J* 1945 29 99
- 11 WILLIAMS F. A. *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 1910 15 270 and 1944 19 497
- 12 GELFMAN B. AND LEVINE S. A. *Am J M Sci* 1947 204 374
- 13 CLAWSON B. J. *Arch Int Med* 1924 33 157
- 14 BUCHBINDER W. C. AND SAPHIR O. *Arch Int Med* 1939 64 336
- 15 ZEMAN F. D. *Am Heart J* 1945 29 661
- 16 LOEWLIN M. *Med Klin* 1910 6 375
- 17 MERKLEN I. AND WOLF M. *Presse Méd* 1928 36 97
- 18 KELSON S. AND WHITE P. D. J. A. M. A. 1939 113 1700
- 19 LEACH C. I. AND CO WORKERS J. A. M. A. 1911 117 1315
- 20 KEEPER C. G. AND CO WORKERS J. A. M. A. 1913 122 1217
- 21 LOEWE L. *Bull New York Acad Med* 1915 21 59
- 22 DAWSON M. H. AND HUNTER T. H. J. A. M. A. 1915 127 129
- 23 BLOOMFIELD A. L. J. *Clin Investigation* 1915 24 251
- 24 BRIN L. AND GIROUX L. *La Syphilis du Cœur et de l'Artère* PARIS Doin 1924
- 25 CALLAVARDIN L. AND CHARVET Quoted by BRIN AND GIROUX
- 26 a) MENENDEZ DE OLIVEIRA R. *Escleroses Valvulares Calcificadas* Rio de Janeiro Tip do Iatronato 1913
- b) FERTMAN M. H. AND WOLFF L. *Am Heart J* 1946 31 580
- 27 COSTA A. *Clin Med Ital* 1930 88 572
- 28 YATER W. M. *Arch Path* 1929 7 418
- 29 a) ABBOTT M. E. *Congenital Heart Disease* In Nelson's Loose Leaf Medicine 4th Ed New York Nelson 1944
- b) ABBOTT M. A. *Atlas of Congenital Cardiac Disease* Am Heart Assoc New York 1936
- 30 BAILEY O. T. AND HICKAM J. H. *Am Heart J* 1944 28 575
- 31 DAVID J. M. AND SACHS J. *Am Heart J* 1943 26 385
- 2 FISHBERG A. M. *Heart Failure* Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1940
- 33 BLOOMFIELD A. L. ARMSTRONG C. D. AND KIRBY W. M. M. J. *Clin Investigation* 1945 24 251
- 34 McDONALD R. K. *Am Heart J* 1946 31 308
- 35 MAJAHM I. *Les Tumeurs et les Polypes du Cœur* PARIS Masson 1915
- 36 a) EVANS M. F. *Brit Heart J* 1948 10 34
- b) EVANS M. F. AND BENSON R. *Brit Heart J* 1948 10 39
- 37 LIBMAN E. AND SACKS B. *Arch Int Med* 1924 33 701
- 38 KLEMPERER I. POLIACK A. D. AND BAHRER G. *Arch Path* 1941 32 569
- 39 GROU S. I. Vol in honor of Dr I. Libman New York Internat Press 1942
- 40 BUCKENSTON A. H. *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clinic* 1950 27 412
- 41 ARENDT J. AND CARDON L. *Radiology* 1949 53 371
- 42 SAPHIR O. KATZ L. N. AND CORF I. *Circ* 1950 1 1155
- 43 FERRY L. I. FLEMING R. G. AND EDWARD J. I. *Ann Int Med* 1957 36 176
- 44 BARKER F. S. *Meet Am Heart Assoc* 1918

The Valvular Defects of the Left Heart

Mitral Insufficiency

Mitral insufficiency occurs when the left atrioventricular valve is incompetent and does not prevent regurgitation of blood during ventricular contraction. This causes adaptations and changes both in the heart and in other organs especially the lungs.

CAUSE

Different causes may lead to mitral insufficiency.

a) *Rheumatic endocarditis*: This is the most common cause of mitral insufficiency.

b) *Bacterial endocarditis*: A mild lesion due to the toxins of different germs and occasionally to their localization on the mitral valve may be the cause of mitral insufficiency. Among them different *Strepto* and *Staphylococci*, *Pneumococci*, *Gonococci* and *E. typhi* have been described. A malignant bacterial endocarditis may also cause insufficiency at times by perforation of a leaflet or rupture of a chorda.

c) *Syphilitic endocarditis*: This is usually due to the spreading of inflammation from the aortic to the mitral valve.

d) *Atherosclerosis*: This is a process of fibrosis which may be localized primarily on the mitral or spread from the aortic valve.

e) *Coronary heart disease*: Myocardial infarction may be followed by rupture of a chorda tendinea or even of a papillary muscle causing mitral regurgitation of sudden appearance.

LESIONS

Mitral insufficiency is a common valvular lesion alone or in combination with others.

Different types of lesions may cause regurgitation. The most common is a *retraction*

of the leaflets which causes an imperfect adaptation of their margins (rheumatic endocarditis). There may be *ulceration* or *fragmentation* of the leaflets (malignant bacterial endocarditis). There may be *calcification* and even *ossification* of the valve (both in endocarditic and atherosclerotic types). There may be *shortening of one or more chordae* without lesion of the leaflets (septal and chordal endocarditis) and there may be *rupture* of one of them (bacterial endocarditis, myocardial infarction, old rheumatic lesions).

Both the left atrium and the left ventricle are dilated and their walls are hypertrophied. The right ventricle usually is not affected until late in the disease. The vessels of the pulmonary circulation are distended and have thickened walls.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Mitral insufficiency can be tolerated for a long time without any symptoms. However, prolonged effort may be followed by symptoms which are evidence of pulmonary congestion and left heart strain: *dyspnea*, *cough*, *precordial oppression*, *palpitation*. *Dysphagia* may be caused by left atrial enlargement. Physical exercise is followed by dyspnea and a rapid pulse. *The pulse is often of small amplitude*. Other symptoms if present are evidence of initial heart failure: pain in the upper right abdominal quadrant, dependent edema, obstinate cough, attacks of nocturnal dyspnea. The patient may present a slight *cyanosis*.

Local Signs

The jugular veins may be slightly distended and often present active pulsations.



FIG. 117 Changes of the heart in mitral insufficiency

There may be a *precordial bulge* (mainly in children)

The *apical thrust* easily visible and sudden in the 5th or 6th left interspace. At times when exceptional hypertrophy of the left ventricle is present a massive movement of the precordium toward the left may be observed (1). Multiple pulsations in different inter spaces are often present especially in children. Among them pulsation in the 2nd left interspace is the most common. A systolic pulsation of the right side of the chest has been observed in cases complicated by incipient dilatation of the left atrium (1b).

Inspection reveals a practically normal heart in the initial stages. Later an *enlarged heart* is found (fig. 118).

Auscultation. In initial or slight mitral insufficiency the first sound becomes prolonged blowing and impure at the apex. If regurgitation is more severe a *blowing soft systolic murmur* is heard. This starts after the first sound has its maximum in intensity at the apex and is heard clearly at the left axilla. The murmur may be *musical* *harsh* or resemble the cry of a sea gull. The latter is more common when there is either calcification of the mitral valve or a vibrating broken chord. When the murmur is very loud it can be heard all over the precordium and the back.

A *systolic murmur* may be present at the

pulmonic area. This murmur is encountered most easily in the initial stages of the disease. It should be considered as a functional murmur caused by the distention of the pulmonary artery.

BLOOD PRESSURE

It is common to observe a slightly low systolic and normal (or slightly high) diastolic pressure. Normal (or even slightly high) systolic pressure is present in some cases.

The pressure in the *tibial artery* is usually equal to or lower than that in the brachial

GRAPHIC RECORDS

Electrocardiogram

Increased voltage of the ventricular complex in the limb and chest leads is not unusual. *Left axis deviation* may be noted when ever the left ventricle is enlarged thus QRS has waves mainly directed upwards in aVL and in I downwards in aVT and 3. a qP complex is noted in the chest leads V4 to V6. If the left ventricle is markedly hypertrophied (as in advanced cases) some degree of broadening of the complex is present. Left ventricular strain revealed by inverted T in aVL 1 and the chest leads V5-V6 may occur. The P wave is frequently tall notched or diphasic as a result of left atrial enlargement. The PR interval may be slightly prolonged reaching from 0.20 to 0.21 second as a result of an old rheumatic lesion of the conducting system. Atrial fibrillation is frequent especially if the patient is in failure or has been digitalized for several years.

Phonocardiogram

In initial or slight insufficiency a simple *prolongation of the central phase of the first sound* is present. Later the vibrations of the first sound continue during the first half of systole with decreasing intensity. When mitral insufficiency is established three types of murmurs can be recorded (fig. 119).

1) A *systolic murmur* with gradually de-

creasing vibrations both high and low pitched. This systolic murmur *in decrescendo* is the most common finding.

2) A systolic murmur which continues throughout all systole with the same intensity. The vibrations are mostly high pitched (oft murmur). This *all systolic murmur* is less common and is found mostly in children.

3) A *late systolic murmur* with increasing intensity before the second sound. This systolic murmur *in crescendo* is rare.

The first high vibration of the first sound complex may be high (*closing snap of the mitral valve*). The second high vibration of the second sound complex may become more visible and high pitched (*opening snap of the mitral valve*). This phenomenon however is already evidence of a more severe damage to the valve and possibly of initial stenosis.

One of the diastolic sounds (third sound, fourth sound) or both may become high. When only one of them is loud, auscultation reveals a *triple rhythm* (fig. 119a). When both are loud a *diastolic rumble* may be heard (fig. 120b). An incorrect diagnosis of mitral stenosis may be made in such cases upon clinical auscultation. This is more common in children but also is frequently observed in adults.

Tracings recorded over the pulmonary artery may show a distinct *systolic murmur* and a *loud or split second sound*.

Apex Cardiogram

The low frequency tracing of the apex often shows the following changes: quick rise followed by sudden drop before the end of the first sound complex; low level of the point 2b; at times high waves during diastole (both the waves 3 and 4 are high) (fig. 120b).

Low frequency tracings recorded outside the apex (regional cardiograms) show 1) high atrial wave 4 over the midprecordium (strong left atrial contraction) and 2) high vascular wave p at the 2nd left inter-space (high pulmonary pulsation).

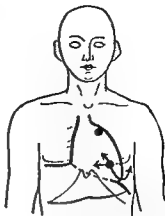


Fig. 119 Cardiac dullness and transmission of the murmur in mitral insufficiency

Electrokymogram

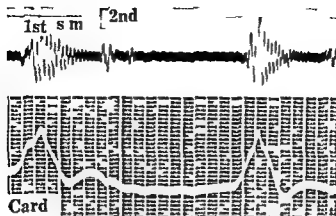
This tracing is of primary importance for diagnosis. The electrokymogram should be recorded as a *border tracing of the left atrial appendage* and of the *posterior border of the left atrium* in both oblique positions (p. 148) and in one of the lateral positions. A densogram of the left atrium can also be recorded in certain cases.

The normal tracings of the left atrium consist of a sharp negative wave in presystole (inward motion caused by atrial contraction) and a more rounded negative wave in systole (inward motion caused by lowering of the a-v septum, only partly compensated by venous flow into the atrium). In cases of mitral insufficiency a new pattern is visible.

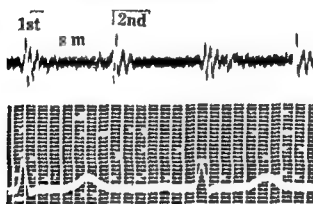
1) The presystolic negative wave is deeper and broader (unless there is atrial fibrillation) on account of stronger atrial contraction.

2) The systolic negative wave has disappeared and is substituted by a *positive plateau*. There is a rapid rise in early systole at sharp angle, a straight or concave line in systole, another sharp angle, then a rapid drop after the opening of the mitral valve (fig. 121).

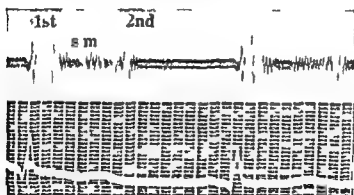
The systolic plateau is the graphic expression of a *systolic swelling* of the left atrium during ventricular systole caused by the



a



b



c

FIG 119 Systolic murmur in three cases of mitral valve disease with pre dominant regurgitation (phonocardiograms) a systolic murmur in decrescendo b soft continuous systolic murmur in crescendo c systolic murmur in crescendo

blood which regurgitates from the left ventricle. It is similar to a tracing of intraventricular pressure and quite different from the normal pattern (fig 122)

The various stages of insufficiency from the slightest degree to the severe regurgitation are revealed by successive substitution of the plateau for the normal systolic trough

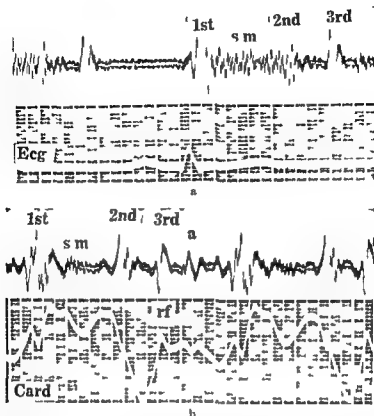


FIG 170 a 1 phonocardiogram of mitral regurgitation. Long and loud systolic murmur. Ventricular type of triple rhythm. b 1 phonocardiogram (above) and 1 low frequency tracing (below) at the apex in a case of mitral regurgitation. Faint systolic murmur (sm); loud diastolic sounds (3rd a) creating a quadruple rhythm.

(fig 123). It is likely though not proven that this indicates a moderate regurgitation. The existence of this diagnostic pattern which had been previously detected by roentgenkymography was demonstrated by the author with Fleischner (70) and confirmed by various other researchers.

Esophagocardiogram

This tracing recorded at the level of the left atrium shows a typical pattern. This consists of a high positive plateau which replaces the normal negative wave present during ventricular systole. This pattern is particularly typical if the tracing is recorded by an electromanometer esophagopiezogram (80). The importance of this tracing is decreased by the ease of recording an elec-

trokymogram and the typical pattern revealed by that method. However an esophagocardiogram can be studied if one lacks an electrokymograph.

X RAY

Increased size of the left ventricle is apparent in the frontal view (fig 124). The oblique positions show an increase in size of the left atrial shadow which tends to be confused with the shadow of the spine. There is a displacement of the esophagus toward the right. *The left atrium expands in systole.*

In some cases the left atrium is so dilated as to be visible on the right side of the right atrium in the frontal position (*aneurysm of the left atrium*, page 394). The right ventricle and the pulmonary artery may be dilated

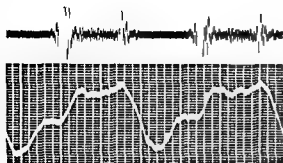


FIG 121 Electrolymogram of left atrium (border tracing) in a case of mitral regurgitation. Left oblique position

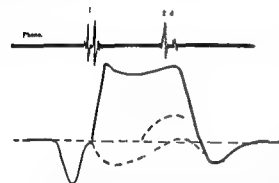


FIG 122 Sketch of the tracing of the left atrium in a case of mitral lesion with sinus rhythm. The thin dotted line represents the arbitrary baseline. The heavy dotted line indicates normal tracings during ventricular systole. (From Lussada and Fleischner. *Am J Med*.)

but less than the left sections of the heart. The hilar shadows are thicker than usual but present normal pulsations. The dilated left atrium may cause transmitted systolic pulsations of the right hilum (6) and the right bronchus (7).

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

Mitral insufficiency has a notable importance. It may be isolated or associated to mitral stenosis. As revealed by electrolymographic tracings of the left atrium and by animal experimentation it causes backflow of an important mass of blood into the left atrium during ventricular systole.

In experiments with models of the circulation insufficiency of the mitral valve causes both a rise of the mean pressure of the left

atrium and a drop of the mean arterial pressure. An artificial increase of the ventricular stroke reestablishes normal conditions (9a).

In animal experimentation, insufficiency of the mitral valve causes little change in arterial pressure, rise of left atrial pressure and no increase in the pressure of the pulmonary artery (9a). The left ventricle compensates later by restoring the systolic discharge to normal.

Mechanical tracings in animals (9a) and electrolymograms recorded over the left atrial border in man indicate that the regurgitation of blood is slight during the tension period and occurs mainly during systolic ejection. The amount of backflow is limited by the rapid development of pressure. If the myocardium is impaired the rise in pressure occurs more slowly and the effects are more serious. The backflow taking place during ventricular systole first causes dilatation of the left atrium, then hypertrophy of its wall. Both of these factors increase the power of the atrium which sends a greater amount of blood to the ventricle in presystole. This will cause dilatation of the left ventricle and hypertrophy of its wall. The backflow causes increased pressure in the left atrium and in the pulmonary veins.

The systolic murmur is caused by the stream of blood regurgitating into the atrium. Whether the murmur is due to the whirlpools of the stream or to the vibrations of the wall is still a moot question. While the murmur is a common occurrence, regurgitation may occur even without a systolic murmur as revealed by electrolymography (70).

Increased pressure and distention of the pulmonary artery taking place in the early stages cause the pulmonic systolic murmur (relative stenosis or trigonodilation—page 179) and the loud or split 2nd sound over the pulmonic area. These findings usually disappear later.

The increased atrial pressure and the stronger atrial contraction cause the loud diastolic sounds frequently recorded.

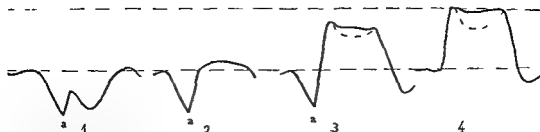


FIG 173 Schematic tracings of the left atrium in mitral lesions 1 normal 2 initial neutralization of systolic collapse 3 sinus rhythm positive systolic plateau no trace of atrial activity (From Luisada and Fleischner Am J Med)



FIG 124 X-ray configuration of the heart in mitral insufficiency Frontal and left anterior oblique positions (From Benedetti and Bollini)

The dilatation of the pulmonary veins and the anastomoses between pulmonic and bronchial circulation explain the frequent bronchial catarrh. When the pulmonary circulation is enlarged some degree of cyanosis may occur.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

Mitral insufficiency rheumatic in origin is frequently followed by mitral stenosis. It is therefore the first stage of a progressive disease which is liable to become more severe. If however many years have passed since the beginning of the valvular defect and no stenosis can be ascertained this is less likely to occur unless a new attack of rheumatic disease takes place.

Mitral insufficiency of nonrheumatic nature is seldom accompanied by stenosis and bears no danger of increased severity through recurrence of endocarditis.

Chronic distention of the left atrium causes fibrosis of its wall. This on the one hand favors atrial fibrillation or flutter and on the other a further distention with possible formation of an aneurysm of the left atrium (65). These complications favor thrombosis of the left atrium and possible formation of a ball thrombus (page 214).

Distention of the left atrium may cause compression of the left recurrent nerve and of branches of the azygos vein. If the membrane occluding the foramen ovale is not firm the increased pressure in the left atrium may cause its rupture with a clinical picture similar to Lutembacher's syndrome (page 301).

Bacterial endocarditis may be favored by the valvular lesion.

Heart failure is a possible occurrence and presents a typical picture (page 263).

Cases where the insufficiency is caused by

rupture of one of the chordae present sudden onset of the signs and symptoms. Heart failure may be insidious or abrupt in its onset and progressive or remittent in its course. Months and even years may elapse between rupture and the onset of frank heart failure (10).

DIAGNOSIS

The two fundamental signs on which the diagnosis should be based are 1) *The apical systolic murmur* and 2) *the systolic expansion of the left atrium* both caused by the regurgitation of blood. The first can be investigated by auscultation and phonocardiography, the second by fluoroscopy, esophagocardiography and electrokymography.

If the data supplied by the latter methods are not available or are not clear the murmur becomes even more important. The typical area of auscultation, the radiation of the murmur and the increased intensity of the 2nd pulmonic sound are evidence of an actual regurgitation of blood and not of an inconspicuous or unimportant murmur. A history of rheumatic attacks is also important.

Inter septal defect. The murmur of an inter ventricular septal defect is harsh, is accompanied by a thrill, is loudest in the 3rd left interspace and is well transmitted toward the right but not too well toward the apex. There is no enlargement and no systolic expansion of the left atrium (roentgenkymogram, electrokymogram) (page 284).

Aortic stenosis. The heart is more elongated in aortic stenosis than in mitral insufficiency. The murmur is of maximum intensity over the 2nd right interspace and is transmitted to the suprasternal notch (12) and along the carotid arteries. The pulse is typical. The murmur has a different appearance on phonocardiograms (page 200).

Mitral stenosis. The exclusion of a pure mitral stenosis is easy as the latter has no systolic murmur. The exclusion of a double mitral defect is sometimes more difficult. The x ray, auscultation, phonocardiography

and electrocardiography are of help in the diagnosis (page 235).

VARIETIES

The picture given by *rupture of one of the chordae* consists of the sudden appearance of a loud systolic murmur and thrill, maximal at the apex and at the left sternal border (10) (page 214). Bacterial endocarditis, myocardial infarction and rheumatic heart disease are possible causes. Differential diagnosis includes perforation of the inter ventricular septum (page 284) and rupture of either a cusp or a papillary muscle.

The *rupture of a papillary muscle* is rare and is usually followed by immediate death. Occasional longer survival may permit diagnosis. This is based on the sudden occurrence of a loud, rough, harsh systolic murmur over the apex and mid precordium associated with the clinical picture of myocardial infarction (page 419).

TREATMENT

If mitral insufficiency is due to old rheumatic disease and is well compensated no treatment is necessary. Avoidance of physical strain and moderation in the quantity of food and drink are good precautions. If the patient complains of palpitation or presents premature beats, *bromides* (32), *quinidine* (24) or *phenobarbital* (29) are indicated.

If rheumatic disease is recent the patient should be kept under observation for possible prevention and treatment of new episodes (page 190) and also because mitral stenosis may still develop. Congestive failure and atrial fibrillation are possible complications and should receive the necessary treatment (pages 363 and 343).

Surgical repair of severe mitral insufficiency has been tried (76). The earlier attempts were based on the creation of a *new valve* of the *slit* or *hammock* type made of pericardium, vein or tendon. Better results were obtained by the creation of a *pedicle tube graft* of pericardium with intact blood supply. Further experiments were based on

the passing of a loop of thread around the chordae in an attempt to reduce the size of the valvular opening or on implantation of a plastic valve. So far surgical therapy of mitral insufficiency is unsatisfactory.

Relative Mitral Insufficiency

The closure of the mitral opening is perfect only if both the ventricle and the atrium are capable of an effective contraction and if the atrial contraction precedes the ventricular. Therefore mitral insufficiency may be present: a) In myocarditis and myocardial infarction b) In heart failure vitamin B deficiency hypertensive heart and anemia c) In toxic conditions (icterus) d) In heart block and in different types of premature beats.

Thyrocardiac or patients with acute anemia may have an *apical systolic murmur*. This murmur may be due to a muscular weakness as described above or may be caused by a different mechanism which does not include blood regurgitation (pages 88 and 178).

In general the murmur of relative mitral insufficiency is *soft* and not very long; it is clearly heard at the apex and is transmitted toward the axilla only to a limited extent; there are no signs of increased pressure in the pulmonary circulation. It is customary to say that this murmur disappears after physical exercise but this is seldom true.

In general the electrocardiogram is normal or reflects changes caused by coronary or hypertensive heart disease or by lesions of other valves.

The phonocardiogram presents a series of high pitched vibrations of poor amplitude during systole. There may be no real systolic murmur while the first sound is prolonged. There may be accentuation of the low pitched vibrations caused by vascular distention which are frequently found in normal subjects and represent the last phase of the first sound (page 91).

The electrokymogram of the left atrium may be entirely normal. However if the

functional disorder causes an actual and important regurgitation of blood the typical pattern of regurgitation (plateau) may be present.

Mitral Stenosis¹

Mitral stenosis is a narrowing of the left ventricular orifice. This causes compensations and adaptations in different parts of the cardiovascular apparatus and in extra cardiac organs.

CAUSE

a) The most usual cause of mitral stenosis is *rheumatic endocarditis*. Mitral stenosis is caused by *benign nonrheumatic endocarditis* is theoretically possible but not proven.

b) *Bacterial endocarditis* may cause mitral stenosis. The cases were rare in the past but are increasing in number.

c) *Congenital mitral stenosis* is possible but rare. Many cases once labelled as congenital are due to fetal or infantile endocarditis. However this is often a mild inflammatory process which while causing slight deformity of the leaflets prevents a normal development of the valvular opening. Therefore some aspects may be similar to those of a congenital lesion.

d) *Sudden obstruction* of the mitral valve may be due to a thrombus, polyp or myxoma of the left atrium (page 214).

e) In elderly patients *fibrosis or calcification* of the mitral annulus may cause mitral stenosis. This process which is due to atherosclerosis is independent of aortic calcification of the Moenchberg type (81). It may be associated to a V block (66). It may be part of a general process of *calcification of the heart* including the pericardium (67).

LESION

Mitral stenosis is a common valvular defect following in frequency mitral and aortic regurgitation. It is seen somewhat more often in females.

¹ This disease was described by *Duroziez* who attributed it to a congenital lesion.



FIG 125 Changes of the heart in mitral stenosis

818

The problem of whether 'pure' mitral stenosis exists has been discussed repeatedly. There is no doubt that in some hearts the opening is narrowed while the valves are completely competent. However this is not the rule. The most typical cases present a small opening at the end of a funnel which is caused by the fusion of the two leaflets and projects into the left ventricle (fig 126). The opening may be round or oval and is far smaller than normal. Sometimes the entire atrioventricular orifice is smaller than average.

In typical cases the left ventricle is either normal or small. The cardiac apex is then formed by the right ventricle which pushes the left backwards. Both the left atrium and the right ventricle are severely dilated and have thick walls. The left atrium may occasionally reach the size of a fetus head. Mural thrombi are often present in the left atrial cavity, occasionally also in the right.

A fibrotic process is often seen in the posterior aspect of the left atrium (body of Mac Callum). This process may occasionally become calcified.

The pulmonary artery is dilated and has a thickened wall. It may present atherosclerosis. The branches of the pulmonary artery and the pulmonary veins are distended and have thick, sometimes sclerotic walls.

Pulmonary, splenic, and renal infarctions are frequent.

Most organs present the customary appearance of chronic stasis. Among them chronic pulmonary congestion and chronic pulmonary edema are usually observed.

Large varicosities are frequently observed in the bronchial veins (fig 127).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Mitral stenosis is often well tolerated for a long time and may be discovered by chance or because circulatory embarrassment arises during pregnancy or after strenuous exercise.

Mitral stenosis is a disease of the young. Nevertheless greater numbers are discovered in the aged. While many of them acquired the disease in the second half of their life, some patients over 70 had mitral stenosis since adolescence.

Infantilism or dwarfism (mitral dwarfism) may be seen in cases of congenital nature or early onset.

The first revealing symptoms usually follow emotion, exercise, pregnancy, or acute infections. They are dyspnea, palpitation, weakness, and precordial pain. The pain is occasionally located in the back at the left of the spine, but is localized more often in the precordium. It may be described as a smooth, ereing feeling or a sticking pain.

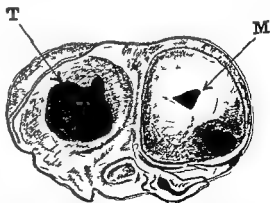


FIG 126 Section of the heart in mitral stenosis. Narrowing of the mitral valve (M) and dilatation of the tricuspid valve (T). (Inspired by originals of P. D. White.)

The patients often complain of *obstinate dry cough* or *bronchial catarrh*. *Hemorrhagic sputum* and even *abundant hemoptysis* are not unusual. *Difficulty in swallowing* and *changes of the voice* may occur.

At some stage *nocturnal dyspnea* and or *thopnea* occur. *pitting edema* is present and pain is felt in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen. *Itchiness* and *oliguria* then complete the picture of heart failure.

These patients are moderately *cyanotic*. The cyanosis is present typically on the lips, nosetip and earlobes (*facies mitralica*). It may be accentuated at the extremities (*acro cyanosis*) and associated with low skin temperature. Some patients however are pale and give the impression of being anemic.

The radial pulse is *small* and is frequently irregular. The *jugular veins* are slightly distended and show visible pulsations.

There may be *dysphonia* due to paralysis of the left recurrent nerve (*Ortner sign*). This disturbance which is due to compression of the nerve by the large left atrium is sometimes reversible.

Local Signs

If the disease has been acquired in early childhood a typical *precordial bulge* is present. There may be small venous dilatations over the precordium.

The *apical thrust* may be displaced to the left; it may be replaced by a diffuse pulsation, multiple pulsations or an *inward thrust of the apex* (1). There may be a *forward thrust of the lower part of the sternum* or of the *epigastrium*.

On palpation a snap at the end of systole may be distinguished over the second left interspace. In the most typical finding the *apical thrust* is followed by a snap (*Cossio's sign*). This is due to the fact that the closure of the mitral valve is delayed and is not simultaneous with the thrust as in normal people (2).

A *diastolic thrill* may be felt over the 4th interspace and at the apex.

Percussion shows that the cardiac apex

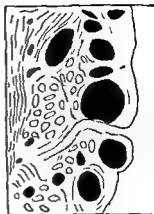


FIG 127 Varicosities of the bronchial veins (black circles) in severe mitral stenosis. (Inspired by originals of Ferguson.)

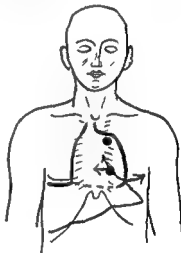


FIG 128 Cardiac dullness and transmission of

murmurs in mitral stenosis.

is often in the normal seat. There is a typical dullness in the 3rd left interspace. Cardiac dullness starts far more to the right than with the normal heart. A median heart with a large transverse diameter and a broad base is frequently observed (*coeur en sabot*) (fig 128).

Auscultation may reveal a *diastolic rumble* a *presystolic murmur* in crescendo ending with a loud first sound or both. It is possible to hear a *loud snapping sound* after the 2nd sound and no murmurs.

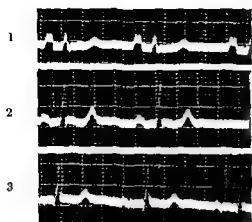


FIG. 129. Electrocardiogram in mitral stenosis. Long P-R, notched P, right axis shift.

A presystolic murmur alone is heard when the diastolic rumble is absent or low pitched (and therefore inaudible). A diastolic rumble alone is the rule whenever atrial fibrillation prevents the possibility of a coordinated contraction of the atria.

The loud snapping diastolic sound is the opening snap of the mitral valve described by Polain (13). It is audible all over the precordium and is well separated from the 2nd sound. It is due to a creaking noise made by the mitral valve at the time of its opening.

The 2nd pulmonic sound is usually loud and may be split. There may be a systolic pulmonic murmur of functional nature. A soft diastolic murmur of functional nature may be occasionally heard at the pulmonic area (Graham Steell murmur (14)).

A systolic murmur at the apex indicates mitral insufficiency.

BLOOD PRESSURE

Blood pressure may be normal, high or low.

High blood pressure is found more often in middle aged or elderly people because of association with renal or vascular lesions. However, hypertension may be temporary, resulting from latent heart failure (anoxemia, stimulation of the vasomotor center).

Low blood pressure is common when mitral

stenosis is acquired in infancy. Severe mitral stenosis may cause low blood pressure with low pulse pressure.

There is a relative hypotension in the legs.

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram

Several changes may be observed (fig. 129).

1) High diphasic or notched P wave in the limb leads. Diphasic P in V₁ and V₂.

2) A prolonged P-R interval (0.21-0.24 second).

3) Right axis deviation revealed by comparing aVL with aVF or lead I with lead 3.

4) A shift of the transitional zone in the chest leads revealing that the right ventricle forms all of the anterior portion of the heart and even the apex (rS complex in V₁ to V₅).

5) Possible right bundle branch block or intraventricular block.

6) Possible disturbances of the rhythm consisting of atrial premature contractions, atrial flutter or fibrillation, paroxysmal atrial tachycardia or ventricular tachycardia.

Phonocardiogram

The findings vary with different auscultatory signs and over different areas.

1) There may be a presystolic murmur in crescendo at the apex. This reveals itself by a series of oscillations in late diastole which then increase in intensity and fuse with the 1st sound (fig. 130b and c). If the conduction time is long the presystolic murmur may be separated from the first sound and loses its crescendo type. In extreme prolongation of conduction this murmur may even fall in early diastole. This murmur disappears if there is atrial fibrillation.

2) There may be a rumbling diastolic murmur, also at the apex. This is revealed by a series of irregular and low pitched vibrations (fig. 130a, b, d). They start some time after the main oscillation of the second

sound complex with a small but rapid vibration (the opening snap of the mitral valve) they continue until mid-diastole or late diastole with decreasing intensity and then disappear. There may be a pause between this murmur and the presystolic murmur if diastole is long. If on the contrary diastole is short the diastolic murmur continues and fuses with the presystolic murmur. A loud sound equivalent to a gallop sound may be recognized within the murmur if the stenosis is not severe.

3) The *opening snap of the mitral valve* (fig. 130d) is a typical vibration which alone is sufficient to diagnose a lesion of the mitral valve and probably mitral stenosis. It is a rapid vibration which is separated from the main vibration of the second sound complex by an interval of from 0.08 to 0.12 second. The interval is of variable length from cycle to cycle if there is atrial fibrillation (74). The snap is frequently followed by diastolic vibrations but it may be isolated. It is recorded best at the midprecordium. It should be distinguished both from the physiologic opening sound of the mitral valve and from the third sound (or gallop sound) (fig. 131). It coincides with the point 2b of the cardiogram and with the *s* wave of the jugular tracing (if the latter is not delayed). It may be recorded over a large area of the chest at times even outside the precordium.

4) It is common to observe the vibrations of a *systolic murmur over the pulmonic area*. There frequently is a *split second sound* (fig. 131). The distance between the two phases of this split sound varies from 0.04 to 0.08 second. Very seldom is the splitting audible when the interval is below 0.06.

5) There may be an early diastolic murmur in decrescendo at the pulmonic area due to pulmonic insufficiency (*Graham Steell murmur*). This murmur is usually of short duration appearing only during congestive failure. A persistent murmur indicates sclerotic or endocarditic pulmonic insufficiency. An aortic diastolic murmur re-

corded in this region is of course extremely common.

When atrial fibrillation is present the interval between QRS of the electrocardiogram and the main vibration of the 1st sound complex may vary, becoming longer when the preceding diastole is short on account of delayed mitral valve closure. Thus the interval between QRS and the first high vibration of the first sound may become variable (15, 16, 74).

When no audible murmur exists either there is no murmur (rare) or there are low pitched inaudible vibrations during diastole (*subsonic murmur*). In both cases the murmur may appear or become audible after exercise.

Cardiogram

The low frequency tracing of the apex (*apex cardiogram*) may reveal the following phenomena:

1) Slow rise of the tracing during the tension period with a delay of the peak 1a (delayed closure of the mitral valve).

2) Slow descent of the tracing after the point 2a (delayed opening of the mitral valve) and a slow rise afterwards (slow filling in early diastole) (fig. 130b).

3) Small or absent atrial wave (difficult filling of the left ventricle).

The low frequency tracing of the second left interspace (*regional cardiogram*) often reveals a high systolic wave (large pulsation of the pulmonary artery). That recorded over the third left interspace may present a high atrial wave (large pulsation of the left atrium).

Epigastric Tracing

The epigastric tracing frequently shows a high atrial wave (large pulsation of the right atrium) and a high systolic pulsation (strong contraction of the right ventricle).

Electrokymogram

The electrokymogram of the left atrium frequently reveals the typical pattern of

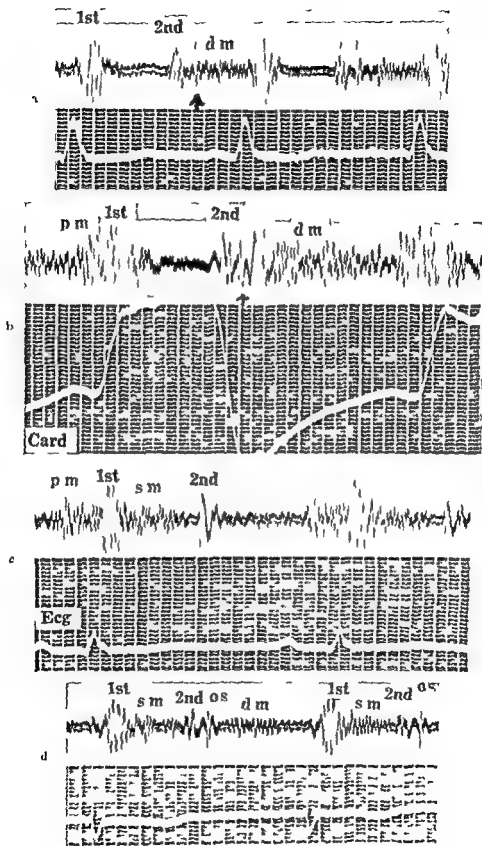


FIG. 130

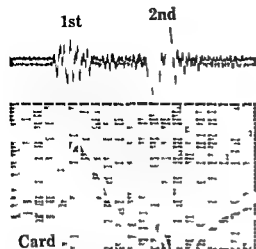


FIG 131 Phonocardiogram and low frequency tracing of the apex in mitral stenosis. Phonocardiogram and low frequency tracing of the apex in mitral stenosis.

mitral regurgitation (p 219) even in cases where no systolic murmur was heard or recorded. However cases of pure mitral stenosis may not present it. The stenosis of the mitral valve is frequently revealed by a small notched or prolonged atrial wave in presystole. If there is atrial fibrillation the presystolic atrial wave disappears.

Cardiomanometry

Catheterization of the right heart reveals that the pressure of the right ventricle, pulmonary artery and pulmonary capillaries is frequently increased. This is due to the narrowing of the mitral valve plus structural changes of the arteriole and frequently also pulmonary vasoconstriction. Average values for the pulmonary artery are 33/16 in patients without heart failure and 69/34 in patients with failure. These values should be compared with the normal average figures of 20/9. Direct re-

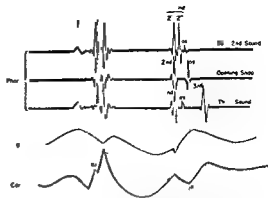


FIG 132 Differential diagnosis between first and second pulmonary sound. The phonocardiogram and low frequency tracing of the apex are used for identification of the additional sound in early diastole.

cording of pressure in the left atrium before commissurotomy has revealed normal or slightly elevated diastolic pressures and systolic pressures of 25-30 mm Hg resulting from the insufficiency of the mitral valve. Evaluation of the mitral area and of the regurgitant flow has been attempted on the basis of data supplied by cardiomanometry.

X RAY

The typical aspect of the cardiac shadow is that of a silhouette with increased transverse diameter and a reduced length of the left ventricular arch. The right ventricle is loaded. The middle arch is bulging. The apex is rounded (fig 133).

The anterior development of the right ventricle is apparent chiefly in the lateral positions. The left atrium is very large so that its shadow is confused with that of the spine in the oblique positions. It may be

FIG 133 Cases of mitral stenosis. Phonocardiogram at apex and electrocardiogram. Atrial fibrillation. Opening snap of the mitral valve (os). Diastolic rumble. Phonocardiogram and low frequency tracing (Card) at apex. Sinus rhythm. Opening snap of the mitral valve (os). Diastolic presystolic murmur. Slow filling of the left ventricle in early diastole. Phonocardiogram at apex and electrocardiogram. Sinus rhythm. Presystolic murmur (pm) and diastolic murmur (sm). Phonocardiogram at apex and electrocardiogram. Atrial fibrillation. Systolic murmur (sm) opening snap (os) diastolic murmur (dm).

in mitral configuration and in displacing the pulmonary artery (23) upwards and anteriorly

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

In simple circulation models the production of a severe mitral stenosis causes decreased systolic discharge, reduction in arterial pressure, accumulation of blood in the left atrium and its tributary veins and increase of the mean pressure of the pulmonary artery (9a). Animal experimentation confirms these facts. The reduction of the mean aortic pressure and of the pulse pressure is then gradually compensated by higher atrial pressure and stronger atrial contractions as well as by prolonged ventricular filling.

The results of narrowing of the mitral valve are felt mainly in the left atrium in the pulmonary circulation and in the right ventricle. The chambers involved dilate and present a gradual hypertrophy of their walls. A similar process occurs in the pulmonary vessels.

As the normal filling of the ventricles takes place mainly during two phases: early diastole (passive rapid filling) and pre-systole (atrial contraction) blood passing through the narrow orifice will create both a thrill and a murmur in those two phases.

If atrial fibrillation exists the presystolic murmur disappears.

When the efficiency of the heart muscle is good the amount of blood reaching the left ventricle is normal or subnormal and the size of the other heart chambers is limited. Thus the murmur may be reduced to a few low pitched vibrations or even disappear. This occurs at times after digitalization.

When a *systolic murmur* exists it is due to associated mitral regurgitation and not to stenosis.

There are cases where in spite of the existing atrial fibrillation a presystolic murmur is heard. It is an acoustic illusion because the closure of the mitral valve is delayed (main vibration of the 1st sound) and the small initial vibrations of the 1st sound seem presystolic.

Hardening of the structures of the mitral valve and difficult ventricular filling explain the loud 1st sound (*closing snap of the mitral*) and its delay over the apical thrust. They also explain the apparent splitting of the 2nd sound (main vibration of the 2nd sound complex followed by the *opening snap of the mitral*).

Actual splitting of the 2nd sound when present is due to a nonsimultaneous closing of the semilunar valves of the aorta and the

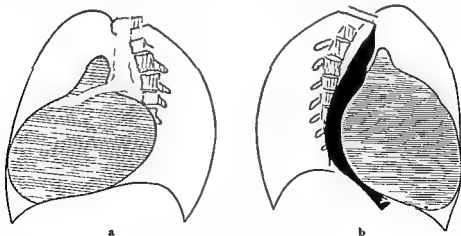


FIG. 135 Enlargement of the left atrium causing a bronchial angle above 70° with bending of the left bronchus (a) and indentation of the esophagus (b). (From COSSIO.)

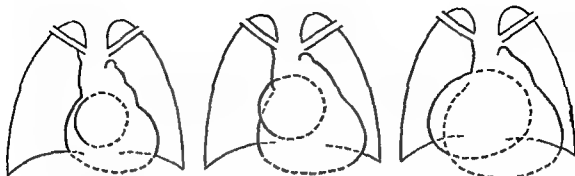


FIG. 136 Aneurysm of the left atrium in I A view. The rounded shadow due to the left atrium gradually emerges from the cardiac silhouette. (From Jaubert.)

pulmonary artery. The high pressure of the latter causes an early and snapping closure of the leaflets. A soft diastolic murmur over the pulmonary artery (*Graham Steell murmur*) is usually due to relative insufficiency and is found rarely except when heart failure is also present (14-24). If the murmur persists it has a different significance and is due to anatomical changes (pages 301 and 304).

Præcordial pain at times is due to coronary heart disease. However it is more often due to anoxia with an overworked and hypertrophied myocardium (25).

Difficulty in swallowing and changes of the voice as well as posterior pain are caused by the enlarged left atrium. This organ displaces the esophagus (*dysphagia*) compresses the left recurrent nerve (*dysphonia*) and impinges on the spine (pain).

Percussion, x-ray cardiography and phonocardiography reveal data which are due to the already described changes in the shape and function of the heart. The longer course followed by the stimulus in the left atrial wall explains why the left P wave is often delayed or abnormal. Prolongation of the P-R interval may be caused by minute scars left in the conducting tissues by rheumatic disease.

Persistent distention of the pulmonary veins and the anastomoses between them and the bronchial veins explain why recurrent bronchitis and chronic bronchial catarrh are so frequent. The hemorrhagic sputum (hemoptysis) is explained both by

the high pressure in the lung capillaries and by the frequent occurrence of varicosities in the bronchial veins (26a) (fig. 127). A process of arteriosclerosis of the pulmonary vessels may occur increasing the effects of the high pressure and further favoring the hemoptysis.

Cyanosis is partly of central type and is caused by the reduced size of the alveolar spaces (distended capillaries) and by the slower pulmonary circulation. If congestive failure occurs an important peripheral element is added.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

In some patients mitral stenosis gradually becomes more and more severe. This is due at times to the progressive course of the fibrosis and occasionally to calcification of the valve. However when many years have elapsed since the original acute stage the mitral lesion has usually reached its maximum and any further change is due to recurrence of rheumatic carditis which may be unobserved.

Any deterioration in the functional state of the myocardium causes dilatation of the left ventricle and adds *relative stenosis* to the *anatomical stenosis* by increasing the disproportion between valvular opening and left ventricular chamber. The murmurs then become louder and the general condition deteriorates.

A common cause of functional deterioration is the gradual establishment of new

valvular lesions Mitral insufficiency frequently occurs Tricuspid insufficiency and stenosis may develop Aortic insufficiency and stenosis are not rare In all such cases the general outlook is poor Another possibility is the occurrence of constrictive pericarditis which however is rare This might have a certain influence in limiting the functional adaptation of the heart

Subacute bacterial endocarditis is another dire occurrence which should be always considered

Arteriosclerosis of the pulmonary vessels is a possible complication and is favored by the high pressure of the lesser circulation

Pulmonary tuberculosis is unusual in its active type However torpid tuberculosis with exudative and fibrous evolution is not exceptional As both mitral stenosis and tuberculosis may give similar auscultatory findings in the lungs only a ray evidence of cavities or positive finding of the Koch bacillus in the sputum will be accepted as a definite proof of tuberculosis

Hemoptysis is usually moderate However in exceptional cases it may be so abundant as to be the cause of death

Thrombosis of the atrial wall is a common complication If limited in extent it does not cause mechanical obstacle otherwise it may obstruct the cavity or the valves A ball thrombus of the left atrium may be the cause of acute episodes followed by death (page 214) The thrombi are also a common source of embolism *Pulmonary infarction* is a frequent complication when the embolus starts from the right heart *Cerebral embolism* often followed by hemiplegia is also frequent when the embolus starts from the left heart

The mural thrombi may become calcified and be revealed by the x ray Slowing of the blood stream favors the formation of clots acceleration of the blood stream tends to dislodge them Once the thrombi are present in the atria and especially in the appendages they may remain silent for a long time

Aneurysm of the left atrium is not un-

common It may occasionally reach an enormous size (page 393)

Atrial fibrillation atrial flutter and ventricular tachycardia are common complications The first usually starts in coincidence with an episode of heart failure then becomes habitual and persistent

Attacks of dyspnea (cardiac asthma) are frequent *Attacks of pulmonary edema* are less common but are not exceptional especially in pregnant women (page 355)

Heart failure may start insidiously and may be revealed by slight pitting edema small areas of chronic edema of the lungs or enlargement of the liver The complete picture of congestive failure is the most typical engorgement of the large veins peripheral edema large liver transudates in the serous cavities cyanosis dyspnea and small irregular pulse

Paralysis of the left recurrent nerve is a rare complication probably due to compression of the nerve by a large left atrium or a large pulmonary artery

DIAGNOSIS

Mitral stenosis is the valvular defect which is easiest to diagnose yet may present the most difficult diagnostic problems

The clinical diagnosis is based largely upon auscultation No difficulty is present when a diastolic presystolic rumble is heard However the physician should be cautioned about the following possibilities a) The observer may hear a crescendo presystolic murmur while there is either a crescendo type or a gradually increasing pitch of the vibrations of the first sound b) There are functional diastolic rumbles which simulate mitral stenosis (page 237) In the first group of cases a phonocardiogram easily disproves mitral stenosis In the second group the phonocardiogram may indicate the truth if attention is paid to certain graphic features indicated by the author (page 244)

When only the opening snap is audible differential diagnosis should be made with a) a physiological opening sound b) a third

sound or a ventricular type of triple rhythm c) a split 2nd sound due to bundle branch block. The recognition is mainly graphic (fig 132)

The physiological opening sound has a lower pitch and is usually nearer to the main vibration of the 2nd sound complex. In the experience of the author if the extra sound is more than 0.08 from the above mentioned vibration or is small and very rapid and recorded on the whole precordium it is definitely a pathological opening snap.

Cases where there is a loud 1st sound and cases having also pulmonary emphysema or pulmonary tuberculosis may be diagnosed with the help of the x ray and of the phonocardiograph.

The cases of 'mute mitral stenosis' where no murmur is audible are often obscure only because the correct diagnosis is not considered. In many of them the graphic tracings and the x ray permit a correct diagnosis. Sound records after exercise seldom fail to reveal the murmur. However occasional cases erroneously diagnosed as bronchial asthma or chronic cor pulmonale, are still described (72).

The finding of a dilated left atrium may be important in doubtful cases but not when the whole heart is enlarged or when mitral insufficiency is also present.

Patent ductus arteriosus has a typical murmur at the base (page 290) but may have a diastolic rumble at the apex. However the left atrium is normal or only slightly enlarged there frequently is left axis deviation. The hilar shadows are dilated and pulsating but the lung fields are clearer than in mitral stenosis. Right axis deviation, prolonged P R or atrial fibrillation are in favor of mitral stenosis in doubtful cases.

Patients with arteriosclerotic or coronary heart disease or with aortic insufficiency having a large left ventricle may present a diastolic murmur due to *relative stenosis* of the mitral valve. The differential diagnosis is partly clinical and partly based on data of the phonocardiogram (page 244).

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis should be based upon the severity of the lesion, the age of the patient, the existence of associated valvular and myocardial lesions and the existence of signs of failure.

Mitral stenosis in children has a serious prognosis.

Prognosis in pregnant women will be discussed later (chapter 31). There is no doubt that maternity represents a risk in these patients even if not to the extent considered in the past.

Infections, strenuous work and irregular living may shorten the lives of these patients by causing heart failure.

The possibility of a recurrence of rheumatic disease and of bacterial endocarditis should be taken into consideration.

TREATMENT

Patients with mitral stenosis and no signs of heart failure should not be digitalized. They should be cautioned against strenuous physical exertion and excess of food, drink or stimulants. *Digitalization* may be used whenever exertion cannot be avoided or in the last stages of pregnancy (page 549).

The first signs of failure indicate the need for digitalis. Treatment will be started with the patient either in bed or at rest. When the maintenance dose of digitalis is reached and the symptoms of failure have disappeared a gradually increasing activity will be permitted. When normal activity is resumed without causing trouble digitalis may be interrupted tentatively (short periods of 1 week per month at first) and then completely discontinued.

The patient should be instructed to report if any sign or symptom reappears and not to use digitalis without medical advice. Many failures of treatment are due to indeterminate, erroneous or excessive use of digitalis.

The general rules of digitalization should be followed (chapters 32 and 36). *Mercurial diuretics* (11, 12) *ammonium chloride* (13)

or both can be used following the customary precautions and rules (chapters 32, 33 and 36) if there is peripheral edema or evidence of pulmonary congestion. *Quinidine* (24) or *pronestyl* (27) can be used if there is atrial fibrillation but not before obtaining improvement by means of digitalis. The danger of mobilizing emboli from the fibrillating atria should be considered but has been overemphasized in the past (page 332).

The diet during failure will be described later (chapter XXX and appendix I).

Surgical treatment of mitral stenosis is one of the recent conquests of cardiac surgery. Candidates for surgery are patients with no evidence of left ventricular enlargement, moderate or absent mitral regurgitation and no aortic or tricuspid defects. The best results are obtained in cases between 20 and 40 years of age who present paroxysmal attacks of dyspnea, pulmonary edema or hemoptysis. Intractable right heart failure, rheumatic activity, bacterial endocarditis and severe pulmonary arteriosclerosis are definite contraindications. Catheterization of the right heart may supply evidence of right heart failure or pulmonary arteriosclerosis. Clinical and laboratory data usually indicate the existence of other valvular defects, rheumatic carditis or bacterial endocarditis. It has been proven, however, that rheumatic myocarditis may not be revealed by general or laboratory data. Mitral regurgitation can be evaluated fairly well by means of electrokymography.

The best intervention is *commissurotomy* (71, 77). Second best is *digital dilatation* or *finger fracture* of the commissures. The mitral valve is reached through the left atrial appendage. This structure should be ligated and resected at the end of the intervention in order to limit the dangers of future embolizations. Cerebral embolism during surgery can be prevented by temporary occlusion of the carotids during digital exploration.

While other valvular defects were initially considered as a definite contraindication, reports of more complex surgical interventions suggest the possibility of operating cases with multiple valvular lesions (pages 255 and 275).

Patients presenting *multiple peripheral emboli* who are poor surgical risks can be treated by the use of *anticoagulants*. *Dicumarol* (64) has been given for several years in certain cases. The results seem good (72, 86).

Relative Mitral Stenosis

It has been proven that whenever the left ventricle is severely dilated the blood penetrating through the mitral valve creates whirlpools which cause a rumbling diastolic murmur. This murmur may be recorded by phonocardiography. It can be often differentiated from that of organic mitral stenosis because *composed of high and irregular vibrations which start rather late in diastole and are not preceded by an opening snap of the mitral valve*. These vibrations may be recorded in certain cases over a wide surface of the precordium (83) (fig. 143).

It should be kept in mind that upon auscultation the presystolic murmur of mitral stenosis may be simulated by a crescendo type of the first sound and by triple rhythms or other abnormal cadences (73, 83).

Double Mitral Defect

The double mitral defect is the association of mitral insufficiency with mitral stenosis and is undoubtedly common. Theoretically, nearly all cases of mitral defects of rheumatic nature are double defects. However, in cases in which one of the two lesions is greatly predominant the diagnosis of either mitral insufficiency or mitral stenosis should be made and not that of double mitral defect.

The heart with double mitral defect is increased in all its diameters as shown by percussion and fluoroscopy. The left atrium and



FIG. 137 Mitral stenosis and insufficiency. Arrow at right indicates the dilated pulmonary artery. Arrow at left indicates aneurysm of left atrium.

both ventricles are enlarged usually with predominance of the right.

Auscultation and phonocardiography at the apex reveal a typical *diastolic rumble* and a loud first sound followed by a *soft systolic murmur in decrescendo*.

Cyanosis and dyspnea occur earlier than in the single defects. The complications are those of mitral stenosis and the course is similar. The prognosis is the same as that of mitral stenosis but more severe.

Aortic Insufficiency

Aortic insufficiency exists when the semilunar leaflets of the aorta are incompetent. The regurgitation of blood takes place during diastole and causes compensatory changes of the left ventricle and of the arteries of the greater circulation.

CAUSE

The following lesions may cause aortic insufficiency.

a) *Congenital lesions*. The e may consist of *fenestrations* of the leaflets (29) or a *bicuspid aortic valve* (29-30). The latter however seldom produces insufficiency by itself.

b) *Rheumatic endocarditis*.⁴

c) *Bacterial endocarditis*. Benign endocarditis caused by the *Pneumococcus* or the *Gonococcus* has been so far the most common cause but other bacterial forms are becoming more common through healing of acute and subacute bacterial endocarditis. The latter is not unusual when there is a bicuspid valve (28-30).

d) *Syphilitic endocarditis*. It is common in the geographic areas where syphilis is diffuse and is usually associated with a lesion of the aorta (aortitis).⁴³

e) *Interosclerosis* may cause aortic insufficiency (50-81). The valvular defect of such patients may also be due to incomplete rupture of the aorta being therefore of special nature (page 52).

f) *Traumatic*. Strenuous physical effort

⁴² Aortic insufficiency caused by endocarditis is also called *Corrigan's disease*.

⁴³ Aortic insufficiency caused by syphilis is also called *Hodgkin's disease*.

may lead to *exersion* or *rupture* of the semilunar cusps. In practically all cases this happens when the valves have been damaged by one of the previously named processes.

LESIONS

Aortic insufficiency is a common valvular disease although less frequent than the mitral defects. It is more frequent in males.

In congenital cases the leaflets present small linear openings below the line of contact (fenestrations) or number only two instead of three. It may be observed that in many cases a bicuspid valve is due to endocarditis causing fusion of two leaflets and that in others insufficiency occurs only after rheumatic or bacterial endocarditis.

In cases due to bacterial endocarditis the valves may show small openings or fissures caused by ulcerations or small aneurysms of the sinuses of Valvula.

Both in rheumatic and syphilitic cases the valves are thicker, harder, have fibrous or calcareous plaques and are often fused at the commissure.¹ If the lesion is still developing there is swelling of the leaflets and small vegetations are present.

In some cases the valves form a semirigid funnel projecting into the aorta. In such cases valvular stenosis is also present.

The arteriosclerotic lesions consist of a) calcareous infiltration which starts at the base of the leaflets and extends toward the free margins and b) yellow and opaque infiltration due to atheromatous changes.

Valve cusps may rupture or become exerted.

The left ventricle is dilated and has a thick and hypertrophic wall. The rest of the heart is nearly normal but moderate displacement of the interventricular septum may cause a slight dilatation of the right ventricle. The heart has a typically elongated shape (*coeur en sabot*) (fig. 138).

¹ These lesions should not be confused with the nodules of Arantius which are normally found on the free margins of the valves and have no pathological importance.

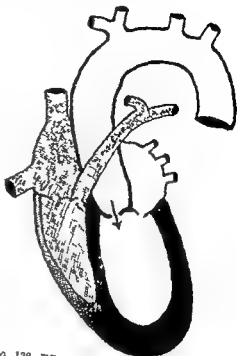


FIG. 139 Effect of the valvular lesion on the heart and aorta in aortic insufficiency.

The aorta may be slightly dilated in the rheumatic forms. It may show atherosclerosis in the forms associated with valvular sclerosis. In some cases the lineal scar of an incomplete rupture of the aorta is present. The valvular leaflets are then normal or sclerotic but their line of insertion is dilated, resulting in poor support for the valves and valvular incompetence.

In syphilitic cases the aorta presents a typical aortitis with localization in the ascending part. There is usually a severe dilatation of this vessel which may be uniform or localized (aneurysm). The existence of an aneurysm may give the aspect of a geographic map to the aorta.

Syphilitic and atherosclerotic lesions of the valves and of the aorta may be associated.

The coronary arteries are often arteriosclerotic; the process is favored by the valvular defect. In syphilitic patients the coronary lesion is localized at the mouths of the vessels.

Lesions of the kidneys peripheral arteries (sclerosis) liver lungs and brain are common as a result of the valvular defect and heart failure

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Aortic insufficiency frequently permits normal physical activity for a long time. This is chiefly true in the luetic form and accounts for the accidental finding of the disease in manual workers.

Patients may live for years with few complaints. If questioned they admit that physical effort causes *dyspnea*, *precordial oppression* or *precordial pain*. Occasional complaints of a *dry cough* and queer sensations in the chest due to *premature beats* are encountered. The most frequent complaint is that of *heart palpitation* and of *pulsation of all organs* occasionally associated with *pulsating headache*.

Some patients experience *giddiness*, *dizziness* or *fainting spells*; some complain of *visual disturbances*.

The patients are usually *pale* and even when heart failure occurs the color is never frankly cyanotic but more often *grayish*.

A series of vascular signs is typical of this disease.

Arterial dance. All visible arteries show evidence of a quick and strong pulsation. This is apparent at the suprasternal notch and on the lateral regions of the neck on different points of the arm and forearm at the epigastrium and at the groin. The pulsation of many secondary arteries such as the temporal or the ulnar becomes visible.

A particular manifestation of this vascular dance is shown by the following two signs.

a) The first consists of a rhythmic backward movement of the head with every systole. b) The second consists of the abrupt rhythmic extension of one leg when crossed over the other coincident with systole.

The *pulse* is typical; it quickly distends the artery and quickly disappears (*pulsus celer* or *Corrigan's pulse* (31)). By palpating the forearm with appropriate pressure it is

possible to feel a *thrill* which occurs at every pulsation. Tachycardia is common.

When the stethoscope is applied lightly over the brachial or femoral artery the observer hears either one snapping sound (*pistol shot sound*) or two (*double tone of Traube* (32)). When the stethoscope is applied so that it exerts a marked compression a *double blowing murmur* is heard (*double murmur of Duro* *ie.* (33)).

The small parenchymal arteries cause the pulsation of many organs. a) Rhythmic distention of the uvula and of the tonsils. b) Rhythmic narrowing of the pupils. c) Rhythmic expansion of the fingertips which can be appreciated by palpation. d) Rhythmic expansion of the area of redness caused by rubbing the skin (forehead) and narrowing of an area of pallor made by compressing the skin by means of a glass or by compressing the nail (*capillary pulse*, *Quincke's sign* (34)) *ungual pulse*.

The effects of the changed cardiac dynamics can be felt by auscultating at the mouth of the patient during slow expiration and noting a series of whiffs. These can be observed by the patient himself when smoking (*cog wheel respiration*) (35).

Local Signs

The *apical thrust* is usually accentuated. There may be a *massive movement* of the precordial region to the left (bulging of the left section and depression of the right section in early systole) (1). If the late systolic expansion of the 2nd and 3rd right interspaces caused by the expansion of the aorta is marked a *see saw movement* takes place.

The site of the apical impulse is displaced to the 6th or 7th intercostal space at the anterior or even at the mid axillary line.

Palpation allows the observer to appreciate a quick pulsation at the suprasternal notch where a *systolic thrill* is also often present. The aortic arch may be palpable when the aorta is dilated.

The *cardiac dullness* is typically elongated

with a cap of dulness at the 2nd and 3rd right interspaces (if the aorta is dilated)

Auscultation reveals a *soft blowing diastolic murmur*. This murmur starts immediately after the 2nd sound then gradually fades like a jet of steam. It is of maximum intensity over the 2nd right interspace but may be heard best in the 2nd left (especially when aortic and mitral valvular disease are associated) along the left sternal border and even over the epigastrium. When the aorta is dilated this murmur is heard at the suprasternal notch (12) (fig 139). If the murmur is faint it may be heard better by having the patient exercise and then lean forward in forceful expiration (73).



FIG 139 Castor oil
the diastolic murmur

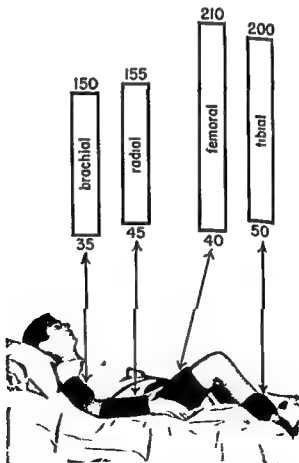


FIG 140 Blood pressure in aortic insufficiency

In some cases the murmur is *harsh musical*, or *similar to the cry of a sea gull*. This usually occurs when the valves are broken perforated or everted.

A *systolic murmur* heard best over the 2nd right interspace and the suprasternal notch (12) is often present. This may be due to associated aortic stenosis or relative stenosis.

Auscultation at the apex may reveal one of the following phenomena: a) Transmission of the murmurs from the base; b) A triple rhythm; c) A diastolic presystolic murmur simulating that of mitral stenosis (*Austin Flint murmur*) (36, 38).

BLOOD PRESSURE

Blood pressure readings are important and have a diagnostic value. The fundamental change is represented by a *marked increase in the amplitude of the pulse pressure*. As the mean pressure may be increased, normal or high, a high systolic with normal diastolic

(210/80), or a normal systolic with a low diastolic (130/40) pressure can be observed (fig. 140).

Regional measurements of blood pressure show two changes which are part of the same phenomenon (fig. 140): a) The forearm has a slightly higher systolic pressure than the arm (39-40); b) The leg has a much higher systolic pressure than the arm (39-40).

GRAPHIC TRACING

Electrocardiogram

The most typical finding is *left axis deviation* revealed by comparison of aVL with aVF, and lead I with lead 3 (fig. 141). Additional changes may consist of:

1) Prolongation of the P-R interval; 2) Evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy or strain. The former consists of increased voltage, a slight prolongation of QRS (not exceeding 0.11 second) and high complexes in V6 and V7. The latter consists of lowering

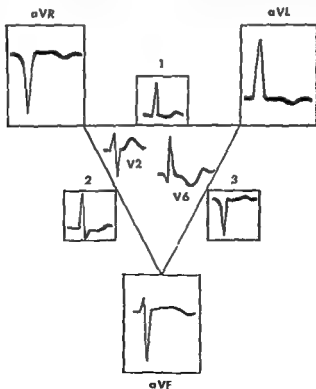


FIG. 141. The electrocardiogram in a case of aortic insufficiency. The tracings of the V leads of the limbs are purposely made larger than those of the standard leads.

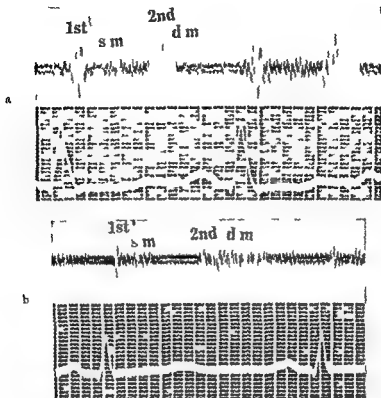


FIG. 142. Phono-ardiograms in cases of aortic insufficiency. The tracings are recorded over the aortic area with a logarithmic microphone and are compared with the electrocardiogram. Case a had an everted aortic valve.

or inversion of T in aVL (and lead I) and in the chest leads V4 to V6. 3) Left intra-ventricular block or bundle branch block. 4) Abnormalities of ST and T other than those related to strain or bundle branch block. The changes are connected with either rheumatic lesions (P.R.) or coronary heart disease. The latter is favored by the hemodynamic changes caused by the valvular lesion. 5) Left ventricular premature beats are common. Ventricular tachycardia may occur.

Phono-ardiogram

Tracings recorded over the aortic area show that the main vibration of the second sound complex is followed by a series of other vibrations of high pitch (*diastolic murmur*). They are usually of limited amplitude in comparison with the auditory impression

and decrease gradually (fig. 142). When a broken or everted valve is the cause of regurgitation the vibrations are higher and may be regular (*musical murmur*) (fig. 142a). The first sound may be *impure* (low or prolonged) because of myocardial damage.

Vibrations due to a *systolic murmur* are common; they are similar to those encountered in *organic aortic stenosis*, *relative stenosis* of the aorta and *aortitis*.

The characteristics of the *diastolic murmur* vary. In some cases the vibrations follow each other with a *decrescendo* type. In other cases the vibrations have a *crescendo decrescendo* type (74). The murmur sometimes ends in early diastole. If the murmur is *musical* as in cases with an everted aortic valve or calcification of one of the leaflets the vibrations are regular and present a *concertina-like* appearance.

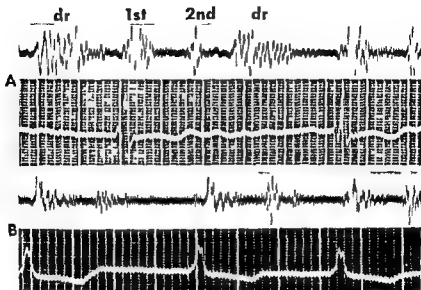


FIG 143 Hypertensive and coronary heart disease possible luetic heart disease Aortic insufficiency loud diastolic rumble (dr) at apex (A) which disappeared 1 year later (B) This was caused by relative mitral stenosis

Studies of the author and others on the *Austin Flint* murmur (38) have revealed the following facts

1) In some cases a *triple rhythm* is present (page 370) 2) In others, the low amplitude of the first phase of the first sound and a high vibration due to the opening of the aortic valve give the impression of a *presystolic murmur* to the unaided ear A delay in the occurrence of the first sound may contribute to this 3) In others slow vibrations arising in the aorta are louder than the first sound and may be easily mistaken for it Therefore in most cases either there is a *triple rhythm* or the *presystolic murmur* is due to an *auscultatory illusion*

Subsequent studies (70-83) have shown that in rare cases the phonocardiogram reveals a *diastolic rumble* which may be mistaken for that of *mitral stenosis* (fig 143) However the following differential data may be observed in such cases There is no opening snap of the mitral valve the murmur starts rather late in diastole the vibrations are usually of large amplitude and they are recorded over a large area sometimes over the entire precordium

Phonoarteriogram

Arterial sound vibrations may present the following types

1) There may be a single extremely loud sound during the expansion of the artery (*pistol shot sound*) 2) There are two sounds The first of them falls during the expansion of the artery while the second falls during arterial collapse and precedes the diastolic wave (*double tone of Traube*) 3) There are two murmurs These replace the two sounds and are favored by compression below the point of recording They are more easily observed over the femoral artery (*double murmur of Duroic*.)

Cardiogram

In most cases the low frequency tracing of the apex (apex cardiogram) shows a high early systolic wave followed by a deep depression (fig. 14-1a) In certain cases however a high systolic plateau is present If the record is taken outside the apex a deep systolic depression represents the main aspect of the tracing

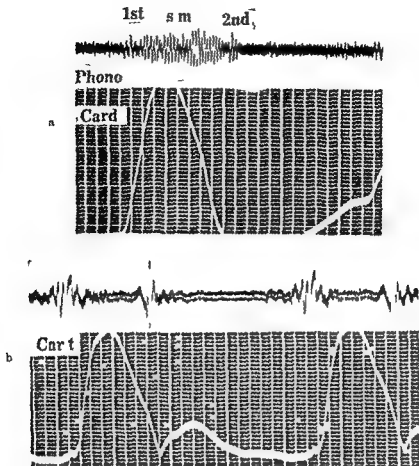


FIG. 144 Heaving apical thrust (a) and typical carotid pulse (b) in cases of aortic insufficiency

Pulse Tracing

The typical pulse curve presents a rapid ascent, a rapid drop and a small diastolic wave (fig. 144b). The rapid drop is systolic and therefore not directly connected with the regurgitation of blood. The comparison of various tracings at different sites shows that transmission of the pulse wave is rapid in all arteries.

Electrolymogram

The border tracing of the aortic arch reveals a rapidly expanding and rapidly collapsing pulse. The absolute magnitude of the pulse is increased. The border tracing of the left ventricle shows a pulsation made of a rapid and large drop (rapid ventricular contraction) and a rise in early diastole which is

faster than in normal subjects. The latter is due to the fact that the left ventricle is distended by two streams: the normal left atrial blood and the aortic regurgitant blood.

X-RAY

The most frequent findings are dilatation of the ascending aorta, aortic arch and left ventricle. The systolic contraction of the latter and the systolic expansion of the former are increased and rapid. The point of connection between the vascular peduncle and the right atrium on the right is lowered. (6) The heart has the shape of an egg or a shoe but this is mostly due to the fact that the apex is partially masked by abdominal organs (fig. 145).

The retrocardiac space is often obscured in

CARDIOVASCULAR SYPHILIS
AORTIC REGURGITATION
ANEURYSM ASCEND AORTA

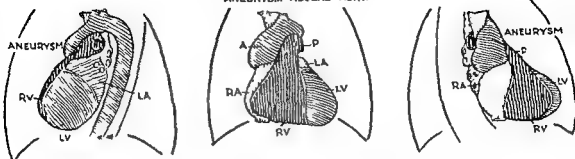


FIG. 145 The heart on x ray in aortic insufficiency (Courtesy of Dr G R Herrmann and the C V Mosby Co)

the left anterior oblique (enlarged left ventricle) The aorta is enlarged anteriorly as demonstrated in the left anterior oblique

Röntgen ymography The systolic dilation of the aorta occurs very early but the pulse wave moves slowly at first owing to the tonic reaction of the vessel (22)

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

Experiments performed on circulation models show that aortic insufficiency causes a drop of mean pressure and an increase of pulse pressure If cardiac output is increased, the original level of mean pressure is reestablished but the pulse pressure increases further

Insufficiency of the aortic valve results in regurgitation of blood into the left ventricle during diastole Experimental studies have shown that the amount of regurgitating blood can range from 5 per cent with small leaks up to 50 per cent when the cusps are totally destroyed (43-44) The tension period is extremely short in cases having large leaks The aortic pressure rises very early but drops sharply during late systole A further drop occurs in early diastole before mitral valve opening because of the regurgitation, but little change of pressure takes place later (43-44) Small leaks cause smaller changes but the pressure drop of the aorta takes place rather later after the mitral valve has opened (43-44) This avoids any impair-

ment to the normal flow into the left ventricle

Regurgitation of blood into the left ventricle causes dilatation of this chamber and hypertrophy of its wall This causes an increased systolic discharge and a dilatation of the aorta which is dynamic at first but may become permanent later

Dilatation of the left ventricle compensates for the increased volume of filling so that no increase of diastolic pressure takes place in the ventricle as long as there is no failure This was proven by left heart catheterization in man (82)

The low diastolic pressure is caused directly by the reflux It favors an increased speed of the pulse wave toward the periphery because the wave enters a poorly filled arterial system Closure of the semilunar valves takes place while the pulse wave has not yet reached the small arteries and continues its forward movement

The reflux into the left ventricle causes a greater retraction of the aorta and of the large vessels whenever the leak is small or medium This retraction may suffice to avoid reflux from the more distant vessels

The violent stimulation of the arterial wall by a large pulse wave necessarily causes a stronger elastic and muscular reaction This is partly responsible for the typical signs of vascular pulsation which are similar

to those caused by adrenalin and for the rapid progression of the pulse wave (46)

The so called *capillary pulse* has been shown to be due in most cases to the intermittent shaking and pulsation of the small arterioles. The capillary flow on the other hand is *continuous* as in normal people

Intermittent stimulation of the carotid sinus and aortic receptors may account for a marked increase of tonus of the peripheral arteries. It may not account for the *tachycardia*

The soft diastolic murmur heard over the aortic area is apparently due to a turbulent flow of blood which enters the left ventricle during the phase of regurgitation. It is louder more musical and more prolonged when the leak is small. It is soft and short in larger leaks where the 2nd sound practically disappears (43-44)

The *aortic systolic murmur* may be due to either real stenosis (rheumatic or arterio-sclerotic heart disease) or relative stenosis (syphilitic heart disease)

The mechanism of the *lustin Flint murmur* has caused several discussions (36). This murmur is due in many cases to an *auscultatory illusion* (page 244) which is clearly revealed by phonocardiography. The most likely mechanism in the other cases is that of a *relative mitral stenosis* (27-37) and is therefore not typical of aortic regurgitation but common to all cases of extreme left ventricular enlargement (73)

Rapid rise and fall of the pulse wave are typical. The rapid collapse of the pulse occurs during systole (46). It is not due to the regurgitation but to the *great speed of the pulse toward the periphery*

The *large pulse pressure* and the *high systolic pressure* in the distant arteries can be explained through simple mechanical phenomena

The *deep systolic collapse* of the jugular vein tracing of the cardiogram and of the pneumocardiogram are explained by the fact that a *large mass of blood leaves the thorax in systole*. A retraction of the inter

costal spaces and an aspiration both of air into the lungs and of blood into the right atrium is necessary in order to replace it in the relatively rigid thoracic chamber

The *high wave of early diastolic filling* in the cardiogram and the *rapid diastolic rise* of the left ventricular electrokymogram can be explained as the effect of regurgitation of blood into the left ventricle. The diastolic wave observed in normal peripheral tracings is now considered as the result of an aortic standing wave reflected by branching. Failure of the aortic valve to close destroys the resonance and decreases the height of the diastolic wave in these patients (84)

The *arterial thrill* the *double tone of Fraube* and the *double murmur of Durosoz* have caused many discussions. Sound records of these phenomena led the author to the following conclusions (33d): a) The double tone is due to the rapid expansion and collapse of the arterial wall. b) The turbulent conditions of the blood in the pulse wave may lead to the formation of breakers and to the feeling of a systolic thrill and of a water hammer quality of the pulse. c) The double murmur is due to a double centrifugal movement of the blood. This takes place when an adequate compression of the artery is made

The *pallor* of these patients can be explained through the lower level of the mean pressure and the peripheral vasoconstriction

The tendency to fainting is explained by the greater effect of the backflow on the cerebral circulation especially in the standing position and by frequent vasomotor reflexes. The increased stimulation and the continuous adjustments taking place through carotid sinus receptors may lead to a further decrease of pressure in the cerebral vessels

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

Aortic insufficiency permits normal physical activity for long periods. Accidents may cause sudden death. They are directly related to the disease because automobile or

airplane fatalities sudden drownings and work accidents are often due to dizziness or fainting at critical moments.

Acute attacks often represent a danger signal. They are

a) *Attacks of precordial pain* related to myocardial infarction or angina pectoris (page 431)

b) *Attacks of paroxysmal dyspnea* (page 555) or *pulmonary edema* (page 556)

These attacks may be followed by death or by progressive heart failure. Often however the patient recovers within a few hours and may lead a normal life for years before another attack occurs.

Subacute bacterial endocarditis is a possible complication both in the rheumatic and the luetic types.

Rheumatic endocarditis may complicate the disease not only as a recurrence of a previous rheumatic fever but also as a new disease in a luetic or arteriosclerotic patient.

Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta is a possible complication especially in the arteriosclerotic and luetic patients. *Aortic aneurysm* is possible in luetic patients if they received incomplete treatment.

Renal complications are not unusual especially in luetic and arteriosclerotic patients. They increase the severity of the disease through hypertension and increased load on

the heart. *Coronary heart disease* is frequent. It is favored by lesions of the coronary vessels due to the same cause as the valvular lesion (rheumatic coronaritis, coronary arteriosclerosis, narrowing of the coronary mouths by luetic aortitis). It is further increased by the hemodynamic effect of the valvular defect (poor diastolic flow) (fig. 146). *Myocardial infarction* is even more serious than in cases without valvular disease.

Disturbances of the heart rhythm are frequent. They may consist of *ventricular premature beats* or *ventricular paroxysmal tachycardia*. The load placed on the left ventricle explains why these occur. On the contrary atrial fibrillation is rare.

Bundle branch block is common. *Pulsus alternans* may occur and is a sign of severe myocardial damage. A *triple rhythm* is frequent and is evidence of myocardial strain (page 370).

Cerebral complications may occur caused by cerebral arteriosclerosis or embolism. The embolus may start from a thrombus of the left ventricle usually following myocardial infarction or from the aortic valve.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of aortic insufficiency is usually easy and can be made on the basis of physical examination alone. The basic signs are elongated heart with a rapid apical thrust, soft diastolic murmur over the base and increased pulse pressure with vascular signs.

Doubt can arise if a) the murmur is heard over a different area, b) there is no murmur, c) there is a combined valvular defect or d) there are no vascular signs.

In such cases electro and phonocardiograms and x-ray usually make the diagnosis possible. They reveal the existence of left axis deviation, enlargement of the left ventricle, high pitched diastolic murmur in decrescendo, increased amplitude of the aortic pulsations and dilatation of the aorta.

Differential diagnosis with pulmonary insufficiency will be discussed in Chapter 12.

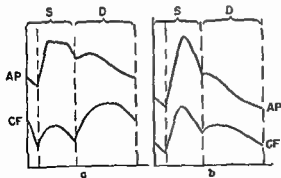


FIG. 146. Arterial pressure (AP) and coronary flow (CF) in the normal individual (a) and in aortic insufficiency (b). While normal coronary flow is mainly diastolic in aortic insufficiency it is mainly systolic. S, systole; D, diastole. (Adapted from Wiggers.)

that with patent ductus in Chapter 13. Differential diagnosis is from *mitral insufficiency* is simple: mitral insufficiency gives a soft systolic aortic insufficiency, a soft diastolic murmur. The former often has a reduced pulse pressure, the latter an increased pulse pressure. The former has an enlarged left atrium and frequently an enlarged pulmonary artery; the latter an enlarged aorta.

Differential diagnosis with mitral stenosis may be necessary whenever an apical diastolic rumble is heard in patients with aortic insufficiency. The diagnosis should ascertain whether or not there also is a mitral stenosis. As previously mentioned (pages 244 and 247) the phonocardiogram often permits a clear differentiation. X-ray will show enlargement of the left atrium if there is mitral stenosis.

Aortitis aortic atherosclerosis They are often present together with the aortic insufficiency. If no diastolic murmur is present the aortic lesion may explain the clinical picture without valvular insufficiency.

In exceptional cases an *aneurysm of one of the sinuses of Valsalva* perforates into the right atrium. Then the rough diastolic murmur, the congestion of the venous system, the sudden onset and the brief course permit a correct diagnosis.

TREATMENT

When the disease causes no symptoms treatment is not necessary. The patient should be warned about the possibility of fainting and should not be allowed to drive.

Mild sedation by means of *phenobarbital* (29), *chloral hydrate* (34) and occasionally *tincture of opium* may help in preventing paroxysmal attacks.

Papaverine (43) may be useful in hypertensive patients.

Potassium iodide (73) is often helpful in luetic and arteriosclerotic patients. Treatment of cardiovascular syphilis by means of either arsenicals or *penicillin* should be attempted only with caution because initial reactions may lead to increased severity of

signs and to heart failure. It should not be attempted in the presence of failure.

Digitalis glycosides can be given whenever heart failure occurs.

Digitalization should be done gradually and extreme bradycardia should be avoided because it might increase the effects of regurgitation by prolonging diastole.

Strophanthin (9) has been advocated in preference to digitalis but there is no special indication. *Squill glycosides* (10) may be used for a mild and prolonged treatment.

The treatment of coronary attacks and of paroxysmal cardiorespiratory episodes will be indicated in chapters XIX and XXIX.

Grafting of an artificial valve in the aorta has been successfully tried in animals. It is possible that this method may be applied to clinical cases in the future. Surgical treatment by means of a flap of pericardium has been tried in rheumatic cases. The results are still not definite (77).

Relative Aortic Insufficiency

Relative insufficiency of the aortic valve is due to incomplete closure caused by weakness of the musculature of the left ventricle. This has been described in *heart failure* after *myocardial infarction* in *acute rheumatic disease* and *thyrotoxicosis* (47). The possibility of a functional aortic insufficiency in *severe hypertension* has been demonstrated (48-49). In all these cases the only sign is the diastolic murmur. The pulse pressure is not increased and there may not be left axis deviation.

Valvular insufficiency due to *incomplete rupture of the aorta* is functional only in relation to the valve (page 485). It may give the complete clinical picture if the regurgitation is large.

In these cases the only graphic findings are the vibrations of the diastolic murmur in the phonocardiogram. The murmur usually consists of three to five vibrations in decrescendo immediately after the second sound. The pulse and blood pressure tracings the

electrocardiogram and the electrokymogram usually fail to show typical data

Aortic Stenosis

Aortic stenosis is the narrowing of the orifice leading from the left ventricle into the aorta. It hinders the flow of blood into the aorta and creates a typical clinical picture.

CAUSE

Several different causes for the stenosis are recognized.

a) *Congenital* This may involve either the *aortic* or the *infundibulum* (subaortic or *infundibular stenosis*). Subaortic stenosis may be associated with hypoplasia of the aorta or interventricular septal defect, valvular stenosis with patent ductus arteriosus.

b) *Rheumatic* It is a fairly common valvular lesion frequently associated with aortic insufficiency, mitral valve disease or both. Calcification of the aortic valve occurs in a high percentage of cases.

c) *Bacterial* This is not common except during acute endocarditis. It may become more frequent in view of the fact that a larger number of patients are now saved by chemotherapy and antibiotics.

d) *Lytic* It is unusual because syphilis causes dilatation of the aorta and the orifice. Still it may occur through fibrous healing of the valvular lesions followed by calcification.

e) *Atherosclerotic* It is a relatively frequent occurrence and is due to calcification of the valve. Actually *calcific aortic stenosis* is an anatomical entity. The pathologist quite often is unable to recognize the cause of calcification or does it only through evaluation of associated lesions. It has been suggested that calcific aortic stenosis develops more often in cases with a bicuspid aortic valve (78). It has also been stated that rheumatic cases have adhesions between cusps while the others have calcareous masses within the sinuses of Valvula.

LESIONS

Aortic stenosis is less frequent than other valvular defects of the left heart. However if cases with combined valvular defects are included it becomes more frequent.

Subaortic stenosis is a *congenital lesion*. It is the result of a slight displacement of the septum caused by disturbance in the torsion of the primitive heart. Therefore it may be associated with a ventricular septal defect.

Valvular congenital stenosis is caused by fusion of the semilunar leaflets and is probably due to *fetal endocarditis*. If severe it may be associated with a compensatory patency of the ductus.

Endocarditic stenosis is due to *fusion, shrinking and deformation of the semilunar leaves*. These may form a semirigid funnel projecting into the aorta. Subaortic stenosis caused by septal endocarditis or retraction of the anterior mitral leaflet has been described in unusual cases.

Partial fusion of the semilunar valves fol-

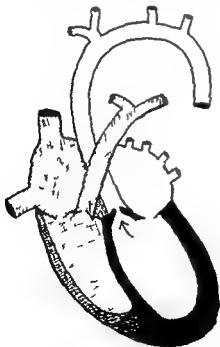


FIG 147 Changes of the heart in aortic stenosis

lowed by calcification occurs in atherosclerotic cases

The left ventricle is dilated and has a marked hypertrophy of its walls (fig 147) In subaortic stenosis a dilatation of the last part of the infundibulum is frequently encountered In valvular stenosis the first part of the aorta may be dilated

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The valvular defect often may be tolerated well for many years The patients however may complain of *palpitation*, *oppression* or *exertional dyspnea*

Sudden attacks of *suffocating dyspnea* with *extreme pallor* followed by *cyanosis* are not uncommon when heart failure begins At times effort is followed by *syncope* a fact which is unusual in other valvular defects (51) During *syncope* the pulse may disappear while the heart rate is rapid

The patients are usually *pale* Moderate underdevelopment may exist in congenital cases

The pulse may be normal but is frequently *small* and has a *slow rise* (*pulsus tardus*) it is also frequently *slow* (52) being between 50 and 60 (*pulsus rarus*) Even when the patient is in congestive failure the pulse is slower than might be expected

Local Signs

There may be a *precordial bulge* The *apical impulse* is below and to the left of the normal site The impulse is clearly visible but is *slow* and *prolonged*

A *systolic thrill* can be palpated It is of maximal intensity at the manubrium and in the 2nd and 3rd right interspaces It may be present only in the right supraclavicular space

The *cardiac dulness* is enlarged and elongated The sternal manubrium is usually clear (fig 148)

Auscultation reveals a *loud harsh systolic murmur* having maximal intensity over the 2nd or 3rd (subaortic stenosis) right in

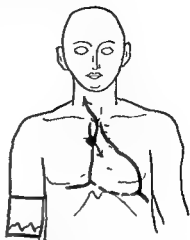


FIG 149 Cardiac dulness and transmission of the systolic murmur in aortic stenosis

terspace this is well transmitted to the supra-sternal notch (12) and along the carotid arteries It may have a *musical* or *sea-gull cry* quality it is often heard over the back

The 2nd aortic sound may be normal but is frequently *weak* It may be weak only in the first interspace where transmission from the pulmonic valve is minimal In subaortic stenosis both the systolic murmur and the weak 2nd sound are heard best in the 3rd right and occasionally in the 3rd left interspace

BLOOD PRESSURE—B.M.R.

The blood pressure is often normal or slightly low Sometimes however there is a definite *hypotension* (systolic pressure between 80 and 90) or *hypertension* *Instability of the blood pressure* has been described (53)

The observation of an *auscultatory gap* (57 a b) (fig 149) is frequent and typical This phenomenon consists of the *absence of arterial sounds between systolic and diastolic pressure in spite of good pulsations of the vessel*

Relative hypotension in the legs is frequent but moderate (8)

Increased B.M.R. may occur and is not well explained

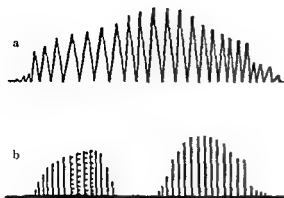


FIG 149 Auscultatory gap in aortic stenosis. The oscillatory curve (a) fails to show any abnormality while the auditory curve (b) is interrupted by a gap between systolic and diastolic pressure.

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Flectrocardiogram

The data are similar to those caused by aortic insufficiency (page 212) because they are related to the enlargement of the left ventricle and to the possible association of coronary and myocardial lesions. *Sinus bradycardia* is frequently observed.

Phonocardiogram

The phonocardiogram gives evidence of the basal *systolic murmur* which is revealed by a series of vibrations of both high and low pitches. The vibrations increase gradually and often take the shape of a wave having maximum intensity in the second half of systole (*diamond shaped murmur*) (fig 150). The second sound has a low amplitude and may disappear over the 1st or 2nd right interspaces. A loud fourth (atrial) sound is often recorded at the apex.

Cardiogram

The ascending part of the systolic impulse is either slow or double (camel back or staggered profile). The systolic murmur may be accompanied by a series of vibrations which are the graphic expression of the thrill (fig 150c).

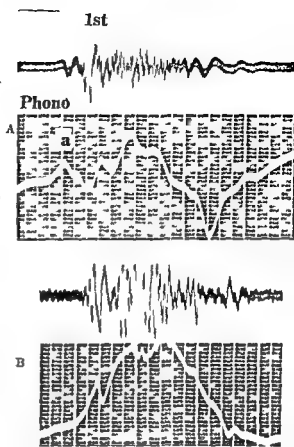


FIG 150 Phonocardiograms of aortic stenosis. A: sound tracing and low frequency tracing (cardiogram) over 2nd right interspace. B: sound tracing and pulsations of suprasternal notch.

Arterial Pulse

The pulse tracing shows an ascending phase which is slower than normal. As this phase is often interrupted by a well marked depression (anacrotic notch) the pulse is called *anacrotic pulse* (figs 150b and 151). If recorded at the suprasternal notch or on the carotid arteries the pulse tracing may show a series of vibrations which are simultaneous with the murmur (so called *carotid shudder*).

Blood Pressure

Criphic tracings of blood pressure frequently reveal an *auscultatory gap*. This consists of the absence of arterial sounds in a zone between systolic and diastolic pres-

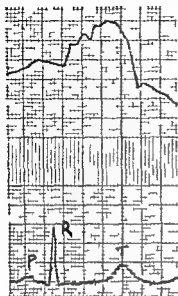


FIG 151 Carotid tracing and ECG in a case of aortic stenosis: slow rise and anacrotic depression of the pulse

tures. While the sound tracing reveals the gap, the pulse tracing does not.

Ei ctrokymogram

The border tracing of the aortic knob presents an *anacrotic depression* similar to that exhibited by the carotid pulse. The border tracing of the left ventricle reveals abnormalities of contraction similar to those exhibited by the apex cardiogram.

X RAY

The aorta may be normal, small, or slightly dilated. The profile of the left ventricle shows an increase in size. The left atrium and the right ventricle are normal. The pulmonary artery is normal (fig 152).

The systolic contraction of the left ventricle is slow and the systolic dilatation of the aorta is also slow. The aortic valve may be visible if calcified.



FIG 152 Cardiac and aortic silhouette in a case of aortic stenosis

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

It has been shown that the aortic opening must be reduced to one fourth of its normal size in animals in order to decrease systolic discharge (43-44). Then the initial pressure curve of the ventricle rises more quickly and to a higher level reaching its maximum earlier than normal. The aortic pressure rises rapidly at first slowing at the time of the anacrotic notch. The pulse pressure is reduced in proportion to the stenosis.

The obstacle to the emptying of the left ventricle causes a compensatory dilatation of this chamber followed by severe *hypertrophy*. If the stenosis is not too tight this compensatory phenomenon is sufficient to raise blood pressure to a normal level again. Otherwise hypotension is present.

A further compensation is represented by the *prolonged duration of systole*. This together with the effect of the obstacle causes the *double wave* of the cardiogram and the *anacrotic pulse*.

The *auscultatory gap* has been attributed to anacrotism (57, 58) or to this plus arterial hypotonus (58). A slower vibration of the arterial wall fails to elicit the typical snapping arterial sound and it cannot be denied that the gap is usually present in that phase of pressure which corresponds to the anacrotic depression.

The *systolic murmur* is caused by the ed-

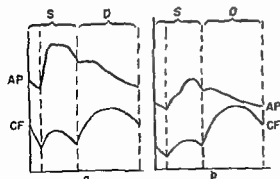


FIG. 153. Arterial pressure (AP) and coronary flow (CF) in the normal individual (a) and in aortic stenosis (b) that part of flow which takes place during systole is reduced. (Adapted from Wiggers.)

dies formed by the blood in passing through the narrow opening. It is present even in slight stenosis. The typical transmission toward the neck indicates that the sound vibrations are largely carried by the stream of blood. The *thrill* is merely the palpatory expression of the same phenomenon. The *usual 2nd sound* is due to the rigidity of the leaflets.

A *relative coronary insufficiency* is common (pg 153).

Slight bradycardia is probably due to a vagal reflex starting from left ventricular receptors.

The *effort syncope* are not due to bradycardia. On the contrary tachycardia which prevents efficient emptying of the left ventricle has been advocated (51).

The eddies formed distal to the narrowing cause a moderate dilatation of either the last part of the infundibulum (subaortic stenosis) or the initial part of the ascending aorta.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

Patients with aortic stenosis may suffer from *bacterial endocarditis*. Bacteria may attack the aortic valves in any type of lesion even (though less frequently) in luetic and arteriosclerotic cases.

Heart block caused by extension of the inflammatory process from the aortic valve to the septum with lesion of the bundle of His is a possibility (59).

The onset of heart failure may be revealed by *relative mitral insufficiency*, *chronic pulmonary edema* or *continuous dyspnea*. Acute pulmonary edema is not a frequent complication. Patients with aortic stenosis may die suddenly (60) a fact which has been attributed to sudden hooking of the hardened leaflets so that they cannot open again (61). Apart from this the usual outcome of the disease is chronic congestive failure.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of aortic stenosis is possible on the basis of the clinical signs: pallor,

small and slow pulse enlarged left ventricle systolic thrill and murmur over the aortic area &c.

The diagnosis is undoubtedly more difficult when other valvular defects are also present. In such cases the electro and phonocardiographic tracings the cardio and sphygmogram the x ray the aortic electro kymogram and the blood pressure data will be of help. In particular the anacrotic pulse the auscultatory gap the vibrations of the aortic tracing and the lack of aortic dilatation are valuable signs. The weak 2nd sound and the diamond shaped murmur are also important.

Differential diagnosis should be made with *relative aortic stenosis*. This is usually accompanied by loud 2nd aortic sound high blood pressure and dilated aorta and fails to show the other typical data (see below).

Mitral insufficiency can be excluded because the murmur of this valvular defect is softer is apical and is transmitted toward the left axilla. On phonocardiographic tracings this murmur has a different aspect and never shows the diamond shaped type of murmur of aortic stenosis.

Roger's disease Interventricular septal defect gives an early systolic murmur which is louder over the 3rd left interspace and is often transmitted toward the right side of the chest. Transmission toward the suprasternal notch is far less than with aortic stenosis. There is no left axis deviation. The pulse tracing fails to show the typical changes of aortic stenosis. The other signs of aortic stenosis are absent.

Pulmonary stenosis The murmur is similar but is of maximal intensity over the 2nd left interspace and is not transmitted to the suprasternal notch (unless it is extremely loud). There is right axis deviation. The patient is slightly cyanotic not pale.

Incurysm of the ascending aorta There is an area of dullness and a bulge with expansive pulsation at the right of the sternum. The 2nd aortic sound may be loud. Pulse

tracings and cardiograms give different findings from those of aortic stenosis.

Coarctation of the aorta The murmur is less loud and better audible at the left of the sternum. The aortic arch is dilated. The blood pressure is higher at the arms lower at the legs. There is an extensive arterial collateral circulation in the intercostal spaces.

Patent ductus arteriosus The murmur has its maximal intensity over the 1st and 2nd left interspaces. It is a late systolic early diastolic murmur (phonocardiogram) which is different from that of aortic stenosis. The pulmonary artery is dilated (percussion x ray). The pulse has no anacrotism. The pulse pressure is increased not decreased as in aortic stenosis.

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis of aortic stenosis is always serious. Still a long span of life is often possible and the severity is proportional to the tightness of the narrowing not to the loudness of the murmur. It is therefore more favorable in the arteriosclerotic than in the endocarditic and congenital types.

TREATMENT

The general rules concerning physical exercise diet and medical treatment are the same as in other valvular defects.

Surgical treatment is possible (87). The best intervention is dilatation of the valve which can be performed through the ventricular wall.

Relative Aortic Stenosis

This name has been used for those cases where a *systolic murmur* is present over the 2nd right interspace without any other sign of stenosis. In some of these patients the aorta is dilated owing to aortitis or atherosclerosis. A *relative stenosis* namely a disproportion between normal aortic orifice and vessel can be admitted in most of these cases. This causes formation of eddies and therefore a systolic murmur.

In other cases the margins of the aortic valve are *irregular and roughened*. This may cause a slight systolic murmur even without hindering the blood flow.

In a third group of patients the aorta is functionally dilated owing to an increased amount of circulating blood or to increased energy of the heart. This leads to stretching of the insertion of the valves and to *triangulation* of the opening (62) which is purely functional and barely causes any hindrance to the flow. This phenomenon is not uncommon in pregnancy, fever, and thyrotoxicosis. All functional signs of stenosis are missing and frequently a similar murmur is audible over the pulmonic area.

A systolic murmur having its maximum intensity over the mid precordium and well transmitted both toward the neck and the apex has been described in *hypertensive patients* with a very large left ventricle. It has been explained by hypertrophy of the interventricular septum (63). This interpretation is still far from being accepted. If true it would place the patients in the category of subaortic stenosis.

Double Aortic Defect

The double aortic defect consists of the association of aortic stenosis with aortic insufficiency.

The *congenital* and *luteic* cases are rare. pure stenosis is the rule in the former, pure insufficiency in the latter. Therefore apart from a limited number of *arteriosclerotic* patients the great majority of cases are due to *endocarditis*, either *rheumatic* or *bacterial*.

The existence of stenosis attenuates the peripheral signs of aortic insufficiency, the presence of insufficiency attenuates the type of *pulsus rarus* and *tardus* of aortic stenosis. There may be a *carotid shudder* (56).

Some of the typical signs may be more severe. The enlargement of the left ventricle and left axis deviation are among them.

Auscultation reveals a *double murmur* over the aortic area with typical irradiation the

systolic murmur more toward the carotid arteries, the diastolic more toward the xiphoid process.

The patients are *pale*, have frequent *dizziness* and *fainting spells* and complain of *ural* *ness*, *dyspnea* and *precordial pain*. Their mean blood pressure is *low* with either a normal or a large pulse pressure.

Double aortic defect is tolerated less well than either of the pure defects.

Diagnosis is limited to the exclusion of relative stenosis in cases of aortic insufficiency.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 DRESSLER W. a) *Die Brustwandpulsationen*. Wien Maudrich 1933.
b) *Clinical Cardiology*. New York Hoeber 1942.
- c) *Arch. Int. Med.* 1937 **110**: 431 and 663.
- 2 COSMO P. *Rev. Arg. Cardiol.* 1943 **10**: 145.
- 3 TAQUINI A. C. MASSELL B. F. AND WALSH H. J. *Am. Heart J.* 1940 **20**: 290.
- 4 a) WEITZ W. *Deut. Arch. klin. Med.* 1919 **124**: 155.
b) FRANK. Quoted by WEITZ.
- 5 TAQUINI A. C. *Exploración del Corazón por Vía Esofágica*. Buenos Aires El Ateneo 1938.
- 6 ROESLER H. *Clinical Tontogenology of the Cardiovascular System*. Baltimore Thomas 1943.
- 7 COSMO P. *Bull. Soc. Méd. Hôp.* 1937 **53**: 215.
- 8 BASSET M. *Riv. Clin. Med.* 1934 **35**: 873 and 1935 **36**: 29.
- 9 a) WIGGERS C. J. 5th Ed. *Physiology in Health and Disease*. Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1949.
b) McDONALL R. J. S. *Quart. J. Exper. Physiol.* 1936 **16**: 1.
- 10 BAILEY D. T. AND HICKHAM J. B. *Am. Heart J.* 1944 **28**: 5, 8.
- 11 BASS M. H. AND CO-WORKERS. *J. A. M. A.* 1933 **101**: 17.
- 12 LUISADA A. A. *Rass. Int. Clin. Ter. (Naples)* 1937 **11**: 16 and 17.
- 13 LOTAIN P. C. F. *Clin. Méd. Pitié Paris Masson* 1844.
- 14 STEFILL G. *Med. Chron.* 1886-89 **9**: 187.
- 15 LUISADA A. A. *Am. Heart J.* 1941 **22**: 245.
- 16 COSMO P. AND BERKOWSKY. *Rev. Arg. Cardiol.* 1943 **10**: 162.
- 17 LUISADA A. A. *Cuore e Circ. (Rome)* 1935 **19**: 7.

- 18 LUISADA A & J Lab & Clin Med 1930 25 1146
- 19 LAUFER S Arch Mal Coeur 1935 28 93
- 20 LAUFER S AND RUBINO A Clin Med Ital 1936 67 N 6
- 21 SOSSAI A Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1938 22 441
- 22 CIGNOLINI P Roentgenchirurgia (Carthage) e Radiografia Bologna Cappelli 1934
- 23 GRISHMAN A SLEMAN M L AND STEINBERG M F Am J Roentgenol 1944 31 33
- 24 WHITE P D J A M A 1938 90 603
- 25 BLANCHET A M AND ELLIS L B New England J Med 1942 226 931
- 26 a) FARGES F C ROSEBARK R F AND DELTRICK J F Am Heart J 1944 28 445
- b) HARRIS A W AND LEVINE S J Am Int Med 1911 15 637
- 27 a) WHITE P D Boston Med Surg J 1917 195 1146
- b) BLAND E F JONES T D AND WHITE P D Am Heart J 1935 10 995
- 28 ABBOTT M Congenital Heart Disease Nelson & Loose Leaf Medicine New York Nelson 1943 vol 4
- 29 HENNINGMAN G R Synopsis of Diseases of the Heart and Arteries St Louis Mosby 1941
- 30 BROWN J W Congenital Heart Disease London J B Med Publ 1939
- 31 CORRIGAN D J Edinburgh Med & Surg J 1832 37 2-5
- 32 TRAUZE L Berl klin Woch 18 2 9 573
- 33 a) DI ROZIER P D Arch Gen Méd 1861 17 417
- b) PAGGI E Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1930 14 389
- c) BLENGART H L AND ERNSTENE A C J A M A 1933 100 173
- d) LUISADA A A Am Heart J 1943 26 21
- 34 QUINCKE H Berl klin Woch 1875 11 357
- 35 a) FRUGONI C Riv Crit Clin Med (Florence) 1913 15 100
- b) LUISADA A A Min Med (Turin) 1913 11 1139
- c) LUISADA A A Am Heart J 1917 23 676
- 36 FLINT A Am J M Sci 1879 44 29
- 37 WHITE P D Heart Disease New York Macmillan 1944
- 38 a) LUISADA A A Am Heart J 1944 28 157
- b) CONNOR P AND SOTOMAYOR O Rev Arg Cardiol 1915 12 0
- 39 a) HILL L FLACK M AND HOLTZMAN W Heart 1909-1910 1 73
- b) HILL L AND FLACK M Brit Med J 1909 1 272
- c) MURRAY J R Brit Med J 1914 1 69
- 40 LUISADA A A Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1936 10 291
- 41 WOLFERTH CH AND MARCOLLES In Stoultz Cardiacuscula Disease & Philadelphia Davis 1943
- 42 COLO I AND CO WORKERS Rev Arg Cardiol 1943 10 71
- 43 WIGGERS C J AND MALTBY A B Am J Physiol 1931 97 689
- 44 WIGGERS C J J A M A 1931 117 1350
- 45 SCHNEIDER H Deut Arch klin Med 1934 176 1
- 46 STEWART G N Arch Int Med 1908 1 10
- 47 LAQUEL H Les Maladies du Coeur Paris Bailliere 1918
- 48 GALLIARD L Ann Int Med 1940 13 1730
- 49 LOEWENBERG S A Ann Int Med 1940 14 991
- 50 COLLEY B A AND SICKEL E M Am Heart J 1943 24 24
- 51 GALLIARD L Arch Mal Coeur 193 30 747
- 52 SCHNEIDER H Zeit Kreislauff 1918 80 161
- 53 GALLIARD L La Tension Artérielle en Clinique Paris Masson 1921
- 54 DE HÉR J I Pfluegers Arch 1912 148 1
- 55 ALAN A Heart 1916 12 181
- 56 FANN W AND LEWIS D Brit Heart J 1945 7 171
- 57 a) GALLIARD L AND TIXIER L Arch Mal Coeur 1910 12 44
- b) BARRIER J La Méthode Auscultatoire Paris Bailliere 1921
- 58 LAURENT C BROUSSE T AND VAN BOGAERT A Arch Mal Coeur 1931 24 147
- 59 a) TRAUZE Quoted by LUTENBACHER (b)
- b) LUTENBACHER R Rev Med 1933 46 476
- 60 MARIN H M AND SULLIVAN A G Am Heart J 1935 10 705
- 61 DE VEEER A J Am Heart J 1938 15 743
- 62 CHISHOLM D R Am Heart J 193 11 367
- 63 GALLIARD L Quoted by GIBAUD (64)
- 64 GIBAUD G Leçons de l'Office oulique au Nouveau Traité de Médecine by ROGER VIDAL TEISSIER Paris Masson 1933
- 65 a) FARNOWART A F BERNSTEIN A AND MORTLAND H S Am Heart J 1945 31 438
- b) ASHWORTH H AND MORGAN JONES A Brit Heart J 1946 6 707

- 66 RYTAND D A AND IJESITCH I ■ Arch
Int Med 1946 78 544
- 67 a) SCHUB M *Trk inn Med* 1934 47 348
b) HOROWSKY M *Klin Med* 1947 2 540
- 68 MANTOVANI A AND LOREAZONI B *Golia
Card (Milin)* 1947 6 51
- 69 a) BLOOMFIELD R A AND CO WORKERS J
Clin Investigation 1946 25 639
b) McMICHAEL J *Am Rev Physiol* 1948
10 201
- 70 LUISADA A A AND ELLISCHNER F G *Am
J Med* 1948 4 791
- 71 BAILEY C P *Dis of Chest* 1949 15 347
- 72 CO GRIFF S W J A M A 1950 143 840
- 73 MINOURA M M RAIFORT M B AND
SPRAGUE H B *New England J Med* 1949
241 631
- 74 WELL P C RAIFORT M B AND
SPRAGUE H B *Am Heart J* 1949 37 556
- 75 LUISADA A A AND LERÉZ MONTES L
Ann Int Med 1950 33 56
- 76 O NEILL T J I BAILEY C I AND GLOVER
R P *Acta Med Scand* 1951 142 (Suppl
266) 817
- 77 O NEILL T J I GLOVER R I AND BAILEY
C I J A M A 1951 147 1032
- 78 Case 33211 of Massachusetts General Hospital
New England J Med 1947 236 806
- 79 DAVISON S J *Mt Sinai Hosp* 1948 14
941
- 80 LA BER R P LISTIN I AND LOEWEL I
Am Heart J 1952 44 681
- 81 CEILL T AND KRAER W *Acta Med Scand*
1952 142 (Suppl 266) 413
- 82 ZIMMERMAN H A *J Clin Investigation*
1950 29 1601
- 83 LUISADA A A *Chicago Soc Int Med* 1950
19 70
- 84 ALEXANDER R S *Am J Physiol* 1910 158
294
- 85 FENICHEL N M *Am Heart J* 1950 40 117
- 86 a) SPRAGUE H B AND JACOBSEN R P
Med Clin North America 1948 32
1309
- 87 BAILEY C I AND RAMIREZ R J A M A
1952 150 1647

The Valvular Defects of the Right Heart

Pulmonic Insufficiency

Pulmonic insufficiency occurs when the semilunar valves of the pulmonary artery become incompetent and permit regurgitation during diastole. This causes a typical clinical picture and a series of compensatory changes in both in the right heart and in the vessels of the lesser circulation.

CAUSE

Different causes may determine pulmonic insufficiency.

a) A *congenital lesion* consisting of the absence or malformation of one of the valvular cusps (1b) it is often associated with other abnormalities.

b) A *rheumatic lesion*. Severe lesion is rare (21) while moderate alterations are probably common (20). The pulmonic is usually associated with a mitral defect.

c) A *bacterial lesion*. Pulmonic insufficiency during an acute streptococcal endocarditis is common. A healed gonococcal, pneumococcal or streptococcal endocarditis may be the cause of the lesion.

d) A *luetic lesion* is rare but possible especially if there is a luetic arteritis of the pulmonary artery (chapter 21). Pressure irritation from an aortic aneurysm is one of the mechanisms producing this type of lesion.

e) An *atherosclerotic lesion* may occur in cases with primary atherosclerosis of the pulmonary artery, chronic cor pulmonale (chapter 23), congenital defects or mitral stenosis as a result of long lasting pulmonary hypertension.

f) Surgery of the pulmonic valve (page 267).

LESIONS

Pulmonic insufficiency is seldom pure. It is observed more commonly in combination with other valvular defects or lesions of the pulmonary artery.

The valvular lesions are those typical of the different forms and consist of deformation, retraction or partial destruction of the leaflets. In lues and atherosclerosis the process predominates in the artery and is transmitted to the cusps. Fibrotic changes of the leaflets as well as adhesions have been described in cases of aortic aneurysm compressing the pulmonary artery.

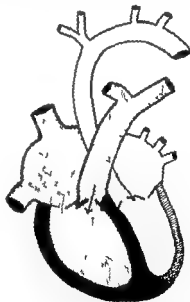


FIG. 154 Changes of the heart in pulmonic insufficiency.

The right ventricle is dilated and its wall is markedly hypertrophied. The right atrium

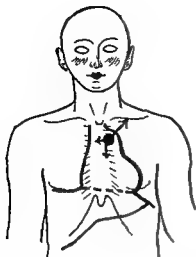


FIG. 100 Cardiac dullness and transmission of the diastolic murmur in pulmonic insufficiency

is usually somewhat dilated. The pulmonary artery and its branches are extremely dilated; their walls are thickened and may become sclerotic.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The symptoms of these patients are seldom characteristic and are separated with difficulty from those of other cardiovascular lesions. Physical effort causes *dyspnea*, *palpitation*, *dizziness*, and sometimes *precordial pain*. The patient is *weak* and may present *nosebleeds*, *obstinate dry cough*, and occasionally *bloody sputum*. Attacks of *syncope* associated with *cyanosis*, *leg cramps*, *respiration*, and *somnolence* have been described.

The patients have *cyanosis* and frequently *clubbing* of the fingers and toes.

The pulse is *small* and *not collapsing*.

Local Signs⁵⁵

There is a *diffuse systolic pulsation* between the sternum and the left midclavicular line. *Epigastric pulsation* is common. There is *no thrill*.

Percussion reveals that the heart is en-

⁵⁵ Owing to the rarity of cases the description will be based mainly on the signs of a typical case studied by Dressler (2).

larged toward the right and that there is a *cap of dullness* in the 2nd and 3rd left interspaces (fig. 150).

Auscultation reveals a *long diastolic murmur* having its maximum intensity over the 2nd or 3rd left interspace. This murmur starts immediately after the 2nd sound and gradually fades away. It may be *low pitched* and *rumbling* (3) but more often is *soft*. The murmur is transmitted toward the left clavicle and toward the 3rd and 4th right interspaces. It is not transmitted toward the apex or the suprasternal notch (4). It usually becomes louder when the patient is raised to the erect position (5).

A *systolic murmur* of lesser intensity may also be present.

The 2nd *pulmonic* sound is *loud* in the *lucetic* and *athero-sclerotic* forms; it is *weak* and *barely audible* in the others. Auscultation at the mouth may reveal *intermittent whiffs* due to emission of air (5).

BLOOD PRESSURE—GRAPHIC TRACINGS

The mean pressure is low; the pulse pressure is normal.

Pulse tracings fail to show the rapid rise and the rapid drop which are typical of aortic insufficiency.

The *electrocardiogram* shows *right axis deviation*.

The *phonocardiogram* reveals a murmur similar to that of aortic regurgitation except for the area of best recording (2nd and 3rd left interspaces).

RAY

The cardiac shadow seems to rest on the diaphragm but the apex appears to be elevated. The pulmonary knob is dilated and shows ample and rapid pulsations. This is particularly evident in the right anterior oblique position.

The *hilar shadows* present extremely powerful pulsations called the *hilar dance* (6).

The aortic knob is small and shows normal pulsations. *Roentgenkymography* and *electrokymography* reveal a typical tracing

over the pulmonary knob (*collapsing pulse*) The electrokymographic study of the hilar shadows and of the pulmonary parenchyma reveals *high and collapsing pulsations* and a rapidly progressing pulse wave in the vessels of the lesser circulation

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

Valvular insufficiency causes a regurgitation of blood into the right ventricle during diastole the results of which are similar to those occurring in the left ventricle and the aorta with aortic regurgitation (page 246)

There is enlargement of the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery There is a violent pulsation of the pulmonary artery and of its branches causing the *hilar dance* on fluoroscopy

The *diastolic murmur* is due to the regurgitating blood The *systolic murmur* is either caused by stenosis or is a murmur due to dilatation of the pulmonary artery and similar to that occurring in the aorta in aortic regurgitation (*relative pulmonal stenosis*) (page 307)

Cyanosis, hemoptysis, somnolence, and clubbing of the fingers are all due to sclerosis of the pulmonary vessels which frequently accompanies pulmonary insufficiency

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The most frequent complications are pulmonary embolism, profuse hemoptysis, acute or chronic bronchitis, and aneurysm of the pulmonary artery Nothing definite can be stated about the course because of the rarity of the cases It seems that periods of heart failure can alternate with periods of improvement The picture of failure includes severe peripheral edema, very large liver, severe cyanosis, somnolence, and obstinate cough

DIAGNOSIS

Owing to the rarity of cases of uncomplicated pulmonary insufficiency the diagnosis will be made mostly in cases where a mitral stenosis is associated with organic insufficiency

of the pulmonary valve (page 301) and in cases with relative insufficiency

Relative Pulmonic Insufficiency

This condition is usually the result of high pressure in the pulmonary artery It may be found in mitral stenosis (10) arteriosclerosis of the pulmonary circulation (11) septal defects (9) complex congenital malformations (Eisenmenger complex) and subacute bacterial endocarditis It is revealed by a *diastolic murmur in decrescendo*

In certain cases the murmur is transitory because the high pulmonic pressure decreases with therapy (an example is the G. Steell murmur of mitral stenosis) The murmur is usually soft and seems caused by distention of the right ventricle

Distention of the pulmonary artery itself usually causes a *systolic murmur*

Pulmonary Stenosis

Pulmonary stenosis exists when a narrowing either at or before the valvular opening of the pulmonary artery is present Deep changes in the structure and function of the right ventricle follow

CAUSE

Different causes may be responsible for the stenosis

- a) 1 congenital lesion
- b) 1 rheumatic lesion Extremely rare
- c) 1 bacterial lesion (pneumococcal, gonococcal or streptococcal)
- d) 1 luetic lesion Rare (14)

LESIONS

There are several types of pulmonic stenosis

a) *Pulmonary hypoplasia* Unequal division of the common arterial trunk causes narrowing of the orifice and of the pulmonary artery The pulmonic valve is often bicuspid

b) *Valvular stenosis* Thickening of the leaflets and fusion of the commissures reveal

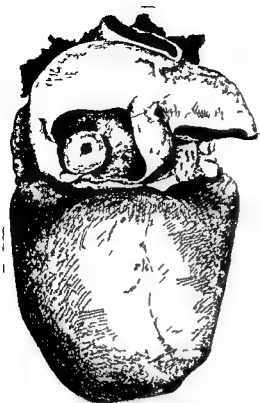


FIG. 156 Drawing from a specimen of pulmonic stenosis. Typical fish mouth shape of the aortic

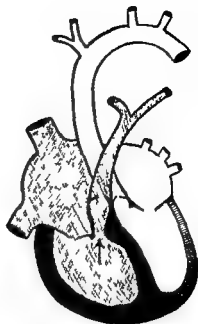


FIG. 157 Changes of the heart in pulmonic stenosis

more horizontal position of the heart with the apex raised from the diaphragm

If the foramen ovale is patent the clinical signs are different (page 309)

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

There may be *exertional dyspnea* and *pre cordial oppression*. Pure pulmonic stenosis has been considered rare. However if the milder forms are included the defect becomes much more common. Severe pulmonic stenosis has been described in patients from birth to about 20 years. Occasional cases were older and the longest survival is 78 years.

Cyanosis may be minimal or absent. When severe it indicates the association with septal defects or is caused by heart failure. A greyish color has been observed (13). Attacks of dyspnea, dizziness, suffocation and dry cough may occur. Periods of somnolence have been described.

Cold and bluish extremities are frequent. A condition of *infantilism* may be present in the congenital cases. The pulse is small but not tardus. Clubbing of the fingers and toes

a previous inflammatory process. The pulmonary artery is frequently dilated.

c) *Diaphragmatic type of stenosis*. Complete fusion of the cusps forms a cone shaped membrane protruding into the pulmonary artery and having a small central opening of 1 to 5 mm. This type is also probably due to endocarditis (fig. 156).

d) *Subpulmonic stenosis*. A horizontal fibrous membrane with a central perforation can be found below the valvular opening. This is a congenital malformation.

e) *Conus separatus chamber*. The outflow tract of the right ventricle is separated from the main cavity by muscular bands which leave only a small opening. The pulmonary orifice may be normal or hypoplastic.

The right ventricle presents severe dilatation and hypertrophic walls. This leads to a

and *squatting* may be occasionally noted but are not the rule

Local Signs

A *precordial bulge* is frequent in the congenital cases. There is a *diffuse systolic pulsation* of a large median area (fig 158)

Palpation reveals a *systolic thrill* having its maximal intensity over the 2nd or 3rd left interspace and transmitted toward the left clavicle

The *cardiac dulness* is markedly enlarged to the right. There usually is no dulness in the 2nd left interspace

Auscultation shows the following data

a) The 1st sound is loud over the *pulmonic area*. It may be followed by a *snapping sound* in early systole (*opening click of the pulmonic valve*)

b) The 2nd *pulmonic sound* is weak in most of the cases. It may be loud in those caused by vascular alterations of the pulmonary artery

c) There may be an *atrial type of triple rhythm* over the median region of the heart and at the epigastrium (page 370)

d) The most typical sign is a *loud and harsh systolic murmur*. This has a maximum loudness over either the 3rd or the 2nd left interspace. It is transmitted toward the left clavicle and may be heard over the left side of the neck if there is consolidation of the upper lobe of the left lung. It is poorly transmitted toward the cardiac apex and the suprasternal notch (4). It is heard well over the left scapula (14) and the left lung field (14), and is increased by inspiration or by inspiratory apnea (45)

A presystolic sound over the femoral vein at the groin has been described (14)

BLOOD PRESSURE

The blood pressure is usually low. The pulse pressure is somewhat decreased

BLOOD—BLOOD GASES

There may be moderate *polycythemia*. The oxygen saturation of the arterial blood is decreased

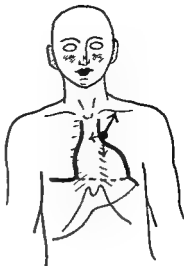


FIG 158 Cardiac dulness and transmission of the systolic murmur in pulmonic stenosis

While the oxygen saturation of the peripheral blood does not change after an exercise test, the amount of oxygen consumed per liter of ventilation falls after exercise (42)

CIRCULATION TIME

Circulation time is increased both in the arm-to-lung and in the arm to periphery tests

GRAPHIC METHODS

Electrocardiogram There is marked *right axis deviation*. There is evidence of *right ventricular hypertrophy* (fig 159) and there may be right bundle branch block. The P wave is often high in leads 2, 3, aVF and especially in V1 (pattern of *right atrial hypertrophy*)

Phonocardiogram The tracings recorded over the second left interspace may show a very high vibration. This is the *opening snap of the pulmonic valve*. It is followed by a series of both high and low pitched vibrations presenting first an increase and then a decrease and resembling the shape of a pulse wave. This is the so called *diamond shaped murmur* (fig 160). However the murmur is sometimes so loud that it includes all systole without any variation of intensity. The

second sound is weak; however if the murmur is loud and prolonged it is difficult to state whether the latter is weak or covered by the murmur.

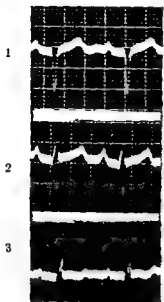


FIG. 159 Electrocardiogram in a child with pulmonic stenosis.

Jugular tracing; hepatic tracing. These tracings may show a high atrial wave.

Epigastric tracing. This tracing shows a high atrial wave and a high but slow initial ventricular wave.

Apex cardiogram. There frequently is a negative systolic wave.

Ilectrolymogram. The border tracing of the pulmonary knob frequently reveals a decreased magnitude of pulsations. However, these may be large in cases with valvular stenosis or associated aneurysm of the pulmonary artery. The densograms of the hilar shadows and especially those of the lungs reveal small or absent pulsations in all cases.

Cardiomanometry. The pressure of the right ventricle is high. Pressures of 65/0 (and even 100/0) have been encountered. On the other hand the pressure of the pulmonary artery is normal or low with values of 12/0 to 20/14. Thus the pressure gradient between right ventricle and pulmonary artery is increased. This is the most significant fact which has diagnostic value in cases of mild and well tolerated stenosis. Pressure tracings of the right atrium may show the existence of extremely high atrial waves due to strong contractions of the right atrium. Mild forms may present a normal pressure of the right ventricle and a low pressure of the pulmonary artery. The gradient is thus increased and is further increased by exercise.

X-RAY

The cardiac silhouette is enlarged and has no typical shape. The right heart is large, the lungs are clear and there is a variable size of the main pulmonary artery. This may be either small (18-20-21) or

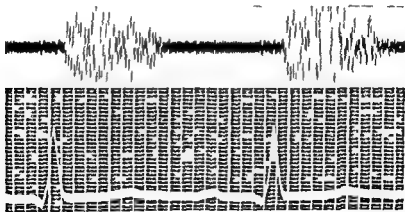


FIG. 160 Sound tracing in a case of pulmonic stenosis.

dilated (12-22) the last being the most common occurrence

The hilar shadows are small or normal but not pulsating. The fine pulmonary network is poorly visible.

Angiocardiography may give important data: a narrow channel may reveal the area of stenosis in the subpulmonic type. The right ventricle is enlarged, the pulmonary artery is either thin or dilated (9) (fig. 161). It is typical to observe a prolonged sojourn of the contrast medium in the right ventricle in comparison with normal hearts.

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGN

The obstacle encountered by the blood flowing from the right ventricle causes dilatation of this chamber and hypertrophy of its wall.

Right ventricular contraction is often somewhat slow as revealed by different tracings. The effect of this will be visible in the higher atrial wave of the venous tracings (jugular hepatic tracings) and of the electrocardiogram. The right ventricular enlargement is revealed by the ECG (right axis deviation) and the X-ray.

The eddies which originate at the point of narrowing cause the systolic murmur.

This has its maximum intensity at mid-systole when the outflow is greatest. The diffusion of the murmur is explained by the transmission of the sound vibrations along the blood stream unless its intensity is such that they are diffused by the bony structures.

The opening click is found mainly in cases following endocarditis. The weak 2nd pulmonary sound is caused by the rigidity of the leaflets of the pulmonary valve. Enlargement of the pulmonary artery is due to post-stenotic dilatation because of the eddies which form beyond the narrowing.

Cyanosis when present is due either to low pressure and slow flow through the lungs or to peripheral factors (heart failure). As there is no mixture of blood between the right and left hearts cyanosis, clubbing and polycythemia are absent or moderate. Moderate failure causes an increase of the residual blood and of the diastolic pressure of the right ventricle. Right atrial pressure also rises.

VARIETIES

A primary distinction should be made between the subpulmonic variety and the others. In the former the thrill and the

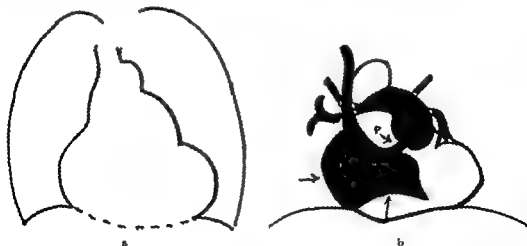


FIG. 161. Cariac silhouette (a) and angiocardiogram of the right heart (b) in pulmonary stenosis. I narrow pulmonary opening (Section b is inspired by originally of Sussman and co-workers).

murmur are lower (3rd left interspace) the pulmonary knob is smaller and the 2nd pulmonic sound is weaker. There is frequently *infantulism*.

In another variety (12, 22, 23) the narrowing of the pulmonic orifice is moderate, the lesion is relatively well tolerated, and the diagnosis is purely clinical. The murmur is heard better when the patient is supine than when he is in the erect position. The T wave of the ECG is high. The pulmonary knob may be full but not prominent. There may be liver engorgement and in the older individuals ascitis and peripheral edema (46). The existence of this syndrome has been confirmed by Dexter through right heart catheterization. Many of these patients have no complaints and reach a normal physical development. However their resistance to physical strain is below normal and they may succumb to bacterial endocarditis. While Cournand considers that normal right ventricular pressure with low pulmonic pressure is the result of a primary dilatation of the pulmonary artery, others believe that the increased gradient of pressure is the result of mild pulmonic stenosis. If the gradient is increased by exercise the second interpretation is probably correct.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The most frequent complications are pulmonary infarction, pulmonary tuberculosis and subacute bacterial endocarditis.

The *infarction* is caused by an embolus starting from that dilated section which is immediately below the stenosis.

Pulmonary tuberculosis has been found in 36 per cent of the cases (13). It is therefore a frequent complication.

Subacute bacterial endocarditis is also fairly common (13). *Heart failure* is inevitable with the exception of the mild stenosis. *Liver cirrhosis* has been frequently found and is attributed to passive liver congestion which is favored by the effects of the valvular lesion (14b, 16) and is later increased by chronic heart failure.

A possible complication is aneurysm of the pulmonary artery.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis should be based on the following data: heart enlarged to the right, systolic thrill and murmur with weak 2nd pulmonic sound, usually prominent pulmonary knob with decreased pulmonary markings, evidence of right ventricular and right atrial hypertrophy in the ECG, exertional dyspnea, frequent absence of clubbing and squatting, only slight cyanosis. In difficult cases catheterization supplies essential data.

Relative stenosis of the pulmonary valve will be discussed later (see below).

A *functional systolic murmur* of the pulmonic area is not accompanied by right heart enlargement or right axis deviation; these signs are present in pulmonary stenosis. In doubtful cases the differential diagnosis between mild pulmonic stenosis and dilatation of the pulmonary artery due to other causes requires catheterization.

Patent ductus arteriosus. This lesion gives a cap of dulness in the 2nd left interspace. The murmur is of a different type (machinery murmur). It occurs in late systole and early diastole or both in systole and diastole (auscultation, phonocardiography). The ECG shows a left axis deviation. The pulse pressure is frequently increased. At x-ray there is marked dilatation of the pulmonary knob and the hilar shadows are large and pulsating. The patients are often pale.

Ventricular septal defect. The murmur is transmitted better toward the right side of the chest. The ECG has no axis deviation. The patient is pale. In some cases however differential diagnosis may be difficult.

Fallot's syndrome and other malformations of the heart. As most of these have a pulmonary stenosis the problem is to exclude the associated lesion. In all of them cyanosis is severe and circulation time is shortened by the shunt (chapter 10).

Pulmonary stenosis caused by adhesive

pericarditis will be discussed later (chapter 20)

TREATMENT

The only effective treatment is surgery. Both the *Blalock Taussig* and the *Potts Gibson techniques* have been advocated but the results have been poor. However *Brocq* (49) described a new method (*valvotomy followed by dilatation*) which seems definitely superior. The instrument is introduced through the right ventricular wall, a double cut is made in the stenotic valve, then dilatation is made. Pulmonic insufficiency may result but is minimal and unimportant on account of the low level of diastolic pressure in the pulmonary artery. Cases with subpulmonic stenosis have also been operated upon. In them the protruding portion of the septum was removed by means of a rongeur. This last intervention is undoubtedly more hazardous and is still under experimentation (49, 50).

If *pulmonary tuberculosis* develops it is primarily the lung rather than the heart which should be treated. *Collapse therapy* is well tolerated if started early and offers the best chance of preserving the life of these patients (24). *Thoracoplasty* is not contraindicated.

When heart failure starts, oxygen is very useful together with drug therapy.

Relative Stenosis of the Pulmonary Valve

This occurs when the pulmonary artery is dilated, causing a trigonoidation of the valvular opening (23) or a relative disproportion between the opening and the vessel. The resulting systolic murmur is the only manifestation. Therefore cyanosis, right heart enlargement, axis deviation and thrill are absent. A dilatation of the pulmonary knob is often present at fluoroscopy.

Double Pulmonic Defect

A double pulmonic defect occurs when *pulmonary stenosis* is associated with pul-

monary insufficiency. It is rare and is always due to endocarditis. Most of the described cases were due to *Pneumococcus* or *Streptococcus* infections and the local signs were overshadowed by severe general symptoms. Rare cases are due to rheumatic fever; multiple valvular lesions are then present (51). A *double murmur over the pulmonic area* is the typical expression of the double defect.

Tricuspid Insufficiency

Tricuspid insufficiency is present when the leaflets of the right atrioventricular opening are incompetent and permit regurgitation of blood from the left ventricle into the right atrium during ventricular systole. Adaptations take place not only in the right heart but also in the venous system and in the liver.

CAUSE

Different causes may determine this lesion.

a) *Congenital*. It consists of the absence or the downward displacement of one leaflet so that one part of the ventricle is not separated from the atrium (13). This is a rare lesion which is usually associated with patency of the foramen ovale (page 278).⁶⁶

b) *Rheumatic*. This is the most common cause.

c) *Bacterial*. It is rare but not exceptional.

d) *An acute myocardial lesion* may lead to stretching of the right atrioventricular opening with irreversible changes and permanent insufficiency (27b).

LESION

Tricuspid insufficiency is extremely rare as a pure defect. It is much more frequent if in combination with tricuspid stenosis, mitral defects, or an atrial septal defect.

The valvular lesions may consist of

⁶⁶ Some authors call the syndrome caused by this lesion *Fistula syndrome*. Actually, such a syndrome is due to the association of the malformation of the tricuspid valve plus the patency of the foramen ovale.

fenestrations or *retraction* of the valves. The shortening of one of the papillary muscles or chordae may cause insufficiency without stenosis.

The heart is enlarged with dilatation and hypertrophy of the right atrium and ventricle. Both venae cavae and the hepatic veins are extremely dilated (fig 162). The liver is large. There frequently is ascites.



FIG 162 Changes of the heart in tricuspid insufficiency

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The patients are *cyanotic*. They complain of *precordial pain* and *palpitation* after effort. Their *dyspnea* is moderate and not proportional to the cyanosis. *Digestive disturbances* and sensation of fullness in the upper right abdominal quadrant are early symptoms. The head of the patient may shake with rhythmic backward movements. This phenomenon is more apparent in the recumbent position and may disappear when sitting (38).

The *jugular veins* are *turgid* and present *intense pulsations*. Occasionally a visible pulsation of the veins of the forearm is present (41). Peripheral edema may be absent or moderate in contrast with the increased size of the abdomen due to *early ascites*.

Local Signs

The precordial area presents a *massive displacement toward the right* at every sys-

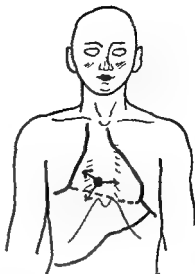


FIG 163 Cardiac dullness and transmission of the systolic murmur in tricuspid insufficiency

tole. The lower part of the right thorax and the upper right quadrant of the abdomen are thrust forward in systole while at the same time the region of the apex is depressed. Thus a *see saw movement* takes place (2, 27).

There is *no thrill*. Palpation of the liver shows that this organ *pulsates strongly* and *expands in systole*.

Percussion reveals that cardiac dullness is enlarged toward the right where the right border often ends with an *oblique cardio-hepatic angle*.

Auscultation reveals a *long soft blowing systolic murmur* having its maximum intensity at the 3rd or 4th right interspace near the sternum and transmitted toward the right clavicle but not toward the apex.

Auscultation of the mouth may reveal a *cog wheel type of respiration* (2b). If the systolic murmur over the tricuspid area is faint or absent *deep inspiration followed by apnea increases its loudness* or causes its appearance while other murmurs become less audible (40). The short inspiratory apnea of crying children obtains the same result.

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram. There is a *right axis deviation*. Atrial fibrillation is common and

occurs early. Ventricular premature beats and attacks of ventricular tachycardia are frequent in the later stages. A peaked and diphasic P wave in lead V1 is frequent in the early stages and reveals right atrial hypertrophy.

Phonocardiogram This tracing records a *systolic murmur in decrescendo* or a *continuous systolic murmur* over the tricuspid area and at the right of the sternum. This murmur is frequently high pitched and becomes louder in inspiration (fig 164). Thus a comparison between tracings taken in inspiration and expiration permits differentiation from a mitral systolic murmur because the latter decreases or remains unchanged in inspiration. Moreover this murmur is louder over the tricuspid area than at the apex: a comparison between the

apical and the tricuspid phonocardiograms excludes a transmitted murmur.

Low frequency tracings The region of the apex has a retraction or backward thrust during ventricular systole. On the other hand there is a systolic forward thrust of the epigastrium, the lower part of the sternum and the right precordial area. This double motion creates a *see saw movement*.

Jugular tracing hepatic tracing Both tracings show a high positive atrial wave (unless atrial fibrillation is present) and a high positive systolic wave. This wave becomes in severe lesions a positive *systolic plateau* similar to a tracing of intra-ventricular pressure (fig 165). When regurgitation is associated with stenosis both the ascending and the descending branch take place later. If the regurgitation is

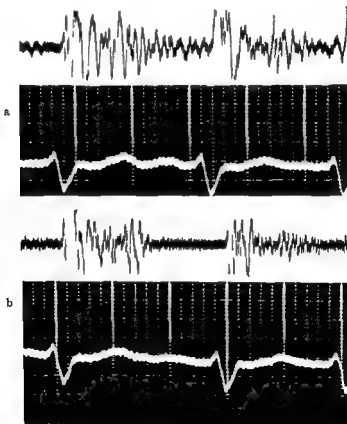


FIG 164 Phonocardiogram recorded over the tricuspid area in a case of tricuspid insufficiency and stenosis. Murmurs louder in inspiration. a inspiratory apnea b expiratory apnea.

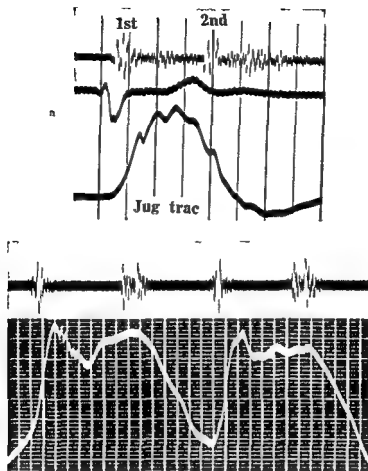


FIG 165 Plateau like positive wave in the jugular tracing (a) and hepatic tracing (b) Tricuspid insufficiency

moderate the wave is more rounded, has a slow rise a peak in late systole and an abrupt descending limb in early diastole. The liver of these patients has been called the systolic liver.

Venous pressure cardiomanometry Venous pressure is usually elevated.

The pressure of the right atrium is slightly elevated and presents a typical increase during ventricular systole. This has been demonstrated both in experimental defects and in clinical cases. The initial tension of the right ventricle is increased but the amplitude of the ventricular pulse pressure is decreased on account of the regurgitation. The pulmonary pulse pressure is decreased on account of reduced ejection of the right ventricle.

Pneumocardiogram There is a deep negative systolic wave (fusion of 11 with 12) followed by a positive early diastolic wave. The succession of the negative and positive waves may cause a very impressive movement of air (cog wheel respiration).

Electrolymography The border tracing of the right atrium in tricuspid insufficiency should present a typical pattern identical to that of the left atrium in mitral insufficiency. Actually the right atrial tracing is so influenced by the contraction of the right ventricle that such a pattern is encountered only in severe regurgitation. In many of the author's cases the liver and the jugular tracing were typical while the electrolymogram was not. When typical the EKG presents a deep prestolic negative wave.

caused by right atrial contraction. This is followed by a large square, positive systolic plateau caused by the blood which flows back into the right atrium during ventricular systole. The plateau resembles a tracing of intraventricular pressure as has been demonstrated by *Marchal*.

ARTERIAL PRESSURE—VENOUS PRESSURE

Arterial pressure is low. pulse pressure is normal. venous pressure is usually increased.

X RAY

The cardiac shadow shows a dilatation of the right heart. The superior vena cava is dilated (20) and expands in systole (28). The right atrium dilates in systole (19). The upper margin of the liver shadow rises at every systole (29-30). The pulmonary fields are clear in contrast with the clinical picture of congestion and in contrast with the picture of mitral patients.

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

The lesion of the tricuspid valve permits regurgitation of blood from the right ventricle into the right atrium during systole. This leads to distention of the right atrium and of the mouths of the venae cavae.

This regurgitation pushes the entire column of blood back into the veins during the phase of ejection. Since the proximity of the hepatic veins to the right atrium is greater than that of the veins of the neck, and gravity adds its effect, the backward flow is largely diverted into the liver. An enlargement of the tubercle of Lower seems to cause a dilatation of the lowest part of the right atrium by deflecting the flow; this is a further cause of dilatation of the hepatic veins (33).

The large veins of the liver and the right atrium pulsate in systole like arteries. Their pulsation however is slower and takes place somewhat later than the arterial because of the damping due to the elasticity of the venoatrial system. This venous pul-

sation is the cause of the rhythmic movements of the head.

As soon as ventricular systole ends a sudden inversion of the flow takes place in the veins; the stream stops then rushes toward the right ventricle with greater speed than in normal subjects.

The fact that the blood leaves the thorax in systole not only through the arteries but also through the veins, leads to a tremendous suction (31) which causes the depression of the left side of the chest and the deep negative waves in the pneumocardiogram. The strong pulsation of the right ventricle and the systolic distention of the liver cause the systolic forward thrust of the right side of the chest and of the right upper abdominal quadrant.

Cyanosis is due to the increased venous pressure caused by the valvular lesion and not to heart failure or pulmonary damage.

The succession of a deep suction followed by emission of air is responsible for the cogwheel type of respiration.

The sudden onrush of blood into the thorax and the heart at the beginning of diastole is the cause of the positive wave of the pneumocardiogram.

The blood regurgitating into the right atrium forms eddies which are the cause of the soft systolic murmur.

The hypertrophy of the right atrium and ventricle is a compensatory element and is the cause of the strong contraction of these chambers. The extreme dilatation of the venae cavae permits regurgitation of blood during atrial contraction. Therefore if sinus rhythm persists a large atrial wave precedes the systolic plateau in the jugular and liver tracings.

Chronic congestion of the liver may exist without heart failure and is an element of compensation. On the other hand it favors ascites and digestive disturbances.

Distention of the right atrium is a cause of functional disturbance of the myocardium which favors early atrial fibrillation.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The most frequent complications are atrial fibrillation ventricular tachycardia pulmonary embolism and aneurysm of the right atrium. Patients with tricuspid insufficiency have a clinical picture of congestion of the venous system which is similar to that of congestive failure. In the early stage this is due to the dynamic effects of the valvular lesion and not to weakness of the myocardium. For this reason the patients may sometimes attend to their usual occupations for a long period with infrequent attacks of dyspnea and no peripheral edema. On the other hand digitalis has only a limited influence on the signs and symptoms unless they are increased by heart failure and by relative insufficiency of the tricuspid. The latter increases the effects of the anatomical lesion.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is based upon right heart enlargement: see saw movement of the chest, systolic pulsation of the jugular veins, possible ascites and a large pulsating liver while there is no pulmonary stasis and no severe peripheral edema.

Differential diagnosis should exclude the following possibilities:

Relative tricuspid insufficiency. This will be considered below.

Tricuspid stenosis. In pure tricuspid stenosis regurgitation of blood is limited or absent. Therefore no systolic pulsation of the liver and veins is present. Enlargement of the right ventricle is moderate. Jaundice is more frequent.

Tricuspid insufficiency plus stenosis is revealed by a more oblique and delayed rise and fall of the systolic plateau in the jugular and hepatic tracings in comparison with the pure insufficiency.

Constrictive pericarditis. This picture will be described later (page 450).

Mitral valve defects. Coronary and arteriosclerotic heart disease. They may have a

picture which is somewhat similar to that of tricuspid insufficiency but only if there is relative insufficiency of this valve (see below). Therefore congestive failure is always present in such patients. Patients with tricuspid insufficiency have no congestion of the lungs unless they are in severe failure.

Prognosis and treatment will be described below (page 275).

Relative Tricuspid Insufficiency

A relative insufficiency of the tricuspid valve may be caused by marked dilatation of the right ventricle. This is frequent during congestive failure in patients with mitral valve defects, adhesive pericarditis, chronic cor pulmonale, coronary heart disease, congenital heart disease and even hypertensive heart disease (32). The insufficiency is caused by stretching of the papillary muscles and dilatation of the opening because of myocardial weakness (figs. 103I and 126).

The movements of the precordium are seldom typical.

The main sign is a soft blowing systolic murmur over the tricuspid area but this is easily confused with a mitral or aortic murmur in the same phase. The hepatic and jugular tracings may present waves which are similar to those of organic insufficiency; this fact however is not constant because high pressure and high tension of the venous walls which permit a rapid transmission of pressure in the organic lesion are not always present here. In milder cases a small and slow drop of the jugular tracing after the c wave may be the only graphic sign (19). Severe relative insufficiency may be accompanied by a typical systolic plateau (page 270).

Tricuspid Stenosis

Tricuspid stenosis is the narrowing of the right atrioventricular opening. The obstacle is before the right ventricle and cause adaptations which are mainly outside the heart.

CAUSE

Two main causes originate tricuspid stenosis

a) 1 *congenital lesion* It is frequently associated with patency of the foramen ovale (page 302)

b) 1 *rheumatic lesion* It usually occurs after recurrent attacks of rheumatic disease. Therefore the association of tricuspid stenosis with mitral stenosis is the rule

LESIONS

Tricuspid stenosis is not rare because it occurs in 20 to 30 per cent of patients with rheumatic heart disease (32-33). However

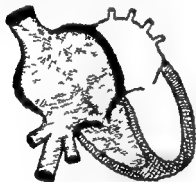


FIG. 166 Changes of the heart and large veins in tricuspid stenosis

most authors call tricuspid stenosis any tricuspid lesions even if it is a double defect with predominant insufficiency (36-37). Therefore the actual frequency of the stenosis is lower than the above quoted figures

The tricuspid leaflets are usually shrunken and partly fused resulting in the formation of a funnel which projects into the right ventricle

The right atrium is dilated and has a thick wall. The rest of the heart shows no changes unless there are other defects (fig. 166)

Both venae cavae are tremendously dilated. The liver is greatly enlarged and presents evidence of cardiac cirrhosis. Ascites is frequent

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

Cyanosis may be present. It may further increase in some periods. It is frequently accompanied by slight jaundice (subicterus) often revealed only by a yellowish tint of the sclerae. The jugular veins are distended. A high presystolic wave may be observed if there is no atrial fibrillation.

The hearts of these patients may have no typical signs except for obtuseness of the cardiohepatic angle

There may be no murmurs caused by the valvular defect. On the other hand a diastolic rumble is often present over the tricuspid area. This often escapes detection because it is confused with a similar murmur of the mitral valve (combined mitral and tricuspid stenosis). It is increased by inspiration.

The lungs are practically normal even in the presence of slight congestive failure

The liver is large and firm. It is not appreciably reduced by digitalis and even mercurial diuretics may not affect its size. The liver may present an appreciable presystolic pulsation. However this is frequently absent either because of hepatic fibrosis or because there is atrial fibrillation.

There frequently is ascites with a pure

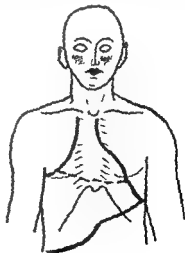


FIG. 16 Cardiac and hepatic dullness in tricuspid stenosis

transudate in the abdominal cavity. *Peripheral edema* may occur but is usually slight and out of proportion to the abdominal signs.

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram The electrocardiogram may present *high P waves*. However atrial fibrillation is often present.

Phonocardiogram The phonocardiogram may reveal the vibrations of a diastolic murmur over the tricuspid area. Comparative tracings show that this murmur is louder and has a lower pitch than the diastolic murmur recorded at the apex more over it increases in inspiratory apnea.

Jugular and hepatic tracings Both the jugular and the hepatic tracings show a *high atrial wave* if sinus rhythm is preserved. This large wave however has no diagnostic value because it may be present in patients having heart failure and right ventricular hypertension without tricuspid stenosis.

Cardiomanometry The pressure of the right atrium is *high* but there is no increase during ventricular systole. Right ventricular pressure is normal or low.

VENOUS PRESSURE

Venous pressure is always elevated

X RAY

The *isolated increase in size of the right atrium* is a typical finding. The right atrial shadow becomes globular and convex (30). The cardiohepatic angle may become obtuse (20). The superior vena cava and the left innominate vein are dilated and opaque. The large right atrium may obscure the lower part of the retrocardiac space in right anterior oblique (30) and frequently *displaces the esophagus toward the left*.

The lungs are clear.

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

The obstacle is placed so far toward the venous system that only the right atrium dilates while the rest of the heart tends to

become smaller. As the efficiency of the right atrium is relatively poor and atrial fibrillation is frequent, no compensatory action of this chamber is possible. Therefore distention of the large venous collectors and of the liver is early and severe. The scarcity of anastomoses between the portal system and the other venous systems is one of the causes of isolated liver enlargement.

The liver seems to act as a reservoir and to limit both the increase of venous pressure and the peripheral edema.

The ascites is caused by slow hepatic circulation, high portal pressure and later by cardiac cirrhosis of the liver.

The frequent absence of a diastolic presystolic murmur is due to the relative weakness of the musculature of the right atrium. A diastolic rumble would be noted more often if other cardiac murmurs would not mask it. However *there frequently is a rumble* which has different graphic characteristics from those of the apical rumble due to mitral stenosis.

The infrequent congestion of the lungs and the moderate severity of the dyspnea are due to the fact that the right ventricle sends a limited amount of blood to the lungs because of difficult filling.

Cyanosis if present is a peripheral cyanosis. It is favored by the high level of venous pressure.

The obtuseness of the cardiohepatic angle is caused by enlargement of the right atrium. This sign may be present only on percussion and not upon x-ray examination or it may occur also in the latter.

PROGNOSIS—COURSE—COMPLICATIONS

The patients usually seem to be in worse condition than they actually are. This is because for many years their signs are the result of a mechanical obstacle and not evidence of myocardial weakness. Therefore these patients are capable of a greater activity than other cardiac patients with the same degree of cyanosis or ascites. However they react poorly to digitalis and only

moderately to diuretics. They usually have a slow progressive course with a gradual downward condition. The course may last many years.

Usual complications are pulmonary embolism, aneurysm of the right atrium, thrombosis of the right atrium and bacterial endocarditis.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is based upon the recognition of a large right atrium with a small or normal right ventricle and a large liver. Incorrect diagnosis of liver cirrhosis is often made. Therefore this possibility must be eliminated first.

Liver cirrhosis The right atrium is small in liver cirrhosis. The veins are thin, venous pressure is low and there is no cyanosis.

Patent foramen ovale Both the right atrium and the right ventricle are large with patency of the foramen while only the right atrium is large in tricuspid stenosis. Usually the liver is not enlarged with patency of the foramen. The pulmonary artery and the hilar shadows appear large at x-ray with patent foramen ovale but not in tricuspid stenosis.

Tricuspid insufficiency This lesion is accompanied by a large right ventricle, a high systolic wave of regurgitation in the jugular and liver tracings and a typical movement of the precordial area.

Constrictive pericarditis The only type which may simulate tricuspid stenosis is that consisting of localized adhesions around the venae cavae. In such cases however the right atrium is small (page 450) and not large as in tricuspid stenosis.

Pericarditis with effusion The obtuseness of the cardiohepatic angle is present both in tricuspid stenosis and in pericarditis. The high venous pressure with absence of murmurs may be common to both. In tricuspid stenosis a mitral lesion is nearly always present. Changes of cardiac dullness in different positions, x-ray (lack of pulsation of the cardiac border, changes of shape

in different positions, etc.) and electrocardiographic (changes of S T and T) data are in favor of effusion.

TREATMENT OF TRICUSPID DEFECTS

Treatment with digitalis or other stimulants of the myocardium usually has little effect on the severity of the clinical signs. Far better results are obtained with *mercurial diuretics* (11, 12) and *ammonium chloride* (13) which promote diuresis. Stimulation of the heart by means of the *glycosides of squill* (10) has been suggested in order to use not only their cardiac action but also their diuretic effect which is greater than that of digitalis (page 589).

Restriction of sodium (or fluids) is often necessary. Periodic administration of *Mg sulfate* may be useful because water is eliminated from the gastrointestinal tract through its action. *Periodic paracenteses* may be necessary when diuresis cannot be increased by means of drugs. *Lenssection* may be useful when venous congestion is severe.

Tricuspid commissurotomy or *fracture of valvular adhesions* has been tried with success in certain cases.

Relative Tricuspid Stenosis

This condition is caused by severe enlargement of the right ventricle with a normal tricuspid valve. It may occur in cases with chronic cor pulmonale. The phonocardiogram reveals the existence of a diastolic rumble which becomes louder in inspiration and therefore simulates the rumble of organic tricuspid stenosis. This possibility is rare because the ostium of the tricuspid valve is usually dilated whenever there is severe right ventricular enlargement.

Double Tricuspid Defect

Double tricuspid defect is common. However either the stenosis or the insufficiency predominates in most cases and the name of double tricuspid defect should be applied

only to those cases in which the two defects are more or less equivalent

The symptoms and signs are more severe than in the single defects as far as enlargement of the liver and ascites are concerned. On the contrary the systolic murmur the right ventricular enlargement the jugular and hepatic pulsations and the movements of the precordial area (all signs of tricuspid insufficiency) are less severe being limited by the stenosis

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 a) SCHWARTZ S P *Am Heart J* 1927 2 407
- b) SCHWARTZ S P AND SCHELLING D H *Am Heart J* 1931 5 568
- 2 DRESSLER W *Die Brustwandpulsationen* Wien Maudrich 1933
- 3 BRYANT Quoted by ROBINSON G C In *Nelson's Loose Leaf Medicine* New York Nelson vol IV
- 4 LUISADA A A *Rass Internaz Clin Ter (Naples)* 1931 18 \ 16 and 17
- 5 GERHARDT *Charité Ann* 1892 92
- 6 a) PEZZI C AND SILINGARDI S *Soc Méd Hôp* 1925 49 117
- b) PEZZI C *Cuore e Circ (Rome)* 1927 11 381
- 7 HARVIER P AND CO WORABER *Paris Méd* 1937 27 397
- 8 WHITE P D *J A M A* 1928 90 603
- 9 SUBBMAN M I GRISHMAN A AND STEINBERG M F *Am J Dis Child* 1943 66 922
- 10 STEELL G *Med Chron* 1888-89 9 187
- 11 ARRILLAGA F *La Iriteritis Pulmonar* Buenos Aires Garcia 1925
- 12 VAQUEZ H *Les Maladies du Coeur* Paris Baillière 1928
- 13 ABBOTT M E *Nelson's Loose Leaf Medicine* vol IV 1943
- 14 a) GIORDANO C *Min Med (Turin)* 1927 8 1197
- b) CURRENS J H KINNEY T D AND WHITE P D *Am Heart J* 1945 30 491
- c) MICHFLI Quoted by GIORDANO
- 15 LIAN C AND WELTI G G *Arch Mal Coeur* 1937 30 916
- 16 CURRENS J H KINNEY T D AND WHITE P D *Am Heart J* 1915 30 491
- 17 SCHWITKFR M A *Electrocardiography in Congenital Heart Disease* Cambridge Harvard Univ Press 1940
- 18 GROEDEL F M Quoted by ATTINGER (21)
- 19 GROEDEL F M *Exper Med & Surg* 1945 3 196
- 20 AS MANA H *Die klinische Roentgendia nostik der inneren Erkrankungen* Leipzig Vogel 1924
- 21 ATTINGER E *Schweiz med Woch* 1936 66 1056
- 22 LAUBRY C AND PEZZI C *Les Maladies Congenitales du Coeur* Paris Baillière 1921
- 23 BÉNAUD R *Bull Soc Méd Hôp Paris* 1936 52 643
- 24 ALERBACH O AND STENNERMAN M G *Am J M Sci* 1944 207 219
- 25 CHISHOLM D R *Am Heart J* 1937 13 36
- 26 LUISADA A A *Arch Pat Clin Med (Turin)* 1936 18 404
- 27 a) FISCHER R *Wien klin Woch* 1933 46 1544
- b) DRESSLER W *Arch Int Med* 1937 60 441
- 28 DIETLEN H *Herz und Gefaesse im Roentgenbild* 1923
- 29 HITZENBERGER K *Wien Arch inn Med* 1924 5 451 and 1924 9 205
- 30 ROESLER H *Clinical Roentgenology of the Cardiovascular System* Springfield Thomas 1943
- 31 LANG G *Deut Arch klin Med* 1912 108 35
- 32 COOKE W T AND WHITE P D *Brit Heart J* 1941 3 147
- 33 DRESSLER W AND FISCHER R *Klin Woch* 1929 7 1267 and 1316
- 34 a) ALTSCHULE M D AND BLUMGART H I *Am Heart J* 1937 13 580
- b) ALTSCHULE M D AND BLUMGART H I *Arch Path* 1940 30 "
- 35 SMITH J A AND LEVINE S A *Am Heart J* 1942 23 739
- 36 TCHERWINSKY I *Zeit Kreislauff* 1930 22 177
- 37 CATALDI C M *Arch Sci Med* 1934 58 205
- 38 COLO I AND MARGLERY F E *El Dia Med (Buenos Aires)* 1945 17 \ 40
- 39 ELLIS G \ AND BROWN \ W *Am Heart J* 1916 11 369
- 40 RIVERO CARVALLO J M *Arch Inst Card Mexico* 1946 16 531 Also *Am Heart J* 1947 34 114
- 41 LEVINE S A *Clinical Heart Disease* Philadelphia Saunders 1937
- 42 BING R J AND CO WORKER M O *Cong Cardio Dis* 1945 17 \ 3

- 43 PARKER R L *Med Clin North America* 1948 July 855
- 44 POTTS W J AND GIBSON E J A M A 1948 137 313
- 45 CHAVEZ I AND RIVERO CARVALLO J M *Arch Int Amer Card y Hem* 1935 5 115
- 46 TAUSSIG H B *Congenital Malformations of the Heart* New York Commonwealth Fund 1946
- 47 MESSER A L HLST J W RAPPAPORT M B AND SPRAGUE H B *Circ* 1950 1 388
- 48 GLOVER R P BAILEY C P AND O'NEILL T J E J A M A 1950 144 1049
- 49 BROCK R C AND CAMPBELL M *Brit Heart J* 1950 12 347 and 403
- 50 FRIEDBERG C K *Diseases of the Heart* Saunders Philadelphia and London 1949
- 51 HYMAN A L AND CO WORKERS *Ann Int Med* 1951 31 90

Simple Shunts Between the Greater and the Lesser Circulations

Simple shunts are those lesions which permit a more or less complete mixture of blood between the greater and lesser circulations without valvular lesions or complex malformations. The shunts are due to septal defects or communication between the aorta and the pulmonary artery.

Atrial Septal Defects⁵⁷

The clinical picture is caused by the absence of complete closure or secondary perforation of the septum. An abnormal communication between the atria and in some cases their fusion into a single cavity is the result.

CAUSE

a) There may be *lack of development* of the atrial septum.

b) The most common cause is a congenital abnormality consisting of the persistence of the *foramen primum* or of the *foramen secundum* or of *various small openings* in the atrial septum.

c) Postnatal nonclosure or subsequent reopening of the *foramen ovale*.

d) Secondary perforation of the atrial septum following bacterial endocarditis has been described in rare cases.

The congenital types of septal defects are twice as frequent in females as in males (37).

LESIONS—MECHANISM

The following lesions may be present:

a) *A complete absence of the atrial septum*.

⁵⁷ Some authors exclude *patent foramen ovale* from the atrial septal defects. From a dynamic point of view it should be included.

there is only one atrial cavity, sometimes rudimentary septal formations are present (*cor triloculare biventriculosum*).

b) *Large opening or multiple small defects* in the atrial septum.

c) *The foramen ovale is patent*.

Small openings in the septum have no clinical significance. Therefore importance is attributed only to a foramen of at least 5 mm in diameter open to blood flow in both directions. There may be a wide opening or a hole which is surrounded by a thick ring or is bordered by a membrane in the upper part.

One type of lesion is due to changes taking place during early fetal life. In this total or partial absence of the septum or persistence of the *foramen primum* (page 9) at the base of the atrial septum is present. There is severe dilatation of the right heart involving both the atrium and the ventricle. There is *dilatation of the pulmonary artery* which may be of high degree. In contrast the aorta is often thin and poorly developed (2).

A second type of lesion is actually *postnatal* because there is patency of the *foramen ovale* which normally closes soon after birth (page 9). In this group of cases usually the only abnormal finding is a *moderate dilatation of the right atrium* (fig 168). Anatomically patent but functionally closed *foramen ovale* occurs in about 20 per cent of adults and is asymptomatic unless the pressure becomes higher in the right atrium.

Abnormalities of the mitral valve (2) the pulmonary veins and the inferior vena cava (3) have been described. The pulmonary veins may open either into the right atrium or into the superior vena cava. The inferior

vena cava may open at the level of the foramen and therefore may be in communication with both atria. Absence of the septum may be associated with mongolism (2) or arachnodactylia (37).

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

Complete absence of the atrial septum is rarely compatible with life. However there are cases, children as well as adults, where this severe abnormality is present without associated lesions and is relatively well tolerated. All signs including cyanosis may be absent in this severe lesion.

In all other atrial septal defects the symptoms and signs are similar because the difference is purely structural. However the size of the foramen is important; the larger it is the more severe is the clinical picture. These patients may have no symptoms whatsoever. In many cases the lesion is unrecognized during the greater part of life and is revealed only accidentally or by autopsy. This however does not exclude the possibility of clinical signs. A frail build is frequent (gracile habitus). Dwarfism and infantilism are not exceptional. Onset of puberty is often delayed.

Pallor is often present due to hypoplasia of the aorta or passage of blood from the left to the right atrium. Cyanosis is usually absent but may occur late in life. There may be intermittent cyanosis occurring in the form of attacks which are not accompanied by the usual signs of congestive failure. In some cases the cyanosis is due to a late opening of the foramen ovale because of right atrial hypertension (4).

Intermittent dyspnea is an early symptom. Tracheal tug is possible and caused by pressure of the large pulmonary artery on the bifurcation of the trachea or left bronchus. Upper respiratory infections are common. Chronic bronchitis is not unusual.

A well known sign is the so called paradoxical embolism which is better defined as crossed embolism. Patients with phlebitis suddenly show a cerebral embolism. This oc-

currence however is proof of atrial septal defect only if other communications between the greater and lesser circulations can be excluded. As the blood usually goes from the left to the right atrium (fig. 168) crossed embolism is possible only when right atrial pressure is abnormally high. This may be caused by acute cor pulmonale after a previous pulmonary embolism (5) or by a transitory increase of venous return (effort straining, Valsalva).

It should be noted that transitory reversals of the blood flow through the shunt are more common than in other septal defects (37).

Blood pressure may be low; pulse pressure reduced.

Hemoptysis is a frequent symptom and hoarseness has been reported.

Local Signs

There may be bulging of the precordial region. The apex beat may be displaced toward the left. In severe cases percussion reveals enlargement of the heart toward the right and an obtuse cardiohepatic angle. There may be a thrill over the 2nd and 3rd left inter-spaces.

There may be no murmurs. A presystolic murmur may be due in rare cases to blood passing through the foramen. However its finding is unusual. A systolic murmur is commonly heard over the pulmonary area.



FIG. 168. Changes of the heart and blood flow in atrial septal defect.

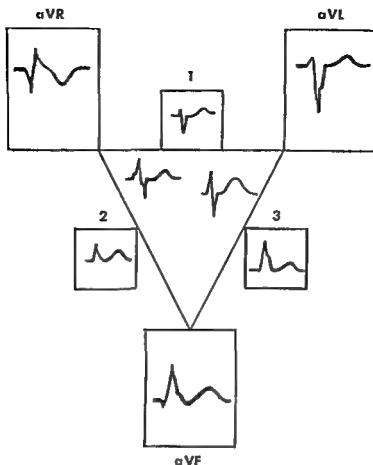


FIG 169 Scheme of electrocardiogram in a case of large atrial septal defect

It seems due to the dilatation of the pulmonary artery (*relative stenosis*) The 2nd pulmonary sound is loud and frequently split a fact which should be related to the existence of bundle branch block There frequently is a diastolic rumble at the apex simulating mitral stenosis (*relative mitral stenosis*, page 237) There may be a short early diastolic murmur over the pulmonary area due to either fibrosis of the leaflets or high pressure (45)

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

The electrocardiogram presents in a great majority of cases a *right bundle branch block* (47) (fig 169) There may be right axis deviation (7 8) The P wave is often high in leads I and II and has the type of *right atrial hypertrophy* in V_1 , V_2 (47) (page 369) However atrial fibrillation is frequent The T

wave may be inverted in leads 2 and 3 There may be a long P R interval (37)

The jugular and hepatic tracings may show a high presystolic wave if there is sinus rhythm The same is true for the electrolymogram of the right atrial border

X RAY

If the opening is large the heart is markedly enlarged and has a *globular shape*, dilatation of the pulmonary knob and poor visibility of the aortic knob are apparent If the opening is small there is dilatation of the right atrium and enlargement of the pulmonary knob this is in contrast to the small aortic knob (9 10) (fig 170) Enlargement of the heart toward the left due to the fact that the enlarged right heart displaces the apex is possible (6)

The hilar shadows are dilated and show a

strong pulsation. The vascular markings of the lungs are quite visible and are wide spread.

Angiocardiography may show one of the two following possibilities: a) The contrast medium upon reaching the right atrium is diluted by the stream of blood due to the left to right shunt and does not give a satisfactory visualization of the right heart. b) If the pressure of the right atrium is so increased by the injection as to cause an inversion of the stream through the shunt the medium passes into the left atrium and causes early visualization of the aorta (11).

CATHETERIZATION

Catheterization of the right heart reveals that the oxygen content of the right atrium is higher than that of the superior vena (13-36-39). This increased saturation then continues into the right ventricle and pulmonary artery. Example:

	O ₂ %
Superior vena	11.5
Right atrium	13.8
Right ventricle	13.6
Pulmonary artery	13.7

The pressure may be elevated in the right atrium, right ventricle and pulmonary artery and may reach 140 mm Hg in extreme cases, possibly on account of secondary changes in the pulmonary vessels (38). On the other hand it may be normal. Pulmonary flow usually exceeds systemic flow but the opposite may occur (36).

Catheterization may give doubtful data as to whether the shunt is from right to left, whether the flow through the foramen is minimal, whether there is no effective mixture within the right atrium or whether there are associated lesions.

CIRCULATION TIME—BLOOD GASES

The various tests usually give doubtful results. Either passing in minute amounts through the shunt may give tingling or stinging sensations of the head and face of



FIG. 170 X-ray silhouette of the heart in a case with atrial septal defect (frontal view). Large right heart and dilated pulmonary artery (From Brumlik.)

a few seconds' duration. This arm to face time may be as short as the arm to lung time (46).

Oxygen saturation of the arterial blood is usually normal. However, pulmonary complications, heart failure or exertion (including the various exercise tests) may lead to inversion of the flow through the shunt. Then oxygen saturation falls (36).

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

The left atrium has normally a slightly higher pressure than the right. This fact is due to greater distensibility of the right atrium and of the veins of the greater circulation (48-50). This gradient of pressure causes passage of a certain amount of blood saturated with oxygen from the left to the right atrium. The increase of flow leads to dilatation and hypertrophy of the chambers of the right heart (fig. 171). The large pulmonary artery and the small aorta are due to the fact that pulmonary flow is greater than systemic flow.

No cyanosis normally occurs. However, transitory conditions (attacks of laughing, crying, or coughing, straining at stool, increased inflow) or a lasting increase of pressure in the right heart (acute or chronic

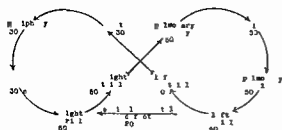


FIG 171 Scheme of the blood flow in a case with atrial septal defect

cor pulmonale) may cause an inversion of the stream with passage of blood unsaturated with oxygen from right to left. Cyanosis then appears.

The problem of whether a small amount of blood also passes from the right to the left atrium cannot be solved in general. Some cases have a two directional flow either because of nearly equal pressure within the two atria or because of a large opening.

The murmur which is present over the pulmonic area is probably a murmur of relative stenosis (page 267).

In the complete absence of the interatrial septum a certain percentage of the blood coming from the venae cavae flows into the left atrium. But the proportion of the blood, not saturated with oxygen which remains in the left atrium may not be sufficient to cause cyanosis. This shows that the two atria maintain a definite individuality even when the septum is lacking (1) unless the pressure is raised in the right atrium.

The occurrence of a crossed embolism is still a rather obscure phenomenon. It has been explained as the result of the passage of blood from right to left during most of diastole (excepting pre-systole). This fact however does not seem likely as the difference in pressure between the two atria is not due to a difference in the strength of contraction. It is possible that a pulmonary embolism occurs first. This increases the pressure in the right heart and decreases the pressure in the left. A change in the normal gradient of atrial pressures may result so that a subsequent embolus may pass through the septum from right to left (15-5a).

The right bundle branch block is favored by the distention of the right ventricle with subsequent fibrosis. It explains the frequent splitting of the 2nd pulmonic sound (page 379).

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

If the atrial septal defect is uncomplicated, the course may be long as proven by the fact that the lesion may be found in autopsies of old people. Sometimes short periods of cyanosis are separated by years of perfect health but usually the first symptoms appear in late middle age.

Severe disturbance may occur if pulmonary disease raises the pressure of the right heart. Congestive failure favored by myocardial fibrosis increases the pressure in both atria chiefly in the right favors an inversion of the stream passing through the shunt and causes severe cyanosis.

Pulmonary congestion and chronic pulmonary edema occur frequently.

Rheumatic endocarditis develops in a high percentage of cases (37). The typical lesions may be localized not only on the cardiac valves but also on the ring of the congenital lesion. The association of a mitral valve lesion with an atrial septal defect gives a new syndrome with typical picture (Lutembacher's syndrome page 304). Pneumonia and chronic pulmonary infections are frequent. Thrombosis of the right atrium followed by pulmonary embolism is a frequent complication (37).

Subacute bacterial endocarditis is not uncommon and the lesions are usually localized on the ring of the foramen.

Atrial fibrillation is a frequent and early complication. The return to normal rhythm is more difficult than in other diseases because of chronic distention of the right atrium followed by fibrosis of the wall.

Atherosclerosis of the pulmonary artery and its branches often occurs. The dilatation of the pulmonary artery may become an aneurysm and cause various signs and symptoms (page 484).

Atrial septal defect is a less severe lesion than other congenital heart diseases as shown by the fact that it is often encountered in old age. However some patients suffer from infections and are generally less resistant than normal people. When there is absence of or a large opening in the atrial septum complications are more frequent and death occurs at a younger age.

DIAGNOSIS

The typical picture is the following: stunted growth, frequent bronchitis, right heart enlargement, systolic murmur and loud 2nd sound over pulmonic area, right bundle branch block and high P waves, large pulmonary knob with high pulsations of the hilum and increased pulmonary markings.

Crossed embolism is of diagnostic value only if there is no congestive failure and the patient has a phlebitis. Even then it is only indicative of a septal defect in general.

Ventricular septal defect can be excluded only if there is no systolic thrill and no systolic murmur. Otherwise catheterization is necessary. The heart is more rounded in this lesion than in atrial septal defect.

Pulmonary stenosis This lesion can be excluded when no thrill and murmur over the second left interspace are noted. On the other hand differential diagnosis is necessary when a *systolic murmur* is present over that area. Marked right ventricular hypertrophy is present in pulmonary stenosis and the second pulmonic sound is weak. In atrial septal defect right bundle branch block is nearly constant, the second pulmonic sound is loud and frequently split. The hilar shadows have decreased pulsations and the vascular markings are poorly visible in pulmonary stenosis. The electrokymogram of the pulmonary artery reveals a late slow and frequently small pulsation in pulmonary stenosis, a large and rapid pulsation in atrial defect. Catheterization shows a higher content of oxygen in the right atrium than in the superior vena in the atrial de-

fect. It shows an increased gradient of pressure between right ventricle and pulmonary artery in pulmonary stenosis.

Patent ductus arteriosus This lesion should be discussed only when the pulmonary artery is markedly dilated and the murmur is atypical. Phonocardiography usually permits the recording of a late systolic-early diastolic murmur in patency of the ductus. The pulmonic murmur which may be present in atrial septal defects is nearly always diamond shaped and frankly systolic. The electrocardiogram reveals left axis deviation or normal axis in patent ductus, right axis deviation and nearly always right bundle branch block in atrial defects. Catheterization gives decisive data in doubtful cases.

Mitral stenosis The absence of a diastolic rumble and of a presystolic murmur plus the presence of right atrial enlargement are against this diagnosis. However cases with *relative stenosis of the mitral valve* (page 237) and cases with *Lutembacher's syndrome* (page 304) are of more difficult exclusion. Here again catheterization is needed.

Complex congenital heart diseases are at times excluded with difficulty. However severe cyanosis, thrills and murmurs are usually present in them.

Constrictive pericarditis This lesion causes an early enlargement of the liver, often with ascites. In atrial septal defects the enlargement of the liver occurs during congestive failure and is not accompanied by ascites.

Tricuspid valve lesions There is early engorgement of the liver, frequently accompanied by ascites; there is very little pulmonary congestion and no orthopnea. The opposite is true in atrial septal defects. Atrial fibrillation occurs earlier in atrial septal defects than in tricuspid lesions. A pulsating liver is a sign of tricuspid insufficiency.

Errant pulmonary veins opening into the right atrium may give findings similar to atrial septal defects. Catheterization and angiocardiology may not be helpful in these cases. It should be kept in mind that the association of this pulmonary abnormal-

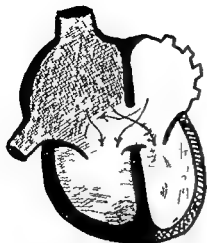


FIG. 172 Changes of the heart and blood flow in the persistent common atrioventricular orifice

ity with the atrial defect is not unusual and complicates the diagnostic roentgenological and surgical problems. An accurate roentgenological study, however, usually reveals the aberrant insertion of the veins (51).

PROGNOSIS

If there is no cyanosis the prognosis is good. If there is cyanosis while other signs of congestive failure are absent the prognosis is fair. If congestive heart failure also occurs the outlook is poor.

TREATMENT

Surgical closure of the atrial defect is possible. Anteroposterior compression by means of suture (52), direct closure through a rubber well temporarily connected with the left atrium (53), and suture by invagination of the redundant atrial wall (54) have been advocated. It should be kept in mind that patients with secondary arteriosclerosis of the pulmonary vessels and patients with aberrant insertion of a pulmonary vein may not benefit from the intervention.

Persistent Common Atrioventricular Orifice (37-55)

CAUSE—LESION

This congenital abnormality is due to an early arrest of development of the heart

before the completion of the atrial and ventricular septa. As a result of the communication the leaflets of the mitral and tricuspid valve are fused together to form a single atrioventricular valve with four leaflets. In rarer cases two separate septal defects are present, one in the atrial septum, the other in the ventricular, and the valves are normal. Some admixture of blood occurs in both the atria and the ventricles but more in the former than in the latter, the atrial orifice being larger (fig. 172).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Almost invariably the patient is a mongolian idiot.

Cyanosis is usually slight and may be absent. There is no clubbing of the fingers and toes. The heart is slightly enlarged to the right. There are a *systolic thrill* and a *systolic murmur* which are similar to those of ventricular septal defect as far as type and location.

A *ray* reveals a slight enlargement of the right atrium and ventricle.

The *electrocardiogram* is not typical and prevents right axis deviation.

Oxygen saturation of the arterial blood is low.

DIAGNOSIS

Differential diagnosis should be made chiefly with atrial and ventricular septal defects. Angiocardiography and catheterization of the heart seldom give decisive data. The association of the above described picture with mongolism should lead to suspicion of this malformation.

Ventricular Septal Defects

The clinical syndrome is caused by the absence of incomplete closure or rupture of the ventricular septum. The communication between the two ventricles may be so large as to create a single ventricular cavity. If there is a small low opening the syndrome is called *Roger's disease* (16).

CAUSE—LESIONS

There are two types of septal defects the congenital and the acquired

1) *Congenital defects* Different varieties are created by the location of the shunt the size of the opening and the associated lesions

- a) High septal defect (fig 174)
- b) Low septal defect
- c) Large septal defect
- d) Absence of the ventricular septum (or *trilocular biatriatum*)
- e) Septal defect plus incompetence of the tricuspid or the aortic valve
- f) Septal defect plus subaortic stenosis or aortic hypoplasia

In many of the cases the defect has a diameter of 10 to 15 mm with a smooth border The border however may be irregular either because of subsequent rupture or as a result of secondary endocarditis There may be a small perforation of the septum either in the lower part or near the base this has usually a diameter of 3 to 10 mm The aortic valve may be incompetent The congenital defect is due to an abnormal development in the region of the bulbus cordis and is probably associated with a faulty torsion of the primitive cardiac tube (pages 9 and 310)

The heart is globular with rounded apex and enlargement of both ventricles



FIG 173 Changes of the heart and cardiac dynamics in ventricular septal defect

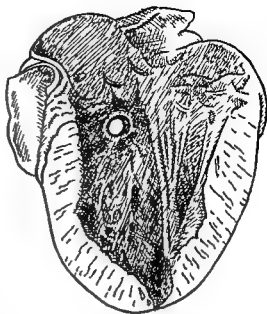


FIG 174 View of the perforated septum in a case of high ventricular septal defect (Inspired by originals of Paul D White)

2) *Acquired defects* They may be due to the following causes

- a) *Rupture of an abscess* (acute purulent myocarditis possibly during acute bacterial endocarditis) or *rupture of a fibrotic plaque*
- b) *Softening of a gumma* (subacute luetic myocarditis)
- c) *Recent myocardial infarction*

A special variety occurs when the rupture causes communication between left ventricle and right atrium

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Ventricular septal defect is usually well tolerated in children as well as in adults may cause no appreciable symptoms and its discovery may be accidental However a certain mortality reduces the number of cases during childhood

In general *cyanosis dyspnea and clubbing* are absent (18) However this is not always true especially in the case of a large septal defect

Cyanosis is frequently present when the interventricular septum is absent but even

then is not necessarily severe *Hemoptysis* is not rare. The *pulse* may be small. *Crossed embolism* is possible.

Local Signs

An *epigastric pulsation* is sometimes visible.

Palpation reveals a *systolic thrill* having its maximal intensity in the 3rd left inter space transmitted towards the right. Percussion shows a slight increase of the transverse diameter so that the area of cardiac dulness becomes nearly round.

On auscultation a *systolic murmur* is always heard. It is loud and harsh and may obscure the 1st heart sound. It has its maximal intensity in the 3rd and 4th left inter spaces near the sternum and is transmitted in all directions but chiefly toward the right (fig 17a). Transmission toward the left axilla, the suprasternal notch (20) and along the carotid arteries (18) is poor at least in adults. The murmur is loudest with defects of medium size and may be absent in the absence of the ventricular septum. The *Valsalva test* is said to decrease it (21). A *diastolic murmur* due to associated aortic incompetence is audible in some of the cases. The 2nd *pulmonic sound* is usually loud and may be split. A *triple rhythm* is frequently heard at the apex.

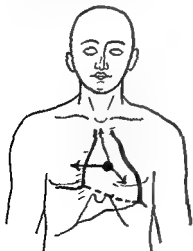


FIG 17a. Cardiac dulness and transmission of the murmur in ventricular septal defect.

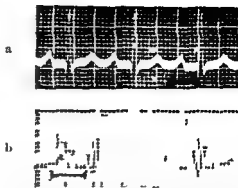


FIG 17b. Electrocardiograms in two cases of ventricular septal defect. In both cases there is prolonged P. In case b there is intraventricular block.

BLOOD PRESSURE

Arterial pressure is usually normal. Venous pressure is also normal.

BLOOD

No polycythemia is present except in some cases where there is complete absence of the septum. Oxygen saturation of the arterial blood is usually normal.

Circulation time. Both the arm to lung (ether) and the arm to periphery tests (decho lin) give doubtful results or a double reaction. By the lung to ear test (inert gas) circulation time is shorter (page 157).

CATHETERIZATION

The pressure of the right ventricle is higher than normal especially in the high septal defects. The oxygen content in this chamber is significantly higher than in the right atrium (13b, 36). The flow of the pulmonary artery exceeds that of the systemic circulation.

GRAPHIC RECORDS

The electrocardiogram may be absolutely normal but slight right axis deviation is common. Intraventricular block changes of the S T and T prolongation of the P R interval or complete heart block are frequently encountered (fig 17b). They are due how

** In high septal defects the increased amount of oxygen may be found only in the pulmonary artery.

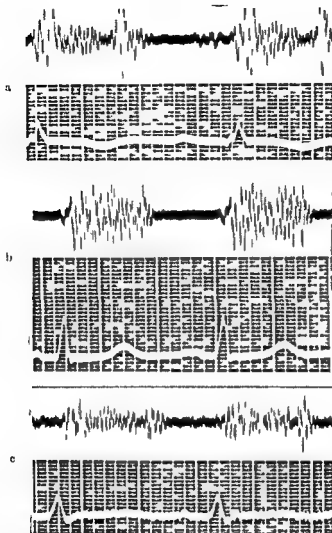


FIG 1.—The systolic murmur recorded by sound tracings in cases of ventricular septal defect: a man of 30—congenital defect; b woman of 25—congenital defect; c woman of 67—perforation of the septum after myocardial infarction (p.m. control).

ever to an association of lesions and may be absent.

The *phonocardiogram* shows a series of large and slightly irregular vibrations (fig 177). The murmur may be *diamond shaped* or *irregular*. It may be mid-systolic, late systolic, or all systolic.⁵⁹ A *split 2nd pulmonary sound* and a *triple rhythm* at the apex are frequently recorded.

*Phonocardiography may permit an exact diagnosis even during fetal life (3).

X RAY

The heart shadow is *globular* with increase of both diameters (fig 178). In some cases however the heart is either normal or slightly dilated toward the right. There may be only an *increased amplitude of ventricular systole* (24) which is confirmed by *roentgen kymography* (25).

The left atrium is somewhat enlarged. The *pulmonary knob* is normal in the small perforation (Roger's syndrome) but is *dilated*

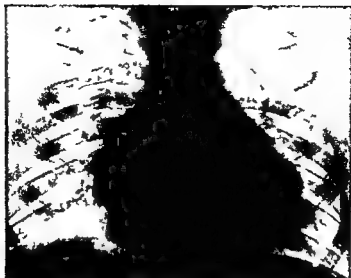


FIG 178 Cardiac silhouette in a case of ventricular septal defect

if there is a large high septal defect (37) this dilatation may even reach the size of an aneurysm and be accompanied by visible pulsations of the pulmonary parenchyma. The hilar shadows are large and pulsating and the pulmonary markings are increased in cases with severe increase of pulmonary flow and pulmonic hypertension.

Electrokymography There is a pulse wave of the pulmonary arch which is higher than normal but not higher than the aortic wave; the hilar and pulmonary pulses are higher than normal. The speed of the pulse wave in the pulmonary circulation is normal or only slightly increased (40). The pulsations of both ventricles are increased.

Angiocardiography In certain cases angiocardigraphy reveals the shunt as a *clear spot within the right ventricular shadow* (11) (fig 179).

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

The higher systolic pressure of the left ventricle causes systolic passage of blood only from the left to the right ventricle. Only a minimal passage of blood takes place during diastole. As the blood passing through the septum is saturated with oxygen, the oxygen content of the blood in the right ventricle and pulmonary artery increases. In the high septal defect, the blood may

be shunted directly into the pulmonary artery so that the changes are observed only in the latter.

The right ventricle is dilated and hypertrophied. Pulmonary arterial pressure is increased by flow through the shunt and by increased diastolic length of the fibers of the right ventricle (56). Active pulmonary congestion is caused by increased flow through the lesser circulation.

Both the systolic thrill and the systolic murmur are caused by the stream of blood through the septal defect and are typically transmitted toward the right side of the chest.

Hemoptysis is favored by high pressure of the pulmonary circulation. Dyspnea is favored by the same factor.

The alterations of conduction (long P R and a block) are due to *associated abnormalities of the bundle of His* and are not secondary to the defect. This is proven by cases of complete absence of the septum and normal conduction due to the fact that the bundle of His had developed along the posterior wall of the single ventricular chamber (27).

VARIETIES

In addition to the more typical cases there are others in which the thrill is absent and the murmur is faint. In these cases

even the x ray and electrocardiographic signs may not be typical. A λ block may lead one to suspect a ventricular septal defect.

The acquired septal defects always have a sudden onset and usually are accompanied by a loud murmur with typical transmission.

When the communication takes place between the left ventricle and right atrium the systolic may be followed by an early diastolic and possibly by a presystolic murmur.

From a roentgenological point of view two varieties can be observed:

- a) That with a normal pulmonary artery
- b) That with a large pulmonary artery (high septal defect)

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The disease is often silent and permits an active life. In some cases pregnancy and labor may be normal except for the occasional occurrence of slight cyanosis. Therefore the disease may be an accidental finding at any age.

If an increase in the pressure of the right heart occurs severe cyanosis may appear. Inversion of the blood stream through the septal defect is frequent during coughing and may cause attacks of cyanosis.

Pulmonary diseases are favored by the congestion of the pulmonary circulation existing in this condition. They increase the severity of cyanosis and dyspnea. Pneumonia causes a higher mortality.

Pulmonary arterio-sclerosis followed by secondary chronic cor pulmonale is a possible complication.

Endocarditis is a possible complication. Rheumatic endocarditis may occur with localization on the mitral valve or on the valves of the right heart or on the border of the defect. Acute or subacute bacterial endocarditis is frequent. The bacteria lodge around the septal ring and in that part of the right ventricle where the shunted blood hits the cardiac wall forming typical vegetations. If the septal defect is high the vegetations may be located in the pulmonary cone just below the pulmonary orifice (37). Pul-

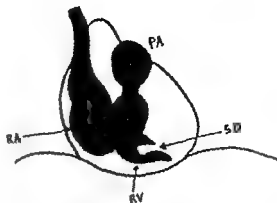


FIG 1-9 Angiocardiogram of the right heart in ventricular septal defect. The septal defect (SD) is represented in a white gap (inspired by originals of Surman, Grishman and Steinberg.)

monary emboli are frequently caused by these masses.

Congestive failure may occur causing dyspnea, venous and hepatic engorgement, severe cyanosis or peripheral edema.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is based on the thrill, the systolic murmur with typical transmission and the x ray findings. The electrocardiogram is sometimes of help (prolonged P R and λ block). The absence of cyanosis, clubbing and polycythemia is important. In the adult the diagnosis of congenital heart disease will be made only after exclusion of acquired valvular defects.

In difficult cases angiocardiography, catheterization of the heart and lung to lung circulation tests give positive data.

Differential diagnosis should be made with the following conditions:

Relative mitral stenosis. The thrill, the enlarged heart and the localization of the murmur are differential data. The murmur of relative mitral stenosis can be frequently recorded over a larger area of the precordium.

Mitral stenosis. In ventricular septal defect a triple rhythm can be heard at times due to an additional diastolic sound. In mitral stenosis if there is a triple rhythm this is due to an opening snap of the mitral

valve (differentiation possible in graphic tracings page 231) Otherwise there is a low pitched diastolic rumble different from a triple rhythm. The left atrium is more dilated in mitral stenosis than in ventricular septal defect.

Mitral insufficiency The murmur is loud est over the mid precordium and is transmitted toward the right in Roger's disease. It is loudest at the apex and is transmitted toward the left axilla in mitral insufficiency. The murmur is louder and harsher in Roger's disease. *Enlargement of the left atrium may be present in both but its systolic dilatation (EKG) is typical of mitral insufficiency.*

Tricuspid insufficiency Changes of the jugular and liver tracings and x ray data showing systolic distention of the right atrium and of the liver are typical of tricuspid insufficiency and absent in ventricular septal defect.

Aortic stenosis This lesion causes a systolic thrill and murmur which may be loudest at the 3rd left interspace. However there is enlargement of the left ventricle, slow apex beat, *anacrotic pulse*, transmission of the thrill and murmur to the suprasternal notch and to the carotid arteries and *left axis deviation*. The phonocardiogram shows the vibrations of a diamond shaped murmur. The 2nd aortic sound is weak in aortic stenosis, loud in ventricular defects.

Pulmonary stenosis Murmur and thrill may be localized over the 3rd left interspace but they are transmitted upwards to the left clavicle, not towards the right side. The shape of the heart as visualized by x ray is different from that of ventricular septal defect. The ECC reveals right ventricular hypertrophy in pulmonary stenosis. The murmur frequently shows a different type of vibration in phonocardiograms. The lung markings are decreased in pulmonary stenosis, increased in ventricular septal defect. The 2nd sound is weak in pulmonary stenosis.

Patent ductus arteriosus There frequently is a machinery murmur loudest at the end

of the systole and prolonged into early diastole. Electrocardiography and angiocardiology may contribute to the diagnosis. However cases with septal defect plus aortic insufficiency are difficult to distinguish from cases of patent ductus, only a retrograde aortogram or passing of the catheter from the pulmonary artery to the aorta allows a definite diagnosis.

Atrial septal defects Diagnosis is possible only through catheterization which reveals high oxygen content in the right atrium. Right bundle branch block is typical of atrial defect even though it may be found in ventricular septal defect.

In some cases of ventricular septal defect hemoptysis, possible bronchial signs, slight cyanosis and tachycardia may lead to confusion with *pulmonary tuberculosis*. A careful examination is sufficient for excluding the latter and the x ray data will be decisive.

In *acquired septal defects* differential diagnosis shall be made chiefly between rupture of one of the chordae tendineae (page 214) and rupture of the interventricular septum.

TREATMENT

Treatment of the shunt consists of surgical closure of the opening. *Interoposterior compression* by means of sutures (52) represents only a brilliant but inadequate solution. *Actual closure* by means of a graft is theoretically possible and should be possible in the near future with the help of an artificial heart or using body refrigeration.

Communications Between Aorta and Pulmonary Artery

The clinical picture of these cases is caused by an abnormal communication between the two largest arterial vessels.

CAUSES—LESIONS

Different types of communication may be present.

1) The communication is due to *per sistance of the ductus arteriosus (patent ductus*

arteriosus) (fig 180) This ductus has a special function which ends at birth when pulmonary respiration begins. If the ductus fails to obliterate it causes a typical syndrome. Patency of the ductus may be associated with aortic lesions (aortic stenosis coarctation of the aorta) but it may exist without them.

The ductus may be *incompletely patent* (occlusion of one of the openings) then it is an autopsy finding. On the other hand it may be *completely patent* either as a conic canal with the larger end toward the aorta or as a *cylindric canal* 1 to 3 cm long. It may have the appearance of an *aneurysm* communicating with both the aorta and the pulmonary artery. The diameter of the ductus may vary from a tiny channel to 15 mm or more.

2) *1 direct communication may exist between the aorta and pulmonary artery.* This may be due to

a) *Incomplete closure of the septum which divides the common arterial trunk* (page 10) a congenital anomaly (*aorto pulmonary fistula*)

b) *Rupture of an aneurysm of the ascending aorta into the pulmonary artery.* This is usually *luetic*.

c) *Rupture of a congenital aneurysm of the right sinus of Valsalva into the pulmonary artery.*

In all these eventualities the two ventricles are enlarged but the left is more so than the right. In most cases the pulmonary artery and its main branches are dilated and there may be aneurysm of the pulmonary artery.

Fibrosis atherosclerosis and calcification are frequently encountered in the wall of the ductus even in young individuals.

The mechanism of closure of the ductus after birth is still debated and imperfectly understood (page 13). When the muscular spasm which causes functional closure fails to occur thrombosis of the ductus and its subsequent transformation into a fibrous ligament do not take place. Therefore a

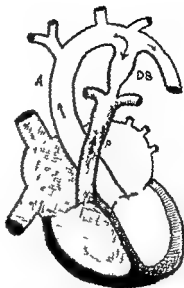


FIG 180 Changes of the heart and large vessels in patent ductus arteriosus

permanent communication between the aorta and pulmonary artery is maintained.

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

There may be *infantilism* but this is not common. *Cyanosis* and *clubbing* of the fingers are absent.

Diaphoresis and *fainting* are not unusual. The patients often complain of *oppression in the chest*, *palpitation* and *shortness of breath* upon exertion.

Hemoptysis is frequent. *Hoarseness* with sudden changes of the voice is also common (18). All the above symptoms however may be absent.

Local Signs

The apex impulse is heaving and is often displaced to the left. Palpation may reveal a *systolic thrill* in the 2nd left interspace transmitted both toward the left clavicle and the suprasternal notch.

Percussion reveals that cardiac dullness is increased chiefly towards the left. There is a *cap of dullness* from the 1st to the 3rd left interspace (fig 181).

Auscultation reveals a *murmur* with maximum intensity in the 2nd left interspace. This

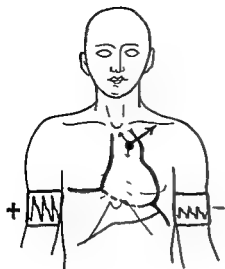


FIG 181 Cardiac dullness and transmission of the murmur in patent ductus arteriosus

murmur caused by the blood passing through the ductus is proportional to the pressure difference between aorta and pulmonary artery. In infants the difference being less the murmur is less loud and may seem only systolic. In children or adults the difference is greater and there is a grinding machinery murmur having its greatest intensity at the end of systole and at the beginning of diastole.

Transmission of the murmur toward the supra-sternal notch and along the carotid arteries has been recorded by the author. The murmur is loudest during inspiration but may disappear at the end of this phase (29). It may be heard best in the sitting position (30). The 2nd pulmonic sound is loud; it may be split or followed by a loud snap. There may be a triple rhythm at the apex and occasionally a diastolic apical rumble (42) due to relative mitral stenosis (page 237).

The pulse may be smaller in the left radial artery (31) and occasionally in the left carotid artery also (30). In typical cases the pulse is celer and has a water hammer quality. Increase of the pulse pressure, low diastolic pressure and double murmur of Duroic, are typical. These signs are similar to those of aortic insufficiency (page 240).

Diastolic pressure may fall to near zero after exertion.

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

The *electrocardiogram* may be normal. However, it usually shows a marked *left axis deviation* and may present a Q3 and evidence of left bundle branch block (8). It may present a slight prolongation of P-R (fig 182).

The *phonocardiogram* gives important data. Coarse vibrations present in any phase but predominant in the last part of systole and in the first part of diastole, are typical (32) (fig 183). Sometimes the murmur occurs only in late systole and rides over the 2nd sound ending with a loud series of vibrations in early diastole.

The *ballistocardiogram* may reveal a deep K wave and an I wave as high as J (38).

Electrolymography reveals that the pulsation of the pulmonary artery has the following characteristics (40). The systolic wave is far higher than normal and may exceed in height that of the aortic arch. The rise of the pulse is steep (*pulsus celer*). There may be a high diastolic wave, a fact which probably gave rise to the roentgenkymographic finding of a double wave (33). The



FIG 182 Electrocardiogram of a case of patent ductus arteriosus. Leads 1, 2, 3. Left axis deviation.

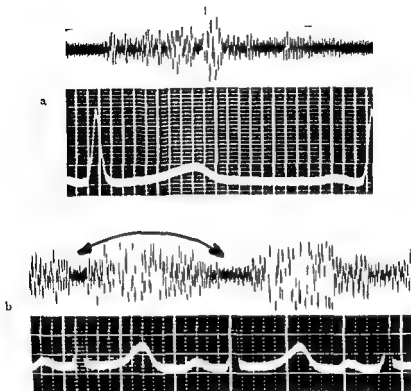


FIG 183 Phonocardiograms in cases of patent ductus arteriosus: a, woman of 30; b, child of 1

speed of the pulse in the lower circulation is increased and is far higher than in any other uncomplicated shunt (fig 184). The hilar pulsations are increased in height (hilar dance) and may present a high diastolic wave. The pulsations of the pulmonary parenchyma are also increased in height and present a steep rise and occasionally a very high late peak.

X RAY

The following changes may be found: a) *Enlargement of both the aortic and pulmonary knobs.* They pulsate violently but maintain their individualities. b) *Enlargement of the pulmonary knob* which shows strong pulsations and is visible chiefly in the right anterior oblique position. There may be a *hilar dance*. c) *Complete fusion of the aortic and pulmonary knobs* with violent pulsation of the resulting cap (fig 185).

Roentgen ymography may show the presence of a *double wave* in the pulmonary artery (33).

Calcification of the aortic wall near the opening of the ductus or of the ductus itself may be observed (2). This finding is very significant in children and young people.

CATHETERIZATION

This technique reveals normal pressures in the right atrium. The pressures of the right ventricle and pulmonary artery are also usually normal but become higher whenever there is even a moderate increase of resistance in the pulmonary vessels. A sudden increase in pressure with a typical profile of the pulse has been described in a limited section of the pulmonary artery that corresponds to the opening of the ductus (37).

The blood of the pulmonary artery reveals a significant increase in the oxygen content

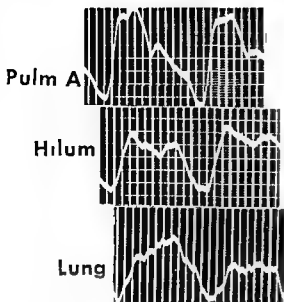


FIG 184 Superimposed electrokymograms of the pulmonary artery, right hilum and base of right lung in a case of patent ductus arteriosus. High speed of the pulse wave typical patterns

both in comparison with that of the right ventricle and that of normal subjects (13, 36).

Pulmonary flow is higher than systemic flow on account of the shunt. The oxygen consumed per liter of ventilation rises with exercise while the oxygen saturation of the peripheral arterial blood is unchanged (36).

Passing of the catheter through the ductus supplies the ultimate proof of its existence.

Inguinocardiography may reveal the patency either through a filling defect in the shadow of the pulmonary artery (penetration of blood without contrast medium from the aorta) or through reopacification of the pulmonary artery at the time in which only the left ventricle and the aorta are visualized (44). In questionable cases *retrograde aortogram* shows the filling of the pulmonary artery through the ductus.

BLOOD—CARDIAC OUTPUT— CIRCULATION TIME

There is no polycythemia. The oxygen saturation of the arterial blood is normal.

Study of the *cardiac output* shows that a

large part of the output of the left ventricle may be lost through the ductus. The actual per cent of loss was found to be as high as 45 and even 75 per cent (34). The average cases, however, have lower figures.

Circulation time tests usually give doubtful results.

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

The existence of a large opening at the end of the aortic arch has been compared to an arteriovenous aneurysm. Actually it is different. In the *AV aneurysm* both ventricles increase their work. In *patent ductus arteriosus* the left ventricle alone increases its output. In extreme cases the left ventricle may pump as much as four times more blood than the right (34) (fig. 186).

High stroke volume, decreased peripheral resistance and increased blood volume contribute to create strong pulsations in the peripheral vessels.

When the ductus is large the blood passes from the aorta to the pulmonary artery during the entire cycle. However the maximum passage occurs in the second half of systole after the aortic pressure has reached its peak.

When the ductus is small the passage of blood takes place only during the last part of systole and slightly afterwards. The diastolic murmur may be due not only to passage of blood through the ductus but also to *insufficient aortic or pulmonary valves* on account of valvular sclerosis. This is more common in the older age group. It is difficult to decide whether the loud snap which can be recorded in sound tracings is a vibration due to the wall of the ductus or is a split second sound.

Chronic pulmonary lesions may cause hypertrophy of the right ventricle and in version of the blood stream through the ductus. It has been stated that increase of diastolic pressure of the pulmonary artery is revealed by the fact that the murmur instead of being continuous is only systolic (41).

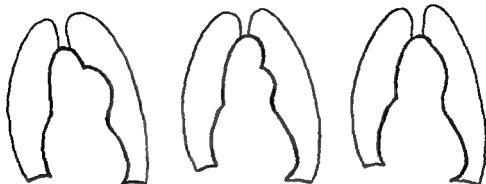


FIG. 185 Sketches of cardiac silhouette in different cases of patent ductus arteriosus

The dilatation of the pulmonary artery is constant and is in contrast to the predominant enlargement of the left ventricle.

The fact that the leakage of blood through the ductus occurs late in systole when the pulse wave is already in the periphery explains the possible occurrence of peripheral and functional signs similar to those encountered in aortic insufficiency. These however are not constant as the leakage may be continuous or slight.

Regurgitation of the ductus usually gives a lower pulse. This is a reflex phenomenon due to greater distention of the carotid sinus when the leakage is stopped.

Hoarseness or dysphonia is due to paralysis of the left recurrent nerve which surrounds the ductus and the aortic arch.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

Patency of the ductus causes a decreased resistance toward fatigue, the strain of pregnancy and infections. Pulmonary diseases are especially common. In spite of this the patency is often well tolerated and life may be of normal duration.

Rheumatic valvular lesions cause severe disturbances by changing the normal ratio of pressure between aorta and pulmonary artery. Aortic stenosis may be compensated by the passage of blood from the pulmonary artery into the aorta but causes cyanosis and severe dyspnea.

Syphilis may cause serious manifestations because the aortitis is often followed by

arteritis of the pulmonary artery with resulting aneurysm of the pulmonary artery and of the ductus.

Subacute bacterial arteritis with localization on the ductus is a dreaded complication. It is however less frequent than originally thought.

Thrombosis of the ductus may occur. Rupture of an aneurysm either of the ductus or of the pulmonary artery has been described.

Complete aphonia may occur.

Heart failure is accompanied by a clinical picture resembling that of aortic insufficiency.

VARIETIES

The different varieties are due to

- The cause of the communication
- The size of the communication
- The seat of the communication

The above-described clinical picture refers mainly to patency of the ductus arteriosus. When the ductus is large the typical set of signs and symptoms occurs. However if

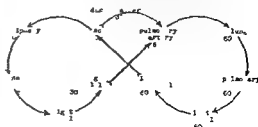


FIG. 186 Scheme of the blood flow in patent ductus arteriosus

there is only a thin channel or a small hole connecting the two vessels the only sign may be a late systolic murmur barely prolonged beyond the 2nd sound

When the communication takes place immediately above the aortic valves both the murmur and the thrill are very intense and have their maximal intensity in the 3rd left inter-space. The murmur starts earlier in systole. The heart is larger.

When the communication is due to rupture of an aneurysm the onset of the signs and symptoms is sudden. The signs are similar to those caused by patency of the ductus but toleration is worse and failure sets in earlier. When an aneurysm of the sinus of Valsalva ruptures into the pulmonary artery the murmur is in the 3rd interspace near the sternum and is transmitted toward the right side.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is not difficult when the typical sign is present the continuous machinery murmur. The existence of left axis deviation is important because practically all other conditions associated with a large pulmonary artery have a right axis deviation⁶⁰. The typical graphic aspect of the murmur (late systolic early diastolic) is also important for the diagnosis.

Many conditions should be excluded in doubtful cases.

Mitral insufficiency. In the shunts the murmur is located in the 2nd left inter-space and has a different transmission from that of mitral insufficiency. The peripheral vascular signs favor the diagnosis of patent ductus. In mitral insufficiency cyanosis is more frequent. The ECG is more often normal in patent ductus than in mitral insufficiency. The phonocardiogram shows an early systolic murmur in mitral insufficiency.

* Cases of patent ductus with pulmonary hypertension may not have left axis deviation and may even present right axis deviation. This is also true of coarctation of the aorta with ductus opening below the narrow section.

a late systolic and early diastolic in patent ductus. X-ray shows an increased size of the left atrium in mitral insufficiency, typical changes of the aorta and of the pulmonary artery in patent ductus. The vascular network of the lungs is more clearly visible in mitral insufficiency.

Aortic stenosis. The murmur and thrill are to the right of the sternum in aortic stenosis to the left in patent ductus. They are transmitted more clearly to the carotid arteries in aortic stenosis. The pulse is slow and small in aortic stenosis it is large and collapsing in patent ductus. The ECG shows a more marked left axis deviation in aortic stenosis. X-ray shows either normal large vessels or small aorta in aortic stenosis it reveals dilated pulmonary artery and often also dilated aorta in patent ductus. The pulse pressure is increased in patent ductus decreased in aortic stenosis.

Pulmonary stenosis. Slight cyanosis frequent occurrence of clubbing and enlarged transverse diameter of the heart are present in pulmonary stenosis. The murmur is not transmitted toward the carotid arteries. The ECG reveals right axis deviation in pulmonary stenosis frequently a left axis deviation in patent ductus. The phonocardiogram shows that the murmur of pulmonary stenosis never goes into diastole.

Ventricular septal defect. There is no dulness in the 2nd left interspace, the murmur and thrill are located lower than in patent ductus and are transmitted more toward the right. The X-ray shows a more rounded heart in ventricular septal defect and less dilatation of the pulmonary artery. The phonocardiogram reveals a systolic murmur in ventricular septal defect a late systolic early diastolic murmur in patent ductus. Cases of patent ductus with high pulmonary pressure may have a murmur which clinically sounds like a pure systolic murmur. Upon reading of phonocardiographic tracing however most of these cases also have diastolic vibrations. Therefore the question would arise only in a small percentage of them.

These cases have more complex lesions and can still be recognized because they have a lower arterial saturation in the femoral in comparison with the brachial arteries.

Venous hum. This is a continuous murmur occasionally heard in children over the base of the heart. Pressure over the neck veins or movement of the head from side to side usually cause disappearance of the venous hum. The murmur is loudest on the right side of the neck except in rare case where it is caused by eddies in a left superior vena cava.

Atrial septal defects. The differential diagnosis has been already discussed (page 283).

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis of the congenital cases (patent ductus) is usually good but the possibility of complications and of heart failure will be kept in mind. The prognosis of acquired cases (perforation) is always bad.

Treatment

Surgical closure of the ductus has been successfully accomplished in a large number of cases with no fatalities. The best indications for surgery are (37) stunting of growth, great cardiac enlargement, extremely low diastolic pressure (or its fall after exercise), initial heart failure, rheumatic or bacterial endocarditis or endarteritis. However any patient below the age of 30 where there are no contraindications should be considered for surgery on account of possible dangers which may arise in the future if the ductus is not closed. Above the age of 30 surgery should be considered only in the presence of one of the above indications. Surgical closure is easier in younger patients, shortening, fibrosis, aneurysm or calcification of the ductus may cause difficulty in adults.

Ligation of the ductus was made at first then it was proven that separation of the ductus was a more effective procedure (34). Closure of an aorto-pulmonary fistula is possible (39) however it is dangerous.

Closure of the ductus should be preceded

by penicillin treatment especially in cases of bacterial endocarditis. It should be avoided whenever the patency is accompanied by other congenital lesions as it may exclude a shunt which is essential for life. It should be kept in mind that surgery does not prevent completely subacute bacterial lesions.

Treatment of acquired lesions (communication between aorta and pulmonary artery through perforation) is limited to treatment of heart failure.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 COSTA A. *Cuore e Circo* (Rome) 1931 15 263
- 2 ABBOTT M E. *Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine* New York Nelson 1941 vol 4
- 3 BROWN J W. *Congenital Heart Disease* London J B Med Publ 1939
- 4 VAGRETZ H. *Les Maladies du Cœur* Paris Bailière 1921
- 5 a) WHITE P D. *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1941
- b) MCGINN S AND WHITE P D. *Am Heart J* 1933 9 1 Also *New England J Med* 1936 214 763
- c) BURRETT J B AND WHITE P D. *Am J M Sci* 1940 209 300
- 6 BEDFORD C, PAPP C AND PARKINSON J. *Brit Heart J* 1941 3 3
- 7 SCHWITZER M A. *The Electrocardiogram in Congenital Cardiac Disease* Cambridge Harvard Univ Press 1940
- 8 BRUMLIK J. *Klinika i rozenich poruch Srdeca* 1937 5 100
- 9 COLE P. *Bull Soc Med Hop* 1937 153 210
- 10 ROELER H. *Arch Int Med* 1934 11 339
Also *Clinical Roentgenology of the Cardiovascular System* Springfield Thomas 1943
- 11 a) CATELLANO A, PEREIRAS R AND GARCIA A. *Pre e Med* 1939 48 1174
- b) STANLEY M L, GRIFFMAN A AND STEINBERG M F. *Am J Dis Child* 1943 65 92
- 12 GROLLMAN A. *Cardiac Output* Baltimore Thomas 1937
- 13 a) DEXTER AND BURWELL. *New England Heart Assoc Meeting of Nov 1945*
- b) DEXTER L. *Pathology* 1947 48 401
- c) BRANNON E S, WELLS H S AND WARREN J V. *Am J M Sci* 1940 210 480
- d) BALDWIN E DE F, MOORE L V AND NOBLE R P. *Am Heart J* 1946 32 10
- 14 LAUBRY C, ROUTIER O AND HEIM DE

- BALZAC R Bull Mem Soc Hop Paris 1911 56 847
- 15 THOMSON T AND EVANS W Quart J Med 1930 III 130
- 16 ROGER H Bull Acad Med Paris 1879 8 1074
- 17 KEITH A *Human Embryology and Morphology* London Arnold 1921
- 18 LAURRY CH AND PFZZI C *Les Maladies Congenitales du Cœur* Paris Baillière 1921
- 19 BURRE I Lo Sperim (Florence) 1880 n 46 480
- 20 ILINADA A A Rass Intern Clin Ter (Naples) 1937 18 733 and 791
- 21 GILFFRE GAZZ Osp Clin (Milan) 1906 27 1345
- 22 MORQUIO M L Semaine Méd 1901 21 338 and Arch Mal Enf 1901 August
- 23 SMITH I L Arch Ped 1911 58 549
- 24 DEVEKE TH Deut Arch Klin Med 1906 89 39
- 25 BORDET E AND FISCHGOLD H *La Radio kymographie du Cœur et des Vaisseaux* Paris Masson 1937
- 26 ATTINGER E Schweiz Med Woch 1936 66 106
- 27 a) BATTRO A AND QUIRRO N Rev Arg Cardiol 1936 11 330
b) BATTRO A AND DE LA SERNA A Rev Arg Cardiol 1921 3 477
- 28 GLERHARDT C Verh Congr inn Med Wiesbaden 1902 11 290
- 29 FRANÇOIS FRANK Gaz Hebdom Méd Paris 1918 15 588
- 30 DOMINICI G AND FERRERO A Min Med (Turin) 1929 9 (v 2) 41
- 31 SOKOLOFF A St Petersburg med Woch 1910 III 583
- 32 a) ROUTIER D Arch Mal Cœur 1937 30 78
b) HUBBARD J P J Pediat 1943 22 50
c) GRAF W MOLLER T AND MANNHEIMER I Acta Med Scand 1941 suppl 196 167
- 33 BITTORG A Muench med Woch 1903 1 1771
- 34 a) GROSS R E AND HUBBARD J I J A M A 1939 112 779
b) GROSS R E Ann Surg 1939 110 321 J A M A 1940 115 125 J Thoracic Surg 1941 III 314
- c) KREUTZER R Rev Arg Card 1914 III 280
- 35 CURTIS BAIN C W AND PARKINSON J Brit Heart J 1943 5 97
- 36 BING R J AND CO WORKERS Mo Conc Cardio Dis 1948 17 N 3
- 37 TAUSSIG H B *Congenital Malformations of the Heart* New York Commonwealth Fund 1947
- 38 MASSE J Am J M Sci 1947 214 218
- 39 COLMAN A AND CO WORKERS Am J Physiol 1947 150 267
- 40 LUISADA A A AND FLEISCHNER F G Am J Med 1949 4 491
- 41 DOUGLAS J M AND CO WORKERS Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1947 22 413
- 42 a) LEVINE S A AND GEREMIA A C Bull New England Med Center 1946 II 148
b) RAVIN A AND DARLEY W Ann Int Med 1950 III 903
- 43 COHN R Am Heart J 1947 III 453
- 44 CHAVEZ I DORBECKER N AND CELIS A Arch Inst Card Mexico 1947 17 121
- 45 DRY T J Med Clin North America 1949 July 895
- 46 HITZIG W M Mo Conc Cardio Dis 1947 16 N 8
- 47 ZUCKERMAN R CERRERO F AND NOVELO S Arch Card de Mexico 1951 21 61
- 48 OPDYKE D F AND CO WORKERS Am J Physiol 1948 164 208 1949 158 211 and 1950 160 556
- 49 COLMAN A AND CO WORKERS Am J Physiol 1947 150 26
- 50 LITTLE R C Am J Physiol 1949 158 237
- 51 GRISHMAN A AND CO WORKERS Am J Roentgenol 1949 III 500
- 52 MURRAY G Ann Surg 1948 128 4
- 53 a) GROSS R J A M A 1953 151 790
b) SWAN H J A M A 1953 151 792
- 54 BAILEY C P AND CO WORKERS Ann Surg 1952 136 919
- 55 CURTIN J Q Am Heart J 1957 44 884
- 56 HAWLEY J G LITTLE R C AND FLIN H Circ 1950 1 321
- 57 JEVINSON D C AND CO WORKERS Am J M Sci 1951 222 46
- 58 DESOLDATI I AND CO WORKERS Rev Arg Card 1951 18 189
- 59 GROSS R E Circ 1952 5 858

Combined Defects of the Heart

Combined defects are lesions of two or more valves or those of one valve plus a shunt between the greater and lesser circulations. Any or all the lesions may be congenital in nature.

Combined Defects of the Mitral and Aortic Valves

This association is frequent because the mitral and aortic valves are frequently damaged by endocarditis usually rheumatic. There almost always is a double defect of both valves but the clinical picture can vary on account of predominance of stenosis or insufficiency of either valve.

DOUBLE MITRAL DEFECT PLUS AORTIC INSUFFICIENCY

These patients have cyanosis, visible pulsations of both the arteries and veins of the neck and *pulsus celer*.

The heart is tremendously enlarged (*cor bignum*) (fig. 187). The apex impulse is violent; there are multiple pulsations in different intercostal spaces. There is a *diastolic thrill* over the midprecordium. Auscultation reveals a *diastolic presystolic rumble* and a *soft systolic murmur* at the apex while a *soft blowing diastolic murmur* is present over the base. There may be an opening snap of the mitral valve.

The liver is often enlarged; there may be signs of chronic edema of the lung bases.

Attacks of paroxysmal dyspnea, acute pulmonary edema and precordial pain are typical of this syndrome.

The pulse pressure is somewhat increased but less than in pure aortic insufficiency. The blood pressure is higher at the leg than

on the arm, a fact which is unusual in mitral defects (1).

If the mitral stenosis is slight, only a soft systolic apical and a soft diastolic basal murmur are present.

Combined insufficiency of the aortic and mitral valves may also be due to atherosclerosis or syphilis. In the first instance arteriosclerosis, hypertension and coronary heart disease are frequently present; in the second, hypertension and aortitis are often associated to the valvular lesions.

In many of these cases differential diagnosis between the diastolic rumble caused by organic lesion of the mitral valve and that caused by relative stenosis or other functional mechanism (Austin Flint murmur, page 242) is necessary. X-ray, electrocardiography, electrokymography and phonocardiography may be of help.

DOUBLE AORTIC DEFECT PLUS MITRAL INSUFFICIENCY

This association is not rare. It is frequently caused by rheumatic heart disease but may also be due to arteriosclerosis.

Aortic stenosis predominates in the clinical picture. Therefore pallor, *pulsus tardus*, reduced pulse pressure and low tibial pressure are usually present.

There is a systolic thrill at the base. A harsh systolic and a soft diastolic murmur are present over the aortic area; a softer systolic murmur at the apex.

The vascular signs are seldom those of aortic insufficiency, owing to the effect of both the aortic stenosis and the mitral insufficiency in neutralizing them.

In most cases X-ray, electrocardiography



FIG 187 Changes of the heart and large vessels in the combined lesion of the mitral and aortic valves (From a model of the American Heart Association)

electrocardiography and phonocardiography are of help. The prognosis is worse than in patients with lesions of only the mitral or the aortic valve.

MITRAL AND AORTIC STENOSIS

The combined stenosis of the mitral and aortic valves creates a syndrome which is not uncommon (30). This double lesion is always rheumatic and can be found in middle age patients in over one half of the cases. Attacks of precordial pain, paroxysmal dyspnea, pulmonary edema and of syncope are typical. The aortic systolic murmur may be typical but it may be maximal over the 3rd left interspace or may seem unimportant.

This syndrome may be well tolerated for a long time but frequently causes a short and irreversible episode of heart failure.

Combined Defects of the Mitral and Tricuspid Valves

This is a relatively frequent association occurring in as many as 20 to 30 per cent of the valvular defects (2, 3). It is usually due to rheumatic disease and rarely to benign bacterial endocarditis.

Two clinical pictures can be recognized: a) *Double mitral defect plus tricuspid insufficiency* and b) *double mitral defect plus tricuspid stenosis*. The eventuality of a com-

bined insufficiency of the two valves without stenosis is a third possibility but is exceedingly rare (4).

In the cases recognition of the mitral lesion is usually based upon the finding of diastolic thrill and murmur over the apex. However the existence of large liver ascites, no peripheral edema, no orthopnea, very large right atrium (see fig 188) and no signs of pulmonary congestion permit the diagnosis of an associated tricuspid lesion (fig 189). If stenosis of the tricuspid valve predominates over the insufficiency the liver is not pulsating. If on the contrary insufficiency of the tricuspid predominates both the liver and the jugular veins expand in systole. Extreme distention of the right atrium or presence of liver cirrhosis may lessen these pulsations. Slight jaundice may occur.

The prognosis is worse than in cases with defects of the mitral valve alone. However as the most apparent signs are caused by a mechanical obstacle and not by heart failure the interval between the first signs of abdominal congestion and the patient's death is longer than where there are only mitral defects.

Differential diagnosis includes atrial septal defects, constrictive pericarditis and Ebstein's syndrome.



FIG. 188. Cardiac silhouette in a case of combined mitral and tricuspid defects (From Asmussen)

Combined Defects of the Aortic and Pulmonic Valves

The association of aortic and pulmonic lesions is rare. It may be caused by rheumatic disease (5), bacterial endocarditis or lues (6). Either stenosis or insufficiency of the two valves may be predominant.

The clinical diagnosis is difficult because the murmurs of both lesions are similar in type and phase. However, the heart is more enlarged toward the right than where there are aortic defects alone, and some of the signs of pulmonic lesions may be recognized.

Electrocardiography may be of help for the diagnosis. Catheterization of the pulmonary artery and right ventricle may be resorted to if necessary.

Mitral Stenosis Plus Pulmonic Insufficiency (24)

A certain number of patients with mitral stenosis or Lutembacher's syndrome present the clinical signs of an associated pulmonic insufficiency. These are: a) *loud soft blowing diastolic murmur over the 2nd or 3rd left*

interspace (fig. 190). The murmur does not change with the changing functional conditions of the heart. It tends to increase with the years and has been observed and recorded even for 7 years without attenuation (24). b) The pulmonary vessels are very dilated and show a *kilar dance*. The aorta is small and shows small pulsations. c) *Cyanosis* is rather severe. Right axis deviation is constant and severe. d) All peripheral signs of aortic insufficiency (including blood pressure changes) are missing.

Organic pulmonic insufficiency may be due to stretching of the artery caused by atherosclerosis (17, 18, 19) or lues (20). In most of the reported cases an aneurysm of the pulmonary artery was present. A different cause may be a rheumatic lesion because the pulmonary artery and the pulmonic ring are frequently damaged by rheumatic disease (21, 22, 23) and in rare cases the leaflets are also involved.

Clinical studies of the author led to recognition of the possible association of mitral stenosis with pulmonic insufficiency caused

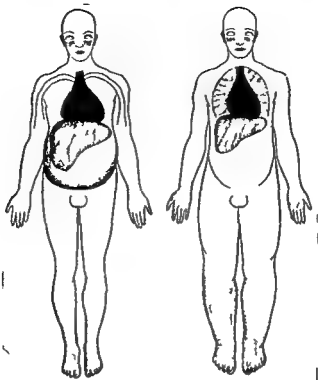


FIG 189 Sketch of the congestion and edema a in mitral plus tricuspid defect and b in the common mitral defect

by rheumatic lesions (24). So far post mortem examinations are rare (28-34).

The diagnosis is based upon the persistence of the basal murmur its independence from congestive failure its loudness and the typical transmission. As mitral

stenosis is typical these data will permit exclusion of a Graham Steell murmur.

Tri Valve Defects

About 20 per cent of the patients with rheumatic heart disease have lesions of three valves usually the mitral aortic and tricuspid (2-3).

The mitral and aortic lesions are the main causes of the local signs. The aortic lesions mainly determine the arterial signs the tricuspid lesions are more important in relation to the venous and hepatic signs.

This association of defects seldom is recognized during life but should be always kept in mind.

Four Valve Defects

In a small percentage of cases with either rheumatic or bacterial endocarditis (25 to 10 per cent) (3-6) all four valves are attacked and show similar lesions (28). An exact diagnosis is always difficult especially

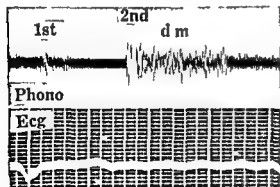


FIG 190 Phonocardiogram over the pulmonic area in a case with combined lesion of the mitral and the pulmonic valves. Soft early diastolic murmur in decrescendo.

if the lesions are due to an acute bacterial endocarditis

Tricuspid Defect Plus Patent Foramen Ovale (Ebstein's Syndrome) (8-9)

Most cases are congenital. However a few exceptions are due to either fetal endocarditis or rheumatic lesion of the tricuspid valve in a patient with patent foramen ovale. The age of the described cases varies from 8 to 61 years.

LESIONS

Two main types of tricuspid lesion have been described (7).

a) An incomplete development of two cusps of the tricuspid valve (the anterior cusp is often normal).

b) The substitution of a membranous diaphragm for the tricuspid valve; this is displaced toward the apex of the right ventricle (8).

The first lesion causes regurgitation because of incompetence of the valves; the second does likewise, but the fact that one part of the right ventricle is above the valves adds a further cause of regurgitation. The contraction of this supraventricular section not only pushes the blood of the atrium backwards but prevents a complete closure of the tricuspid.

Both the right atrium and the right ventricle are dilated. The foramen ovale is widely patent. The left atrium is either normal or enlarged. The pulmonary artery is hypoplastic; the superior vena is dilated (fig. 191).

Tricuspid insufficiency causes regurgitation of blood into the right atrium and into the cavae during ventricular systole. The septal defect shunts most of this regurgitant blood into the left atrium and decreases the evidence of regurgitation. Thus the flow of blood of the greater circulation is greater than that of the lesser circulation. The mixture of bloods into the left atrium due to the right to left shunt is the cause of cyanosis.



FIG. 191. Changes of the heart in Ebstein's syndrome.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

There is cyanosis which may not be severe. Clubfingers may be present. Attacks of dyspnea may occur. Palpitation is frequent.

A systolic thrill and a blowing systolic murmur are present in most of the cases over the tricuspid area. A diastolic murmur may also be present (9). The electrocardiogram frequently shows right bundle branch block (27-31). When preading of the impulse is normal, left axis deviation may be present (increased flow through the left heart). Giant P waves have been noted in the right precordial leads (31). Attacks of atrial tachycardia or frequent premature beats are common.

There is a positive systolic pulsation of the jugular veins and of the liver, clearly revealed by graphic tracings. The electrocymogram reveals a positive systolic plateau over the border of the right atrium indicating regurgitation (31).

Circulation time tests reveal a shortening of the arm to tongue time.

X-ray reveals marked enlargement of the heart, especially of the right atrium and ventricle (10-11). The left atrium is less enlarged. The superior vena is large and pulsating. There is a small pulmonary artery and the lungs are clear.

Angiocardiography may reveal passage of the radio-opaque substance through the atrial septum with early filling of the left

atrium. However the great volume of the right heart chambers frequently causes dilution of the contrast medium and poor visualization.

Diagnosis is possible if the clinical picture is known. However pulsations of the veins may be prevented by excessive distention and pulsations of the liver may be prevented by the same condition or by liver cirrhosis.

Differential diagnosis should exclude a combined mitral and tricuspid defect or the uncomplicated atrial septal defect. The first is accompanied by definite signs of mitral stenosis. The uncomplicated defect is not accompanied by such a large liver and has no cyanosis. Circulation time is shortened in Ebstein's syndrome and prolonged in mitral plus tricuspid lesion; doubtful results are obtained in atrial septal defects.

The Ebstein's syndrome may show an x-ray picture which simulates pulmonary stenosis. However the latter presents more marked electrocardiographic evidence of right ventricular hypertrophy, a murmur which is usually louder and harsher, no venous or hepatic systolic waves and no shorter circulation time (unless there also is a patent foramen ovale).

Mitral Defects Plus Patent Foramen Ovale (Lutembacher's Syndrome) (15-16)

CAUSES

This syndrome was attributed at first to the combination of two congenital lesions (15). Later cases with rheumatic mitral defects in patients having a patent foramen ovale were recognized. Therefore either a congenital or a congenital plus rheumatic lesion may occur.

The syndrome is twice as frequent in females as in males (27).

LESIONS

The mitral valve shows a partial fusion of its cusps resulting in narrowing of the orifice. In some cases retraction due to previous endocarditis has been found. The foramen

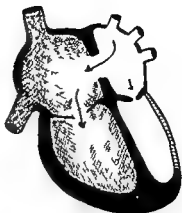


FIG. 192 Changes of the heart in Lutembacher's syndrome

ovale is widely patent. Both the left atrium and ventricle are either normal or small. On the contrary, the right atrium and ventricle are greatly enlarged. The pulmonary artery and its main branches are remarkably dilated. There may be an aneurysm of the main trunk, frequently expanding into the left stem (fig. 192). These lesions of the mitral valve greatly increase left atrial pressure and a certain amount of blood goes through the shunt from the left to the right atrium. Therefore the left atrium is not much enlarged while the right atrium and ventricle are dilated and have thick walls (fig. 192). The blood flow of the lesser circulation is far greater than that of the greater circulation.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Effort dyspnea, recurrent bronchitis, and weakness are usually present. Bloody sputum and dizziness are frequently noted.

Cyanosis may be slight or substituted by pallor. Chronic pulmonary edema is frequent and occurs as an early sign.

A heaving systolic pulsation of the jugular veins may be observed in some cases. When present it indicates severe mitral insufficiency which causes regurgitation of blood from the left ventricle to the left atrium and thence to the right through the shunt.

There are multiple pulsations over the precordial area and a visible epigastric pulsa-

tion The entire cardiac dulness is displaced to the right so that the heart rests in a median position. There is a *diastolic thrill* over the 4th left interspace and a *diastolic presystolic rumble* is heard over the same area. A *presystolic murmur* has been heard behind the manubrium of the sternum. A *systolic murmur* is often present over the pulmonic area. A *soft diastolic murmur* may also be present over the same area (21). The liver may have a *pre-systolic pulsation* (13).

GRAPHIC RECORDS

The *electrocardiogram* shows *right axis deviation*. Changes of the P wave and of the P R interval are similar to those of mitral stenosis. Atrial fibrillation is frequently observed.

Both the *jugular* and the *hepatic tracings* present *high presystolic waves* if *sinus rhythm* is preserved. A high systolic wave may be recorded if mitral insufficiency predominates (blood regurgitating through the shunt) or if relative tricuspid insufficiency is present.

The *phonocardiogram* records the typical vibrations of mitral stenosis. High pitched vibrations may be recorded over the pulmonic area after the 2nd sound.



FIG 193 Scheme of the cardiac silhouette in a case of Lutembacher's syndrome



FIG 194 Angiocardiogram in Lutembacher's syndrome (Inspired by originals of Sussman Grishman and Steinberg)

X RAY

Both the left atrium and ventricle are normal or small. Both the right atrium and ventricle are enlarged. The aorta is small, the pulmonary artery is very large. The branches of the pulmonary artery are so distended that they may simulate a mediastinal tumor (fig 193). A *hilar dance* may be observed.

Angiocardiography and catheterization of the heart give data of diagnostic value. The first reveals an important passage of blood from the left into the right atrium (fig 194). The second reveals an increase of right atrial pressure which is unusual in uncomplicated patent foramen ovale.

Circulation time is prolonged; there is no polycythemia.

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

The increased amount of blood in the pulmonary circulation causes distention of the pulmonary vessels. Typically these pulsate strongly as in pulmonary insufficiency.

The mitral murmur and the enlargement of the left atrium may be moderate or even absent. This is due to the fact that the shunt prevents the establishment of high pressure in the left atrium and severe hypertrophy of the wall of this chamber.

When a presystolic murmur is heard over the base it is due to blood passing through the septal defect.

The systolic murmur over the pulmonic area is due to relative stenosis because of distention of the vessel. If a soft diastolic murmur is also present over the same area two possibilities exist: a) A transitory murmur due to temporary insufficiency of the pulmonic valve (*Graham Steell murmur*) b) A persistent murmur caused by an anatomical lesion (page 259)

Congestion of the pulmonary circulation is due both to increased inflow and greater resistance to outflow but to the former more than to the latter. For this reason cyanosis is less marked than in mitral stenosis and may be replaced by pallor.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The patients may live until old age. The severity of the syndrome is determined by the degree of mitral stenosis and by the size of the septal defect.

The complications are those of mitral stenosis. However, atrial fibrillation, pulmonary congestion, chronic bronchitis and chronic pulmonary edema occur earlier and are more severe than in mitral stenosis alone. Aneurysm of the pulmonary artery may occur. Arteriosclerosis of the lesser circulation may increase the severity of the clinical picture. Pulmonic insufficiency is more frequent than with pure mitral stenosis. On the other hand, aneurysm of the left atrium and phenomena of compression by this chamber are the exception.

Crossed embolism is extremely rare because of the predominant left atrial pressure. Congestive failure occurs earlier and subacute bacterial endocarditis is slightly more frequent than in mitral stenosis with closed atrial septum.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is based on the typical findings of mitral stenosis associated with a relatively small left atrium and with severely dilated pulmonary vessels (x ray).

Uncomplicated mitral stenosis presents a larger left atrium. *Uncomplicated patent*

foramen ovale usually fails to show a diastolic rumble. However, if such rumble is present (relative mitral or tricuspid stenosis) diagnosis may be difficult.

The *tetralogy of Fallot* causes an entirely different picture. The same is true for the association of aortic stenosis or coarctation with patent ductus.

Patent ductus causes a typical murmur, has a left axis deviation and gives typical data upon catheterization. However, atypical cases with patent ductus may simulate Lutenbacher's syndrome. Catheterization reveals the atrial defect of Lutenbacher's syndrome while retrograde aortography rules out the ductus.

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis of such cases is not favorable. However, duration of life seems to be only slightly shorter than in cases of mitral stenosis.

VARIETIES

A variety of the syndrome consists of *mitral atresia plus atrial and ventricular septal defects*. Cases with this congenital lesion are rare and survive only for a limited time.

Aortic Stenosis (or Coarctation) Plus Patent Ductus Arteriosus

This is a syndrome of congenital nature having a clinical picture which is entirely different from that caused by the single isolated lesions.

LESIONS

Two different lesions may be present:

a) Aortic stenosis plus patent ductus arteriosus (fig. 195)

b) Coarctation of the aorta plus patent ductus (fig. 278, page 468)

The stenosis is of the subaortic type (page 250). The coarctation is in the region of the isthmus (so called infantile type) and will be discussed later at length (page 467).

The narrowing of the aortic opening causes

■ drop of pressure in the arterial system or in the lower parts of the body this is compensated by the blood of the pulmonary artery which enters the aorta *via* the ductus. However, this blood is poorly saturated with oxygen.

A mixture of blood proportional to the severity of the aortic lesion occurs in the first variety. The coarctation limits the blood supply only to the lower half of the body in the second variety so that the mixture of blood takes place mainly in the descending aorta. The flow of blood through the shunt takes place from the lesser to the greater circulation owing to the low pressure existing in the aorta. In extreme cases the aortic ostium may be closed (*aortic atresia*). In such cases the arteries of the head and upper extremities as well as the coronaries also receive the blood *via* the ductus.

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

Cyanosis clubfingers: attacks of dizziness or syncope effort dyspnea, bloody sputum and recurrent bronchitis are typical. In cases with coarctation cyanosis is exclusive of the lower extremities and the lower part of the body (27).

No arterial collateral circulation is present on the thorax as with uncomplicated coarctation (page 467).

Blood pressure is low but not much lower in the legs than in the arms.

In cases with aortic stenosis the typical thrill and murmur of this lesion are present at the right of the sternum. In addition the prolonged thrill and murmur of patent ductus are present at the left of the sternum.

In cases with coarctation of the aorta the local signs of patent ductus arteriosus (page 291) are the only ones present.

The *electrocardiogram* has a marked right axis deviation and low T waves.

The *phonocardiogram* reveals the typical murmur of patent ductus arteriosus (fig 153).

X ray shows a rounded heart with prominent pulmonary knob and hilar dance.

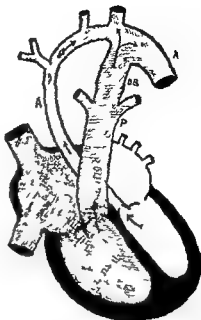


FIG 195 Changes of the heart and large vessels in patent ductus arteriosus plus aortic stenosis.

Angiocardiography reveals that the contrast medium passes from the pulmonary artery into the descending aorta.

Circulation time tests show that the arm to tongue time is shorter than in normal in individuals (but only in aortic stenosis plus ductus).

Blood There is polycythemia.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

In spite of the severity of the lesions the disease may last for a long time. Some of the patients have reached adult age and even maturity. The complications are those of the associated defects. They include subacute bacterial endocarditis, pulmonary infarction and (in the coarctation variety) cerebral hemorrhage.

VARIETY

Two main varieties have been already described. A third occurs when *aortic atresia* is associated with patent ductus and patent foramen ovale (7). In such cases life is possible only for a few days after birth.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of these cases should be based on the finding of a large pulmonary knob (x ray) together with cyanosis in the lower extremities (coarctation) or both in the left arm and the legs (aortic stenosis). Angiocardiography is helpful and may confirm the diagnosis.

Differential diagnosis should be made with the following diseases:

Uncomplicated patent ductus The presence of cyanosis excludes this possibility.

Fallot's syndrome The dilated pulmonary knob and the increased pulmonary markings exclude this syndrome.

Eisenmenger's syndrome Exclusion is possible by means of catheterization or angiocardiography unless cyanosis of the lower extremities is present (coarctation plus ductus).

Uncomplicated aortic stenosis The presence of cyanosis excludes this lesion.

Uncomplicated coarctation The existence of cyanosis, the type of murmur, the lack of blood pressure difference between arms and legs, and of collateral circulation exclude this lesion.

Pulmonary stenosis The severely dilated pulmonary artery and the type of murmur are against this possibility. Cyanosis is more severe than in pulmonary stenosis.

Transposition of the large vessels The thin vascular peduncle which is typical of the transposition is not present here. The murmur is different.

TREATMENT

Surgical treatment is difficult and has frequently met with unfavorable results. However, it is possible (33) and consists of the ligation of the ductus plus resection of the narrow portion of the aorta with graft of a new section in coarctation plus ductus. In aortic stenosis plus ductus dilatation of the aortic ostium should precede ligation of the ductus.

Pulmonary Stenosis Plus Patent Foramen Ovale

This combination of congenital lesions is not rare but is less frequent than previously thought (25).

Narrowing of the pulmonary orifice leads to increased pressure in the right ventricle and to a lesser extent in the right atrium. This causes a passage of blood through the shunt from the right to the left atrium.

The patients have severe cyanosis, clubbing of the fingers and polycythemia. The left section of the heart may enlarge even more than the right and there may be dilatation of the aorta. There is a systolic murmur over the pulmonic area caused by the stenosis.

The electrocardiogram may show left axis deviation (26) but right axis deviation and right bundle branch block seem more common (20, 32).

x ray reveals clear lung fields. Angiocardiography may reveal early visualization of the left atrium.

Circulation time tests show that the arm to tongue time is shorter than in normal individuals.

Diagnosis is always difficult.

Treatment is based on the Brock operation (page 267) possibly completed by closure of the atrial shunt (page 294).

Aortic Insufficiency with Patent Foramen Ovale (29)

This rare combination of lesions is due to the occurrence of luetic aortitis with aortic regurgitation in subjects having a patent foramen ovale.

The typical signs of aortic insufficiency are present including the aortic diastolic murmur, the large pulse pressure and the Corrigan pulse.

The electrocardiogram may present right axis deviation and frequently atrial fibrillation.

The x ray reveals dilatation of the pulmonary artery and increased vascular markings of the lungs. Diagnosis is possible if

attention is paid to the above described electrocardiographic and roentgenological signs associated with the physical signs of aortic regurgitation

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 LASSI M Riv Clin Med (Florence) 1934 35 823 and 1935 36 79
- 2 DRESLER W AND FISCHER R Klin Woch 1929 8 1967 and 1916
- 3 COOPER W T AND WHITE P D Brit Heart J 1941 3 147
- 4 ILISADA A A Arch Int Clin Med 1936 16 404
- 5 DAGNINI C Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1930 14 15
- 6 MCGUIRE J AND MCNAMARA R J Am Heart J 1937 14 567
- 7 ABBOTT M E In Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine New York Nelson 1941 vol 4
- 8 LEATH W Arch Anat Phys 1866 3 738
- 9 ARNOLD A Virchows Arch path Anat 1907 268 247
- 10 BAUER D DE F Am J Roentgenol 1945 11 186
- 11 BREKKE V G Am Heart J 1943 29 617
- 12 YATER W M AND SHAPIRO M J Ann Int Med 1937 38 11 1043
- 13 BROWN J B Congenital Heart Disease London J B Med Publ 1939
- 14 DRESLER W Clinical Cardiology New York Hoeber 1941
- 15 FETTERBACHER R Arch Mal Coeur 1916 9 235 Also Presse Méd 1920 33 236 Also Arch Mal Coeur 1936 29 229
- 16 MCGINN S AND WHITE P D Am Heart J 1933 9 1
- 17 LAUBRY C AND THOMAS M Bull Mem Soc Hôp Paris 1926 60 639
- 18 HARVEY P AND CO WORKERS Paris Méd 1937 27 397
- 19 SIMONE V Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1927 11 3
- 20 ILISADA A A Min Med (Turin) 1934 11 421
- 21 COLLEY B A AND FINAN J Am J M Sci 1932 133 329
- 22 VAN CLAHN W C AND PAPPENHEIMER A M Am J Path 1926 2 235
- 23 KILGEY M A AND FOSTER F F Arch Path 1928 6 247
- 24 ILISADA A A AND WOLFF L Am J M Sci 1945 209 204
- 25 CURRENS J H KINNEY T D AND WHITE P D Am Heart J 1940 20 491
- 26 WOOD P Brit Heart J 1941 4 11
- 27 TALANG H B The Congenital Malformations of the Heart New York Commonwealth Fund 1947
- 28 TREIGER I J Atlas of Cardiovascular Diseases St Louis C V Mosby 1941 11 54
- 29 LIPKOV M Am Heart J 1948 35 497
- 30 SOLLIÉ P AND CHICHE I Bull Mem Soc med Hôp de Paris 1949 No 25 1040
- 31 SOLOFF L A STAUFFER H M AND LATCHUM J Am J M Sci 1951 922 554
- 32 SELZER A AND CO WORKERS Am J Med 1949 6 3
- 33 HATTON H A AND THOMPSON M L Brit M J 1948 (II) 1062

Complex Malformations of the Heart

The complex malformations of the heart are numerous if considered from a purely structural point of view. However, if the forms which do not permit survival are excluded and the mechanism of production outlined by Spitzer is considered their number is greatly reduced.

Tetralogy of Fallot

This syndrome is the most common complex malformation of the heart and includes about 75 per cent of the cyanotic cases surviving beyond infancy.

LESIONS—MECHANISM

While certain lesions are basic and constantly present a few others may be associated. The basic lesions are pulmonic stenosis, dextroposition of the aorta and ventricular septal defect. Right ventricular hypertrophy is a necessary consequence.

Pulmonic stenosis. Contrary to older concepts this may be due to various mechanisms (fig 197).

a) *Infundibular stenosis* (in approximately one third of the cases)

b) *Hypoplasia of the pulmonary artery with bicuspid pulmonic valve and subpulmonic stenosis*

c) *Infundibular stenosis.* This may be so low as to create what resembles a separate chamber leading to the ostium.

d) Both infundibular and valvular.

Dextroposition of the aorta. This abnormality should not be confused with the persistence of the right aortic arch (page 464) a possible associated lesion. The aorta of these patients is a large vessel resulting from fusion of the two fetal aortae. This vessel is far more to the right than a normal aorta and overrides the ventricular septum so that it may

receive blood from both ventricles. It should be kept in mind that the displacement of the aorta may be of varying degrees; if minimal it may be overlooked by the pathologist.

The third lesion, a *high ventricular septal defect* is thus a necessary association while the fourth, *right ventricular hypertrophy* is an obligatory consequence of the communication between the two ventricles and of pulmonic stenosis.

Associated lesions may be a) Quadricuspid aortic valve b) Persistence of the right aortic arch c) Some degree of transposition so that the pulmonary artery is either behind or to the left of the aorta.

Large bronchial arteries usually supply anastomotic vessels which contribute to the blood supply of the lungs.

The complex abnormality of Fallot's syndrome is determined by an incomplete fusion of the primitive cardiac tube (Spitzer's theory (2)). If ever this may cause occlusion of the left aorta (which normally develops into the definitive aorta) and persistence of the right aorta. If the faulty torsion is slight on the other hand the two fetal aortae fuse together and result in a large artery which rides squarely over the septum (fig 196). The pulmonary artery is thin because it results from only one third instead of one half of the common arterial trunk on account of the fusion of the two primitive aortae into a larger vessel. These conditions somewhat resemble those which are normal in the reptilian heart.

In exceptional cases inflammatory stenosis of the pulmonary valves occurs in patients with Prehn-Menger's syndrome (page 318) and a partially acquired Fallot's syndrome is the result.

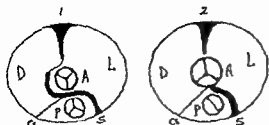


FIG 196 Position of the aorta in the normal heart (1) and in the tetralogy of Fallot (2) D right ventricle L left ventricle (Adapted from Spitzer)

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

A *stunting of growth* is common but not constant. *Cyanosis* is usually present at birth but may start later. It is of variable degree but is usually severe. It is increased by exertion or crying and is particularly evident in the extremities and on the mucosae.

Clubbing of the fingers and toes (occasionally of the nose) is constant and is associated with watch glass nails.

Exertion is frequently followed by *dyspnea*. The children may try to relieve this by assuming a *squatting position* (31). *Paroxysmal dyspnea* at rest accompanied by severe cyanosis is common. These episodes are usually brief.

Attacks of dizziness, fainting, or convulsions are not unusual.

Pulsations of the epigastrium are visible. A *systolic thrill* is often present at the base of the heart with transmission toward the neck.

Percussion reveals a heart with marked enlargement toward the right. No dullness is present in the 2nd left interspace but there may be dullness in the 2nd right interspace.

Auscultation reveals a *low, harsh systolic murmur* with maximal intensity over the 3rd left interspace. This murmur is well transmitted toward the 2nd right interspace, the suprasternal notch, and the carotid arteries (4). It may be heard over the left scapula (5) and continues throughout all systole. The intensity of the murmur is mostly related to the pulmonic stenosis and

is relatively less affected by the septal defect and the eddies which form in the ascending aorta. The 2nd pulmonic sound is usually weak.

A *systolic type of triple rhythm* may be present over the midprecordium.

The pulse is usually full. The blood pressure may be normal, low, or increased. Figures of 140 to 150 for the systolic pressure are not unusual.

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

The *cardiogram*, as well as the *jugular* and *hepatic tracings*, reveal a *high atrial wave*.

The *electrocardiogram* usually shows a *marked right axis deviation* and evidence of *right ventricular hypertrophy* (fig 198). However, cases with moderate deviation have been described. Right atrial hypertrophy may be apparent. While 1:1 block or a 1:2 block may be present, both may be temporary (7). The chest leads reveal *hypertrophy of the right ventricle and of the right atrium* with a high diphasic P in V_1-V_2 . The rotation of the heart due to the hypertrophy of the right ventricle may be such that V_1 has a left ventricular pattern qR while PS patterns are present in V_4-V_6 .

The *phonocardiogram* reveals a series of *coarse vibrations* during systole. In some cases the systolic murmur is separated from the 1st sound by a short pause (7) (fig 199). This is the cause of the triple rhythm. The murmur may end at midsystole or continue all through systole. Both the 3rd and the 4th sound may be loud.

Fluorolymography reveals the following data: a) Lack of pulsations in the pulmonary window. b) Small or absent hilar pulsations. c) Absent pulsations of the pulmonary parenchyma.

CATHETERIZATION OF THE HEART

Catheterization of the right heart reveals three sets of phenomena:

a) *Pressure tracings* reveal a *high pressure in the right ventricle* (figures of 90 to 110 mm Hg are not unusual) while the pressure is

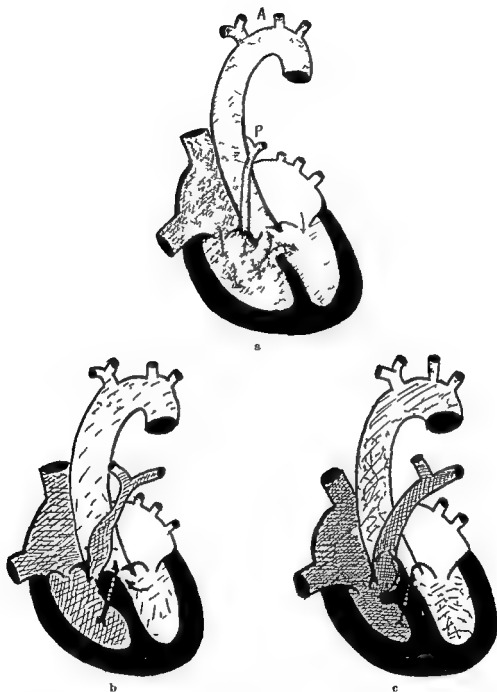


FIG. 197. Scheme of the changes of the heart and large vessels in the tetralogy of Fallot. a Valvular stenosis; hypoplasia of the pulmonary artery. b Subvalvular stenosis with poststenotic dilatation. c Infundibular stenosis with formation of a separate chamber before the valve.

either normal or low in the pulmonary artery. Therefore, while there is a high gradient of pressure between right ventricle and pulmonary artery, right ventricular pressure is similar to systemic pressure.

b) Oxymetry usually reveals a normal oxygen content in the right atrium and a high oxygen content in the right ventricle (blood shunted from the left ventricle through the septum).

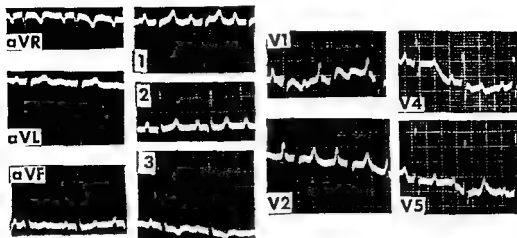


FIG 198 Electrocardiogram in a case of tetralogy of Fallot

c) The catheter may fail to enter the pulmonary artery on account of the stenosis; it may pass from the right ventricle into the ascending aorta.

Calculations based on the oxymetric data indicate that systemic flow is higher than pulmonic flow.

X RAY

The cardiac shadow is usually not enlarged. The apex may be raised from the diaphragm (*sheep nose profile*) (fig. 200). There are different aspects according to the type of lesion and to the possible associations previously mentioned.

The following data can be considered as typical (9):

a) *The shadow of the ascending aorta is displaced to the right and bulges from the cardiac shadow. It is easily visible in the left anterior oblique position, poorly in the right (especially in adults).*

b) *The pulmonary knob is small or substituted by a concavity (fig. 201).*

An exception is represented by cases with valvular stenosis where the pulmonary knob may be full. If there is *persistence of the right aortic arch*, the data of this lesion will be found including a typical notching of the esophagus revealed by a barium swallow (page 464).

The pulmonary fields are abnormally clear

but in older patients a thick network due to the development of collateral circulation may be visible in the hilar regions. When this happens the hilar shadows do not prevent visible pulsations (31).

Angiocardiography. After filling of the right ventricle the contrast medium penetrates simultaneously into both the aorta and the pulmonary artery; this is a strong indication of the existence of an overriding aorta. Sometimes the pulmonary artery fills only after the aorta (fig. 202).

BLOOD—BLOOD GASES

Severe polycythemia is constant. It may even reach 10 million RBC per mm³. Normal or decreased plasma volume and increased total blood volume have been found (11).

Increased oxygen capacity and decreased oxygen saturation of the arterial blood are typical. While extremely low figures of saturation have been recorded (60–65 per cent) there are cases with moderate decrease.

Fertilization decreases the amount of oxygen consumed per liter of ventilation and the oxygen saturation of the arterial blood (19).

CIRCULATION TIME

There is a *shorter arm to tongue time*. The other test frequently gives uncertain results but it may cause tingling sensations in the

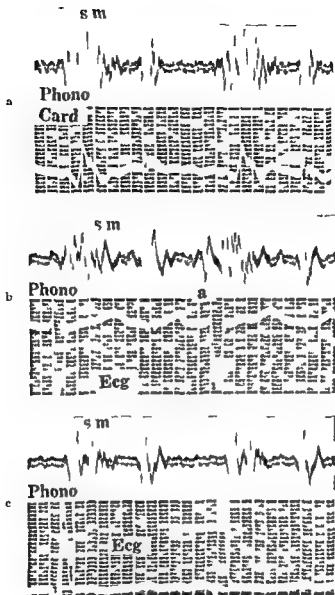


FIG. 109. Sound tracings of a child with *tetralogy of Fallot*: a prolonged apical systolic murmur; b fourth sound; short split systolic murmur over the pulmonary area; c systolic snap over the tricuspid area.

head and face if it is shunted into the systemic circulation (36).

The *eyegrounds* present thick walled capillaries and violet color.

The *peripheral capillaries* are wide and tortuous. The velocity is rapid and large bead like formations slowly moving in the direction of the blood stream are visible.

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

Stenosis of the pulmonary artery causes a poor blood supply to the lungs as well as dilatation and hypertrophy of the right ventricle. As the two ventricles communicate through the wide open septum the pressure is similar in both of them.

Blood from both ventricles enters the



FIG 200 Cardiac silhouette in a case of *tetralogy of Fallot* (young woman). The white arrow indicates the depression of the pulmonary knob; the black arrow indicates the displacement of the aortic shadow toward the right.

aorta because this vessel overrides the septum. This leads to a mixture of saturated and unsaturated bloods so that the aorta contains a relatively large percentage of poorly oxygenated hemoglobin.

The systolic murmur is due to the pulmonary stenosis while the eddies formed by the meeting of two streams of blood coming from the ventricles and entering the aorta seem to contribute very little to it (31). When both the pulmonary stenosis and the displacement of the aorta are slight (the two facts are connected) the cyanosis and the murmur may be slight. When on the contrary these changes are marked the cyanosis is severe and the murmur is loud.

While the cyanosis and the polycythemia are mostly caused by the mixture of bloods within the aorta, pulmonary stenosis contributes to them in two ways: the first is through the decreased blood flow of the lungs; the second is through the increased pressure of the right ventricle which prevents a severe left to right shunt through the septum and causes penetration of right ventricular blood into the aorta.

The hypertrophy of the right ventricle is due to the stenosis of the pulmonary artery to the communication between the two ventricles and to the increased venous return to the right atrium (the flow of the aorta is greater than pulmonary flow).

The typical X-ray configuration of the heart is due to the existence of a small pulmonary artery which furthermore is displaced toward the right together with the aorta. The resulting picture is a concavity of the pulmonary knob and a convexity of the right border of the ascending aorta.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

In spite of the severe and multiple lesions many of these patients reach adult and even old age (13).

The most frequent complication is subacute bacterial endocarditis or endarteritis. Rheumatic endocarditis is also common.

Pulmonary tuberculosis is fairly frequent. Myocardial fibrosis is frequent. Peripheral embolism occasionally due to phlebitis of the leg (crossed embolism) may occur.

Thrombosis of capillaries or arterioles of

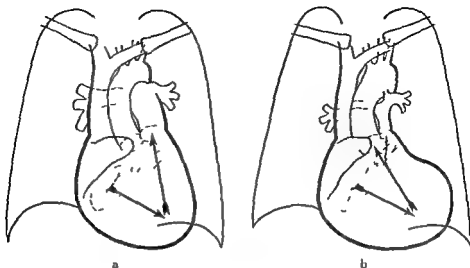


FIG. 201 Differential diagnosis on x ray between mitral stenosis (a) and the tetralogy of Fallot (b) (From Dr F Zdzanski Courtesy of H Roessler and Charles C Thomas Publisher)

pulmonary or cerebral circulation is frequently observed in patients with extreme polycythemia and this complication is favored by dehydration (31-33). Cerebral abscesses are not unusual and are due to the fact that, on account of the shunt bacteria occasionally present in the blood are not filtered out by the pulmonary capillaries (32). Fainting attacks upon exertion are due to cerebral anoxia because the oxygen saturation of the arterial blood already low further falls with exercise.

VARIETIES

Different clinical pictures may be due to the concurrence of various additional lesions. The existence of a right aorta with or without a diverticulum (page 464) and that of transposition of the great vessels (page 321) may change the local and x ray signs.

The severity of the pulmonary stenosis and the degree of intensity of the cyanosis also may influence the clinical picture. If there is pulmonary atresia instead of stenosis life is possible if the ductus arteriosus is patent then pulmonary circulation occurs only through this vessel (31). However extremely rare cases of atresia survive in spite of closure of the ductus through well developed collateral circulation.

DIAGNOSIS

Squatting, severe cyanosis and clubbing of fingers and toes are sufficient for a general diagnosis of congenital malformation of the heart. The loud systolic murmur, right axis deviation and shorter circulation time, are important contributory data. The x ray signs (convexity of the pulmonary knob, convexity of the right aortic border and raised apex) are decisive for the diagnosis.

Cases with moderate cyanosis and clubbing may occur. The x ray data however, are still typical.

The following diseases should be excluded.

Uncomplicated septal defects and patent ductus arteriosus are excluded by the cyanosis and the ischemia of the lungs of tetralogy of Fallot.

Pure pulmonary stenosis. Cyanosis is more severe in Fallot than in pulmonary stenosis. Circulation time is longer than normal in pure pulmonary stenosis shorter in tetralogy of Fallot. The murmur is louder and more limited to the left of the sternum in pure pulmonary stenosis. X ray data are different in the two syndromes.

Lutembacher's syndrome. The type of murmur and the x ray data are different. The pulmonary vessels are dilated in Lutembacher's syndrome thin in tetralogy of

Fallot The circulation time is shorter in tetralogy of Fallot but not in Lutembacher's syndrome

Aortic stenosis plus ductus arteriosus The aorta is dilated and displaced in Fallot's syndrome, is thin and not displaced in aortic stenosis plus patent ductus. The murmur is different in the two syndromes.

Eisenmenger complex The pulmonary artery is dilated in this clinical picture. It is small and displaced in tetralogy of Fallot. Hoarseness is frequent in Eisenmenger's syndrome but not in Fallot's. The fine network of the lungs is dilated in Eisenmenger's syndrome.

Tricuspid atresia plus shunt The heart is elongated and has left axis deviation; the opposite is true in Fallot's syndrome.

Single ventricle with pulmonary stenosis may be confused with cases of Fallot. The electrocardiogram does not reveal evidence of right ventricular hypertrophy in single ventricle.

Transposition with pulmonary stenosis The patient has a large heart with a narrow pedicle. Cyanosis is more severe and physical efficiency more impaired.

Pulmonary stenosis with patent foramen ovale The differential diagnosis is very difficult even with the help of catheterization. Angiocardiography may give definite clues.

PROGNOSIS

The immediate prognosis must be based on the condition of the patient. In general, the prognosis should be more favorable than in other congenital malformations of the heart. The localization of the narrow section is of great importance for surgery. Attacks of paroxysmal dyspnea at rest have a poor prognostic significance.

TREATMENT

The efficiency of patients with Fallot's syndrome is hampered by two main factors: a) the faulty blood supply to the lungs and b) the mixture of blood in the aorta.

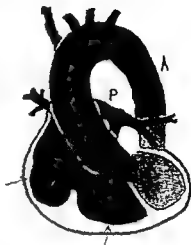


Fig. 32. Angiogram in a case of tetralogy of Fallot (Scheme inspired by originals of Sussman, Grishman and Steinberg).

This consideration led to several surgical interventions. The first and most widely used is the **Blalock-Taussig operation** (14) which is based on the creation of an artificial ductus by an anastomosis between subclavian artery and a pulmonary branch. The second intervention is the **Potts-Gibson operation** (34-42) which consists of the creation of an aortopulmonic fistula. The third is **Brooks operation** (43) which can be done if there is pulmonic valvular stenosis. And the fourth is **resection of the protruding ridge of septum** attempted by Bailey and coworkers (44) in cases with infundibular stenosis.

The greatest indications for surgery are: 1) attacks of dyspnea at rest with severe cyanosis and loss of consciousness; 2) blood count above 8 million RBC. If there is no urgency, surgery should be postponed until the best age, e.g. between 6 and 14. However, surgery has been done even in infants who otherwise might not have reached childhood.

Surgery is usually followed by a striking transformation: cyanosis and polycythemia decrease and may disappear; physical efficiency increases; physical development is accelerated. This striking change is due to

the fact that increased blood flow to the lungs leads to greater flow from the left ventricle into the aorta. Therefore in addition to better oxygenation of the blood a smaller amount of right ventricular blood enters the aorta and the greater circulation.

The overall surgical mortality is about 5 per cent.

In general the Potts operation is preferred in infants or in cases where the Blalock intervention is impossible or was subsequently followed by thrombosis of the anastomosis. Resection of the septal ridge is a dangerous procedure which is still under experimentation. In case of necessity a Blalock operation can be repeated on the opposite side.

In considering all the risks of surgery one should keep in mind a) that a certain percentage of fatalities is unavoidable b) that the anastomosis increases the load of the left ventricle c) that the newly formed channel may be later the seat of bacterial arteritis and d) that valvulotomy may be followed by an overloading of the pulmonary circulation. Surgery will be of no avail if

the oxygen saturation in the peripheral blood is above 85 per cent (37) if the pressure of the pulmonary artery is higher than 22 to 25 mm Hg (14b) or if the heart is too severely enlarged.

Pentalogy of Fallot (41)

This syndrome is due to the lesions already described under the name of tetralogy plus an atrial septal defect.

The clinical picture is similar to that of the tetralogy of Fallot but the heart is larger.

The *electrocardiogram* presents marked *left axis deviation* and tall peaked P waves.

The *x ray* reveals a concavity in the region of the pulmonary artery, an enlargement of the inflow tract of the left ventricle, and an enlargement of both the right atrium and the right ventricle.

The differential diagnosis with the tetralogy of Fallot is largely based on electrocardiographic data since the pentalogy has a left axis deviation that with tricuspid atresia is based on the evidence supplied by x ray and angiocardigraphy.

Eisenmenger's Complex (10)

LESIONS

This syndrome which is less frequent than the tetralogy of Fallot is based on a similar disturbance of fetal development. The following lesions are typical (fig 203):

- Interventricular septal defect
- Displacement of the aorta to the right
- Dilatation and possible aneurysm of the pulmonary artery

The *pulmonary valve* is often *bicuspid* and may be *incompetent*. The *aortic cusp* lying above the septal defect may be unusually large and may be placed lower than the others. The *aortic valve* may be *incompetent* either because of scarring or on account of the above described abnormalities (31). *Hypertrophy of the right ventricle* is constant.

The lesions are caused by faulty torsion



FIG 203 Changes of the heart and large vessels in Eisenmenger complex

of the primitive cardiac tube with fusion of the right with the left aorta

The abnormality underlying the Eisen menger syndrome is probably identical to that called by Spitzer mixed transposition type IV (page 321) If this is so the apparent septum is actually formed by the crista and trabecula of the fetal heart and is not the equivalent of the real septum of the normally developed heart Whenever the pulmonary artery is displaced more to the right and overrides the so called septum *Taussig's syndrome* takes place (page 323) While the septal defect and the overriding aorta are truly congenital lesions, *changes of the pulmonary vessels gradually develop during life* Their establishment (probably connected with the wide shunt between the ventricles in the absence of pulmonic stenosis) further increases the pressure in the right ventricle and therefore the amount of right ventricular blood penetrating the aorta It should be kept in mind that pulmonary changes may develop early during the first 10 years of life

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

Cyanosis is usually absent at birth and develops gradually either during adolescence or more commonly during the adult age *Hoarseness* is very frequent *Clubbing* may appear late in life *Bloody sputum* is relatively common

Cardiac dulness is enlarged toward the right There is a *cap of dulness* in the 2nd left interspace

Auscultation reveals a *low systolic murmur* behind the sternum and frequently a *soft blowing diastolic murmur in decrescendo* over the 2nd right or left interspaces (aortic or pulmonic insufficiency)

The *electrocardiogram* reveals a *right axis deviation* which may be moderate there may be right bundle block and grade 1 a bundle block

CATHETERIZATION OF THE RIGHT HEART

The *pressure of the right ventricle is high and may be extremely high* Figures of 100

120 and even 150 mm Hg have been recorded (3a, 4, 46) *Systolic pressure of the right ventricle is identical with that of the pulmonary artery* indicating the absence of pulmonic stenosis It should be identical with that of the aorta but pulmonary vascular lesions may explain cases where right ventricular pressure was higher than left ventricular pressure The wedge pressure of the pulmonary arterioles (so called pulmonary capillary pressure) may be normal indicating high pulmonary vascular resistance

Oxygen saturation is higher in the right ventricle than in the right atrium It is normal in the pulmonary veins

X RAY

X ray reveals a *very marked dilatation of the pulmonary artery and its branches* The heart is globular in shape The aorta is dilated and displaced toward the right The hilar shadows are wide and strongly pulsating (*hilar dance*) (fig. 20a)

Angiocardiography shows a direct passage of the radio opaque dye from the right ventricle to the aorta (10b) (fig. 20a)

BLOOD—CIRCULATION TIME

The blood presents *polycythemia*

Oxygen saturation of the peripheral arterial blood is low and falls after exercise The amount of oxygen consumed per liter of ventilation on the contrary rises after exercise (3c)

Circulation time tests show that the arm to tongue time is shorter than in normal people

MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

As no obstacle is placed against the blood entering the pulmonary artery the main cause of right ventricular enlargement is the communication between the two ventricles Therefore right ventricular hypertrophy and right axis deviation are less than in tetralogy of Fallot For the same reason the mixture of blood in the aorta is moderate

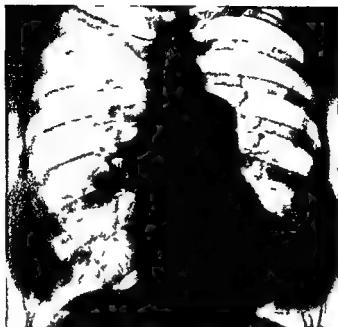


FIG. 204 Cardiac silhouette in a case of *Eisenmenger complex* (courtesy of Dr S C Burwell)

and less cyanosis polycythemia and clubbing are present

Cyanosis is due to admixture of bloods in the aorta as proven by the fact that oxygen saturation of the pulmonary venous blood may be normal (46)

The frequent hoarseness is due to compression of the left recurrent nerve by the dilated pulmonary artery. Bloody sputum is caused by active congestion of the pulmonary vessels

The soft diastolic murmur frequently observed at the base is due to either aortic or pulmonic insufficiency (incompetent bicuspid aortic valve stretching of the pulmonic ring or fibrosis of the pulmonic leaflets)

The dilatation of the pulmonary artery and of the hilar vessels is caused by the fact that there is high pressure in the right ventricle and no pulmonary stenosis. More over on account of a high septal defect blood is frequently shunted from the left ventricle into the opening of the pulmonary artery thereby increasing pulmonary flow

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The syndrome is relatively well tolerated. Many cases have reached adult age and

some old age. In some cases repeated pregnancy caused no special disturbance. However pulmonary congestion chronic bronchitis pulmonary infarction or aneurysm of the pulmonary artery may occur, in addition to other common complications

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is based on the systolic murmur and a loud P_2 in the presence of a wide pulmonary artery and a large aorta. The existence of cyanosis (started late in life) shortened circulation time and hoarseness are also important for the diagnosis

Differential diagnosis should be made with the following syndromes

Tetralogy of Fallot Cyanosis is more severe and starts earlier in tetralogy of Fallot. Hoarseness and hemoptysis are more common in Eisenmenger's complex. The x-ray signs are decisive because they reveal large pulsating pulmonary vessels in Eisenmenger's complex

Patent foramen ovale There usually is no cyanosis and there may be no murmur. When this is present the x-ray finding of a small aorta is in favor of the patent foramen ovale. Circulation time is normal or delayed

in patent foramen ovale shorter in Eisenmenger's complex. Angiocardiography and catheterization decide in doubtful cases. However cases with cyanosis may present serious diagnostic problems.

Patent ductus arteriosus plus aortic stenosis or coarctation. The finding of a small aorta is against Eisenmenger's complex. However cases with coarctation of the aorta may have a large ascending aorta at first. In Eisenmenger's complex the aorta is displaced toward the right. Cyanosis is greater in patent ductus arteriosus plus aortic stenosis than in Eisenmenger's complex. The murmur is different in phonocardiograms. Angiocardiography may decide in doubtful cases whether the shunt is from right to left otherwise a retrograde aortogram may permit diagnosis.

PROGNOSIS

The heart usually presents a progressive enlargement. The difficulty of oxygen intake in the lungs becomes progressively greater. Therefore patients with Eisenmenger's complex seldom live more than 10 to 15 years after cyanosis has become apparent (31). For this reason cyanosis has a bad prognostic meaning in this syndrome.

THERAPY

No surgical therapy can be done at the present time. It is possible that in the future closure of the septal defect will be undertaken.

Transposition of the Great Vessels

LESIONS—MECHANISM

Each of the large arterial vessels instead of arising from its respective ventricle opens into that opposite. A large ventricular septal defect is always present and is necessary for survival. Diagnosis of transposition is sometimes difficult because there may be associated dextrocardia (page 348), absence of the ventricular apex, persistence of the right aortic arch, or any combination of them.

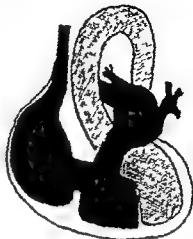


FIG 20b Angiocardiogram in Eisenmenger complex (inspired by originals of Susan Grubman and Steinberg)

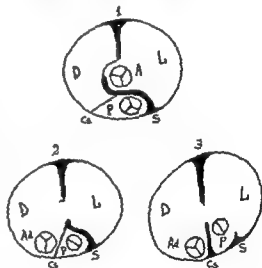


FIG 20f Position of the septa and of the large vessels: 1 in a normal heart; 2 in partial transposition; 3 in complete transposition (adapted from Epstein)

Three main types have been recognized (2a) (fig. 20G)

a) *Partial transposition* both the aorta and the pulmonary artery open into the right ventricle, the aorta being at the right.

b) *Complete transposition* the aorta opens into the right ventricle, the pulmonary artery into the left.

c) *Mixed transposition* the aorta opens

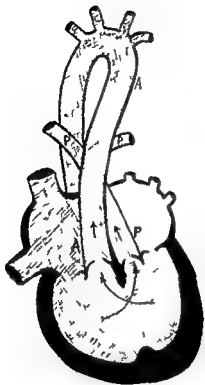


FIG. 201. Changes of the heart in the transposition of the large vessels

into the right ventricle the pulmonary artery into the left both the tricuspid and the mitral valves are in the left ventricle

The so-called *corrected transposition* occurs when there is *complete transposition plus dextrocardia* or dextroposition of the heart

In all the 3 types the ventricular septum has a large defect and may be absent (*cor batriatum monocentriculare*) (fig. 207). In type 1 the right ventricle receives blood from the left ventricle through the septum and sends it into the aorta

The various types are different aspects of the same malformation. Faulty torsion of the primitive cardiac tube may be more or less severe and it often causes closure of the left fetal aorta with persistence of the right the so-called *transposed aorta* represents the persistence of the fetal right aorta. Abnormalities in the incorporation of the bulbus cordis has also been postulated (16). This however might be secondary to the above quoted anomaly

When a single ventricle is present there is a thorough mixture of the blood coming from the two atria before it enters both large vessels (17). In some cases the inter-ventricular shunt is absent and the septum is closed. Life is then possible only by the help of another shunt patent ductus arteriosus or patent foramen ovale

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Cyanosis polycythemia and clubbing of the fingers and toes are constant and severe

Osteoarthropathy is not unusual. *Squatting* is frequent. Cases having a patent ductus may present more severe cyanosis in the face and upper part of the trunk than in the rest of the body (31). This is due to the fact that the ductus carries oxygenated blood which comes from the left ventricle via the transposed pulmonary artery and that this blood flows mainly into the descending aorta. Attacks of *dyspnea*, *palpitation* and *dizziness* are frequent after exercise. *Bloody sputum* is also common

Different local signs may be present. The heart is enlarged and *globular*

There may be a *systolic murmur* behind the sternum at the 3rd left cartilage (septal defect) and also a *diastolic murmur* (meeting of the two atrial blood streams in a single ventricle). The 2nd sound is often loud at the 2nd right inter-space (actual pulmonary area). There may be a machinery murmur at the right of the sternum (actual seat of the ductus arteriosus). However there may not be any murmur. A triple rhythm is frequently present

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM

The electrocardiogram reveals right axis deviation deep Q₁ and depressed S₁. There may be intraventricular block long P-R or a V block. There may be a *mirror type electrocardiogram* (even without dextrocardia) (18) (page 548)

High voltage wide QRS waves with prominent R and S in leads 2 and 3 and slight intraventricular block have been

suggested as being the signs of *cor biatriatum monoventriculare* (19)

X RAY

The heart is rounded and vertical. It may resemble a 'hot water bag' and therefore simulate pericardial effusion (20). The aortic shadow is usually thin in the P4 view while it becomes wide in IAO (8, 19, 22, 23, 31). The pulmonary vessels are large and pulsating and there may be intense mottling of the lungs (47).

Angiocardiography The aorta fills with contrast medium directly from the right ventricle. The pulmonary artery either is not visible or fills after the aorta (passing of the dye through the ductus or a septal defect into the left heart). The aortic arch makes a wide sweep in IAO. The contrast medium leaves the heart rapidly and the pulmonary vessels are poorly visualized (41).

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

Many cases with transposition die during infancy or childhood. However, some cases with efficient shunts or a single ventricle have lived until maturity (17, 2a). The complications are those of the complex malformations of the heart.

DIAGNOSIS

General diagnosis of congenital heart disease is simple. Exact diagnosis of the malformation is on the contrary difficult. The x-ray data are of decisive importance. Catheterization of the heart and angiocardiography may be needed. Electrocardiographic signs may be important in cases with a single ventricle.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is in general unfavorable but not absolutely negative. It is more favorable in cases with a high ventricular septal defect where a better distribution of blood is obtained (31).

VARIETIES

While three anatomical types have been described (partial, complete and mixed transposition) the clinical varieties are largely influenced by the nature, location and type of the shunt.

A special type of transposition should be called *Taussig's syndrome* (38). In this the aorta arises from the right ventricle, the pulmonary artery is large, overrides the septum and receives blood from both ventricles; there is a high ventricular septal defect. This syndrome is probably a variety of mixed transposition. Its symptomatology resembles that of the Eisenmenger complex and is compatible with life for a number of years. In this syndrome cyanosis dates from birth. Exercise causes a fall of oxygen consumption per liter of ventilation. The pulmonary artery contains a higher content of oxygen than the femoral artery.

THERAPY

Surgery of this condition has been attempted in various ways: 1) by anastomosing the veins from the apical and cardiac lobes of the right lung either to the right atrium or to the superior vena cava (48); 2) by creating an atrial septal defect; 3) if pulmonary pressure is low on account of pulmonary stenosis by means of the Blalock-Taussig operation. Recent attempts at reestablishing the normal connections of the two large arterial vessels are in an experimental stage.

Persistence of the Common Arterial Trunk Plus Shunts

LESIONS—MECHANISM

There are two main types (26):

a) There is a short common arterial trunk from which both the pulmonary artery and the aorta arise (partial persistence of the arterial trunk).

b) There is a long common arterial trunk from which all the branches of the pulmonary artery and of the aorta arise.

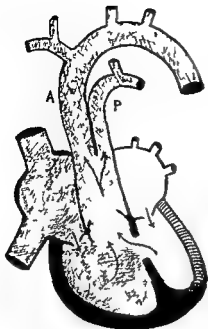


FIG 208 Changes of the heart and large vessels in cases with persistence of the common arterial trunk

(including the coronary arteries) The trunk continues as the descending aorta

A third possibility is that of *pulmonic atresia* with absence of the main pulmonary artery in such cases either a patent ductus or the bronchial arteries supply the lungs (31-39) This type has been called *pseudo truncus*

There usually is a *high ventricular septal defect* and the trunk overrides the defect (fig 208) In some cases however the trunk arises from the right ventricle and circulation is maintained through an atrial septal defect a patent ductus or both The left ventricle is atrophied

The arterial trunk has four semilunar valves but two of them may be partially fused (3)

A singular malformation is a large arterial pouch from which all branches of the aorta and pulmonary artery arise and which communicates with both ventricles without being associated with shunts

The cause of these malformations seems to be a faulty torsion of the primitive

cardiac tube which hinders atrophy of the bulbus cordis This is then transformed into a large arterial vessel with a more or less advanced division The four valves derive from the bulbus and would have given origin to both the aortic and pulmonic valves if the normal division had taken place (fig 4)

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Cyanosis is constant and severe *Club fingers* *weakness* and *dyspnea upon exertion* are constant *Hematemesis* is frequent, caused by rupture of esophageal varices On the other hand *hemoptysis* is rare and attacks of suffocation are not frequent The heart is enlarged and rounded The second sound at the base is loud and is never split

There may be a *diastolic thrill* behind the manubrium of the sternum and a *systolic thrill* over the mid precordium There may be dulness of the manubrium Various murmurs may be heard the most constant is a *continuous rather soft murmur at the base and over the back* A *soft early diastolic murmur* in the 3rd left interspace may indicate insufficient valve of the trunk There may be a *triple rhythm* The cases with a *single ventricle* may have no thrills and no murmurs (31)

The *electrocardiogram* may reveal either right or left axis deviation (6-39) High P in leads 1 2 and V_1 depressed ST and inverted T waves and 1:1 block are frequent

The *x ray* shows a rounded heart of a hot water bag type The heart may be small or normal in size The right atrium may be large the right ventricle shows increased pulsations The hilar shadows are wide and present strong pulsations (27) unless the lungs are supplied by the bronchial arteries in such cases the hilar shadows may be absent or small (31) The shadow of the common trunk is not easily recognized The upper left margin of the cardiac silhouette is concave (pulmonary conus and pulmonary knob are absent)



FIG. 209 Cardiovascular silhouette of a child with persistent common arterial trunk in the antero-posterior (a) and left oblique positions (b) TR trunk (sketched after originals of Tausig)

but the aortic knob is high and prominent at the left of the sternum. However a right aortic arch is frequently present (page 464). There may be a subclavian artery posterior to the esophagus. The apex is upturned and the contour in left oblique is unique (31) (fig. 209).

Angiocardiography. Both in the PA and in the LAO portions the contrast medium is seen filling a large trunk from the right ventricle. The pulmonary artery fills slightly later (41).

CATHETERIZATION

The data are similar to those of the tetralogy of Fallot except that the pulmonary artery is usually not entered and that no pulmonary stenosis can be demonstrated.

(Circulation time tests may reveal a shorter arm to tongue time.)

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The course is in general short because many complications invariably arise. They include rheumatic and bacterial endocarditis, pulmonary infarction, pneumonia, and congestive failure. However the possibility that some exceptional case may reach maturity cannot be excluded.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of these cases is always difficult. However circulation time tests may

angiocardigraphy and catheterization of the heart make diagnosis possible.

The differential diagnosis between a common trunk and a tetralogy of Fallot with wide aorta may be difficult unless catheterization of the pulmonary artery is successful.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is always bad.

TREATMENT

If the pressure of the pulmonary artery is low the Blalock Tausig operation improves the outlook.

Tricuspid Atresia Plus Double Septal Defect (28)

LESIONS

The tricuspid orifice is closed, the right ventricle is extremely small, the right atrium is very large and sends the blood to the left through a septal defect. The mitral valve is normal. The blood of the left ventricle flows partly to the right ventricle through a septal defect. Some cases with closed ventricular septum have a patent ductus arteriosus instead of the septal defect. The left ventricle is greatly enlarged (fig. 210).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Cyanosis is constant and severe. Clubbing and polycythemia are also constant.

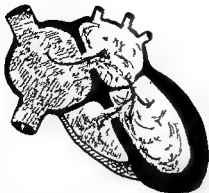


FIG. 210 Changes of the heart in tricuspid atresia associated with shunts

Cardiac dullness is typically elongated with an obtuse cardiohepatic angle and displacement of the apex to the left

As a rule there are no thrills and no murmurs. However a midprecordial systolic murmur may exist

The electrocardiogram reveals high P waves and marked left axis deviation

The mechanical tracings show high atrial waves

X ray reveals an elongated heart with enlargement of both the right atrium and the left ventricle. The pulmonary window is empty on account of the thin pulmonary arch. The vascular markings are decreased

Angiocardiography reveals that the contrast medium goes directly from the right atrium into the left. The aorta arises from the left ventricle and fills normally. The pulmonary artery is visualized after the aorta. The hypoplastic right ventricle may fill even later through the ventricular septal defect

VARIETIES

If instead of atresia there is *tricuspid stenosis* the clinical syndrome is less severe

If there is *patent ductus arteriosus* instead of ventricular septal defect both the right ventricle and the main pulmonary artery are atrophic. The x ray indicates a *depression at the place of the pulmonary knob* but no enlargement or displacement of the aorta

There are cases of *tricuspid atresia plus transposition*. The aorta arises from the underdeveloped right ventricle

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is possible if the clinical picture is known. The left axis deviation, the typical aspect of the cardiac shadow on x ray and the frequent absence of murmurs do not permit confusion with other syndromes

On the other hand it should be kept in mind that left axis deviation can be presented by other cyanotic congenital malformations so that it is not absolutely typical of this syndrome

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is always bad unless surgery is possible

TREATMENT

Whenever catheterization reveals a low pressure in the pulmonary artery, surgery can be attempted. Surgery is indicated even in young infants (49) and should be attempted as early as possible. The best intervention is the Potts Gibson aorto-pulmonary fistula

Mitral Atresia Plus Double Septal Defect and Patent Ductus (40)

This rare malformation permits only a limited survival. There is *polycythemia*, *severe cyanosis* and a *weak slow pulse*. The heart is enormous and globular

The *electrocardiogram* reveals a nodal or idioventricular rhythm, right axis deviation and iv block

The x ray shows very large right atrium and ventricle

Abnormal Number of Cardiac Chambers

Different possibilities exist

1. *three chambered heart with a single atrium (cor trilobulare biventriculosum)*. This syndrome has been described with the

atrial septal defects (page 278) The clinical picture is more severe than when there is only an atrial septal defect Cyanosis is frequent but may not be severe There may be no murmurs However an apical diastolic rumble due to relative mitral stenosis (page 267) may simulate an organic lesion of the mitral valve

1 *three-chambered heart with a single ventricle (cor trilobulare biatriatum)* This syndrome has been described with the ventricular septal defects The picture is more severe than in the limited ventricular septal defects cyanosis is constant there may be no murmurs The lesion may be associated with a tetralogy of Fallot (page 310) transposition (page 321) or common trunk (page 323)

Three types have been described

a) A normal sized aorta arising from the common ventricle and a small pulmonary artery originates from a rudimentary chamber (a remnant of the bulbus)

b) There is transposition of the large vessels (page 321) a small aorta arises from the rudimentary chamber while a normal pulmonary artery arises from the common ventricle

c) Both arterial vessels arise from the rudimentary chamber and are of a reduced size

The absence of the interventricular septum does not necessarily increase the severity of the picture

1 *two chambered heart having a single atrium and a single ventricle (cor bilobulare)* (p. 29)

In one type one defect at the lower part of the atrial septum (*persistent ostium primum*) is combined with another at the upper part of the ventricular septum In a second type complete absence of this septum occurs and there is a *common atrioventricular opening with five cusps* (page 284)

In all cases the lesion is due to simultaneous arrest of growth during the 5th to 6th week of development

Right axis deviation intraventricular block and hot water bag heart at x rays have been found

These severe malformations seldom permit life but some cases in children and even in adults have been described

d) 1 *five-chambered heart with three ventricles (cor trientriculare (30))*

This curious malformation is due to the fact that the right ventricle is divided into two cavities by an additional septum The blood goes through a small orifice of the latter from the tricuspid to the pulmonary opening The malformation is due to a faulty incorporation of the bulbus cordis

A loud systolic murmur over the mid precordium was found in a patient who died at the age of 23

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 FALLOT A *Mars Med* 1886 No 7 138 20
20 an 1403
- 2 a) SPITZER A *Arch Arch* 1923 243 91
b) MALTZER H *Jahrb Kinderheilk* 1921
96 123 *Arch Med Klin* 1923 79 26
- 3 FLEURY J *Arch Mal Coeur* 1937 30 121
- 4 LAUREY C and LEZZI C *Traité des Maladies Congénitales du Cœur Laris* Baillière 1921
- 5 ABBOTT M E *In Vets n Lea Leaf Medicine*
New York Vets n 1911
- 6 SCHWARTZ M A *The Electrocardiogram in Congenital Cardiac Disease* Cambridge
Harvard Univ Press 1940
- 7 CALO A *Arch Mal Coeur* 1931 30 800 *Atlas de Phonocardiographie Clinique* Paris
Masson 1938
- 8 LOEWLER H *Clinical Roentgenology of the Cardiovascular System* Baltimore Thomas
1943
- 9 PAPP C *Arch Mal Coeur* 1931 30 249
- 10 a) GRISHAM A STEINBERG M F and
STEWART M I *Radiology* 1941 37 18
b) GRISHAM M L GRISHAM A and
STEINBERG M F *Am J Dis Child*
1943 65 37
- 11 a) HALLOCK P *Proc Soc Exper Biol (Med)*
1940 44 11
b) NELSON W and COOPER J *Clin Investigation* 1947 26 560
- 12 SOLS CHEN M ZILBER J and ROBINSON
M H *Am Heart J* 1944 28 115
- 13 WHITE I D and SPRADLEY H B *J A M A*
1929 91 157

- 14 a) BLALOCK A AND TAUSIG H B J A M A 1945 128 189
- b) BLALOCK A Ann Surg 1946 124 879
- 15 a) LISENMEYER V Zeit klin Med 1897 32 Suppl 1
- b) TALLEY J H AND FOWLER K Am J M Sci 1937 191 618
- 16 SAPHIR O AND LEV M Am Heart J 1911 21 31
- 17 BIZZARRI A Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1929 13 492
- 18 GRIESHABER H Schweiz Med Woch 1936 66 130
- 19 a) WHITE P D Discussion of case 28532 of Miss Gen Hosp New England J Med 1942 227 1047
- b) GLENDY M M GLENDY R F AND WHITE I D Am Heart J 1944 28 395
- 20 MCGINN S AND WHITE I D New England J Med 1936 214 163
- 21 BLUMENFELD F In *Spe Path und Ther* by Kraus and Brugsch Berlin Urban and Schwarzenberg 1926
- 22 ASHMANN H *Die klinische Roentgendagnostik der inneren Erkrankungen* Leipzig Vogel 1924
- 23 TAUSIG H B Am Heart J 1938 16 728
- 24 CASTELLANOS A PEREIRA R AND GARCIA A Presse Méd 1938 46 1474
- 25 CILFINI I Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1938 22 125
- 26 FELLER A Virchow s Arch 1931 279 869
- 27 IEZZI C AND AGOSTONI E Arch Mal Coeur 1928 21 20
- 28 TAUSIG H B Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1936 69 435
- 29 DRY T J Am Heart J 1937 14 135 Also *Manual of Cardiology* Philadelphia Saunders 1933
- 30 KORNVALER H E Am Heart J 1944 27 259
- 31 TAUSIG H B *The Congenital Malformations of the Heart* New York Commonwealth Fund 1947
- 32 GATES F M AND ROGERS H M Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1947 22 401
- 33 RICH A R Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1948 82 389
- 34 FOTTS W J AND GIBSON S J A M A 1948 137 343
- 35 BING R J AND CO WORKER Mo Cone Cardio Dis 1948 17 11 Also Bing R J AND CARROLL D J Lancet 1951 71 444
- 36 HITZIG W M Mo Cone Cardio Dis 1941 16 8
- 37 PARKER R L Med Clin North America 1948 July 875
- 38 TAUSIG H B III Inter American Congr Cardiol Chicago June 1948
- 39 MARSHALL R Brit Heart J 1943 5 191
- 40 TAUSIG H B Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1945 76 75
- 41 GASUL B M AND CO WORKERS J Pediat 1949 35 413
- 42 POTTS W J SMITH M AND GIBSON S J A M A 1946 132 62
- 43 BROCK R C Brit M J 1948 1 1121
- 44 GLOVER R P BAILEY C P et al J Thoracic Surg 1952 23 14
- 45 COSBY R S et al Am J Med 1951 11 31
- 46 VOCI G JOLY F AND CARLOTTI J Bull Mem Soc Med Hôp Paris 1950 656 (Nos 18 19)
- 47 CAMPBELL M AND SUZMAN S Circ 1951 4 329
- 48 HANLON C R AND BLALOCK A Ann Surg 1948 127 385
- 49 GASUL B M FALL F H et al Am J Dis Child 1949 78 16

Disturbances of the Heart Rate and of the Heart Rhythm

Disturbances of the heart rate and rhythm are caused by changes in the myocardial ability to create an impulse (automaticity) or to react to a stimulus (excitability) or to conduct a stimulus (conductivity). Either localized or diffuse changes of these functions may be responsible for the disturbance. These changes may be connected with intrinsic phenomena of the heart muscle (myogenic) with autonomic nerve impulses (neurogenic) or both.

The disturbances of rate can be divided into *rapid heart (tachycardia)* and *slow heart (bradycardia)*. The disturbances of rhythm or arrhythmias may be associated with either rapid or slow heart. A simple classification separates the forms due to modified function of the S-A node (*sinus disturbances*) from the *ectopic rhythms* and places into two different groups the forms due to *increased automatism or excitability* and those due to *decreased conductivity*.

I Disturbances Due to Modified Function of the S-A Node

SINUS TACHYCARDIA

Cause and Types

The most common sinus tachycardia is caused by *exercise*. It lasts for a long time if the heart muscle is weak.

Digestion is often accompanied by increased heart rate. This occurs if the quantity of food and drink is too great or if the heart muscle is weak. The ingested fluid increases the volume of circulating blood thus increasing cardiac strain. *Assuming the erect position* is accompanied by an increased heart rate because of decreased intensity of carotid sinus reflexes.

Emotion is accompanied by tachycardia. Many *drugs and poisons* also cause tachycardia. Among them caffeine and nicotine are the most commonly used. *Fever* is usually accompanied by rapid heart action.

Endocrine disorders may be accompanied by rapid heart, the most frequent being hyperthyroidism (page 401).

Valvular defects, pericardial lesions and *high or low blood pressure* may be accompanied by sinus tachycardia. This is due to the fact that they increase the work of the heart and therefore are the equivalent of exertion.

If the myocardium is weak, the heart maintains its output by reducing systolic discharge and increasing its rate.

Sympathetic stimuli or a *lesion of the vagus nerve* may be responsible for a rapid pulse.

Signs and Symptoms

The patient usually does not feel the tachycardia. However, if the latter is too high, he may complain of *palpitation*.

The pulse is regular and often small. It has no fixed rate, therefore exercise, change of position and respiration may vary it. Spontaneous variations are also common. (2) The *heart sounds* are regular and frequently have equal duration and loudness.

Graphic Methods

Electrocardiogram The atrial and ventricular waves follow each other in a normal way. P-P may be slightly longer but not over 0.20 second. Diastole is short so that the end of T is near the following P (fig. 211A). In the adult, the rate varies between 90 and 120 but is seldom above 100. Occasionally, higher figures have been described.

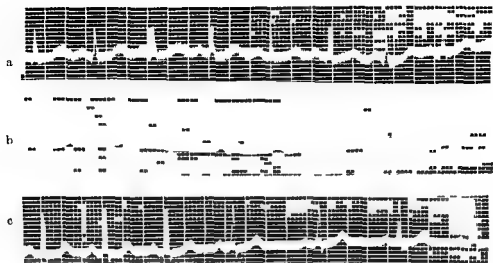


FIG. 211. Electrocardiograms of A sinus tachycardia B sinus bradycardia C sinus arrhythmia

Jugular tracing There may be fusion of τ with the following a wave

Phonocardiogram The heart sounds are short and loud. A triple rhythm is not unusual because of tumultuous ventricular filling (p. 370)

Diagnosis

Sinus tachycardia can usually be recognized because a) it is connected with a definite cause b) it does not start suddenly c) it is well tolerated d) very seldom does the rate exceed 150 e) the rate frequently changes and f) there is a normal electrocardiogram

Paroxysmal tachycardia gives an abnormal electrocardiogram starts suddenly and is less well tolerated

Treatment

Treatment is directed whenever possible to removal of the cause. Whenever high excitability of the sympathetic system is involved *ergotamine* or *hydergine* (36) may be used.

Digitalis (5) or *quinidine* (24) are indicated in some cases. *Coramine* (61) may be used with low blood pressure.

Rest, sedatives and treatment of the thyroid are necessary in some cases. In particularly severe and intractable cases removal of the upper thoracic sympathetic

ganglia (2nd to 5th) may be necessary (111).

SINUS BRADYCARDIA

Cause and Mechanism

Sinus bradycardia may result from *poisoning* or *infection*. Poisoning from biliary salts (jaundice), products of metabolism (uremia) or digitalis are the most common. Typhoid, diphtheria, rheumatic disease, mumps, pneumonia and cholera may cause relative or absolute sinus bradycardia.

Convalescence is frequently accompanied by slow pulse due to sinus bradycardia.

Increased intracranial pressure is revealed by a slow pulse. *Visceral colicky pain* also is usually accompanied by slow pulse.

Patients with *myocardial fibrosis* may have a slow pulse which is persistent and only slightly affected by the position of the patient.

Hypothyroidism is frequently associated with bradycardia.

Patients with *abnormal sensitivity of the carotid sinus* have a sudden slowing of the pulse when a change of position or an external action stimulates the carotid receptors.

Lastly, some *normal individuals* have a constantly slow pulse; their condition has

been called *vagotonia*. *Athletes* frequently have a slow pulse.

In all these cases three possible mechanisms may exist:

a) There is a continuous reflex action which slows down the heart by way of the vagus nerve.

b) There is a high tone and excitability of the medullary center of the vagus so that normal stimuli are sufficient for maintaining the slow pulse.

c) The sinoatrial node itself is affected.

The reflex mechanism is involved in the cases with visceral pain or hypersensitive carotid sinus and may be involved in cases of myocarditis. A high excitability of the vagus occurs in patients with high intracranial pressure in hypothyroidism and in normal individuals with slow pulse. Direct change of the function of the S A node is involved in myocardial fibrosis in severe myocarditis and in cases of poisoning. However in many cases a double mechanism (action on the cardiac muscle and on the vagus nerves) is involved. This is also true for digitalis (page 583).

A paralysis of the accelerans is possible in some cases as a result of a central or peripheral lesion but this is the least frequent mechanism.

Signs and Symptoms

Symptoms are usually absent but a further strong stimulation of the vagus (sudden immersion in cold water, emotion or pain) may cause *fainting*. In such a case a vascular collapse is frequently associated with the bradycardia.

The pulse is slow and regular but may present marked respiratory arrhythmia (page 332). The heart sounds and the pulsations of the jugular veins are normal.

The systolic blood pressure may be normal or slightly low and is usually accompanied by a large pulse pressure.

Graphic Methods

Electrocardiogram The electrocardiogram is normal and shows a long diastole. P P is

normal. The rate is usually between 60 and 50 and only exceptionally between 50 and 40 (fig. 211B).

Pharmacologic and functional tests The most important is the *atropine test*. Injection of 1 mg. of atropine sulfate hinders the action of the vagus nerve and accelerates the heart rate. Another pharmacologic test is represented by the *inhalation of amyl nitrite*. This is particularly effective in patients with coronary heart disease and bradycardia caused by functional depression of the S A node.

Changes of position, exertion and deep respiration are usually sufficient to accelerate the pulse in persons with sinus bradycardia. Compression of the carotid sinus may arrest the heart in patients with bradycardia due to hypersensitive carotid receptors. Both this maneuver and the compression of the eyeballs may arrest the heart in patients with an excitable vagus nerve.

Diagnosis

Diagnosis is not difficult in most of the cases. Clinical data are usually sufficient and may be supplemented by the functional and pharmacologic tests. The electrocardiogram may be needed in doubtful cases or when the rate is very slow.

Differential diagnosis should be made from nodal rhythm, A V or S A block type 2 to 1 and complete A V block. The latter usually has a slower pulse but cases of congenital A V block may have a pulse between 40 and 60. Differential diagnosis will be discussed in the respective paragraphs.

Treatment

No treatment is required in most cases. If possible the cause of the bradycardia should be corrected.

In some cases *atropine* (21), *ephedrine* (57), *benzadrine* (58), *caffeine* (60) or *manitol* (51) will be required. The last is useful only in coronary heart patients.

SINUS ARRHYTHMIA

Cause

This common irregularity of the pulse is usually associated with respiration. It is particularly evident in children, convalescents, or people with unusually high excitability of the vagus nerve. It is also frequently present when pleuropericardial adhesions are stretched by respiratory movements. It may occur in old people with arteriosclerotic lesions and coronary heart disease.

Signs

The pulse is periodically and alternately rapid and slow. Slowing down of the pulse may be abrupt but is usually gradual in onset. The pulse may seem intermittent in the first case.

These changes of the heart rate are connected with respiration: the phase of rapid pulse occurring in the second half of inspiration and that of slow pulse in the second half of expiration.

Deep breathing accentuates the phenomenon; suspension of respiration causes its disappearance. Atropine usually abolishes sinus arrhythmia.

Graphic Tracings

Electrocardiogram The electrocardiogram has normal waves; it shows in general gradual changes in the length of diastole (fig. 211C). If there are sudden changes and the long diastole is equal to twice the P-P interval, the cause is S-A block.

Interval tracing The pulse waves become gradually larger and have a lower starting point, then become smaller again with a higher starting point. This indicates higher systolic and lower diastolic pressures during the phase of lower pulse, usually during the second half of expiration.

Mechanism

The various mechanisms of sinus arrhythmia are illustrated by the following scheme (134)

SINUS ARRHYTHMIA

Vagal	Myocardial
respiratory	incomplete S-A block
anoxic (bulbar)	type I (periodic)
independent	type II (intermittent)
	S-A standstill

Diagnosis

The diagnosis can be made by means of the simple tests already described. Suspension of respiration causes a disappearance of the phenomenon. Atropine can be used in doubtful cases.

Differential diagnosis should be made with the following conditions:

Periodic S-A block may be connected with respiration and may be affected in the manner of respiratory arrhythmia by the functional tests. However, in S-A block the long pause is equal to twice the short one; in respiratory arrhythmia the long pause is less than double; the increase is gradual in the latter.

Sinus premature beats These will be discussed later (page 349).

Prognosis—Treatment

Prognosis is favorable except in those cases where the irregularity reveals an initial cardiac failure (coronary heart disease). Therefore correlation between sinus arrhythmia and all other clinical data is necessary.

No treatment is necessary. Atropine may cause disappearance of the disturbance.

II Disturbances of Rate and Rhythm Caused by Increased Excitability of the Myocardium

ATRIAL AND NODAL TACHYCARDIA (135)

Cause and Mechanism

This paroxysmal syndrome is common and may occur at any age. It may be present at birth (109). Endocrine disorders (hyperthyroidism, disorders associated with uterine myoma, puberty, menopause or pregnancy) favor it. Normal individuals with the Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome are prone to

such attacks of tachycardia. Nervous reflexes due to cardiac or extracardiac stimulation and reaching the heart along the sympathetic pathways may be involved.

Paroxysmal tachycardia is due to the rapid and regular production of stimuli in some area of the atrial or septal myocardium. Two different theories have been advanced: 1) that of circus movement and 2) that of an abnormal pacemaker in the atrial wall (parasystole). Present evidence confirms the second theory because multiple studies prove that there is no circus movement in the atrial walls (116-146). As the new rhythm is due to increased excitability of a new atrial or nodal focus, it has been called a new rhythm by usurpation (118).

Signs and Symptoms

The patients are usually in good health with no other cardiac disturbance or lesion. They complain that *suddenly* without any apparent cause (or after a minor excitement or effort) *they feel a shock in their chest* and have the impression that their hearts start beating at a tremendous rate. Some patients state that there seems to be 'a sudden shifting of gears in their heart'. Once the attack is started, it lasts from some minutes to some hours and exceptionally days.

During the attack the patient is somewhat pale. The pulse is small, regular, and has a rate of 160 to 180. A slower (120 to 160) or faster rate (180 to 240) may be found occasionally. Infants may attain the extreme rate of 300 or slightly more (1).

The patient usually abstains from exertion during an attack, but if necessary, can exert remarkable effort. A condition of collapse may occur if the rate is above 200.

In addition to palpitation, the patients complain of precordial oppression or ache and frequently of anginal pain.

The jugular veins are distended and pulsate. The apex impulse is so rapid that it may be felt like a vibration.

The heart sounds are loud and regular. The

1st sound may seem split on account of a loud atrial rumble (112).

Graphic Tracings

Electrocardiogram During the attack, the ventricular complexes are regular and have a rate of 160-180 (occasionally higher or lower). The atrial waves have the same rate and are either upright with abnormal contour or inverted. The abnormal P may precede, follow, or be masked by QRS. It may fuse with the preceding T (fig. 212A). When P precedes QRS, there is atrial tachycardia; when P is inverted and near QRS, there is nodal tachycardia.

Cases having a faster atrial rate and A-V block have been described (1-10). As the mechanism of production of atrial tachycardia and atrial flutter is similar, it is preferable to diagnose such cases as atrial flutter (page 339).

After the attack, the ECG becomes perfectly normal. However, in some cases a persistent inversion of T, lasting for 3 to 20 days, has been described (17).

Jugular tracing There is only one wave due to the fusion of the normal waves. When the atrial and the ventricular contractions occur at the same time, this wave may become very high (18).

Arterial pulse The pulse becomes small during the attack. The dicrotic wave may be high and its fusion with the following pulse wave may simulate an anacrotic wave (18).

The speed of the pulse wave is often reduced.

Phonocardiogram The heart sounds are of short duration. The interval between 1st and 2nd sounds during the attack is shorter than between the attacks. The sounds are louder than before the attack, especially the first (20).

In nodal tachycardia, the tracing may simulate splitting of the 1st sound due to additional atrial vibrations (112).

The vibrations of a systolic murmur may be recorded during the attack.

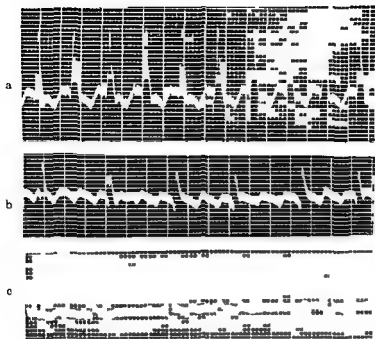


FIG 212 Electrocardiograms of A atrial tachycardia B atrial flutter C atrial fibrillation

Mode of Origin of the Signs

A severe atrial or nodal tachycardia has important effects which are common to most types of rapid heart action. The occurrence of more than one pulse wave in the arterial system is one; the possible simultaneous occurrence of atrial and ventricular contractions (nodal tachycardia) is another. It is apparent that the latter may cause insufficiency of the A-V valves and slight regurgitation into both atria. The high venous wave occurring in such cases is probably due to this mechanism.

The extremely short diastole may severely impair the coronary blood supply, which is so dependent upon diastolic filling of the coronaries (page 55 fig. 42).

Moreover cardiac output may drop considerably while at the same time the demand for coronary flow is increased. This causes a relative myocardial ischemia (fig. 215).

The critical ventricular rate for the causation of anginal pain seems to be about 160 per minute (21a). When the ventricles beat at a

lower rate no pain occurs unless there is myocardial infarction.

The critical rate for the occurrence of vascular collapse seems to be about 200 per minute (more than half of the cases) (21b).

Varieties

Different types are determined by the different ventricular rates and by the length of the attack. *Prolonged attacks* are more serious than short ones. *Chronic atrial tachycardia* is possible (22) and consists of recurring attacks influenced by posture and often initiated by a premature beat.

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of atrial tachycardia is often possible on the simple basis of the history if attention is paid to sudden onset, sudden cessation and nearly constant absence of heart disease. The electrocardiogram taken between the attacks is important by revealing a normal tracing. During the attack the ECG shows the simultaneous increase of both atrial and ventricular rates.

Differential diagnosis should be made with the following conditions

Atrial flutter The pulse during the attack of atrial flutter has a definite ratio to the pulse between the attacks. Attacks of atrial flutter are frequently very long those of paroxysmal tachycardia rarely so. The ECG between attacks reveals the flutter in atrial flutter and is normal in atrial tachycardia.

Ventricular tachycardia This condition will be discussed later (page 336)

Sinus tachycardia This condition is influenced by different stimuli and the pulse has no fixed rate. The pulse of sinus tachycardia is seldom above 120 but is always above 120 in atrial tachycardia.

Differential diagnosis with *myocardial infarction* is necessary when precordial pain is severe and inverted T waves are found in the ECG. When lasting changes are noted two possibilities should be considered

a) Ischemia of the myocardium due to poor blood supply and increased strain (tachycardia) caused necrosis or injury

b) The attack of tachycardia was reflexly caused by stimuli arising in an area of infarction

Differentiation between the two is not always possible but the first more frequently gives signs of diffuse damage while the second more frequently gives a typical picture of either anterior or posterior infarction including Q waves (page 417)

Early evolution (about 1 week) of the electrocardiographic changes and prolonged Q-T interval with bizarre and prolonged T waves are observed in cases without infarction (110) (so called *post tachycardial syndrome*)

Differential diagnosis between atrial tachycardia and *infection* is necessary in infants who present vomiting diarrhea abdominal pain convulsions and fever. The extremely high cardiac rate seems to cause this syndrome which is related to intoxication (23)

Prognosis

In general the prognosis is good. A more guarded prognosis is necessary however in very long or recurrent attacks and in those cases presenting lasting changes of the ECG

Treatment

During the attack treatment is based on either intense stimulation of the vagus nerves or inhibition of the sympathetic nerves. For this purpose many different maneuvers have been tried and some of them are discovered by the patients themselves. They are

a) Deep inspirations swallowing of a mouthful of food or stimulation of the pharynx until vomiting occurs are the most common. Some patients lie on a couch with the head at a lower level than the rest of the body

b) A strong compression of the eyeballs

c) A compression of the carotid sinus of one side

In the author's experience the most effective although painful maneuver is compression of the eyeballs

When the maneuvers are not effective intravenous therapy with *cedilanid* (6) or *digoxin* can be tried (24) or subcutaneous administration of *prostigmin* (72) or intravenous injection of *prone tyl* (26). If these are ineffective *hydergine* (36) or *quinidine* (24) may be tried. In infants subcutaneous *prostigmin* (72) in dose of 1 mg may be life saving (104)

Prevention of the attacks is difficult. Possible factors which may initiate the attacks should be removed. Among them abuse of stimulants and tobacco constipation indigestion overexertion and mental strain are the most common. When a source of autonomic reflexes is present (gall stones adhesion, etc.) it should be removed if possible. Sympathetic depression with *hydergine* (36) may be tried. Prolonged treat-

ment with *quinidine* or *digoxin* (24) is helpful in certain cases

In some cases surgical treatment of a thyroid condition has been successful. Perhaps the use of *thiouracil* may be helpful in poor surgical risks

Surgical removal of the stellate ganglion on one side or of the upper left dorsal ganglion has been advocated (6)

VENTRICULAR TACHYCARDIA

Cause and Mechanism

Ventricular tachycardia is a serious disturbance due to the existence of an abnormal pacemaker in one of the ventricles

All factors responsible for increased excitability of the myocardium may be involved. Among them stimulants nicotine, fatigue, acute infections, hyperthyroidism, and digitalis poisoning are common. However, coronary heart disease, acute myocarditis and heart failure are the most frequent causes. For this reason it can be stated that *ventricular tachycardia is often found in organic heart disease*

Symptoms and Signs

When ventricular tachycardia occurs in persons with a normal heart it produces the same symptoms as an attack of atrial tachycardia. When on the contrary it occurs in patients with heart disease the patient may be completely unaware of the attack.

When the attack is brief the patient's face suddenly becomes pale, then normally red again after the end of the paroxysm. When the attack is long, the patient may feel dizzy and complain of *beating of the ears*. The end of the attack is frequently marked by the impression of a sudden rush of blood to the head. *Precordial pain* and *fainting* are not unusual.

The pulse is rapid and regular. However, slight irregularities with occasional larger pulses are sometimes found (2, 106). The first sound has frequently a *variable intensity* being louder when the ventricular is preceded by an atrial contraction (20).

Graphic Tracings

Electrocardiogram Two main varieties have been recognized

a) *Salvo of ventricular premature beats* (26, 27) During sinus rhythm or atrial fibrillation the usual rhythm is interrupted by a salvo of from 10 to 100 ventricular premature beats

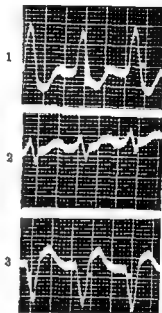


FIG 213 Electrocardiogram of ventricular tachycardia

b) *Real ventricular tachycardia* It is similar to type a except that the attack lasts for many hours or days. The beginning of the attack is sudden but it may be preceded by a few scattered premature beats having the same electrical appearance as the complexes during the attack. These are broad, have a high voltage, are notched and are followed by a T wave which is in the opposite direction of the main complex (fig. 213). Occasional P waves having a much slower rate than the ventricular complexes may be seen.

Recognition of the focus of origin of the attack is similar to that of ventricular premature beats (fig. 223). After the attack depression of ST and inversion of T in

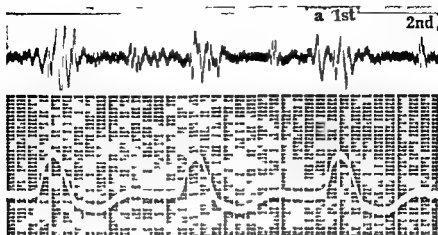


FIG. 214 Electro- and phonocardiogram in a case of *ventricular tachycardia*. Atrial waves (a) appear at long intervals

either lead 1 or lead 3 may be recognized. It is also possible to note a prolongation of Q-T (31).

Arterial tracing. The pulse waves are small and may show a phenomenon which has been considered typical, *variability of height of the different pulse waves*. There may be *pulsus alternans* (page 373).

Jugular tracing. High atrial waves are recorded at a rate which is slower than that of the arterial pulse. However this sign is missing as there is associated atrial fibrillation. The waves may be slightly irregular.

Phonocardiogram. The heart sounds, especially the first, are low and clear. There may be no murmurs and no triple rhythm. On the other hand the atrial contraction which has a slower rate than the ventricular may cause an *atrial sound* either in systole or in diastole according to the casual coincidence of the two rhythms (fig. 214). Splitting of the first sound has been erroneously reported; this splitting cannot occur because the interval separating the contractions of the two ventricles is shorter than the duration of the main phase of the first sound (136).

Mode of Origin of the Signs

Ventricular tachycardia is a serious disturbance caused by the presence of an

abnormal focus of excitability in one of the ventricles (either in one of the branches of the bundle of His or in the ventricular wall). This sends frequent abnormal stimuli which determine the ventricular rate. In other words there is an *abnormal ventricular pacemaker*. The stimuli reach the opposite ventricle only after a detour. This explains many common electrocardiographic points between ventricular tachycardia, bundle branch block and ventricular premature beats.

The atria may behave differently during ventricular tachycardia:

a) They have a *slower* rate than the ventricles since they are ruled by the S-A pacemaker (27).

b) They have *irregularities of rhythm* due to occasional premature contractions caused by a *retrograde stimulus* coming from the ventricular pacemaker (28).

c) They beat regularly and *rapidly* at the same rate as the ventricles. This last occurrence is due to the fact that no blockage protects the atria from the frequent ventricular stimuli (*retrograde stimulation*) with the result that the ventricular pacemaker regulates both the ventricles and the atria. In such cases the atrial contraction always follows the ventricular.

The delayed changes of the ECG, which

may simulate myocardial infarction have been explained as being caused by a functional disturbance of the focus of stimulation persisting after the attack (16a). However the possibility of a myocardial infarction causing the attack should not be overlooked and extensive damage caused by the tachycardia is also to be considered.

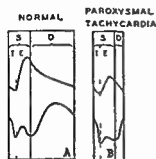


FIG. 21b Comparison between the normal blood flow in the coronary system (A) and that during an attack of paroxysmal tachycardia (B). S = systole D = diastole I = isometric phase E = ejection phase upper tracing, aortic pressure lower tracing, coronary flow (Sketched after Wiggers.)

The changes of the blood pressure, cardiac output, venous pressure and circulation time (20) are determined by the rapid ventricular rate. This also causes precordial pain and vascular collapse in atrial tachycardia (21) (page 331).

Course, Complications and Prognosis

Attacks of ventricular tachycardia are often a complication of different heart diseases. They increase the severity of the clinical picture and require a more guarded prognosis. The attacks may last from a few minutes to many weeks. In the latter case they may be followed by heart failure, ventricular anarchy (page 399) or ventricular flutter (page 396).

The existence of ventricular complexes of the opposite type, alternately originating from each ventricle, implies a poor prognosis (1).

A certain number of cases, usually young people without cardiac lesion, present ven-

tricular tachycardia with reversible cardiac enlargement. Following the attack, electrocardiographic changes may be observed consisting of depression of S-T in one lead with raising in another, symmetrical, deeply inverted T in one or more leads, and prolongation of Q-T. This electrocardiographic picture, which usually lasts about a week, has been called *post tachycardial syndrome* (107-108). Sudden death or heart failure occurred in a certain number of these cases and post mortem failed to reveal myocardial or coronary lesions (108).

Diagnosis

When the rate of the heart is over 100, general diagnosis of paroxysmal tachycardia is imperative.

Clinical diagnosis may be tried on the basis of a) visibility of slow atrial pulsations of the jugular veins contrasting with the rapid radial pulse, b) slight differences in the loudness of the 1st sound, c) occasional stronger arterial pulses recognized upon palpation and during blood pressure measurements. In general, however, the exact recognition of the nature and type of the attack requires the electrocardiograph. Broad and tall ventricular complexes, succeeding each other with regularity and not preceded by a P wave, are typical.

In difficult cases, esophageal electrocardiograms reveal large P waves with a rate which is slower than that of the ventricles (132).

The post tachycardial syndrome should be differentiated from the *pattern of coronary insufficiency*, which is chiefly observed in older people and is present both during and after the attacks. This pattern lasts for only a few days (138).

Between the attacks, the finding of abnormal electrocardiographic tracings or any other sign of heart disease is a point in favor of the diagnosis of ventricular tachycardia.

Cases where differential diagnosis between atrial and ventricular tachycardia is difficult are occasionally found.

Treatment

Stimulation of the vagus nerve by measures which are useful in atrial tachycardia is seldom effective. Moreover it is contraindicated because it may favor ischemia of the myocardium and ventricular fibrillation. This is particularly true in cases with myocardial infarction.

The intravenous injection of *digoxin* has been used in the prevention of the attacks with some success (24). Intravenous *morphine* in dose of 15 mg, repeated if necessary $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 hours later may be effective in the therapy of the attacks (103). It is possible that *atropine* in dose of 1 mg is also useful and should be used in subjects with coronary lesions and especially after myocardial infarction (105).

Propranolol (26) in dose of 60 to 800 mg by intravenous injection is definitely beneficial (140). It should not be given in cases of a *1* block or bundle branch block. *Magnesium sulfate* may also be useful.

Oral *quinidine* (24) or *propranolol* (27) are useful both in the therapy and in the prevention of such attacks. *Peritrate* (50) may be helpful in cases of coronary heart disease.

ATRIAL FLUTTER

Atrial flutter is a persistent and abnormal condition of the atria which is revealed to the patient by acute attacks of rapid ventricular action.

Cause and Mechanism

The atria of these patients contract at a very rapid rate ranging from 200 to 400 per minute. The ventricular rate is usually much slower, a fraction of that of the atria and may be either regular or irregular. This is due to the existence of an *1* block which may be 4 to 1, 3 to 1 or 2 to 1 and may be irregular. The paroxysms are due to the fact that the block disappears or changes in type so that the ventricles suddenly start contracting at a very rapid rate (1 to 1 if the atrial rate is relatively slow or 2 to 1).

According to a common expression the ventricles get hooked up to the atria.

Atrial flutter is found more commonly with heart disease than in its absence. It may be associated with valvular defects (especially mitral stenosis), hypertension, thyrotoxicosis or coronary heart disease. Healthy people may on the other hand suffer from atrial flutter. The disturbance may be found at any age even in infancy.

Sudden effort, excitement, trauma and surgical intervention may precipitate the occurrence of atrial flutter.

The mechanism of the disturbance is based upon

- a) An abnormal production of stimuli from an ectopic atrial pacemaker causing regular and rapid atrial contractions.
- b) A protective block (constant or variable) between atria and ventricles.
- c) Sudden disappearance of the block causing paroxysms of rapid ventricular contractions.

The abnormal production of the stimuli was formerly attributed to a *circus movement* involving the *1* node (4). However multiple experimental (116, 146) and clinical studies (146) seem to indicate that a *single atrial focus* sending rapid stimuli at a rate of 150 to 400 is responsible for the disturbance.

Signs and Symptoms

The patients complain of *acute paroxysms of palpitation* during which they feel weak. These may be of variable duration even lasting for weeks.

Recordal oppression or ache is frequent and *precordial pain* is possible. *Dizziness* or *fainting* may occur in some patients.

Observation of the patient *between attacks* usually reveals a *normal pulse* and a *normal blood pressure*. Inspection of the jugular veins on the other hand may reveal a series of rapid undulations. These pulsations are a multiple of the radial pulse.

Auscultation may reveal a series of fre-

quent sounds which coincide with the atrial contractions and may have a clicking character (7 10 139)

Observation of the patient during an attack reveals a rapid and small radial pulse. It is typical for the pulse to have a definite ratio to that between attacks (like 160 to 80). The pulse is either regular or grossly irregular.

Auscultation frequently reveals an additional sound or rumble during the short ventricular diastole; this may simulate the rumble of mitral stenosis. If a slight irregularity of the ventricular rate occurs, a changing intensity of the 1st sound may be observed (117).

The patient usually avoids strain or effort and may show signs of heart failure which were not present before the attack.

Compression of the eyeballs or of the carotid sinus may slow the radial pulse; this becomes a fraction of the previous pulse (160 to 80, 150 to 75). However, the favorable result of these maneuvers is less constant than in atrial tachycardia.

Blood Pressure

Systolic pressure is low (100 or less) and the pulse pressure is small (20 or less) during the attack.

Graphic Tracings

Electrocardiogram Between attacks of rapid pulse when the patient however still has atrial flutter the ECG shows regular ventricular complexes of normal appearance. Between these are three or more P waves of normal shape separated by regular intervals. The rate of the atria is from 200 to 400 per minute.

During an attack there are three two or even only one P wave between ventricular complexes. In one type the number of P waves is constant; in another there may be a variable number in various cycles. The P wave is frequently inverted (figs 212B and 216). When the P waves are diphasic the negative phase corresponds to an inverted P; the positive phase to a T wave (146). The T waves may be deformed by fusion with the P waves. Tracings recorded in V₁ and V₂ usually give the best evidence of the atrial waves. In certain cases leads II and aVF are the best (135).

Cardiogram Atrial waves may be recorded in the intervals between the ventricular waves of the cardiogram (6 135).

Jugular tracing Regular atrial waves proving coordinated contractions of the atria can be recorded (6 135) (fig 218A).

Phonocardiogram The phonocardiogram may reveal the existence of sounds of atrial origin not only during ventricular diastole but also during ventricular systole (7-10 115 135). When the ventricular rate is rapid a diastolic rumble may appear at the apex simulating that of mitral stenosis.

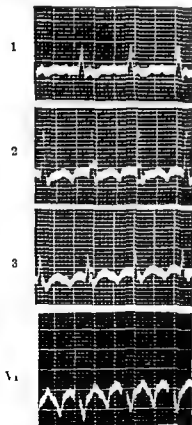


FIG 216 Electrocardiogram during an attack of atrial flutter. Lead V₁ shows the most apparent atrial waves.

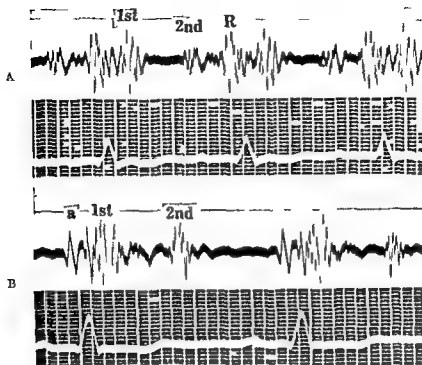


FIG. 91. Electrocardiogram and phonocardiogram of a case during an attack of atrial flutter (A) and 2 weeks later (B). A diastolic rumble (R) simulating that of mitral stenosis is present during the attack; an atrial sound (a) and a prolonged 1st sound are present later.

(fig. 217). If slight irregularities of the ventricular rate occur, a *changing intensity of the first heart sound* may be observed (147).

I lectrol ymogram. If the slit of the pickup is placed across the border of either atrium, good evidence of atrial contractions can be secured (130) (fig. 218B). The atrial waves are usually of large amplitude and are significant in cases where the electrocardiographic tracing had led to admission of flutter-fibrillation.

X Ray

Fluoroscopic examination, with or without the help of a barium swallow, demonstrates regular coordinated contractions of the atria (11, 12). The same demonstration is given by roentgenkymography (13).

Mode of Origin of the Signs

The atrial sounds have been attributed to tension of adhesions or to the same mecha-

nism as the 4th (atrial) sound (page 42). When they occur during systole they may be due to vibration of the closed A V valves.

Critical levels of ventricular rate for pre-cordial pain and vascular collapse are the same as in atrial tachycardia (page 334).

Course and Complications

Atrial flutter is a persistent condition. There have been cases where the atrial disturbance continued for many years. On the other hand, rapid action of the ventricles may occur in attacks of variable duration. They may last hours, days, and even weeks. When they last for a long time, congestive heart failure may result.

Atrial thrombosis followed by peripheral embolism may occur but is not common.

Diagnosis

Sudden onset of attacks of rapid pulse, long duration of the attacks, ratio of the

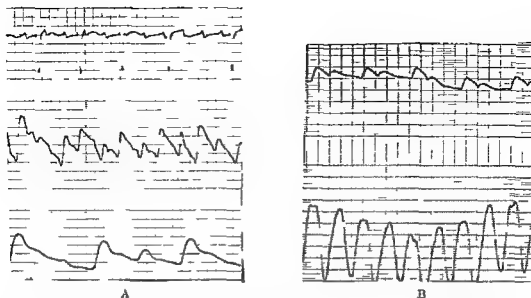


FIG. 215. Tracings in cases of atrial flutter. A From above: FCG in V_1 ; jugular tracing; carotid tracing in a case with irregular pulse. The jugular tracing clearly reveals the atrial waves. B From above: carotid tracing; electrokymogram of right atrium in a case with regular pulse. The atrium is contracting at a rate twice that of the ventricles.

pulse rate during the attack to that between attacks. These are the main data on which a clinical diagnosis of atrial flutter may be made. Rapid undulations of the jugular veins and rapid sounds over the precordium in the intervals between the radial pulses may permit diagnosis in the periods between attacks. The electrocardiogram gives important data. In difficult cases an electrokymogram of the atria may be decisive. This is particularly important in cases with irregular pulse where differential diagnosis with atrial fibrillation is necessary.

Differential diagnosis should be made in order to eliminate the following conditions.

Atrial fibrillation. The atrial waves of the ECG are irregular and differ from each other. The ventricular rate is never absolutely regular. The pulse during attacks has no ratio to that between attacks. In general diagnosis of atrial flutter is made by electrocardiography. Special attention should be paid to leads aVF and V_1 - V_2 for recognition of atrial waves. In doubtful cases demonstration of atrial sounds (phonocardiogram) and of atrial waves (jugular

tracing or electrokymogram) helps in excluding atrial fibrillation.

Atrial tachycardia. The attacks are usually short. Between attacks the ECG is normal. The pulse during attacks has no ratio to that between attacks.

Sinus tachycardia. The pulse has no fixed rate and may be increased or slowed by various conditions. The ECG is normal.

Stokes Adams. The electrocardiograms of S A and of flutter may be confused by beginners because in both conditions the atrial are more frequent than the ventricular complexes. The main difference is that in atrial flutter the atrial rate is fast and the ventricular rate rapid or normal; in Stokes Adams on the contrary the atrial rate is normal and the ventricular is slow.

Mitral stenosis. The atrial sound or rumble of atrial flutter may simulate that of mitral stenosis. As atrial flutter may occur in patients with mitral stenosis, only a careful study of the patient after the end of the attack may decide whether or not there also is a valvular lesion.

Treatment

Treatment of atrial flutter can be outlined as follows

1) A large dose of digitalis (1-2) (109) is given. The toxic effect of the drug causes an increased excitability of the myocardium and a shortening of the refractory period (page 583). This permits the transformation of atrial flutter into atrial fibrillation.

2) After obtaining the initial result quinidine (24) is given (114). This drug prolongs the refractory period (page 592) and re-establishes the sinus rhythm.

3) Further use of digitalis is determined by the basal conditions of the heart and not by the knowledge that there has been atrial flutter (109).

If digitalis fails, quinidine usually does not help. There is no harm, however, in trying it.

ATRIAL FIBRILLATION (73-74)

Atrial fibrillation is a common disturbance which is revealed clinically by total and complete irregularity of the ventricular contractions and of the pulse.

Cause and Mechanism—Lesions

Atrial fibrillation may occur in any type of heart disease. However, two are the most common.

a) Atrial fibrillation in patients with valvular diseases or atrial septal defect and chronic distention of the atria. This is frequently seen in patients with mitral stenosis and even more often in those having combined lesions of the mitral and tricuspid valves. The fibrillation is frequently associated with heart failure.

b) Atrial fibrillation in patients with coronary heart disease and fibrosis of the myocardium. In these patients the fibrillation often is present without any sign of congestive failure.

Atrial fibrillation is frequently encountered in thyrotoxicosis and may be found in patients with acute myocarditis (scarlet fever, pneumonia, diphtheria, rheumatic disease).

Experimental conditions favoring atrial fibrillation are

a) Distention or anoxia of the atrial wall (96).

b) Acute lesion of the atrial myocardium.

c) Direct or reflex stimulation of the vagus nerve (97-98, 100).

d) Digitalis toxicity.

Anoxia of the atria is frequent in congestive failure where it is associated with distention of the chambers. Vagal reflexes are important in digitalis poisoning, thyrotoxicosis and rheumatic disease. In the latter they are usually associated with lesions of the atrial myocardium and possibly with anoxia.

Paroxysmal atrial fibrillation may be caused by myocardial infarction, gall bladder colic, high tension electric discharge or surgery.

Excitement, fear, alcohol, tobacco and gas or food poisoning may favor either the acute or the chronic form of fibrillation.

Atrial fibrillation is usually encountered in old age. However, it may occur in young people and even in children.

There is no pathological change that is typical of atrial fibrillation. Organic heart disease may be present but frequently the only findings are hypertrophy of the ventricles and distention of the atria with irregular areas of fibrosis and degeneration.

Atrial fibrillation was attributed to the establishment of a wave of excitation (and contraction) constantly circulating at a very rapid rate in the atria (circus movement) (77). In most clinical cases the ring where the stimulus was supposed to circulate would surround the venae cavae. From this ring stimuli were said to go off irregularly into the rest of the atrial myocardium, causing fibrillary contractions. The ventricles were supposed to respond as rapidly as possible but with an irregular rhythm. The rate of circulation of the stimulus in the muscular ring was supposed to be between 300 and 500 per minute in man. However, recent evidence has accumulated in favor of the theory

of a single focus The disturbance seems to be initiated by rapid impulse formation in a single center and is favored by islands of refractory tissue causing the typical weaving and intertwining of the contraction (116) *Multifocal types* may also occur (80) Clinical electrocardiograms and experimental cinematograms (146) definitely proved the nonexistence of a circus movement

It is interesting to note that experimental studies proved the possibility of fibrillation of only one atrium usually the right (76 144) Clinical cases with this partial disturbance or having flutter and fibrillation respectively in the two atria have been described (14 77-79 145) however the clinical evidence is less convincing

Signs and Symptoms

The pulse is *absolutely irregular* so that each pulse wave has different amplitude and duration

Auscultation of the heart reveals a similar complete irregularity of the heart sounds If valvular defects are present the murmurs vary from one cardiac cycle to the next Some cardiac contractions are not followed by a radial pulse especially if there is heart failure

Graphic Methods

Electrocardiogram The following data are typical there is no P wave the intervals between the various ventricular complexes are never alike having different lengths even when at first glance the ventricular rhythm seems regular careful measurements reveal the arrhythmia (fig 212C)

There are two varieties

1) There are fine and irregular waves at a rate of 300-600 per minute This is typical atrial fibrillation

2) There are coarse and somewhat irregular waves This has been called *coarse fibrillation* or *flutter fibrillation*

Jugular tracing The c and i waves follow each other with complete irregularity There are no a waves

Low frequency tracing The waves caused by ventricular contraction are of various height and configuration When diastole is short the subsequent period of systolic tension is longer The height of the waves varies somewhat but is not proportional to the length of the preceding diastole

Arterial tracings hemodynamics The pulse waves are typically irregular having various height length and configuration Patients in congestive failure often have a pulse deficit because some of the ventricular contractions are not followed by a pulse wave More over some waves may be present in the arteries nearer the heart and absent in those more distant When failure is severe a high pulse wave may be followed by gradually smaller ones (fig 219) As long as the conditions of the myocardium are good the stroke volume is directly proportional to the length of the preceding diastole and inversely proportional to the stroke volume of the preceding cycle If however there is cardiac failure no rule can be established The speed of the small pulse waves is always greater than that of the large waves (121)

Phonocardiogram The heart sounds have vibrations of similar amplitudes The inter

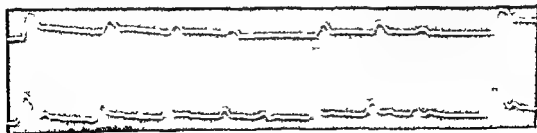


FIG 219 The pulse of Galenus in atrial fibrillation Tibial and brachial tracings

val between QRS and the first sound may vary being longer after a short diastole as has been shown by the author (86) and confirmed by others (87-137). This is more often the case in patients with mitral stenosis; the longer interval seems due to delayed closing of the mitral valve and delayed beginning of the sound on account of smaller atrioventricular gradient of pressure.

Electrolymogram. The atrial tracing shows the absence of atrial waves. The waves of the ventricular and arterial tracings (aortic and pulmonary) have a variable amplitude which is roughly proportional to the length of the previous diastole.

Cardiac Output

It has been demonstrated that cardiac output is reduced by atrial fibrillation (149). The effect is even more striking in cases with mitral stenosis where the strong compensatory contraction of the left atrium is abolished by fibrillation.

Varieties

According to the onset and duration atrial fibrillation can be divided into the *paroxysmal* and *chronic* types. According to the ventricular rate it can be divided into *rapid* and *slow*. According to the electrocardiographic aspect into *coarse* and *fine*. It is possible that *partial fibrillation* may take place.

The initial stage of fibrillation may be preceded by a *prefibrillatory condition* and may be followed by an abnormal function of the atrial myocardium. This is revealed by the following electrocardiographic data (88-120):

- a) Atrial premature contractions with or without block.
- b) Atrial paroxysmal tachycardia or flutter.
- c) Polymorphous P waves.

A further type takes place when both *atrial fibrillation* and *atrial block* are present. This is recognized by the absolute regularity of the ventricular rhythm while fine fibril-

lary waves exclude a more common type of nodal rhythm (page 324). If this variety is not caused by digitalis it has a poor prognosis (123).

Course and Complications

Atrial fibrillation prevents co-ordinated contraction of the atrial myocardium and favors the formation of *mural thrombi*. Sooner or later these may cause an *embolism*.

Diagnosis

The clinical diagnosis of atrial fibrillation is usually possible. However this disturbance may be confused with frequent and nonperiodic premature beats. Then diagnosis is electrocardiographic.

Differential diagnosis between atrial flutter and fibrillation is based on finding of atrial waves between the ventricular complexes in the former. Moreover many cases with atrial flutter have a regular ventricular rate. In doubtful cases jugular tracings, phonocardiograms and especially electrokymograms will be of help by revealing evidence of co-ordinated atrial activity (page 342).

Differential diagnosis from *atrial standstill* is based on the absolute regularity of the ventricular rate in this condition and on complete irregularity in atrial fibrillation.

Inasmuch as the ventricular rate may be nearly regular especially after digitalization the electrocardiographic diagnosis can be done with certainty only if artefacts especially muscular currents are excluded. Therefore complete relaxation of the patient in the recumbent or semirecumbent position during the taking of the ECG is indicated. However even artefacts seldom obscure the existence of the P wave in cases having no fibrillation.

Prognosis

Prognosis is based on conditions of the heart muscle, ventricular rate (rapid rate indicates more serious prognosis) and age and sex (worse in older patients and in males) (127).

Prognosis of atrial fibrillation in itself is usually good. Patients have lived even 15 or 20 years with this condition. However the efficiency of a heart with fibrillating atria is lower than that of a normal heart. In particular one of the compensatory mechanisms of mitral stenosis (the strong contraction of the left atrium) is not possible whenever there is atrial fibrillation.

Atrial fibrillation has a bad prognosis in children because it is usually associated with myocarditis and heart failure (89).

Treatment

a) *Atrial fibrillation and congestive failure*
When signs of failure are present treatment with *digitalis glycosides* should be employed first. It may lead to return of sinus rhythm. However a large number of patients still fibrillate when dyspnea, hepatic and pulmonary congestion and peripheral edema have disappeared. Then fibrillation will be treated by the same measures which are employed in patients without congestive failure.

b) *Atrial fibrillation without congestive failure*
In the cases *quinidine* (24) should be used. It prolongs the refractory period of the atrial myocardium. By depressing the excitability of the cardiac fibers it may inhibit stimuli arising in abnormal foci. The danger of mobilizing an atrial thrombus by means of quinidine has been overemphasized (122). Embolism may occur with or without quinidine. The initial dose of quinidine is 0.2 gm every 4 hours (day and night) and is increased by 0.2 gm every 12 hours until normalization occurs. Toxic phenomena appear or the dose of 0.8 has been reached (122). When normal rhythm has been attained an average maintenance dose of 0.3 gm every 6 hours (though with important individual variations) is given for a long time.

The intramuscular injection of one single dose of *fagarine* of 0.05 to 0.1 gm (113a) seems to be superior to quinidine (113b) but is not exempt from dangers in its clinical use.

c) *Atrial fibrillation after myocardial in-*

farction
Early control of the fibrillation is advisable because its persistence increases the danger of embolism (99). Quinidine should not be used if there are conduction disturbances or congestive failure. The indications are as follows: *quinidine alone, if fibrillation is present without congestive failure; digitalis plus quinidine if there is fibrillation and congestive failure* (99).

PREMATURE BEATS (PREMATURE SISTOLES—EXTRA SISTOLES)

Premature beats or *premature contractions* represent a common disturbance due to early contraction of the heart. The name *extrasystole* is inaccurate except in the case of an interpolated premature beat where there really is an additional contraction.

Cause and Mechanism

An abnormal stimulus may arise in the heart spreading from a point which is usually outside the normal pacemaker and cause a premature contraction. In order to be effective the stimulus must occur at a time when the heart muscle is not in the absolute refractory period (page 30). However increased excitability may permit a premature beat during the relative refractory period, namely very soon after the end of a normal contraction and even during the T wave.

Certain factors are responsible for the abnormal production of stimuli. *Electrical, mechanical or chemical stimulation* of the heart causes premature beats in experimental animals and man. If above a certain threshold *Vagus nerve stimulation* either direct or reflex may elicit premature beats. This is true whether the carotid sinus is compressed, the stomach distended or the gall bladder submitted to traction.

Forced respiration, overexertion or excitement may induce premature beats through autonomic stimuli. They frequently appear after and not during effort.

Fatigue, indigestion, cerebral lesions and

hypertension are frequently associated with premature beats

Coffee tea alcohol and tobacco favor premature beats and so does *hyperthyroidism*

Distention of the heart chambers acute myocarditis and scars left by this process or by coronary occlusion favor the occurrence of premature beats. The same is true when ever there is *poor blood supply* to a given area of the cardiac muscle

Among the drugs commonly used *thyroid extract digitalis and epinephrine* favor the occurrence of premature beats

Premature beats may occur at any age They are frequent in newborn infants and even in the fetus (63) common in children or young people and frequent in adults and in the aged

The mechanism of premature beats is thought to be the following

a) *When the abnormal stimulus arises in one of the atria* it spreads in all directions reaching both the S A node and the A V node. By so doing it *discharges the normal impulse* which is forming in the S A node and may disturb its activity. The pause following the premature beat is equivalent to the time interval required for the stimulus

to reach the S A node plus the time between two normal contractions. As this interval plus that preceding the premature beat is not double that of a normal interval *the pause is not compensatory*. This means that the dominant rhythm is modified by the premature beat and that all the following contractions are somewhat advanced (fig. 220)

b) *When the abnormal stimulus arises in one of the ventricles* it spreads in all directions usually reaching the A V node. It is often prevented from reaching the atria either because these are already contracting or because of a protection block. The stimulus reaches the other ventricle in a roundabout way similar to the course followed in bundle branch block (page 376). Therefore the ventricle where the stimulus has arisen contracts first and is followed by the other

The premature beat does not disturb the regular development of the sinus rhythm. The pause following the premature beat is therefore such that the interval between the last normal contraction before the premature beat and the first after it equals the double of a normal interval (*compensatory pause*) (fig. 221). This is not true in the

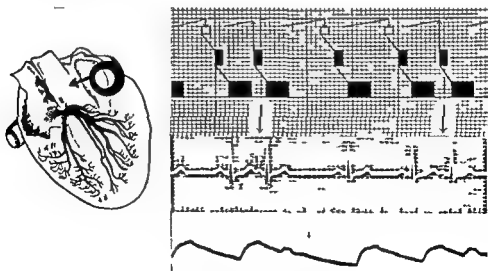


FIG. 220 Atrial premature contractions

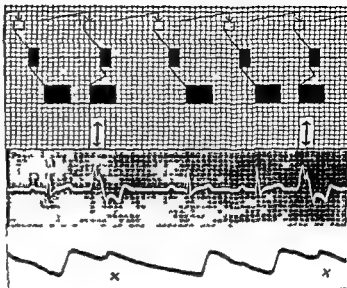


FIG. 221 Ventricular premature contractions

case of an *interpolated premature beat* which is not followed by a pause and is actually an *additional contraction or extrasystole*

Among the different theories that of *re entry* should be mentioned. According to this an area of muscle refractory to normal stimulation might contract later when reached in a roundabout way. This would cause a new stimulation of the rest of the heart.

Many premature beats bear a firm time relation to the normal preceding beat. This led to the belief that the abnormal stimulus is released by the normal contraction (64). It is possible that an abnormal focus is constantly building up stimuli at a different rate from that of the normal pacemaker. The normal contraction might release a protection block and permit the abnormal stimulus to excite the myocardium. It is also possible that the excitability of an abnormal focus is increased mechanically by the normal contraction so that its stimuli are able to overcome the threshold of the surrounding tissue.

It is admitted by many that stimuli causing premature beats arise only in the specific tissue of the atria or ventricles and not in the common myocardial tissue.

Signs and Symptoms

The patient may feel that premature beat in two ways:

a) A sensation of *shock* or *tightness* in the throat or the chest, a *sticking pain* or simply an *abnormal movement* in the precordial area or over the epigastrium taking place at the time of the abnormal beat.

b) A sensation of *falling* or a *sudden dizziness* taking place after the abnormal beat.

When multiple premature beats occur, different sensations are described, such as *palpitation*, *anginal pain* or even *fluttery, bizarre movements* within the chest.

Palpation of the radial artery usually reveals the premature beat as a *missing pulse* or *intermittence*. At times however a small pulse wave, nearer to the preceding than to the following pulse, is felt.

The premature beat is often revealed by a *sudden high apical thrust* and by a *high wave in the jugular veins*.

Auscultation reveals the premature beat in the following ways:

After several normal couples of heart

■ It is actually a *pseudo intermittence* because the pulse is not missing though so small as not to be felt.

sounds there is a *sudden loud sound* (the 1st sound of the premature beat) followed by a *usual or split 2nd sound* (the 2nd sound of the premature beat) the latter may even be absent Afterwards a long pause follows More complex phenomena may occur because the premature beat may be followed by either a loud 3rd sound or a murmur (in cases of valvular defects)

When a *bigeminal rhythm* is present it is common to hear two normal sounds followed by another (the 1st sound of the premature beat) then a pause and then the same sequence again In such cases the premature beat may simulate a triple rhythm



FIG 22 ECG in cases of premature contractions (extrasystoles) A The second complex is an infranodal premature contraction with aberrant conduction B the second complex is a nodal premature contraction C the first complex is a ventricular premature contraction the third is an atrial premature contraction D the second complex is a ventricular interpolated premature contraction

Varieties

The premature beats may be of different types

a) They are *isolated and occasional* therefore they are frequently absent during the examination The premature beat may be situated between two normal cycles (interpolated premature beat)

b) They have a *periodic connection* with the normal contraction (periodic premature beat) The most common is *bigeminal rhythm* (normal contraction premature beat pause) (fig 311B) which is frequently caused by digitalis A *trigeminal rhythm* may also occur (normal contraction followed by two premature beats (70))

c) There may be a *salvo of premature beats* which represents a short attack of tachycardia (page 111)

d) There may be *frequent premature beats* without any fixed cycle originating from different foci (fig 222)

Graphic Tracings

Electrocardiogram Several different types of tracings are observed according to the rhythm frequency and point of origin of the premature beat (fig 223)

a) *Atrial premature beats* A normal P QRS is followed by a short diastole then by a slightly abnormal P QRS This has a slightly deformed (higher, broader or lower) P wave and a slightly longer P R interval The QRS usually is normal but may be slightly changed (*aberrant*) The premature beat is followed by a long diastole However this pause is not compensatory and causes a certain advancement of the following complexes (*occasionally the pause may be compensatory*) The first P wave after the premature beat may be higher and sharper than the others (64)

Among the atrial premature beats some authors admit a separate class that of *sinus premature beats* These are said to have a normal P wave and a normal P P and to be followed by a normal interval (1 65) Slight

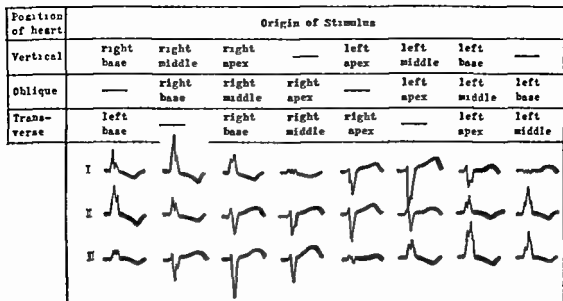


FIG 223 Origin of ventricular premature contractions in the various positions of the heart (After Holzmänn)

variations in the shape of the P wave should not rule out this type of premature contractions (133)

Blocked atrial premature beats are possible but uncommon. A P wave occurs very near the end of a normal or premature complex; it is not followed by a QRS; a small flat sluggish wave may follow the P representing the terminal deflection of the atrial complex (Ta page 37)

When an atrial premature beat originates from a point near the AV node it is called a *nodal premature beat*. Its characteristics are frequently inverted or deformed P wave, short P-R, P either preceding QRS or following it, normal QRS. The pause is seldom compensatory.

Atrial premature beats are seldom interpolated.

b) *Ventricular premature beats*. A ventricular premature beat is easily recognized because of the following characteristics: absence of the P wave, high voltage, long duration and splintering of the ventricular complex, raised ST-T wave in the opposite direction from the main complex. It has been stated that right ventricular premature beats have an upright complex in lead I, left

ventricular premature beats an inverted complex in lead I (66-68). However the position of the heart causes important modifications in the direction of the complexes. Figure 227 shows the various patterns resulting from premature contractions occurring in the vertical, average and horizontal hearts.

A ventricular premature beat may send its stimulus backwards to the atria thereby causing a retrograde atrial contraction (150). Recognition of the fact is largely based on esophageal electrocardiograms. When this happens the pause following the premature beat may be noncompensatory.

A ventricular premature beat may occur as an *interpolated extrasystole*. This is more commonly but not exclusively found in the slow heart.

A *ventricular escape* can be easily differentiated from a premature beat because it occurs after a long pause, has a normal ventricular complex, is not preceded by an atrial wave and is not followed by a compensatory pause.

Jugular tracing. Atrial premature beats have a c and r waves which are similar to those of a normal tracing. Nodal and ven-

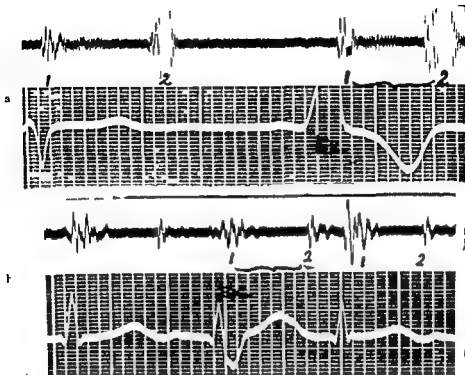


FIG. 24. In (a) the two heart sounds of the extrasystole are louder; in (b) both sounds are lower than in the normal contractions. ECG and sound tracings.

tricular premature beats on the other hand frequently have high α waves.

A left ventricular premature beat may show a delay of $\frac{1}{2}$ over the second sound (earlier contraction of the left ventricle (68)).

Phonocardiogram. Several entirely different phenomena can be recorded (fig. 224). The first sound is usually normal or louder than in the normal contractions. This seems due to the fact that while in normal contractions the AV valves are nearly closed before ventricular systole in premature beats the AV valves are closed from an open position by a regurgitant flow of blood. For this reason at the beginning of the sound is delayed over that of QRS in ventricular premature beats. The two valvular phases of the first sound may be widely separated on account of the prolongation of the tension period and this may imitate splitting of the sound. The second sound of the premature beat is normal or weaker than the others and may be absent. It may be split.

A premature beat may be followed by either a diastolic murmur (69) or a diastolic sound which does not occur after normal contractions.

Arterial tracing hemodynamics. The pulse wave of the premature beat may be as high as a normal wave and occasionally higher. It is usually smaller and may be absent. Records taken over different arteries show that the pulse wave of the premature beat may be present in the arteries near the aorta and absent in those distant. A drop in pressure occurs during the compensatory pause. The following wave is higher than normal and is followed by a smaller wave; this may start a pulsus alternans.

The pulse of the premature contraction has a low systolic and a high diastolic pressure while the following pulse is much larger on account of high systolic and low diastolic pressure. From two to three pulse waves are necessary for reaching again a normal and stable level of blood pressure. On the other

hand, the first normal contraction following an interpolated premature beat frequently yields a smaller pulse wave in the peripheral arteries (72)

The pulse wave of a right ventricular premature beat may be delayed over the beginning of the corresponding first sound (earlier contraction of the right ventricle) (67)

The stroke volume varies greatly, being inversely proportional to the length of the preceding diastole. Therefore the earlier the contraction the smaller the stroke volume. The compensatory pause is followed by a contraction with proportionally larger stroke volume if the myocardium is normal (121)

The speed of the pulse wave is directly proportional to the level of diastolic pressure; therefore the weak pulse of the premature contraction has a greater velocity than the others (121)

Electrokymogram. Premature contractions are easily studied by means of border tracings of the left ventricle, the pulmonary artery, or the aortic arch. If simultaneous tracings of the left ventricle and one of the arteries (aorta or pulmonary artery) are taken, conclusions may be drawn about the site of origin of a ventricular premature beat. The aspect of the tracing is dependent upon the time of the cardiac cycle at which the premature contraction occurs and the phase of ventricular filling.

If the contraction starts early in diastole its amplitude is small, isometric contraction is prolonged, and the curve has a more peaked aspect. The prolongation of tension time due to both the high level of arterial pressure and the small amount of ventricular blood may last more than 0.06 second. If the contraction takes place immediately after the T wave, no pulsations of the aorta can be recorded. During the compensatory pause, an abnormally large filling of the ventricle takes place. This, plus the lower level of arterial pressure, causes a shortening of the isometric contraction period of the following contraction.

Blood Pressure

Different levels of blood pressure can be obtained if the premature beats occur periodically: 1) those corresponding to the systolic and diastolic pressure of the normal pulse waves, 2) those corresponding to the pulse waves of the premature beats (low systolic, high diastolic) and 3) those corresponding to the pulse waves immediately subsequent to the premature beats (high systolic, low diastolic).

X Ray

The premature beats can be recognized on fluoroscopy. Ventricular premature beats may be revealed by the contraction, first of one ventricle and then of the other, with a slight delay between the two.

Mode of Origin of the Signs

The different signs are determined by the possible occurrence of three phenomena:

a) The atrial and ventricular contractions may occur at the same time, both in the nodal and in the ventricular premature beats. This causes a backflow of blood into the veins, either because the A-V valves are closed by the stronger ventricular contraction and the atria push the blood backwards, or because the simultaneous contraction causes a slight insufficiency of the A-V valves with regurgitation of blood from the ventricles.

b) Ventricular premature beats have a nonsimultaneous contraction of the ventricles, which causes phenomena similar to those of bundle branch block (page 376). The delayed contraction of the right ventricle (left ventricular premature beat) is mainly apparent in the venous system, while delayed contraction of the left ventricle (right ventricular premature beat) is mainly apparent in the arterial system.

c) Premature beats occur at a time when the aortic pressure is still high. The contraction takes place when the ventricles are incompletely filled. This accounts for a long tension period and a small pulse wave. How-

over the possible absence of the pulse wave in the arteries may be due to peripheral factors

The various symptoms described by the patients are due to the long tension period accompanied by a strong shock against the chest wall, or to the drop in pressure which follows the premature beat

Diagnosis—Prognosis

Diagnosis of premature beats is frequently possible on the basis of the history alone. Physical examination easily permits recognition of premature beats when they occur occasionally or periodically. In such cases simultaneous auscultation of the heart and palpation of the radial artery reveals that every missing pulse is accompanied by two (occasionally only one) heart sounds (*false intermittence*).

Differential diagnosis from an *occasional or periodic heart block* is possible because in such cases the missing pulse is not accompanied by heart sounds (*real intermittence*).

Differential diagnosis from *atrial fibrillation* is easy when the premature beats occur occasionally or periodically but may be difficult when they are frequent and irregular.

The electrocardiograph is helpful in doubtful cases revealing typical broad complexes in cases of ventricular premature beats and normal complexes in cases of fibrillation. In atrial fibrillation more over the P waves are missing from all complexes.

Differential diagnosis between atrial premature beats and *sinus arrhythmia* is based on the existence of a slight difference in the shape of the P wave and in the length of the P-R of the premature contraction.

Differential diagnosis between *bigeminal pulse* and *pulsus alternans* can be made by means of a pulse tracing or an electrocardiogram. In bigeminal pulse the small wave is nearer the preceding large wave in pulsus alternans the small wave is at equal distance

from the larger pulse waves. During pulsus alternans the QRS complexes of the ECG are perfectly regular.

Once the diagnosis of premature beats is made, *evaluation of its clinical significance* is necessary. This can be done only after taking into account all clinical data of the patient including x-ray and electrocardiogram.

Premature beats may be the forerunners of paroxysmal tachycardia, coronary occlusion or heart failure. On the other hand they may be absolutely harmless. The results of abstention from stimulants or drugs (the action of digitalis (if such drug has not already been taken) or the use of vasodilators at times permit a better evaluation.

The fact that digitalis frequently causes ventricular premature beats often bigeminal in type should not be forgotten because the premature contractions are then evidence of toxicity. Atrial premature beats with continually changing P waves are evidence of organic myocardial lesion. The same is true for ventricular premature beats originating from several different foci.

Treatment

When the patient does not feel the premature beats it is not advisable to tell him about them. If the patient is acquiring the habit of taking his pulse and counting its irregularities he should be advised not to do so because a neurosis may be the result.

Harmless premature contractions need no treatment. Limitation in the use of coffee, tobacco or alcohol, avoidance of certain foods and sufficient night rest are frequently helpful in limiting premature beats. It may be necessary to discontinue digitalis in some cases and administer it in others.

The use of drugs which depress the autonomic nervous system is indicated whenever reflexes are involved (36, 37, 38). Atropine is especially useful in ventricular premature contractions of coronary and

hypertensive patients (10a) and whenever reflex elements are involved

Quinidine (24) or *pronestyl* (37) may be employed and their use may be prolonged even for months

The association of *papaverine*, *quinidine* and *atropine* is useful in patients with coronary heart disease. *Papaverine* alone has been described as effective both by mouth (43) and by injection (44)

Bromides and *barbiturates* may be useful

Magnesium sulfate (intravenous injection of 1 to 20 cc of a 20 per cent solution) seems effective in the therapy of premature beats caused by digitalis so is *potassium chloride* in a single oral dose of 2 to 10 gm (142)

ESCAPES

Escapes (or escaped beats) occur whenever the activity of the A V node or one of the ventricles reveals itself during a long pause they are therefore due to a phenomenon of default. Escapes may occur in the following conditions: 1) in pronounced sinus arrhythmia 2) in partial A V block or atrial fibrillation 3) in cases with ventricular premature beats 4) during cardiac standstill caused by strong vagal stimulation (compression of the eyeballs) with inhibition of both the S A node and the A V node

Escapes are recognized in the electrocardiogram by the normal configuration of the ventricular complex

Treatment should be directed toward removing the basic cause

III Disturbances of Rate and Rhythm Due to Decreased Conductivity

NODAL RHYTHM

Cause and Mechanism

Nodal rhythm is a regular and slow rhythm of the heart set up by impulses from the A V node. The activity of the node becomes apparent in three conditions

1) When an interruption of the conducting system prevents the stimuli of the normal pacemaker from reaching the A V node. In such cases the atria are controlled by the S A node the ventricles by the A V node there is a *double rhythm*

2) When there is *atrial fibrillation* or *atrial standstill*. In such cases the atria are immobile and ventricular contraction is controlled by the A V node

3) When the activity of the S A node is *suspended* or *depressed*. This is the typical *A V nodal rhythm* and occurs mostly in aged people

Clinical observations in young people have proven that strong reflex stimulation of the vagus may suppress the S A activity and cause the appearance of nodal rhythm (141)

The disappearance of the sinus rhythm is not felt by the patients because the A V node takes over the function of the pacemaker. However the new center is less efficient because its rate is slower the normal succession of atrial and ventricular contractions is not preserved and the influence of the cardiac nerves is nearly absent

In typical nodal rhythm the atria are stimulated in a retrograde direction by the A V node. If the stimulus starts from the upper part of the node the atrial contraction slightly precedes the ventricular. If on the other hand the stimulus starts from the lower part of the node the ventricles contract first

In all the above mentioned conditions there is a nodal rhythm by default only the lack of a descending impulse enables the A V node to take over the pacemaking function. A different type of nodal rhythm occurs when there is such an increase of A V node excitability that this center becomes the pacemaker even when the S A node is normal. This form has been called *nodal rhythm by usurpation* (118) and has been already described (p 332)

Signs and Symptoms

The patients are usually unaware of the disturbance but they may complain of limited physical efficiency or occasional dizziness.

The pulse is regular and slow between 40 and 50.

Exertion, fever, changes in position, atropine and epinephrine may accelerate the pulse only to a very limited extent.

Graphic Tracings

Electrocardiogram The electrocardiogram reveals a series of normal ventricular complexes. The P wave is usually inverted and very near QRS, a fact which is most apparent in leads II, aVR and aVL. The P wave may precede or follow QRS by about 0.05 second. Unusual course of the stimulus in the atrial walls (or coincidence of two independent rhythms) may cause the less common occurrence of an upright P wave. If the atrial contraction follows the ventricular by more than 0.2 second, a second ventricular contraction may follow, producing a *bigeminal rhythm* with one atrial wave between the two ventricular.

Phonocardiogram The phonocardiogram shows that the atrial sound is missing and the first sound is prolonged.

X Ray

Fluoroscopy may show large pulsations of the superior vena cava due to coincidence of the atrial and ventricular contractions (1).

Diagnosis

The diagnosis cannot be made with certainty without the ECG. The finding of an inverted P in leads 1 or 2 and of I R which is below 0.15 is decisive.

Prognosis

No special prognosis can be made on the basis of nodal rhythm alone. This disturbance, however, frequently reveals the existence of myocardial lesions and should

be considered together with the other signs of cardiac disturbance.

Treatment

No special treatment is necessary. In digitalis poisoning the drug should be discontinued.

CORONARY SINUS RHYTHM

A special type of ectopic rhythm is the *coronary sinus rhythm* (148). This is originated in an area which is adjacent to and above the upper part of the AV node. It is revealed by a normal or slightly short P-R interval and by P waves which are low in lead I and deeply inverted in leads 2 and 3. This rhythm is mostly exhibited by patients with organic heart lesions. The vagus nerve has an important action on the coronary sinus center.

HEART BLOCK

Heart block is due to delay or interruption of the stimulus in the conducting system. There are two main types, the S-A block and the A-V block.⁴

SINOATRIAL BLOCK

Sinoatrial block may be incomplete or complete. Incomplete S-A block may present 1) prolongation of the S-A conduction time, 2) progressive increase of S-A conduction followed by absence of a complete atrioventricular cycle, or 3) sudden absence of an atrioventricular cycle.

Complete S-A block may cause diastolic standstill of the whole heart or cause the shift of the pacemaker to a lower center (nodal rhythm, page 314).

Graphic Tracings

Electrocardiogram Occasional S-A block. A regular series of normal P-QRS complexes is occasionally followed by a long diastolic

Block occurring below the bifurcation of the bundle of His (bundle branch block) will not be included in this chapter as it causes no change of pulse rate or rhythm.

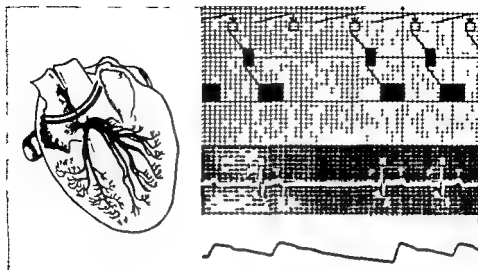


FIG 22b S = block. The arrow indicates the position of the missing atrioventricular sequences in the electrocardiogram

pause. The length of the cycle including this pause is twice that of either the preceding or the following cycle (fig 22a).

Periodic S = block. The P QRS complexes are gradually more and more distant being separated by gradually increasing diastolic pauses. After a certain number of them a short diastole follows, the length of the short interval between Q and the following Q is equivalent to one half of that of the immediately preceding interval and represents the only normal distance on which measurement should be based.

If the block occurs every second beat the ECG simulates that of sinus bradycardia because no wave reveals the sinus impulses and the rate of the atria and ventricles is from 30 to 40. The disturbance is revealed only by the fact that either spontaneously or after atropine the rate suddenly doubles (from 40 to 80 from 35 to 70).

In certain tracings of S = block a second rhythm occurs during the long pause (*double rhythm type Rothberger*) this is revealed by complexes of a different shape following each other at a more rapid rate.

Mechanism

Sinoatrial block is usually due to a functional disturbance. The view that this

type of disturbance might be due to *periodic suspension* of the activity of the S A node (48) and not to *periodic block* at the emergence of the stimulus (18) has been advocated. Animal experiments from the author's laboratory however have confirmed the second theory (49).

ATRIOVENTRICULAR BLOCK

Impaired conduction (block) of the stimulus between the S A node and the A V node within the A V node or in the bundle of His is the cause of this disturbance.

When the conducting tissues fail to transmit the excitation from the S A node to the ventricles a new pacemaker takes over the automatic functions; this may be located in the A V node (nodal rhythm) in the bundle of His (septal rhythm) or in one of the ventricles (idioventricular rhythm). The block may be caused by (1) a congenital lesion (2) an inflammatory or degenerative lesion (3) metastatic nodules (4) areas of fibrosis (coronary heart disease) or (5) a functional or vascular disturbance of the conducting tissues.

Graphic Methods

Electrocardiogram. There are different types of tracings.

1) *Latent A V block* revealed by prolonga

tion of the P R interval up to 0.30 second (so-called *grade I I I block*)

2) *Occasional I I block* Sporadically a P wave is not followed by a ventricular complex

3) *Periodic I I block (type I of Wenckebach)* (18) The P waves have a regular succession the P R interval gradually become longer until one P wave is not followed by a ventricular complex (*blocked P*) The entire cycle from one normal P QRS to the following normal is called the *Luciani Wenckebach period* (from the names of the authors who described it in animals and man) (fig 226)

A curious type of tracing occurs at times in partial block it has been called *interference dissociation* The P and QRS waves have similar rates but no fixed relationship so that P may either precede or follow QRS From time to time a seemingly normal P QRS takes place through casual coincidence of the waves

4) *Intermittent I I block (type II of Wenckebach also known as Mobitz type of A V block)* (10-101) Following two or three normal complexes one P wave is blocked and there is no ventricular complex In other words there is the sudden occurrence of A V block every two or three complete cycles but without the gradual changes of periodic A V block

5) *Complete I I block* While the previous types are also called *partial A V block* in other cases the block may be complete The atrial waves have a normal rate (60 to 90) while the ventricular have a slow rate (10 to 40) and there is no relationship between the two Two to five P waves may be present in the intervals between the QRS while some of them are superimposed on or masked by the ventricular complex The blocked P waves often are followed by an afterdeflection called the T atrial wave (*Ta wave*) which has the same meaning as the T wave of the ventricular complex (page 37) In *congenital block* the rate of

the ventricles may be faster (from 40 to 60) (44)

It is commonly stated that bundle branch block frequently complicates A V block Actually the idioventricular rhythm arises in one of the branches of the bundle of His so that the stimulus spreads first to the ipsilateral then to the contralateral ventricle The ventricular complexes resemble those of bundle branch block or paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia There is some resemblance with ventricular tachycardia except that in A V block the phenomenon is caused by default and the rate is slow

A *Stokes Adams attack* is preceded by either increase or decrease of the atrial rate During the attack the ventricular rate may low down further On the other hand there may be ventricular standstill ventricular tachycardia or ventricular flutter

If the atrial rate is very slow and that of the ventricles is relatively rapid the number of P waves becomes equivalent to that of the QRS complexes Small independent changes in rate of the two pace makers modify the lengths of the P R intervals This singular phenomenon is called *isorhythmic dissociation* This type of dissociation should be distinguished from the *A I block with retrograde V I conduction* The latter presents atrial rate faster than the ventricular absent or defective A V conduction and V A conduction only after a short P R interval (125)

Some patients present *occasional retrograde conduction* which is easily recognized because the retrograde P waves are inverted (143)

Phonocardiogram Atrial sounds may be present during diastole In general *one dull sound* follows each P wave (fig 227) In exceptional cases an atrial contraction is followed by *two sounds* (45a 30-34) the second may be due to a vibration of the A V valves (46) In an unusual case three groups of vibrations were found for each

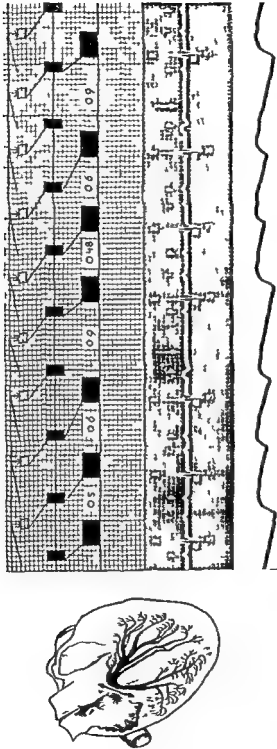


Fig. 23. Irregular pulse caused by partial or complete absence of a ventricular contraction (100 mm)

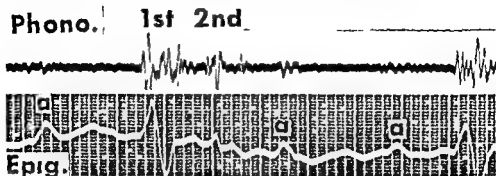


Fig. 11a. Complete 1:1 block. Atrial sounds in atrial rule (a) recorded between the ventricular contractions. Phonocardiogram and epigastriac tracing.

1 wave. The atrial sounds are louder in children and old people.

The vibrations of an apical systolic murmur are frequently recorded. Those of a blowing apical diastolic murmur coincident with the atrial contractions are recorded at times in elderly patients with a calcified mitral valve (102).

In cases of latent block the first sound complex is of lower intensity (90). When atria and ventricles contract at the same time a louder first sound is recorded (annon sound).

Jugular tracing. The *a* waves are normal in shape and rate and *c* and *v* waves occur at regular but longer intervals. Therefore more than one *a* wave is found between a *v* wave and the next *c* wave. Occasional coincidence of an *a* wave with a *c* or *v* may occur with a resulting higher wave.

Infant tracing. A high and slow pulse is recorded. An anacrotic depression is fre-

quently present in the ascending branch of the curve (19). Multiple undulations follow the diastolic wave. In occasional block the tracings reveal the occasional absence of a pulse wave (intermittence). In periodic block the series of pulse waves shows a periodic increase in the pause separating two pulses, then a longer pause with a deeper pressure drop. Interference dissociation may cause bigeminal rhythm, the second wave being paradoxically higher than the first.

Electrokymography. If atrial contraction falls during the ventricular systole the atria decrease in volume as in normal subjects. If the atrial contraction falls during ventricular diastole the pattern consists of an oblique descending line during atrial contraction and a less steep rise subsequent to it (fig. 228).

1 Ray

The normal rate of the atria and the slow rate of the ventricles are apparent both on

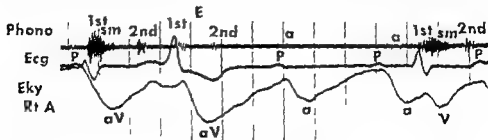


Fig. 11b. Phonocardiogram and electrokymogram of the right atrial border in a case of complete 1:1 block with premature ventricular contractions.

fluoroscopy and roentgenkymography (41-42) The ventricles dilate in successive steps coincident with the atrial contractions, then empty at once when ventricular systole takes place

Blood Pressure—Cardiac Output

The systolic pressure is usually increased the diastolic pressure is low a high pulse pressure is the result

Cardiac output is normal when the patient is at rest but its increase during exercise is far below average (128)

Cause and Mechanism—Lesions

Impaired conduction (block) of the stimulus between the sinoatrial node and the bundle of His or in the latter is the cause of this syndrome This failure of the conducting tissues would cause death if a new pacemaker would not take over the automatic functions this pacemaker is located in the A V node (nodal rhythm) in the bundle of His (septal rhythm) or in one of the ventricles (idioventricular rhythm)

Different causes may initiate the block

a) A congenital lesion (30, 107b) In these cases there usually is a complete block due to imperfect development of the bundle of His and there is a frequent association with a ventricular septal defect However extremely rare cases of partial block have been reported

b) An inflammatory or degenerative lesion due to rheumatic disease syphilis tuberculosis diphtheria typhoid fever or pneumonia Aschoff's nodules gummatous tubercles or nonspecific inflammatory areas may be present

c) Melastatic nodules

d) Areas of fibrosis These may be found in patients with coronary heart disease (vascular lesions) or in patients with congenital heart disease (nutritional disorders)

e) No visible lesion In such cases a functional disturbance of the conducting tissue or the supplying arterioles is admitted

All the above mentioned lesions may be located in the region of the A V node or immediately above it as well as in the bundle of His However they are occasionally located in a widespread area of the atria Functional disorders may be favored by digitalis poisoning

Even when there is a myocardial lesion functional elements contribute to the occurrence of the block This is proven by disappearance of a block following administration of drugs or change of position of the patient

The hearts of these patients are, as a rule dilated and hypertrophied as a result of the long lasting low rate (128)

Signs and Symptoms

There may be no symptoms However the patients usually complain of *weakness exertional dyspnea* and *dizziness* They may also suffer from *nausea*

Certain patients complain of *sudden attacks of vertigo or syncope* and occasionally of *convulsive seizures* These are called *Stokes Adams attacks*

The patients are *pale* Their *pulse* is regular but *extremely slow* It has been called *pulsus solemnus* because the interval between one pulse and the next is extremely long and the volume of the pulse wave is proportionately large The *pulse rate* is between 10 and 40 in typical cases

In cases with *occasional block* palpation of the radial artery reveals that once in a while one pulsation is missing (*pulsus intermittens*) In *periodic block* the same phenomenon occurs but its recurrence is regular once every 3-4 or 5 pulses

The *jugular veins* show rapid pulsations in the interval between one radial pulsation and the next

Auscultation of the heart often reveals normal heart sounds However *phasic variations of the sounds* have been described When the atria and ventricles contract simultaneously a louder and sharper 1st sound is heard (*cannon sound*) A *soft blowing systolic murmur* is frequently heard at the

apex. Multiple sounds of poor intensity may be heard during the long diastole. However, this finding is rare. *Blowing apical diastolic murmurs* coincident with the atrial contractions have been described.

During the attack different phenomena may occur

a) The pulse slows down further to 15 or even 10 per minute (1-39). Rare cases where the pulse slows down temporarily to 1 or 2 per minute have been described (1).

b) There is a complete absence of the pulse because of either ventricular standstill or ventricular flutter (39-40).

c) The pulse continues at the same rate as before the attack (39).

Mode of Origin of the Signs

The A-V block is frequently due to anatomical interruption of the conducting tissues. Microscopic studies often reveal a lesion which in spite of its limited extension causes severe results because of its location across the essential pathway connecting the atria with the ventricles. This is true chiefly in cases of complete A-V block. When the block is partial a functional disturbance is involved even if anatomical lesions also occur. In such cases decreased excitability and longer refractory period of the conducting tissues are present. This may cause the lack of response to every 2nd (or 2nd and 3rd) stimulus thus resulting in the regular absence of ventricular responses.

The site of the lesion is important in the determination of the ventricular rate. A pacemaker located in the bundle of His is able to maintain a rate of 25 to 35. A pacemaker located in the upper part of the stems is able only to maintain rates of 15 to 25. Lesions of the stems cause the occurrence of a lower pacemaker with a rate of 7 to 15 per minute.

Knowledge that stimulation of the vagus may cause A-V block in experimental animals led to emphasis on vagal stimulation as a factor favoring A-V block and causing Stokes-Adams attacks. There is no doubt

that vagal stimulation should be avoided in these patients. However the attacks may be preceded by either a faster (sympathetic stimulation) or a slower atrial rate (vagal stimulation) (52). The former may favor the attack by shortening diastole the latter by directly impairing the conduction.

In complete block the cardiac nerves are undoubtedly less effective but they can still influence the A-V node either directly or through the coronary arteries.

In certain cases the attack is precipitated by ventricular tachycardia, ventricular fibrillation or ventricular standstill (129).

In most cases the attacks are more frequent and severe during the stage of incomplete block. Once complete block is established the attacks are usually less frequent (54). In the former stage the pace-making function of the A-V node (or of lower areas) is suddenly required in the latter such function has already developed.

The fact that the hearts of these patients cannot increase their ventricular rates when called to increase their output represents a definite burden. Both this fact and the poor coronary flow caused by low diastolic pressure favor heart failure.

The frequent occurrence of rhythms 1:1, 2:1 or 3:1 in complete heart block is a phenomenon which may temporarily disappear after exertion indicates a series of mechanical and electrical interreactions between atria and ventricles which influences the two independent pacemakers (130). On the other hand it has been shown that a slight irregularity of the atrial rate is not uncommon. This seems to be due to the fact that the increase of arterial pressure connected with ventricular systole acts on carotid sinus and aortic receptors and causes a reflex slowing of the atrial rate (131).

Varieties—Course and Complications

Latent block. This type revealed only by the ECC may be congenital, rheumatic, toxic (digitalis) or arteriosclerotic. It may

gradually become more serious until A V block develops

Congenital block is usually complete and is associated in two thirds of the cases with ventricular septal defect (55) It is present from birth and is usually benign and well tolerated The ventricular rate is faster than in acquired cases (44)

Block due to acute myocarditis is more serious than other types Patients with acute rheumatic disease often present A V block and occasional S A block They are liable to die suddenly because the inflammatory process inhibits the automatic properties of the A V node and bundle of His

A V block may start after a *myocardial infarction* It may cause death

Unstable block is a type of block which frequently changes from partial to complete and vice versa (36)

Paroxysmal heart block is that occurring in attacks (57-58) between them the electrocardiogram is normal having either a normal or a prolonged P R (*latent block*)

Postural block Certain patients with either incomplete or complete block in the supine position present a normal ventricular rate with prolonged A V conduction when sitting (124)

Zerk's syndrome (39) This is a curious variety where the slow ventricular contractions and the respiratory movements occur at the same time (fig. 229) Fraction temporarily increases the respiratory rate but soon afterwards the synchronism is re-

established (602) The syndrome seems more common than previously thought

Diagnosis

Diagnosis is easy when the pulse is below 40 per minute It may be difficult when the pulse is faster, as in many congenital cases Then only the ECG permits an exact diagnosis Recognition of the cause is important but not always possible The localization is revealed by the ventricular rate because the lower the lesion the slower the rate

The cause and mechanism of the attacks may be studied by the following tests atropine test amyl nitrite test exertion test position test and vagal stimulation (compression of the eyeballs or of the carotid sinus) The electrocardiogram should be recorded during these tests and also during an attack if possible The results of the tests and the changes of atrial rate before an attack indicate whether a coronary or a neurogenic cause is involved also which autonomic stimuli are responsible for the attack

Congenital heart block occasionally has been recognized during fetal life on the basis of slow fetal heart sounds (95) Phonocardiographic tracings may give a proof of this disturbance which can only be suspected upon fetal auscultation

Prognosis

Heart block is always a serious condition but some patients may live for many years



FIG. 229. Complete A V block with cardiorespiratory synchronism. Respiratory tracing, apex cardiogram

in fairly good health Stokes Adams attacks are present in about one half of the cases with complete block and indicate a more severe prognosis especially if they are of long duration. About one half of the patients having Stokes Adams attacks die suddenly the other usually expire in congestive failure.

Treatment

Prevention of the attacks is important. If they are due to vagal stimuli atropine (21) is indicated if the vagus acts through a vascular mechanism atropine plus ephedrine or atropine plus papaverine may be helpful. If they are due to sympathetic stimuli digitalis or barium chloride may be used.

When frequent premature beats occur and ventricular flutter is feared pronestyl (27) should be given.

Cases with coronary heart disease may benefit from the use of atropine plus aminophylline or atropine plus papaverine. These drugs act more by preventing sudden attacks than by changing the usual ventricular rate.

Rhythmic percussion of the precordial area can be tried during Stokes Adams attacks. When ventricular flutter occurs intracardiac adrenalin may be tried but only at the time of the standstill which follows the attack. Otherwise the flutter would become a fibrillation with a rapidly fatal result (page 396).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 WHITE P D *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1944
- 2 GALLAVARDIN L *La Tension Artérielle en Clinique* Paris Ma on 1931
- 3 MACWILLIAM J A J *Physiol* 1887 8 296
- 4 BARKER J S WILSON F AND JOHNSTON F D *Am Heart J* 1913 26 433
- 5 DECHERD G M AND CO WORKERS *Am Heart J* 1945 29 20
- 6 BATTRO A *Las Arritmias en Clinica* Buenos Aires El Ateneo 1934
- 7 BENNETT D W AND KERR W J *Heart* 1937 11 109
- 8 LIAN C AND WHITE J J *Arch Mal Coeur* 1938 31 518
- 9 CALO A *Cardiol* 1939 3 703
- 10 HECHT H H AND MYERS G B *Am Heart J* 1945 30 610
- 11 HOLZMANN M AND CO WORKERS *Lehrbuch der Roentgendagnostik* Leipzig Thieme 1932
- 12 ROESLER H *Clinical Roentgenology of the Cardiovascular System* Springfield Thomas 1943
- 13 LUDWIG H *Roentgenpraxis* 1936 8 731
- 14 LUISADA A A *Cuore e Circ* (Rome) 1935 19 77 Also *J Lab & Clin Med* 1940 25 1146
- 15 a) BRISTOWE J S *Brain* 1887 10 164
- b) BOUVERET L *Rév de Méd* 1859 9 753
- 16 a) HUBBARD J P *Am J Dis Child* 1941 61 687
- b) COSSIO P VEDOVA P AND BERCONKY I *Rev Arg Card* 1944 11 149
- c) GEIGER A J *Am Heart J* 1943 26 553
- 17 a) CAMPBELL M *Brit Heart J* 1947 4 49
- b) CURRIE C M *Brit Heart J* 1947 4 149
- c) FISAMAN J L *Am Heart J* 1945 30 401
- 18 WENCKEBACH K F AND WINTERBERG H *Die Unregelmässige Herztätigkeit* Leipzig Engelmann 1927
- 19 LUISADA A A *Arch Mal Coeur* 1937 30 63
- 20 WEYLER H AND DUSTIN C C *New England J Med* 1917 227 733
- 21 a) WOLFF L *New England J Med* 1945 232 491
- b) WOLFF L *New England J Med* 1945 232 527
- 22 MILLER R AND PERLMAN J S *Am Heart J* 1945 29 553
- 23 LEYS D *Arch Dis Child* 1945 20 44
- 24 a) TANDOWSKY R M *Am Heart J* 1945 29 71
- b) WEISBERGER A A AND FEIL H *Am Heart J* 1947 34 871
- 25 LEVINE S A *Am Heart J* 1937 2 177
- 26 GALLAVARDIN L *Arch Mal Coeur* 1930 13 207 and 1937 30 795
- 27 FROMENT R *Les Tachycardies Paroxysmiques Ventriculaires* Paris Ma on 1937
- 28 FISCHER P *Wien Arch inn Med* 1931 25 469
- 29 DOGLIOTTI G C MONTUCCI L AND BERETTA A *Cuore e Circ* 1937 21 765
- 30 CALABRESE M *Atti e Mem Soc Lomb Med (Milan)* 1934 2 12
- 31 HEPBURN J AND RYKERT H F *Am Heart J* 1934 14 670
- 32 CHAPMAN D W *Am Heart J* 1945 30 26

- 33 SCHERF D AND BOYD L J Am J M Sci 1943 206 43
- 34 CONDORELLI L Min Med 1928 8 (pt 1) 1343 and (pt 2) 343
- 35 MORQUIO M L Semaine Méd 1901 21 398
- 36 MORGAGNI G H *De Sedibus et Causis Morborum* 1761 translated in *Cardiac Classics* St Louis Mosby 1941
- 37 ADAMS R Dublin Hosp Reports 1827 reprinted in *Cardiac Classics* St Louis Mo by 1941
- 38 STOKES W *The Diseases of the Heart and the Aorta* Dublin Hodges and Smith 1854
- 39 CALABRESI M Clin Med Ital 1931 62 331 and 646 and 1932 ■ 2"
- 40 CONDORELLI L Arch Sci Med 1932 56
- 41 PERONA I Cuore e Circ 1935 19 2
- 42 BATTRO A AND BRAUN MENDOZ E Rev Arg Card 1934 3 199
- 43 CAMPBELL M Brit Heart J 1943 5 163
- 44 CAMPBELL M Brit Heart J 1943 5 15
- 45 LEWIS TH a) *Lectures on the Heart* New York Hoeber 1915 b) *The Mechanism and Graphic Registration of the Heart Beat* London Shaw 1925
- 46 COSSIO P BERCONSKY I AND TRIMANI A Rev Arg Card 1942 9 235
- 47 LLISADA A A AND MAUTNER H Exper Med Surg 1943 1 282
- 48 LEWIS TH Quart J Med 1921 14 339
- 49 RUBINO A Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1935 19 701
- 50 WOLFFERTH C C AND MARGOLIES A In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 51 a) SCHERF D Wien Arch inn Med 1906 12 377 and 1929 18 403
b) SCHELLONG F Deut med Woch 1926 52 862
- 52 CONDORELLI I *Patogenesi e Terapia della Sindrome di Morgagni Adams Stokes* Naples Idel on 1933
- 53 VALEZ H *Les Maladies du Coeur* Paris Baillière 1928
- 54 GALLAVARDIN L Arch Mal Coeur 1914 7 171
- 55 JALESKI C AND MORRISON F T Am J M Sci 1943 206 449
- 56 SABATHIÉ L G AND GASPARI F V Rev Arg Card 1944 11 215
- 57 COMEAU W J Am J M Sci 1937 194 43
- 58 CAMPBELL M Brit Heart J 1944 6 69
- 59 ZFRI A Rif Med 1903 19 701
- 60 a) LUISADA A A Min Med 1928 (p 2) 8 913
b) RASARIO G M Cuore e Circ 1940 ■ 217
- 61 CONDORELLI L Rass Ter Pat Clin 1940 2 422
- 62 LUCIANI, L *Fisiologia dell Uomo* Milano S E L 1923
- 63 ANTOINE T Zeit Geburt ch Gynaek 1926 90 112
- 64 SCHERF D AND BOYD L J *Clinical Electrocardiography* St Louis Mosby 1940
- 65 CALABRESI M *Elettrocardiografia Clinica* Bologna Cappelli 1935
- 66 BARKER P S MACLEOD A G ALEY ANDER J AND WILSON F N Am Heart J 1930 5 20
- 67 BATTRO A *Las Irritancias en Clinica* Buenos Aires El Ateneo 1937
- 68 CASTEL M R BATTRO A AND GONZÁLES R Arch Int Med 1941 ■ 76
- 69 WEYLER H Am Heart J 1944 27 409
- 70 KISCH H Exper Med Surg 1915 3 191
- 71 COSSIO I *Semerologia del Aparato Circulatorio* Buenos Aires El Ateneo 1946
- 72 LIAN C AND GOMES V Arch Mal Coeur 1931 24 21
- 73 LEWIS T Brit M J 1909 2 1528
- 74 ROTHSBERGER C J AND WINTERBERG H Wien Klin Woch 1909 22 830
- 75 LEWIS T DRURY A N AND HIESEN C C Heart 1921 3 361
- 76 a) SCHERF D AND SIEDECK H Zeit exp Med 1935 ■ 311
b) SCHERF D Zeit Kreislauff 1926 20 432
- 77 a) LAUFER S Arch Mal Coeur 1935 ■ 98
b) LAUFER S AND RUBINO A Clin Med Ital (Milan) 1936 67 365
- 78 BOSSI A Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1938 22 441
- 79 CONDORELLI L Minerva Med 1935 ■ (pt 1) 79
- 80 CARRBY W E AND KING C E Am J Physiol 1911 133 293
- 81 NYBERG J AND HAMILTON J G M Brit Heart J 1910 2 263
- 82 DE CASTRO O Arch Mal Coeur 1931 ■ 292
- 83 FERREIRA O Pres e Med 1935 43 260
- 84 PICCHINI G Cuore e Circ 1934 ■ 713
- 85 DACINI C Cuore e Circ 1937 21 571
- 86 LLISADA A A Am Heart J 1941 ■ 245
- 87 COSSIO P AND BERCONSKY I Rev Arg Card 1943 10 162
- 88 LAZZANESE D *Modificações de Forma do Electrocardiograma* São Paulo Gráfica de Imprestura 1942

- 89 GIBSON S J A M A 1941 117 96
- 90 ROSENBAUM F F AND LEVINE S A Am J M Sci 1939 198 774
- 91 WHITE I D Arch Int Med 1916 18 244
- 92 MOBITZ W Deut Arch klin Med 1923 141 25
- 93 ROTHBERGER C J AND WINTERBERG H Plueger's Arch 1912 146 385
- 94 FISCHER R Wien Arch inn Med 1934 146 469
- 95 GEIGER C J AND HINES L F J A M A 1940 115 272
- 96 SMITH J R AND WILSON H S Am Heart J 1944 27 176
- 97 ALTCHULE M D New England J Med 1945 233 265
- 98 NARUH L H AND HOFF H E J A M A 1935 105 254
- 99 ASKEY J M AND NEURATH O Am Heart J 1945 30 253
- 100 HOFF H E In *Howell's Textbook of Physiology* Philadelphia Saunders 1946
- 101 MOBITZ W Zeit exp Med 1924 41 180 and Zeit klin Med 1928 107 456
- 102 RYTAND D A Am Heart J 1946 32 579
- 103 GONZALES SABATHIE L Am Heart J 1947 33 719
- 104 MANNHEIMER E Acta Ped 1916 33 363
- 105 WILBURNE M BURSHIN A RODDARD E AND KATZ L Am Heart J 1947 34 860
- 106 LIAN C WELT J J AND CO WORKERS Paris Méd 1947 37 191 and Arch Mal Coeur 1947 40 140
- 107 a) GRATBIEL A AND WHITE P D Am Heart J 1935 10 345
b) CAMPBELL M AND ELLIOTT S A Brit Heart J 1939 1 127
- 108 a) COSSIO I AND CO WORKERS Rev Arg Card 1941 8 168 and 1944 9 164
b) ETALA F AND BERRETA J M Rev Arg Card 1948 15 133
- 109 GARVIN J A AND KLINE E M Am Heart J 1947 33 367
- 110 SOLARZ S A Ann Int Med 1947 27 447
- 111 CHAPMAN E M AND CO WORKERS J A M A 1948 137 580
- 112 COSSIO P Rev Arg Card 1938 5 217
- 113 a) TAQLINI A C Am Heart J 1947 33 119
b) SCHERF D Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1948 67 59
- 114 TANDOWSKY R M AND CO WORKERS Am Heart J 1946 32 617
- 115 GONZALES M M Rev Exp Card 1947 1 113
- 116 a) SCHERF D Zt chr exp Med 1926 61 816 1928 61 30 and 1929 65 198
b) SCHERF D ROMANO F J AND TERRA NOVA R Am Heart J 1948 36 741
M o Am J Physiol 1949 169 137
c) SCHERF D Am Heart J 1949 37 1069
d) SCHERF D Arch Int Med 1953 91 333
- 117 HARVEY W P AND LEVINE S A Am Heart J 1948 35 924
- 118 ASHMAN R AND HILL E *Essentials of Electrocardiography* New York Macmillan 1944
- 119 a) ROSENBAUM F F AND LEVINE S A Am J M Sci 1939 198 774
b) CHAVEZ I BRUMBLE J AND SODI PALLARES D Arch Int Card Mexico 1946 10 159
- 120 GONZALES SABATHIE L AND GASPARY F Am Heart J 1947 33 770
- 121 ALTANA G Folia Card (Milan) 1947 6 1
- 122 McMILLAN W L AND WELFARE C R J A M A 1947 135 1137
- 123 HALNE E A AND SMITH H L Am J Med 1948 4 237
- 124 STEIN I Am J M Sci 1946 212 604
- 125 WINTERITZ M AND LANGENDORF H Am Heart J 1944 27 301
- 126 COSMIO P Am Heart J 194 33 707
- 127 PÁNEK J Ca opis Lékařů Ce kých (Prague) 1947 4 3
- 128 STOLLBREITER H Klin Woch 1947 24/25 257
- 129 SCHAEFER S Am Heart J 1948 35 295
- 130 SEGHES M LEQUINE J AND DENOLIN H Am Heart J 1947 33 685
- 131 ROTH I R AND KICH H Am Heart J 1948 35 257
- 132 BUTTERWORTH S AND POINDESTER C A Am Heart J 1946 32 681
- 133 LANGENDORF R AND MINTZ S A Brit Heart J 1946 8 178
- 134 FROMENT R AND GALLAVARDIN L Arch Mal Coeur 1948 41 113
- 135 CONTRO S Cuore e Cire 1953 27 1
- 136 CONTRO S AND LUIADA A A J Mount Sinai Hosp of New York 1952 20 70
- 137 MESSER A L COUNIHAN T B RAPPA PORT M B AND SPRADLE H H Cire 1951 4 56
- 138 VEDOYA R et al Rev Arg Card 1951 18 7
- 139 RATTIGAN J P et al New England J Med 1957 246 159
- 140 BRODIE B B et al J Pharmacol & Exper Therap 1948 94 329 and 1950 98 71

- 141 DAINES M C AND HECHT H H Am Federation Clin Research (Am J Med 1951 11)
- 142 a) EISELBERG C D *et al* Am Heart J 1950 39 703 and 713
b) SZEKELY P AND WYNNE N A Clin Sci 1951 10 241
- 143 GALLAGHER L *et al* Arch Mal coeur 1950 11 114
- 144 LENZI F AND LENZI S Cardiol (Basel) 1949 14 21
- 145 RASARIO G M Rif Med (Naples) 1948 (No 27)
- 146 PRINZMETAL M *et al* J A M A 1951 146 1275
- 147 IUISADA A A AND PÉREZ MONTÉS L Ann Int Med 1950 33 56
- 148 SCHERF D AND HARRIS R Am Heart J 1946 32 443
- 149 HANSEN W R Am Heart J 1952 44 499
- 150 KISTIN A D AND LANDOWNE M Circ 1951 3 738

Clinical Syndromes Due to Diffuse Myocardial Lesions

Atrophy of the Heart (131)

Atrophy of the heart is encountered in clinical cases with extreme wasting due to neoplasms; chronic infections; degenerative and metabolic diseases, or starvation. Prolonged illness, long permanence in bed, surgical procedures and chronic digestive disturbances are considered as predisposing conditions.

Atrophy may be *simple* with an average cardiac weight of 200 grams. One half of the cases, however, present a *brown atrophy* with deposition of pigment in the muscle fibers and a slightly higher average weight.

The atrophic heart is normal or small in size, has a *regular rhythm* and a *slow rate* and may present a faint, short apical or midprecordial *systolic murmur*. Blood pressure is frequently low, but it may be normal or even high.

The *electrocardiogram* presents decreased voltage of all waves and a prolonged Q-T interval. Congestive failure is uncommon, possibly on account of the reduced metabolism.

An atrophic heart should be differentiated from a normal, small heart. The latter is found in anemic but otherwise normal persons; it is associated with a narrow chest and is usually a vertical heart. On the contrary, the atrophic heart is more horizontal (124).

Cardiac Enlargement—Ventricular Strain

Cardiac enlargement is a common finding in heart disease and may be due to one of the following causes:

a) 1 *valvular lesion or malformation*

placing strain on one, two or more cardiac chambers (rheumatic or bacterial valvular lesions; congenital heart disease)

b) 1 *persistent increase of resistance* in the vessels of either the lesser or the greater circulation, placing a strain on one of the ventricles (hypertensive heart disease; pulmonary heart disease)

c) 1 *diffuse structural lesion or functional disturbance* of the cardiac muscle due to inflammation or degeneration; metabolic or endocrine disturbance or vitamin deficiency

d) 1 *diffuse lesion of the coronary system* causing impairment of the blood supply to the heart (coronary heart disease)

In the above mentioned possibilities, cardiac enlargement is due to both *dilatation* and *hypertrophy*.

Cardiac hypertrophy may be an indirect cause of failure, because the hypertrophic myocardium has a smaller number of capillaries per cubic mm (84). This ultimately leads to *ischemia*, decreased nutrition and anoxia of the muscle fibers. In advanced cardiac hypertrophy, all values of essential chemical components of the cardiac muscle (creatine phosphorus and potassium) have been found decreased, a fact which may be conducive to heart failure (85). Ischemia favors *fibrosis of the cardiac muscle* and this is usually accompanied by lesion of the intraventricular conducting tissues.

The following sequence is frequently observed: hypertrophy, ischemia, diffuse fibrosis, 1 *AV block* or *bundle branch block* (especially on the left side).

The term *ventricular strain*, first coined as an electrocardiographic expression, has

been replaced in ECG interpretation by the term *ischemia* while it still has a definite mechanical connotation

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM

General data indicating ventricular hypertrophy are (128-129)

1) High voltage in the limb leads (unipolar and standard) due to increased thickness of the ventricular wall

2) Marked axis deviation due to increased surface and thickness of one ventricle

3) Increased duration of QRS (0.10-0.11 second) because longer time is required for the stimulus to reach the epicardial surface of the thickened ventricular wall

4) Delay between beginning of the complex and intrinsicoid deflection in the chest leads of the hypertrophied side due to same mechanism

5) Secondary changes of ST and T following an altered course of depolarization ventricular repolarization of the hypertrophied ventricle begins after that of the normal ventricle. However measurements of the ventricular gradient indicate that there may also be primary changes of T due to relative ischemia

Left ventricular hypertrophy is usually

TABLE 18A *Left ventricular hypertrophy with vertical heart*

LEAD	PATTERN OF ECG
V1 V4	rS slightly elevated ST segment upright T waves
V5-V6	qR depressed ST segment inverted T waves slight delay of the intrinsicoid deflection
aVR	QS or rS deflection with diphasic or inverted T waves
aVL	QS or rR and upright T waves
aVF	qR with depressed ST segment and downward T

In the case the standard leads may show right axis deviation with depressed ST and downward T waves in 2 and 3

TABLE 18B *Left ventricular hypertrophy with horizontal position and counterclockwise rotation of the heart*

LEAD	PATTERN OF ECG
V1 V2	rS or QS slightly elevated ST segment upright T
V3 V6	qR depressed ST segment downward T waves slight delay of the intrinsicoid deflection
aVR	rS or QS downward T waves
aVL	qR depressed ST segment downward T waves
aVF	rS upright T waves

TABLE 18C *Left ventricular hypertrophy with horizontal position and marked clockwise rotation of the heart*

LEAD	PATTERN OF ECG
V1 V6	rS deflection slightly elevated ST segment upright T waves
aVR	QR downward T waves
aVL	QR depressed ST segment downward T waves
aVF	rS upright T waves

accompanied by a marked left axis deviation — this is easily evaluated by the White-Bock index which is above +17 mm. If there is hypertrophy of the septum there may be a deep Q wave in the chest leads (fig. 230)

The ECG details vary with the position of the heart and are summarized in table 18

The pattern of *right ventricular hypertrophy* is not easily schematized because it may be caused by various clinical conditions. Several pictures have been described

1) Normal electrocardiogram due to the predominance of the left ventricle in spite of a moderate right ventricular hypertrophy

2) There is right axis deviation revealed

¹³ This deviation is absent in the vertical heart

¹⁴ The White-Bock index is found by using the formula $(R1 + S3) - (S1 + R3)$

by the fact that the White Stock index is less than -14 R has a high voltage in V_1 - V_2 (7 mm or more) while there is an S with a high voltage in V_3 - V_6 (7 mm or more). Thus the ratio $\frac{(R-S) \text{ in } V_3}{(R-S) \text{ in } V_1} = 0.4$ or less. There may be evidence of associated right atrial hypertrophy.

(3) An average picture of right ventricular hypertrophy is summarized in table 18D and is schematized in figure 231.

(4) There is an additional focal block of the right side (pages 376 and 379). The right chest leads have an rSR or rsR pattern and an inverted T. There are no further changes of the limb leads due to the focal block.

Atrial hypertrophy is revealed by changes of the axis of P as well as by changes of its duration and configuration. Two patterns have been recognized: 1) Pattern of right atrial hypertrophy encountered in chronic cor pulmonale and in congenital heart disease. There is a high voltage of P in II, 3, and aVF while V_1 and V_2 present a P wave made of a high positive phase followed by a brief and pointed negative phase.

2) Pattern of left atrial hypertrophy encountered in mitral valve lesions. There is a notched P in I and aVL and a diphasic P with deep and broad negative phase in 3 and aVF. V_1 and V_2 present a P wave having a deep and broad negative phase.

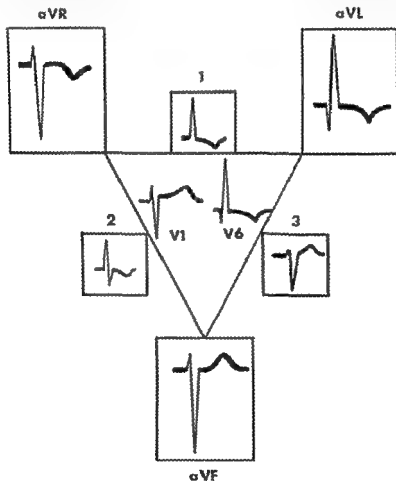


FIG. 230. Electrocardiograms in left ventricular hypertrophy with anterolateral ischemia (hypertensive heart disease).

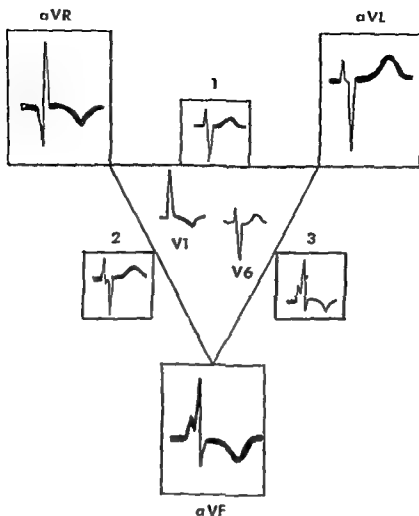


FIG. 231 Electrocardiograms in right ventricular hypertrophy (chronic cor pulmonale)

In both patterns *P* lasts more than 0.10 second

Low frequency tracings Enlargement of one of the ventricles may be revealed by low frequency tracings (122)

TABLE 1SD Marked right ventricular hypertrophy

LEAD	PATTERN OF CG
V4R V1 (possibly V2)	R or Ps depressed ST segment inverted T waves
V5-V6	PS normal ST segment upright T waves
aVR	QI or QR inverted T wave
aVL	rS upright T wave or QR inverted T waves
aVF	rS or QR inverted T waves

1) Left ventricular hypertrophy is revealed by a high often plateau like positive thrust at the apex at the same time the epigastric tracing has a negative thrust

2) Right ventricular hypertrophy is revealed by a high early systolic thrust at the epigastrium while the apical tracing has a negative thrust

3) A large atrial wave may be observed in either of the above two tracings and is evidence of increased atrial pressure

Triple and Quadruple Rhythms of the Heart

The names *triple rhythm* and *quadruple rhythm* have been suggested (120) to indicate those cadences which are due to addition of one or two diastolic sounds to the more

commonly heard two heart sounds. Older and well known names were *gallop rhythm* (5) and *train wheel rhythm* (6). The new definition is more comprehensive and includes several possibilities which were not considered in the older ones.

As already mentioned (pages 41 and 90) the normal heart may have four sounds. The two loudest are the first and second sounds at the beginning and end of ventricular systole (*systolic sounds*), the other two of less intensity occur during ventricular diastole in coincidence with the phases of rapid filling of the ventricles. They are the third sound and the fourth or atrial sound (*diastolic sounds*). They are usually inaudible in adults with the exceptions of persons with a flat thin chest who may have an audible third sound.

Until recently a *triple rhythm* (gallop) was considered as a purely auditory phenomenon (152). However, phonocardiography has revealed that in certain cases with a triple rhythm the diastolic sound is inaudible because it is weak, low pitched or near the first sound (123). It has been suggested to consider more pathological any case having a diastolic sound with the following graphic characteristics: 1) frequency of vibrations of 30 or more per second irrespective of its amplitude; 2) amplitude greater than two thirds of the loudest of the two main sounds at the apex; or 3) both (123).

PHONOCARDIOGRAM LOW FREQUENCY TRACING

Three main types of triple rhythm and one of quadruple rhythm have been recognized (fig. 232).

1) *Atrial type*. The additional sound occurs at the time of atrial contraction and represents the accentuation of the fourth sound. It usually falls in late diastole but if the P-R interval is long and diastole is short it may fall in early diastole.

2) *Ventricular type*. The additional sound falls in early diastole at the time of rapid filling and represents the accentuation of

the third sound. It occurs from 0.14 to 0.18 second after the second sound.

3) *Summation (or nondescript) type*. There is an additional sound or a short rumbling murmur in mid diastole. This is due to more or less simultaneous occurrence of rapid passive filling and atrial contraction causing the rapid succession or fusion of the third with the fourth sound (fig. 233).

4) *Quadruple rhythm*. There are two additional sounds in diastole representing the accentuation of both the third and fourth sound.

The diastolic sound is made of a high diphasic or triphasic vibration. It is simultaneous with a high wave in the low frequency tracings (cardiogram or epigastric tracing). In the summation type two distinct waves may be present in the low frequency tracing even if a prolonged sound or short rumble is revealed by the sound tracing (122).

Phonocardiograms recorded first over the apex and then at the epigastrium reveal whether the triple rhythm originates in the left or in the right ventricle. A triple rhythm recorded only at the apex usually reveals left ventricular strain; a triple rhythm recorded only at the epigastrium usually reveals right ventricular strain. Other types of triple rhythms are recorded over both areas.

The following conditions increase the loudness of the diastolic sounds:

1) *Rapid heart action*. The short diastole causes a tumultuous filling of the ventricles.

2) *Prolonged interval between atrial and ventricular contractions*. The increased interval permits a better audition but does not change the graphic characteristics of the atrial sound.

3) *Hypertrophy of the left atrium*, as observed in mitral insufficiency without severe mitral stenosis, gives a powerful contraction displacing a large amount of blood. The same is true for the *right atrium* in cor pulmonale or mitral stenosis. This increases the loudness of the fourth sound.

4) *Dilated and weak myocardium*. The

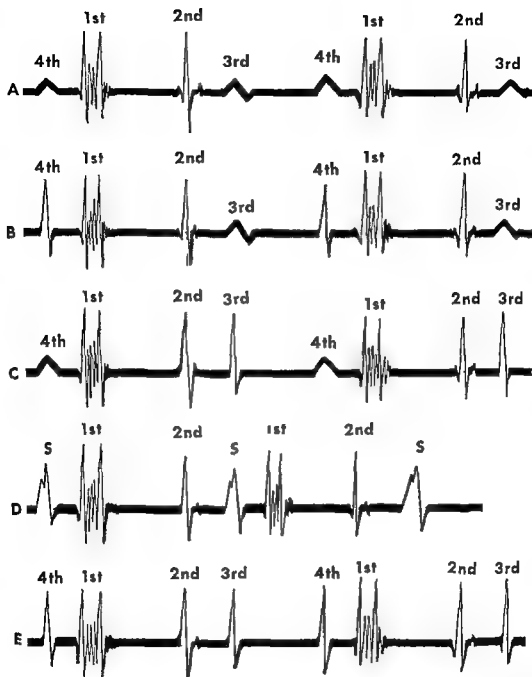


FIG. 232 Graphic diagnosis of the *triple* and *quadruple* rhythms (gallop or train wheel rhythms). A normal sounds B atrial type of triple rhythm (loud fourth sound) C ventricular type of triple rhythm (loud third sound) D summation (or nondescript) type of triple rhythm (fusion of loud third and fourth sounds) E quadruple rhythm (loud and separated third and fourth sounds)

ventricular wall vibrates more when hit by the fluid wave. This is common in congestive failure and in coronary heart disease. Through increase of atrial pressure this is typical of hypertensive heart disease. These rhythms are commonly encountered in pregnancy, thyrotoxicosis, fever, anemia.

5) Ventricular strain favors triple rhythms

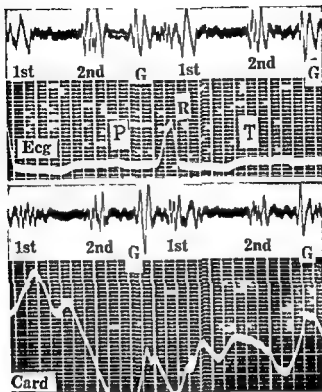


FIG. 233 Triple rhythm Summation (or nondescript) type G additional sound Case of coronary heart disease Comparison of the sound tracing first with the ICG then with a low frequency tracing (Card) of the precordium

rheumatic or congenital heart diseases and hypertensive or coronary heart diseases. The abnormal rhythm is caused by functional phenomena which may disappear (delivery of pregnant women, calming down of excited children, digitalization of valvular patients, sympathectomy or venesection of hypertensive patients) leading to normalization of the auscultatory phenomena.

While a triple rhythm is more frequent in cardiac patients than in normal subjects, it may be found occasionally in the latter because its production is favored by functional elements which may be present without heart disease.

A triple or quadruple rhythm is often evidence of *ventricular strain*. This is frequently observed in acute or subacute myocarditis, coronary heart disease (especially after myocardial infarction) and hyperten-

sive heart disease (especially malignant hypertension). However, no unduly severe prognosis should be based on this sign alone, because many reversible phenomena, especially tachycardia, may be causing it.

Pulsus Alternans

Pulsus alternans occurs when every other pulse wave is weak, although there is no irregularity of the heart (fig. 234).

Pulsus alternans may appear during attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia. It is typical of hypertension, coronary heart disease (especially after myocardial infarction) and congestive failure.

Pulsus alternans is recognized by palpation of the radial pulse only when exceptionally severe. Manual compression of the brachial artery may cause halving of the pulse and reveal less marked alternation.

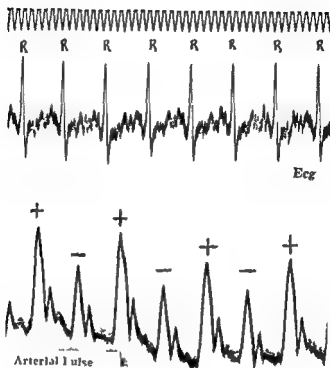


FIG. 234 Ictus alternans

Blood pressure tracings easily reveal the alternans. If the patient has a heart rate of 60 decompression first shows the sounds due to the large waves (rate of 30) then those due to all waves (rate of 60). A new halving of the rate may be observed near the level of diastolic pressure.

There are four types of alternating pulse: 1) alternation of the peak (systolic alternation); 2) alternation of the foot (diastolic alternation); 3) alternation of both (systolic and diastolic alternation); and 4) alternation of the dicrotic wave. In exceptional cases the tibial tracing fails to reveal an alternation which is present in the brachial tracing.

Several phenomena may alternate in cases of pulsus alternans: 1) The intensity of the cardiac sounds (13-14) or the force of the apex beat (21); 2) The intensity of a murmur (15-18); 3) The amplitude of the ventricular contractions as recorded by the electrokymograph or the roentgenkymograph (20-21). At times the electrocardiogram reveals an alternation of P-R-T or

S-T which may be concordant or discordant in relation to the pulse (3-12, 14-20). Elevation usually increases the alternation. A premature beat may start the alternation which usually continues for some time thereafter.

MECHANISM

Alternation of various cardiac functions has been described. *Alternating conductivity* leads to periodic changes of the P-R interval or to periodic A-V block every second beat and may cause an alternating bundle branch block. *Alternating automatism* has been advocated as the cause of bradycardia similar to that of periodic S-A block type 2:1 (12). Similarly, *alternation of the strength of ventricular systole* is the cause of pulsus alternans.

The most likely explanation is the following: A certain area of the ventricular myocardium possesses a longer refractory period than the rest of the heart, either because it has been damaged or because its blood supply is poor. When a stimulus reaches the

ventricle after a long pause (respiratory arrhythmia; compensatory pause after a premature beat or during a slow rate caused by vagal reflex) all fibers contract causing a large blood wave to enter the aorta. However this contraction is followed by a shorter diastole which is not sufficient to restore the fibers of the damaged area. The following stimulus causes the contraction of all fibers except those damaged (which are still in a relative refractory period) whereupon a small blood wave enters the aorta. Then a large and a small wave alternate again until a change occurs in the heart rate or in the conditions of the myocardium. In

pulse with alternately smaller and larger waves. Recognition of the phenomenon can be made by the above mentioned maneuvers (manual compression of the brachial artery, inflated blood pressure cuff exertion).

Differential diagnosis from a bigeminal pulse is easy with an electrocardiogram and a pulse tracing. The ventricular complexes are identical in pulsus alternans while the complex of a premature contraction periodically follows a normal complex in bigeminal pulse. The small wave is nearer the following large wave (or is at an equal distance) in pulsus alternans; it is nearer the preceding large wave in bigeminal pulse.

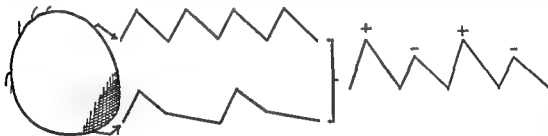


FIG. 23a Mechanism of pulsus alternans

other words, a difference in the length of the refractory period of some fibers makes it possible that they contract only every other stimulus while all other fibers contract with every stimulus (fig. 23a). Pulsus alternans indicates that large numbers of fibers are in an abnormal functional condition. However, if the damaged fibers are in an area which has little or no influence on the size of the pulse, other manifestations of cardiac activity may reveal the disturbance or this may not be apparent.

It is possible that pulsus alternans is caused occasionally by alternating changes in the tonus of the aorta and even in the tonus of one or more peripheral arteries. Proof of this, however, is not altogether convincing.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of pulsus alternans is simple if it is remembered that this is a regular

alternation of the pulse. In certain cases, if respiration is rapid, the cardiac rate may be one half of the respiratory rate. This may cause a non-pathologic alternation of the pulse. Inviting the patient to hold his breath for a few seconds reestablishes equal pulses.

PROGNOSIS

The pulsus alternans of paroxysmal tachycardia and that occurring for only 5 to 6 contractions after a premature beat are of limited importance. Nevertheless, they add events to the syndrome. The pulsus alternans of all other conditions has a very serious prognosis. Its importance should be evaluated together with all other clinical data, but there is no doubt that pulsus alternans is an ominous sign.

Disappearance of pulsus alternans in a hypertensive patient after surgery of the sympathetic system has been observed by the author.

Bundle Branch Block

DEFINITION—MECHANISM

Impairment in the transmission of the stimulus is not limited to the bundle of His (page 355). If it occurs below the bifurcation of the bundle it may delay or block the conduction toward one ventricle. When the delayed conduction is in one of the stems of the bundle there is *bundle branch block* (BBB). When there is diffuse impairment in the more distal subdivision there is an *intra-ventricular block* (IV block). When there is localized impairment in one of the distal branches there is a *focal block*.

These disturbances fail to cause any apparent change of the heart action because the affected ventricle is stimulated in a devious way through the septum (fig. 236). On the other hand this process causes delay of both stimulation and contraction of one ventricle in comparison with the other.

CAUSE

Bundle branch block and IV block are caused by inflammation, ischemia or fibrosis of the conducting bundles. Inflammation may be due to myocarditis (rheu-

matic diphtheritic or other). Ischemia is usually due to coronary heart disease but may be the result of long lasting hypertrophy of one ventricle like that occurring in hypertensive heart disease or cor pulmonale or in congenital or rheumatic heart disease. Fibrosis may be the result of myocarditis, myocardial hemorrhage or coronary arteriosclerosis. Rarer conditions (trauma, tumor, bacterial myocarditis) may also cause BBB or IV block.

An extremely rare condition is the absence of conduction on one side due to *congenital* lack of one of the stems of the bundle of His (162).

Right bundle branch block may be due to an extremely minute lesion because the right stem is long and thin. On the contrary left bundle branch block is usually the result of a more diffuse lesion because the left stem branches nearly immediately below the bifurcation (page 22). Intra-ventricular block is always caused by widespread lesion of either side.

In coronary arteriosclerosis BBB is usually due to a *bilateral* lesion which predominates on one side. In the other cases unilateral lesion is the rule.

PHYSICAL DATA—X RAY

Physical data are few. There may be a *faint and prolonged first sound*, a *split second pulmonic sound* is common (over one half of the cases).

The apical impulse may be *prolonged*. *Fluoroscopy and roentgen ymography* may reveal a delay in contraction of the ventricle on the side of the block.

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram

The electrocardiogram recorded in the limb leads shows that QRS is broader and lasts more than 0.12 second in adults (more than 0.10 second in children) and is notched or slurred.

Left bundle branch block. There is no S



FIG. 236 Propagation of stimulus in left bundle branch block.

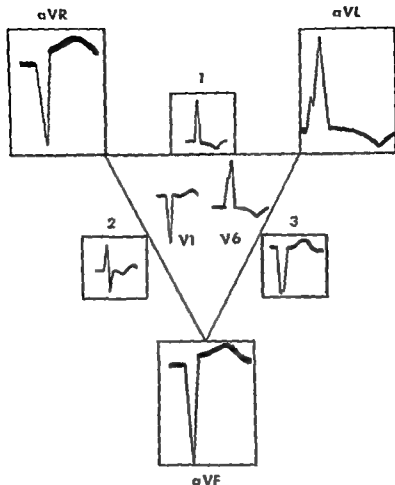


FIG. 237. Electrocardiographic scheme of left bundle branch block in a horizontal heart

wave in lead I¹⁸. The T wave may be in either the same or the opposite direction of the main QRS complex. The direction of the main wave in leads I and II fails to give a clue; it may be of either the concordant or the discordant type (left axis deviation) according to the position of the heart. However, the first is more frequent. The precordial leads give basic data: there is a small R wave followed by a deep and broad S (rS) in leads V1 and V2; on the other hand, the R wave is tall and late in leads V5 and V6 (rR or V). There is no Q

¹⁸ A small and broad SI (and S in V6) can be observed in cases of intraventricular block of the left base (S type of left axis block).

wave in V5 to V6 because the septum is stimulated from right to left (fig. 237).

The data supplied by the unipolar limb and precordial leads are summarized in table 19.

In left ventricular hypertrophy, leads facing the epicardial surface of the left ventricle have a wide qR pattern. In left bundle branch block, leads facing the epicardial surface of the left ventricle show a wide R and no Q.

Right bundle branch block. The T wave is usually in the opposite direction of the main wave of QRS. The main wave in leads I and III is usually of the concordant type (right axis deviation). However, if the

TABLE 19 *Electrocardiographic changes in left bundle branch block*

TO OF THE HEART	UNIP LAR LEAD	PARTIAL ECG
Vertical heart (less common)	Rt arm	QS raised S T up right T
	It arm	QS or rS small up right T
	It leg	R depressed S T inverted T
	V1-V4	QS or rS upward T
	V5-V6	R depressed S T inverted T
Horizontal heart	Rt arm	QS upward T
	It arm	R inverted T
	It leg	QS upward T
	V1	QS upward T
	V2-V3	rS upward T
	V5-V6	rR inverted T

heart is horizontal it is possible to observe a discordant type of electrocardiogram and no S wave. The precordial leads give basic data: the R wave is of great amplitude and is delayed 0.06 to 0.08 second over the beginning of the complex in lead V1 and V2 (like rSR or M); it is of high voltage and occurs early in leads V5 and V6 (like qRS or RS) (fig. 238 and table 20).

A special variety of right bundle branch block is called *Wilson type of block*. Lead I has a tall R followed by a deep and wide S and by an upright T wave. Lead 3 has a qR type of complex and an inverted T. The chest leads V3 to V6 have a slurred wide S and R wave.

Bilateral bundle branch block. Cases with a QRS exceeding 0.12 second may not show

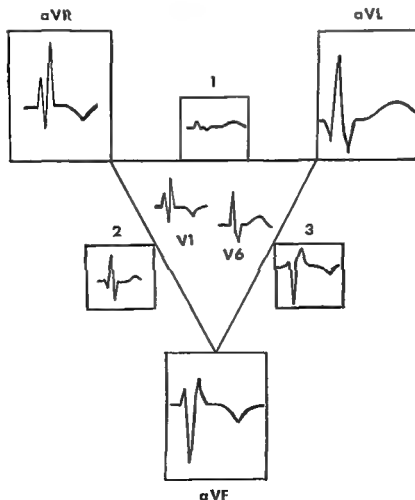


FIG. 238. Electrocardiographic scheme of right bundle branch block in a horizontal heart.

evidence of unilateral block in the pre-cordial leads (99). Unless there is an alternating type of block it is apparent that in bilateral \pm block the two ventricles contract more or less at the same time. On the other hand if the block spreads upwards to the bifurcation $\Delta\Delta$ block will become apparent.

Diffuse intraventricular block QRS is severely prolonged and may last more than 0.15 second. Bundle branch block or ventricular hypertrophy may be contributory factors. In left intraventricular block a small Q may be observed in the chest leads V5 to V6. This is particularly significant because the delay of conduction in the left branch of the bundle should cause disappearance of \equiv septal Q. Septal infarction should be excluded before explaining this Q as caused by intraventricular block.

It has been suggested that certain changes of the electrocardiogram indicate block of the stimulus in some definite layers of the ventricular wall. Notchings of the ascending branch of QRS have been interpreted as due to block in the *subendocardial layers* while notchings of the descending branch of QRS have been explained as due to block in the *subepicardial layers*.

Focal block is revealed by a broadening of QRS in only one or two chest leads and not in the others. This is explained as due to local conduction disturbances.

TABLE 90 *Electrocardiographic changes in right bundle branch block*

ECART	LE	G
Vertical heart (less common)	Rt arm	rSR inverted T
	Lt arm	rSR inverted T
	Lt leg	qRS upright T
	V1-V2	rsR inverted T
	V4-V6	qRS upward T
Horizontal heart	Rt arm	rsR inverted T
	Lt arm	qRS upward T
	Lt leg	rSr or rSR upward T
	V1-V2	rsR or M inverted T
	V4-V6	qPS upward T

Phonocardiogram

The first sound is prolonged and lasts more than 0.16 second. It is frequently of low amplitude. Splitting of this sound has been described by several authors. However this observation is not confirmed by stethoscopic phonocardiograms (153) and should be attributed to inadequate technique. Ventricular asynchronism results in the delay of contraction of one ventricle of about 0.04 to 0.05 second. This is too short for causing a splitting of that central phase of the first sound which is clearly visible and which lasts from 0.06 to 0.08 second (page 91). However it causes prolongation of the first sound in both the right and the left types of bundle branch block. The second sound being shorter is frequently split, the interval between the two phases of the split sound \equiv from 0.03 to 0.04 (103).

Carotid Tracing Jugular Tracing

The delay between beginning of first sound complex and rise of the carotid pulse (usually about 0.05 second) is increased and lasts from 0.07 to 0.09 second in left bundle branch block. The incisura of the carotid pulse coincides in normal subjects with the main vibration of the second sound. In left bundle branch block it coincides with the second phase of the split second sound (8, 9, 10) (fig. 239).

The rise of the carotid pulse has a normal relationship to the beginning of the first sound in right bundle branch block; the incisura has a normal relationship to the first phase of the split second sound in this type of block.

In right bundle branch block the study of the jugular tracing is of importance; the peak of \equiv is markedly delayed and occurs 0.08 to 0.14 second after the end of the second sound (or after the second phase of the second sound if this is split). In other words: which usually occurs 0.08 to 0.14 second after the second sound has the same relationship to the second phase of that sound when this is split.

TABLE 19 *Electrocardiographic changes in left bundle branch block*

POSITIVE	POL LEAD	CHARACTER OF Q
Vertical heart (lead a com m n)	Rt arm	QS or rS up and ST up right T
	lt arm	QS or rS small up right T
	lt leg	R deep rS up and ST inverted T
	V1 V4	Q or rS up and T
	V5 V6	R deep rS up and ST inverted T
Horizontal heart	Rt arm	QS up and T
	lt arm	R inverted T
	lt leg	QS up and T
	V1	QS up and T
	V2 V3	rS up and T
	V5 V6	rR inverted T

heart is horizontal it is possible to observe a discordant type of electrocardiogram and no S wave. The precordial leads give basic data: the R wave is of great amplitude and is delayed 0.06 to 0.08 second over the beginning of the complex in lead V1 and V2 (like rSR or M). It is of high voltage and occurs early in leads V5 and V6 (like qRS or RS) (fig. 238 and table 20).

A special variety of right bundle branch block is called *Wilson type of block*. Lead 1 has a tall R followed by a deep and wide S and by an upright T wave. Lead 3 has a qR type of complex and an inverted T. The chest leads V5 to V6 have a slurred wide S and R wave.

Bilateral bundle branch block. Cases with a QRS exceeding 0.12 second may not show

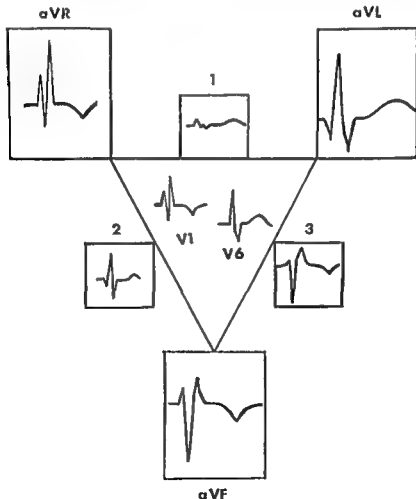


FIG. 238. Electrocardiogram showing the absence of right bundle branch block in a horizontal heart.

tracings reveal a much larger percentage of asynchronism

VARIETIES

Incomplete bundle branch block In this type of block the stimulus is merely slowed in its course toward one of the ventricles. The heart sounds are somewhat prolonged, the QRS is between 0.10 and 0.12 in duration, both the precordial leads and the mechanical tracings give borderline data.

Unstable or intermittent bundle branch block (32) In this type the block appears and disappears suddenly. This probably is due to initial vascular disturbances. When the blood supply improves the block disappears.

Paroxysmal bundle branch block (33) It may be caused by acute infections (diphtheria, rheumatic disease) but usually is due to coronary heart disease. The failure of one branch of the bundle may be apparent during sudden changes of heart rate.

Bundle branch block with short P R interval This variety will be described below.

Alternating bundle branch block This consists of the alternated appearance of ventricular complexes with the aspect of bundle branch block from either side. It is of rare observation, less rare, however, in the course of A V block. (page 377)

DIAGNOSIS

At first the diagnosis of B B B was based on peripheral ECG's alone and the importance of axis deviation was overemphasized. However, recognition of the fact that a) the common terminology was wrong, b) the two opposite types of B B B may have a similar aspect on the peripheral ECG (34-35) and c) the position of the heart is more important than the block in determining the electric axis (36) led to a change in the basic criteria for diagnosis.

Broadening of QRS, notching of the complex and prolongation or splitting of the heart sounds are general signs of bundle

branch block. Increased voltage, inversion of T and axis deviation are secondary data. The diagnosis of side is based a) on precordial electrocardiographic leads and b) on demonstration that the contraction of one ventricle is delayed in comparison with the other (sound and carotid tracings, EKG).

Differential diagnosis should be made at times with *mitral stenosis*. The latter may give an opening snap which may simulate a split 2nd sound and may be accompanied by broadening of QRS. As the jugular tracing of such cases may not be reliable (28) the diagnosis will be based mainly on the precordial leads.

Differential diagnosis between bundle branch block of the usual type and that with short P R interval will be described below.

COURSE—PROGNOSIS

Incomplete bundle branch block may be a comparatively unimportant finding or may appear after severe disturbances of the heart such as myocardial infarction. It may exist unchanged for many years, permitting a normal activity but may, on the contrary, increase in severity within a few weeks or months as a result of progressive lesions of the myocardium.

Occasional cases do occur where B B B is an isolated finding and has no special significance. This is relatively more common if the B B B is on the right side (37). However, when B B B is associated with other signs of heart disease it definitely adds to the severity of the prognosis which therefore will be based on all data concerning the heart. Whenever there is coronary heart disease, considerable cardiac enlargement and B B B, the prognosis shall be guarded.

The Wolff Parkinson White Syndrome (43)

This syndrome should be kept apart from that of intraventricular block because it is due to *preexcitation* of the ventricles and not to delay of ventricular excitation. It

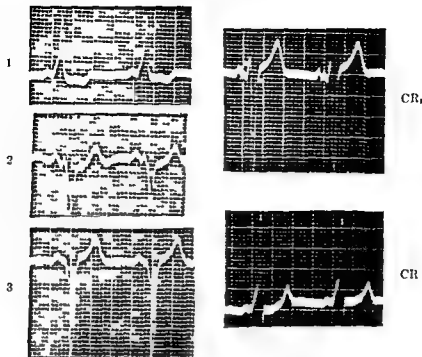


FIG. 240 Electrocardiogram in a case of Wolff Parkinson White syndrome

occurs mostly in young males who have attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia but are otherwise apparently normal.

The only physical evidence of the syndrome is a possible prolongation of the heart sounds.

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram

The electrocardiogram presents a short *P-R* interval (0.08-0.10 sec) *QRS* is increased in duration (0.10-0.12) and is slurred (fig. 240). It is typical that the first limb of *QRS* is slurred and slow while the second limb is rapid and normal. The precordial leads usually fail to show those changes which are common in *BBB* (page 357).

During the attacks of tachycardia the *ECG* often presents normal *PR* and *QRS* intervals. However attacks of ventricular tachycardia or atrial fibrillation may also occur (14). Cases where this syndrome is associated with rheumatic or congenital heart disease have been described.

Phonocardiogram

In general the phonocardiogram fails to show prolongation of the first sound as in bundle branch block. A case observed by the author presented a crescendo type of first sound which had been erroneously interpreted as a presystolic murmur. Only rare cases present a split second sound.

Electrolytogram

The most common finding is that of delayed contraction of both ventricles as revealed by simultaneous aortic and pulmonic tracings with an electrocardiogram. Less common finding is that of ventricular asynchronism.

MECHANISM

Among the different possible mechanisms suggested to explain this eventuality the most likely is the following (45-46) these patients have a congenital abnormality which consists of the existence of an accessory pathway of atrioventricular con-

duction this may be similar to the *bundle of Kent* (47) and to the structures described by *Paladino* (48). The sinoatrial stimulus proceeds along both the abnormal and the normal pathways. The stimulus following the abnormal pathway reaches the ventricles more rapidly (short P R) and causes early activation of the latter. The stimulus following the normal pathway reaches the ventricles slightly later and contributes to the second part of the QRS complex (49).

The abnormal pathway may be blocked by exercise, atropine or amyl nitrite (50) following which normal complexes appear.

The paroxysmal attacks have been explained in the following way:

a) A stimulus which has reached the ventricles along the bundle of His may re-enter the atria following the bundle of Kent in a retrograde direction and cause atrial tachycardia.

b) A ventricular premature stimulus may follow the bundle of Kent in a retrograde way and then re-enter the ventricles through the bundle of His causing ventricular tachycardia.

The existence of an anomalous bundle connecting the right atrium with the right ventricle has been demonstrated already in several cases (51) while in others an anomalous bundle connected the left atrium with the left ventricle (143). The possibility that either the left or the right side of the heart receives an early activation is confirmed by the unipolar chest leads (144). Interference with QRS of a slow T_a wave (page 37) or the results of high A V node excitability (145) may simulate a true Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome.

PROGNOSIS

This condition is relatively harmless and should therefore be sharply differentiated from the common types of intraventricular block. It should not be ignored, however, because the attacks of tachycardia may cause giddiness or syncope and in rare cases heart failure.

Inter- and Intra-Atrial Disturbances

Extensive lesions of the atrial myocardium may cause abnormalities in the spreading of the stimulus which may be recognized by changes of the P wave.

Evidence of enlargement of either atrium can be found in the electrocardiogram (page 369). The finding of P waves of varying form with normal atrial rhythm and constant P R is in favor of an intra-atrial disturbance of conduction (53-54). Apart from broadening and splintering the P wave may present increased voltage, decreased voltage, diphasic shape or inversion. As the normal P wave represents the sum of the currents of both atria, these changes may be due to abnormal spread of the stimulus in either one of them.

A negative P wave may be caused by intra-atrial disturbances (55) (page 369). Isolated disturbances of this type are rare; more frequently they are found in patients having also A V or intraventricular disturbances.

Special leads (esophageal leads, right precordial lead) permit differentiation between the currents of the two atria (page 128). Through their use different disturbances have been recognized: a) delay in activation of the left atrium (56, 57, 161); b) delay in activation of the right atrium (58, 59, 161); and c) atrial dissociation with double pace-maker or interatrial block (55, 59, 60, 61, 119).

Acute and Subacute Myocarditis

The term myocarditis is applied in a broad sense to both the inflammatory and the degenerative lesions of the cardiac muscle. Chronic conditions with cardiac failure should not be labeled as myocarditis unless there is some evidence for it. Usually the diagnosis of coronary heart disease with myocardial fibrosis is the correct one. On the other hand, true myocarditis is not uncommon and is responsible for many cardiovascular disturbances, sometimes followed by death.

CAUSE

Numerous diseases may be associated with myocarditis

a) *Rheumatic disease*

b) *Multiple bacterial agents* among them, the *Streptococcus hemolyticus* the *Gonococcus*, the *Pneumococcus* the *Typhoid bacillus* and *Bacillus diphtheriae*, the *Tubercle bacillus* and *Brucella melitensis*

c) *Several spirocheta trypanosomata*, and *rickettsiae* including the agent of syphilis the agent of Chagas disease and that of yellow fever also larger parasites including *Trichinella spiralis* *Ankylostoma duodenale* and the plasmodia of malaria

d) *Certain viruses* they include the agents of influenza measles parotitis and poliomyelitis

Several types of myocarditis are of unknown etiology, like *Fiedler's isolated myocarditis* (80a-81) Others are connected with *hemolytic anemias* (64) or with *systemic diseases of the central nervous system* (65) or the *skeletal muscles* (66) Some of them however may be the result of vitamin deficiencies and will be considered later (page 102)

Another type of myocarditis is due to *allergy to drugs* usually *sulfonamides* (62) This raises the question of possible other less severe allergic reactions of the myocardium

Purely degenerative lesions of the heart muscle are caused by *acute poisoning* with phosphorus arsenic and other substances

LESIONS

The old division in *parenchymatous* and *interstitial myocarditis* has not proven very useful because of the frequent association of the two types of lesions On the other hand the division of the myocardial lesions in a) *chiefly inflammatory (myocarditis)* and b) *chiefly degenerative (myocardosis)* still seems useful (62-159)

The *chiefly inflammatory form* is found following most bacterial and viral infections or in the course of allergic diseases

a) *Simple myocarditis* The connective tissue is infiltrated with lymphocytes plasma cells, and polymorphonuclears Foci of fibroblastic proliferation are common in later stages as well as slight degeneration of the muscular elements *Streptococcal myocarditis* is found also in cases with subacute bacterial endocarditis (page 208) The frequency of myocardial involvement has been demonstrated by patients cured with penicillin who died in congestive failure

A typical aspect of *patchy myocarditis* has been described after common upper respiratory infections A delay between the primary infection and the cardiac lesion may prevent a correct diagnosis (137a) On the other hand the myocarditis which is associated with *glomerulonephritis* presents a widespread serous effusion into the interstitial spaces and the myocardial damage seems to be related to increased capillary permeability (137c)

b) *Purulent myocarditis* It may be due to extension of a purulent inflammation (purulent pericarditis ulcerative endocarditis) or localization of germs during sepsis Gross examination reveals *abscesses* in different stages of evolution These are *multiple* in the hematogenous type on the contrary there is often only *one abscess* in the form caused by extension The abscess is surrounded by an area of infiltration with necrosis of the myofibrils

Typical lesions are found in cases of streptococcal gonococcal pneumococcal or typhoid infections and even in subacute bacterial endocarditis (78) Healing of both types of lesions results in *fibrosis* and *scarring* with occasional calcification

The *chiefly degenerative form* can be found in chronic diseases of the kidneys (nephrosis) or the liver (cirrhosis) in comatose states (diabetes uremia) in malignant diseases (multiple myeloma) during certain infections (sepsis and diphtheria) in chronic alcoholism and in Addison's disease The cases described by French authors with the name of *myocardie* (92) probably pre-

ented this type of lesion. A common factor seems to be hypoproteinemia of the blood.

Gross examination shows that the heart is enlarged and flabby. The myocardium is variegated in color because of alternating reddish brown and yellowish gray areas. The latter indicate a degenerative process even in the gross. Microscopic examination reveals diffuse or focal lesions consisting of cloudy swelling and fatty or hyaline degeneration and resulting in obliteration of the myofibril striations. Small foci of inflammatory cell infiltrations are concomitant findings. Healing of these forms may occur only by scarring as replacement hyperplasia of the myofibrils has not been proven.

Myocardial hypertrophy sometimes severe may be the result of subacute myocarditis in the absence of valvular lesions (133). Even *aneurysm of the ventricular wall* may be the result of isolated myocarditis (134). In rare cases there may be *rupture of the ventricular wall* even without the formation of an aneurysm.

A certain number of subacute forms deserve a further brief description.

Rheumatic myocarditis. Typical *Aschoff nodules* can be observed. These are tiny perivascular or interstitial nodules usually invisible to the naked eye, most frequent in the left ventricle (page 100, fig. 108).

Syphilitic myocarditis. It may be *acute* (65-69) with interstitial cellular infiltration which is either diffuse or patchy. However the most common type is a *subacute* reaction consisting of perivascular inflammatory foci. Syphilis may cause entirely different lesions with the formation of *multiple small gummata*, larger *nodules*, *infarctions* or *aneurysms of the wall*. *Sclerosis* may follow rapidly or slowly and frequently predominates in the right heart (64). The finding of spirochetes in the foci is not unusual. Another type spreads by continuity from the aorta and is associated with *aortitis* (140) (pages 201 and 475). The myocardial lesion originates from inflammatory foci in the media and spreads first to areas adjacent to

the sinuses of Valsalva. Endoarteritis obliterans and perivascular infiltration with lymphocyte and plasmacytes are found.

Tubercular myocarditis. The myocardium has proven to be resistant to the localization of tubercle bacilli. However several different lesions have been found occasionally such as simple toxic myocardosis (70), nodular tuberculosis of the heart (71), miliary tuberculois and diffuse tuberculois with scattered Langhans cells (72).

Myocardial lesions have been repeatedly described in *scleroderma* (135). It has been suggested that *scleroderma*, *dermatomyositis* and *periarteritis nodosa* have something in common with collagen diseases (135b); the part played by an allergic mechanism is still hypothetical.

In *allergic or eosinophilic myocarditis* gross examination reveals many pin point grayish pink areas. These are due to cellular infiltration mostly consisting of eosinophils and monocytes in the interstitial tissue especially around the blood vessels. These perivascular cellular infiltrates are also present in other organs and have been thought to represent an early stage of frank *periarteritis* (79).

Fiedler's or isolated myocarditis (80a). There is an isolated involvement of the myocardium without spoken necrosis of the myofibrils without any endocardial or pericardial lesion (80b). There frequently are granulomata with necrosis and giant cells (81). This condition is seldom diagnosed during life and may cause sudden death.

Neurogenic and myogenic heart lesions consist of subendocardial hemorrhages usually located in the interventricular septum, softness and flabbiness of the myocardium and interstitial edema (65). Hyaline and fatty degeneration of the fibers, vacuolization and later disappearance of the nuclei and fibrils have been observed in cases of brain tumor, poliomyelitis, and Friedreich's ataxia (65). Myocardial fibrosis has been found after prolonged disease. *Fragmentation or segmentation of the cardiac*

fibers has also been observed (82-83). On critical analysis of these findings one cannot rule out the possibility of asphyxial preagonic changes or of an association with various other pathological conditions which were present in some of the published cases.

Diphtheria is one of the causes of myocarditis and is followed rather frequently by *calcification of the myocardium* (119).

Malaria. This disease is a frequent cause of both myocardosis and myocarditis of subendocardial hemorrhages and occlusive coronaritis (73-141).

Yellow fever typhus trichinosis and *hookworm infestation* may be accompanied by diffuse myocardosis with parenchymatous hemorrhages (74). *Trypanosomas* may accumulate in the myocardium causing severe disturbances (75). *Chagas disease* is frequently accompanied by A-V block and cardiac lesions are found in one half of the cases.

Actinomyces may present multiple myocardial abscesses which often heal by *calcification*.

Echinococcal disease may be accompanied by cardiac cysts dead (fibrosed or calcified) living cysts which rupture into the cardiac chambers or into the pericardium (76-77). The majority of cysts are in the right heart more often in the right ventricle (77).

Virus myocarditis. Clinical signs and histologic evidence show that myocarditis may follow virus influenza. As the same process may follow upper respiratory infections (137a) or bronchopneumonia (137b) it is open to question whether the virus or the associated germs are responsible for the cardiac lesion. Another type of virus myocarditis is that which follows *poliomyelitis* (138). Widespread coagulation necrosis of the cardiac fibers and infiltration of cells mainly polymorphonuclear leucocytes seems to be typical. Perivascular and interstitial infiltration of microphages has been observed also. Virus myocarditis was described in connection with *epidemic infectious*

hepatitis infectious mononucleosis yellow fever varicella dengue atypical pneumonia rubella measles mumps acute epidemic encephalitis. In general the myocardial lesion is mild and consists mainly of lymphocytic infiltration with only occasional polymorphonuclear plasma cells and fibroblasts.

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

The signs and symptoms are extremely variable because on the one hand they are dependent upon the extension severity and location of the myocardial lesions and on the other they may be obscured by disturbances caused by a generalized infection.

Precordial pain dyspnea rapid pulse and low blood pressure are common.

Cyanosis is frequent. Peripheral signs of congestive failure soon occur.

Abnormalities of cardiac action are frequent and vary with the site of lesion. They may consist of *premature beats paroxysmal tachycardia atrial flutter or heart block*. The combination of multiple premature beats from various foci wandering pacemaker and A-V block (occasionally also S-V block) is typical of myocarditis if coronary occlusion can be excluded.

Cardiac dullness is usually enlarged and obtuseness of the cardiohepatic angle is not unusual.

Auscultation reveals that the *cardiac sounds* become dull soft and prolonged. The first sound frequently is altered more than the second. There may be *splitting of the second sound* because of bundle branch block. *Triple rhythm* and various *murmurs* are frequent. The most common is a *systolic apical murmur* which is frequently soft but may be harsh. A *diastolic rumble* simulating that of mitral stenosis may occur. Differentiation is frequently possible because this murmur (due to relative stenosis of both A-V valves) is usually audible over a wide area of the precordium.

There is an *absolute or relative hypoten-*

sion⁶⁶ which usually is persistent, acute collapse on the contrary is more often of vascular origin

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram

The findings vary according to the more or less widespread type of lesion. They consist of

1) Changes of rate

2) Disturbances of the rhythm due to increased excitability (premature contractions, atrial flutter or fibrillation, atrial or ventricular tachycardia)

3) Disturbances of the rhythm due to altered spreading of the stimulus (prolong P R S A or A V block, BBB, I V block)

4) Abnormality of repolarization (changes of S T and T) and prolongation of the Q T interval. In certain cases the electrical pattern may simulate myocardial infarct.

The following changes may be found in the different diseases

a) *Rheumatic disease* (1st attack) Prolonged I R, changes of P, QRS, S T and T, A V block, premature beat

b) *Diphtheria* Premature beats, A V block, notching and broadening of QRS, low or inverted T, prolonged Q T, raised or depressed S T

c) *Acute tonsillitis* Changes of P, prolonged P R, raised S T, low or inverted T, broadened QRS, prolonged Q T. These changes are usually of short duration

d) *Typhoid* Prolonged P R, A V block, low or inverted T

e) *Scarlet fever* Changes similar to tonsil infections, Occasional A V block

f) *Malaria* Changes of S T and T, occasional inversion of T

g) *Pneumonia* Disturbed S T, small QRS, deformed T₁, inverted T₂ and T₃ occa-

sional isolated changes of T₄. Changes simulating myocardial infarction have been described (3)

h) *Influenza* Notched QRS, abnormal T for 3 to 4 months

i) *Chagas disease* (South American trypanoemia) Complete A V block is present in one third of the cases while nodal bundle branch block was observed in 40 per cent of the patients (139). Ventricular extrasystoles or paroxysmal tachycardia are also unusual. Changes of S T and T, raised anterior wall ischemia have been observed

j) *Syphilis* Intraventricular block, low phase or inverted T, prolonged I R

k) *Hemolytic anemias* Prolonged P R, a large percentage of cases (64)

l) *Leptospirosis* Prolonged P R, a small wave (86)

m) *Myotonia atrophica* Prolonged A V block, notching of QRS, a small deviation (66b)

n) *Friedreich's ataxia* A V block, premature beats, tracing simulating posterior infarction (93). There are not many disturbances but are usually myocardial lesion

o) *Trichinosis* Prolonged duration of P, prolonged P R

p) *Scrub typhus* Deviation of S T, left axis deviation

Phonocardiogram

The most common findings are: 1) Systolic murmur 2) Diastolic murmur 3) Premature beats 4) First sound 5) A diastolic murmur 6) Arrhythmia

There may be irregularities of rhythm, arrhythmia

The term *relative hypotension* is applied to a relative drop in blood pressure. A hypertensive patient having a drop of pressure from 90/100 to 140/90 has a relative hypotension

Electrolytogram

Certain cases having a severe but circumscribed lesion of the left ventricle may present the pattern of *dynamic aneurysm* (page 425) over the border of the left ventricle. Patients with myasthenia gravis may also present this pattern which may disappear after treatment.

X RAY

X ray reveals an enlarged heart frequently with a hot water bottle shape. As the movements of the cardiac margins are weak differential diagnosis from pericardial effusion is not always possible.

Serial observations of the heart size are a helpful guide. It should be noted that cardiac dilatation may persist for a considerable time after the acute stage of myocarditis.

The *Valsalva* and *Mueller tests* may also be of help because the dilated heart shows a greater change in size than either the normal heart or the heart with pericardial effusion. Further data will be given later (page 440).

Echinococcal cysts of the heart may be revealed by the x ray.

COURSE AND VARIETIES

There is an *acute fulminating type* which rapidly causes cyanosis and death. The frequent clinical diagnosis of coronary occlusion then is disproven by post mortem findings (87). This may occur in systemic diseases of the nervous system and of the muscles as well as in cases of isolated myocarditis.

There is a *subacute type* which lasts from a few days to a few weeks and may be accompanied by general signs which simulate infection even when none is present: there is dyspnea, tachycardia, cyanosis, irregular pulse, low blood pressure, leucocytosis and fever (88). It may occur in young or mature individuals and is usually seen in cases of *isolated myocarditis*, sometimes associated with myocardial infarction. The latter may complicate both the clinical and anatomical diagnoses.

The different infections which are associated with myocarditis have various clinical pictures. Therefore the picture of myocarditis lacks unity and is variable.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of acute or subacute myocarditis is usually not difficult if electrocardiographic data are available. These will be of greater value if comparison can be made with tracings preceding the onset of the disease or between tracings recorded at regular intervals. Premature beats originating in multiple foci, A V block, or severe changes of P and T have a definite value in the diagnosis of myocarditis. Bundle branch block or tachycardia not justified by fever are also valuable signs. Etiological diagnosis can be made only by taking all clinical data into account.

Differential diagnosis should be made with the following conditions:

Pericarditis with effusion. The shape and extension of cardiac dullness varies in different positions. Arterial pressure is frequently lower and venous pressure higher in myocarditis than in pericarditis. The pulsations of the veins are more apparent in the former. The ECG may show typical changes (page 445) and there frequently is a friction rub in pericarditis.

Hemorrhagic and vascular collapse. In these conditions the heart usually becomes small, in myocarditis it is larger. Pallor is typical of collapse, livid color or cyanosis, of myocarditis. The 1st sound is still distinct and at times loud in collapse but is dull and muffled in myocarditis. Pulse pressure is reduced less in collapse than in myocarditis.

Mitral stenosis. Some cases of myocarditis may have a diastolic murmur simulating that of mitral stenosis. Usually phonocardiography permits differentiation (page 237).

Myocardial infarction. This may be suspected in acute cases and electrocardiograms assist correct diagnosis (page 416). However an infarction may occur during acute or subacute myocarditis complicating the problem.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is not possible on the basis of the myocardial lesion alone because the signs of general infection should be taken into consideration. The existence of myocarditis makes the prognosis of any infection definitely more serious. Occurrence of A V block is a more serious event than other abnormalities of the cardiac rhythm and may be a cause of death.

TREATMENT

The treatment varies with the different infections and is based on causal therapy. However all drugs should be used with extreme care in order to avoid untoward reactions which may be followed by heart failure or even death. *Digitalis* should be given only if there is evidence of heart failure. The affected myocardium is very excitable and may react with tachycardia, arrhythmia or block to average doses of the drug. On the other hand the degenerated fibers of the cardiac muscle cannot be stimulated by drugs so that the results of digitalis treatment are less apparent than in heart failure without myocarditis. *Gitalin* (7) is the best tolerated digitalis glycoside.

Prolonged oxygen therapy with 40 to 50 per cent oxygen affects favorably the course of rheumatic carditis (101) and may be helpful in other myocardial diseases. Beneficial effects have been reported after intravenous or intramuscular injection of 100 to 200 cc of 10 per cent *glucose solution* (102). These can be repeated but care should be taken not to overload the cardiovascular system.

Prolonged rest is needed. The patient should be kept immobile but turned in bed every half hour in order to avoid hypostasis. Exertion is forbidden as long as the pulse rate is above normal.

Saline infusions and *blood transfusion* are unnecessary and may cause acute or subacute pulmonary edema (page 355). Only moderate doses of fluid should be introduced either by mouth or by vein (see above).

Antibiotics may be extremely helpful if the agent of the disease is known. *Fmetine* is dangerous because of its action on the heart muscle.

Cortisone may be necessary 'especially in rheumatic fever or in collagen diseases'. As it may lead to retention of sodium the customary precautions (salt poor diet, mercurials, high potassium intake etc.) should be followed when giving this drug.

Amyloid Heart (100)

Amyloidosis is an uncommon systemic disease which may cause cardiac failure through involvement of the heart. In this disease a foreign substance *amyloid* is produced and deposited in various tissues and organs including the heart. *Primary amyloidosis* is accompanied by maximal deposition of amyloid in the heart and lungs with formation of *nodular amyloid tumors*. *Secondary amyloidosis* may follow syphilis, tuberculosis or chronic suppurations; it causes less extensive involvement of the heart. The same can be said for the *amyloidosis associated with multiple myeloma* and for the *tumors forming amyloid*.

Amyloidosis may cause different effects on the cardiovascular system by means of several mechanisms:

- By infiltration of the pulmonary vessels causing chronic cor pulmonale.
- By deposition in the coronary vessels.
- By diffuse or localized nodular infiltration in the myocardium with or without degeneration of the cardiac fibers.
- By deposition in the endocardium or pericardium.
- By deposition in the cardiac valves resulting in valvular defects (insufficiency, stenosis or both).
- By multiple involvement of the cardiac tissues.

The signs and symptoms of primary amyloidosis are those of myocardial ischemia and of chronic irreversible cardiac failure. Since the majority of patients are old or middle aged people they may be erroneously diagnosed as arteriosclerotic.

Cutaneous or mucosal lesions accessible to biopsy, enlargement of lymph nodes, muscular, neurological, gastrointestinal or arthritic involvement may help for the diagnosis.

The clinical picture may be that of chronic irreversible heart failure. The *electrocardiogram* presents a wide variety of changes including prolonged P-R and QRS intervals, low voltage and T wave changes. There may be a pattern of myocardial infarct even without infarction or fibrosis.

The clinical course is long and may last many years from the onset of symptoms.

No causal therapy is possible.

Myocardial Fibrosis and Calcification

Myocardial fibrosis is a structural lesion which is frequently associated with other cardiac syndromes and may be completely silent. When severe and extensive this lesion may cause different clinical pictures including that of cardiac failure.

CAUSE

a) It may be the result of a *myocarditis* (page 383) and present small scattered areas of fibrosis. This is frequent after rheumatic fever or other acute diseases.

b) It may be the result of *coronary heart disease* because of systemic narrowing of the arterial vessels or as the result of myocardial infarction.

c) It may be found in *myocardial hypertrophy* and *dilatation*, often predominating in the wall of one chamber.

d) It may be due to *chronic congestion of the coronary venous system* as frequently encountered in those conditions which raise the pressure in the right atrium.

e) *Trauma* may be a cause of localized scarring.

f) *Vitamin B deficiency* causes myocardial fibrosis with edema.

From a practical viewpoint several causes are frequently associated: hypertrophy of the left ventricle and coronary heart disease are frequent in systemic hyper-

tension, hypertrophy of the right ventricle and high pressure of the coronary sinus are present in tricuspid and atrial defects, results of myocarditis, possible coronary lesions, effects of hypertrophy and of recurrent high venous pressure are important factors in rheumatic heart disease with mitral lesions.

LESIONS

Two different types of lesions are apparent at gross examination: focal fibrosis (scarring) and diffuse fibrosis.

Gross scarring may follow trauma or myocardial infarction, the latter being the most common. On external examination it frequently appears as a grayish pink or grayish glistening area from which radial bands of connective tissue spread like spokes of a wheel. In such areas a dense connective tissue is present with a rich supply of blood vessels and sometimes a high amount of blood derived pigment.

Diffuse fibrosis may represent the end result of various mechanisms. Once the process is set up, recognition of the cause may be difficult. The degenerative and necrotizing lesions may be followed by *calcification* but the latter is usually the result of coronary occlusion (110). The infarcted area may be replaced by calcific bone like material (*ossification of the heart*).

The following types can be recognized:

a) *Myocardial fibrosis caused by acute or subacute myocarditis or myocardioidosis*. It is usually scattered and shows small areas of connective tissue surrounded by normal myofibrils. This type may be associated with one of the two others.

b) *Myocardial fibrosis caused by lesion of the coronary arteries*. It is frequently present in coronary heart disease and has been called *arterial cirrhosis* (89). Even if diffuse there is more fibrosis in focal areas where occlusion has taken place. At times, however, the same lesions occur without occlusion because of coronary insufficiency due to structural (coronary narrowing) plus functional (coronary insufficiency) causes. This type of

fibrosis predominates in the ventricles chiefly in the left

c) *Myocardial fibrosis caused by lesion of the coronary veins* (89-90) This type has been called *venous cirrhosis* (89a) There is dilatation of the coronary sinus with insufficiency of its valve and dilatation of the secondary venous collectors. Regressive changes of the venous walls, fibrosis of the venules and formation of connective tissue starting from the veins and diffusing into the myocardium are typical. The importance of this type of fibrosis which predominates in the atria chiefly in the right is under debate (91)

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

There are no specific signs or symptoms of myocardial fibrosis but myocardial fibrosis increases the severity of symptoms caused by other lesions and may be one of the causes of failure. In particular the myocardium of hypertensive patients and of patients with mitral stenosis gradually becomes less efficient because of the development of fibrosis. This is usually caused by lesions of the coronary arteries in the former and of the coronary veins in the latter. Atrial fibrillation is favored by fibrosis of the atrial walls.

Myocardial Edema

Myocardial edema may occur in the following conditions: a) Vitamin B deficiency (page 402) b) Myxedema (page 407) c) Patients with diffuse anasarca caused by congestive failure (page 363) d) Patients with diffuse anasarca caused by nephrosis.

These subjects present evidence of cardiac enlargement upon percussion and x-ray.

While the existence of *myocardial edema* may be suspected (94-95) it is difficult to exclude enlargement of the heart connected with increased residual blood or transudative pericardial effusion. Actually myocardial edema is often associated with either of the above conditions.

Myocardial Tumors

Myocardial tumors may be *primary* or *secondary*. The former are more common in the left heart, the latter in the right. The most frequent primary tumors are *rhabdomyoma* and *sarcoma*. *Carcinoma* is the most common of the secondary tumors. A primary tumor usually consists of a single nodule or mass; a secondary tumor usually consists of multiple nodules (96).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

There may be no signs or symptoms for a long time until the destruction of myocardial tissue causes *heart failure*. If the tumor is superficial it may cause *pericardial effusion*. If it is in contact with the main coronary arteries it may cause *angina pectoris*.

X-ray often reveals an enlarged cardiac silhouette because of pericardial effusion or actual enlargement of the heart. When one section of the ventricular wall fails to show pulsations (so called *rigidity of the wall*) the finding may be of diagnostic importance.

The *electrocardiogram* may show A-V block (involvement of the A-V conduction system by a lesion of the septum) or changes of T and S-T (compression of the coronary vessels). There may be premature beats. A normal ECG, however, is not unusual.

Diagnosis is easier when there is a history of tumors in other organs. However diagnosis during life is seldom made because of the absence of signs and symptoms or because the latter are atypical.

Treatment with radiation may be attempted whenever diagnosis is made.

Aneurysms of the Heart

Aneurysm of the heart is the name given to the dilatation of one part of the ventricular wall. The same name is improperly applied to the extreme and diffuse dilatation of one of the atria.

Ventricular Aneurysm (98-107)

This type of aneurysm is found exclusively in the ventricles, nearly always in the left

ventricle involving either the *anterior* or the *posterior wall*

CAUSE

Cardiac aneurysms are usually caused by myocardial infarction. More rarely they are due to syphilitic (gummata), bacterial (abscess or embolus), rheumatic or isolated myocarditis. They also may follow a congenital (aneurysm of the septum) or a traumatic lesion. A congenital diverticulum of the left ventricle is a rare possibility.

LESIONS

The aneurysm varies in size from that of a walnut to that of a large egg. Rare cases where the pouch was larger than a normal heart have been described. A congenital diverticulum may reach a large size and extend into the abdominal cavity (163).

There is a circumscribed dilatation which may be sharply limited from or gradually fuse with the rest of the ventricles. An internal niche without external bulging is called an aneurysm only by pathologists (98).

The wall of the aneurysm usually consists of thin fibrous tissue with occasional myofibrils. The cavity of the pouch is usually full of thrombi which may be organized and are occasionally calcified. The pericardium over the sac is usually adherent.

Aneurysm due to occlusion of the anterior descending artery is situated at the apex and involves the anterior wall of the left ventricle.

In some cases the aneurysm forms early (even within 48 hours) after a coronary occlusion (page 417). In the e cases instead of a fibrous wall an area of necrosis and hemorrhage is present at the site of the lesion. The most common occurrence is however a slow formation of the sac through scarring leading to dilatation of the infarcted area.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

There are no typical symptoms. Dyspnea, precordial pain and palpitation are common.

Some patients complain of a sharp pain limited to the cardiac apex which is increased by pressure.

Different physical signs have been described in individual cases.

a) *Strong and extensive systolic impulse* simulating the apical thrust (110). This is visible at times in the 3rd or 4th left inter-space above the apical thrust appearing like a separate pulsation (100). There may be a *heaving pulsation of the entire precordium* (3).

b) A *systolic click* due to traction of the sac on one of the papillary muscles (102).

c) A *rough short, systolic murmur* and a *soft high pitched diastolic murmur* above the apex (100, 158).

d) *Different disturbances of the heart rate and rhythm*: paroxysmal atrial or ventricular tachycardia or atrial flutter or fibrillation (101).

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram

It usually presents evidence of coronary heart disease and of previous infarcts. It has been stated that *persistent changes of S T and T* similar to those of myocardial infarct are typical of ventricular aneurysm (103, 156, 157). However they can be found even in cases without aneurysms.

Cardiogram—Phonocardiogram

The tracing of the pulsating area reveals *slow movements* both at the beginning of systole and at the time of rapid filling. The cardiac sounds also may be represented by *very slow vibrations of the sound tracing*. The various murmurs are clearly recorded. The diastolic murmur may present a *presystolic phase* and simulate the murmur of mitral stenosis (157).

X RAY

The x ray reveals a typical aspect of the profile of the left ventricle. The dilated area is *immobile or expands in systole*. The localized bulge is inseparable from the cardiac shadow on rotation of the patient (fig. 211).



FIG. 241 Aneurysm of the left ventricle—latex model in P.A. and right oblique (collection of the American Heart Association)

There may be evidence of adhesions between the heart and the chest wall or the diaphragm. There may be calcification of the sac or of its content.

Aneurysms of the anterior wall are easily visible in the right anterior oblique position. Aneurysms of the posterior wall in the left posterior oblique position may displace the esophagus. An aneurysm of the septum may be revealed by extreme enlargement of the heart to the right.

Röntgen kymography and electrokymography confirm the absence of pulsations or the systolic expansion. The latter is the most common occurrence and the pattern is similar to that of a dynamic aneurysm (page 420).

COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

A ventricular aneurysm may rupture suddenly, causing hemopericardium and cardiac tamponade. This fact is not unusual in aneurysms caused by recent infarctions (page 427) but is extremely rare when the sac is made of fibrous tissue (104-106).

Usually progressive congestive failure is the outcome. Peripheral embolism caused by

mobilization of a small clot from the cavity of the sac is a possible complication.

The prognosis of this lesion is therefore always serious.

DIAGNOSIS

In spite of the possible existence of physical and graphic signs like expansive and apparently strong cardiac pulsation in contrast with low blood pressure, double apical murmur of a bizarre type and slow pulsations of cardiograms, the diagnosis is usually made with the x-ray.

Differential diagnosis should exclude an enlarged right ventricular conus, aortic aneurysm, calcified pericardium, loculated pericardial exudate or cyst, and extracardiac tumors or cysts including tumors of the lung.

Surgical removal of a congenital diverticulum has been successfully effected (163). Removal of acquired aneurysms has been suggested but is hardly advisable if there is diffuse coronary heart disease.

Diffuse Aneurysm

A diffuse aneurysm is due to generalized fibrosis of the atrial wall caused by occlusion

of small coronary vessels of the atria, or by myocarditis usually rheumatic (120) High pressure in the chamber absence of contraction (atrial fibrillation) and weakness of the myocardium (heart failure) are favoring elements The regurgitation of blood under high pressure with each ventricular systole is an important element (120)

Aneurysm of the left atrium may be found in *mitral stenosis* (107) and even more often in *mitral insufficiency* (120) *Aneurysm of the right atrium* has been described in *tricuspid stenosis* and *tricuspid insufficiency* (108)

LESIONS

The wall of the distended atrium consists of fibrous tissue The degree of enlargement is sometimes astounding as the dilated chamber may contain even one to two liters of blood (113) and cause compression of the surrounding organs The rest of the heart is also enlarged but may seem like an appendage of the aneurysm

SIGNS

Pain in the right chest or in the back is not unusual

Different physical signs have been described in aneurysm of the left atrium Among them are a) *A systolic pulsation* of the posterolateral wall of the chest (109) b) *A systolic thrust* in the 4th interspace at the right midclavicular line which may extend as far right as the axilla upward to the 2nd rib and downward to the 6th (110) c) *A systolic pulsation of the jugular veins* transmitted from the left atrium (expanding in systole because of mitral regurgitation) to the right (110) These signs occur only if severe mitral insufficiency is present

When the left atrium is extremely enlarged different phenomena caused by compression of the lungs bronchi veins and nerves may occur Among them are hoarseness difficulty in swallowing faint breath sounds over the right lung and

cough In rare cases erosion of the spine may take place (142)

X RAY

The retrocardiac space is occupied entirely by the shadow of the left atrium This is also visible in the frontal position as a shadow which forms the right border of the heart (fig 246a) Within this is a second lower shadow which is the border of the right atrium (107a 110 112) In cases of severe mitral regurgitation the two shadows may move in opposite directions the left atrial border expanding in systole toward the right the right atrial border moving toward the left (110) (fig 242a)

In rare cases the shadow of the left atrium creates a second image at the outside of the left cardiac border because of migration toward the left rather than toward the right (111)

In cases of *right atrial aneurysm* the shadow of the right atrium nearly reaches the right chest wall (fig 242b)

Electrokymography of the dilated atrium reveals a systolic distention of the chamber There is a plateau like curve which reproduces a tracing of intraventricular pressure (page 219 fig 121) This is typical of mitral (or tricuspid) insufficiency but the systolic wave is much higher than in cases of valvular defect without aneurysm

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

An atrial aneurysm is not likely to rupture However it may increase the symptoms of congestive failure and add new ones because of compression of the mediastinal organs Should it attain an enormous size it would cause a mechanical obstacle which is comparable to that of a large mediastinal tumor

Atrial thrombosis is frequently present in cases of atrial aneurysm and may be the cause of dangerous embolisms Regression of an atrial aneurysm to an average size and in exceptional cases return of the heart to normal sinus rhythm may occur such phenomena have been observed by the author

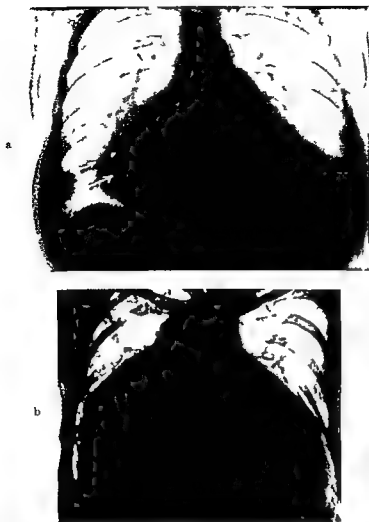


FIG. 242 a) *fluorogram of the left atrium in a case of mitral stenosis. The two arrows indicate the borders of the left (outward) and right (inward) atrium respectively.* b) *fluorogram of the right atrium in a case of tricuspid stenosis.* (Courtesy of Dr. Tausig and the C. V. Mosby Co.)

The Last Manifestations of Cardiac Activity and Cardiac Death

Ventricular Anarchy—The Chaotic Heart (115)

The electrocardiogram presents a) atrial fibrillation and extreme irregularity of the ventricular complexes b) low voltage, multiple notching and irregular shape of the ventricular complexes c) multiple ventricular premature contractions arising from different foci episode of ventricular tachy-

cardia. There frequently is congestive failure, triple rhythm and murmurs are constant. This syndrome has a bad prognosis and may precede ventricular fibrillation by only a few days. Digitalis frequently increases the severity of the cardiac signs.

Ventricular or Total Standstill

If for any reason the S-A node fails to initiate the cardiac impulse or if a sudden block stops the progress of the stimulus, *standstill* occurs. This includes the whole

heart in the first instance but only the ventricles in the second

Ordinarily the A V node (or a lower point in the bundle of His or his branches) takes over the pacemaking function within a short time (nodal or idioventricular rhythm). If this fails to occur *ventricular escapes* usually follow. However the pause may be of such duration as to cause *dizziness* or *syncope*. If the automatic function of the specific tissue of the heart is poor there may be no automatic contractions of the ventricles (escapes) and death ensues.

The most common cause of cardiac or ventricular standstill is stimulation of the vagus which may be the result of carotid sinus pressure or other reflex disturbances.

The seizures resulting from such a reflex mechanism are usually abolished by *atropine* or *ephedrine*.

TREATMENT

Treatment of the standstill is based on the use of either *epinephrine plus procaine* or *barium chloride* by intracardiac injection. *Resuscitation of the heart* may also be obtained by *manual percussion* of the precordium. If these maneuvers are not successful artificial respiration *opening of the chest* (through a transverse incision in the 3rd or 4th left interspace by sectioning the costal cartilages) and *manual massage* are indicated. A simpler procedure consists of the application of two needle electrodes to the chest and use of an *artificial pacemaker* (164).

Ventricular Flutter and Fibrillation

An abnormal mechanism of rapid excitation similar to that more frequently observed in the atria may develop in the ventricles. The latter occurrence is far more dangerous than the former and frequently results in death.

CAUSE AND MECHANISM

Animal experimentation demonstrates that ventricular flutter and fibrillation may be induced by certain drugs (digitals in

toxic doses chloroform cyclopropane or ether plus epinephrine), ligation of the coronary arteries (116), injection of irritant substances into the myocardium or electric faradization of the heart. *Oxygen deficiency* seems to be the cause of ventricular fibrillation after coronary ligation (117).

Both clinical and experimental evidence indicate that the coronary circulation is the chief element to be considered in ventricular fibrillation (118). Both coronary lesions and functional disturbances causing coronary insufficiency may be effective and reflex elements may be involved.

Ventricular flutter or fibrillation may follow coronary occlusion, an attack of rapid heart beat (atrial flutter, atrial or ventricular tachycardia, ventricular anarchy) or ventricular standstill.

Rapid dilution of the blood like that occurring in *drowning in fresh water* is often followed by ventricular fibrillation. This does not occur in sea water drowning where hemoconcentration occurs (160).

SIGNS

The patient suddenly *faints* and his face shows a *livid color*. The arterial pulse and every other cardiac manifestation including the apical impulse and the undulations of the jugular veins disappear. A faint *buzzing murmur* has been described in ventricular flutter while *no sound can be heard* in fibrillation.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM

Large regular monophasic ventricular waves follow each other at a rate of 200 to 300 per minute in ventricular flutter. Rapid irregular, bizarre small complexes are typical of ventricular fibrillation.

DIAGNOSIS

Absence of any cardiac manifestation is typical of both ventricular standstill and fibrillation. The former is usually of abrupt onset and end; the latter is usually preceded and followed by ventricular premature beats.

COURSE

Ventricular flutter is not always fatal and some patients may survive repeated attacks on the other hand ventricular fibrillation is nearly always fatal recovery is possible (146) but extremely rare Respiration may continue for some time after the beginning of an attack of fibrillation

TREATMENT

Artificial respiration or inhalation with 100 per cent oxygen should be started immediately Intracardiac epinephrine with procaine is sometimes able to reactivate the heart but only if the injection is made after the end of any electric manifestation at an early stage it might only accentuate the fibrillation

As already said cyclopropane or ether anesthesia and epinephrine may cause ventricular fibrillation Various drugs may prevent the occurrence of this lethal disturbance One single dose of procaine (30-70 mg) or pronestyl (26) injected intravenously after the onset of anesthesia has a favorable effect (147) 1262 F has a similar action (148) Atabrine (quinacrine) and papaverine seem to have also similar effects (149) Procaine as well as 1262 F has a direct action on the myocardium the other drugs cause coronary vasodilation

Defibrillation of the ventricles may be obtained in the following way (114)

a) Injection of 2 cc of 5 per cent procaine into the right ventricle

b) Manual cardiac massage after opening of the chest

c) Application of two large electrodes to the heart and sending an alternating current of 15 ampères through the organ

This permits transformation of fibrillation into standstill Then the procedures indicated for this condition may be used for the resuscitation of the heart (page 396)

Cardiac Death and Clinical Death

Four types of cardiac death have been recognized (3)

1) There is a complete A I block followed

by ventricular standstill The atria continue to contract for some time

2) There is a total standstill of the heart

3) There is ventricular fibrillation followed by total standstill

4) There is a slow or agonal death The ventricular rate gradually becomes slower and is interrupted by premature beats The ventricular complexes become more and more deformed The origin of the stimulus may be in the node or in one of the ventricles S T is displaced from the basal line T is inverted Total standstill finally occurs

Clinical death is not always accompanied by cardiac death Electrical manifestations of the heart have been recorded for 20 to 30 minutes after the suspension of respiration

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 DRY TH J Manual of Cardiology Philadelphia Saunders 1943
- 2 a) HOFF H E VAHLUM L H AND KISCH B Am J Physiol 1941 131 687 693 and 700
- b) HOFF H E In Houell's Textbook of Physiology Philadelphia Saunderson 1946
- 3 a) PAZZANESE D Modificações de Forma do Electrocardiograma São Paulo Gráfica da Prefeitura 1947
- b) STROUD M W AND FEIL H H Am Heart J 1948 35 910
- 4 WILSON F N AND CO WORKERS Am Heart J 1934 9 447 and 10 46
- 5 POTAIN P C E Ctr A oc Fr Avanc Sc 1880 I 11 201
- 6 LEISADA A A Cardiologia Bologna Capelli 1938
- 7 LAURENT AND PEZZI Les Rythmes de Galop Paris Doin 1926
- 8 BATTRO A BRAUN MENENDEZ E AND ORIAS O Rev Arg Card 1934 1 117
- Al o J de Phys Path Gen 1935 33 51
- 9 a) MOZER J J AND DUCHOVAL P Arch Mal Coeur 1939 23 65 and 24
- b) ROLLIER D AND VAN BOGAERT A Arch Mal Coeur 1934 27 359 541 and 588
- 10 a) WOLPERTH C C AND MARGOLIES A Am Heart J 1933 8 41
- b) CALO A Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1937 21 427
- 11 CARLYLE H F Canad M A J 1941 44 260

- 12 CHINI V I *Alternanza del Cuore* Roma Ediz Accad d Italia 1935 6 v 14
- 13 VOLHARD F Muench med Woch 1905 55 590
- 14 WENCKEBACH K F AND WINTERBERG H *Die unregelmäßige Herztätigkeit* Leipzig Engelmann 1927
- 15 MACKENZIE J Brit Med J 1908 1 23 Also Heart 1911 2 273
- 16 GALLAVARDIN L AND CRAVIER I *Prov Méd* 1913 24 421
- 17 GALLAVARDIN L AND CRAVIER I *Ann Med* 1912 119 1144 and 1151
- 18 LIAN C *Rev Arg Med* 1911 19 (1) 777
- 19 GALLI I Muench med Woch 1906 55 1956
- 20 SCHERF D AND ZDANSKY I Fortsch Geb Roentgen 1929 40 60
- 21 BATTRO A AND QUIROD N *Rev Arg Card* 1936 3 267
- 22 a) FOUMAILLOUX M *Le Louis Alternant* Paris Ma on 1930
b) GRAVIER L *L'Alternance du Coeur* Paris Baillière 1914
- 23 CONDORELLI I Arch Int Chn Med 1929 8 475
- 24 MAHAIR I *Les Maladies Organiques du Faisceau de His* Tavana Paris Ma on 1931
- 25 a) CHINI V *Atti Acc d Italia* 1935 6 v 14
b) VAQUEZ H AND DONZELOT I *Les Troubles du Pythme Cardiaque* Paris Baillière 1926
- 26 WILSON F N *Form of the Electrocardiogram In Strouss's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 27 MASTER A M AND LOWENBERG Am Heart J 1940 20 186
- 28 LUISADA A A *Rev Arg Cardiol* 1942 9 109
- 29 CRAYBELL A AND SPRAGUE H B Am J Med Sci 1933 185 395
- 30 PARDEE H F B *Clinical Aspects of the Electrocardiogram* New York Hoeber 1933
- 31 BENCHIMOL A B *Bloqueo de Falso em Clinica* Rio de Janeiro The 1 1943
- 32 a) BAGNAREL G *Cuore e Circ* 1934 18 65
b) KATSH B AND CRISHMAN A *Exper Med Surg* 1944 2 277
c) GONZALES SABATHIE I GASPARY F V AND ROJAS R A *Rev Arg Card* 1944 11 227
- 33 COMBAT W J AND HAMILTON J C M Am Heart J 1938 55 25f
- 34 WILSON F N JOHNSTON F D BARKER P S AND MACLEOD G Am Heart J 1934 9 447 459 and 479
- 35 WILSON F N HILL I G W AND JOHNSTON F D Am Heart J 1935 10 596 and 903
- 36 WILSON F N J Mt Sinai Ho p 1942 8 1110
- 37 IERERA G H LEVINE S A AND LELANDER H Brit Heart J 1942 4 35
- 38 LIAN C AND GOLBLIN V Arch Mal Coeur 1937 30 787
- 39 WOLFERTH C C AND MARGOLIES A Am Heart J 1935 10 425
- 40 BATTRO A BRAUN MENENDEZ E AND ORIAS O *Rev Arg Card* 1936 3 325
- 41 BATTRO A BRAUN MENENDEZ E AND ORIAS O Arch Mal Coeur 1938 31 250
- 42 BRAUN MENENDEZ E AND SOLARI J A Arch Int Med 1939 69 830
- 43 WOLFF L PARKINSON J AND WHITE I D Am Heart J 1930 5 685
- 44 LEVINE S A AND BEESON P B Am Heart J 1941 22 401
- 45 HOLZMAN M AND SCHERF D Zeit Klin Med 1932 121 404
- 46 WOLFERTH C C AND WOOD F C Am Heart J 1933 8 297
- 47 KENT A F S J Physiol 1914 48 22 and 57
- 48 PALADINO H *Movim Med Chir* 1877
- 49 ROSENBAUM F F HECHT H H WILSON F N AND JOHNSTON F D Am Heart J 1945 29 251
- 50 HUNTER A LAFF C AND PARMON J Brit Heart 1940 2 107
- 51 a) WOOD F C WOLFERTH C C AND CECHELIER G D Am Heart J 1943 25 454
b) SEGERS M AND CO WORKERS *Acta Cardiol* 1947 2 21
c) LEVINE H N L Heart A oc 1949
- 52 WHITE I D *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1944
- 53 SCHERF D AND SHOOKOFF C Zeit exp Med 1926 49 309
- 54 ROTHBERGER C J AND SCHERF D Zeit exp Med 1927 63 799
- 55 SCHERF D AND BOYD I F *Clinical Electrocardiography* St Louis Mo by 1940
- 56 a) LAFFR S AND RUBINO A Clin Med Ital (Milan) 1936 67 365
b) LUISADA A A J Ital Clin Med 1940 25 1146
- 57 RUBINO A Arch Sci Med (Turin) 1937 63 201 Also Clin Med Ital (Milan) 1936 67 168

- 58 SCHERF D AND SIEDECK H Zeit Klin Med 1934 127 77
- 59 GERAUDEL E Le Mécanisme du Coeur et ses Anomalies Paris Masson 1928 410
Pres Méd 1935 13 79
- 60 DILLON F Arch Card Heart 1935 17 15
- 61 DOMINGUEZ C AND BIZZIZERO R C Arch Mal Coeur 1937 30 870
- 62 a) FRENCH A J AND WELLER C V Am J Path 1942 11 109
b) WELLS A H AND SAX S G Am Heart J 1945 30 599
- 63 HELWIG F C AND SCHMIDT E C H Science 1945 102 31
- 64 a) KLINEFELTER H F Am J Med Sci 1942 203 34
b) WINOR T AND BURCH G E Am Heart J 1945 29 685
- 65 VON BOWSDORFF B Acta Med Scand 1945 100 352
- 66 a) FRANCESCHETTI A AND MACH R S Helvet Med Acta 1944 11 887
b) LYONS W Brit Heart J 1944 6 41
- 67 PIANESE Quoted by Aresu in Tratt Ital Med Int Milan S L L 1931
- 68 LETULLE AND NATAL LARRIER Anatomie Pathologique Paris Masson
- 69 BRIN L AND GIROUX L Le Syphilis du Coeur et de l'Aorte Paris Doin 1924
- 70 TEDESCHI C Giorn Batt Imm (Turin) 1929 4 1007
- 71 BETTONI I Cuore e Circ 1929 13 710
- 72 KUEHLB The Disease of the Heart in Internal Medicine by Mohr and Stachelin
- 73 DIONISI A Anatomia Patologica della Malattia Rome Ferri 1927
- 74 SEGRE R Le Malattie del Miocardio Bologna Cappelli 1932
- 75 CHAGAS C Arch Mal Coeur 1928 10 641
- 76 DÉVÉ F Ctr Soc Biol 1917 80 559
- 77 PETERS J H DEXTER I AND WALSH A Am Heart J 1945 29 143
- 78 a) BLICHNER W C AND SAPHIR O Arch Int Med 1932 84 336
b) DE NAVAZQUEZ S J Path & Bact 1939 11 33
- 79 a) RICH A R AND GREORY J L Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1943 11 65
b) Case Record 30 441 of Mass Gen Hosp New England J Med 1944 231 628
- 80 a) FIEDLER Fechr d Stadtkrankenhäuser Dresden Friedrich taht 1899 2
quoted from H SIKL
b) SIKL H Fechr Path 1936 49 283
- 81 SAPHIR O Arch Path 1941 32 1000 and 1942 33 88 Am Heart J 1942 24 107
- 82 TEDESCHI A Virchow's Arch 189 128 185
- 83 STAMER A Beitr path Anat 190 42 310
- 84 WEARN J T Bull New York Acad Med 1941 17 754
- 85 MYERS V C Mo Conc Cardiovasc Dis 1941 13 6
- 86 WENDKO M H AND NOLL J Am Heart J 1944 27 414
- 87 FREUDLICH J Zeit Klin Med 1935 133 768
- 88 GAMMA C Min Med (Turin) 1938 (pt 2) 29 5
- 89 a) BANTI G Ziegler's Beitr 1895 11 5
b) VANTOLI O Lo Sperim (Florence) 1923 455
- 90 CONDORELLI L Verh Deut Ges Kreislauf 1931 4th Meeting
- 91 FERRARI E Cuore e Circ 1940 24 381
- 92 WASSER J La Myocardie Paris Doin 1925
- 93 LYONS W AND WRIGHT G Brit Heart J 1947 4 41
- 94 DOLMER F Soc Méd Hop 1936 52 819
- 95 LANGERIN L Arch Mal Coeur 1937 30 409
- 96 RAVID J M AND SACHS J Am Heart J 1943 26 385
- 97 a) SCHLOMKA G AND SCHMITZ G Zeit Kreislauf 1929 30 41
b) BRIGHT E F AND BECK C H Am Heart J 1935 10 203
- 98 STERNBERG M Das chronische partielle He aneurysma Leipzig and Vienna 1914
- 99 WILSON F N AND COWORKER Am Heart J 1944 27 19
- 100 SCHERF D AND ERLBACHER O Med Klin 1934 11 51
- 101 TARAY L M AND SZILAGYI N Am J Med 1945 5 379
- 102 LE POY G V AND ROBERTS R C Am Heart J 1941 21 114
- 103 NORDENFELT O Acta Med Scand 1939 102 101
- 104 FRIEDMAN S AND WHITE P D Ann Int Med 1944 21 5
- 105 JETTER W W AND WHITE P D Ann Int Med 1944 21 83
- 106 FISHER R I Am Heart J 1945 30 133
- 107 a) LUTENBACHER R Arch Mal Coeur 1917 10 145
b) LUTENBACHER R AND MAHAIM I Ann Méd 1925 23 79
- 108 TALIG B L Am Heart J 1921 11 744
- 109 CAGLIO I Aparato Circulatorio Buenos Aires El Ateneo 1944
- 110 DRESER W Clinical Cardiology New York Hoeber 1947

- 111 ROUTIER D AND HETU DE BALSAC R Am J Roentgenol 1940 44 834
- 112 a) ROESLER H *Clinical Roentgenology of the Cardiovascular System* Springfield Thomas 1943
- b) SCHWEDL J B *Clinical Roentgenology of the Heart* New York Hoeber 1946
- 113 a) GOEDEL A Wien klin Woch 1929 42 477
- b) BLAND E F BALBON G M AND WHITE P D J A M A 1931 96 840
- 114 HOYVE A AND WALFORD N T Journ Pediat 1934 5 647
- 115 a) PIZZI C Arch Mal Coeur 1925 18 753
- b) ORSI A AND VILLA L Arch Mal Coeur 1928 21 353
- 116 SMITH F M Arch Int Med 1918 22 8 and 1923 32 497
- 117 RENNIK W H J Chn Investigation 1925 2 93 117 and 125
- 118 HARRISON T R *Failure of the Circulation* Baltimore The Williams and Wilkins Co 1930
- 119 a) DECHERD G M RUSKIN A AND BRINDLEY P Am Heart J 1946 31 352
- b) BLACKFORD L M Am Int Med 1947 27 1036
- c) EDELSTEIN J M Am Heart J 1946 31 498
- 120 EVANS W Brit Heart J 1948 10 92
- 121 BOUILLAUD *Traité Clin Mal Coeur* Paris 1835
- 122 ILIADADA A A AND MAGRI G Am Heart J 1952 44 545
- 123 ILIADADA A A AND ROITMAN M Arch Inst Card de Mexico 1948 17 345
- 124 FLICKS G Wien med Woch 1949 99 535
- 125 ILIADADA A A ROMANO F J AND TORRE J M Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1948 69 23
- 126 WOLPERTH C C *Cyclopedia of Medicine* Philadelphia Davis 1943 vol III
- 127 ILIADADA A A MENDOZA F AND ALI MURUG M Brit Heart J 1949 11 41
- 128 WILSON F N AND CO WORKERS Am Heart J 1944 27 19
- 129 GOLDBERGER E *Unipolar Lead Electrocardiography* 2nd Edn Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1950
- 130 SODI IALLARES D AND CO WORKERS Am Heart J 1947 34 819
- 131 HELLERSTEIN H H AND SANTIAGO STEVENSON D Circ 1950 1 93
- 132 RASMUSSEN I T AND MOE T Brit Heart J 1949 10 141
- 133 KISS A Wien Zeit inn Med 1947 39
- 134 BEAUDET S C AND BOERMAN C Rev Med de Liège 1947 2/23 621
- 135 a) WEISS M AND CO WORKERS Arch Int Med 1943 71 740
- b) BANKS H M New England J Med 1941 225 443
- 136 STEINLIN J Schweiz med Woch 1947 77 72
- 137 a) GORE I AND SAPHIR O Am Heart J 1947 34 831
- b) SAPHIR O AND ANHROMIN G D Am Int Med 1948 33 936
- c) GORE I AND SAPHIR O Am Heart J 1948 36 390
- 138 a) SAPHIR O AND WILE S A Am J M Sci 1942 203 781
- b) GEFTER W I AND CO WORKERS Am Heart J 1947 33 228
- c) LUDDEN T E AND FORDWARD J E Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1948 33 379
- 139 a) DIAS F LARANJA F M AND NOBREGA G *Doença de Chagas* Rio de Janeiro Imprensa Nacional 1946 Also Brasil Medico 1948 42 N 8-9
- b) AZEVEDO PONDÉ A A *Doença de Chagas na Bahia* Bahia Imprensa Vitoria 1947
- 140 COSTERO I AND DE BUEN S Arch Inst Card de Mexico 1947 17 605
- 141 a) DEZA D AND ROJAS R Proc II Interamer Cong Cardiol 1946 3 1478
- b) SPRAGLE H B Am Heart J 1946 31 426
- 142 ASHWORTH H AND JONES A M Brit Heart J 1946 8 207
- 143 OEHVELL R F Acta Med Scand 1944 Suppl 152
- 144 REED J C AND CO WORKERS III Interamerican Congress Chicago 1948
- 145 VAN BOGAERT A AND VAN GANABECK A Cardiol 1946-47 2 255
- 146 ZIMMAGL W T AND FLITON F T Am Heart J 1946 31 117
- 147 BERNSTEIN C Anesth 1946 7 113
- 148 BOVET D AND CO WORKERS Ctr Soc Biol 1939 130 29
- 149 MELVILLE K I J Pharmacol & Exper Therap 1946 87 340 Also Rev Canad Biol 1948 7 236
- 150 SWANN H G AND CO WORKERS Texas Rep Biol & Med 1947 5 423
- 151 GRAYBIEL A AND WHITE I D *Electro*

- cardiography in Practice* 2nd Edn Philadelphia W B Saunders Co 1946
- 157 IYAN C AND WELTY J J Arch Int Card Mexico 1949 19 443
- 158 CONTRO S AND LLISADA A A J Mt Sinai Ho p 1950 29 70
- 154 LLISADA A A AND FLEISCHNER F G Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1947 66 436
- 155 SAMET P MEDNICK M AND SCHAEDEL J B Am Heart J 1950 39 841
- 156 GOLDBERGER E AND SCHWARTZ S I Am J Med 1949 4 243
- 157 FORD R V AND LEVINE H D Am Heart Assoc Meet 1949
- 158 SCHERP D AND BROOKS A M Am J Med Sci 1949 218 389
- 159 WEHRMANN F Schweiz med Woch 1950 80 715
- 160 a) WESSLER S AND FREEDBERG A S Arch Int Med 1948 82 1
b) DARLIN D C AND EDWARDS J E Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1949 34 89
c) JONES H S AND FRAZIER D H Arch Path 1950 50 266
- 161 FRANK H Zeit Klin Med 1950 147 131
- 162 COAKLEY J H Brit Heart J 1951 13 149
- 163 POTTIS W J Soc Int Med Chicago 1953 19 No 14
- 164 ZOLL P M New Eng J Med 1952 247 788

Metabolic, Vitamin, Endocrine, and Traumatic Heart Diseases

Metabolic Disturbances

NON GLIUKOSE DISEASE (1)

This is a rare disease due to faulty gly cogen metabolism. Enlargement of the heart is chiefly due to deposition of gly cogen in small cavities between the cardiac fibers. A similar involvement of other organs especially the liver is present. Death occurs early usually in the first months of life but occasionally the age of 4 or 5 is reached.

FATTY HEART

Fatty degeneration of some parts of the heart muscle is present not only in acute and subacute myocarditis but also in certain anemias (mainly pernicious anemia). The striped appearance of the myocardium is the cause of the terms *tiger* and *tiger lily* heart.

Fatty infiltration of the myocardium chiefly involving the right ventricle is common in middle aged or old people. Fatty infiltration is then associated with *deposition of fat around the heart* mainly around the root of the great vessels along the coronary arteries and in the sulcus between the ventricles and the atria (fig 243). As a rule there is a close relation ship between deposition of fat on the heart and in other parts of the body. It is a sign of general obesity.

It is sometimes difficult to know whether the symptoms of these patients are due to the increased weight of the body, the high level of the diaphragm or the mechanical load carried by the heart. Whenever the patients have hypertension emphysema of the lungs or both additional causes of strain are present.

The most important element in the treatment of obesity is *decrease in food intake*. A daily diet of 1000 to 1500 calories usually results in a steady loss of weight (4 to 8 lbs per month) without causing hunger weakness or dizziness (diet III). *Ben edrine sulfate* may depress the appetite if taken 15 minutes before meals. *Thyroid extract* is useful in certain cases.

Vitamin Deficiencies

THIAMINE DEFICIENCY

Thiamine deficiency causes different clinical pictures involving both the cardio vascular and the nervous systems. The pictures are different in the oriental and the occidental countries.

Oriental Thiamine Deficiency (*Shoshin* or *Beri Beri*) (3 + 5)

This clinical picture occurs in Japanese or Javanese people subsisting on a main diet of polished rice. It appears suddenly with *precordial oppression* and *pain dyspnea cyanosis* and *distention of the veins*. The pulse is rapid and full the liver is large. The heart is *tremendously dilated* and *presents several murmurs both systolic and diastolic* caused by the enlargement of the chambers and the valvular openings.

There frequently is a *venous murmur* over the right jugular vein (*bruit du diable*). The arterial pulse pressure is high venous pressure reaches 20 to 40 cm of water.

The ECG shows only atypical changes.

A ray reveals a *large heart with tremendous dilatation of the pulmonary artery and its branches*. Death frequently occurs within a few hours.

At autopsy the heart is flabby and



FIG. 243. Distribution of fat within and around the heart (fat indicated by black areas). A, normal; B, heart in obesity; C, fatty degeneration of the heart.

dilated, especially the right chambers, and the liver is very large. Microscopic examination reveals diffuse but not severe lesions of the myocardium.

The clinical picture was interpreted as caused by a primary abnormal dilatation of the small vessels with increased venous return and secondary dilatation of the heart.

Occidental Thiamine Deficiency (6, 7)

This picture was mainly described in the large cities of the United States. The following groups of people are usually affected: alcohol addicts, patients with chronic diseases, poor people with improper diet, and patients with diseases of the gastrointestinal tract. Some of them have neurological signs of thiamine deficiency, some have pellagra. To these should be added many patients with heart failure or hypertension who have been kept for a long time on improper diet.

The syndrome usually starts with rapid pulse but this may be followed by a slow pulse. There is cardiac dilatation, triple rhythm, systolic murmur over the apex or base, dyspnea, congestion of the lungs and of the pulmonary bases, venous distention, and diffuse peripheral edema.

The ECG may show inverted T, slight aberration and low voltage of the ventricular complexes, and prolongation of QT. Premature beats and atrial tachycardia have been described but the persistence of sinus rhythm is usual and is important for diagnosis.

On fluoroscopy an enlarged cardiac shadow and decreased amplitude of contraction can be observed. The latter may be caused at least in part by pericardial effusion. A ray reveals severe enlargement of the right heart and often of the pulmonary knob; the left heart remains normal and the pulmonary fields are free from congestion.

Low vital capacity, high venous pressure, normal arterial pressure, decreased circulation time, and increased blood volume and cardiac output are typical of the syndrome.

At autopsy dilatation and at times hypertrophy of the heart are present; the myocardium reveals intracellular and intercellular edema and occasional scattered areas of nervous petechial hemorrhages have been observed. Diffuse myocardial fibrosis is frequently present.

The cardiovascular disturbances of accidental thiamine deficiency may cause different clinical pictures with gradual or sudden onset. Fever, vascular collapse, or bronchopneumonia occasionally may be observed.

The exact mechanism of this syndrome is still debated. On the one hand the components of the vitamin B complex have a direct influence on the metabolism of carbohydrates (page 32); on the other the edema is partly the result of low blood proteins favored by malnutrition. Therefore peripheral edema may be raised both by this mechanism and by heart failure. Whether the edema of the cardiac muscle

has the same colloid-osmotic mechanism or is a primary factor, is not known in any case it may be a contributory factor to heart failure. The possibility of a neurogenic disturbance of the cardiac functions because of sympathetic and vagal lesions has been discussed (7c). Also it has been pointed out that thiamin deficient animals have an increased epinephrine level in the blood and excessive amounts of epinephrine or epinephrine like substances in the myocardium (47). As adrenal cortex is often found hypertrophied it has been suggested that the adreno-sympathetic system is somehow involved and causes many of the typical signs and lesions (48).

The increased speed of circulation first observed in oriental beri beri (a) is frequently present also in occidental thiamine deficiency and may be one of the causes of failure by decreasing the peripheral utilization of oxygen. It resembles the phenomena observed in thyrotoxicosis. Cardiac failure may be present with normal or even increased cardiac output though this is reduced in comparison with figures obtained when no failure was present (46).

The diagnosis may not be easy especially in patients with valvular lesions who also have thiamine deficiency. The diagnosis is based on the following data (7b): insufficient evidence of other etiology, signs of neuritis or pellagra, enlarged heart with sinus rhythm, dependent edema, high venous pressure, recovery with decreased size of the heart or autopsy consistent with beri beri heart disease.

Thiamine treatment may not cause a prompt improvement because the duration and severity of the deficiency may lead to irreversibility of the process (7c). It may be followed by inversion of the T wave in the electrocardiogram.

Treatment is based on intramuscular or intravenous injections of vitamin B₁ or better still of vitamin B complex (68). High protein diet is indicated.

PELLAGRA (8)

The heart is not enlarged in pellagra and may be small. *Peripheral edema* is explained by the low protein content of the plasma. The electrocardiogram may show low or inverted T waves and depressed ST. *The Q-T interval is prolonged*. These changes are probably of metabolic origin, niacin being essential to the metabolism of carbohydrates (page 32) and disappear promptly after administration of niacin in daily oral doses of 300 to 500 mg.

SCURVY

Dilatation of the right heart has been described in severe cases of scurvy. It is still to be demonstrated whether it is actually caused by vitamin C deficiency or by associated causes including deficiency of thiamine.

RICKETS

Dilatation of the heart has been described in children with vitamin D deficiency. It is possible that in many cases the thoracic deformity and not the vitamin D deficiency caused the observed changes (page 510). Moreover associated vitamin deficiencies may be involved.

MALNUTRITION

Malnutrition and starvation may be followed by severe cardiovascular disturbances. Prolonged starvation causes reduction of size and decreased functional capacity of the heart (62). Both systolic and diastolic pressures are lower, cardiac output and stroke volume are reduced, venous pressure is also low (62). The heart rate may be as low as 30 per minute.

The electrocardiogram presents a prolonged Q-T interval, large U waves, abnormal T waves and occasionally a depression of ST (63). Prolonged protein and carbohydrate starvation and electrolyte imbalance seem to be responsible for the changes even without vitamin deficiency.

Tachycardia and dyspnea may occur between the 12th and the 20th weeks of rehabilitation

Endocrine Disturbances

HYPERTHYROIDISM

The most typical picture is encountered in thyrotoxicosis

Signs and Symptoms

The patients have several symptoms caused by the thyroid condition which may simulate organic heart disease. Dizziness and visual disturbances are common. *Palpitation*, *precordial tightness* or pain and various sensations caused by irregular heart beat are frequent. Exertion may be followed by *dyspnea* in more advanced cases where a *sensation of fullness in the upper right abdominal quadrant* and *precordial pain* may also exist.

The *radial pulse is rapid* frequently above 120 and at times it may reach 200 (9). *Irregular pulse* may be found because of *premature beats* or *atrial fibrillation*. The latter is more common in old age and in rheumatic heart disease.

Peripheral signs simulating aortic regurgitation may be present. They include *pistol shot sound*, *Corrigan's pulse* and the *double murmur of Duroziez* (10a) (page 240). There may be a loud murmur over the right jugular vein (*bruit du diable*) and over the 2nd right interspace (10b).

The apex impulse is forceful and rapid. There may be the impression of an *apical thrill*. The heart frequently seems enlarged and often presents acute dilatation after exertion. There may be dulness of the manubrium.

Auscultation reveals loud heart sounds and frequently *murmurs* a *soft apical* and

a *harsher pulmonary systolic murmur*. There may be a *triple rhythm* or a *diastolic rumble* simulating that of mitral stenosis.

High sensitivity to adrenalin and poor response to vagus stimulation are typical.

Lesions

Serous inflammation of the myocardium, myocardial fibrosis or fibroblastic myocarditis have been described (49). It is likely that these are concomitant lesions.

Electrocardiogram

The ECG usually reveals *sinus tachycardia* but may show *atrial flutter tachycardia* or *fibrillation* or *premature beats*. Prolongation of P-R is rare (12). High T wave in all leads which was thought common (13) is present only in some cases (14, 15). Intraventricular block is not unusual.

Phonocardiogram

In most cases the first heart sound is of large amplitude. The frequent report of murmurs may not be confirmed by the tracing. The most common finding seems to be a *low grade systolic murmur* over the mid precordium (64).

Circulatory Dynamics

Blood pressure is normal or high with increased pulse pressure. *Cardiac output*, *blood volume* and *speed of circulation* are typically increased and are proportional to the basal metabolic rate (16-19). Outputs of 6 to 12 liters per minute are frequent and are made possible by the severe increase of heart rate while venous pressure is usually normal. Circulation time is usually below 10 seconds.

X-Ray

The heart is less enlarged than clinical data would indicate (19, 20). It has a globular shape and shows enlargement of the pulmonary artery. The aortic arch is high but not large. The left atrium is

Hyperthyroidism is not a cause of cardiac enlargement *per se*. It is likely that cases with enlarged heart also have other cardiac diseases. However, the rapid heart action increases cardiac strain in valvular lesions or coronary heart disease.

normal the superior vena cava may be large

Mechanism

Hyperthyroidism causes no specific lesion of the myocardium but undoubtedly affects the functions of both the heart and the peripheral vessels. It has been shown that thyroxin deeply affects the chemical equilibrium of the cardiac fibers in experimental animals (21). The glycogen and phospho-creatine metabolisms are so disturbed that the cardiac fibers present an actual loss of creatine potassium and phosphates (21). The increased oxidation and circulation speed and the greater excitability of the sympathetic system cause increased cardiac work and favor disturbances of the heart rate and rhythm. Further it has been shown that the sympathetic production of the heart itself is increased under the influence of the thyroid hormone (48).

It has been suggested that the similarity between the clinical picture of the thyroid heart and that of beri beri heart is due to a vitamin deficiency in the former on account of increased requirement in the presence of a normal or inadequate supply (50).

In conclusion the hearts of these patients perform increased work under abnormal physico-chemical and hemodynamic conditions.

Varieties—Diagnosis

The most common and typical *thyroid heart* is found in thyrotoxicosis or Graves disease. The diagnosis of these cases is easy.

Other cases have no exophthalmos, tremor, nervousness or enlarged thyroid gland but suffer from *congestive failure with atrial fibrillation* and may be recognized because they have (23): a) sinus tachycardia not responding to rest and digitalization; b) unexplained loss of weight; c) high BMR ranging from +30 to +40 and occasionally reaching +60.

Transient atrial fibrillation, transient glycosuria and transient periods of diarrhea

also may be a clue to the diagnosis of hyperthyroid heart (10).

The most difficult diagnosis is that of hyperthyroid heart in patients with valvular defects or coronary heart disease, an association which is often overlooked and that of thyroid disturbances in elderly people.

Radioactive iodine may be used to estimate the rate at which the drug enters and leaves the thyroid. In thyrotoxicosis iodine is concentrated in the gland more quickly and in greater quantity than in normal subjects. Geiger counters are used in order to detect the concentration of the tracer in the blood.

Differential diagnosis with the different valvular lesions is necessary when the murmurs and peripheral signs simulate their existence. X-ray and phonocardiographic data and the existence of a high BMR usually facilitate the diagnosis.

Treatment

Treatment should be medical at first if necessary, then surgical. *Iodine* (73) causes a temporary reduction in the function of the thyroid which may be of help. *Digitalis* is less effective than in patients without hyperthyroidism because the slowing action of the drug on the heart is less marked. However the stimulating action of digitalis on the myocardium (page 583) may lead to definite improvement whenever there is heart failure.

Quinidine can be given if atrial fibrillation is present and is usually well tolerated. However objections have been raised to its use (9).

Sedatives may be of help and are more necessary than in other cardiac patients.

Surgical treatment may be effected as soon as the cardiac condition is improved by the use of iodine, rest, a high caloric diet and vitamin B. Surgery consists of subtotal or total thyroidectomy. Whenever the general condition of the patient argues against a radical intervention, *ligation of one or more*

thyroid arteries or x ray treatment may be attempted. Surgical intervention frequently restores the sinus rhythm of fibrillating hearts. The choice of anesthesia will be discussed later (page 580).

Radioactive iodine shows promise of good results.

Propylthiouracil can be used in the treatment of the condition (51). Fifty mg every 8 hours is the optimum dose for routine treatment of the severe cases while 50 mg every 12 hours is adequate for mild cases. After control of the disease smaller maintenance doses should be employed. Rare toxic reactions are agranulocytosis, pericarditis and heart block (52).

HYPOTHYROIDISM AND MYXEDEMA HEART (24)

Hypothyroidism is either a primary disturbance or is secondary to extensive surgery on the thyroid gland.

The hearts of myxedematous patients may be greatly enlarged. The increase of interstitial fluid separates the myofibrils creating cardiac edema. This is frequently associated with pericardial effusion and edematous infiltration of the pericardium. Destruction of the myofibrils has been described (29). As some cardiac enlargement is also due to dilatation the tremendous size of these hearts is easily explained. Enlargement of the heart may occur as early as 3 weeks after thyroidectomy (24).

Functional symptoms are exertional dyspnea and palpitation and weakness.

Physical data are typical edema, mild cyanosis, small and slow pulse (50 to 70 in most of the cases) and low blood pressure with reduction of the pulse pressure. However, cases with normal or high blood pressure are not unusual (26). The venous pressure is usually high but not because of heart failure (21).

Examination of the heart reveals that the apex impulse is weak or absent, cardiac dullness is large while the heart sounds are faint.

The electrocardiogram shows low voltage



Fig. 244 The heart in myxedema. Cardiac silhouette at x ray a before b after treatment with thyroid extract. (Inspired by original of artist.)

and frequent inversion of T in all leads (24). The low voltage thought to be due to increased electric resistance and capacity of the skin (27, 28) may disappear by using subcutaneous needles as electrodes (29).

X ray frequently reveals a severe increase of the cardiac silhouette (20) with weak pulsations of the margins. A striking reduction in size is obtained by thyroid therapy (fig. 244). When the heart is of normal size it is further reduced by administration of thyroid extract (26). The vascular peduncle may be enlarged (28) but this finding is not always present.

Cardiac output is usually reduced (14).

Circulation time is prolonged, the blood flow to the skin is extremely reduced as shown by observation of the capillaries. There often is severe anemia. Blood cholesterol is high and the abnormal cholesterol metabolism seems to increase the frequency of coronary arteriosclerosis (53).

Angina pectoris is rare in myxedema. When present it is due to coronary heart disease and is less severe than in cases without myxedema. However, in exceptional cases the basic coronary lesion is mild and only functional elements due to myxedema cause angina (26).

Treatment

Treatment of myxedema heart is effected by the use of thyroid extract or thyroxine. The doses must be small at first and then

slowly increased in order to avoid accidents (31) As a rule 10 mg ($\frac{3}{4}$ gr) of desiccated thyroid is well tolerated in most of the cases at times a smaller dose is indicated Maintenance dose varies from 30 to 200 mg ($1\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 gr) (31)

Treatment leads to disappearance of all symptoms and signs and to a tremendous reduction of the heart size

DIABETES (65)

Diabetes is not known to affect the heart directly in spite of the great importance of changes of the carbohydrate metabolism for the cardiac muscle However diabetes seems to predispose to arteriosclerosis Actually the number of patients with coronary heart disease or peripheral arterial lesions is far greater among diabetics than among others and their lesions start at an earlier age

Both insulin deficiency and hypoglycemia are bad for the heart This is shown by the fact that a low or inverted T wave ST depression and prolonged QT may be found in diabetic acidosis and hypoglycemia (36)

Diabetic acidosis is frequently accompanied by *hypopotassemia* High insulin doses caused discharge of epinephrine This results in tachycardia hypertension and increased cardiac work with possible coronary insufficiency

Therefore proper and early compensation of the diabetes by means of insulin and avoidance of excessive insulin action are advisable For these reasons the following rules should be followed a) administration of a larger dose of carbohydrates and b) preference given to slow acting insulin whenever possible

It is advisable to allow a moderate hyperglycemia (100-180 mg) and a slight glycosuria

The average diabetic with organic heart disease may be given a diet of 60 to 70 gm proteins 70 gm fats and 200 gm carbohydrates If there is obesity it is important to obtain a reduction in weight thus

reducing the load on the heart It should be remembered that myocardial infarction may disturb the diabetic control and may cause acidosis and coma (54)

ADRENAL DISEASES

A small heart and a small aorta have been described in *Addison's disease* Actual diminution of cardiac weight is present in most cases but the frequent loss of body weight may somewhat invalidate the above findings (30) Low voltage of the electrocardiogram has been noted in advanced cases of Addison's disease (36) but may be absent The Addisonian crises are usually accompanied by low blood pressure and a further reduction in cardiac size which is secondary to the decrease of circulating blood volume (31)

The endocrine-cardiac syndrome (32-33) with heart failure liver cirrhosis pigmentation and infantilism is probably due to a multiple endocrine insufficiency The importance of the adrenal cortex is revealed by the excellent results obtained with the use of adrenal cortical hormone

Pheochromocytoma is a benign tumor of the adrenal medulla and is accompanied by sudden attacks of extreme hypertension (frequently above 300 mm) lasting from some minutes to many hours (page 499) Surgical removal of the tumor may result in the complete cure of this condition

HYPOPARATHYROIDISM

Pulse blood pressure and cardiac function may be normal during the course of the disease However the electrocardiogram may reveal changes which are similar to those found in animals with experimental low blood calcium a *prolongation of the QT interval* (34) i.e. of electrical systole Restoration of normal blood calcium by means of *dihydrotachysterol* results in the return to a normal electrocardiogram

Paget's Disease

Diffuse and severe Paget's disease may be accompanied by increased cardiac output

Enormous increase of the blood flow through the affected bones has been observed. This causes phenomena similar to those of an arteriovenous fistula including high venous pressure, short circulation time and finally heart failure (60).

Ovarian Insufficiency

It has been stated that ovarian insufficiency may be accompanied by a depression of S-T maximal in lead 2 and by low T waves (35). These changes have been found both in young women with poor development of the ovaries and at the time of the menopause. However, these changes are not specific or typical.

The *menopausal syndrome* is accompanied by slight hypertension, tachycardia and hot flashes, vague precordial distress, exertional dyspnea, palpitation, weakness and sighing respiration may occur. Treatment with natural or synthetic estrogens improves the clinical syndrome.

Anemia and the Anemic Heart

Acute hemorrhagic anemia may lead to cardiovascular disturbances because of sudden reduction in the blood volume. The great majority of *chronic anemias* however have a series of changes which are mainly brought about by the altered composition of the blood.

When the hemoglobin level is below 7 gm per 100 cc (around 50 per cent hemoglobin) typical changes occur: rapid pulse, low systolic and diastolic pressures, increased cardiac output at rest, increased blood velocity, decreased peripheral resistance and decreased difference in the oxygen contents of the arterial and venous bloods (37 and 46a). These changes are due to the fact that the body requirements for blood are increased so that there may be heart failure while the heart is pumping more blood than normal.

The increased cardiac output of severe anemia seems to be caused by at least two factors: increased venous filling pressure and rapid heart rate (35). Cardiac enlargement

may be considerable. A decrease in cardiac size occurs early in treatment; it does not follow the improvement in hemoglobin level but may be dependent on a drop in venous pressure and cardiac output. As the blood volume in anemia is low (36) there must be diminution of the capacity of the vascular bed, especially marked in the capillary and venous sections of the circulation.

Myocardial changes have been found in hemolytic anemias.

Possible clinical data are violent pulsation of both the jugular veins and the carotid arteries, typical machinery murmur over the veins of the neck (venous hum, *bruit du diable*), forceful apical thrust, slight enlargement of cardiac dulness, loud heart sounds, different murmurs, the most common are a *systolic apical murmur* and a *systolic pulmonary murmur*; less common are a *systolic aortic* and a *diastolic aortic or pulmonary*. A *diastolic rumble at the apex* simulating mitral stenosis is possible. These murmurs are due not only to the enlargement of the cardiac chambers and of the large arteries but also to increased speed of the circulation and decreased viscosity of the blood (38, 39). These also explain the venous hum. Increased respiratory minute volume and decreased vital capacity favor exertional dyspnea.

There is a hyperkinetic heart. Resting cardiac output may reach 13 liters per minute and utilization of the available oxygen may reach as much as 90 per cent (normal 33 per cent). The high cardiac output is maintained both by tachycardia and by increase of venous pressure. The latter must be due to widespread venous constriction because blood volume is reduced and the arterioles are dilated.

Electrocardiogram. In about one third of the cases low voltage, flat or inverted T or depressed S-T have been noted in V₄ V₆ especially in patients with anginal pain (57).

X-ray frequently reveals an enlarged heart.

A severe picture of congestive failure has

been described in *pernicious anemia* autopsy showed hypertrophy of the heart and fatty degeneration of the myofibrils (40) The hypertrophy may be a compensatory phenomenon because cardiac output is increased in these patients

Differentiation of the picture of congestion (vertical dyspnea, edema, large liver) caused by the anemia itself from that due to *heart failure* may be made on the basis of the lack of orthopnea and venous engorgement in the former and their presence in the latter. Absence of cyanosis on the other hand may occur in both if hemoglobin is extremely low (61)

Blood transfusion is frequently beneficial. However rapid transfusion may lead to severe disturbances including pulmonary edema through overloading of the heart and the pulmonary circulation (52) Venous infusion of 2000 cc at a rate below 15 cc per minute usually seems to be well tolerated. Small transfusions of concentrated corpuscles may be advantageous but these also should be done slowly. A propped up position is best in severe cases. Any engorgement of the neck veins is evidence of increased venous pressure (55)

Polycythemia (Vaquez-Oler Disease)

Polycythemia vera is associated with increase in the number of red cells and blood viscosity and increase in blood volume. Circulation time is longer while cardiac output is normal or lowered (58) Thromboses are common especially in the cerebral arteries. Coronary occlusion is frequent

Poisonings—Toxic States

Carbon monoxide poisoning often causes depression of S I and flattening of T in the electrocardiogram. *Poisonous mushrooms* may produce extreme electrocardiographic changes including bundle branch block (59) *Mercury poisoning* may be followed by changes similar to those of uremia

Alcohol intoxication may cause sinus tachycardia and paroxysmal atrial fibrilla-

tion especially in elderly persons. The same is true of *acute diseases of the liver* (59) *Inhalation of tobacco smoke* causes a transient increase in heart rate and may cause depression or even inversion of T in one or more leads. Severe *sinus tachycardia* reveals sensitivity to nicotine and should advise against its use. The same is true for dizziness, blanching of the fingertips or face, palpitation or increase of blood pressure

Trauma and Wounds

Myocardial damage may follow a *penetrating wound* or a *contusion*. A foreign body can enter the heart through the skin, the esophagus, the venae cavae or the pulmonary veins (44)

Evaluation of the cardiac damage should take into account the condition of the heart before the accident, the severity and seat of the lesion, the type of lesion and the immediate and subsequent signs and symptoms

A damaged heart is injured more easily than in a normal heart so that underlying mild cardiac changes may lead to severe disturbances in the presence of trauma. While trauma may precipitate *congestive failure* if the heart is not normal, a severe injury of the ventricular wall may cause *acute dilatation and failure* even without heart disease

Premature beats, atrial flutter or fibrillation or paroxysmal tachycardia may follow *trauma* or *electric shock*. The latter may cause death through subsequent ventricular fibrillation. A V block is rare except in the *hemorrhage of the septum*

Rupture of one of the ventricles or a penetrating wound are followed by *hemothorax* with fatal tamponade (page 418) Progressive arterial hypotension and venous hypertension are the usual signs

The manifestations of *penetrating cardiac injuries* may be due to a) lesions of the intrinsic structures of the heart (a valve or coronary artery, the conducting system) b) blood loss caused by hemorrhage c)

compression of the heart. If the patient survives the signs are usually only those of b and c (44).

Bullets entering the ventricular wall may stop there and become cardiac guests for the rest of life without further disturbance. However premature beats may be caused by them.

The *electrocardiogram* may reveal the injury to the myocardium by giving a picture which resembles that of infarction (43) with the following reservations: a) the lesion is frequently smaller than in infarction b) it usually occurs in a normal heart c) it frequently involves the right heart d) pericarditis is practically constant. On the other hand *laceration of a coronary artery* may cause extensive infarction (43b).

If the bullet reaches one of the cardiac cavities there may be a long period during which no disturbance is noted except for occasional murmurs. However sooner or later the bullet may cause a severe embolism.

Both *cardiac contusion and partial rupture of the cardiac wall* are far more common than thought in the past and may heal spontaneously. An ECG recorded soon after the wound or trauma may be of help in the diagnosis and localization of the damage by revealing evolutionary changes of T and S T (37).

Rupture of the heart may be cured by *suture of the cardiac wall* if an immediate operation can be performed.

Intracardiac foreign bodies should be removed in order: a) to prevent embolism by the foreign body itself or an associated thrombus b) to reduce the danger of infective endocarditis c) to prevent recurrent pericardial effusions and d) to diminish myocardial damage (45). Surgery is frequently justified and usually successful.

Air Embolism (41)

Air embolism may be venous or arterial. In *venous embolism* air bubbles enter a systemic vein and form a foam in the right

ventricle through the churning action of the heart. This foam may either stay in the heart or move into the pulmonary artery causing *pulmonary air embolism*.

In *arterial embolism* air bubbles penetrate the left heart from the pulmonary veins or through a patent foramen ovale they form a foam in the left ventricle and may lead to occlusion of a cerebral, splenic or renal artery.

A *harsh bubbling rumble* (millwheel murmur) and a *thrill* are noted in systole. There may be a *vascular collapse*. A correct diagnosis may lead to recovery through *aspiration of the air foam from the heart* by means of a syringe.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. VON GIERKE F. Beitr. path. Anat. Path. 1909 82 49.
2. POWIE J. C. Ann. Anat. Path. Anat. Norm. Med. Chir. 1933 10 23.
3. SHIMAZONO J. Beriberi. Berlin 1927. Also. Erg. inn. Med. 1931 39 10.
4. SALMER W. Ch. Wien. Arch. inn. Med. 1931 21 1.
5. WENCKEBACH K. F. Der Herz. Berl. Heil. Berlin. Springer 1934.
6. a) WEISS S. AND WILKINS R. W. Ann. Int. Med. 1937 11 104 and J. A. M. A. 1937 109 7861.
b) WEISS S. J. A. M. A. 1910 115 832.
7. a) COLO I. Rev. Assoc. Med. Arg. 1941 56 473 44.
- b) BLANKENHORN M. A. Ann. Int. Med. 1945 11 338.
- c) BLANKENHORN M. A. AND CO. WORKERS. J. A. M. A. 1946 131 717.
8. a) FLIL H. Am. Heart J. 1936 11 193.
b) RACHMILLITZ M. AND BRADY K. Brit. Heart J. 1945 7 1.
9. THOMAS H. M. In *Stroking Carliotascular Disease*. Philadelphia. Davis 1945.
10. a) LEVINE S. A. *Clinical Heart Disease*. Philadelphia. Saunders 1937.
b) COLO I. *Aparato Circulatorio*. Buenos Aires. El Ateneo 1939.
11. FRIEDBERG C. R. AND SCHVAL A. R. Am. Heart J. 1937 11 599.
12. WILSON F. N. In *Stroking Carliotascular Disease*. Philadelphia. Davis 1945.
13. ZONFEL H. Deut. Med. Woch. 1920 46 1739.

- 14 WHITE P D *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1944
- 15 GORDAN G SOLEY M H AND CHAMBERLAIN F L *Arch Int Med* 1944 73 145
- 16 THOMSON W O J *Clin Investigation* 1926 2 47
- 17 ROBINSON S C J A M A 1976 87 314
- 18 BURWELL F S AND CO WORKERS *Am J M Sci* 1929 178 159
- 19 BLUMGART H L *Medicine* 1931 10 1
- 20 ROESLER H *Röntgenology of the Cardiovascular System* Springfield Thomas 1945
- 21 HERRMANN G R *Synopsis of Diseases of the Heart and Arteries* St Louis Mo by 1941
- 22 PE ERICO L *Cuore e Circ* 1931 18 33
- 23 HAMILTON B E J A M A 1924 83 405
- 24 ZONDEL H *Muench med Woch* 1915 65 1190 and 1919 68 651
- 25 DAVIS D WEINSTEIN A A RISEMAN J E F AND BLUMGART H L *Am Heart J* 1934 10 17
- 26 MEYER FOURNIER J C CERVISO J M AND BAZZANO J J *El Aparato Cardiovascular en las Insuficiencias Tiroideas* Buenos Aires Salvat 1944
- 27 LIEG W *Arch ges Phys* 1925 212 649
- 28 FANOLI F *Cuore e Circ* 1932 16 141
- 29 NOEBEL AND ROENBLITH *Zeit exp Med* 1924 43 332
- 30 BARR D In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 31 a) MCGAVACK T H *Am Heart J* 1941 21 1
b) MCGAVACK T H LANGER H AND SCHWIMMER D *Am Heart J* 1945 29 4-1
- 32 DONDELLOT E *Arch Mal Coeur* 1936 29 1
- 33 OSMAN ET AL AND LONGRET A *Presse Méd* 1935 46 385
- 34 HECHT H AND KORTH C *Zeit Kreislauff* 1937 29 57
- 35 SHERF D AND BOYD L F *Clinical Electrocardiography* St Louis Mosby 1940
- 36 ROESLER H *Mo Conc Cardio Dis* 1941 10 n 9
- 37 DAUTREBANDE I *Ctr Soc Biol* 1925 93 1029
- 38 LUISADA A A AND MATTNER H *Exper Med (Surg)* 1943 1 282
- 39 GARR S *Am Heart J* 1944 28 565
- 40 BOCHUT L AND FROMENT H *Arch Mal Coeur* 1936 29 1
- 41 STALLWARTH J A et al J A M A 1930 143 1250
- 42 BLAND E F *Am Heart J* 1944 27 585
- 43 a) PARKINSON J BEDFORD D E AND THOMSON W A *Quart J Med* 1938 31 455
b) NOTH P H *Am Heart J* 1944 27 713
- 44 a) BECK C E *Surgery of the Heart and Pericardium In Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
b) BARBER R F AND MADDEN J L *Am J Surg* 1941 64 151
- 45 HARKEN D F AND ZOLL P M *Am Heart J* 1946 32 1
- 46 a) BRANNON E S MERRILL A J WARREN J V AND STEAD E A JR *J Clin Investigation* 1945 24 332
b) RICHARDS D W *Bull New York Acad Med* 1946 22 630
- 47 RAAB W AND SUFFLEE G C *Exper Med & Surg* 1944 2 157
- 48 RAAB W *Ann Int Med* 1945 28 1010
- 49 TORRES L L *Hospital (Rio)* 1945 28 505
- 50 WILLIAMS R H AND CO WORKER *Arch Int Med* 1943 72 353
- 51 a) ASTWOOD E H AND VANDERLEIN W P *Ann Int Med* 1948 25 913
b) BARTELS E C *New England J Med* 1945 218 6
- 52 BAIR C *Brit Heart J* 1945 7 1
- 53 HIGGINS *Am J M Sci* 1936 191 50
- 54 BRANNON W A *Treatment of Heart Disease* Philadelphia Saunders 1945
- 55 SHARPEY-SCHAFER E P *Lancet* 1945 2 296
- 56 MCMICHAEL J AND CO WORKERS *Lancet* 1943 1 637
- 57 WINTROBE M M *Blood* 1946 1 125
- 58 a) ALTCHULE M AND CO WORKER *Am J M Sci* 1940 200 475
b) STEWART J J AND CO WORKER *Am Heart J* 1941 21 511
- 59 ABBMAN R AND HELL F *Essentials of Electrocardiography* New York Macmillan 1944
- 60 EDHOLM O C HOWARTH S AND MCMICHAEL J *Clin Sci* 1945 5 219
- 61 BLUMGART H L AND ALTCHULE M D *Blood* 1945 3 329
- 62 KEYS A HENSCHEL A AND TAYLOR H L *Am J Physiol* 1947 150 153
- 63 FLEMING I B *Brit Heart J* 1946 8 53
- 64 BAIR C *Med Internaz* 1945 July-August
- 65 LIEBOW I M AND HELLERSTEIN H A *Am J Med* 1949 7 660

Diseases of the Coronary System and Myocardial Infarction

Congenital Abnormalities of the Coronary Arteries

Anomalies of the coronary arteries are rare but important. Three types of isolated anomalies have been described.

a) Either the right or both coronary arteries arise from the pulmonary artery. If only the right the difference in pressure between the two coronary arteries and their anastomotic vessels causes diffuse dilatation of both vessels (1101).

b) One of the coronary arteries has not developed (1).

c) There is a congenital aneurysm of the coronary artery (1).

Whenever complex malformation of the heart are present (common trunk transposition or tetralogy of Fallot) the coronary arteries are involved from a structural and a functional viewpoint.

In type a enlargement of the heart and fibrosis of the ventricular wall are present. A triple rhythm has been noted.

The electrocardiogram shows a pattern of ischemia and injury (inverted T wave and displacement of ST) (page 416).

The patient suffers from attacks of precordial pain during which the electrocardiographic changes are further accentuated (3). Death usually occurs within the first month of life.

When the coronary arteries arise from the common arterial trunk, similar disturbances may occur. They are however less severe because the blood of the trunk contains a higher amount of oxygen than that of the normal pulmonary arteries.

Lesions of the coronary arteries may be

responsible at least in some cases for endocardial fibroelastosis (149).

A Pott-Gibson fistula at the root of the aorta has been suggested for treatment of these anomalies (150). This would direct oxygenated blood close to the origin of the anomalous coronary when this vessel arises from the pulmonary artery.

Aneurysm of the Coronary Arteries (122)

CAUSE

- The most common type is congenital.
- A certain number of cases are due to septic coronary embolism.
- A third possible cause is arteriosclerosis.
- Rare cases are due to lupus rheumatic disease or panarteritis nodosa.

Described cases range from 5 to 84 years irrespective of the cause even congenital type may be found in old patients.

LESION

The aneurysm may involve the left coronary twice as often as either the right or both coronary arteries. The aneurysm may be localized or diffuse and may reach a large size. The aneurysm may be followed by thrombosis or rupture. If the rupture involves a coronary vein an arteriovenous fistula results.

CLINICAL PICTURE—DIAGNOSIS

The signs and symptoms are atypical in most of the cases and may be confused with those of coronary heart disease and myocardial infarction. Rupture of the coronary artery is followed by hemopericardium and cardiac tamponade (page

448) Here again erroneous diagnosis of rupture of the cardiac wall is frequently made

Coronary arteriovenous fistula is the cause of a *thrill* and a *continuous machinery murmur* which in one case was located at the 4th right interspace (123) there may be a pulsating mass in the same area As the electrocardiogram is not significant differential diagnoses should include patent ductus (in cases of transposition) and aortic septal defect

Coronary Heart Disease

The term coronary heart disease is applied as a pathologic connotation to lesions of the arterial system of the heart and to the resulting changes of the myocardium On the other hand the same term is applied to the clinical pictures caused by these lesions As the electrocardiogram permits recognition of coronary heart disease in cases without appreciable symptoms or signs the term cannot be restricted to purely clinical entities

CAUSE

Acute and subacute infections may cause inflammation of the coronary arteries (coronary arteritis) resulting later in chronic lesions of these vessels Among them pneumonia diphtheria influenza (5) typhoid fever and rheumatic fever (7-9) have been cited Syphilis may damage the proximal portions of the coronary arteries (4)

Panarteritis nodosa (*periarthritis nodosa*) involves the coronary arteries in 70 per cent of the cases with this disease and is neither rare nor always severe as generally thought (13) It is one of the causes of coronary lesions in young people

Buerger's disease (*thromboangulitis obliterans*) is an occasional cause of coronary obstruction (14) and stenosis and is the second most common cause of coronary lesions in youths (15)

Acoplasm involving the heart may

compress the coronary arteries or may invade them causing occlusion

Arteriosclerosis is the most common cause of coronary lesions and is present in about 90 per cent of cases The prevalence in the male sex has been explained by inherited characteristics of the coronary intima (12a) but seems more related to the action of sex hormones on the localization of arteriosclerosis in the coronary arteries (140)

The *familial incidence* seems to be related to either an abnormality in the metabolism of cholesterol or hypertension Large molecular complexes containing cholesterol and other lipids with variable amounts of protein are normally present in the blood and increase in number in patients with coronary arteriosclerosis (141) Coronary heart disease is more frequent in hypertension diabetes and gallbladder diseases While hypertension is also important because of strain the three conditions seem to be related through the common link of an abnormal metabolism of lipid including cholesterol

STRUCTURAL LESIONS

Acute coronaritis may arise by extension or be mycotic in origin secondary thrombosis may produce arterial blockage The microscopic aspects of acute and subacute arteritis are similar to those taking place in other arteries

Severe stress at the ostia of the coronary arteries causes diffuse thickening of the intima which gradually becomes denser with age (12a) Unusual stress and early lesion occur at the right angle turns of the left coronary and its circumflex branch

With the lesser degrees of coronary arteriosclerosis the heart undergoes little or no hypertrophy With more severe involvement impaired nutrition is followed by less efficient work and subsequently by *cardiac dilatation* and *hypertrophy* (16) In patients who suffer from heart failure the weight of the heart is considerably increased (16)

Coronary sclerosis is almost always due to

atheroclerosis. Unusual stresses occur at the nia of the coronary arteries and this may explain a diffuse thickening of the intima of these vessels starting in early life as a cellular fibrous tissue and becoming denser with age (12a). Early arteriosclerosis is frequently limited to the first 2 to 3 per cent of the left coronary artery and its descending branch.

In youth excess cholesterol in the lipid cells invading the intima excites a mechanical cell reaction which stimulates the formation of connective tissue. The growing tissue progressively narrows the lumen. Necrosis occurs near the media. New intramural blood channels develop until the inner layers of the thickened intima at times resemble a granulation tissue and extend to the other coats. In cases of thrombotic hemorrhages from ruptured blood channels and associated fibrinoid necrosis extend from the site of the rupture up to the endothelium causing a thrombus and communicating with it. Another possibility in arterial thrombosis is the *breaching through the intima of newly formed blood channels* (fig. 24a).

In middle age more collagen is formed and scarring is typical. The development of lesions is slower and more irregular. There are regions of dense scarring representing the healed lesions of processes which occurred at an earlier age. Narrowing of the coronary lumen and myocardosis (page 384) are frequent.

In old age the reaction of tissues to excess cholesterol is diminished. Lipid cells accumulate in the intima and atheromatous plaques with calcification are typical. Occlusion may be due to the rupture of such a plaque.

THE CONCEPT OF CORONARY INSUFFICIENCY

Coronary insufficiency is a condition in which the need of the myocardium for blood and oxygen is greater than the amount which can be supplied. Coronary insuff



FIG. 24b Two different types of occlusion of a coronary artery: a) following an intramural hemorrhage; b) by proliferation of the intima. (Sketched after Wintermütz, Thomas and Le Compte's *The Biology of Arteriosclerosis*. Courtesy of the authors and Charles C. Thomas, Publisher.)

iciency may occur as the result of one of the following mechanisms:

- A structural lesion causing narrowing of the arteries.
- A functional constriction due to nerve stimulation or chemical action.
- Impairment of coronary flow due to low diastolic pressure (aortic valvular defects, patent ductus arteriosus, shock or extreme bradycardia) or to shortness of diastole (paroxysmal tachycardia).
- Poor oxygen saturation of the arterial blood (congestive failure, cor pulmonale, congenital heart disease, anemia).

Two or more of these mechanisms are frequently associated. In particular coronary arteriosclerosis of large branches may be associated with aomotor narrowing of the smaller ones.

Coronary insufficiency does not occur when both blood supply and blood demand are reduced, as in the senile heart and in certain forms of vascular collapse.

The most common manifestation of coronary insufficiency is cardiac pain, the so-called angina pectoris.

Coronary heart disease may lead to various clinical anatomical pictures: a) the senile heart; b) myocardial infarction; c) cardiac pain (angina pectoris); or d) congestive failure.

DEFINITIONS

Coronary occlusion. Occlusion of a coronary artery, whether slow or sudden.



FIG 246 The three patterns of myocardial damage due to coronary lesions. A pattern of ischemia. B pattern of injury. C pattern of necrosis (transmural)

Clinically it is applied only to an acute occlusion. Gradual occurrence, excellent collateral circulation or both may prevent the establishment of an infarction after an occlusion (18).

Coronary thrombosis. The term has an exact structural meaning. Clinically it is impossible to know whether the picture is due to thrombosis or another mechanism.

Myocardial infarction. Anatomical clinical picture which may be caused by coronary thrombosis, prolonged coronary insufficiency or more seldom coronary embolism.

Coronary failure. Prolonged coronary insufficiency (over 20 minutes) not followed by infarction (19). This definition is not widely accepted.

Acute coronary insufficiency. Diminution of coronary flow. If severe or prolonged it may cause myocardial infarction without occlusion (20).

ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY

Coronary disease is frequently accompanied by decreased blood supply to the myocardium (ischemia). The latter may be followed by damage (injury) to the heart muscle and if severe by its necrosis (death). Consequently three basic electro-

cardiographic patterns have been recognized: ischemia, injury and death (fig 246).

Pattern of ischemia. According to widely accepted studies (142) the spreading of the stimulus within the ventricular wall takes place from the subendocardial toward the subepicardial layers. The front of the wave of depolarization is preceded by positive and followed by negative ions. Therefore an epicardial electrode records the wave of depolarization as a positive deflection while an electrode introduced into a ventricular cavity records it as a negative deflection. Repolarization of the ventricular wall in the human heart has features which are different from those of other species. On account of slow repolarization of the subendocardial layers the front of repolarization starts from the subepicardial layers and moves toward the endocardium (142). As the front of repolarization is preceded by negative ions and is followed by positive ions an epicardial electrode records a positive T while a cavity electrode records a negative T.

Ischemia affects the subepicardial layers to a greater extent and slows down their process of repolarization. Following this the vector of repolarization of the ischemic ventricle proceeds from the cavity toward the surface and a negative T is recorded by an epicardial electrode (fig 249a). The QT interval is prolonged because of slower repolarization.

Pattern of injury. Injury of the cardiac tissue leads to formation of an area which is strongly positive during depolarization in relationship to normal tissue. In subepicardial or transmural injury of the anterior wall an anterior electrode faces the positive aspect of the boundary and an upward displacement of ST is noted. In subendocardial injury of the anterior wall an anterior electrode faces the negative (normal) aspect of the boundary and a downward displacement of ST is noted (142) (fig 249b).

Injury to the posterior wall would cause

to its changes in the direction of an S T placement as recorded by an anterior electrode

Both the chest and the limb unipolar leads of clinical studies use an exploring electrode at some distance from the epicardium therefore a mixed pattern of injury *lux ischemia* (raised S T and inverted T wave) is usually recorded unless the area of injury is large

Pattern of necrosis The destruction of an area of ventricular muscle results in the disappearance of the electrical forces due to the activity of that area during the process of excitation. As a result the dead tissue acts like an electrical window and the electrode records the negative potentials of the ventricular cavity. Necrosis or death of the tissue is revealed by a deep Q S followed by an inverted T, if an electrode is placed over the epicardium (fig 249c)

Unipolar limb or chest leads may register both the pattern of necrosis and that of the surrounding areas of injury and ischemia if the area of necrosis is small. Then a deep Q, an elevated S T and a small inverted T are observed. On the other hand if the infarction is large the unipolar leads record typical cavity potentials

Whenever the necrosis does not involve the entire thickness of the ventricular wall (intramural infarcts) potentials from the surrounding healthy tissues reach the electrode. Then it is impossible to distinguish between prolonged diffuse ischemia plus some degree of injury and partial necrosis except by the duration and evolution of the pattern

Myocardial Infarction

CAUSES

Myocardial infarction is more common in males than in females having a ratio of 3:4

But in a different way the normal vector of electrical forces within the ventricular wall is directed from the endocardium toward the epicardium whenever necrosis of the wall occurs the electrode records currents directed away from it therefore negative

to 1 in the total series and 50 to 1 in patients under the age of 40. Hypertension, diabetes or both are present in 88.3 per cent of the females and in 79 per cent of the males (117). Actually myocardial infarction is very rare in women below 40 unless obesity, hypertension or hyperlipemia are present (118). On the other hand it is not rare in males between 18 and 40 (119) especially if they have a broad heavy set body build. Hypofunction of the thyroid, hypertension or diabetes are frequently present in these subjects

Myocardial infarction may occur in the very young and even in newborn infants (120). In the latter infectious, traumatic or toxic elements have a predominant importance. Myocardial infarct of the newborn has been observed as a result of treatment of the mother with pitressin during labor

Myocardial infarction may follow a lesion of the coronary arteries in this order: a) anterior descending branch 50 per cent, b) right main coronary artery 23 per cent, c) left circumflex branch 18 per cent, d) left main coronary artery or right circumflex branch 4 per cent in each group, e) posterior descending branch 1 per cent (fig 247)

Myocardial infarction may be the result of prolonged coronary insufficiency or coronary occlusion. Occlusion due to embolism is rare. In about 50 per cent of the cases

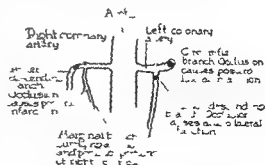


FIG 247 A diagrammatic representation of the coronary arterial system and the common sites of coronary artery occlusion. Dark discs indicate sites of obstruction. (From Burch and Winaver, Courtesy of the authors and of Lea & Febiger)

there is the *gradual occlusion* of an arterio-sclerotic vessel by the concentric proliferation of the intima. Prolonged coronary insufficiency usually acts by hastening the occlusion of an already damaged arterio-sclerotic vessel.

Another possibility which seems to take place in about 50 per cent of the cases is that of a *sudden occlusion because of intramural hemorrhage* (fig 24a). This may cause obstruction either by pushing an atheromatous plaque into the lumen or by destroying the endothelium and causing thrombosis of the vessel (28). Sudden increase of blood pressure in the vessels and decreased pressure in the soft atheromatous tissue favor the hemorrhage. Rapid clotting of the blood favors and extends the occlusion after the initial stage. *Acute decrease of blood flow due to functional causes* may lead to infarction especially if there is extensive damage of the vessels.

Effort, emotion, hemorrhage, exposure to cold, visceral reflexes, trauma, and the action of vasoconstricting hormones, drugs, or metabolites may act as *precipitating factors* of an infarct due to coronary insufficiency. The importance of these factors should also be admitted in cases of occlusion due to intramural hemorrhage.

LESIONS

According to the stage reached by the infarction the following lesions can be observed:

a) *Initial stage*. Necrosis of the myocardium is more or less widespread. Blood extravasation and inflammatory reaction are present in the surrounding area. Rupture of the ventricular wall or of the septum may occur.

b) *Advanced stage*. There is proliferation of the connective tissue which is first soft then fibrous; it later substitutes for the degenerated myofibril. Hematin pigment, either free, or included in mesenchymal cells, results from the previous hemorrhagic diffusion. The infarcted area gradually

becomes a *scar* and may become thinner and distended because of internal pressure and sclerotic involution. The pericardium is first congested then shows evidence of fibrinous exudate. Later on the pericardial sac frequently adheres to the heart as a result of *limited fibrous pericarditis* (22).

The infarcted area may vary from 10 to 50 mm in diameter. The area may be limited by a regular or irregular rim. In some cases, the rim is replaced by a shaded area.

The following types of lesion may be found:

a) *Massive infarction* involving the entire thickness of the ventricle wall. This is due to blockage of one of the main stems or obstruction of a smaller one when there is diffuse coronary disease.

b) *Small infarction* limited to a portion of the ventricular wall. This is frequently caused by occlusion of a small branch in the presence of diffuse lesions. Coronary insufficiency may cause it.

c) *Scattered small islands of scar tissue*. These may be caused by occlusion or insufficiency of the coronary system.

Atrial infarction is not very common but has been observed in 17 per cent of a series of cases of ventricular infarction as a concomitant lesion (23). In most of these cases the infarction was in the right atrium and frequently in the right appendage. Cases of atrial without ventricular infarction are possible but not frequent (40). *Atrial thrombosis* is common in cases of atrial infarction.

Multiple infarctions are common and autopsy frequently shows that they occurred at different times (fig 218). The occurrence of coronary thrombosis without infarction is revealed by injection of the coronary system and is by far more frequent when both coronary arteries participate equally in the supply of the left ventricle than otherwise (page 21).

Occlusion of the right coronary artery may give more serious results in that part

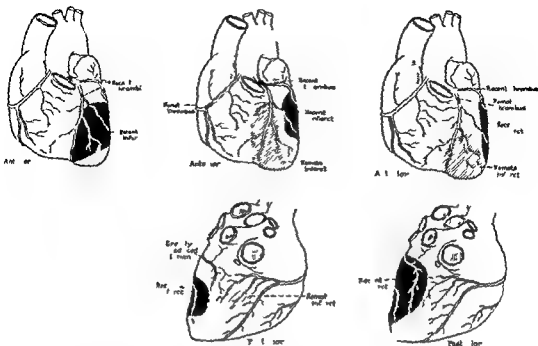


FIG. 248 Different aspects of myocardial infarctions due to various occlusions (From the Am J Med Sci. Courtesy of Drs Feil and Thomson and Lea & Febiger.)

of the left ventricle which is supplied by it than in the right ventricle. This is due to functional causes (page 55).

FUNCTIONAL RESULTS OF ACUTE ISCHEMIA

Acute ischemia is followed by severe functional changes in the myocardium. The ischemic area becomes cyanotic and its contractions weaken rapidly (23). Then the area cannot oppose the sudden rise of ventricular pressure which takes place during each contraction and dilates in systole forming a dynamic ventricular aneurysm (23). There is a sudden fall of pressure in both the aorta and the pulmonary artery (23, 24) which may be partly compensated within a few minutes. The area surrounding the infarction becomes hyperexcitable. Stimuli arising in this area may cause premature beats, ventricular tachycardia, atrial flutter or fibrillation or ventricular flutter. These disturbances of cardiac rate and rhythm are favored by cardio-cardiac reflexes. Stimuli arising in the

same area cause pain, dyspnea, vascular collapse, mental and physical agitation, and gastrointestinal disorders, and contribute to acute pulmonary edema. They may cause a stress syndrome.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Premonitory symptoms may precede myocardial infarction by some hours (29). They consist of mild precordial pain or severe pain lasting for only a short time. Restlessness, sleeplessness or nausea may precede the attack.

In the severe attack of coronary occlusion cardiac pain is the most striking symptom. It is extremely severe and resistant to treatment. It is frequently located at the lower part of the sternum or at the epigastrium. It may be felt as a crushing sensation deep inside the chest behind the sternum or in the upper right abdominal quadrant. It is described as boring, tearing or constricting and may be referred to the neck, the throat, the left scapula, the pine or both

arms it may not be transmitted at all. The pain is usually diffuse.

The pain may persist for several hours or days without remission. It is not influenced by respiration unless severe complicating pericarditis or pleurisy is present. Pain may be absent but this is unusual except in patients in coma, in alcoholics or in patients receiving sedation.

Oppression, moderate dyspnea and sensation of impending death are often present. *Nausea, vomiting and diarrhea* are frequent. An attack of *pulmonary edema* may take place at the onset. The patient may be immobile crushed by the pain. However, *psychic and physical restlessness* may be present so that the patient sometimes walks, talks or tosses himself about the bed.

Ashen gray color, profuse perspiration, fall in blood pressure and a weak pulse are frequently present. The pulse may be *rapid or slow* and is frequently *irregular*. It may *alternate*. The changes of rate and rhythm are due to *sinus tachycardia* or *bradycardia*, *ventricular premature contractions*, *atrial tachycardia*, *flutter* or *fibrillation* or *atrioventricular block*. Several of them may be present.

Examination of the heart reveals a weak apex impulse, moderate cardiac enlargement and a *remarkable weakening of the heart sounds*, especially the first which may become inaudible. A *triple rhythm* (gallop rhythm) is frequently noted. It is common to hear a *soft apical systolic murmur* while a long *muical systolic murmur* is occasionally present (96). A *pericardial rub* may be heard between the 2nd and the 4th day in the anterior infarction and is usually of brief duration. It is frequently faint and transient, disappearing after 1 or 2 days. It is a sign which is present only in anterior infarction and found only if sought.

Blood pressure, both systolic and diastolic, usually drops. An extremely low level may be reached so rapidly that the patient goes into *shock*. However, the blood pressure may

fall slowly or may present only an initial drop to rise again within a few days to one half or two thirds of the usual level. Increased blood pressure may be noted in the first few days probably in connection with the pain.

In the less severe attacks any of these symptoms and signs may be absent or mild. It is not unusual for precordial pain lasting several hours to be followed by no other symptoms or signs except those revealed by the electrocardiogram.

TEMPERATURE—BLOOD—URINE

A moderate increase in temperature is almost always an attending symptom. It usually starts on the 2nd day, reaches its highest level on the 3rd, lasts a few days, then gradually disappears. The temperature may vary between 37.2 and 38.9° (99 to 102°F) but the lower figures are more common.

Sedimentation rate is constantly increased in myocardial infarction (31). The increase starts between the 2nd and the 4th day, reaching a rate of 60 mm in an hour and occasionally higher. The maximum is usually reached 2 to 3 days later, then there is a gradual subsiding with a return to normal after 2 or more weeks.

Leucocytosis may start early from 1 to 2 hours after the attack, reaching 12,000 to 20,000 per mm³, paralleling the course of the fever. The return to normal may occur within a week or two.

The urine frequently contains a trace of albumin, indican and possibly urobilin. *Glycosuria* and *hyperglycemia* often occur in the acute stage of myocardial infarction not preceded by diabetes (59). *Serum cholesterol* is nearly always high in cases of myocardial infarction (113). After the attack, an initial drop and a subsequent rise have been observed (113).

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM

The typical changes of the electrocardiogram are those of the sequence—

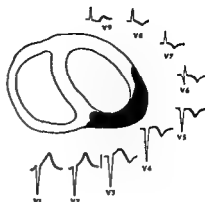
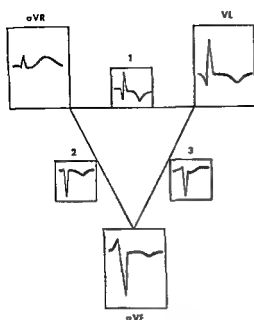


FIG. 249. Electrocardiographic pattern of old anterolateral infarct (From Luisada Med Clin North America. Courtesy of W. B. Saunders Co.)

ischemia injury and necrosis as outlined above. Different pictures occur according to the localization of the infarct. The older division of infarcts into *anterior* (Q1 T1) and *posterior* (QT T3) may be maintained for large infarcts. Otherwise it should be replaced by a more precise description of localization such as antero-septal, antero-lateral, posterolateral or posterobasal. A high anterolateral or posterolateral infarct may occur (97) (figs 249-250).

The typical evolutionary changes of the tracing are well known. They consist of the appearance of a QS type of initial complex (or a deep Q followed by R) = *convex* (or *cove shaped*) ST and an inverted T wave (fig. 251). In the process of healing the negative T wave becomes deeper at first then decreases and may become isoelectric. These changes are due to the spreading toward definite areas of the body of negative cavity potentials recorded through the necrotic tissue. It could be said that those areas look inside the ventricle through an electrical window. Table 21 describes the

changes of the unipolar chest leads in anterior infarctions.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHIC VARIETIES

The *anteroseptal variety* does not affect the limb leads though it causes important variations in V2 and V3 (or V4) and occasionally in V1. The *anterolateral variety* affects typically the *unipolar lead of the left arm* and partly that of the left leg. This causes the well known changes in the standard leads 1 and 2. Reciprocal changes take place in the right arm lead. The chest leads V4 to V6 reveal the infarction and may permit a gross evaluation of its size (fig. 249).

Both in the *posterolateral* and *posterobasal varieties* the typical inversion of the initial complex and of the T wave again due to the electrical window is best recorded by the *unipolar lead of the left leg*. A reciprocal change is recorded by the right arm. The resulting balance is revealed chiefly by the standard leads 2 and 3. In the *posterolateral variety* the posterior chest leads V7 to V9

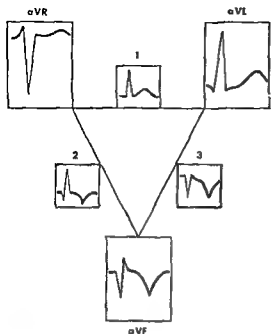
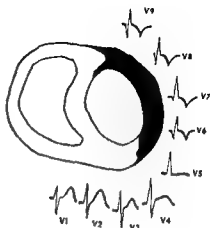


FIG 250 Electrocardiographic pattern of old posterolateral infarct (From Inside Med Clin North America Courtesy of W. B. Saunders Co.)



and the esophageal lead VEs may reveal typical changes (fig 250). In the *postero-basal* variety only the unipolar lead of the apical process (V7) reveals the typical picture. On the other hand the chest leads V1 to V4 present reciprocal changes in both varieties.

Infarcts may occur in any part of the myocardium including the atria and the septum. They may occur near the epicardium or near the endocardium; they may be transmural in which case they are like a combination of the above two types; they may be intramural because small. In the last instance the electrical forces around the infarcted area are equal and opposite so that no pattern of injury or necrosis may be recorded; if on the other hand a large area of ischemia surrounds one of these small infarcts a pattern of ischemia is recorded.

The direction of the ST displacement may give data on the location of a myocardial lesion because the changes of the ST segment are different according to the depth and location of the lesion. Elevation

of ST is found in anterior chest leads when there is an anterior subepicardial injury. A posterior subendocardial injury (or an injury of the septum on the left ventricular side) is also revealed by elevation of ST in these leads. Opposite ECG changes (ST depression) reveal anterior subendocardial or posterior subepicardial injury.

Atrial infarct (40) This rare lesion is revealed by abnormalities of the P wave: premature beats, atrial fibrillation, wandering, pacemaker or nodal rhythm. Later, either elevation or depression of the P-Q interval with a cone shaped aspect has been observed. There is elevation of P-Q in lead I when the left atrium is involved; in lead 3 when the right atrium is damaged. Later in the stage of inversion of the T atrial wave, there may be some slurring of QRS because repolarization of the atria (Ta) (page 37) occurs during the QRS complex.

Atypical forms multiple infarcts Atypical electrocardiographic patterns are found in about one third of the cases with infarct. Some are due to preexisting intraventricular

TABLE 21 Evolution of electrocardiographic changes in anterior infarction

ECG STAGE	CLINICAL RECORDING	MECHANISM	CLINICAL STAGE	EXPLANATION OF CHANGES
1	Primary T wave changes (inverted T)	The area becomes ischemic	Isodromic stage (brief)	Ischemia
2	Upward ST displacement and transient QRS changes. The early primary T wave changes disappear	The central area is in a state of injury and extends to the epicardium	The infarction is in the process of establishment but may still be prevented by better coronary flow	Injury plus ischemia
3	Severe ST displacement. QR or QS is present. So-called cavity potentials are recorded. T is inverted (new primary change)	The injured area extends and is surrounded by a thin periphery of ischemia. Death of the tissue occurs in the central area (necrosis)	The infarction has occurred (fever, leukocytosis and increased sedimentation rate)	Necrosis plus injury
4	The primary T wave changes reappear. The ST displacement and most of the QRS changes disappear	The periphery of injured area reverts to the ischemic stage. The injured and necrotic areas are no more in contact with the epicardium	Early stage of healing of the infarction (2 to 4 weeks)	Ischemia plus necrosis
5	The primary T wave changes and the Q wave may disappear	Large part of the ischemic area reverts to normal. There is necrosis in the central area	Later stages of healing (subsequent months)	Normal tissue (plus necrosis)
6	The permanent QRS changes and the permanent secondary T wave changes persist or disappear according to the extension of the scar	There is a scar tissue surrounded by normal tissue	The infarction has healed	Normal tissue or large scar

block or older infarcts some to gradual production of necrosis with successive involvement of anterolateral and posterolateral parts of the left ventricle. Multiple infarcts are common and may consist of various combinations of recent and old infarcts. In some cases an inverted T wave

in all leads has been observed (*type Tn*) (49). This may be due to 1) massive infarct involving both the anterior and posterior walls of the left ventricle, 2) anterior infarct in patients already having an inverted T3, 3) posterior infarct in patients already having an inverted T1. Serial electrocardiograms in

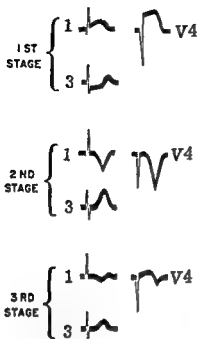


FIG 2o1 Electrocardiographic changes in the various stages of evolution of an anterolateral infarct

successive infarcts may reveal either the Tn type of evolution or changes of T this wave first assumes a frank anterior then a frank posterior type (or vice versa) in spite of previous abnormalities

PHONOCARDIOGRAM

The most typical change is the disappearance of the rapid vibrations of the first sound. This presents a prolonged series of slow vibrations which are frequently small but may be of normal height. After the acute stage it is possible to observe large diastolic sounds (triple or quadruple rhythm) (page 370). These additional sounds are heard only if they are loud on account of their low pitch.

LOW FREQUENCY TRACING (CARDIOGRAM)

Cardiographic tracings are obtained with difficulty in the acute stage of myocardial infarction because of the weak cardiac action. When a good tracing is obtained a slow development of all waves is frequently observed. This is due to the existence of an

area of soft tissue in the left ventricle. By absorbing part of the energy of contraction this area prevents a rapid rise of pressure and a rapid closure of the mitral valve. Therefore while the first sound becomes altered the low frequency vibrations of the chest also become slow.

X RAY

Fluoroscopy may reveal evidence of calcification of the coronary arteries. A diffuse or localized dilatation of the heart is frequently observed in the early stage after an infarct. Congestion of the lungs, mainly apparent in the hilar vessels, is also frequent (42). Abnormalities of ventricular pulsation may be detected by fluoroscopy (fig 2o3) and are better studied by electrokymography. Many months after an infarction in addition to the functional signs described above, ventricular aneurysm (page 391) or calcification of a section of the ventricular wall may be observed.

ROENTGENKYMIOGRAM

The abnormal movements of the left ventricular wall following myocardial infarction have been repeatedly investigated by means of roentgenkymography.

The most common abnormalities described were diminution or absence of pulsation in a segment of the left ventricular contour, systolic expansion over the lower left contour and diastolic splintering (20-23).

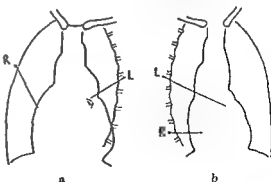


FIG 2o2 Calcification of the coronary arteries at x ray in the right anterior (a) and in the left anterior oblique (b) positions. R, right; L, left. (From Menendez de Oliveira.)

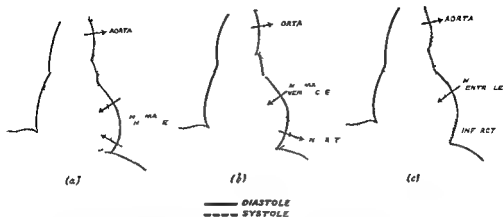


FIG 253 Fluoroscopic apect of a normal contraction b reversal of pulsation (myocardial infarction) c absence of pulsation (myocardial infarction) (From Ungtlesider's *Röntgenology in Stroud's Cardiovascular Diseases* Courtesy of the author and F A Davis Co)

ELECTROKYMNOGRAM

Electrokymnography permits an accurate study of these movements and gives tracings which may have diagnostic value (143-145)

Several abnormal patterns can be observed in either systole or diastole (143). However some of the abnormalities can be found in other conditions or can be simulated by improper application of the slit. Therefore they have no diagnostic significance as to myocardial infarct. Some of the diastolic abnormalities are connected with an abnormality of systole and represent a necessary consequence of the latter (return of the wall after abnormal pulsation). Furthermore some of these deviations from the normal tracing and particularly those extending over a large portion of the left ventricular contour may be favored by positional changes of the heart.

Two definite abnormalities of the systolic wave should be considered as indicative of localized myocardial damage in the majority of instances this being identical with myocardial infarct. 1) *Reduced amplitude of the ventricular wave or disappearance of this wave in a circumscribed region of the left ventricle.* Whenever the surrounding areas present large waves this sign is definitely related to infarction as that area is functionally

(and usually also anatomically) excluded from participating in active contraction. The author suggested the name of *local paralysis* for the phenomenon thus revealed by electrokymnography. 2) *Inverted pulsation (paradoxical pulsation) of a circumscribed area of the ventricular myocardium.* In typical cases this inverted pulsation assumes the aspect of a plateau indicating that the heart wall is passively distended by intraventricular pressure (fig 254). This type of pulsation may be associated with the existence of a well defined bulge of the ventricular profile on chest films (*ventricular aneurysm*). In other cases the bulging occurs only in systole while no bulge is present in diastole (*dynamic aneurysm*).

MECHANISM OF THE SIGNS

Cardiac pain is due to stimuli which start from the area of ischemia of the cardiac muscle and reach the nerve centers along sympathetic fibers and through the stellate ganglia. Other stimuli caused by inflammation of the pericardium and occasionally of the pleura are also frequently present.

Nausea and sensation of impending death also are due to stimuli which follow the sympathetic fibers toward the centers.

Dyspnea, restlessness, sweating, diarrhea

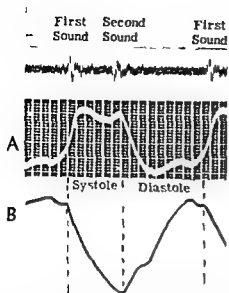


FIG 254 Old anterolateral infarct Expansive systolic pulsation above the apex (dynamic aneurysm) revealed by the electrokymogram. For comparison a normal ventricular pattern (in black). (From Luisada Med Clin North America. Courtesy of W. B. Saunders Co.)

and *tomiting* should be considered as reflex phenomena. The most likely efferent path way is the vagus (24). Glycosuria likewise has been attributed to a neurogenic mechanism (29).

The *vascular collapse* is due to multiple causes: a) The exclusion of a group of cardiac fibers from the contraction; b) The fact that the area of infarction becomes softer and forms an *elastic reservoir* (dynamic aneurysm). On the one hand this decreases the systolic discharge; on the other it increases the residual blood within the left ventricle (106, 107). c) The fact that reflex elements cause a series of peripheral phenomena which resemble those of *shock* and may lead to the establishment of this irreversible syndrome (page 520).

The reflex component is maximal at the beginning and may be partly abolished by drugs; the cardiac component is more lasting and not influenced by them. This is shown by the following facts: experimental ligation of one coronary artery causes a sudden drop of pressure in both the lesser and the greater

circulations (47). Signs of congestion in the venous system may be missing (48) and autonomic depressants may raise blood pressure. Arterial vasoconstriction caused in a reflex way by precordial pain, seems to be responsible for the *arterial hypertension* (absolute or relative) which can be observed during the first days in a minority of cases.

The signs of heart failure are due to the sudden abolition of one part of the cardiac muscle as an active participant in the contraction and also to the formation of a *dynamic aneurysm* in the area of infarction. They are therefore influenced only to a limited extent by drug therapy. Increased work of the rest of the heart may obviate the failure unless prevented by extensive or severe coronary disease.

Acute pulmonary edema has been interpreted as due to acute left ventricular failure. This interpretation is undoubtedly too simple (106). Displacement of a large mass of blood from the greater to the lesser circulation due to cardiovascular reflexes plays an important role in this syndrome.

Leucocytosis, *high sedimentation rate* and *fever* are due to necrosis of the cardiac tissue and to the inflammatory reaction which results from it. Inflammation of serous membranes (pericardium, pleura), secondary pulmonary infarctions and other complications may contribute to these signs.

The *sudden death* of these patients is due to cardiac arrest or ventricular fibrillation. The last is caused by anoxia of the area of partial damage where foci of high excitability are set up. Anoxia may create various degrees of block favoring fibrillation.

The *musical systolic murmur*, a rare occurrence, can be explained by eddies formed in the ventricular cavity and favored by the localized area of dilatation (96).

Some of the cardiopulmonary disturbances such as bradycardia, low blood pressure and bronchoconstriction seem to be caused by serotonin (γ -OH Tryptamine) liberated from platelets in the process of blood coagulation (152).

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

Many patients withstand myocardial infarction without severe embarrassment of the heart and may even discover the existence of a lesion much later. In other cases there is obvious impairment of cardiac function. Other patients die suddenly or present severe cardiac failure which will be the cause of fatality after weeks or months. Despite the favorable onset there is always the possibility of extension of the infarct or formation of a new one. The most dangerous phase is in the first 3 weeks after which scar tissue is usually formed.

Sudden death may be caused by either cardiac arrest or ventricular fibrillation; the incidence of these being about equal (108).

Rupture of the ventricular wall into the pericardial sac resulting in tamponade of the heart (page 441) or rupture of the interventricular septum causing heart failure may occur within the first 2 weeks. The same can be said for the possible rupture of a papillary muscle or a chorda tendinea.

Diffuse pericarditis is not rare. If severe it definitely adds to the dangers of the syndrome. It may be revealed by displacement of R-T in all leads, x-ray data and prolonged duration of the recovery period.

A condition of *shock* is present in some cases. If prolonged for more than a few hours it indicates an extensive infarction and therefore a serious outlook.

Acute pulmonary edema may be an initial manifestation. Once started it is more lasting and resistant to treatment than acute pulmonary edema without infarction. The patient may have scanty expectoration and dyspnea but is ashen gray and is suffocated by the foam present in the trachea and bronchi.

Pulmonary embolism is a frequent complication. It may be caused by mural thrombi of the right ventricle (infarction involving the right ventricle or the septum) or the right atrium (atrial infarction congestive failure). In all these cases the pulmonary occlusions are likely to be multiple and small. On the

contrary occlusion of the main pulmonary trunk may be due to a larger embolus which usually originates in the large veins of the legs (128) (pages 507 and 539).

Cerebral renal or splenic embolism are other complications due to detachment of a mural thrombus from the left ventricle (5 to 15 per cent of the cases in various statistics).

Two thirds of the patients survive the first attack of myocardial infarction (46a) and one half of the total survive for many years (46b).

The first 7 days are the most dangerous but sudden death may occur in the second week even when the course seems favorable. After the 15th day recovery is probable. After the 21st it is practically certain in the absence of severe congestive failure.

In some cases of myocardial infarction persistent pain of the left shoulder, arm and hand is due to a reflex (so called *shoulder hand syndrome*) (151). Following pain in the left shoulder with painful stiff and swollen fingers, deformities of the fingers and atrophy set in and culminate in Dupuytren's contracture.

VARIETIES

In a certain number of cases pain is absent. This may be due to weakness and prostration or predominance of gastrointestinal neurological or pulmonary symptoms. The mortality is higher in these cases on account of the greater incidence of incorrect diagnoses (109).

Cases of coronary occlusion simulating perforation of a gastric or duodenal ulcer, rupture of a gangrenous appendix or a gall bladder attack are not unusual.

An associated coronary and cerebral syndrome is possible (110). This may be caused by neurological signs of the coronary occlusion. A secondary cerebrovascular accident is also possible as a result of low blood pressure, shock, vascular reflexes or cerebral edema. This is more severe and more common in cases with combined arteriosclerosis of the coronary and cerebral arteries. Symp

tomatology may be dominated by restlessness, confusion syncope or epilepsy. Hemiplegia may be due to either cerebral embolism or thrombosis favored by the sudden circulatory disturbance.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is not difficult when a typical picture is present and electrocardiography is possible. However the great number of coronary attacks with atypical symptomatology and the possibility of attacks of a different nature simulating myocardial infarction, sometimes present delicate diagnostic problems.

The electrocardiogram is of great help if typical. However differential diagnosis from tracings of different conditions may be necessary. A typical QS pattern followed by an inverted T is diagnostic. There may be doubt in the first few days during the establishment of the pattern or if the infarct is intramural. In the latter case a persistent and evolutionary pattern of ischemia may be the only ECG evidence of the infarct. Special diagnostic problems are presented by multiple infarctions and by infarcts in cases of bundle branch block. It should be kept in mind that bundle branch block may occur suddenly as a result of an infarct. In general several electrocardiograms are more informative than one tracing.

Angina pectoris is accompanied by attacks of pain of short duration (10 to 20 minutes) in coronary failure there are longer attacks of pain (20 to 30 minutes) but no persistent ECG changes and no laboratory evidence of infarct.

The possibility of differentiating myocardial infarction caused by occlusion from that caused by coronary insufficiency has been discussed. The problem however is of little practical importance inasmuch as the immediate prognosis and treatment are the same in both conditions.

Frequent mistakes are made between myocardial infarct and pulmonary infarct. The latter may or may not give typical

ECG signs (page 509). Whenever the ECG is typical it reveals not only changes in leads AVF and 3 but also evidence of right ventricular "strain" in V1 V2. On the one hand, this would not be present in a posterior infarct; on the other an antero-septal infarct would cause changes of V2 V3 and none in aVF and 3.

It should be kept in mind that myocardial infarct may be followed by pulmonary embolism and that pulmonary infarct may be followed by a myocardial infarct, favored by the severe drop in pressure and by the resulting coronary insufficiency.

Differential diagnosis is frequently necessary between myocardial infarct and perforated gastric or duodenal ulcer. It should be kept in mind that an acute internal hemorrhage may cause ST and T changes lasting for several days (56) and even precipitate a myocardial infarct through prolonged coronary insufficiency (57).

A dissecting aneurysm of the aorta may simulate myocardial infarct (page 485). However the pain has a different radiation, there may be disappearance of one or both radial pulses and the ECG changes are atypical unless the compression of the coronary arteries is of such severity that myocardial infarct actually occurs.

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis is much better in initial than in later attacks and becomes worse with each subsequent attack. The prognosis is better in the young, worse in the older age groups. However the probable shortening of life is greater in the younger group whose life expectancy if no attack had happened would have been greater.

Dyspnea, cyanosis, tachycardia and alternans are serious prognostic signs. Heart failure, embolization and heart block increase mortality and indicate a grave prognosis.

Myocardial infarction complicated by acute pulmonary edema has a mortality of about 50 per cent. Leucocytosis is significant

of a severe lesion if above 15 000 while figures above 20 000 are found only in fatal cases. The same is true for fever if higher than 101 or lasting more than a week.

The duration of fever leucocytosis and high sedimentation rate may indicate a persisting inflammatory condition although this may be caused by complications and not by the infarction itself.

Prognosis is similar in anterior and posterior infarctions.

So far as the blood pressure is concerned the immediate prognosis is better when blood pressure is high than when it is low because shock may be reached less easily (9a). On the other hand the ultimate prognosis is worse in hypertensive patients (9a) and it should be kept in mind that rupture of the ventricular wall is three times more common when blood pressure is high than when it is low (111).

Cases with ruptured ventricular septum seldom live more than 1 month (112).

Ultimate prognosis is difficult because it is based not only on the outcome of the present attack but on the possibility of complications and on the possible occurrence of other attacks. Among the patients who survive most have a life span of 4 to 5 years but certain cases have lived 20 years or more after an attack. Some of the latter led a normal life without restrictions and one had a successful pregnancy (127). Prognosis in centenaries is not different from that in relatively younger patients (156).

TREATMENT

Treatment of acute coronary occlusion has the following program

a) *To reduce as far as possible the work of the heart.* This is obtained by the use of sedatives and bed rest. If there is danger of shock sedatives should be used with caution. *Armchair treatment* advocated by some (153) is frequently unsatisfactory partly for psychological reasons. However bedrest should not be unduly prolonged

especially in old individuals because it may lead to embarrassment of the venous circulation and poor ventilation of the lungs. Whenever there is heart failure the patient should be propped up in bed. *Morphine sulfate* 10 to 15 mg plus *atropine sulfate* 0.5 mg by hypodermic injection every 4 to 6 hours or *demerol* (115) 100 mg at similar intervals should be given during the first 3 to 6 days. With improvement the doses can be cut by one half while *papaverine hydrochloride* (43) 50 mg, *phenobarbital* or both are gradually added.

b) *To alleviate pain and anxiety.* This is already obtained by morphine or demerol. *Oxygen* is also helpful.

c) *To prevent autonomic reflexes.* Apart from the action of morphine phenobarbital and atropine the endpoint of reflexes may be depressed by means of 0.2 gm *quinidine sulfate* per os every 4 hours or 0.5 gm *procaine amide* (113) (27) at similar intervals.

d) *To obtain the best level of blood pressure.* While high blood pressure is detrimental because it causes cardiac strain low blood pressure may increase coronary insufficiency and may lead to shock. Several of the above mentioned drugs tend to lower blood pressure and should be used wisely. If the systolic pressure drops below 90 supportive measures are justified. They include slow intravenous administration of *glucose solution* containing *nor 1 epinephrine* (116). The average infusion should be about 300 cc every 6 hours containing from 4 to 7 mg of the vasoconstrictor drug (56). A successful treatment of shock is obtained much more easily if it is undertaken within the first 3 hours after its initiation.

e) *To prevent extension of the infarcted area of the heart.* The use of anticoagulants and that of papaverine favors the establishment of collateral circulation and decreases the chance of an extension of the clot with further occlusion of various branches (see below).

f) *To prevent or treat heart failure.* Heart failure can be combated only to a limited

extent because it is due to necrosis of some of the cardiac fibers and is favored by fibrosis of the heart muscle. *Oxygen* and the combined use of *digitalis* and *quinidine* (or *procaine amide*), is often followed by some degree of improvement. Digitalization should be done slowly so that the full dose is reached in 3 days. It is tolerated best by the use of *gitalin* (119) (8) (page 589) which has a wide therapeutic index and causes less increase of ventricular excitability.

g) To prevent paroxysmal or disordered cardiac action. *Oxygen*, *procaine amide* or *quinidine* and the various sedatives are usually helpful. Systematic preventive use of these drugs is advocated by some but does not seem necessary.

h) To prevent formation of clots adherent to the walls of the heart or to those of peripheral veins (114-115). While the former are a frequent cause of secondary occlusion of important arterial vessels (especially in the brain) the latter may cause secondary occlusion of pulmonary vessels. This aim is obtained by the early use of intravenous *heparin* (63) in dose of 50 to 200 mg every 4 hours by the use of oral *dicumaryl* (117) (64) or *tromexan* (118) (65) subsequently. These drugs are given by mouth with an initial dose of 300 mg of *dicumaryl* (800 mg *tromexan*) and subsequent daily doses of 100 to 200 mg *dicumaryl* (300 to 600 mg *tromexan*). Anticoagulants need not be used in younger people or mild attacks and should not be used in patients with pulmonary cavities or gastrointestinal ulcers. They are imperative in older people and in severe attacks and in cases with a history of atrial fibrillation or venous thrombosis. Anticoagulants require proper laboratory control about the ability of the blood to clot. A drop of clotting activity to about 30 per cent of normal is considered the best for preventing thromboembolic phenomena without causing hemorrhages. *Vitamin K* (66) should be kept handy and administered in dose of 60 to 70 mg whenever clotting activity becomes too low. Anticoagulants

should be continued for 4 to 6 weeks in the average cases, for longer periods in cases with complications.

i) To treat acute pulmonary edema. The best treatment is *oxygen-alcohol vapor* by inhalation for 1 to 12 hours by mask or nasal catheter (146) (page 560). Infusions or transfusions should be curtailed or stopped. Morphine, barbiturates and mercurials should be limited. The former favor pulmonary edema, the latter favor shock. Digitalis should not be given intravenously during the attack.

In general, *alcohol* in moderate amounts is permitted especially in hypertensive patients while *tobacco* is forbidden until after completion of convalescence.

While severe attacks require long bed rest, prolonged convalescence, and the most serious measures, mild attacks may be treated with 2 weeks in bed, 2 weeks of convalescence, and 1 or 2 months of hardly reduced activity.

Myocardial infarction in diabetic patients often causes increase in blood sugar, glycosuria and sometimes ketosis (138). The patients often become more resistant to insulin and this renders their treatment particularly difficult. If no acetone is found in the urine, no change in diabetic therapy is required. If on the other hand ketosis develops, a 10 per cent solution of glucose will be given intravenously at the rate of 250 cc per hour up to a total of 1500 to 2000 cc. At the same time, crystalline insulin should be given subcutaneously in doses of 15 to 20 units every 2 hours. Very severe cases may need an initial dose of 40 to 60 units of insulin. Later treatment is the same as in severe diabetes without infarction.

PREVENTION

Prevention of coronary occlusion involves a) Treatment of hypertension, b) Treatment of diabetes, c) Control of cholesterol metabolism (reduced intake, control of metabolism with hormones, iodides).

etc, possible use of estrogens) d) Avoidance of severe exertion or excessive excitement

Some of these aims cannot be completely attained at present but should be in a foreseeable future

Angina Pectoris (68)

Increasing knowledge in the field of coronary heart disease has changed our understanding and definition of angina pectoris. Fifty years ago this name was applied to any case of coronary heart disease with cardiac pain. Cases of myocardial infarction are now excluded. Therefore angina pectoris is simply 'cardiac pain due to coronary insufficiency not followed by an infarct' the expression 'cardiac pain' might be substituted for angina pectoris.

The mechanism of production and the multiple causes of coronary insufficiency have been already described (page 415). Even if hemodynamic, chemical or vaso-motor elements may be involved there is no doubt that a structural lesion of the coronary system is present in the great majority of cases. This lesion is severe and extensive in some patients. In others it is so limited that it acts only as a trigger mechanism favoring reflex coronary ischemia.

Experimental and clinical evidence indicates that cardiac pain is the result of a disproportion between blood supply to and blood demand by the myocardium. Both increased blood demand and decreased oxygen saturation in the arterial blood favor cardiac pain. Therefore patients with hypertension, valvular defects, or congenital malformations of the heart frequently complain of cardiac pain.

In most cases cardiac pain is precipitated by sudden increase in the blood demand while blood supply cannot be increased because of hardening of the coronary arteries. The increase may be due to physical exertion or increase of venous return caused by either intake of food or recumbency. Therefore the two

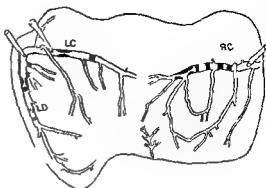


Fig 2a Diagram of coronary arterial tree in patient with angina pectoris, nine old complete occlusions in all three major coronary arteries. Note large dissectible collateral artery which bridges several occlusions in right coronary artery. (From H. L. Blumgart: Res. Publ. Assoc. Nerv. & Ment. Dis. 1941. Courtesy of the author.)

typical pictures of angina pectoris, *exertional angina* and *decubitus angina* (69) are not too different in the mechanism of their production.

Multiple mechanisms are related to cardiac pain. An occlusion may not be followed by infarction because of well developed collateral circulation (fig. 2a5). On the other hand ischemia may be followed by multiple scars if the collateral circulation is poor. Multiple small occlusions in a wide area have the same result as occlusion of an artery. For these reasons it is sometimes impossible to say whether in the individual case a brief attack of pain is related to structural changes or to a functional mechanism.

The afferent pathways for cardiac pain begin in sensory nerve endings which are present in the adventitia of the coronary arteries and possibly of other cardiac structures. The nerve fibers travel by way of the middle and inferior cardiac nerves until they reach the cervical sympathetic ganglia and by way of the thoracic cardiac nerves until they reach the upper four or five thoracic sympathetic ganglia (186). The cervical cardiac fibers descend in the sympathetic chain to the thoracic ganglia,

then together with thoracic cardiac fibers, proceed through the *white rami communicantes* of the upper four or five thoracic ganglia and reach their cells in the spinal ganglia.

Anginal pain has been explained in various ways. According to the theory of 'poor localization' (72) the brain has a poor localization power and attributes the pain of deep organs to those superficial regions from which it is usually receiving sensory impressions. This is made easy by the fact that sensory fibers from the intercostal nerves have their body cells in the same ganglia as the cardiac fibers. According to the older theory of 'irritable focus' (120) painful visceral impulses set up a disturbance in the spinal cord which extends to fibers from the body surface. Pain is referred to the periphery on account of the higher development of skin sensitivity. Disappearance of the pain after local anesthesia (75-130) seems to confirm this theory and the view has been advocated that *somatic trigger areas* develop within the reference zone of the visceral lesion. Chest pain may continue on account of secondary sources of pain in the somatic structures.

Cardiac pain has been attributed to a) distention of the coronary arteries b) anoxia of the myocardium c) accumulation of products of muscular contraction (lactic acid phosphoric acid pyruvic acid histamine adenosine or potassium). Either *anoxia* (oxygen deficiency) or *ischemia* (reduction of blood flow) may cause the pain (page 415) and either of the two may be involved though the latter is the more common. Ischemia (as cause of anoxia) and anoxia may cause pain by leading to accumulation of metabolites stimulating the sensory nerve endings as the cardiac muscle keeps working and is incapable of any important oxygen debt (page 33).

It has been pointed out that anginal attacks occur under those conditions which are accompanied by *sympathetic stimulation*

and *discharge of epinephrine*, and by *accumulation of sympathin* in the myocardium (physical exertion exposure to cold and emotion). It has been shown further that the attacks can be provoked by adrenalin or other drugs stimulating the sympathetic system (nicotine insulin) and are common in tumors of the adrenal medulla. For the same and other reasons the view was advocated (131) that effort angina is due to an acute anoxia of the myocardium caused by epinephrine and sympathin (page 48), which is particularly severe in patients with *sclerotic coronary vessels*.

Among the various theories of *angina pectoris* one explains the attack as due to a *reflex mechanism*. Beneficial results of carotid sinus compression (136) were interpreted as confirming this theory. However this maneuver is followed by lowering of blood pressure and decreased work of the heart.

Elements favoring angina pectoris are the following: sudden change from a warm to a cold temperature severe atmospheric fluctuations (hurricanes) physical effort emotion abundant meals and the copious ingestion of fluid. Nicotine definitely favors *angina pectoris*; intestinal poisons may do so.

Increased excitability of the vagus nerve sudden increase of the blood pressure and distention of the abdominal viscera favor *angina pectoris*. Hyperthyroidism also favors *angina pectoris*. In other words any cause of increased cardiac work decreased coronary blood supply or visceral reflexes favors *angina pectoris*.

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

The main symptom of *angina pectoris* is *cardiac pain*. This is usually referred to the precordial area but may be felt in the left shoulder in the left side of the neck and more rarely in the left scapular region. The pain is described in various ways as *an oppressive crushing tearing squeezing or choking pain*. It may be described as an

oppressing choking or crushing sensation with complete denial that it is pain. The pain is usually transmitted to the left shoulder, the throat and the left arm, forearm or hand. In some cases it is transmitted to the 4th and 5th fingers of the left hand.

A sensation of impending death once thought typical is present only in a small number of cases.

In typical cases the patient frequently a man in the early fifties feels the pain when leaving a warm apartment after supper on a cold night. After a few steps the patient feels a crushing pain in the chest and stops suddenly, afraid to proceed. He often leans against a wall, avoids movements and talking, breathes slowly and has a pale face with a suffering or fixed expression. After a few minutes the attack is over and the patient continues his walk.

Attacks occurring early in the morning when the patient leaves his home are equally typical. Other attacks may occur at night waking the patient from a bad dream or a nightmare.

Physical examination during the attack fails to reveal much. The pulse is usually full and regular and may present occasional premature beats. Blood pressure is either the same or at a higher level than before the attack. The face is pale and drawn or occasionally perspiring. Gastric manifestations like gastric oppression and eructations are frequent. Salivation, sweating and an urgent desire to urinate are present in some cases.

DIAGNOSIS—VARIETIES

The diagnosis of angina pectoris is in many cases purely clinical because the ECG fails to show appreciable changes at the moment of the examination. In other, however, the existence of ECG changes lends support to the diagnosis. When the ECG is negative functional tests should be done or the patient may be studied during a spontaneous attack (cases where the



FIG. 256 Angina pectoris

pain coincides with definite events of the daily life). In difficult cases the beneficial action of nitroglycerine may have diagnostic importance. Once the diagnosis of angina is made one should try to find how important is the part played by structural lesions, reflex elements and emotional factors.

In patients with frequent attacks of cardiac pain the electrocardiogram should be taken between the attacks and also during the attack.

The electrocardiogram taken during a spontaneous attack of pain frequently reveals depression of ST and a diphasic or inverted T wave in one or more leads. The changes are transitory.



FIG 257 Distribution of pain in angina pectoris

Doubtful cases where history suggests angina pectoris but the electrocardiogram is normal will be studied by means of functional tests. The most used are *Master's two step exercise test* (147) and *Ley's anoxemia test* (77). The *amyl nitrite test* described in the author's laboratory (148) is simple and practical. Changes of the ECG revealed by these tests are similar to those observed in spontaneous attacks.

Functional tests lead to division of the patients into three groups:

1) The electrocardiogram between attacks reveals severe abnormalities indicative of coronary and myocardial lesions (no functional tests should be performed). A predominant structural component is at the basis of the attacks.

2) The electrocardiogram between attacks reveals slight abnormalities or is normal. Functional tests reveal typical changes of the electrocardiogram. The structural lesion is mild and functional components contribute to the attack.

3) The electrocardiogram is normal between attacks. Functional tests fail to reveal abnormalities in the tracing. The pain is probably not related to the heart.

Differential diagnosis should exclude a long list of diseases.

Substernal pain may be due to infections, arthritis, mediastinal lesions, gastric and esophageal conditions, aneurysm, and pericarditis.

Precordial pain may be due to mastitis, hematoma or hypertrophy of the left breast, neurofibromata, abscess or myalgia of the pectoral muscle, neuralgia of the intercostal nerves, radicular pain occasionally accompanying herpes zoster, periostitis, osteomyelitis, pleurisy, diaphragmatic lesions and abdominal disorders (aerophagia with pneumatosis among others).

Pain in the left upper extremity, the shoulder or the rest of the limb may be caused by neuritis, arthritis, bursitis, spondylitis, cervical rib, diaphragmatic lesions and many other conditions.

Pain from noncardiac causes is almost always more diffuse than anginal pain, overlapping the areas of the radial, median or ulnar nerve. The pain of angina pectoris is never localized to the left of the anterior axillary line.

Differential diagnosis from gastric conditions is frequently necessary because they may simulate angina pectoris and the latter often is accompanied by gastric disturbances.

It should be known that a small percentage of individuals with normal hearts experience pain when taking coffee. The pain is not severe, is not increased by exertion and is of long duration. It is not relieved by nitroglycerin (84).

PROGNOSIS

The prognosis in angina pectoris should be based on the evaluation of all functional and structural elements causing the pain. This means also evaluation and prognosis of the coronary heart disease.

The division of the patients into different

groups (see above) may be used for the prognosis. Extensive and severe myocardial lesions and severe coronary lesions as revealed by the electrocardiograph and the history have a severe prognosis. This is based on the knowledge that sooner or later myocardial infarction will occur with all the possibilities implied in this event.

Concerning the pain itself it is difficult to foretell the far distant course. Some patients have angina pectoris for years then a myocardial infarction occurs. After recovery the anginal pain is milder or has disappeared. In other cases the opposite is true: an initial infarction starts a series of anginal attacks and these continue throughout life.

In general angina pectoris in youth has a more severe prognosis unless dynamic or functional elements (tachycardia, valvular defects, anemia, hyperthyroidism) which can be fully or partly relieved explain the pain.

TREATMENT

The treatment of angina pectoris is often difficult. However the complete negativism of some authors is not justified.

A proper evaluation of the dynamic, functional, and psychic elements may permit the exclusion of at least some of them. Removal of a damaged gall bladder, treatment of thyrotoxicosis, paroxysmal tachycardia or anemia, improvement of gastric conditions, proper diet, better habits and sometimes a divorce may avoid the need for further treatment in many cases. Obese patients should reduce diet; diabetic patients should be treated for diabetes.

Patients with angina should be advised not to take a heavy meal at night and not to go to bed with a full stomach. They should be cautioned against drinking too much fluid with their meals and against using tobacco and a diet excluding foods

causing fermentation should be prescribed. Alcohol can be allowed but with moderation. Alcohol is a peripheral vasodilator though an extremely poor coronary dilator. Therefore its beneficial effect is based on either reduction of blood pressure or central depression. The latter relieves tension and decreases the severity of possible constrictor reflexes.

Physical exercise may be continued in many cases but open air exercise, heavy work and exposure to cold should be forbidden.

Any cause for increased cardiac work, vagal reflexes or anoxemia should be prevented as far as possible.

Treatment of the attack of angina pectoris is based on vasodilators having a rapid action like sublingual *nitroglycerin* (53).

Between the attacks many drugs can be used; the most effective are:

a) Vasodilators which have a prolonged action like *mannitol hexanitrate* (51), *papaverine* (43), *aminophylline* (41, 42), *belladonna* (18), (121).

b) *Belladonna* or *atropine* and in some cases a total inhibition of the autonomic nervous system (35).

c) Hypnotics like *phenobarbital*, *nembutal*, *sodium amytal* and *chloral hydrate* (33).

d) *Quinidine* (25).

These drugs have the purpose of reducing cardiac work (and thus blood demand) and of decreasing possible noxious reflexes.

Treatment with small doses of *thyroid extract* may be beneficial in hypothyroid patients. In the others either *radioactive iodine* (132) or *propylthiouracil* have been advocated for reducing basal metabolism and cardiac work. However this treatment is destined only for a selected group of cases.

Different surgical treatments have been tried

* There is considerable variability in the effect of smoking on the circulation. In susceptible persons smoking is followed by a rise in blood

pressure (135). Therefore ultimate decision may be based on a practical test by taking blood pressure before and after smoking.

a) *Surgical interventions on the cervico thoracic section of the sympathetic system* (85) attempting the prevention of centripetal, painful stimuli from reaching the higher centers. They consist of removal of the superior cervical ganglia of these plus the sympathetic chains down to the level of the 1st thoracic ganglion or of the inferior cervical ganglia plus the 1st thoracic ganglia (stellate ganglia). Alternate interventions are the section of the *rami communicantes T1 to T6* or the *paravertebral injection of alcohol* in order to destroy the rami of the upper thoracic nerves (85). The operation was extended later to the *thoracolumbar section of the sympathetics* attempting to lower the blood pressure and decrease the work of the heart (86).

The fact that pain prevents exertion which may damage the heart and the possibility of accidents resulting from the lack of innervation of the pulmonary vessels advise restriction of the first type of operation to a small number of patients: those with unbearable pain, resistant to every other treatment who are likely to avoid exertion and to follow instructions. The more extensive intervention is indicated mainly in hypertensive patients. Roentgen treatment of the adrenal glands has also been advocated in the latter (87).

b) *Partial or subtotal thyroidectomy* (88). The purpose of this operation is to lower the metabolism and thereby, the work of the heart. The patients frequently suffer from secondary myxedema and need medical control and treatment. This fact should limit the application of this intervention to a selected group of patients.

c) *Attempts to create a new collateral circulation for the myocardium*. They were done by grafting either the omentum (88) or one bundle of pectoral muscle (89) to the heart or by injecting substances causing adhesive pericarditis (90). These interventions are still in the experimental stage. The same holds true for *pericoronary neurectomy* (93) and *ligation of the coronary*

sinus (85) which may be combined in the same patient (86k).

Transplantation of the left internal mammary artery into the left ventricular wall has been tried, first in animals (86l) then in man (152). *Graft of a systemic artery into the coronary sinus* (arterialization of the coronary sinus) is also in the experimental stage (134).

Coronary Heart Disease without Cardiac Pain

Coronary heart disease can be followed by severe changes in the myocardium without association with cardiac pain. This is probably due to slow uniform and widespread damage of the arteries with subsequent fibrosis of the myocardium. If the fibrosis of the myocardium precedes or accompanies the hardening of the larger vessels, cardiac work and blood demand are decreased without disproportion to the amount of blood supplied by the larger coronary vessels. As a result of myocardial fibrosis, cardiac reserve is decreased.

Whenever the lesion is moderate the picture of the *senile heart* is observed. On the other hand if severe lesions occur within a short time or damage is extensive, *heart failure* may follow. Many cases which a few decades ago were called *myocarditis* represented advanced coronary heart disease with heart failure. The same picture occurs in patients with a history of previous myocardial infarcts whenever the remaining ventricular wall undergoes a process of fibrosis.

The treatment of heart failure is the same as in other cardiac patients. However the best results are obtained by *sodium restriction* and *proper diet* including large doses of vitamin B1 and *mercurial diuretics* rather than by the use of digitalis glycosides.

Myocardial fibrosis may be widespread in areas of the myocardium outside the ventricular walls. Extensive damage of the atrial wall or of the conducting system may

cause atrial fibrillation nodal rhythm atrioventricular block or bundle branch block Most of these patients have no cardiac pain and many of them live for several years without myocardial infarct or cardiac failure

BALLISTOCARDIOGRAM

The ballistocardiogram of patients with coronary heart disease is frequently abnormal The possible abnormalities are 1) H wave of amplitude equal or higher than that of the J wave (early M type) 2) absence of the J wave 3) J wave M shaped at its peak (late M type) 4) J wave late in systole and deep K wave (late downstroke type) 5) R J interval longer than 0.29 second 6) L wave and after waves accentuated and 7) upward bowing of the J K segment

It is still open to question which part is played by hypertension or atherosclerosis of the aorta and large vessels in causing these changes As they are similar to those observed in elderly individuals they have a definite meaning only if observed in younger subjects It is also open to question whether the abnormalities of left ventricular contraction causing these changes might not be more clearly detected by the study of the electrokymogram of the left ventricle and the aortic arch or by recording a carotid tracing

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 a) ABBOTT M E In *Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine* New York Nelson 1944
- b) DRY T J *Manual of Cardiology* Philadelphia Saunders 1943
- 2 a) RICH A R AND GREGORY J F *Bull Hopkins Hosp* 1945 72 65 and 73 239
- b) FOX R A AND JONES I R *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1944 55 294
- 3 BLAND F F WHITE I D AND GARLAND J *Am Heart J* 1933 8 187
- 4 LAMB A R AND TURNER K B In *Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine* Philadelphia Davis 1947
- 5 SPRAGUE H B In *Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine* Philadelphia Davis 1942
- 6 SMITH F M In *Cyclopedia of Medicine* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 7 VON GLAHN *The Pathology of the Coronary Arteries in Diseases of the Coronary Arteries and Cardiac Pain* Edited by LEVY R L New York Macmillan 1936
- 8 GROSS L *The Blood Supply to the Heart in Its Anatomical and Clinical Aspects* New York Hoeber 1921
- 9 GROSS L KUGEL M A AND ERSTEIN E Z *Am J Path* 1935 11 253
- 10 LEVY R *Diseases of the Coronary System* New York Macmillan 1936
- 11 ROESSLE Quoted by von Glahn (7)
- 12 a) LEARY T *Arch Path* 1934 17 453
- Also Mo Conc *Cardiov Dis* 1942 11 11
- b) SCHLESINGER M J AND ZOLL P M *Arch Path* 1941 32 118
- c) FRENCH A J AND DOCK W J A *M A* 1944 124 1233
- 13 GRANT R T *Clin Sci* 1940 4 245
- 14 SAPHIR O *Arch Path* 1942 11 88
- 15 VON ALBERTINI A *Schw med Woch* 1943 73 790
- 16 DAVIS D AND BLUMGART H L *Ann Int Med* 1937 11 1094
- 17 LEVY R In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 18 SCHLESINGER M J *Am Heart J* 1938 16 525
- 19 BLUMGART H L SCHLESINGER M J AND CO WORKERS *Am Heart J* 1940 19 1 and 1941 22 1 *Am J M Sci* 1937 194 493 *J A M A* 1941 116 91 *Arch Int Med* 1941 68 181
- 20 a) OBRASTOW W P AND STRASCHKE CO *N D Zest Klin Med* 1910 71 116
- b) HERRICK J B *J A M A* 1919 72 387
- 21 MASTER A M AND CO WORKERS *Am Heart J* 1944 27 803
- 22 STERNBERG M *Wien med Woch* 1910 60 14
- 23 WIGGERS C J In *Diseases of the Coronary System* Edited by LEVY New York Macmillan 1936
- 24 RUBINO A *Folia Med* 1937 11 1165
- 25 MASTER A M DOCK S AND JAFFEE H L *J A M A* 1937 109 546
- 26 BLUMGART H L *J A M A* 1945 128 775
- 27 LEARY T *Am Heart J* 1935 10 323
- 28 WINTERITZ M C THOMAS H M AND LeCOMPTE P M *The Biology of Arteriosclerosis* Springfield Thomas 1938
- 29 a) WILLIAMS F A *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 1936 11 414

- b) WAITZKIN L Ann Int Med 1944 21 421
- c) BOYER A H New England J Med 1947 227 625
- 30 a) DRENSLER W Am Heart J 1944 28 81
- b) ROSENBAUM F F WILSON F N AND JOHNSTON F D Am Heart J 1945 30 11
- 31 a) LIBMAN E Am Heart J 1925 1 2
- b) BICKEL G MOZER J J AND SCICLOUNOFF F Arch Mal Coeur 1935 77 73
- c) SHOOKHOFF C DOUGLAS A H AND RABINOWITZ M A Ann Int Med 1936 9 1101
- 32 WILSON F N JOHNSTON F C AND HILL I G W Am Heart J 1935 10 176
- 33 PARDEE H E M AND GOLDENBERG M Am Heart J 1945 30 367
- 34 a) BELLET S AND McMILLAN T M In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- b) WILSON F N In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 35 WOOD F C WOLPERTH C C AND BELLET S Am Heart J 1938 16 387
- 36 a) PARDEE H E B Arch Int Med 1920 26 244
- b) WILLIS F A Atlantic M J 1925 29 9
- c) PARKINSON J AND BEDFORD D F Lancet 1928 1 4
- d) LEVINE S A Medicine 1929 8 245
- 37 BOSCO G A *Sindrome Coronario Lateral* Buenos Aires Ferrari 1943
- 38 WILSON F N Rev Arg Card 1944 11 1
- 39 THOMPSON H W AND FEIL H Am J M Sci 1944 207 588
- 40 YOUNG E W AND KOENIG B S Am Heart J 1944 28 281
- 41 WEINBERG H B AND KATZ L N Am Heart J 1941 21 699
- 42 MASIE E AND MILLER W C Am J Med Sci 1943 206 353
- 43 MASTER A M AND CO WORKERS Mo Conc Cardio Dis 1941 10 1 6
- 44 LAGERLEIDER H I AND GUBNER R In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 45 BLUMER G Ann Int Med 1937 11 499
- 46 a) ROSENBAUM F F AND LEVINE S A Arch Int Med 1941 68 913
- b) WHITE P D *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1944
- 47 CATALDI G Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1937 21 2
- 48 STAD F A AND IBERT R V Arch Int Med 1947 69 369
- 49 LUISADA A A Atti Congr Soc Ital Cardiol 1935
- 50 HESS L Deut Arch Klin Med 1937 173 283
- 51 COELHO E AND ROCHETA J Ann Med 1933 34 91
- 52 CATALDI G M Ioliel (sez med) (Rome) 1937 44 170 Arch Mal Coeur 1935 28 604
- 53 CUSHING E H FEIL H S STANTON F J AND WARTMENT W M Brit Heart J 1942 4 17
- 54 a) GILBERT N C FENN G K AND LEROY G V J A M A 1940 115 1962
- b) McMILLAN R I COWDEN F I AND REINHART J H Am Heart J 1945 29 580
- 55 a) LEVINE S A Mo Conc Cardio Dis 1942 11 1 6
- b) ROENBAUM F F AND LEVINE S A Arch Int Med 1941 88 913 and 1945
- c) MASTER A M Mo Conc Cardio Dis 1936 5 1 12
- 56 SCHERF D REINSTEIN H AND KLOTZ S D Rev Gastroenterol 1941 8 343
- 57 a) MASTER A M AND JAFFE H L J Mt Sinai Hosp 1940 7 26
- b) KINNEY T D AND MALLORY K New England J Med 1945 232 215
- 58 SCHERF D AND SCHOENBRUNNER F Klin Woch 1937 16 340
- 59 RAAB A P AND RABINOWITZ M A J A M A 1936 106 1705
- 60 DONATH F Wien klin Woch 1936 (1) 49 692
- 61 BICHINDER W C Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1944 56 225
- 62 BARACH A L AND LEVY R L J A M A 1934 103 1690
- 63 ALEY J M AND NEURATH O J A M A 1945 128 1016
- 64 KIRSCH B J Exp Med & Surg 1915 3 1
- 65 MCGUIRE DOLFS H South M J 1943 36 109
- 66 MOKOTOFF R AND KATZ L N Am Heart J 1945 30 215
- 67 a) FRIEDMAN E AND WHITE P D Ann Int Med 1944 21 778
- b) JETTLE W W AND WHITE P D Ann Int Med 1944 21 783
- 68 HEBERDEN W *Commentaries on the History and Cure of Diseases* London 1746 180
- 69 LAQUEZ H *Maladies du Coeur* Paris Baillere 1925
- 70 a) WOOD F C WOLPERTH C C AND BELLET S Am Heart J 1938 16 35

- b) RISEMAN I F WALLER J V AND BROWN M G *Am Heart J* 1940 **III** 683
- 71 LEVINE S A ERN TENE A C AND JACOBSON B M *Arch Int Med* 1940 **45** 191
- 72 LEWIS T *Paris New York Macmillan* 1942
- 73 DANIELOPOLU D *L'ingine de Poitrine Paris Masson* 1927
- 74 LUNDELL A AND GIANNONI A *Il Dolore Viscerale Bologna Cappelli* 1929
- 75 WEISS E AND DAVIS D *Am J M Sci* 1918 **176** 517
- 76 DIETRICH E AND SCHWIEGK H *Klin Woch* 1933 **12** 135
- 77 LEVY R L BRUNN H G AND RUSSELL V G *Am J M Sci* 1933 **197** 241
- 78 RISEMAN J E F WALLER J V AND BROWN M G *Am Heart J* 1940 **19** 683
- 79 a) ROEMHELD I *Fortschr d Med* 1913 **3** 936
b) BERGMANN G *Deut Med Woch* 1913 **39** 605
- 80 CHAPMAN E M AND ASMUSSEN E J *Chn Investigation* 1942 **21** 393
- 81 KERR W J *Am Heart J* 1938 **16** 544
- 82 MILLER H R *Angina Pectoris Baltimore The Williams & Wilkins Co* 1939
- 83 LEVY R L In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease Philadelphia Davis* 1945
- 84 LEVY R L *Ann Int Med* 1937 **11** 833
- 85 a) JONVESCO T *Bull Acad Méd* 1920 **84** 93 Also *Presse Méd* 1922 **30** 353
b) DANIELOPOLU D *L'ingine de Poitrine Paris Masson* 1927 Also *Brit M J* 1924 **11** 553
c) LERICHE R AND FONTAINE P *Arch Mal Coeur* 1927 **20** 513
d) FONTAINE P *Sinab Méd* 1926 **III** 85 and 146
e) COFFEY W B AND BROWN P R *Arch Int Med* 1923 **31** 200
f) CUTTER E C *Am J M Sci* 1927 **173** 613
g) SWEETLOW G I *Am Heart J* 1925/1926 **1** 393
h) WHITE J C AND WHITE P D *J A M A* 1928 **90** 1099
i) RICHARDSON E P AND WHITE P D *Am J M Sci* 1929 **177** 161
j) FAUTEUX M AND PALMER J H *Canad M A J* 1941 **45** 295
k) FAUTEUX M *Am Heart J* 1946 **31** 260
l) VINEBERG A *Canad M A J* 1946 **55** 117
- 86 WHITE J C AND SMITHWICK R H *The Autonomic Nervous System Anatomy Physiology and Surgical Application New York Macmillan* 1941
- 87 RAAB W AND SOLLE A B *Am J Roentgenol* 1944 **31** 364
- 88 a) BLUMGART H L LEVINE S A AND BERLIN D D *Arch Int Med* 1933 **52** 866
b) BLUMGART H L RISEMAN J E F DAVIS D AND BERLIN D D *Arch Int Med* 1933 **52** 167 J A M A 1935 **104** 17 *Ann Int Med* 1934 **7** 1469
- 89 O'SHAUGHNESSY L *Brit J Surg* 1936 **23** 667 Also *Lancet* 1937 (1) 135 and 1938 (2) 1
- 90 BECK C S In *Disease of the Coronary System Edited by Levy New York Macmillan* 1936
- 91 THOMPSON E A AND RAISBECK M G *Ann Int Med* 1942 **16** 495
- 92 a) LESSER M A *New England J Med* 1942 **226** 51 and 1943 **228** 185
b) LEVINE S A AND LYKOFF W B *New England J Med* 1943 **229** 770
- 93 FAUTEUX M AND SWENSON O *Un Méd Canada* 1945 **74** 1505
- 94 VELA M *Valor Pronostico del Electrocardiograma Madrid Libr Edit Cient Med Esp* 1944
- 95 DONALD T C *New Orleans Med & Surg J* 1945 **98** 195
- 96 a) CASTEL M R *Prensa Med Arg* 1931 **18** 781
b) CAPACCI A AND MERLI A *Cuore e Circ* 1943 **27** 16
- 97 ROSENBAUM F F WILSON F A AND JOHNSTON F D *Am Heart J* 1946 **32** 135
- 98 BAYLEY R H *Am Heart J* 1942 **24** 514 and 1943 **26** 763
- 99 BURCH G AND WILSON T A *Primer of Electrocardiography Philadelphia Lea and Febiger* 1945
- 100 a) WILSON F N AND CO WORKERS *Am Heart J* 1934 **9** 477 and 1946 **32** 277
b) GOLDBERGER E *Unipolar Lead Electrocardiography Philadelphia Lea and Febiger* 1941
- 101 MYER G B AND KLEIN H A *Am Heart J* 1944 **25** 727
- 102 HELLERSTEIN H K AND KATZ L N *Am Heart J* 1943 **36** 184
- 103 WILSON F N AND CO WORKERS *Am Heart J* 1945 **30** 11 and 1946 **32** 277
- 104 GUBNER R CRAWFORD J H AND UNGERLEIDER H E *Am Heart J* 1952 **44** 8 and 729

- 105 MASTER A M AND CO WORKERS *Am Heart J* 1940 **20** 453 and 461 and 1940 **20** 475
- 106 LUISADA A A *J Am. Geriatr Soc* 1953 **1** 331
- 107 a) TENNANT R AND WIGGERS C J *Am J Physical* 1935 **112** 351
b) MURRAY G *Ann Surg* 1947 **126** 523
- 108 STROLD M W AND FEIL H S *Am Heart J* 1948 **35** 910
- 109 a) HAYMAN A S *Rev. Cub Card* 1947 **3** 1
b) STROLD W D AND WAGNER J A *Ann Int Med* 1941 **15** 25
- 110 CHINI V *Settim Med (Milan)* 1947 **35** 443
- 111 EDMONSON H A AND HOVIE H J *Am Heart J* 1942 **24** 719
- 112 a) WEBER M I *Ann Int Med* 1943 **19** 973
b) CARROLL D AND CUMMINS S D *Am Heart J* 1947 **34** 894
- 113 WELIN G *Nordisk Med (Stockholm)* 1948 **37** 324
- 114 WRIGHT I S MARPLE C D AND BECK D F J A M A 1948 **138** 1074
- 115 a) ALLEN E V AND CO WORKERS *Ann Int Med* 1947 **27** 371
b) PARKER R I AND BARKER V W *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 1947 **22** 185
- 116 WOOD F C *Med Clin North America* 1946 **30** 1275
- 117 MASTER A M DACK S AND JAFFE H L *Arch Int Med* 1939 **64** 767
- 118 UNDERDAHL L O AND SMITH H L *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 1947 **22** 419
- 119 YATER W M AND CO WORKERS *Am Heart J* 1948 **36** 372 451 and 683
- 120 RAVICH R M AND ROSENBLATT P J *Pediatr* 1947 **31** 251
- 121 WILBURNE M *et al Am Heart J* 1947 **34** 860
- 122 SCOTT D H *Am Heart J* 1948 **36** 403
- 123 PAUL O SWEET AND WHITE P D *New England Heart A soc* 1948
- 124 ROESLER H AND DRESSLER W *Am Heart J* 1947 **34** 817
- 125 DOCK W J A M A 1946 **131** 875
- 126 WARTMAN W B AND HELLER TEIN H K *Ann Int Med* 1948 **28** 41
- 127 HORWITZ O *et al J A M A* 1943 **121** 1342
- 128 FOORD A G J A M A 1948 **138** 1009
- 129 a) ROSS J *Brain* 1887-88 **10** 333
b) HAD H *Brain* 1893 **16** 1
- c) MACKENZIE J *Symptoms and Their Interpretation* London Shaw and Sons 1909
- 130 a) RINZLER S H AND TRAVELL J *Am Heart J* 1948 **35** 248
b) RINZLER S H *Am J Med* 1948 **5** 736
- 131 RAAB W *Ann Int Med* 1948 **28** 1010
- 132 BLUMGART H L AND CO WORKERS *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1948 **29** 190
- 133 FISHER R L AND ZUCKERMAN M *Michigan State M Soc J* 1947 **46** 1059
- 134 BECK C E AND STANTON F J A M A 1948 **137** 436
- 135 LEVY R L AND CO WORKER III *Inter American Congress of Cardiology* Chicago 1948
- 136 FREEDBERG A S *New England Heart A soc* 1948
- 137 RUSKIN A *Am Heart J* 1947 **34** 589
- 138 BRAMS W A *Treatment of Heart Disease* Philadelphia Saunders 1945
- 139 BURCH G E AND REASER P I *Primer of Cardiology* Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1947
- 140 PICK R STAMLER J ROBBARD S AND KATZ L V *Circ* 1952 **6** 838
- 141 GOFMAN J W *et al Circ* 1950 **2** 161
- 142 BARKER J M *The Unipolar Electrocardiogram* New York Appleton Century 1950
- 143 LUISADA A A AND FLEISCHNER F C *Acta Cardiol* 1948 **3** 308
- 144 SAMET P SCHWEDEL J B AND MEDNICK H *Am Heart J* 1950 **39** 749
- 145 DACK S PALEY D H AND STASSMAN M L *Circ* 1950 **1** 551
- 146 a) LUISADA A A WEYL R AND GOLDMAN M *Circ* 1952 **5** 363
b) GOLDMANN M AND LUISADA A A *Ann Int Med* 1952 **37** 1991
- 147 MASTER A M *Ann Int Med* 1950 **32** 84
- 148 CONTRAS S AND HARRING O M *Circ* 1950 **6** 250
- 149 JOHN O F H A M A *Arch Path* 1950 **64** 234
- 150 GASL B M AND LOEFFLER E *Ped* 1949 **4** 498
- 151 DUTRA F R *Arch Int Med* 1950 **85** 955
- 152 VINEBERG A J *Thoracic Surg* 1950 **20** 4
- 153 LEVINE S A AND LOWE B J A M A 1950 **148** 1365
- 154 STEINBROCKER O *et al Ann Int Med* 1949 **19** 473
- 155 COMROE J H *et al Am J Physiol* 1951 **173** 39
- 156 MEDALIA L A AND WHITE I D J A M A 1950 **149** 1433

Diseases of the Pericardium

Congenital Anomalies of the Pericardium (1)

These may vary from the *complete absence of the pericardial sac* to a more or less extensive defect of its left portion. In the latter case the pericardial cavity communicates freely with the left pleural cavity. A displacement of the left phrenic nerve toward the right is usually present.

Associated anomalies of the heart, lungs, kidneys, and peritoneum are common. The heart is enlarged in 50 per cent of the cases but this has no influence on life expectancy.

Wild precordial pain has been observed in some cases; *herniation of the heart* followed by *strangulation* occurred in others.

When there is a *common pleuropericardial cavity* the anomaly may be suspected because of unexplained cardiac displacement to the left, abnormal cardiac mobility, and cardiac enlargement.

Traumatic Rupture of the Pericardium (2)

Traumatic rupture is usually the result of penetrating wounds or thoracic compression with or without fracture of the ribs, sternum, or vertebrae. It is found most frequently in persons who have been struck or run over by automobiles but may occur after falling from a height or as the result of crushing or burying. *Contusion* and even *strangulation of the heart* may complicate *pericardial tears* produced by compression.

The most common lesion is a tear on the left side with the heart protruding through the opening. *Intense precordial pain* is present in some cases. A *friction rub* sometimes develops.

A *curious systolic murmur* with alter-

nating loud and soft sounds sharply interrupted by a pause (*millwheel murmur*) was audible in one case; in another there was a murmur occurring once every 40 many pulsations and similar to the sound produced by blowing into an empty bottle (3).

The condition may result in *pneumopericarditis*, *simple pericarditis*, or *retraction of the torn margin with herniation* and possibly *strangulation of the heart* followed by death.

Herniation of the Heart

As seen above, *herniation of the heart* may follow congenital anomalies or traumatic rupture of the pericardium. *Surgical removal of part of the parietal pericardium* may also be followed by *herniation and strangulation of the heart* followed by *vascular collapse* (45).

Hemopericardium (25)

Hemorrhage into the pericardial cavity occurs under the following conditions: penetrating wound of the heart and large vessels; contusion of the heart with or without rupture; rupture of the ventricular wall soon after myocardial infarction or after formation of an aneurysm; rupture of an intrapericardial aortic aneurysm; *curv* hemorrhagic diseases; and cardiac tumors. Hemopericardium occurred in some instances following intracardiac injection of epinephrine.

The hemorrhage may occur *rapidly* or *slowly*; it may be constant or recurrent. If the bleeding is low or intermittent a large amount of blood collects in the pericardial cavity and gives the symptoms and signs

of effusion. If the bleeding is rapid *shock* and *acute tamponade* result.

While rapid and multiple blood transfusions are carried out one or more *pericardial aspirations* should be performed. If bleeding persists surgical intervention is resorted to. It consists of suture of the ruptured ventricular wall (only in cases of trauma).

Coagulation and organization of the extravasated blood may result in *chronic tamponade* or *constriction* (page 448). *Decortication of the heart* is then necessary.

Pneumopericardium

This condition may be caused by putrid pericarditis, rupture of a pulmonary cavity into the pericardium, or by an esophageal or gastric tumor (70). It may follow paracentesis of the pericardium. When the amount of fluid is small the gas which distends the pericardium causes the *disappearance of cardiac dullness*. X-ray easily reveals the existence and amount of gas because the pericardial sac is visible as a thin line separated from the cardiac silhouette (fig. 263).

Tumors

Tumors of the pericardium are most frequently *sarcomata*, usually metastatic. Sometimes they invade the pericardial sac as a result of extension from nearby organs (lungs, mediastinal lymph nodes, etc.) at other times they lie beneath the epicardium after hematogenous implantation. *Metastatic carcinomata*, rare *primary sarcomata* and benign tumors (such as *fibromata*, *lipomata* or *angiomata*) have been described. These may give purely local disturbances or, if diffuse, the picture of constrictive mediastinopericarditis.

Hydatid Cysts

Hydatid cysts may occur in the pericardium. They may rupture into one of the ventricles if they invade the heart muscle and may cause pericardial adhesions (page 400).

Pericarditis

CAUSES

There are three main routes along which infection can be carried into the pericardial sac: a) through the blood stream in cases of sepsis; b) from the heart and vessels in cases of myocarditis or aortitis; c) from the surrounding organs in cases of pleurisy, hepatitis, peritonitis, pulmonary abscess, lymphadenitis, esophageal foreign body, or penetrating wound of the chest.

Numerous diseases and agents may cause pericarditis: a) Rheumatic disease; b) Tuberculosis; c) Bacterial infections caused by the *Pneumococcus*, *Streptococcus*, *Staphylococcus*, *Meningococcus*, *Gonococcus*, *Escherichia coli*, *Brucella melitensis*, *Bacillus tularensis* or *Hemophilus influenzae*; d) Myocardial infarction; e) Chronic glomerulonephritis and malignant hypertension; f) Syphilis; g) Amebiasis or actinomycosis; h) Tumors; i) Scurvy; j) A recently described form is part of a polyserositis and is associated with either scleroderma or Libman-Sacks' endocarditis (86); k) Acute benign forms. The last group probably includes various types, some caused by a virus while others seem to follow an upper respiratory infection.

Tuberculous pericarditis is frequently part of a more diffuse lesion involving many serous membranes (*polyserositis*). *Rheumatic pericarditis* is usually associated with myocardial and endocardial lesions (*pancarditis*). An allergic reaction has been advocated for both in the former case to tubercular and, in the latter to streptococcal antigens. An allergic reaction to bacterial proteins has also been postulated in some cases of benign nonspecific pericarditis (71, 72).

The possibility that a slight change of either the pH or the permeability of the serous membrane due to mild infection may cause local fixation of toxins has been considered.

Pneumococcal pericarditis may occur during pneumonia but most frequently is the result of an empyema of the left side.

Streptococcus pericarditis is the result of sepsis pulmonary abscess or esophageal ulcer

While most forms of pericarditis may result in the production of adhesions, the occurrence of constrictive pericarditis is relatively rare. Most of the cases of constrictive pericarditis are caused by tuberculosis (73-63). However other causes are definitely possible including collagen diseases (86).

Acute and Subacute Pericarditis

LESIONS

Two different stages or phases can be recognized dry pericarditis and pericarditis with effusion. The former is always present the latter may follow. Either stage may be followed by a chronic stage and may result in the formation of adhesions.

Dry pericarditis This may be limited to the vascular pedicle the apex the region of the inferior vena cava or may be diffuse. The epicardium is red opaque and covered by loose yellowish fibrinous exudate. The pericardial fluid normally limited to a very small amount becomes more abundant and thicker because of fibrin and leucocytes. More strata of fibrinous exudate may be added until an irregular mass which may attain even 10 mm in thickness forms between the heart and pericardial sac (*cor tiliosum*). A connective tissue reaction gradually leads to organization of the exudate which is partly reabsorbed and partly transformed into fibrous tissue.

Pericarditis with effusion After an initial dry phase the pericardial fluid rapidly increases and distends the serous cavity. The exudate may attain a volume of 600 to 800 cc and varies in composition.

a) *Serofibrinous effusion* The fluid is yellow or rose-colored and contains fibrin leucocytes a few red cells and droplets of fat. It is typical of rheumatic and tubercular pericarditis.

b) *Purulent effusion* The fluid is yellowish or grayish and thick. It contains a large

percentage of pus cells and drops of fat. It is typical of pneumococcal or streptococcal infections but may be found in tubercular infection (*caseous pericarditis*).

c) *Hemorrhagic effusion* The fluid is pink or reddish and contains a large percentage of red cells. It may be found in tubercular streptococcal neoplastic or uremic pericarditis.

Pericarditis with effusion should not be confused with transudation of the pericardial cavity is a common event in congestive failure nephrosis myxedema thiamine deficiency and prolonged agony. The fluid then contains a smaller percentage of albumin fibrin and cellular elements (page 453).

Involvement of the superficial layers of the myocardium is present in all cases of pericarditis.

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

When pericarditis is a complication of an acute infection its onset is marked by increase in temperature restlessness and slight dyspnea. Both in these cases and when pericarditis is the only lesion the following symptoms and signs may be present: *stitching or dull precordial pain*, *palpitation*, *obstinate nonproductive cough* and occasionally *dysphagia*. The pulse is small and rapid.

DRY PERICARDITIS

The area of cardiac dullness may be enlarged (4). Auscultation reveals the existence of *friction rubs* which may be of fine coarse or creaking type. They are poorly transmitted seem superficial and are louder with the patient in the sitting position. They are usually present in two different phases of the cardiac cycle (to-and-fro rubs) and are similar. When the rubs are short and occur both in systole and diastole they cause a typical sequence called *locomotive rhythm*. This is different from a quadruple rhythm of a more common type (page 370) because in the latter the extra

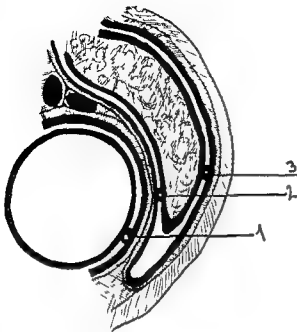


FIG 258 Sites of friction rubs 1 pericardial 2 pleuro pericardial 3 pleural

sounds are dull and of poor intensity while in the former they are loud and snapping, moreover in locomotive rhythm the two additional sounds are in systole and diastole while in a quadruple rhythm they are both in diastole

Graphic Tracings

Electrocardiogram The ECG may be completely normal in the phase of dry pericarditis except for *sinus tachycardia*. However electrocardiographic changes consisting of *low voltage of the QRS complex* and *changes of ST and T* may be observed

Phonocardiogram The friction rubs are transcribed as vibrations of various pitches with those of higher pitch prevailing. These are grouped in either two or three phases of the cardiac cycle. The most common are those which occur during *presystole* and *systole* (to-and fro rubs) a third group may take place in *early diastole* (5)

Course

Three possibilities should be considered

a) The pericarditis has a favorable evolu-

tion and heals without appreciable effusion leaving no trace b) Effusion takes place c) Multiple adhesions develop

Diagnosis

The diagnosis is based upon auscultation of friction rubs. These are seldom mistaken for anything else but on the other hand other sounds may be mistaken for them. The systolic rub which is usually louder and longer than the presystolic lags after the first sound and is well separated from it.

The rapid succession of two or three systolic clicks (page 450) may simulate a systolic rub (6). However in such cases no abnormal extra sound occurs during diastole a fact which is unusual in pericarditis.

Harsh or grating systolic murmurs may be mistaken for rubs. Their blowing type and the absence of diastolic murmurs help to rule out friction rubs. The differentiation of *pleuropericardial* from *pericardial friction rubs* (fig 258) is sometimes difficult. The former are due to inflammation of the pericardial pleura and may have a cardiac rhythm. They are usually heard along the left margin of the pericardium and are far more influenced by respiration than pericardial rubs.

In certain normal individuals with flat chests either heart sound or both may be associated with a superficial crunching sound when the stethoscope is placed at the lower left border of the sternum (19). This has been attributed to rubbing of the heart against the superficial structures.

PERICARDITIS WITH EFFUSION

The patient may present pallor, ahen gray color or cyanosis. Dyspnea is common and may be so severe that the patient bends forward (9b) and occasionally stoops in the Mohammedan prayer position (34) in order to relieve the compression of the fluid on the large veins. Nausea, dysphagia, hiccup and dysphonia are possible.

Peripheral edema is present in cases of large effusion. It may predominate in the

distrust of the superior vena in the morning and in that of the inferior vena in the late afternoon as the result of different decubitus of the patient (7)

The jugular veins are engorged and fail to show appreciable pulsations (34b). The pulse is small, weak and regular (except in rheumatic cases). Forced inspiration may cause the double inspiratory phenomenon of Kussmaul (8), increased swelling of the jugular veins and decreased radial pulse during inspiration (so-called paradoxical pulse) (fig 269).

The precordial area may present a certain bulging due to flattening of the intercostal spaces. In purulent pericarditis there may be edema of the chest wall.

The apical thrust is seldom visible, a fact which is important only in children or when it was previously present. When the apical thrust is visible within the area of dullness this may be significant.

The area of cardiac dullness becomes roughly triangular due to extension near the apex and obtuseness of the cardiohepatic angle (9) (fig 269). A coincidence between relative and absolute dullness and the abrupt transition from dullness to normal resonance are typical.

Percussion of the heart in supine, lateral and sitting positions, reveals changes of

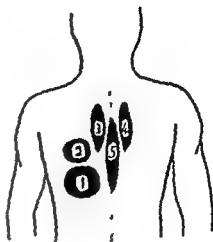


FIG 269 Different areas of dullness on the posterior surface of the thorax in pericarditis with effusion. 1 Pins sign (left base) 2 Ewart's sign (angle of scapula) 3 Germe's sign (left paravertebral area) 4 Ewart-Teissier's sign (right paravertebral area) 5 Ewart's sign (spine)

the area of dullness due to shifting of the fluid. When the effusion is large there is an increase of the area of dullness in the 2nd and 3rd spaces (10). The area of Traube may become dull owing to descent of the left hepatic lobe (11).

An area of dullness situated in various points of the back (fig 269) and accompanied by bronchial breathing has been described by different authors (12).

Auscultation reveals dull, muffled and distant cardiac sounds. Friction rubs may still be heard and there may be a triple rhythm.

The liver is frequently enlarged but its enlargement may be simulated by lowering of the diaphragm. Ascites is possible. When present it is usually caused by peritonitis of the same etiology as the pericarditis.

Arterial pressure is normal or low, venous pressure is elevated.

Clinical Findings

Electrocardiogram. Three different electrocardiographic stages are recognized (13, 68, 69).

1) *Acute stage.* The pattern consists of

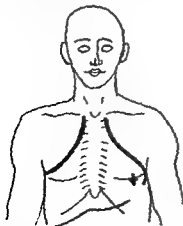


FIG 269 Area of dullness in pericarditis with effusion. + marks the seat of the apical thrust

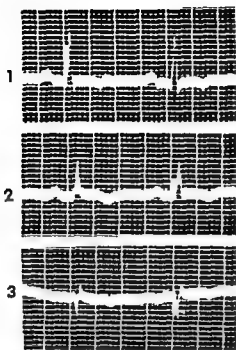


FIG. 261 Electrocardiogram in a case of pericarditis with effusion Subacute stage

elevation of ST in the limb and chest leads. This elevation is maximal if the exploring electrode is placed over the area where a friction rub is audible.

2) *Subacute stage* The ST elevation gradually decreases and a moderate inversion of T in the limb and the chest leads becomes apparent. The T waves are not cove shaped (fig. 261).

3) *Chronic stage* The inverted T wave may last for a long time but it usually returns to normal within a few weeks.

In general the maximum inversion of T occurs between the 16th and the 43rd day of disease; it may involve only one or two leads while the others present low T.

No deep Q wave is ever present. Low voltage may be observed in large effusions.

Electrokymogram The electrokymogram of both cardiac borders reveals small (and even absent) pulsations in pericarditis with effusion. Theoretically the pulsations of the aortic arch should be normal but in some cases the aortic pulsations also are small.

Jugular tracings It is typical to obtain tracings with poor amplitude of all waves. This is in contrast with the engorgement of the veins.

X Ray

The unexplained finding of an enlarged cardiac silhouette is important. A small effusion is revealed by a bulging of the posterior inferior part of the silhouette (15a). Later on the grooves around the heart and vessels fill out the pedicle shortens and the waist of the heart is straightened. If the patient changes from the erect to the supine position the basal shadow widens.

A large effusion frequently gives a water bottle shape in the erect, and a globular or rectangular shape in the recumbent position. However two different profiles have been described: the effusion with tense and the effusion with flaccid pericardium (14). The former may fail to reveal the effusion because the main landmarks of the cardiac silhouette are preserved and only the functional data are changed (fig. 262) (15).

Roentgenymography may show contrast between strong pulsations of the aorta and weak pulsations of the ventricular margin (16). This contrast however, is absent if the ventricular contractions are small by effect of compression on the veins or failure.

Circulation Time

Arm to tongue time is usually normal (76). This is in contrast with the prolonged circulation time of the enlarged hearts.

Mechanism of the Signs

Experimental studies on pericardial effusion have shown that the fluid collects first over that portion of the heart which lies between the diaphragm and the anterior chest wall. As the amount increases the effusion extends around the right margin and over the apex. The easily expanding lung tissue allows the fluid to follow gravity.



FIG 262 Cardiac silhouette in two types of *pericarditis with effusion*. A: tense pericardium. B: flaccid pericardium. (Inspired by originals of Heckmann.)

except when the effusion is very abundant the pericardial sac is very tense or the elasticity of the lung is altered.

The compression developed by the fluid is exerted mainly on organs which have low pressure and small contractions, i.e. the large veins and the atria. This compression is usually felt to a greater extent by the inferior vena and the hepatic veins (which sometimes enter the vena within or near the pericardium). On the contrary, the superior vena is mainly compressed if the patient lies supine as sometimes during a deep sleep.

A rapidly accumulating massive effusion may compress the whole heart with maximum effect over the right atrium. In such a case both the superior and the inferior vena are dilated and congested (62).

Animal experimentation has proven that the rise of venous pressure takes place both in the systemic and in the pulmonary circulation (77). This is the cause of the inflow stasis (43). High venous pressure has a compensatory action because it increases the filling gradient of the heart (venous pressure minus intrapericardial pressure).

The enlargement of the heart is more marked than previously thought (4) and may be explained by superficial myocarditis and myocardial edema. These are more severe in rheumatic and bacterial forms than in tubercular cases. Superficial myocarditis is the cause of the electrocardiographic changes.

As previously discussed (page 416) a subpericardial lesion is followed by a) a pattern of ischemia (inversion of the T wave) due to slower repolarization in the superficial layers and inversion of the vector of repolarization and b) a pattern of injury (upward displacement of ST) due to the fact that the electrode faces the damaged zone which is positive in relationship to the normal layers during depolarization. Low voltage if present is caused by the effusion which short circuits some of the changes of potential.

The heart moves freely within the effusion as proven by the frequent persistence of rubs.

It is generally admitted that the pericardium is insensitive to ordinary stimuli. However distention of the pericardial cavity and irritation of the anterior surface of the parietal pericardium cause severe substernal pain (21a).

Varieties—Complications

Different types of pericarditis are due to different causes.

Rheumatic pericarditis. Pericarditis has usually a favorable evolution and disappears within 3 to 20 days. If effusion develops there is a longer course but the fluid may be reabsorbed spontaneously within 1 to 2 months. Adhesions may develop but no constriction takes place except in rare cases.

Tubercular pericarditis. In general the inflammation starts insidiously and may

cause large effusions before the patient complains. Resorption is limited or absent and the course is long. The fluid is frequently hemorrhagic; it often tends to become thicker and may be transformed into a caseous mass which is later organized by fibrous tissue. If pleural and peritoneal effusions are present, the pericardial inflammation is part of a *polyserositis* (Concato's disease). Tubercular pericarditis frequently causes pericardial adhesions and may lead to constriction. In some cases the course is progressive and fatal.

Pyogenic pericarditis. It is accompanied by a purulent exudate and causes a severe clinical picture. Abscesses of the myocardium, the diaphragm or the liver or left-sided empyema may be associated.

Lytic pericarditis causes only limited signs and may be a post mortem finding. The fluid may be abundant and is frequently hemorrhagic. The electrocardiographic changes are variable and often minimal (60). The altered blood chemistry may contribute to this type of effusion.

One of the possible complications of pericarditis is *cardiac tamponade* due to rapid and progressive rise of intrapericardial pressure. When the venous pressure cannot rise further and its level is reached by the pressure of the effusion, venous return is blocked and cardiac output fails.

Purulent pericarditis at times may cause the formation of a *hydropneumopericardium* through formation of gas (*putrid peri-*

carditis) or perforation of a lung. In such cases auscultation reveals a splashing noise called *millwheel murmur* (*bruit de moulin*) and the x-ray shows that the fluid is limited by an horizontal level. The same picture may be observed after paracentesis of the pericardium followed by the introduction of air (fig. 263).

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of pericarditis offers no difficulty when rubs are heard as confusion with a valvular murmur is unlikely (page 85). Recognition of the effusion is easy when large, otherwise it may be confused with cardiac enlargement. Changes of the area of dullness in different positions, abrupt change from a clear to a dull percussion sound, apical thrust within the area of dullness, x-ray and electrocardiographic data are of help.

If there are severe changes of the electrocardiogram and prolonged pain *confusion with myocardial infarction* is possible. The differential diagnosis is based on the fact that in pericarditis fever and friction rubs start at the time of the pain while in myocardial infarction pain is the first manifestation and fever and rubs occur from 12 to 36 hours later. The ECG of myocardial infarction shows a gradual and rapid evolution culminating with the pattern of necrosis (deep Q or QS complex); this is never observed in pericarditis. However, anterior subepicardial infarction may give the same



FIG. 263. Cardiac silhouette of pericarditis before (A) and after paracentesis (B). The latter reveals the thickness of the pericardial sac because of the pneumopericardium and the heart within the sac (Inspired by originals of P. D. White).

ECG changes as pericarditis. A slower evolution leads to striking changes and the absence of a clear cut localization may frequently allow the ECG diagnosis of pericarditis.

Differentiation between *rheumatic* and *benign pericarditis* is usually possible. The former has a more severe myocardial involvement revealed by murmurs and changes of P R and Q T. Murmurs, leukocytosis and joint involvement are not present in benign pericarditis.

Differential diagnosis between the effusion due to *transudation* and that caused by inflammatory *exudation* is made by examining the physico-chemical properties of the fluid (page 403).

Differential diagnosis between pericarditis with effusion and *dilatation of the heart* can be made with the help of x-ray (78). The cardiac silhouette decreases during the *Valsalva* and increases during the *Mueller test* in cases with dilatation. It fails to show any marked change in cases with effusion. When pulsations are present they become more prominent with the *Valsalva test* in cardiac dilatation. Widening of the angle of the main bronchi is in favor of dilatation while an obscured angle of bifurcation is in favor of effusion. Absence of lateral and posterior displacement of the esophagus is likewise in favor of effusion.

Treatment

Whenever possible causal treatment should be undertaken. Therefore infections due to pyogenic bacteria, amebae or syphilis should be treated with specific drugs or antibiotics as early as possible. *Cortisone*, *ACTH*, or *aspirin* in adequate doses (page 198) favorably influence rheumatic pericarditis (page 447).

A specific and prophylactic therapy is possible in many acute forms. *Penicillin* treatment of pneumonia and of streptococcal sore throat has already decreased the occurrence of secondary pericarditis

due to the *Pneumococcus* or *Streptococcus*. The same therapy should be used if the pericarditis is present. Whenever possible culture of the agent and testing of its resistance to antibiotics should be done. *Aureomycin* (1 gm orally every 6 hours for 4 days) then one half that dose for 3 days) has proved useful in cases of benign pericarditis (74). Early use of *streptomycin* in tubercular pericarditis is helpful and may prevent development of constriction (61, 75). It should be given both by intramuscular injection and intrapericardial instillation.

Morphine is necessary in cases with severe pain or dyspnea. A *light ice bag* placed over the precordial region is useful in the acute stage and gives comfort to the patient.

Digitalis is usually not helpful because the signs of congestion are not due to cardiac failure. On the other hand it is not contraindicated because the fall of venous pressure caused by digitalis in congestive failure is not observed in pericarditis. *Metrolol* or *coramin* (61) may be given in cases with low blood pressure and *quinidine* if premature beats or paroxysmal tachycardia occur.

Intubation in general is harmful because it decreases the venous pressure is a useful compensatory phenomenon.

Paracentesis of the pericardium. Aspiration of the pericardial fluid is indicated in the acute stage only if severe compression occurs. Otherwise it is advisable to wait until the subacute stage is reached when there is a less rapid production of exudate. The procedure should be done under local anesthesia. The needle may be introduced either outside the apex or at the junction of the xiphoid process with the left costal arch (21b) (figs 264 and 265). Posterior paracentesis has been accomplished in cases with posterior dullness without causing discomfort. If this does not control the effusion a valvular surgical drainage is necessary (80).

Aspiration of the fluid should be accompanied by introduction of air which is

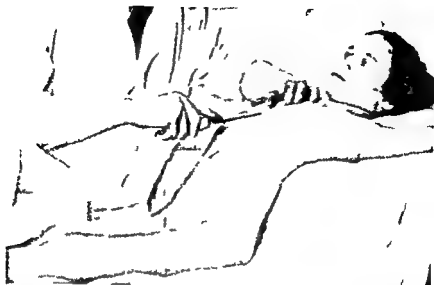


FIG 264 Position of the patient for *pericardial paracentesis* using Marfan's technique

later gradually absorbed. This procedure limits the production of new fluid and the formation of adhesions (22, 23).

In cases of purulent or putrid pericarditis

the pericardial cavity may be irrigated with physiologic solution but *open surgical drainage* is often necessary. *Intrapericardial injection of penicillin* has proved helpful in such cases (24) and may accompany parenteral treatment. Surgical intervention may be needed if medical treatment is unsuccessful.

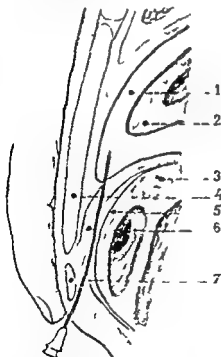


FIG 265 Course followed by the needle in *pericardial paracentesis*. 1 pericardial fluid 2 heart 3 liver 4 sternum 5 peritoneum 6 diaphragm 7 xiphoid process

Chronic Adhesive and Constrictive Pericarditis

While most types of acute pericarditis may result in chronic inflammation the fibrous bands resulting from this process cause constriction only in a minority of cases. The majority of cases with constrictive pericarditis are due to tuberculosis (73) while a few may be due to other bacterial infections, rheumatic fever, collagen diseases (86) or other causes.

LESIONS

Diffuse constrictive pericarditis (8, 27). The chronic inflammation results in the formation of fibrous tissue which connects the heart with the pericardial sac and this with the surrounding organs. There is a complete obliteration of the pericardial cavity and partial obliteration of the pleural cavities. A solid fibrous mass may enclose the heart

the large vessels and the diaphragm and is connected with the lungs and the sternum (fig 266) The subdiaphragmatic organs may also be involved There may be calcification or ossification of the pericardium (cardiac function is still possible either because only loose adhesions are present within the pericardial sac or because in complete adhesions are present outside)

Partial adhesive (possibly constrictive) pericarditis This may present different aspects

a) *Complete internal without external adhesions (concretio cordis)* The pericardial sac adheres to the heart but is free from the surrounding organs; the pericardium moves with the heart like a glove on the hand (22)

b) *Extensive external without internal adhesion (accretio cordis)* The heart is free within the pericardial sac but the latter is extensively connected to the sternum the lungs and the diaphragm

c) *Periaortic adhesions* This is frequently of luetic etiology and is usually associated with aortitis or aortic aneurysm the upper part of the pericardial sac may be obliterated

d) *Peri superior vena* This is frequently due to tuberculosis syphilis or tumors and presents a typical compression picture (superior caval syndrome) (page 463)

e) *Peri inferior vena* This is usually tubercular and also presents a typical picture (inferior caval syndrome) (page 464)

f) *String like adhesions of different types* (fig 267) Among them a ring like calcification of the AV groove is particularly important and may be constrictive Another important lesion is that which may develop in the interventricular groove because it may cause compression of the anterior descending branch of the left coronary artery

A peritonitis with perihepatitis may be present and is one of the causes of frosted liver

Different opinions have been expressed about the volume of the heart in adhesive

pericarditis A moderate increase is possible (25) but normal or decreased volume can be observed In general the heart of rheumatic pericarditis is increased while that of tubercular pericarditis is normal or slightly decreased Different elements may contribute to these variations existence of valvular defects before the compression started prolonged compression by abundant exudate initial constriction in the region of the venae cavae decreasing venous return age of the patient and condition of the myocardium Impairment of the venous return due to constriction may cause decreased work followed by atrophy and reduction in size of the myofibrils (29)

Calcification of the pericardium is due to deposition of calcium salts In general either calcification is not complete leaving an opening in the region of the apex or there are many plaques connected by fibrous tissue and permitting the same degree of mobility which is enjoyed by a lobster Ossification of the pericardium is rare but possible

Both the fibrous and the calcific processes may involve the myocardium and penetrate as deeply as the AV valves Valvular insufficiency and even stenosis may result but the latter is rare Stenosis of the venae cavae by diffuse or localized fibrosis is more

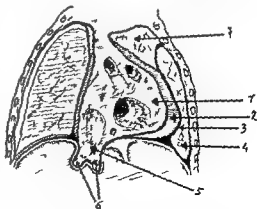


FIG 266 Constrictive pericarditis 1 heart - adherent thickened pericardial tissue 2 adhesion with left pleura 3 dilated inferior vena cava 4 dilated hepatic veins (Sketched after Elias and Feller)

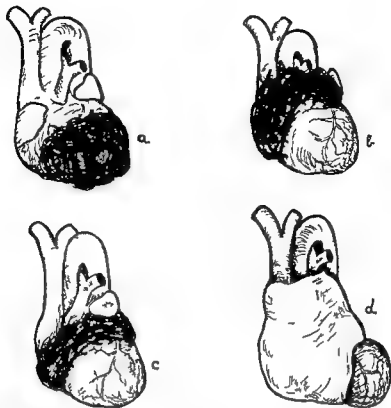


FIG. 26. Different types of pericardial adhesions: a pericardial type; b peribasal type; c string like type; d calcified pericardium with open at apex.



FIG. 26. Frost's liver.

common Stenosis of the hepatic veins is possible and may be due to either *compression* (30) or *thrombosis* with recanalization (63) The most common hepatic lesion is *sclerosis of the hepatic and portal veins* (86) This is frequently associated with liver cirrhosis The spleen presents fibrosis of the pulp hyperplasia of the sinuses and fibroadenia

A *systemic and pulmonary phlebosclerosis* is common and is accompanied by capillary fibrosis of the lungs (86)

The *frosted liver* is a special less common lesion The organ is covered by a whitish coat of fibrous tissue and is adherent to the diaphragm (31-32) (fig 268) strong spokes of fibrous tissue penetrate into the liver and form a network within which the dilated veins are visible This lesion is due to *simultaneous action of chronic engorgement of the hepatic veins plus chronic inflammation of the peritoneum* It is therefore typical of *Pick's syndrome*⁷⁰ where constrictive pericarditis is associated with a mild peritonitis mainly acting on the upper part of the abdomen The abundant ascitis is due to both exudation (peritonitis) and transudation (liver cirrhosis) Pick's syndrome is therefore a special type of polyserositis (*Concato's disease*) and is usually though not always tubercular (32)

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs of constrictive mediastinopericarditis vary according to the extension and localization of the lesions

The patients are usually seminualds because of *usualness* possible malnutrition and inability to perform any effort They suffer no pain *Exertional dyspnea* is practically constant while *orthopnea* is slight and may be absent There is no jaundice *Cyanosis* is frequent it may be limited to

⁷⁰ The name of *Pick's syndrome* has been applied to all varieties of constrictive pericarditis with ascitis According to the original description this extension is not justified

the face to the upper parts or extend over the entire body It is not necessarily severe

Veinous engorgement is usually apparent It may predominate in the area of the superior or inferior vena or may be diffuse The veins of the neck though distended fail to present active pulsations

Simultaneous tracings of the jugular veins and of the radial pulse reveal the frequent existence of *Kussmaul's phenomenon* inspiration causes swelling of the jugular veins and simultaneous weakening (8) (or even disappearance (42)) of the radial pulse (fig 269) This represents accentuation of a normal phenomenon

There may be *edema* of the upper half of the body presenting special consistence and appearance

An interesting modification of respiratory dynamics is often present Under normal conditions the sternum is thrust anteriorly during inspiration in these patients the upper part of the sternum is thrust forward while the lower part is pulled back during inspiration (*crossed respiration*) (7-22)

Pleural effusion is possible The abdomen is distended because of *ascites* The fluid is either a transudate or is of mixed character⁷¹ The liver is large occasionally very large but not pulsating *Dependent edema* may be absent or slight but is usually present in the terminal stages of the disease

Observation of the thorax may elicit a certain number of signs Their importance

⁷¹ Summary of the differences between transudates and exudates is given here

	SEDIMENT	EXUDATES
Aspect	Clear	Opaque
Clotting	Absent	Possible
Specific gravity	From 1.008 to 1.015	From 1.015 to 1.070
Allumin	From 0.2 to 3 per cent	From 3 to 6 per cent
Rivalta test	- or +-	From ++ to +++

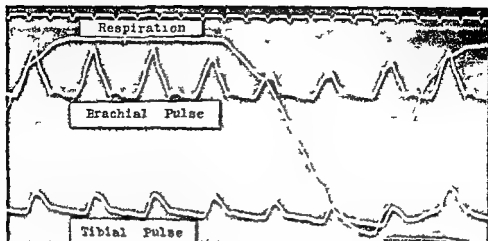


FIG 269 Paradoxical pulse

is limited because they are not always present. They are

a) *Absence of the apical thrust*

b) *Systolic retraction* of either the apical region (33) or a wide anterior or posterior region (33-35) apical retraction followed by diastolic thrust (36)

c) *See saw movement* between the left and right sides of the chest (37)

Percussion of the precordial area reveals the following data. The area of cardiac dullness is frequently *smaller* than in normal persons or at least is not enlarged. However a large heart is present in about one third of the cases (63). There is coincidence between the relative and absolute areas of dullness: no inspiratory expansion of the pulmonary margins can be detected and there is the same area of dullness in different positions because the heart has lost its mobility.

Auscultation usually reveals *regular heart sounds*; occasionally *weak or distant*. Cardiac murmurs may be present because of valvular defects (rheumatic or bacterial pericarditis, fibrous or calcified processes reaching the valves) or because of disturbance of the cardiac function due to traction or compression (relative insufficiency or relative stenosis). *Increased loudness or splitting of the 2nd pulmonic sound* is con-

dence of constriction of the left cardiac chambers (64).

Extra sounds are frequently present. There may be a *triple rhythm* of either the atrial or the ventricular type (page 370). The latter may reveal a snapping quality of the additional sound (*protodiastolic click* (38)). There may be a *systolic snap or click*. When located at the apex it is due to partial external pericardial adhesions. In rare cases there is a *quadruple rhythm* due to addition of a systolic and a diastolic click to the normal heart sounds.

ARTERIAL AND VENOUS PRESSURE— CARDIAC OUTPUT

Circulation Time

Arterial pressure is normal or low with decreased pulse pressure. Cardiac output is usually low; in some cases only 50 per cent of normal (44). Venous pressure is elevated (45). A difference in the venous pressure of the two arms or between arm and leg has diagnostic importance showing different severity of compression (46). Cases with isolated or predominant compression of the hepatic veins, a rare occurrence, may present a low venous pressure similar to that of patients with liver cirrhosis.

Both arm to tongue and arm to lung times

are increased. However, there may be important individual variations.

Blood—Urine—Ascites

Blood count is usually normal. Leucocytosis indicates the continued existence of an inflammatory process.

Serum proteins are reduced in cases having peripheral edema. The **urine** usually does not contain bile.

Examination of the abdominal (or thoracic) fluid reveals either a pure transudate or a borderline fluid (page 453).

GRAPHIC TRACINGS—CATHETERIZATION

Electrocardiogram

Disturbances of cardiac rate and rhythm are sometimes present because of myocardial or coronary lesions or because the traction of adhesions favors premature beats, paroxysmal tachycardia or atrial flutter. Atrial fibrillation may occur. However, the most usual findings are *regular sinus rhythm*, low voltage in the limb leads, low flat or inverted T waves in one or more limb leads, occasional splintering of the ventricular complex (45b). Right axis deviation has been observed when there is predominant compression of the left ventricle (47). ST may be depressed. Changes of the P wave consisting of broadening, notching and increased voltage have been noted.

The study of the *deviation of the electric axis* in different positions may reveal that the heart is fixed and is not displaced by gravity, a fact which may be used in the differential diagnosis with congestive failure (49). This sign is observed when extensive internal and external adhesions are present and not in cases having only internal adhesions.

Phonocardiogram

It is possible to note increased loudness of the *second pulmonic sound* which is evidence of constriction of the left cardiac

chambers with higher pulmonic pressure (47). The second sound may be *split*.

A *triple rhythm* of either the atrial or ventricular type is frequently recorded, a high pitched *diastolic click* is frequently recorded in calcification of the pericardium. This occurs at the time of rapid filling and is the equivalent of a third sound.

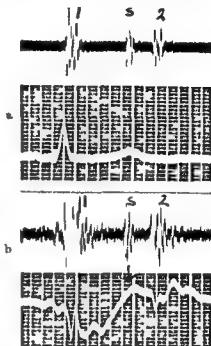


FIG. 270. Systolic snap (S) in the sound tracing of a case of adhesive pericarditis (a) compared with the ECG (b) compared with the pulsation of the area of best auscultation.

A typical finding is that of a *systolic click* or *snap*. This is a high pitched vibration at or after the middle of systole frequently followed by a few smaller vibrations (fig. 270). Cases where two or three small extra sounds are present in systole may occur.

Electrolytogram

A typical sign of constrictive pericarditis is the following (80). The border tracing of the left ventricle presents a sharp and deep

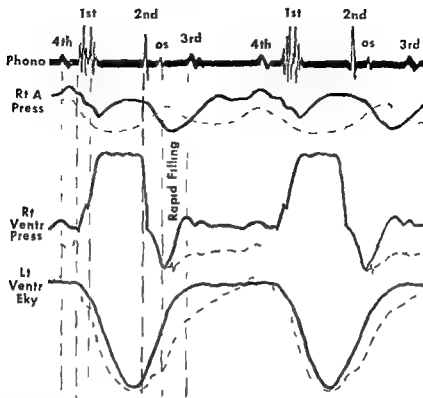


FIG. 271 Scheme of the V type of electrocardiogram and of the typical pattern of intracardiac tracings in constrictive pericarditis. Dotted lines normal patterns

drop followed by a rapid rise. There is a flat line during most of diastole and no evidence of the normal rebound which marked the end of isometric relaxation period. However this pattern called the V type of ventricular contraction (fig. 271) can be found in other conditions impairing ventricular diastole (amyloid, fibroelastosis).

Catheterization

Catheterization of the heart reveals high venous pressure and normal or low right atrial pressure in cases with predominant constriction around the venae cavae. High venous and right atrial pressures with low right ventricular pressure indicate compression of the right atrium (66). High right ventricular and pulmonary blood pressures indicate constriction of the left heart (67).

The ventricular pressure curve shows a very rapid phase of passive filling in early

diastole followed by a diastolic plateau (81) (fig. 271).

Jugular Ven Tracing—Liver Tracing

In general the jugular and hepatic waves are small and difficult to record. Kussmaul's sign may be recorded (page 445). The adhesive and constrictive process tends to limit the transmission of the waves caused by cardiac dynamics; therefore possible abnormal waves are not due to the adhesive process and are decreased in amplitude by it.

X RAY

In many cases roentgen ray study gives only scarce data; in others, however the following data can be observed (50).

a) Abnormality in the profile of the cardiac silhouette due to adhesions with the lungs; the angles or irregularities may be increased by deep respiration.

b) Disappearance of the known landmarks of the cardiac silhouette with straightening of the borders

c) Thick diffused shadows around the heart obscuring the anterior and posterior



FIG 272 Cardiac silhouette in a case of calcified pericardium

spaces (lateral views) Observation of an opaque ring or scattered spots due to calcification of the pericardium is possible (fig 272)

d) Decreased amplitude of pulsation of the cardiac margins This is important when accentuated in some areas

e) Transmission of cardiac pulsations to the left diaphragm

f) Poor visibility of the hilar shadows and of the pulmonary network This is important in cases with congestion of the systemic venous circulation

Interesting data may be obtained with the *pneumo mediastinum* (51) (page 152) and *pneumo peritoneum* (page 152) The former may reveal anterior extrapericardial adhesions the latter subdiaphragmatic adhesions (fig 273)

Röntgenkymography may confirm the above described data and reveal that the motion of some part of the heart is due to traction or is otherwise abnormal

MECHANISM OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

The clinical picture of adhesive and constrictive pericarditis includes three groups of signs and symptoms

a) Those caused by disturbed function of nerves lymph vessels bronchi trachea and esophagus



A



B

FIG 273 A *Pneumo mediastinum* in a case of adhesive mediastino pericarditis (lateral view) 1 anterior adhesion 2 air below adhesion (*pneumo mediastinum*) 3 air below the diaphragm (*pneumo peritoneum*) B Same case frontal view showing the *pneumo peritoneum* The air has detached the diaphragm from the liver and spleen (3 3)

b) Those connected with venous and hepatic engorgement

c) The effusion in the abdominal cavity and possibly in one or both pleural cavities

The signs of the first group are apparently caused by compression. The second group has been attributed to heart failure decreased forces contributing to venous return or compression of the large veins.

Limited mobility of the diaphragm and more intimate connections between sternum, diaphragm and mediastinum may favor enlargement of the liver partly through lack of the rhythmic compression by the diaphragm (page 60) (22, 32).

Ventricular contraction may be hindered by adhesions which add to the normal effort because of traction exerted on resistant structures (ribs, sternum, diaphragm and subdiaphragmatic organs) (53) and because of angulation and rotation of the heart (20). This obstacle mainly present during inspiration can be admitted only in cases with extensive systolic retraction of the chest wall.

Ventricular dilatation is hindered by the formation of constrictive masses or by calcification (20, 34). This is proven by the data of the electrolytogram (80) and by right heart catheterization (81). This obstacle is particularly important in preventing further dilatation, one of the physiological means for increasing cardiac output. Actually these patients are often incapable of even limited efforts.

Myocardial and valvular lesions connected with and due to the same process causing adhesions may be present (32). However their importance is secondary.

Of special importance is the localization of the adhesions. It is apparent that when they develop around the venae cavae or the hepatic veins (30) they cause venous congestion, decreased venous inflow and decreased cardiac output. Compression of the atria or pulmonary veins has been demon-

strated in certain cases predominant compression of the left ventricle in others (64).

The effusion of various serosae has been explained as the result of heart failure (31) venous compression (32), or inflammation (32). It is the author's view (26, 33) that heart failure is present only in a small number of cases usually toward the end of the clinical course that the main factor is compression of the large veins (venae cavae, hepatic veins, vena azygos), and that in some cases an inflammatory component is also present, as revealed by the fluid and by autopsy.

Increased venous pressure is a direct result of the compression exerted on the large veins. This increase is less useful than in pericardial effusion because it is unable to overcome the compression (57). However it may accelerate the flow through the constricted areas.

The chief mechanism by which these patients can increase their cardiac output is *tachycardia*. This should be considered as a useful phenomenon within limits (37).

VARIETIES

Different etiology, severity and extension, cause different clinical pictures.

High mediastinal syndrome with superior vena cava compression. This picture is often described under the name of *mediastinitis* but pericardial lesions are seldom absent. It will be described later (page 403).

Diffuse constrictive pericarditis with predominant compression of the right heart. It is usually due to tuberculosis. The patients have frequently a typical triad (20): high venous pressure, quiet small heart and transudative ascites. The jugular veins are distended and immobile. The liver is large, the spleen is normal. There is no edema of the legs. The urine is normal. There may be transudation in the right pleural cavity.

Diffuse constrictive pericarditis with predominant compression of the left heart. It is usually due to tuberculosis. There is

dyspnea. The 2nd pulmonic sound is loud. Catheterization reveals increased systolic pressure in the right ventricle and pulmonary artery. The liver is normal or only slightly enlarged.

Constrictive pericarditis with peritonitis (Perc's syndrome). The clinical picture is due to a *polyserositis*. The inflammation usually starts in the right pleura or the pericardium and then diffuses to the upper part of the peritoneum. The process predominates either in the right pleural cavity and involves the pericaval part of the pericardium (31) or in the pericardial cavity (32). The liver is *frosted*; there are adhesions between diaphragm, liver, stomach and spleen. The ascitic fluid is *borderline* between exudate and transudate and may be a frank exudate. The spleen may be enlarged. In a special variety only observed in children (36) the liver shows both *slang* and *active tuberculosis*.

Partial pericardial adhesions may be entirely asymptomatic and harmless. One type is revealed by a *systolic click* or *snap*. Patients with this sign may complain of *precordial pain*, especially when stretching their arms or after exertion of *palpitation* and of *anxiety*. Therefore they are often mistaken for patients with more serious cardiac lesions (67).

Cases of adhesive pericarditis with calcular lesions are usually due to rheumatic disease. The heart is enlarged and any clinical evidence of the chronic process of the pericardium may be absent. The process seldom develops serious *constriction* but may be responsible for increased severity of venous or hepatic engorgement through compression developed by bands of connective tissue.

DIAGNOSIS

In spite of recent contributions diagnosis of constrictive pericarditis may be difficult. The clinical pictures of superior or inferior vena compression are usually easily

recognized and the difficulty lies mainly in the evaluation of the lesions.

Diffuse constrictive pericarditis should be differentiated from *rheumatic heart disease with mitral and tricuspid stenosis*. The data of the electro- and phonocardiogram and of the electrokymogram, the size of the heart (smaller in pericarditis), if necessary the data of catheterization allow a correct diagnosis.

Differential diagnosis between *constrictive pericarditis* and an *amyloid heart* is extremely difficult (83).

The differential diagnosis between *constrictive pericarditis* and *cardiac failure* is based on the fact that in the latter there usually is a rapid and irregular pulse, congestion of the lungs, dyspnea, active venous pulsations and a much slower circulation time. Digitalis is more effective in cardiac failure.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis of these syndromes should be based on nature and extension of the lesions, age of the patient, existence of associated lesions and seat of the compression, cardiac function and the possibility of surgery. In general these cases last many years because the engorgement due to compression has a different significance from that due to cardiac failure.

TREATMENT

Medical treatment is based on the use of *mercurial diuretics* by injection (11, 12) and *ammonium chloride* by mouth (13). *Digitalis* is not contraindicated but is seldom helpful unless cardiac failure also sets in.

Paracentesis of the abdominal cavity is necessary whenever abundant ascites is present and no surgical intervention is possible; it should be repeated at regular intervals.

Surgery should be performed in the great majority of the cases. According to a recently advocated viewpoint surgery of

tubercular cases should be undertaken at the time of the effusion and before organization of the exudate (82)

Various interventions are possible. The simplest procedure consists of the *mobilization of an anterior chest plastron (sternum plus ribs)* this is beneficial in cases with predominant external adhesions and in cases with extensive calcification (83). The best procedure however consists of the *complete decompression and decortication of the heart* (25 54 55). In a large majority of cases the operation is successful and is followed by abundant diuresis and increased cardiac output. This operation allows the heart to assume a more physiological position and removes the scars constricting the various chambers and organs.

While various approaches from the left or right side have been advocated the entire surgical field may be exposed by *median sternotomy* (84). This approach permits excision of the pericardium beyond both cardiac borders and around the *venae cavae*.

Quinidine or *pronestyl* is given in the last two days before surgery in order to reduce the excitability of the heart. *Atropine* and *morphine* are employed as preanesthetic drugs then light anesthesia with *nitrous oxide oxygen* and *ether*, is used (25). If the heart reacts to superficial stimulation 2 per cent *procaine* directly applied is of help.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 a) A. N. R. In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- b) STENDERLAND S. AND WRIGHT SMITH R. J. *Brit Heart J* 1944 11 167
- 2 HUNTER W. C. AND CRANE M. F. *Mo Cone Cardios Dis* 1940 9 2
- 3 LALLÉE Quoted by Hunter and Cranes (2)
- 4 WOLFF I. *New England J Med* 1943 229 423
- 5 COLO P. BERCONKY I. AND DAMBROSII G. *Am Heart J* 1942 24 223
- 6 WOLFFERTH C. C. AND MARCOLLES A. *Int Clin* 1940 1 Suppl 3
- 7 WENCKEBACH K. F. *Zeit klin Med* 1910 71 402

- 8 KLESMALL A. *Berl klin Woch* 1873 10 430
- 9 a) EHTE W. *Virchow's Arch* 1899 130 148
- b) BLECHMAN Thèse Paris 1913
- 10 a) BANTI G. *Deut med Woch* 1888 12 807
- b) SIBON. In *Reynolds System of Medicine* 1877 v 4
- 11 AUCNERUGGER *Intantum Vorum* Vienna Trattner 1761
- 12 a) FINS I. *Wien med Woch* 1889 119 209 and 248
- b) FWART W. *Brit M J* 1896 1 717
- c) LEVINE S. A. AND GEVAULT F. *Trans Assoc Am Physicians* 1940 55 107
- 13 a) PORTE D. AND PARDEE H. E. *Am Heart J* 1929 4 586
- b) SCOTT R. W. FEIL H. S. AND KATZ L. *Am Heart J* 1929 5 68 and 7
- c) PICCHINI G. *Cuore e Circ* 1939 16 300
- d) HERMANN G. AND SCHWAB F. H. *Trans Assoc Am Physicians* 1934 49 229 Also *Arch Int Med* 1935 55 917
- e) BELLET S. AND McMILLAN T. M. *Arch Int Med* 1938 61 381
- f) VAN DER VEER J. B. AND NORRIS P. F. *J A M A* 1939 113 1483
- g) GROEBEL F. M. AND REICHERT P. *Cardiol* 1941 5 4
- b) LUSCHEL D. L. BONDY P. D. AND SALLEY S. M. *New England J Med* 1945 233 399
- 14 HECKMANN A. *Muench med Woch* 1931 84 60
- 15 a) ROELER H. *Cardiovascular Roentgenology* Springfield Thomas 1945
- b) SCHWEDEL J. B. *Clinical Roentgenology of the Heart* New York Horber 1946
- 16 BORDET E. AND FISCHGOLD H. *La Radio Lymographie du Coeur et des Vaisseaux* Paris Masson 1937
- 17 FLETCHER C. M. *Brit Heart J* 1945 7 143
- 18 WOLFF I. *New England J Med* 1944 232 422
- 19 BLUMER G. *Arch Int Med* 1914 14 605
- 20 CORNHORN J. *Lectures on General Pathology* London 1889
- 21 a) FORTER W. H. In *Cyclopedia of Medicine* Philadelphia Davis 1944
- b) MARRAS A. B. *Sem Méd* 1913 33 489
- 22 WENCKEBACH K. F.
a) *Zeit klin Med* 1910 71 407
b) *Ueber pathologische Beziehungen zwischen Ernährung und Kreislauf* Volkman's Samml klin Vortr 1917 2 46-167
c) *Herz und Kreislaufsystem* Dresden Steinkopff 1931
- 23 LUCHINI T. *Cuore e Circ* 1938 10 3

- 24 WISE A W AND SHAPER L E J A M A 1945 127 583
- 25 BECK C S In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945 Also in *Medical Physics* Year Book Publishers 1947
- 26 LUISADA A A *Le Mediastino Pericardite Adesive* Roma Pozzi 1936
- 27 GRIESINGER W Dissertation Tuebingen 1856
- 28 a) SMITH H L AND WILLIAMS F A Arch Int Med 1937 69 171 and 410
b) MESSER J H AND HERMANN G R J A M A 1936 87 459
- 29 ROBERTS J AND BECK C S Am Heart J 1941 22 314
- 30 ELIAS H AND FELLNER A *Stauungstypen bei Kreislaufstörungen* Vienna Springer 1936
- 31 CERNICHMAN H Deut med Woch 1884 10 564
- 32 LICK F Zeit klin Med 1906 23 345
- 33 WILLIAMS C J B London J Med 1850 vol 2 Also in *System of Treatment* New York Latham and English 1915
- 34 a) HIRTZ F Rév gen clin Théor 1808 12 680
b) OGLE C Proc Phys Soc London Feb March 1910
- 35 BROADBENT J F H Lancet 1893 July 27
- 36 OKUDA J Allg Wien med Zeit 1863 N 10 11 36 31
- 37 VOLLMER F AND SCHWIEREN V klin Woch 1923 2 5
- III FRIEDREICH N
a) Virchow's Handb Pathol und Ther 1878 vol 5
b) Deut Arch klin Med 1863 1 241
- 38 LIAO C MARCHAL M AND PALTRAT J Bull Mém Soc Hôp 1933 49 20
- 39 WOLFFERTH C AND MARQUES A In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 40 GALLAVARDIN L Lyon Méd 1913 121 409
- 41 RIEGEL F Berl klin Woch 1877 14 637
- 42 a) CHURCHILL E D Arch Surg 1939 19 1551
b) CUTLER F C In *Nelson's Loose Leaf Surgery* New York Nelson 1937
- 43 a) BURNELL C S AND STRATHORN W D Arch Surg 1939 24 108
b) BURNELL C S AND FLICKINGER D Arch Int Med 1935 56 700
- 44 BECK C S Arch Surg 1939 18 1609 Ann Surg 1935 102 501 J A M A 1933 104 714 Am Heart J 1937 16 515
- 45 a) CONTI V Giorn Clin Med 1933 14 607
b) SPERRA V Cuore e Circ 1939 13 381
- 46 WHITE P D In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 47 a) HOCHREIT M AND WEISS S Arch Int Med 1929 44 700
b) HOCHREIT M AND LAPLACE L Deut Arch klin Med 1935 176 113
- 48 a) CARTER L P AND DIELAIDE F R Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1971 23 219
b) DIELAIDE F R Arch Int Med 1925 35 367
- 49 ZDANSKY F Med klin 1931 27 156 Also Wien klin Woch 1933 46 933
- 50 CONDORELLI L Min Med 1936 (P 1) 27 81 Iressc Méd 1937 M 1831 Cardiol 1937 1 26
- 51 SCHULZ M Fyrg ind Med 1934 47 348
- 52 a) GALVAGNI E Clin Med Ital 1898 77 756
b) SACCONACHI G L *La Clinica della adenosione Pericardica* Roma Pozzi 1924
- 53 a) BRATER L *Erkrankungen des Perikards* In *Atlas und Grundriss der Roentgen-diagnostik* by F M Groedel Muenchen Lehmann 1921
b) BRATER L AND FISCHER H *Herzbeutel funktion und Herbeutelkrankungen* In *Textbook of Path Physiology* by Béthe and Bergmann Berlin Springer 1927
c) BRATER L *Die Her chirurgie* Same text book as b above
- 54 DELORME E Gaz Hôp Paris 1913 86 2769 and 1914 87 311
- 55 HUTINEL V Rév Mens Mal Enf 1933 p 529 and 1934 p 15
- 56 ITOYS R H AND BURNELL C S Brit Heart J 1916 8 33
- 57 BETHMAN R B AND TANNENBAUM W J Ann Surg 1948 128 1019
- 58 BARNES A R AND BURCHELL H B Am Heart J 1912 23 747
- 59 KEITH N M PRUITT R D AND BIGGEE STODS A N Am Heart J 1917 57
- 60 MERRIDITH H C Am Heart J 1943 27 129
- 61 GREYMAN H BROWN C R AND SMETANA H Am Heart J 1917 34 447
- 62 PAUL O CASTLEMAN B AND WHITE I D Am J M Sci 1948 216 381
- 63 WHITE P D ALEXANDER F CHURCHILL F D AND SWEET H H Am J M Sci 1948 216 348
- 64 GILLICK F G AND PEYTONS W F Califormia Med 1949 70 5
- 65 BLOOMFIELD R A JACOBSON H D AND CO WORKERS J Chin Investigation 1946 25 639
- 66 LUISADA A A AND ALBERTINI M Acta Cardiol (Bruxelles) 1949 4 309

- 68 BARNES A R *Electrocardiographic Patterns*
Springfield Thomas 1940
- 69 BELLET S AND McVILLAN T M Arch Int
Med 1938 61 381
- 70 HARP V C AND PEEKE F S Am Heart J
1949 37 134
- 71 LEVY R L AND PATTERSON M C Am J
Med 1950 8 34
- 72 PORTER W B CLARK O AND PORTER R R
J A M A 1950 144 749
- 73 ANDREWS G W E PICKERING G W AND
SELLORS T Quart J Med 1948 17 291
- 74 TAUBENHAUS M AND BRAMS W A J A M
A 1950 142 973
- 75 FAIK A AND LIBERT R V J A M A 1951
145 310
- 76 BELLET S *et al* Ann Int Med 1951 34
856
- 77 METCALFE J AND WOODBURY J W J Clin
Investigation 1951 30 661
- 78 ARENDT J AND CARDON I Radiol 1949
55 371
- 79 ENGELBERG C D LESSE S AND SCHWEDEL
J H Meet of A H A 1951
- 80 McKUSICK V A Public Health Serv Pub
No 50 1951 125
- 81 HANSEN T *et al* Circ 1951 3 881
- 82 HOLMAN E AND WILLETT F J A M A
1951 146 1
- 83 FINDLEY J W AND ADAMS W Arch Int
Med 1948 81 342
- 84 HOLMAN E Lancet 1951 71 470
- 85 DONALDSON J K *Surgical Disorders of the
Chest* 2nd Ed Philadelphia Lea and
Febiger 1947
- 86 MOSCOWITZ F J A M A 1953 153 194

Diseases of the Large Vessels

Congenital Anomalies of the Veins (80)

Anomalies of the superior cava This trunk may be hypoplastic or very large (*megacava superior*). There may be two superior cavae, the right and the left; the left superior cava usually terminates into the left atrium but it may join the ending of the coronary sinus. It is due to persistence of the *left duct of Cuvier*.

Anomalies of the inferior cava There may be two inferior cavae, one terminating into the right atrium, the other into the left. There may be a single inferior cava terminating into the left atrium.

Septal defects or stenosis or atresia of the pulmonary artery are frequently associated.

Congenital Anomalies of the Pulmonary Veins (79)

Anomalous drainage of the pulmonary vessels is possible. There may be either complete or incomplete drainage of the pulmonary veins into the right atrium or its tributaries. Incomplete drainage is compatible with life and has been reported even in adults. The best chances for survival are when less than 50 per cent of the vessels have anomalous drainage or when there is association with an atrial septal defect. The clinical picture may be similar to that of uncomplicated atrial septal defect (page 278) and even catheterization may not reveal the lesion. Only angiocardiology gave diagnostic data in certain cases.

When anomalous venous drainage from the lungs is partial, the most common sites of entry are the superior cava, the right atrium and the left innominate vein. In the complete anomalous drainage the sites of entrance may be the above mentioned

and also the coronary sinus, the inferior cava or the portal vein. Complete anomalous drainage may be found in newborn infants and is due to anomaly of development in the system of the *ductus venosus* (page 11).

If the anomalous veins increase to a great extent the flow of the right atrium and there is an atrial hunt, cyanosis is constant and is increased by feeding. In such cases survival is possible. When the drainage occurs into the superior cava or the innominate veins, catheterization reveals a high oxygen content before reaching the right atrium.

The physical data may simulate atrial septal defect including a systolic pulmonic murmur and a loud P (page 279).

The x-ray shows the same data of an atrial septal defect (page 280) while this shunt is not present. The superior cava may be broad (drainage into this vessel). The left atrium is small.

The arterial blood may present a slightly low saturation.

Anomalous pulmonary drainage should be corrected before surgical correction of an atrial septal defect.

The Superior Caval Syndrome (83)

The superior caval syndrome is a clinical picture characterized by venous engorgement, cyanosis and edema in the distal part of the superior vena cava. It may be caused by either occlusion or compression of the cava or by an aortic-caval fistula. Occlusion or compression may be due to bronchogenic carcinoma, mediastinal tumors, aneurysm of the aorta (page 478), mediastinopericarditis (page 450) or thrombophlebitis of the superior cava. The aortic-caval fistula is usually due to rupture of an aneurysm of

the ascending aorta (page 481) into the cava.

When the obstruction is *above* the entrance of the azygos vein blood from the upper half of the body may still reach the lower part of the cava through collateral venous channels which finally drain into the azygos. When the obstruction is *below* the entrance of the azygos vein blood from the upper part of the body reaches the right atrium only through collateral channels which drain into the inferior cava.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The face is flushed and cyanotic. Cough, hemoptysis, hoarseness and dysphagia are frequent. Fullness in the head, headache, drowsiness, stupor and paroxysmal dyspnea may occur. These symptoms may be alleviated by the erect position. *Edema, cyanosis and venous engorgement of the head, neck, arms and upper part of the body are typical.* The superficial veins of the trunk are dilated and tortuous.

If there is an aortic caval fistula a loud continuous machinery murmur is audible over the right side of the chest and back.

X RAY

The heart is normal in size. The shadow of the superior cava may be widened. The data of an aneurysm, a mediastinal tumor or a mediastinopericarditis may be found. Venograms with diodrast may reveal the site of obstruction.

VENOUS PRESSURE—CIRCULATION TIME

Venous pressure in the arm veins is from 30 to 40 cm. of water. A significant difference between the two arms may be found. The femoral venous pressure is frequently normal when elevated. It is still lower than the venous pressure of the arm.

The circulation time is found to be normal in arm to tongue tests, revealing a striking difference from cases of heart failure.

When thrombosis of the cava occurs the severity of the symptoms depend to some

extent, upon the rapidity with which the collateral circulation develops and upon the level of the occlusion. The anastomosis of deep collateral veins frequently causes passive congestion of the kidneys, as revealed by albuminuria.

Diagnosis is possible from the study of the physical signs and by means of venograms, venous pressure measurements and circulation time tests.

Therapy. Venous obstruction due to occlusion of the superior cava in experimental animals has been relieved by the creation of shunts. The most satisfactory was found to be that between superior cava above the obstruction and right atrium. Clinical applications are possible.

The Inferior Caval Syndrome

The inferior cava can be ligated in man without producing edema of the lower extremities. This procedure has actually been performed in cases of thrombophlebitis (81) or for relief of chronic congestion (82). Occlusion of the inferior cava may be due to thrombosis (84) and its obstruction may be caused by ascites, neoplasm or fibrous constriction (page 458). The results are less favorable than in surgical ligation.

The typical picture consists of *edema and venous engorgement of the lower extremities.* Collateral veins develop on the surface of the abdomen and chest and discharge some of the blood of the lower part of the body into the superior cava. The lymphatic vessels of the legs increase their flow.

The venous pressure is high in the legs, normal in the arms.

Right Aortic Arch and Vascular Ring

LESIONS

There are three major types (fig. 274).

a) There is a *right aortic arch* (3). The aorta arises from the left ventricle, then rises higher than it does normally, turns right and follows the right side of the vertebral column. Before reaching the dia-

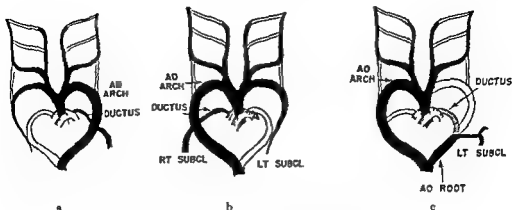


FIG 274 a Development of the normal aortic arch b Right aortic arch with asymmetrical inversion of the large vessels c Right aortic arch with persistent aortic root

phragm the descending aorta may cross the spine to the left and follow a normal course (figs 275 and 276) The aortic arch which passes over the right bronchus lies to the right of the trachea and esophagus and pushes the esophagus toward the left The fibrous remnants of the ductus arteriosus may form a vascular ring encircling the trachea and esophagus together with the pulmonary artery and the aortic arch

b) The ascending aorta has a course similar to that in section (a) but the arch passes behind the esophagus (1) A diverticulum (aortic root) branches off the ascending aorta and gives off the left subclavian artery the obliterated ductus arteriosus connects it with the pulmonary artery In these cases esophagus and trachea are again encircled (fig 277)

c) There is a double aortic arch (1-4) The right (or posterior) arch is usually larger the left (or anterior) arch is smaller The right is retroesophageal the left passes anteriorly to the trachea enclosing the trachea and esophagus in a vascular ring (fig 277) The ascending aorta may consist of either a single or a double trunk

Possible associated abnormalities are tetralogy of Fallot or Eisenmenger complex (pages 310 and 318) coarctation or atresia of the left aorta (page 467) abnormalities in origin of the left subclavian artery per-

sistent common arterial trunk and dextrocardia

These congenital lesions are due to the obliteration of the 4th left branchial artery (fig 5) or to persistence of both the right and left 4th arteries They may reproduce conditions which are normal in amphibia and reptilia Persistence of the 4th right arch leads to a condition similar to that seen in birds

Several varieties of vascular rings surrounding the esophagus and the trachea are possible and may be caused by anomalies of origin of the carotid and subclavian arteries in addition to the above described lesions (54)

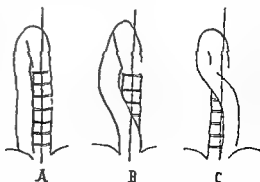


FIG 275 Different courses of the descending aorta in cases with persistent right aortic arch (From G. Canali)

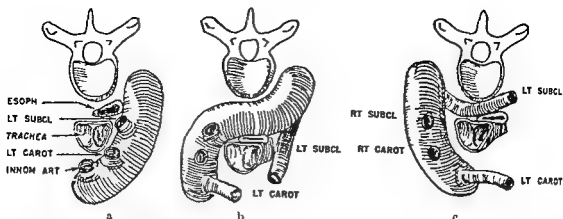


FIG. 26 Transverse section of the thorax seen from above: a normal aorta; b right aorta turning to left; c right aorta arching at the right of the spine. (From G. Canali.)

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The first type of anomaly is probably more frequent than generally thought and may be discovered in mature or elderly people. On the contrary type (c) is rarer and seldom found in adults. The general signs described in some cases, particularly cyanosis and clubbed fingers, are due to associated lesions and not to the aortic malformation.

Double aortic arch may cause cyanosis and stridor and favor pulmonary infections in children (5). Difficulty in swallowing

(*dysphagia lusoria*) is not uncommon in the anomalies of types (b) and (c) especially when arteriosclerosis causes dilatation of the aorta.

Certain physical signs may be present: dulness along the upper right sternal border extending to the right sternoclavicular junction; visible and palpable systolic pulsation in the 2nd and 3rd right interpaces near the sternum and at the supraclavicular fossa; loud cardiac sounds to the right and above their normal site and possibly a systolic murmur in the 2nd right interspace in the 2nd left or in both.

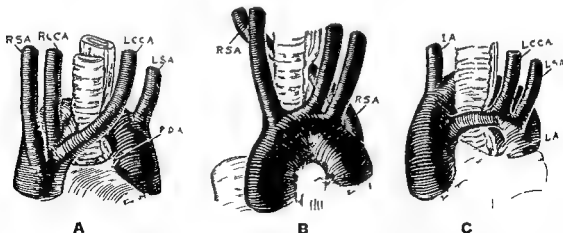


FIG. 27 Various types of vascular rings. A Right aortic arch. Left common carotid artery compressing front of trachea. Pulmonary artery drawn against the trachea by the ductus arteriosus. B Double aortic arch. Right subclavian artery which arises from the left side of the aortic arch and passes on the posterior wall of the esophagus. C Double aortic arch. The ascending aorta divides into two limbs which subsequently join to form the descending aorta. (From Gross and Ware: Surg., Gyn., and Obst. Cases of Dr. R. F. Cross.)

X RAY (3-4)

In the *frontal position* the aortic knob is absent on the left side and either a knob or a band like shadow is present on the right extending up to the clavicle (type a). In the absence of the aortic knob the pulmonic knob appears larger. Either the diverticulum or the left aortic arch may show on the left in types (b) and (c). A barium swallow reveals that the esophagus is indented and displaced to the left.

In the *right anterior oblique* the esophagus and the trachea are either normal or pushed forward and the esophagus shows a posterior indentation. In the *left anterior oblique* the esophagus shows an indentation which is toward the left instead of the right. The descending aorta is visible between the esophagus and spine.

A *right aortic arch* passing posterior to the esophagus deviates the latter to the left and causes a rounded defect on its posterior aspect. A *constrictive double aortic arch* causes narrowing of the trachea and esophagus from both sides. A *right subclavian artery* arising from the left side of the arch of the normal aorta may pass to the right either in front of the trachea or behind the esophagus causing a typical indentation (33).

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of the right aortic arch is based on x ray observation but the pulsation at the right supraclavicular region, the typical dullness and the dysphagia may indicate the presence of the lesion. Differential diagnosis from aortitis and aortic aneurysm is necessary and the x ray data are decisive. Diagnosis of double aortic arch or anomalous vessels constricting the trachea and esophagus is very important especially in infants.

COURSE

Many cases with anomaly type (a) reach old age with few or no symptoms. On the other hand anomaly type (b) is a frequent cause of symptoms and anomaly type (c) often gives disturbances in children. It is

seldom observed in adults because of the high mortality.

TREATMENT

Surgery of the double aortic arch and of other anomalies of the arteries of the neck has been accomplished with excellent results (13d). *Division* of the thinner of the two arches or of an anomalous subclavian artery relieves the pressure and permits reestablishment of normal conditions. Early surgery insures survival and normal development of an infant.

Coarctation of the Aorta

Coarctation of the aorta is a lesion which usually develops at the junction of the arch with the descending aorta but which in rare cases may develop in other points of the aorta. The clinical picture is four times more common in males than in females. *Early onset of puberty* and precocious physical development are typical (49).

CAUSE AND LESIONS

Most of the reported lesions are *congenital* even if they become manifest at various ages of infancy, childhood or maturity. Narrowing of the descending aorta by sclerodermic retraction of the diaphragm an exceptional lesion is *acquired* (47).

The lesion consists of a narrowing of the aorta which is either slightly above the ductus (*preductal coarctation*) or is opposite to or slightly below it (*postductal coarctation*) (fig. 278). Both types are *congenital* and are caused by faulty development of the 11th arterial arch at its junction with the dorsal aorta and the 11th arterial arch during the second month of fetal life (7-68). The cases with preductal coarctation (so called *infantile type*) usually succumb within the first months of life unless there is a patent ductus arteriosus which has a compensatory function. The cases with postductal coarctation (so called *adult type*) soon develop an adequate *collateral circulation* and frequently survive until maturity.



FIG 278 Different types of coarctation 1 *preductal type* patent ductus 2 *postductal type* 3 *atresia of the aorta* (From W Evans Quart J Med Courtesy of the author)

This collateral circulation is developed over the surface of the thorax and abdomen connecting the aortic arch with the organs which receive their blood supply from the descending aorta. It is made a) between branches of the superior intercostal arteries (subclavian) and the other intercostal arteries (descending aorta) b) between branches of the subscapular arteries (subclavian) and the intercostal arteries (descending aorta) c) between internal mammary (sub

clavian) and the epigastric branches of the external iliac arteries (descending aorta) (fig 279)

These collateral vessels reach a tremendous size and may form tortuous loops under the skin of the thorax and abdomen. The intercostal arteries extremely sinuous cause indentations of the ribs by their pulsation.

In rare cases coarctation causes only a slight narrowing of the aorta and a marked

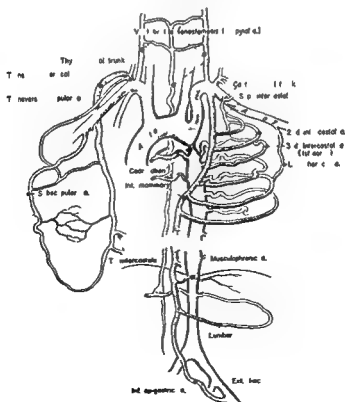


FIG 279 The major channels in coarctation of the aorta (From Edwards and coworkers Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1948 courtesy of the authors)

narrowing of the left subclavian artery (9) In other exceptional cases there is a *narrowing of the descending or the abdominal aorta* (10-72)

The ascending aorta, the aortic arch, and the great vessels of the arch are dilated in all three types; exceptionally the left carotid and subclavian are small. The descending aorta and its branches are thin and poorly developed in all types.

Associated lesions such as interventricular septal defect, aortic stenosis, bicuspid aortic valve, mitral stenosis, aneurysm of the sinus of Valsalva, common trunk giving both carotid arteries, or bicuspid aortic valve (7) are possible in the preductal type.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Infants with a *preductal* coarctation usually develop the first symptoms within 2 weeks of life and about three-fourths die within the first 8 weeks. A small number may survive and even reach senility (68). Patients with a *postductal* type of coarctation, on the contrary, may experience only minor disturbances during infancy and adolescence while the most important signs and symptoms become apparent between 20 and 40 years of life.

One of the first symptoms is *exertional or precordial pain*. *Chest or back pain* may be caused by erosion of ribs or root compression by enlarged arterial channels (including spinal anastomoses) (52). There is a frequent association with *thyrotoxicosis*, probably because of increased blood supply to the thyroid gland (32). *Headache, nausea, vomiting, vertigo, diplopia, and hemoptysis* may occur. *Dry, nonproductive cough, weakness, and sensation of cold in the legs* are frequent.

The carotid and subclavian arteries show a visible pulsation with rhythmic expansion of the suprasternal notch and the supraclavicular regions. The apical thrust is displaced to the left and downwards; evidence of left ventricular enlargement. Both a *thrill* and a *late systolic murmur* may be present over the 2nd left interspace and

the latter also *at the back*, but they are not constant. A *systolic murmur* can be heard over the aortic area, the suprasternal notch, and at the first left interspace. An *aortic diastolic murmur* is not uncommon (16).

One of the more obvious signs is the *pulsation of multiple arterial vessels* over the surface of the thorax and abdomen. These may reach the caliber of a normal radial artery and are easily palpable in the intercostal spaces. When these are not apparent they become more obvious if the patient *slops forward with his arms hanging down* (53).

The *radial pulse is full on both sides* (often more on the right), the *femoral pulse* and that of the *arteria dorsalis pedis* are small or absent (fig. 280). When the pulse is palpable a *marked delay* between apical thrust and femoral pulse can be appreciated.

The *blood pressure is elevated* in both arms and forearms. It is *lowered* or impossible to estimate in both thighs and legs.

The *temperature of the legs is low*; *circulation time* is prolonged in the lower extremity (11). The *basal metabolic rate* is frequently increased (21).

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram. This tracing may reveal the existence of *left axis deviation*. There may be evidence of *left ventricular hypertrophy*, *left intraventricular block*, or both. On the other hand, coarctation plus patency of the ductus is usually followed by *right ventricular hypertrophy* and *strain*.

Phonocardiogram. A *systolic murmur* caused by the narrowing of the aorta is frequently recorded. The vibrations of this murmur have usually a *diamond shaped aspect* but may be nondescript in type. This murmur is well recorded over the base especially at the left of the sternum. It may be recorded even better at the back, between left scapula and spine (69). When the murmur is louder at the back, an important differential datum with any valvular defect is obtained. An *early diastolic murmur*

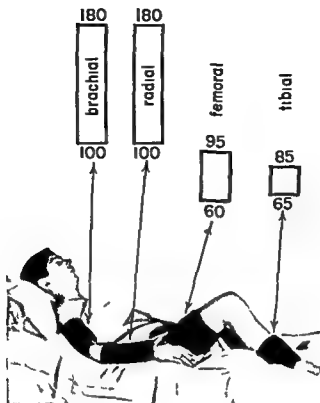


FIG 280 Blood pressure difference in coarctation of the aorta

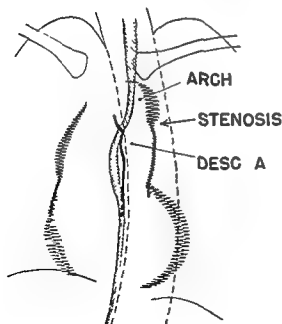


FIG 281 Roentgenkymogram in a case of coarctation of the aorta. Left anterior oblique. Sudden reduction of pulsation beyond the coarctation. (From Laubry and Heim de Balzac)

similar to that of aortic insufficiency is recorded in most cases at the back even though it may not be heard with a stethoscope (69). It is caused by the blood flowing through the narrow section of aorta during diastole (fig 283).

Roentgenkymogram electrokymogram Roentgenkymography shows a sharp contrast between the pulsations of the aortic arch and those of the descending aorta (fig 281).

Electrokymography also shows that the kymogram of the aortic arch has large pulsations while that of the descending aorta has small pulsations or none at all (70).

Ballistocardiogram The ballistocardiogram presents typically the absence of the K wave (71) (fig 283). This pattern which has diagnostic value becomes normal after surgery.

X RAY

There may be reduction in size of the descending aorta. On the other hand, the

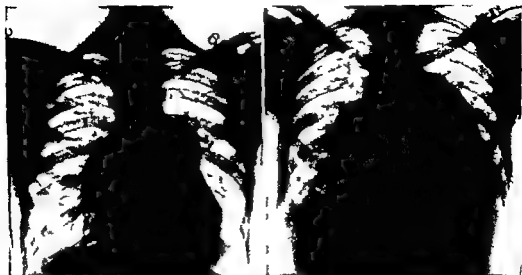


FIG. 282 Cardiac silhouette in a case of coarctation plus ductus arteriosus (p.m.c. control). The two roentgenograms were taken 5 years apart.

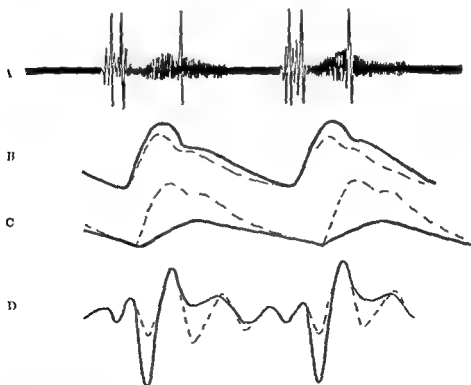


FIG. 283 Scheme of graphic tracings in correlation of the aorta. A: phonocardiogram recorded over the aortic valve. B: pulse tracing of the brachial artery. C: tracing of the femoral artery. D: ballistocardiogram. Dotted lines: normal patterns. Deep I and lack of h in the BCG.

ascending aorta and aortic arch are dilated and show active pulsations therefore a sharp contrast is present between them and the descending aorta which shows weak pulsations or none at all

A bulbous or spindle shaped dilatation of the descending aorta beyond the constriction may be observed. It can be recognized by typical displacement of the esophagus. Calcifications can be observed in the wall of the descending aorta.

A leftward convexity may be present in the upper mediastinum. This is due to a dilated left subclavian artery and may be mistaken for the aortic knob.

The cardiac silhouette is often typical of left ventricular enlargement.

The ribs show marked notching because of irregular erosion of their inferior borders by the dilated and tortuous intercostal arteries. In doubtful cases intravenous injection of diodrast may outline the narrowed section of the aorta and some of the collateral arterial vessels.

VARIETIES—COURSE

The two types preductal (infantile) and postductal (adult) cause two somewhat different pictures.

a) The *preductal type* is most often observed in infants even though occasional patients develop an adequate collateral circulation and reach adolescence or even maturity or old age. These patients on account of the usual persistence of the ductus have the following peculiarities: *possible cyanosis more marked in or exclusive of the lower extremities* (49) *right axis deviation* *loud machinery murmur over the 2nd left interspace* *poorly developed collateral circulation* *large pulmonary knob* (fig. 282).

b) The *postductal type* is usually observed in young people or adults. Its presence at birth is proven by occasional autopsies in infants and by increasing reports of correct diagnoses in children. These patients present typical clinical signs described above (page 469) and may complain only in their late

thirties of disturbances of the cerebral circulation or of the circulation of the lower extremities.

Coarctation between innominate artery and left subclavian as well as coarctation of the abdominal aorta, are rare possibilities (72). The former causes a *reduced pulsation of the left radial and carotid arteries*; the latter has a less well developed collateral circulation and less difference in pressures between the upper and lower extremities. Notching of the ribs is not visible; pulsation of the abdominal aorta above the umbilicus may be present.

Coarctation of the aorta and atypical origin of the right subclavian artery, arising from the aorta below the constriction, may cause hypertension in the left arm only (50).

MECHANISM

The mechanism of production of the hypertension is still under debate. Both the mechanical effect of the constriction and the secondary renal ischemia have been advocated. So far, conflicting evidence has been presented for both theories.

Left ventricular hypertrophy is possible for left axis deviation in the postductal type. In the preductal on the contrary, the right ventricle supplies the lower half of the body thus preventing some of the overload for the left; in these cases the hypertrophied right ventricle causes right axis deviation. In the former group the murmur is due to passing of the blood through the narrow section of the aorta in late systole (and even early diastole). In the latter the murmur is chiefly due to patency of the ductus.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is simple in the adult type because the clinical picture is typical and associated lesions are rare. It is based on the finding of arterial hypertension in the upper extremity with hypotension in the lower in young patients. However the possibility of a similar difference of pressure caused by an

atheromatous plaque should not be forgotten. Cases where the blood pressure of the arm is normal and that of the legs is very low are possible (13). In these even more than in the others, observation of the collateral circulation and x-ray data are of great importance.

The diagnosis is more difficult in children and infants. However, palpation of the femoral arteries usually reveals weak or absent pulsation, even in cases with patency of the ductus.

The diagnosis of an abnormally located coarctation is always difficult and an aortic aneurysm must be excluded first.

The most common confusion in adults is between coarctation and essential hypertension.

PROGNOSIS—COMPLICATIONS

The prognosis is better in the postductal type than in the other. Initial heart failure may be revealed by *intermittent claudication* and *night cramps*, the already poor circulation being made more defective by the failure. Death may be caused by *cerebral hemorrhage*⁷¹ or *thrombosis*, *coronary occlusion*, *paroxysmal pulmonary edema* or *rupture of the aorta*. *Congestive failure* often terminates the clinical course in the other cases. Poor circulation of the lower extremities favors *thromboarteritis of the leg*. A possible complication is represented by a *subacute bacterial infection* with localization on the constricted site (and possibly on an associated bicuspid aortic valve).

TREATMENT

Surgical treatment of this condition has been accomplished successfully. At first anastomosis between the left subclavian and descending aorta was attempted (14). Later *resection of the narrow aortic section with anastomosis of the aortic ends* became the procedure of choice (15).

In infants with preductal coarctation

The hemorrhage is usually due to rupture of a congenital cerebral aneurysm.

surgery should be attempted as early as possible. In them resection of the aorta is successful only if simultaneous ligation of the ductus is performed. This is a dangerous operation which however has succeeded in isolated cases (73). Anastomosis of the subclavian artery to the descending aorta has also been tried (31).

In the postductal type the optimal age for surgery is between 6 and 20 years of age because later on *arteriosclerosis* of the descending aorta frequently makes this vessel unsuitable for manipulation and suture (48). However, successful correction has been reported even at the age of 40. Pregnancy is a definite indication for surgery. Stenosis of either the mitral or the aortic valve is a contraindication (74).

When resection of the constricted area is impossible, *thoracolumbar sympathectomy* for relief of the hypertension may be attempted.

Congenital or Dynamic Changes of the Aorta and Pulmonary Artery

a) *Congenital dilatation of the ascending aorta* has been described in rare cases in association with *arachnoidactyly* (17). The patients died between the ages of 14 and 25. The aorta presented malformation of the media involving both the muscular and the elastic elements. Either a systolic or a double murmur was heard over the aortic area.

b) *Congenital or idiopathic dilatation of the pulmonary artery* can be found as an isolated abnormality. Dulness and systolic or double murmur can be found at the left of the sternum. The right ventricle is not dilated, the aorta is usually small. This process is usually asymptomatic. *Catheterization* shows either a normal or a slightly increased gradient of pressure between right ventricle and pulmonary artery. The x-ray aspects of this lesion may simulate an atrial septal defect. The lesion has been attributed to abnormal division of the fetal *truncus* (63). It is often associated with an intrinsic

weakness of the arterial wall (7-18) and the dilatation often extends to the main stems. Atherosclerosis of the pulmonary artery is a frequent complication even in children. In these cases *wrapping of the pulmonary artery in cellophane* can be tried though the experience is not favorable so far (64).

c) *Dynamic dilatation*. Both the aorta and the pulmonary artery may present a dilatation which is due to increased pressure or flow not sufficient to cause permanent stretching. Physical examination and x-ray observation reveal a dilatation which however is not confirmed by autopsy.

Dynamic dilatation of the aorta is frequently present in aortic insufficiency, aortic stenosis, coarctation of the aorta, patent ductus arteriosus, hypertension and tetralogy of Fallot.

Dynamic dilatation of the pulmonary artery is frequently found in pulmonic insufficiency, patent ductus arteriosus, atrial septal defect, Eisenmenger complex and chronic cor pulmonale.

Thyroid anemic and thiamine deficient hearts are frequently associated with dy-

namic dilatation of both the pulmonary artery and the aorta.

d) *Hypoplasia of the aorta (aorta angusta)*. The aorta of these patients is poorly developed but is uniform in its course (19). However in exceptional cases (75) only the thoracic descending aorta is narrow. Early arteriosclerosis of the vessel may be present. Older descriptions associated a status thymico lymphaticus with this rare condition. The hypoplasia associated with atrial septal defect is said to be present at birth whereas other types may be due to faulty development.

X-ray frequently allows recognition of the small caliber of the aorta (fig. 284).

Poor development of the entire body or abnormality of the genitalia may be present. The blood pressure may be normal or low. Cases with high blood pressure probably have some degree of coarctation even if diffuse hypoplasia is present. Unexplained heart failure or rupture of the aorta may be the result of this condition.

A *secondary or dynamic hypoplasia* is found in patients with low blood pressure or



FIG. 284. Cardiac silhouette in a case of aortic hypoplasia with calcified aortic arch.

low cardiac output (mitral stenosis aortic stenosis chronic consumptive diseases etc.)

Aortitis—Atherosclerosis of the Aorta

The two processes have been classified in the past under the same name of aortitis. It is preferable to keep them apart because of different etiologies and manifestations. However inasmuch as the two forms can be associated a clinical differentiation is not always possible.

Aortitis is due to an inflammatory lesion. It may be caused by *rheumatic disease*, *typhoid*, *influenza* or *streptococcic infections* (22a). However the most frequent cause of aortitis is *syphilis* (page 201).

Atherosclerosis of the aorta with exceptions does not occur in young people but as a rule is found after 50 and is frequent in old age. It is favored by diabetes, obesity and hypertension.

LESIONS

The lesions of *acute aortitis* are similar to those of acute arteritis in general (page 229). One type revealed by extensive areas of inflammation in the intima seems due to mycotic emboli and may result in multiple aneurysms (20). In some cases acute aortitis may simulate the aspects of syphilitic aortitis.

Syphilitic aortitis is usually located in a limited portion of the vessel and in one or few of its branches. The ascending aorta and the aortic arch are preferred sites. The descending aorta is usually normal but may be damaged.

The gross changes of the aorta are characteristic. Elevated gray or bluish gray translucent *plaques* are present on the surface of the intima. Multiple foci of infiltration formed by lymphocytes, plasma cells and rarely giant multinuclear cells are present in the media. The elastic and muscular structures are destroyed or present evidence of degeneration. *Miliary gummata* may be found in the adventitia. In some areas the foci are replaced by scar tissue

which may penetrate through the entire thickness of the aorta. The small nourishing vessels are frequently narrowed or occluded. Proliferation of the connective tissue of the intima is typical. The inflammatory foci are *miliary gummata* and may contain *Treponema*. The aortic lesion is frequently associated with lesions of the aortic valve and coronary mouths and also with myocardial, pericardial and mediastinal lesions.

The *atherosclerotic aorta* is longer and larger than a normal vessel. The typical lesions which may be present in any section are frequently located in the abdominal aorta; they are the *atheromatous plaque*, the *atheromatous ulcer* and the *fibrous plaque*.

Newly formed blood channels in the aortic wall may favor subintimal hemorrhages. Thrombotic precipitates frequently form on the damaged intima, mainly in the abdominal aorta. A fibrotic process is frequently present in the aortic or the mitral valve in the coronary arteries and in the initial parts of the large arteries.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Mild disturbances may be present for many years. However the symptoms may start suddenly: *substernal oppression* or *pain*, *dyspnea*, *palpitation* and *obstinate nonproductive cough*. Substernal oppression and pain are often connected with coronary lesions. *dyspnea* (especially *paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea*) may be related to aortic insufficiency. Only cough is related to the aortic lesions and is interpreted as a reflex phenomenon. However sometimes pain is transmitted to both arms and is increased by changes in position, a fact which is typical of the aortic lesion.

Dysphonia and occasionally a *bilateral voice* are caused by lesion of the left recurrent nerve. *Dizziness* is frequent and due to cerebral arteriosclerosis or to the dynamic changes of aortic insufficiency. *Heatness* is frequent. *Lytic aortitis* is often accom-

panied by rigidity of the pupils to light (Argyll Robertson's sign)

The carotid arteries and the suprasternal notch show active pulsations. In particular a *kinking of the right common carotid artery* due to dilatation of the aortic arch is revealed by intensive pulsations at the right side of the suprasternal notch. The aortic arch may be palpated at the suprasternal notch and a *systolic thrill* is felt in that area. Percussion reveals a *cap of dulness* at the sternal manubrium encroaching on the 2nd and 3rd right interspaces.

The 2nd aortic sound is ringing and is much louder than normal. This is important in the absence of high blood pressure (23). There frequently is prolongation of the 1st aortic sound or a definite *systolic murmur* over the 2nd right interspace. The murmur may become musical or similar to the cry of a sea gull.

The radial pulse is usually celer. The abdominal aorta is easily palpable and pulsates strongly. Other signs vary with different localizations (see below).

VARIETIES

Aortitis or atherosclerosis of the ascending aorta and aortic arch

This localization is frequently accompanied by coronary sclerosis (atherosclerosis) or aortic insufficiency (lues). The right radial pulse is frequently smaller because of narrowing of the mouth of the subclavian artery (atherosclerosis). *Friction rubs* may be heard near the sternum (lues).

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram This tracing may present different patterns caused by associated lesions. Thus changes due to aortic insufficiency (page 212), hypertension (page 497), bundle branch or intraventricular block (pages 376 and 379), and coronary heart disease (page 434) are frequently encountered. There is no relative bradycardia as in aortic stenosis.

Phonocardiogram The phonocardiogram may reveal the following data:

1) An *opening click (or snap)* of the aortic valve: this is a high and loud vibration which precedes the rise of the carotid pulse and is due to lesion of the semilunar valves (24).

2) A *triple rhythm* due to addition of a loud *systolic vibration* (so called *systolic gallop*).

3) The second sound consists of three to four large vibrations and is prolonged by two or three smaller vibrations equivalent to a *short diastolic murmur*.

4) A *systolic murmur* is also frequently present: its vibrations have the aspect of a short early systolic murmur or that of a diamond-shaped murmur. It is recorded best over the second or third right interspaces but may be loudest at the left of the sternum.

Pulse and pressure tracings The pulse tracings reveal a steep rise, a sharp peak, and a quick descent. These changes may be due to either aortic insufficiency (syphilis) or increased rigidity of the aortic wall (atherosclerosis) (fig. 28c). There is no anacrotic depression as in aortic stenosis. The pulse and pressure tracings of the lower extremities frequently reveal an increased pressure. Atherosclerosis of the aortic arch may cause smaller pulse and lower blood pressure in the arms (narrowing of the subclavian arteries).

There is an *increased pulse pressure* (decreased elasticity of the aorta chiefly in atherosclerosis) and a *relative increase in pressure of 30 to 60 mm. at the tibial arteries*. Diastolic pressure is low.

X-ray The ascending aorta is of increased opacity. It is dilated and shows an increased amplitude of pulsations particularly in the left anterior oblique position. The aortic arch is frequently dilated as shown both by the profile of the aortic silhouette and by the section of the aortic knob. *Calcification of the ascending aorta and the aortic arch* can be observed in a large percentage of cases.

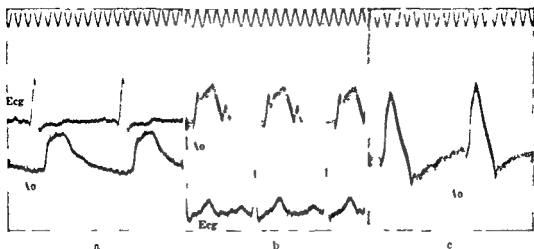


FIG. 285. Tracing of the abdominal aorta in three patients: a, aneurysm of the abdominal aorta; b, atherosclerosis of the aorta; c, abdominal aortitis.

with atherosclerosis of the aorta or aortitis (27).

The so-called *aortic arch syndrome* or *increased coarctation* consists of weak pulsations of all the vessels of the aortic arch with hypertension of the lower extremities. It may be caused by atherosclerosis, lues, trauma, Buerger's disease, polyarteritis nodosa, or a congenital lesion (76).

Aortitis of the descending aorta (posterior aortitis) (25). This syndrome is usually due to lues. The patient complains of pain which is girdle-like or is fixed in the left inter-scapular region. The x-ray reveals dilatation and increased density of the descending aorta, mainly apparent in the oblique positions. Areas of calcification are frequently visible.

Abdominal atherosclerosis. The patients complain of *paroxysmal epigastric pain* with posterior radiation. The pain is accompanied by nausea, pallor, and occasionally *anguish* (26). These attacks are usually caused by exertion but may follow meals. When hyperacidity, belching, vomiting, or mucous diarrhea occur, the attacks are easily mistaken for gastrointestinal disorders. Weakness and unpleasant pulsations in the abdomen are present between the attacks.

The abdominal aorta is easily palpated above the umbilicus. It is a sinuous and large vessel with a *strong expansive pulsation* and is *very tender*. The femoral arteries have strong pulsations and present a *pistol shot sound* and a *thrill*.

Sectional measurements of blood pressure reveal that the blood pressure of the femoral and tibial arteries is from 50 to 80 mm. higher than the brachial pressure (27).

Pulse tracing. The pulse tracing of the femoral arteries has a great amplitude. Its pattern consists of a sharp rise and a rapid drop (fig. 285). Simultaneous pulse tracings of the suprasternal notch and the femoral arteries reveal an *increased speed of the pulse in the descending aorta*.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The syndromes caused by atherosclerosis have a longer and milder course than those caused by lues. Very often the lesions of the coronary arteries or of the aortic valves dominate the clinical picture. Formation of an *aneurysm* is possible. Hypertension is frequent (29). *Rupture of the aorta* and *formation of a dissecting aneurysm* are dreaded possibilities. Sudden death may occur in the early stages of *luetie aortitis* (30). Acute

pulmonary edema or heart failure are other possibilities

DIAGNOSIS

The general diagnosis of an aortic lesion is made on the basis of obstinate dry cough precordial pain influenced by position and transmitted posteriorly, changes of the voice and of pupils, sternal dullness and supra-sternal or epigastric pulsation. The x-ray data are frequently helpful. Different signs are present according to the predominant localization.

Recognition that the aortic lesion is due to syphilis can be made following the criteria (26): age below 40, history or evidence of lues plus positive serology or in the absence of unequivocal clinical data repeatedly positive serology, conditions of the vascular system insufficient to explain dilatation of the aorta.

Differential diagnosis is always more difficult when there is aortic regurgitation.

In elderly people the diagnosis of atherosclerosis is made only after exclusion of syphilis. Differential diagnosis from aortic aneurysms is not always possible especially in lesions of the descending or abdominal aorta. In the latter case it has been observed that *compression of the abdominal aorta decreases the femoral pulse in cases of aortitis but increases it in some cases of aneurysm*.

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is better in the atherosclerotic than in the syphilitic lesions. However if there is no aneurysm treatment may limit the extension of the vascular damage in the latter.

TREATMENT

In the case of *atherosclerosis* the treatment is based on rest, diet, avoidance of strain, hypotensive and vasodilator drugs and sedatives. *Potassium iodide (73)* may be helpful.

General dietary measures *restricting fat and especially cholesterol intake and use of*

estrogens are under study (page 228). They may not only check the progress of atherosclerosis but also cause its regression.

In the case of *luetie aortitis* anti-syphilitic treatment gives symptomatic relief and may arrest the progress of the disease. This treatment may be effective if started early, much less so if the lesions are far advanced. It is often impossible to treat the patient if there is heart failure. The most commonly accepted plans of treatment have been already sketched (page 201).

The treatment of patients with cardiac failure is that common to the condition.

Atherosclerosis or Arteritis of the Pulmonary Artery

Atherosclerosis of the pulmonary artery is much rarer than that of the aorta. It is encountered in cases with hypertension of the lesser circulation secondary to congenital pulmonary or mitral diseases. It will be discussed below (page 510). The possibility of a *primary atherosclerosis* has been advocated but proof of this is lacking.

Pulmonary arteritis may be caused by rheumatic disease or by gonococcal or pneumococcal infections. Luetic arteritis is possible. In most of the cases it is transmitted from the aorta through a patent ductus or by way of mediastinal inflammation. There are however cases of isolated luetic arteritis.

Because of the thin wall of the pulmonary artery both atherosclerosis and arteritis frequently determine the formation of an aneurysm of this vessel.

Aortic Aneurysms

Aneurysm is the partial or diffuse dilatation of an artery.

CAUSE

The great majority of aneurysms are due to *syphilis*. Diffuse arteritis is followed by weakening of the wall and by a more or less localized lesion. A few aneurysms are caused by *rheumatic disease*. *Atherosclerosis may*

cause aneurysms especially in the abdominal aorta. Arterial hypertension and trauma favor the formation of aneurysms. Rare congenital aneurysms of the aorta in association with various other congenital lesions have been described.

LESIONS

The aneurysm may be *elongated (fusiform)* or *pouch like (saccular)*. When the aortic wall ruptures and the blood is contained by the surrounding structures and by a limiting membrane of connective tissue there is a *periaortic hematoma (aneurysma spurium)*. Penetration of blood between the aortic walls creates a *dissecting aneurysm* (page 487).

Thirty two per cent of the aneurysms are in the ascending aorta, 40 per cent in the aortic arch, 12 per cent in the descending aorta and 7.2 in the abdominal aorta. The others are either multiple or in the aortic bulbous (31) (fig 286). Therefore the ascending aorta and the arch are the most common seats of aneurysms.

The wall of the aneurysm consists of connective tissue and is supported by the surrounding layers; these are thickened by an inflammatory reaction partly due to mechanical irritation and partly to the specific cause of the aortitis. The process contributes to containment of pressure but also favors extension by slowly invading the surrounding structures.

The size of the aneurysm is extremely variable from that of a green pea to that of a child's head.

The blood contained in the pouch may remain fluid; in such a case the aneurysm acts like a *reservoir* which dilates during systole and shrinks with diastole. In many cases, however, stratified white thrombi fill the pouch which behaves like a *solid mass*. The thrombi usually do not organize because the wall is unable to produce newly formed blood channels.

The aneurysm may penetrate all surrounding structures and break through the

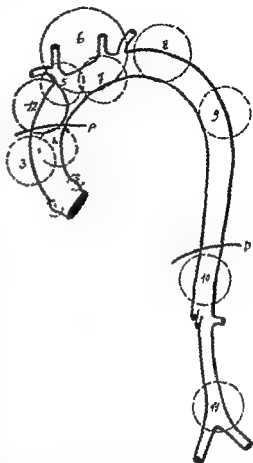


FIG 286 Possible location of aneurysms 1 2 sinus of Valsalva 3 4 intrapericardial 5 right aortic angle 6 convexity of arch 7 concavity of arch 8 left aortic angle 9 descending aorta 10 abdominal aorta 11 ascending aorta 12 pericardium D diaphragm

chest wall or rupture into the pericardial or pleural cavities, the esophagus, the trachea, a bronchus or one of the venae cavae. Sometimes the rupture occurs through a minute hole which closes later, permitting survival of the patient.

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

The main signs and symptoms can be grouped under three different headings: compression phenomena, physical signs directly due to the mass and changes of circulatory dynamics.

COMPRESSION PHENOMENA

The *sensitive nerves* react to compression and irritation with a sensation of *pain* radiating to the neck, back, and arms; this may be elicited by changes in position, effort, or deep respiration. Lesion of one of the *recurrent nerves* causes hoarse or bitonal voice through paralysis of the respective vocal cord. Lesion of the *vagus* may cause dysphagia, vomiting, or bradycardia. Lesion of the *phrenic nerve* causes hiccups and possibly a unilateral paralysis of the diaphragm. Lesion of the *sympathetic chain* of one side causes vasomotor, thermal, and perspiration disturbances among them *ipsilateral dilatation of the pupil* is typical.

Compression of the *trachea* or one of the *main bronchi* produces obstinate cough and *stridor*; there may be *atelectasis* of one of the pulmonary lobes. Pressure on the lung parenchyma or on a bronchus may cause *hemoptysis*.

Compression of the *esophagus* may cause *dysphagia*.

Compression of the *large venous collectors* (innominate trunks, superior vena cava, azygos) causes severe venous congestion.

Compression of the *thoracic duct* may cause edema or abdominal effusion (pseudo-chylous effusion).

Compression of one or more *arteries* is possible and may lead to unilateral or bilateral disappearance of the radial pulse.

PHYSICAL SIGNS DUE TO THE MASS

When the aneurysm expands outward it may create a round *mass* which has an *expansive pulsation*. The apex impulse may be in an abnormal site because of displacement of the heart. There may be a *double pulsation*; the systolic impulse is then followed by a *diastolic thrust* caused by the recoil of the retrocardiac aneurysm (32a).

Percussion may reveal an aneurysm before it has reached the chest wall.

Auscultation of the mass reveals the heart sounds and frequently a *double murmur* caused by the blood entering and leaving

the pouch through a narrow entrance. Distinction between this and the murmurs of an aortic valvular lesion is not always possible.

Auscultation at the mouth may reveal a *rhythmic oral whiff* (32b). The trachea presents rhythmic pulsations when the cricoid cartilage is raised (*tracheal tug*) (33a) and when it is pushed toward the left (33b), it transmits the cardiac sounds clearly (33c). The head of the patient may present rhythmic nodding movements (34).

CHANGES OF CIRCULATORY DYNAMICS

These take place when the sac is large, elastic, and contains fluid blood. The sac behaves like a *reservoir* because it distends in systole, decreasing the systolic pressure below it by virtue of its capacity, and retracts in diastole, increasing the diastolic pressure below it. Therefore a comparison between an artery above and one below the sac reveals that the pulse is smaller and has a slower rise (*pulsus tardus*) in the arteries placed below. The *slow rise gives the impression of a delayed pulse* because the palpating finger feels the peak and not the onset of the wave (35). Actual delay does not occur (78). Certain aneurysms increase the amplitude of the pulse distal to the sac if they have a rigid wall (35).

VARIETIES

Aneurysms of the Valsalva Sinuses (36-61)

These aneurysms are rare. They may be favored by congenital dilatation and may be caused by syphilis or bacterial infection (more frequently in cases of bacterial endocarditis). Aneurysm of the right sinus is relatively more common and compresses the right ventricle. It may rupture into the right atrium or ventricle or into the left ventricle, creating a *cardio-aortic fistula*. The fistula is revealed by a *continuous machinery murmur* behind the sternum, having greater variations of intensity in the case of the ventricles. Aortic insufficiency, bundle branch block, and even A-V block are not in

frequently caused by this type of aneurysm. It may rupture into the pericardial sac causing *hemopericardium* and *tamponade*.

Aneurysm of the left sinus compresses the pulmonary artery causing right ventricular enlargement and cyanosis. It may rupture into that artery giving physical signs which simulate a patent ductus (page 291). The murmur however is of maximal intensity in the 3rd and not in the 2nd left interspace.

Aneurysm of the posterior sinus may rupture into the left atrium or ventricle again creating a *cardio aortic fistula* and a *rough machinery murmur*.

Intrapericardial Aneurysm of the Ascending Aorta (37)

It may develop toward the right or toward the left. That developing *toward the right* causes the following signs: *attacks of paroxysmal dyspnea and precordial pain* often transmitted to the right arm; *severe cyanosis and edema* in the upper part of the body and head (compression of the superior cava); *diffuse venous engorgement* with peripheral edema and hepatic enlargement (compression of the right atrium); *or a bulge in the 3rd or 4th right interspace having a non-expansive pulsation*. The *electrocardiogram* presents *left axis deviation* and possibly a *small or flat P wave*. The *x ray* shows a shadow which displaces the angle between right atrium and vascular pedicle downward.

The aneurysm developing *toward the left* causes a greater increase of the transverse diameter of the heart. There frequently are signs of congestion simulating congestive failure. *There is a nonexpansive pulsating bulge in the 3rd and 4th left interspaces*. The *electrocardiogram* presents *no axis deviation* and a *high P wave*. The *x ray* reveals a deformity of the left border of the cardiac silhouette.

Death is caused by rupture into the pericardial cavity, the pulmonary artery, one of the atria, the superior cava, the esophagus, the right ventricle, or one of the lungs.

When there is rupture into another vessel death is delayed. Auscultatory signs caused by the *fistula* become apparent.

Aneurysm of the Ascending Aorta in the Extrapericardial Section

This is one of the most common sites for aortic aneurysm. The sac develops anteriorly and toward the right, creating an *expansive pulsating bulge in the 2nd and 3rd (occasionally 4th) right interspaces*. There is *dulness at the right of the sternum*, a *systolic thrill* and a *systolic or double murmur*. There often is *tracheal tug*. The radial pulses are equal. The cardiac apex may have a *double impulse* or a *diastolic thrust*. The aneurysm may cause compression of the superior cava, the right innominate vein, or the innominate artery. Therefore *diffuse edema* of the upper part of the body, *edema of the right side of the chest and right arm*, and a *small radial and carotid pulse on the right* may occur. The aneurysm may enlarge toward the right supraclavicular region causing displacement of the trachea to the left and paralysis of the right recurrent nerve. In rare cases the sac may cause a *symmetrical pulsation* on both sides of the sternum.

The *x ray* reveals a large shadow at the right of the sternum, especially apparent in the left anterior oblique position (fig. 287A). The *electrocardiogram* frequently reveals *atrial tachycardia*, *premature beats*, or *fibrillation*.

Rupture may take place into the pericardium, the pulmonary artery, the right pleura, one of the atria, or outwards.

Aneurysm of the Aortic Arch

This is one of the most common aortic aneurysms. When not too large the *signs of compression* are moderate and only changes of the pulse are typical. *The left radial pulse is smaller and may be delayed when compared with the right*. There is *tracheal tug*, *nonproductive cough*, *hoarse voice*, *dysphagia*, *attacks of paroxysmal dyspnea* and *precordial pain*. If the sac

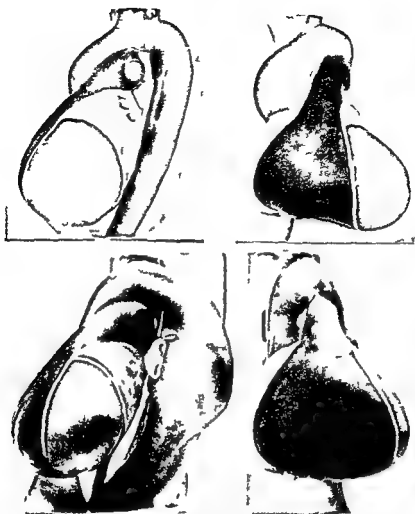


FIG. 28. Cardiovascular diseases. a aneurysm of ascending aorta and aortic regurgitation. b aneurysm of descending aorta (from originals of the American Heart Association)

becomes large there may be compression of the trachea and of the innominate veins. The aneurysm usually bulges at the supra-sternal notch and in both supraclavicular regions it may lift and later perforate the manubrium.

The *x* ray chiefly reveals a round shadow in the oblique positions.

Rupture may occur into the left bronchus, the trachea, the esophagus, the pleural cavity, the pulmonary artery, or outwards.

Aneurysm of the Descending Aorta

This often develops insidiously for a long time, then suddenly causes compression of central organs. Thoracic or lumbar pain

have been observed for as long as 10 or 15 years. Then boring pain develops in the back, left shoulder or left side. Stiffness of the back may occur. The aneurysm may cause dysphagia and by destroying the spine paraplegia. It may cause left pleural effusion. It may push the heart forward. There may be a pulsating mass at the left of the spine (22b). *Hematemesis* and *hemoptysis* are frequent. The pulse of the femoral arteries may be small and seem delayed over that of the upper extremities.

A ray in the lateral and in the left anterior oblique positions may reveal the aneurysm (fig. 287B). There may be denser shadows due to calcified plaques. A barium

swallow may show deviation of the esophagus and a clear indentation caused by the aneurysm

Rupture may occur backwards through the chest wall into the esophagus or into one of the pleural cavities

Aneurysm of the Abdominal Aorta

Aneurysms of the upper part are usually luetic those of the lower arteriosclerotic. Luetic aneurysms cause *dull aching sharp or throbbing pain* in the abdomen or back arteriosclerotic aneurysms cause pain only if large. There may be episodes simulating ileus paralyticus caused by mechanical compression of the intestines or lesions of the mesenteric arteries

The aneurysm is usually palpable as a pulsating mass in the supraumbilical region. *The pulsation is expansive*. A rough systolic murmur rarely a double murmur is audible over the mass. *The pulse of the femoral and tibial arteries is small and delayed*. Compression of the mass causes normalization of the pulse

The *graphic tracings* of the mass reveal a rounded and slow pulsation which is different from that of abdominal aortitis (fig 28.)

The *x ray* may reveal the aneurysm if the wall is calcified. Insufflation of the colon and distention of the stomach with gas may permit visualization of the mass. The *aortogram* permits visualization of the mass in difficult cases. *exploratory laparotomy* has been occasionally resorted to (33)

GENERAL DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of aortic aneurysms is easy when they are of average size. It may be difficult when the aneurysm is either very small or very large and when the blood is clotted within the aneurysm so that the sac behaves like a tumor. The most difficult diagnoses are those of aneurysms of the Valvula sinu es and those of the abdominal aorta. *X ray data* are always of great value while roentgenkymography and especially

electrokymography are helpful for the differential diagnosis between aneurysms and mediastinal tumors (60). Mediastinal tumors may reveal a transmitted pulsation (border tracing) not an expansion (densogram). Aneurysms on the contrary present both a transmitted and an expansive pulsation (border tracing similar to densogram).

Angiocardiography has proven useful in the diagnosis of aneurysms of the mus of Valvula before perforation (59). *Catheterization* reveals the shunt if there has been perforation

Differential diagnosis should exclude mediastinal tumors cardiac tumors cardiac cysts goiter abscesses localized pericarditis and many other more rare conditions

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis is always guarded. The earlier the diagnosis the longer the course. Early antiluetic treatment symptomatic treatment and rest may improve the outlook

TREATMENT

The medical treatment of the aneurysm is that of the underlying aortitis or atherosclerosis (pages 201 and 228). Rest is very important and frequently causes a remarkable improvement

Pain may be controlled by the use of analgesics and sedatives or by the *paravertebral injection of alcohol* into the ganglia in order to destroy the pathways of pain. The latter may be preceded by *injection of novocain* which by giving temporary relief of pain shows the effectiveness of the more radical procedure

Surgery of the aneurysms becomes more and more effective. Small aneurysms and the large ones where the vessels are not diseased (those following wound) respond best to *end-to-end suture of the vessel*. In general those of the abdominal aorta are the easiest to approach. Aneurysms of the lower thoracic aorta have been resected in a few cases. Ligation of the thoracic aorta however is not possible unless there is coarcta

tion of the aorta with an extensive collateral circulation

In the case of large thoracic aneurysms the best technique seems to be the *wrapping of the pouch in polythene cellophane* (58) This causes an intense fibrotic reaction preventing further expansion with eventual rupture and reducing the existing dilatation When venous engorgement is present *venesection* may increase the patient's comfort

Aneurysm of the Pulmonary Artery and Its Branches (62)

CAUSE—LESIONS

Because of weaker structure the pulmonary artery is easily distensible The principal dilatation occurs in the anterior and lateral parts of the trunk where the elastic and muscular components are particularly thin The dilatation often involves part or all of the left stem which is like a prolongation of the trunk However both branches may be involved Congenital anomalies atherosclerosis of the pulmonary artery and hypertension of the lesser circulation are the most frequent causes Syphilis is present in nearly one third of the cases Other infections may initiate the changes in mitral or congenital cases which already have high pressure in the pulmonary artery Among the most common congenital lesions patent ductus arteriosus high atrial septal defect and Eisenmenger complex are associated most frequently with this type of aneurysm Lutembacher's syndrome follows

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Cyanosis orthopnea and precordial pain mainly localized in the 2nd and 3rd left inter spaces are common Tracheal tug is usually absent while *paralysis of the left vocal cord* is possible There may be bloody sputum

The heart becomes broader on percussion There is a *cap of dullness* in the 2nd and 3rd left inter spaces usually with *no bulge* and *no pulsation* There may be a systolic thrill

In most cases, auscultation reveals a *systolic murmur* over the 2nd left interspace occasionally a *diastolic murmur* is also heard if the pulmonic valve is involved or the ostium is dilated

The *electrocardiogram* reveals *right axis deviation* There may be abnormalities of S T and T if the left coronary artery is compressed

The *x ray* reveals a rounded shadow actively pulsating to the left of the heart which is particularly evident in the right anterior oblique *The whole cardiac shadow becomes more triangular* because of cardiac rotation and burying of the apex into the diaphragm The *Val-salva test* (page 85) shows a dilatation of the aneurysm on fluoroscopy There may be unilateral or bilateral *hilar dance*

Angiocardiography and *catheterization of the heart* give definite data in difficult cases Abnormally high pressure in the pulmonary artery should be considered evidence against a congenital aneurysm of this artery

COMPLICATIONS

Thrombosis of the pulmonary artery may be the cause of death Congestive failure is otherwise inevitable Rupture of the aneurysm is not common and never takes place externally

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is possible after exclusion of aortic aneurysms paracardiac tumors and cysts It should be kept in mind that the aneurysm may complicate a congenital lesion

Rupture of the Aorta and Dissecting Aneurysm

Complete Rupture of the Aorta (42-44)

Traumatic rupture of the aorta is rare, it may occur when a terrific blow is given the thorax and sudden torsion of the head and trunk takes place The rupture usually oc-

curs at the junction of the arch and the descending aorta; probably because the latter is the most mobile portion.

Spontaneous rupture of the aorta may occur at any age. It may be caused by rupture of a luctic atherosclerotic or mycotic aneurysm; it may be connected with coarctation or hypoplasia of the aorta; or it may be due to secondary rupture of a dissecting aneurysm. In some cases no apparent aortic lesion or only abnormal thinness of the wall is present.

Arterial hypertension is a favoring cause in about one half of the cases. In older patients arterio-sclerotic changes are frequent. In the young the most common causes are toxic or infectious, but degenerative change may be present. Alteration of blood lipids which occurs in pregnancy may be another cause. Medial necrosis is usually present (page 526).

Death is usually sudden. It may be delayed if the rupture occurs in stages or if the blood flow is temporarily dammed by mediastinal structures or serous membranes.

Incomplete Rupture of the Aorta (43)

This condition takes place after tearing of the wall but before dissection. The tear usually occurs in the ascending aorta, often near one of the leaflets. It may be oblique or longitudinal but is usually transverse. It varies from 5 to 20 mm. in length. The condition is not rare; it is favored by a local pre-disposition (aortic hypoplasia, aortic coarctation, etc.) and by arterial hypertension. Trauma or effort may precipitate it.

The most common symptom is a *choking sensation* followed by *stabbing or tearing pain*. Occasionally, *cough*, *bloody sputum*, and *fever* are present.

A *systolic or diastolic aortic murmur* or *both* are frequently heard after the rupture. The systolic murmur is harsh and seems due to vibrations caused by the abrupt edge of the tear. The diastolic murmur is soft and caused by *aortic insufficiency*. This is due to dilatation of the initial part of the aorta.

lack of support of one or more cusps and loosening of the commissures.

Incomplete rupture may heal. On the other hand it may be followed by a dissecting aneurysm either within a short time or after a new tear.

Dissecting Aneurysm

CAUSE AND LESIONS

Dissecting aneurysm has the same causes and is favored by the same conditions as aortic rupture because it is the most common outcome of the latter. Atherosclerosis, aortitis, or hypertension are commonly found in the old age groups. In younger patients coarctation, hypoplasia, or congenital thinness of the aorta or pregnancy may favor dissection. Pregnancy causes changes of the blood lipids and dissection usually occurs before labor (44c).

The most frequent seats of the tear are the ascending aorta shortly above the valves and the aortic arch at the isthmus; the descending or abdominal aorta may be involved.

It is thought that *dissection starts in the media* with a transverse or oblique tear. Rupture of the intima follows immediately and the blood penetrates between media and adventitia, either in one direction or in both (fig. 288). The cause of the necrosis of the media (page 526) is still somewhat obscure.

Sometimes the dissection of the aortic wall proceeds along the entire vessel reaching the semilunar valves on one end and the bifurcation at the other.

After a period of from a few minutes to some days after the initial tear the *adventitia also ruptures*. This causes a hemorrhage into the pericardium, the pleura, or the peritoneum and is followed by death. If the hemorrhage is intrapericardial there is compression of the atria and *tamponade*. If it is in the other serous cavities there is *vascular collapse* and death.

In rare cases a new endothelial coating of the newly formed cavity takes place and the

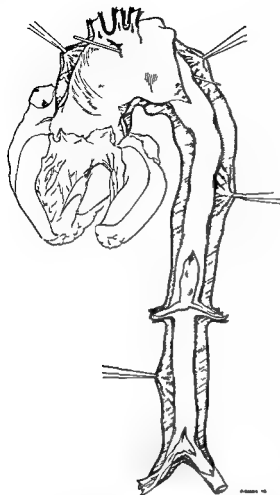


FIG. 58 Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta (From the New England J Med. Courtesy of Dr T. B. Mallory and the Massachusetts Med. Soc.)

aorta becomes like a double barrel gun until a new rupture takes place.

It is common for the dissecting aneurysm to cause compression of one or more of the large arteries. The coronaries, the carotid, the subclavian, or the iliac arteries are usually involved.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Pain is the most important sign. It starts suddenly and is boring and tearing in nature. It is deeply located and is transmitted toward the back and both arms. Transmission toward the groin and both legs may occur later but is initial when the tear is in the abdominal

aorta. Thus the distribution of pain gives a clue to the progressive dissection of the aorta. The pain may become similar to that of angina pectoris if there is compression of the coronary arteries. Rare cases present a silent dissection (66).

Pulsation of a sternoclavicular joint has been reported.

Vascular collapse and fainting may occur initially or may be delayed, occurring as a terminal episode. Compression of different arteries may cause the disappearance of the radial and carotid pulses on one or both sides. Numbness and paresthesias are usually associated. Later disappearance of the femoral pulse, paraplegia, numbness of the legs and urinary disturbances may occur.

Sudden onset of a diastolic murmur, strange splashing noises, or friction rubs may appear over the aortic area.

The blood pressure may be normal or elevated but drops suddenly in most cases. It should be measured in different arteries in order to exclude a local drop caused by compression of an artery by the aneurysm.

Hematuria, anuria, or ileus paralyticus may be present. Slight fever, leucocytosis, and increased sedimentation rate are frequently observed.

The x ray may reveal a diffuse increase of the aortic caliber.

The electrocardiogram does not show typical changes. Decreased voltage, inverted T, and raised S T have been encountered and are probably caused by compression of the coronary arteries. The ECG may reveal the occurrence of a myocardial infarction due to the same mechanism (44b, d).

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The course may vary from a few minutes to many days. In rare cases, clinical healing takes place through canalization of the channel and formation of a new endothelium (65). Autopsy reveals in such cases the so-called double barrel aorta. Sometimes a progressive increase or extension of the symptoms and signs takes place. Cerebral, hemo-

may cause monoplegia, hemiplegia or disturbance of speech. The signs of effusion in one of the pleural cavities usually the left are due to rupture of the aneurysm and precede death only by a short time. *Friction rubs* may be caused by rupture into the pericardial cavity. *Slight jaundice* may be caused by absorption of blood pigment from a periaortic hematoma.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of dissecting aneurysm is now frequently made during life. Differential diagnosis between incomplete rupture and dissecting aneurysm is based on the compression phenomena and the more diffuse pain of the latter. *Angiocardiography* may be used after the acute state is over and may permit demonstration of the size and extent of the aneurysm (67). Differential diagnosis from pulmonary embolism and myocardial infarction is necessary and may be difficult. The most difficult cases are those having a secondary myocardial infarct (page 417).

TREATMENT

There is no treatment for the rupture. *Bed rest* and morphine may prevent the extension of an incomplete rupture and the formation of a dissecting aneurysm. Once the latter is formed rest may further delay rupture of the aneurysm. Once the acute stage is over wrapping of the aorta in cellophane may be tried (67). This procedure if successful may alleviate the symptoms and permit a normal activity.

Embolism and Thrombosis of the Abdominal Aorta (4b)

These conditions are unusual but very serious and are relatively more frequent in maturity.

Aortic embolism is usually due to detachment of small mitral or aortic vegetations or larger mural thrombi of the left atrial appendage or the left ventricle. Therefore the

occurrence of aortic embolism may take place in bacterial endocarditis, in mitral stenosis or after myocardial infarction.

The symptoms and signs vary according to the size of the embolus, the site at which it has lodged, the degree of secondary thrombosis and the extension of the collateral circulation.

A large embolus lodging at the bifurcation of the aorta gives sudden excruciating pain in the abdomen or back with nausea and vomiting. It is followed by severe pain in one or both legs, then by numbness and complete loss of sensation. The lower extremities are pallid and cold and no pulsation can be felt in their arteries.

Death usually occurs within a few days through gangrene of one or both legs. In rare cases the collateral circulation is so adequate that only *intermittent claudication* results (page 334).

Surgical intervention consists of *embolectomy* and must be performed early (at least in the first 24 hours) in order to be successful. *Fluid therapy* for shock, early application of alternating suction and pressure on the extremities and *papaverine* by injection (32) are part of the medical treatment.

Slow progressive thrombosis of the abdominal aorta is possible (4b). It results in occlusion of the vessel and ischemia of the lower extremities. This condition may be caused by a) severe atherosclerotic arteriosclerosis of the aortic wall, b) embolism to the bifurcation or c) thrombosis of the pelvic arteries after irradiation. It has a slow protracted course and may not cause gangrene of the lower extremities. Its occurrence is revealed by weakness in the legs after exercise (*bilateral intermittent claudication*) and absence of the pulse in both femoral arteries.

The condition may be followed by signs of visceral infarction and much later by arterial hypertension if the thrombus slowly extend upwards.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 ARKIN A *Am Heart J* 1936 11 444
- 2 BEDFORD H C AND IARMINSON J *Brit J Radiol* 1936 9 776
- 3 a) ASSMAN H *Die klinische Roentgendiaagnostik der inneren Erkrankungen* Leipzig Vogel 1924
- b) NEUHAUSER F B D *Am J Roentgenol* 1946 11 1
- 4 a) LIAN C AND MARCHAL M *Arch Mal Coeur* 1937 30 649
- b) ROLTIER D AND HEIM DE BALZAC H *Arch Mal Coeur* 1937 30 504
- c) ROLTIER D JOLY F AND HEIM DE BALZAC R *Ann Méd* 1937 41 210
- 5 BROWN J W *Congenital Heart Disease* London J Bale Publ 1939
- 6 FRANKE H *Deut Arch klin Med* 1940 186 304
- 7 ABBOTT M F In *Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine* New York Nelson 1944
- 8 PEZZI C AND ACOSTONI G *Cuore e Circ* 1978 12 525 Also *Cardiol* 1931 1 125
- 9 GRISHAM A SLESSMAN M J AND STEINBERG M F *Am Heart J* 1944 27 217
- 10 MALCOCK W H *Am Heart J* 1937 13 633
- 11 BLUMGART H I LAWRENCE J S AND LARSEN A C *Arch Int Med* 1931 47 800
- 12 STEELE J M AND COHN A F J *Clin Investigation* 1938 17 514
- 13 WHITE P D *Heart Disease* New York Macmillan 1944
- 14 BLALOCK A AND PARK E A *Ann Surg* 1944 119 445
- 15 a) GROSS R F AND HUPFAGEL C A *New England J Med* 1945 233 287
- b) GROSS R F *New England Heart Assoc* 1945 233 586
- c) CRAWFORD C AND WYLLIE G J *Thoracic Surg* 1945 14 339
- d) GROSS R I AND WARE I F *Surg Gynec & Obst* 1946 111 435
- 16 PERLMAN I *Am Heart J* 1944 28 24
- 17 BAER W TATIG H B AND OPPENHEIMER E *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 1943 72 309
- 18 a) WAETJEN J *Deut med Woch* 1924 50 713
- b) COSTA A *Arch Int Clin Med* 1928 7 329 and 1930 9 303
- 19 a) MORCAGNI G B *De Sedibus et Causis Morborum* English trans reprinted in *Cardiac Classics* by Willis and Keys St Louis Mosby 1911
- b) ROKITSANSKY C *Handb der path Anat* 1842
- c) VIRCHOW R *Ueber die Chlorose und die damit zusammenhangende Anomalien im Gefaessapparate* Berlin 1872
- d) JAEDA K *Minn Med* 1937 16 142
- e) VALENTINE W N AND RUSSELL J *Am Heart J* 1915 30 514
- 20 a) EFFINGER Quoted by COSTA (b)
- b) COSTA A *Clin Med Ital* 1930 11 443
- 21 MUSSAFIA A *Cuore e Circ* 1941 25 237
- 22 a) PAPPENHEIM A M AND VON GLAHN W C *Am J Path* 1926 2 15
- b) VON GLAHN W C In *Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine* New York Nelson 1944
- 23 a) ALBUTT C *Diseases of the Arteries* London Macmillan 1915
- b) HERMANN G R *Synopsis of Diseases of the Heart and Arteries* Mosby St Louis 1941
- 24 WOLPERTH C AND MARCOLIS A In *Strouss Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 25 LAUBRY C *Les Syndromes d'origine Postérieure* Paris Masson
- 26 BACCILLI G *Patologia del Cuore e dell Aorta* Roma 1867 Also *Rif Med* 1939 2 159
- 27 a) TEISSIER L J *Semaine Méd* 1902 340
- b) MUGGEOT A *Laris Méd* 1919 9 344
- 28 LUISADA A A *Cardiologia Bologna* Capelli 1938
- 29 BOYD L J AND SCHERF D *Urol and Cut Rev* 1942 46 43
- 30 LEARY T *New England J Med* 1940 223 789
- 31 COSTA A *Cuore e Circ* 1930 14 491
- 32 a) HORE J I *Treatise on the Diseases of the Heart and Great Vessels* Philadelphia Haswell and Johnson 1842
- b) DRUMMOND D *Proc Northumb & Durham Med Soc* 1899-9 159
- 33 a) OLIVER T *Lancet* 1898 2 406
- b) CARDARELLI A *Gli aneurismi dell'Aorta* Naples Pasquale 1909 Also *Giorn Intern Sci Med (Naples)* 1904 16 361 and 491
- c) GROCCO P *Iavori Congr Med Int Roma* 1903 12 191
- 34 a) FELETTI R *Atti Congr Ital Med Int Roma* 1895 and *Gazz Osp (Milan)* 1895
- b) FREYSEL H *Rev Med* 1902 21 604
- c) BOCCIARDO C *Isidol (sez med)* 1906 13 56
- 35 a) MAREY E J *La Méthode Graphique dans les Sciences Expérimentales* Paris Masson 1885
- b) FRANÇOIS FRANCK *Ctr Soc Biol* 1880 68 5 357 1889 78 1 276 and 1886 88 3 1
- 36 a) PISTOCCHI C *Mal Cuore Vasi* 1911 5 123
- b) MACLEOD A *Brit Heart J* 1911 11 194

- c) WARTHEN R O *Am Heart J* 1949 37 9:5
- 37 MARTINI T AND JOSELEVICH M *Les Artérismes Intrap ricardiques del tarte* Buenos Aires Mercitali 1931
- 38 a) SCOTT V *Am J Syph Gon Ven Dis* 1914 28 65°
- b) PRATT THOMAS H H *So Car Med Assoc J* 1944 40 751
- 39 a) HENSCHEN E *Das Aneurysma tritertae Pulmonalis* Leipzig Breitkopf and Hartel 1906 (Simm klin Beitr 15 2/3 N 477-423)
- b) COSTA A *Arch Pat Clin Med* 1929 8 257
- 40 a) LUISADA A A *Min Med* 1934 (2) 25 421
- b) GROEBEL F M *Radiol* 1939 33 219
- c) BOYD I J AND MCGAVACK T H *Mo Cone Cardio Dis* 1941 10 n 2
- 41 ALEXANDER J AND BYRON F V *J A M A* 1944 126 1139
- 42 a) TAYLOR F R AND MOREHEAD R P *Ann Int Med* 1944 21 81
- b) McDONALD J B AND CAMPBELL W A *Am Heart J* 1945 30 371
- 43 a) GALLAVARDIN L AND GRAVIER L *Paris Mid* 197 85 29
- b) MARESC R *Wien klin Woch* 1929 42 417
- c) LEERY T M *Arch Int Med* 1947 70 689
- 44 a) GLENDY R E CASTLEMAN B AND WHITE P D *Am Heart J* 1937 13 129
- b) WEISS S *New England J Med* 1938 218 p 51°
- c) SCHNITZER M A AND BAYER C A *Ann Int Med* 1944 20 456
- d) WAINWRIGHT C W *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 1944 75 89
- 45 a) FAY F W *Mo Cone Cardio Dis* 1940 9 N 5
- b) MOREST F S AND RUBIN S *Am Heart J* 1948 35 227
- 46 STRAUSS R DOMINGUEZ R AND MERLISS R *Am J M Sci* 1946 211 471
- 47 GROSS L AND SEITLIN F *Cuore e Circ (Rome)* 1948 32 271
- 48 GROSS R F *Mo Cone Cardio Dis* 1947 139 795
- 49 TAUNSIG H B *Congenital Malformations of the Heart* New York Commonwealth Fund 1948
- 50 FERNOSA O H *Rev Arg Card* 1948 11 68
- 51 JOHNSON J AND KIRBY C K *Am Surg* 1948 127 1119
- 52 BRAMWELL C *Brit Heart J* 1947 9 100
- 53 CAMPBELL M AND SUZMAN M *Brit Heart J* 1947 9 185
- 54 EDWARDS J E *Med Clin North America* 1948 97°
- 55 NEUHAUSER E B D *Am J Roentgenol* 1946 55 1
- 56 DE LA CHAPELLE C E *New York Med* 1941 37 1
- 57 LENOIRE J KILADONIS P AND DE BRUY J *Arch Mal Coeur* 1948 41 193
- 58 a) ABBOTT O A *J Med Assoc of Georgia* 1917 9 355
- b) DE TAKATZ G AND REYNOLDS J T *Surg* 1947 21 443
- c) FORTE J K *Am Heart J* 1948 36 252
- 59 CHAVEZ I DORBECKER N AND CELIS A *Arch Inst Card de Mexico* 1947 17 121
- 60 LUISADA A A AND FLEISCHNER F G *Am J Med* 1949 6 756
- 61 HERRMANN G R AND SCHOFIELD N D *Am Heart J* 1947 34 87
- 62 DETERLING R A AND CLAGETT O T *Am Heart J* 1947 34 471
- 63 LAUBRY C AND ROUTIER D *Acad de Med de Paris* 1941 124 176
- 64 OPPENHEIMER B S *Trans Assoc Am Physicians* 1939 61
- 65 CASIDY M AND PINNIGER J *Brit Heart J* 1946 8 130
- 66 HOSKINS J AND GARDNER F *Brit Heart J* 1946 8 141
- 67 a) GOLDEN A AND WEENS H *Am Heart J* 1949 37 114
- b) ABBOTT O A *J Thoracic Surg* In press
- 68 CALODNEY M M AND CARSON M J *J Pediat* 1950 37 46
- 69 WELLS H G RAPPAPORT M B AND SPRAGUE H B *Am Heart J* 1949 38 69
- 70 PANNIER R *et al* *J Belge Radiol* 1950 33 1
- 71 NICKERSON J L *et al* *Circ* 1950 1 103°
- 72 a) BARNSON H T *et al* *Am Heart J* 1949 38 905
- b) KONO DO H *et al* *Am Heart J* 1950 39 306
- c) LARSEN K *Acta Med Scand* 1950 Suppl 266 661
- d) OLIM C M *Ann Surg* 1949 130 1091
- 73 HAXTON H A AND THOMPSON M L *Brit M J* 1948 2 106°
- 74 JACOBSON G *et al* *Am Heart J* 1953 46 889
- 75 FERRIN A L BRIGGS J F AND BARON OFFSKY I D *Min Med* 1950 33 1193
- 76 a) LAMPEN V H AND WADULLA H *Deut med Wchnschr* 1950 75 144
- b) ROSS R M AND MCKUSICK V A *Meet Am Heart Assoc* 1952

- 77 LOGUE R B AND SIKES C J A M A 1957 148 1209
- 78 WHITTLSEY R H Am J Physiol 1952 168 192
- 79 SPECHT H D AND BROWN A F Arch Int Med 1953 92 148
- 80 CASTELLANOS A *Cardiopatías Congénitas de la Infancia* La Habana, Frenada 1948
- 81 CASTON E A AND FOISOM H New England J Med 1945 233 229
- 82 CONNOR P AND PERIANES J J A M A 1949 140 772
- 83 a) EHRLICH W *et al* J Thoracic Surg 1934 3 352
- b) OCHSNER A AND DIXON J L J Thoracic Surg 1936 11 641
- c) ALTSCHULE M D *et al* Arch Int Med 1945 75 24
- d) HILSEY H H *et al* Am Heart J 1946 31 1
- 84 DEROW H A *et al* Arch Int Med 1939 63 676
- 85 GERBODE F *et al* Surg 1949 115 556

Hypertension of the Greater Circulation and Hypertensive Heart Disease

The syndrome of arterial hypertension is one of the most commonly found and is therefore of great clinical interest.

Arterial hypertension is frequently a secondary occurrence in diseases of the kidneys or the arteries. It may be present as a solitary occurrence and in such cases the mechanism of origin of the elevation of pressure is still under discussion.

Hypertension is an elevation of blood pressure above normal. Normal blood pressure should not be confused with average blood pressure. While average blood pressure is 120/80 normal blood pressure varies between various individuals even in basal conditions (page 65). Blood pressure may be considered normal whenever it is below 140/90 in basal conditions unless previous readings proved a lower level. Above 40 years of age systolic pressure tends to rise slightly and slowly. This increase which does not represent disease is the expression of a common benign arteriosclerotic lesion of the arteries and is present in about two thirds of the cases. It can be called *benign hypertension*.

Hypertensive heart disease is not the same as hypertension. The former term should be used only when there is evidence of ventricular enlargement or strain. The latter term applies to any case having persistently high blood pressure.

CAUSE

Not less than 18 different morbid states associated with hypertension have been described (1). The following classification simplifies current more complex listing of the causes.

Arterial Hypertension

- a) Renal
 - Vascular
 - Parenchymal
 - Perinephral
 - Pyelourethral
- b) Neurogenic
 - Lesion of CNS
 - Lesion of pressoreceptors
 - Hypertensive diencephalic syndrome
- c) Vascular
 - Coarctation of aorta
 - Atherosclerosis of aorta
- d) Endocrine
 - Cushing's syndrome
 - Phaeochromocytoma
- e) Essential

Renal hypertension may be found first of all in diseases of the peripheral vessels involving the kidneys. Among them arteriosclerosis, panarteritis nodosa, arteritis, congenital abnormalities, obstructions (aneurysm, thrombosis, embolism) and Buerger's disease are the most important. Affections of the renal parenchyma occur in acute and chronic nephritis, pyelonephritis, hydro-nephrosis, renal stones, tumors, infarction and amyloidosis of the kidney and the toxemia of pregnancy. A unilateral lesion may be sufficient to cause hypertension. Perinephric lesions may be caused by perinephritis, tumors or any other cause of external pressure on the kidney. Here again a unilateral lesion may be involved. The affections of the urinary passages include obstruction of the pelvis, ureter or urethra, prostatitis and pyelitis.

Neurogenic hypertension is found in cases with increased intracranial pressure because of tumor, trauma or inflammation. Concussion of the brain and spinal cord injuries

are accompanied by hypertension (53) Decreased sensitivity of the *pressoreceptors of the aortic and carotid walls* due to arteriosclerosis may result in hypertension The hypertensive diencephalic syndrome (29) is another example of neurogenic hypertension

Cardiovascular hypertension is found in coarctation of the aorta (page 467) The moderate hypertension due to *arteriosclerosis of the aorta* may be a common effect of aging in contrast with other types of arteriosclerosis (6a) Cardiovascular hypertension is also found in cases with functional vasoconstriction (anoxemia heart failure central stimulation) and in patients with polycythemia

Endocrine hypertension occurs in certain diseases of the adrenal glands (including pheochromocytoma) and the pituitary gland (acromegaly Cushing's syndrome)

Hypertension of certain cases of *Graves' disease* has an entirely different mechanism (page 40a) and should not be considered here

Essential hypertension is still an obscure condition It has been considered as a 'disease of adaptation' (66) while psychogenic factors leading to increased activity of the hypothalamus and of the sympatho-adrenal system have been considered responsible for its occurrence (67)

Heredity has importance in essential hypertension as shown by hypertensive families However we do not know which psychological functional or anatomical abnormality is inherited

Mental strain and excitement are among the factors which cause wide fluctuations of pressure They probably favor the establishment of a persistently high blood pressure

Essential hypertension may occur at any age but is most frequent between 40 and 50 It is not significantly more common in either sex It has been said that it is rare among Chinese living in China and Africans of Kenya the environment and diet being

more important than race or climate However, proof has been given that there are racial groups of Negroes with no competitive tension and a high percentage of hypertension

Obesity is frequently but not necessarily associated with essential hypertension

MECHANISM OF ORIGIN

The main characteristics of human hypertension are the following increased pulse pressure frequently with increased mean pressure and changes in the form of the central pulse (rapid diastolic collapse) (a)

Three possible factors can be discussed increased cardiac output (through changes of heart rate or systolic discharge) reduced blood volume due to decrease of capacity and elasticity of the large arteries, and increased arteriolar resistance (6) Experimental studies as well as clinical observations indicate that blood volume and cardiac output are within normal ranges It is apparent therefore that *peripheral resistance is increased* and since blood viscosity is normal arteriolar constriction is of paramount importance Functional or anatomical changes of the aorta (5 7) and of the large arteries in general have also been demonstrated Therefore a *general narrowing of the arterial tree* should be admitted

It is now widely admitted that *arteriosclerosis and hypertension are frequently independent phenomena* Therefore functional changes of the arterial system of either neurogenic or humoral nature have been postulated Experimental studies reported below may clarify this point

In hypertension the contraction of the left ventricle becomes stronger in order to expel a normal amount of blood against a higher peripheral resistance This leads to dilatation and hypertrophy of this chamber If this is within moderate limits it may not be apparent during life

Arterial hypertension is accompanied by an increased coronary flow (8) However, the myocardial capillaries fail to increase

proportionately with muscle hypertrophy therefore coronary insufficiency and later cardiac failure are the distant but inevitable results of hypertension (page 367)

In experiments with heart lung preparations systemic hypertension is constantly accompanied by pulmonary hypertension (9) This observation cannot be applied to an intact circulation because different factors contribute to compensate for the changes in the latter (10) Actual measurements have demonstrated normal pressure in the right ventricle with the exception of malignant hypertension and heart failure (68) *Eten if pulmonic pressure does not increase the blood content of the lungs is increased* (6) Slight failure of the left ventricle or increased venous return cause an immediate rise of pulmonic pressure a fact which is favored by the already existing distention of the pulmonary vessels This explains the frequent finding of an enlarged right ventricle in arterial hypertension (11) and the possible episodes of pulmonary edema

The cause of narrowing of the vascular system has been studied in detail through animal experimentation

EXPERIMENTAL HYPERTENSION

Different interventions produce permanent hypertension in experimental animals

a) *Increased intracranial pressure or in tracisternal injection of lachin* (12) *seratrin* (69) or *fibrin* (70)

b) *Overdosage with calciferol* (13)

c) *Section of both depressor and both carotid sinus nerves* causes a permanent hypertension in dogs while results in rabbits are less permanent (14) This form of hypertension is accompanied by tachycardia and is prevented or abolished by total sympathectomy As a result of these studies the possibility of human hypertension due to carotid sinus dysfunction was advocated

d) *Administration of desoxycorticosterone in large doses* is followed by hypertension This is due to the fact that this substance reduces urinary excretion of sodium and in

creases the concentration of sodium in the body fluids As a logical deduction *excessive secretion of the adrenal cortex* has been considered as a cause of hypertension It is self evident that *the adrenal medulla* source of epinephrine, can be responsible at least partly for paroxysmal or sustained hypertension

e) *Renal lesions* such as reduction of the renal circulation by means of clamps wrapping the kidney in cellophane or unilateral injury after removal of the other kidney cause hypertension (15) This type of experimental hypertension has the greatest resemblance to clinical types with respect to pulse pressure heart rate and cardiac output (16)

The fact that the flow through the glomerulus is regulated by two arterioles (the afferent and the efferent arteriole) and the particular efficiency of the renal vasomotor system account for the fact that wide changes of the systemic pressure do not affect glomerular filtration *Therefore arterial hypertension is not a compensatory process for decreased kidney function* Retention of nonprotein nitrogenous substances fails to elevate blood pressure so that even bilateral nephrectomy is seldom accompanied by hypertension (17)

The constriction of both renal arteries is followed by persistent hypertension through a humoral mechanism During ischemia¹ a proteolytic enzyme (renin) is liberated from the cells of the renal tubules This enzyme acts upon an α^2 formed in the liver (renin substrate) and leads to formation of a pressor substance called angiotonin or hypertensine An inhibitor substance (enzyme?) called

¹ Ischemia of the kidneys is commonly used as the easiest way to produce effects However hypertension can be produced without local ischemia either by lowering the systemic pressure or by reducing the intrarenal pulse pressure It has been proven that anoxia is not the cause of secretion of renin Decrease of pressure below 60 mm Hg acting on pressoreceptors of the kidney itself seems to be responsible for the Golblatt phenomenon (71)

angiotoninase later destroys this hypertensive agent

Angiotonin (*hypertensine*) affects directly the smooth muscles of the arteries. Small doses act like pitressin and decrease the coronary flow. Large doses elicit vascular reflexes and cause slower heart rate and decreased cardiac output.

Persistent hypertension may be produced by the renal pressor system through *excessive production of angiotonin (hypertensine) absence of angiotoninase (hypertensinase) or lack of balance between the two*. Angiotonin is one of the few substances which cause arterial vasoconstriction without changing capillary flow (18).

A different series of studies has shown that the initial stage of experimental renal hypertension in dogs is associated with the appearance in the blood of a *renal vasocutator substance (VEM)* (45). During the chronic hypertensive stage the blood gives a neutral reaction because the excitator substance is neutralized by a depressor substance (VDM) while in malignant hypertension the depressor substance gradually disappears. It is possible that VEM is identical with

pherentasin, a prolonged pressor substance which has been isolated from the blood of hypertensive patients (72).

Humoral hypertension may be caused either by a structural lesion of the renal vessels, or by a functional mechanism (narrowing of the renal vessels due to nerve impulses). This seems confirmed by the following observations:

a) Many cases of essential hypertension fail to show appreciable vascular lesions at renal biopsy (19) and present a definite improvement after thoracolumbar splanchnic section (20).

b) Experimental hypertension caused by intracisternal injections and that caused by carotid sinus denervation are prevented by either sympathectomy or denervation of the kidney and are cured by the same surgical procedures (21).

Arteriovenous capillaries, able to bypass the ordinary glomerular circulation, have been demonstrated in the kidney (40). Nervous stimuli might impede circulation in the glomerulus cause shunting of blood through the more direct route and determine ischemia of the cortex. This would

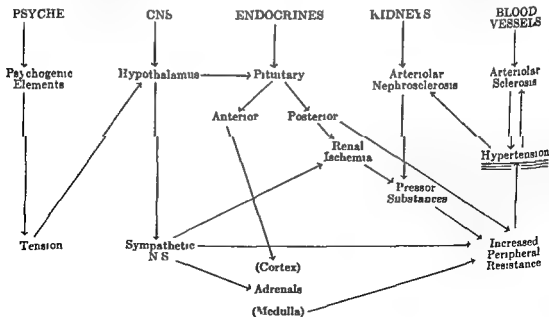


CHART 1

start the already known mechanism of humoral hypertension

Studies on the role of the anterior pituitary and of the adrenal cortex deserve special emphasis. Nephrosclerosis and hypertension have been produced by administration of anterior pituitary extract, desoxycorticosterone acetate (46) plus large doses of sodium chloride or the latter alone. On the other hand pressor substances have been found in the cerebrospinal fluid (47) and seem to be liberated by the arterial walls themselves when submitted to prolonged nervous stimulation (48).

In conclusion it is impossible to decide whether essential hypertension is due to a neurogenic mechanism acting largely through hormonal and humoral mechanisms or vice versa. It is likely that both are involved in human hypertension even though certain types of hypertension connected with structural changes can be explained in a simpler way.

LESIONS

Primary lesions of the kidneys and urinary tract may be present in cases of hypertension due to renal pathology. However the only typical changes of hypertension are the secondary lesions of the heart, kidneys, brain and arterial system.

Hypertrophy of the left ventricle may be present within 4 weeks from the onset of hypertension. The heart of acute nephritis is actually among the heaviest. In essential hypertension it is frequently twice (600 gm.) and even three times (900 gm.) heavier than a normal heart but may be normal in weight (fig. 289).

Fibrosis of the aortic and mitral valves is frequent. Coronary sclerosis and myocardial fibrosis are nearly always present as proven by the fact that 68 per cent of the deaths due to coronary disease are associated with hypertension (22).

Arteriosclerosis is often present as a secondary lesion favored by the strain of high blood pressure. The change may take place

rapidly even within a year. The structural changes of the peripheral arteries are similar to those of other types of arteriosclerosis except for greater hypertrophy of the muscular tissue. While the arteriosclerotic changes are irregular in distribution hypertrophy is usually diffuse (23).

Renal arteriosclerosis is but an example of diffuse arteriosclerosis and is therefore a secondary lesion. It may be minimal or even absent. On the other hand atherosclerosis of the large renal arteries may be the cause of hypertension.



FIG. 289 Transverse section of the heart in chronic hypertension. A normal heart B heart of hypertensive patient. (Injured by originals of E. D. White.)

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Permanent hypertension may exist for many years without symptoms. This is particularly true in essential hypertension which is frequently an unexpected finding on routine physical examinations. However emotional instability is frequently present.

The early symptoms vary. Headache, dizziness, neuralgia, irritability and sleeplessness are frequent in the early stages. On the other hand perspiration, flushing and palpitation may be present in other patients and may be connected with disturbed thyroid or pituitary function.

Shortness of breath upon exertion is a rather early symptom together with palpitation and at times precordial oppression. Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea and paroxysmal pulmonary edema may occur early in the course of the disease. Their connection with

ventricular strain and with diffuse stimulation of the sympathetic system will be discussed later (page 558)

Premature beats and at times *paroxysmal tachycardia*, may be connected with stretching of left ventricular walls

Heart Examination of the heart in the early stages reveals *increased loudness of the 2nd aortic sound* and at times its *prolongation*. At this stage, no heart disease is present. In later stages a *triple rhythm* is heard (page 370) and an *apical systolic murmur* is often present. These signs indicate ventricular strain and dilatation and justify the diagnosis of hypertensive heart disease. An *aortic systolic murmur* is not unusual. It is caused by dilatation of the vessel or atherosclerosis. The *2nd aortic sound may be prolonged* because of sclerosis of the aortic valve. If it is followed by a *diastolic murmur*, aortic insufficiency is present being caused by aortitis, atherosclerosis or incomplete rupture of the aorta. Alteration of the pulse reveals the existence of a severe myocardial lesion.

Changes of the ascending aorta are common. Dynamic dilatation of the aorta (page 473) occurs first but atherosclerosis of the aorta (page 525) is common when the hypertension has lasted several years. Dulness of the manubrium, pulsation of the suprasternal notch and prolongation of the first sound (loud and audible vascular component of the 1st sound) are its manifestations.

Renal signs and symptoms may be due to a renal lesion causing the rise of blood pressure. In essential hypertension renal signs may be absent for most of the clinical course or may be limited to a few hyaline casts and slightly low specific gravity. *Cerebral signs*, due to arteriosclerosis and including convulsions may simulate uremia.

Various symptoms may be absent but usually are present. Transient paralysis or aphasia is not exceptional and may be due to a vascular spasm (24) a small hemorrhage or discrete arterial thrombosis (25). *Headache* is frequent; it may be limited to a

sensation of fullness or pressure. It may be present only during the morning. More severe pain may be connected with severe change in pressure of the spinal fluid (renal hypertension) or structural lesions. Toxic phenomena may contribute to headache in renal diseases. *Dizziness, tinnitus, drowsiness, nausea, dyspepsia, and vomiting* may occur. These are partly connected with the high pressure of the spinal fluid and partly with functional or structural disturbances of the cerebral vessels.

Hemorrhages from the nose, gastrointestinal tract, bronchi or lungs, uterus, kidneys and urinary tract are common.

A *progressive loss of weight*, which may be rapid, occurs in many patients.

Retinal changes are common and may be grouped into two main classes (26): a) *arteriosclerosis* of the retinal vessels and b) *papilledema*. The former has a less serious meaning than the latter unless it is accompanied by extensive and multiple hemorrhages. The prognosis of cases with papilledema is always serious.

BLOOD PRESSURE

Different behaviors of the systolic and diastolic pressures may be found.

High systolic pressure with low diastolic pressure is found in bradycardia, aortic insufficiency, patent ductus arteriosus, arteriovenous fistula, hyperthyroidism. The actual burden of the arteries is less because the highest level is maintained only for a short time.

Normal (or slightly raised) systolic pressure with high diastolic pressure is usually found in congestive failure.²⁴ As the mean pressure is high, the actual burden for the arteries is greater than in the previous group. In many cases there is a decapitated hypertension shown by the higher readings of systolic pressure when the patient improves.

²⁴ Cases having a high diastolic pressure with a normal or low systolic pressure should not be included here. They will be described in chapter 24 (syndrome of hypophygmia).

Increased systolic and diastolic pressure with a high level of diastolic is a very serious condition which is found typically in nephritis and in malignant hypertension

High systolic and moderately high diastolic pressures are found in many cases of essential hypertension. The lower level of mean pressure accounts for better tolerance of the condition

Different readings in the two arms with a high blood pressure in either the right or the left arm (more often the left) are common. The systolic pressure of the lower extremities is usually from 30 to 40 mm higher while the diastolic pressure is from 10 to 20 mm higher than that of the arm. A greater difference points to either aortic insufficiency or abdominal atherosclerosis (p 477). The opposite behavior namely lower pressure in the legs is a sign of coarctation of the aorta (page 467). High pressure in the legs with low pressure in the arms may be caused by hypertension plus atherosclerosis of the aortic arch

It has been said that an isolated hypertension of the lower extremities may precede by years the establishment of hypertension in the higher limbs. This fact however needs confirmation

VENOUS PRESSURE

Venous pressure may be normal or low. However cases of essential hypertension where venous pressure reached 14 and even 16 cm of water without any evidence of heart failure have been described. This elevation has been attributed to partial transmission of the high arterial pressure (36)

SPINAL FLUID

High pressure of the spinal fluid is frequent. It may reach from 40 to 60 cm of water. Its connection with the headache and the beneficial results of lumbar puncture both on headache and arterial pressure have been emphasized (37)

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram

The early stages of hypertension may not be accompanied by electrocardiographic changes. However a short P-P interval (about 0.14 second) with normal QRS has been described (38)

The electrocardiographic evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy is considered one of the most important signs of hypertensive

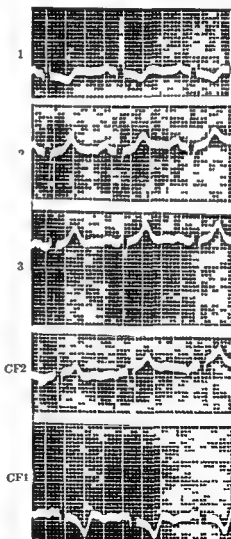


FIG 90 Electrocardiogram in a case of essential hypertension with left ventricular hypertrophy and strain

heart disease (fig 230) The unipolar limb leads may show an *inverted T wave* either in aVL (left arm) or in aVF (left leg) according to the position of the heart For this reason while such a pattern is seen most commonly in lead I it may be present occasionally also in lead 3 (fig 290)

Patients with renal hypertension may also present *low voltage of P and QRS and prolongation of Q T* This electrocardiographic picture has been called *cor renale* (73)

Phonocardiogram

This tracing may show high and prolonged vibrations caused by a *loud booming second aortic sound* the vibrations of the first aortic sound are often prolonged A *systolic murmur* is frequently recorded at the apex over the aortic area or both The former is due to left ventricular enlargement causing slight regurgitation and may be favored by fibrosis of the mitral valve The latter is caused by enlargement of the left ventricle and the ascending aorta resulting in a relative aortic stenosis (page 200)

It is common to record a *triple rhythm* The meaning and mechanism of this have been already discussed (page 370)

Pulse and Pressure Tracings

The pulse curve may present an *anacrotic depression* indicating left ventricular

strain There may be *pulsus alternans* evidence of a severe functional abnormality of the left ventricle (page 373)

The pressure tracing recorded with both the oscillatory and auscultatory methods frequently reveals an *auscultatory gap* This consists of the lack of arterial sounds while the pulses are unchanged, the phenomenon seems connected with the anacrotism of the pulse (pages 252 and 254)

X RAY

In the early stages of the disease the dimensions of the cardiac shadow may not be perceptibly increased even though left ventricular hypertrophy may be suggested by *increased convexity of the left ventricular border* Later on progressive enlargement of the left ventricle outwards downwards and backwards is observed indicating hypertensive heart disease (fig 291) Arteriosclerotic changes of the aorta may be present in the absence of cardiac enlargement They are revealed by elongation and tortuosity of the aortic arch greater density of the shadow and occasionally by signs of *calcification*

Heart failure is revealed by total enlargement of the heart and by signs of pulmonary congestion

VARIETIES

The most common type of hypertension is the so-called *essential hypertension* From

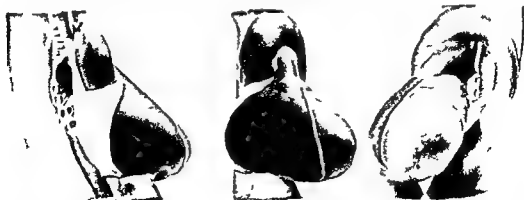


FIG 291 Cardiac silhouette of hypertensive heart disease (From models of the American Heart Association)

the clinical point of view cases with this type of hypertension can be placed in one of the following three groups (64)

a) *Benign form* moderate increase of blood pressure arterio-sclerotic changes of the retinal vessels normal urine long clinical course

b) *Intermediate form* higher and more stable level of blood pressure early appearance of headache dizziness or exertional dyspnea diffuse contraction of the retinal vessels early appearance of albumine casts, and red cells in the urine evidence of left ventricular strain appears early death occurs within 6 to 10 years

c) *Malignant form* early impairment of vision early occurrence of exertional dyspnea and anginal pain early and severe renal changes are revealed by the urine retinal angiospasm and neuroretinopathy are present cardiac and renal insufficiency cause death usually in uremia within 2 years

A few well established varieties deserve a separate description

Hypertensive diencephalic syndrome This syndrome occurs mostly in young and middle aged women but may occur in men (29) The periodic appearance of a blotchy blush extending over the face and upper trunk is typical Tachycardia hyperperistalsis of the bowels and lachrymation not associated with emotion are other signs The basal metabolic rate may be elevated (from +10 to +30) but thyroidectomy is not beneficial The name of the variety is due to recognition that similar signs are brought on by diffuse diencephalic stimulation in human beings (30)

Neurogenic hypertension This variety is still incompletely understood The patients have a practically normal renal function High spinal anesthesia produces a marked increase in renal blood flow with decreased renal resistance and lower blood pressure (31) The patients show the greatest improvement after sympathectomy

Igelnephritis The clinical signs and

symptoms may resemble those of essential hypertension (32) and diagnosis may be difficult Intravenous pyelography separate catheterization of the ureters and study of the sediment of the collected urine of a 24 hour period are of help Unilateral pyelonephritis may be the cause of hypertension in some of the patients If this is the case and the other kidney is normal or only slightly damaged unilateral nephrectomy may lead to normalization of the blood pressure and cure the clinical syndrome

Pheochromocytoma a chromaffin tumor of the adrenal medulla may cause hypertension It first causes paroxysmal attacks of high blood pressure during which the extreme level of 300 mm or more may be reached Later a sustained hypertension which is difficult to distinguish from essential hypertension is created When death occurs during one of the paroxysms it is frequently preceded by an attack of pulmonary edema (page 550) Histamine gives a paradoxical effect and increases blood pressure in these cases (44) Benzodioxane an adrenolytic drug reduces blood pressure in cases of pheochromocytoma not in cases of renal hypertension (74)

Carcinoma of the adrenal glands is usually a cortical tumor and may simulate Cushing's syndrome Differentiation between this syndrome and one of the pituitary origin may be made because the excretion of male sex hormone is increased in patients with cortical tumor

The possibility that the loss of ovarian function was responsible for the common hypertension of menopausal syndrome has been advanced However this fact has not been demonstrated (1)

Cushing's syndrome is considered as a state of pituitary imbalance connected with tumors of the adrenal cortex or atrophy of hypothalamic nuclei Increased activity of the pituitary (ACTH) stimulates the adrenal cortex and secondary adrenocortical and renal precursor hyperactivity causes hypertension (75)

Hypertension of pregnancy Eclampsia preeclampsia, and toxemia of pregnancy are considered to be related to renal abnormalities. Hydronephrosis and pyelitis are often the precursors of toxemia syndromes (39). Nephritis, pyelitis and hypertension are frequently interrelated in pregnant women. The cardiorenal strain caused by pregnancy, and the improvement caused by delivery have masked for a long time the fact that these women often develop typical cardiovascular symptoms in a later stage. In many cases the vascular and renal disturbances become latent after delivery and recur at a later date whenever a new strain is imposed on the heart and kidneys (40).

Malignant hypertension Malignant hypertension may appear during several apparently dissimilar diseases all having high blood pressure (3, 33). The great majority of patients have had hypertension for many years but the malignant syndrome may be present from the onset (1). It is frequently difficult to decide whether the hypertension is primary or secondary to some unrecognized process. Among the typical signs are papilledema and multiple hemorrhages of the eyegrounds possibly accompanied by detachment of the retina. The pulse pressure usually tends to be reduced, enlargement of the heart occurs within a short time, hematuria and poor renal efficiency are typical, hemorrhagic arteriolitis and arteriosclerotic changes cause a rapid deterioration of the patient. If the syndrome occurs during pregnancy, delivery may be accompanied by remission of the signs and a much longer clinical course.

Transient hypertension Transitory elevations of the blood pressure often represent an early stage of essential hypertension (34).

Orthostatic hypertension Hypertension occurring only in the erect posture has been described in cases of nephropathy (41). It is a rare occurrence caused by diminution of renal blood flow and its repercussions on the renal pressor system. The rarity is connected with the fact that in the majority of cases,

a greater blood flow occurs in the standing position.

COMPLICATIONS

The most common complications are due to lesions of the heart, kidneys or cerebral vessels. Congestive failure, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris and attacks of paroxysmal dyspnea or pulmonary edema are frequent. Uremia and cardiovascular accidents are possible. Acute infections or pulmonary embolism from phlebothrombosis of the leg may terminate the clinical course.

Thyroid heart, syphilitic aortitis and aortic regurgitation, atherosclerosis of the aorta, and rheumatic valvular lesions may be associated with hypertension causing a more serious outlook and a shorter clinical course. Neurocirculatory asthenia is a frequent complication of hypertension.

Renal arteriosclerosis or arteriolosclerosis is a possible complication of hypertension.

Attacks of headache, vomiting, convulsions and coma may be caused by cerebral edema. On the other hand, attacks of localized sensory or motor paralysis of brief duration are due to sudden occlusion of cerebral arterioles followed by infarcts. The extension of the latter is determined by the greater or lesser collateral circulation (42).

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is based on the recognition that a persistent and significant increase of blood pressure is present.

Palpation of the superficial arteries, ophthalmoscopic examination of the retinal vessels, urinalysis and kidney function tests help to determine the degree of vascular change in the respective regions.

Intravenous urography, urine culture-cystoscopy and retrograde pyelography, are often necessary in order to detect abnormalities of the urinary tract.

Electrocardiography, phonocardiography and roentgen ray examination of the chest complete the cardiac study and reveal the

existence and grade of hypertensive heart disease

Functional tests including the cold pressor test and measurements during normal or induced sleep ascertain the degree of reactivity of the vasomotor system

Ruling out coarctation of the aorta, pheochromocytoma, polycystic kidney, congenital anomalies, glomerulonephritis and pyelonephritis is necessary as a first step. Histamine and benzodioxane tests should be undertaken. Exclusion of a unilateral renal lesion is particularly important because of the therapeutic success which is obtained in such cases especially if the patient is young.

When the diagnosis of essential hypertension is established an evaluation of neurogenic, endocrine and renal factors should be made.

High spinal anesthesia may be done in order to demonstrate the value of a possible intervention on the sympathetic system.

Glomerulonephritis and malignant hypertension (35) Differentiation between glomerulonephritis and malignant hypertension (before uremia sets in) is difficult but possible (36). Patients with terminal glomerulonephritis have a lower rate of glomerular filtration (plasma inulin clearance) and of tubular secretory capacity (diodrast clearance) and also a higher proteinuria than patients with malignant hypertension and renal failure. The former develop signs of cardiac failure five times less often and live four times longer than those with glomerulonephritis. Blood pressure is higher, cardiac output is lower and peripheral resistance is greater in malignant hypertension than in glomerulonephritis. Electrocardiographic signs of hypertensive heart disease are far more common in the former than in the latter.

Neurogenic and endocrine factors may cause hypertension. An extreme example of the neurogenic type is represented by the diencephalic syndrome while the pheochromocytoma is a typical example of

endocrine hypertension. Differential diagnosis between these and the high blood pressure of hyperthyroidism is necessary (1).

PROGNOSIS

Prognosis can be based only upon the general clinical consideration of the case.

Systolic pressure in itself has a definite bearing on prognosis because the highest figures usually imply a shorter life expectancy but diastolic pressure is even more important in this respect. A diastolic pressure maintained above 150 mm has a bad prognostic significance.

Signs of malignant hypertension always imply a bad prognosis as do signs of heart failure. The same is true of patients having hypertensive heart disease, vascular disease, albuminuria or encephalopathy. Evidence of myocardial or coronary damage implies a more guarded prognosis. The same is true of obesity and diabetes.

Clear renal involvement is a serious sign; however, it has been shown that terminal glomerulonephritis in a hypertensive patient has a much better outlook than malignant hypertension with renal failure (35).

TREATMENT

Patients with *benign hypertension* connected with senility (a level of 170/100) should be considered within this group in a person of 60) do not require treatment. Therapy should be limited to patients with evidence of hypertensive heart disease, renal disease or cerebral disease or having severe symptoms.

DIEET THERAPY

Salt restriction (V) (50-76) or the *rice fruit sugar diet of Kempner* (VII) (54-77) with its low sodium, low cholesterol and low protein contents, benefits about two thirds of the patients. Following 10 weeks of such treatment, considerable loss of weight improved symptomatology and objective improvement takes place. However, the results are far greater in obese patients than in

others severe psychological problems often arise low sodium syndrome may develop and the results disappear within a few weeks from resumption of a normal diet. Therefore a more moderate restriction of salt may be indicated (IX). Good results have been obtained also with a low cholesterol diet (XII) (56).

Dietary treatment has given good results in certain patients no results in others. This indicates various mechanisms of action and therefore the necessity of selection before indicating a diet. The first two diets are often successful for a certain time but cannot be continued because they are too monotonous. Moreover excessive deprivation of certain constituents may cause severe debilitation and should be avoided because it may be dangerous (78).

Cation exchange resins have been tried but their success is questionable. Moreover salt restriction to 1 g daily is still necessary.

HYPOTENSIVE DRUGS

Sedatives. Phenobarbital and other barbiturates may be helpful at times. It is the writer's view that they should be given only at night in ambulatory patients. Fractional administration should be reserved for patients with severe hypertension who are assigned to bed rest and should not be unduly prolonged. Bromides may be useful in some cases.

Hypotensive drugs. These drugs have been employed at first for pharmacological tests. Later their continued use seemed justified as it caused appreciable improvement in a number of patients. They are a) Tetraethyl ammonium chloride or bromide (61) b) dibenamine (62) (37) c) hydergine (63) (36) and d) hexamethonium (79) (39) (10). The first and the last paralyze the ganglia the second acts on sympathetic endings the third inhibits sympathetic activity within the CNS. These drugs have powerful hypotensive action. The need of a delicate adjustment of dose in order to prevent a

too sudden drop of pressure and the various side effects which are more marked in the erect position, limit their use to severe cases and bedridden patients. A girdle and leg bandages may prevent postural hypotension.

Protoveratrine (80) (47) lowers blood pressure in a reflex way by stimulating sensitive fibers of the left ventricle carotid sinuses aortic arch, and pulmonary arteries. It is very effective and may be given to ambulatory patients. Subcutaneous dose is 4 to 6 micrograms per kilogram every 8 to 12 hours. The oral dose is 0.5 to 0.75 mg t.i.d. after meals and at bedtime. Side effects mainly consisting of nausea are more common by this route. A significant blood pressure drop is obtained in about one third of the patients.

Rauwolfia (81) (45) has a moderate but nearly constant hypotensive action and no side effects.

Nitrites are frequently disappointing. However they may lessen the danger of complications. Among them mannitol hexanitrate (51) and peritrate (50) are slow acting drugs which can be used together with papaverine (43) (44) in order to obtain additional effects.

Potassium iodide (73), alone or with added bromides is frequently helpful though its mechanism of action is incompletely known. It should be employed with caution.

Potassium sulphocyanate (thiocyanate) of ten causes a definite lowering of blood pressure. However the toxicity of this drug calls for great caution in its use. Its hypotensive action is nitrite like while its less severe toxic manifestations are similar to those of the iodides.

Pyrogens have been tried in malignant hypertension (82). However their administration is difficult.

Psychotherapy has been tried with moderate success. An attempt at removing the strain of professional and social activities as well as the worries of family tangle should always be made.

At times rest is very important and a few days of bed rest may lower the blood pressure remarkably. However care shall be taken in order not to transform a person having many years of possible activity into a bedridden patient.

Physiotherapy and *roentgen irradiation* of the thyroid, the pituitary or the adrenal glands have been tried with limited results.

Subtotal thyroidectomy and *propylthiouracil* and *radioactive iodine* have been advocated and may give results in selected cases.

Extreme hypertension responds well to *spinal* or *caudal anesthesia*. This procedure has been used in hypertension associated with acute nephritis, cardiac failure or encephalopathy and lowers blood pressure by causing peripheral vasodilation.

SURGICAL TREATMENT (10, 20, 42, 43)

Apart from surgical treatment of renal or adrenal conditions and from thyroidectomy many surgical interventions have been advocated. They include decortication or denervation of the kidneys, bilateral thoracolumbar rhizotomy, splanchnic resection, adrenal denervation and subtotal adrenalectomy.

Bilateral lumbodorsal splanchnic resection is the most successful. It is performed in two stages. In a fair percentage of patients it is followed by marked reduction of blood pressure. Symptomatic relief, improvement of eye grounds, decrease of cardiac enlargement and increase of kidney concentrating ability take place. In some cases triple rhythm, left axis deviation, inverted T1 pulsus alternans and ventricular hypertrophy disappear causing an amazing clinical change. In some cases the maximum effect is reached from 3 to 5 months after the intervention. It is sometimes temporary but may be permanent. It may be out of proportion with the lowering of blood pressure. Sympathectomy requires special precautions (girdle, bandaged legs) for preventing sudden drop of pressure in the erect position.

The effect of the operation does not seem to be dependent upon the condition of the renal arterioles and may be due at least partly to decreased peripheral resistance.

The main indications for surgery are hypertensive neuropathy or a rapidly progressive hypertension in a young person. The main contraindications are heart failure, severe coronary heart disease and renal insufficiency. However these may be exceptionally waved aside with the understanding that surgery will bring only a limited or temporary relief. Pregnant women with hypertension and toxemia may respond favorably to sympathectomy.

The results of sympathectomy have led to the following conclusions:

Cases with humoral or endocrine hypertension may benefit from surgery (57). Hypertensive patients with heart failure who do not respond to digitalis or other remedies may benefit from surgery and attain a cardiovascular equilibrium (58). Hypertensive patients submitted to surgery may experience a remarkable subjective and objective improvement and are better influenced by drugs (59) even though their blood pressure is unchanged or only slightly lower. This has been tentatively explained as due to decreased amount of sympathin and epinephrine in their tissues including the heart muscle (60).

GENERAL THERAPEUTIC EVALUATION

Different types of hypertension require different methods of treatment.

1) Cases with pheochromocytoma, unilateral renal disease or coarctation of the aorta require surgery.

2) Cases with benign and stationary hypertension should be treated with mild sedation and mild dietary restrictions.

3) Cases with obesity, high blood cholesterol or both should be placed on a reducing or rice diet for some weeks. Later they should follow a moderate diet poor in cholesterol.

4) If there is cardiac enlargement or

other evidence of left ventricular strain a low sodium diet should be prescribed and hypotensive drugs should be used

5) Patients with malignant hypertension or rapid evolution of the vascular lesions should be submitted to sympathectomy. If this is not possible bed rest, strict diet, therapy with protoveratrine or sympatholytics should be prescribed

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 PAGE I H In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 2 MOSEWITZ H O In *Nelson Loose Leaf of Medicine* New York Nelson 1946
- 3 DEROW H A AND ALTSCHULE M D New England J Med 1935 213 951 Also Ann Int Med 1941 14 1768
- 4 HOUSTON W B In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 5 WIGGERS C J Ann Int Med 1932 6 12 Also Am Heart J 1938 16 515
- 6 WIGGERS C J *Physiology in Health and Disease* Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1944
- 7 WIGGERS C J AND WEGRIA R Am J Physiol 1938 124 603
- 8 GREGG D E Am J Physiol 1936 114 609
- 9 a) FLEHNER H AND STARLING E H J Physiol 1913 47 296
- b) ANREP G V AND BULATOV F J Physiol 1923 60 175
- 10 KATZ L N AND WIGGER C J Am J Physiol 1927 82 91
- 11 THOMPSON W P AND WHITE P D Am Heart J 1936 12 641
- 12 a) CUSHING H Mitt Grenz Med Chir 1902 4 773 Also Am J M Sci 1903 125 101
- b) FORSTER F M Am J Physiol 1943 139 347
- c) HELLER H klin Woch 1934 13 241
- d) LICK E P Wien klin Woch 1935 48 634
- 13 a) APPELROT S Am J Physiol 1933 105 294
- b) HANDOWSKY H S J Physiol 1937 90 62 P
- 14 a) HERING H E *Die Karotissinusreflexe* Dresden Steinkopf 1927 Also Zeit Kreislauff 1927 11 410
- b) HEYMANS C BOUCKAERT J J AND REGNIERS P *Le Sinus Carotidien* Paris Doin 1933 Also Surgery 1938 4 487
- c) KOCH F AND CO WORKERS *Krankheitsforsch* 1923 7 241 Also *Zeitschr exp Med* 1934 94 105
- d) NOWAK S J G Ann Surg 1940 3 107
- e) BLALOCK A *Physiol Rev* 1940 20 159
- f) THOMAS C M AND CO WORKERS Am Heart J 1940 20 316 Also Proc Soc Exper Biol 1941 48 24
- 15 a) GOLDBLATT H AND CO WORKERS Bull Acad Med Cleveland 1932 16 6 Ann Int Med 1937 11 69 J Exper Med 1934 59 347 1937 67 671 and 1938 67 809 *Experimental Hypertension Induced by Renal Ischemia* Harvey Lecture Series 33 Baltimore The Williams & Wilkins Co 1938 Physiol Rev 1947 27 120
- b) PAGE I H J Mt Sinai Hosp 1941 8 3
- c) HOLMES B A AND BRAUN MENENDEZ E Brit M J 1942 2 179
- d) BRAUN MENENDEZ E FASCIOLA J C LELOIR L F McROZ J M AND TACQUINI A C *Hypertension Arterial nefrogena* Buenos Aires El Ateneo 1943
- 16 HOLMAN D V AND PAGE I H Am Heart J 1938 16 321
- 17 HARRISON T R AND CO WORKERS Tr Assoc Am Physicians 1936 51 281
- 18 a) LANDIS E AND CO WORKERS J Clin Investigation 1939 17 180
- b) ABELL R G AND PAGE I H J Exper Med 1942 75 305
- 19 SMITHWICK R H Surg 1940 7 1
- 20 CASTLEMAN B AND SMITHWICK R H J A M 4 1943 121 1266
- 21 a) BRAUN L AND SAUET B Wien klin Woch 1933 46 295 1934 47 65 and 1935 48 940 Also Arch exp Path Pharm 1935 177 669
- b) GERBI C AND MARTINETTI R Arch Scienze Med 1936 61 397
- c) GRIMSON R S BOUCKAERT J J AND HEYMANS C Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1939 42 275
- 22 BELL C T AND CLARSON B J Arch Path 1978 5 939
- 23 FAHR T In Handb d Spez path Anat u Hist 1934 6 807
- 24 PAL J *Die Gefaesskrisen* Leipzig Hirzel 1905
- 25 ALIBUTT C *Arteriosclerosis* London Macmillan 1925
- 26 FISHER A M AND OPPENHEIMER B S Arch Int Med 1930 48 901
- 27 BALLANTYNE A H Arch Ophthalm 1915 33 97
- 28 WHITE P D Am Heart J 1915 30 140 Also Bull New England Med Center 1915 7 205
- 29 PAGE I H Am J M Sci 1935 190 9

- 30 CUSHING H Proc Nat Acad Sci 1931 17 163
- 31 PAGE I H TAYLOR R D CORCORAN A C AND MUELLER I Proc Centr Soc Clin Research 1943 16 13
- 32 a) WEISS S AND PARKER F Medicine 1939 10 271
b) ABESHOLOM B S Surg 1941 9 942 and 10 147
- 33 a) VOLKHARD F AND FAHR T *Die Brightsche Nierenkrankheit* Berlin Springer 1914
b) FAHR T Virch Arch 1919 226 119
c) FISHBERG A M *Hypertension and Nephritis* Phila Lea and Febiger 1939
- 34 LEVY R L WHITE P D SPROUD W D AND HILLMAN C C J A M A 1945 128 1059
- 35 a) CORCORAN A C AND PAGE I H Ann Int Med 1944 21 747
b) TAYLOR R D KOHLSTAEDT K G RICHTER A B AND PAGE I H Ann Int Med 1944 21 765
- 36 a) VILARET M AND CO WORKERS Presse Méd 1973 31 318
b) SCHOTT E Dtsch Arch klin Med 1912 108 537
c) ROTKY H AND KLEIN O Med Klin 1973 19 1574
d) SCHLEITER H G AND THOMAS A H Tr Am Clin & Clin A 1931 47 86
- 37 GREPPI E Riv Neurol 1933 6 201
- 38 SCHERF D Bull New York Med Coll Flower and Fifth Ave Hosp 1941 4 116
- 39 PETERS J P J A M A 1938 219 703
- 40 HERRICK W W AND TILLMAN A J B Arch Int Med 1935 66 643 Also Am J Obst 1936 31 832
- 41 McCANN W H AND ROMANSKY M J J A M A 1940 115 573
- 42 a) ADSON A W AND BROWN G E J A M A 1934 102 1115
b) CRAIG W M West J Surg 1934 42 146
c) CHILE G Pennsylvania M J 1937 40 1017
d) GRIMSON K S Ann Surg 1941 114 753
e) GRIMSON K H KERVODLE C E AND HILL H C J A M A 1941 126 218
- 43 a) TALBOTT J H CASTLEMAN H SMITH WICK R H AND CO WORKERS J Clin Investigation 194 22 387
b) ROJAS F SMITHWICK R H AND WHITE P D J A M A 1944 126 15
c) SMITHWICK R H Arch Surg 1944 49 180 Also New York State J Med 1944 44 7693
d) PEET M M AND ISEBERG F M J A M A 1946 130 461
- 44 a) HYMAN A AND MENSCHER W H J Urol 1943 49 435
b) ROTH G M AND KVALE W F Am J M Sci 1945 210 653
- 45 a) SHORR E AND ZWEIFACH B W Federation Proc 1949 8 146
b) SHORR E Am J Med 1948 4 170
- 46 PAGE I H J A M A 1949 140 451
- 47 a) PAGE I H Science 1935 82 550
b) RAAB W Ann Int Med 1918 28 1010 Also Am J Physiol 1918 152 324
- 48 JIMENEZ DIAZ C AND CO WORKERS Rev Clin Espan 1947 24 417 Also Rev Espan Card 1947 1 1
- 49 TRICETA J AND CO WORKERS *Studies of the Renal Circulation* Thomas Springfield Ill 1941
- 50 GOLDBERGER H *Unipolar Lead Electrocardiography* Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1947
- 51 PICKERING G W J A M A 1948 137 423
- 52 a) BLOOMFIELD B A AND CO WORKERS J Clin Investigation 1946 25 639
b) LENEQUE J AND MAURICE P Arch Mal Coeur 1941 40 113
c) McMICHAEL J Ann Rev Physiol 1943 10 201
- 53 a) RAAB W Am Heart J 1919 37 237
b) THOMSON C E AND CALHOUN WITHAM A New England J Med 1949 239 291
- 54 KEMPNER W North Carolina M J 1944 5 125 and 1945 6 81 and 117 Am J Med 1945 4 545 Ann Int Med 1949 31 871
- 55 a) GROLLMAN A AND CO WORKERS J A M A 1945 129 533
b) BRYANT J M AND BLECHA E Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1947 65 277
- 56 DOCK W J A M A 1947 134 1197
- 57 DE TAKATS G AND FOWLER E F Surg 1947 21 773
- 58 CHAVEZ I AND MENDOZA L Arch Inst Card de Mexico 1949 18 690
- 59 a) DAVIS C AND CO WORKERS Ann Surg 1918 128 1770
b) PEET M M New England J Med 1947 236 270
c) FISHBERG A N J A M A 1948 137 670
- 60 RAAB W Discussion Meeting New England Heart Assoc 1943
- 61 a) BROWN H S AND CRAIG W Mich Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1945 20 94
b) LIAN C AND BERGAMO G Semaine des Hop (Paris) 1943 24 2737
- 62 HAIMOVICI H AND MEDINETS H E Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1948 67 173
- 63 a) FREIS E D STANTON J R AND WILKINS R W Am J M Sci 1948 216 163

- b) BLUNT CHIL H J AND COFTZ R H Am Heart J 1948 35 873
- 64 PAGE I H In *Myers J A and McKinlay C 1 The Chest and the Heart* Springfield Thomas 1948 vol II
- 65 a) MOSCHOWITZ F J A M A 1950 143 561
b) DOCK W Bull New York Acad Med 1950 26 18
- 66 SFLY H *Stress* Montreal Acta Inc Med Publ 1950
- 67 SCHROEDER H A Am J Med 1951 10 189
- 68 LENOIRE J AND MAURICE P Arch Med Coeur 1947 40 173
- 69 JARICH A *et al* Klin Wochn 1940 18 1440
- 70 CAMERON G R AND KLO M N J Path & Bact 1949 61 505
- 71 DIARY A Arch Intern Phys 1951 59 211
- 72 SCHROEDER H A AND OLSEN N S Meet Am Heart Assoc 1952
- 73 ZICKFRUANN R *et al* Arch Cardiol Mexico 1951 21 155
- 74 a) SANDER C H AND VICK E H Am J Dis Child 1947 73 581
b) GOLDFINGER M *et al* J A M A 1947 135 971
- 75 HEIMBECKER P AND IFFEYENBERGER M Am J Med 1950 9 3
- 76 a) ALLEN F M AND SHERRILL J W J Metab Res 1952 2 429
b) LINES R L AND IERERA G A Med Clin North America 1949 113
c) CHAPMAN C H AND CIRIBON T H Medicine 1950 29 29
- 77 WATKINS D M *et al* Am J Med 1950 9 441
- 78 CHAPMAN C B *et al* New England J Med 1950 243 599
- 79 FINNERTY F A AND FREIS E D Circ 1950 2 828
- 80 a) MEILMAN F AND KRAYER O Circ 1950 1 204 and 1952 6 217
b) STEARNS N S AND ELLIS L B New England J Med 1952 246 391
c) WILKIN R W Mo Cone Cardio Dis 1951 20 59 Also New England J Med 1950 242 535
- 81 WILKINS R W AND JOHNSON W F New England J Med 1953 248 48
- 82 PAGE I H J A M A 1951 147 1311

Hypertension of the Lesser Circulation and Pulmonary Heart Disease (Cor Pulmonale)

The syndromes caused by hypertension of the lesser circulation have been described more recently than those caused by systemic hypertension. A secondary lesion of the right heart is a frequent though not an inevitable result

Acute Cor Pulmonale Caused by Pulmonary Embolism and Infarction

CAUSE

Pulmonary embolism causes sudden obstruction of the pulmonary artery, one of the stems or one or more secondary branches of the pulmonary artery. The emboli arise either in the right heart or in any part of the systemic venous circulation. The most common sites of origin are the veins of the pelvis (obstetrical and surgical cases) and those of the lower extremities. Mural thrombi dislodged from the endocardium of the right atrium (congestive failure, atrial fibrillation) or the right ventricle (myocardial infarction) (1) are also a possible cause of pulmonary embolism.

Embolism from the pelvic veins may take place in postoperative patients usually from 8 to 14 days after operation, that from the right heart may occur in cardiac patients. Embolism from the leg veins may occur in patients with a known *phlebitis* or in ambulatory patients having *quiet venous thrombosis* (2, 3) without symptoms. In the latter the embolism is a sudden unforeseen occurrence and may be mistaken for a coronary occlusion. While *thrombophlebitis* of varicose veins and *phlegmasia alba dolens*

(*milk leg*) rarely give rise to fatal complications, *phlebitis* of the deep veins of the lower extremities (*phlebothrombosis*) is more dangerous and carries a higher mortality (page 539).

A rapidly developing thrombosis of a branch of the pulmonary artery may in exceptional cases give a clinical picture which is similar to that of pulmonary embolism.

Certain predisposing factors favor the occurrence of thrombosis and embolism.

a) *Causes affecting the composition of the blood* (the rapidity of clotting is increased). Toxemia, infection, dehydration, anemia, leukemia, pregnancy, the puerperal state and trauma should be included in this group.

b) *Causes affecting the integrity of the endothelium* (thrombosis is favored). Typhoid fever, grippe, syphilis, rheumatic disease, bacterial endocarditis, arteriosclerosis and phlebosclerosis are the most important.

c) *Causes affecting the blood flow* (circulation is slowed down). Conditions causing low metabolism, low blood pressure and slow circulation (either general or in certain areas) are important factors. Cardiac failure is the most frequent cause of general changes of flow; varicose veins are the most frequent cause of local changes of flow.

The importance of a sudden increase of venous pressure in patients with heart disease, *phlebothrombosis* or both in the detachment of a loose mural thrombus should be emphasized (3). This increase may be due to cough, defecation, parturition, coitus or lifting or straining, any of them by causing a sudden change in vascular dynamics may cause sudden death.

FUNCTIONAL AND STRUCTURAL EFFECTS

Complete occlusion of the pulmonary artery causes death within a short time unless the occluding factor is rapidly removed. Occlusion of one of the main stems or obstruction of the main artery which is equivalent to from 50 to 66 per cent of the caliber may be compensated in experimental animals (4). Compensation is based upon increased effort of the right ventricle and dilatation of this chamber and the pulmonary artery (or its proximal section). Dilatation of the pulmonary vessels of the intact lung is also important when one stem is occluded (5). One important factor of compensation is the initial tension of the right ventricle which is dependent upon venous return. A too severe obstruction causes diminished return to the left ventricle with decreased output and coronary ischemia. Both cause decreased efficiency of the right ventricle.

Pulmonary embolism is followed by pulmonary infarction which is followed in turn by consolidation often resulting in pneumonia (infarct pneumonia (5b)).

Multiple reflexes arising in the occluded pulmonary artery and causing a diffuse vasoconstriction in both the pulmonary and the coronary arteries have been demonstrated (6). Reflex bradycardia, hypotension, as well as bronchoconstriction and pulmonary vasoconstriction seem to be caused at least partly by serotonin (5 OH tryptamine) liberated from platelets in the process of coagulation (37). It is possible that the effect of reflexes on the coronary vessels is less important than that of hypotension in causing coronary ischemia and insufficiency (38).

Emboic block at the bifurcation of a pulmonary branch is frequent. Pressure in the area supplied by the branches then falls nearly to zero. Stagnation in the affected area and leakage of blood through the vascular walls follow causing a hemorrhagic infarct. It is customary to admit a wedge shaped infarction with the greater breadth toward the surface of the lung and associ-

ated with a certain degree of associated pleurisy. However rounded or indefinite formations are often revealed by x-ray.

Multiple infarctions are frequent. A recent infarct resembles a blood clot while an older one shows organization, fibrosis and superficial retraction. Septic emboli may be followed by abscesses. Large occlusions may affect an entire lobe or even one lung causing diffuse edema without consolidation. This however, is usually incompatible with recovery.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

In typical cases the patient suddenly becomes cyanotic and dyspneic and complains of precordial oppression and suffocation. Ashen gray color and diffuse perspiration may appear. The pulse is weak and extremely rapid, blood pressure falls and shock may occur. Nausea and vomiting may appear.

If death is avoided the vascular collapse subsides after 1 to 2 hours and strain of the right heart becomes apparent (acute cor pulmonale). Dilatation of the right ventricle which is apparent on percussion and fluoroscopy then occurs. The dilated pulmonary artery may cause violent pulsation of the 2nd left interspace. Accentuation of the 2nd sound over the pulmonic area and a triple rhythm over the center of the precordium are heard (1b 0).

A pericardial friction rub in the 2nd, 3rd and 4th interspaces near the left sternal border has been described and attributed to impingement of the pulmonary conus on the anterior wall (1b 7).

The neck veins are distended revealing a rise of systemic venous pressure (8a). Marked systolic pulsations of the jugular veins and the liver may be due to relative tricuspid insufficiency.

One or two days after the onset the signs of infarction appear. They consist of cough which is frequently followed by bloody sputum, pain, limited expansion and dulness of the corresponding area of the chest, decreased breath sounds or bronchial

breathing and occasionally friction rub. The latter is evidence of *reactive pleuritis*.

Within 12 to 24 hours from the onset *fever leucocytosis* and *increased sedimentation rate* appear. After the first 2 or 3 days moderate *jaundice* may be observed (1d). It is caused by hemolysis and reabsorption of pigment from the infarcted area but may be favored by liver engorgement.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM

Tracings taken soon after the attack may present significant changes (1 6b 10). They consist of *right axis deviation* (S_1 high R_3) and evidence of *ischemia (or strain)* of the right ventricle (depressed ST and inverted T in leads 2 3 and VF as well as in $V_1 V_2$). These changes do not appear in cases where the obstruction is not followed by cardiac strain.

X RAY

Roentgen ray evidence of pulmonary infarction is lacking in the early stages but *elevation of the diaphragm on the affected side* may be observed. Later a *rounded shadow* in one of the pulmonary fields is the most common finding while triangular opacity is infrequently seen. The appearance of the affected area may be that of a bronchopneumonic type of infiltration.

COMPLICATIONS

If the patient survives possible complications are pneumonia pleurisy and pericarditis. If an atrial septal defect has been present sudden increase of right heart pressure may cause inversion of the blood stream through the shunt followed by severe cyanosis. New emboli may further more pass through the defect causing cerebral or renal embolism (*paradoxical embolism*—pages 279 and 316). Myocardial infarction may be precipitated by shock by anoxemia and by the reflexes which follow pulmonary embolism (12).

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of pulmonary embolism is not difficult when this condition occurs in congestive failure after surgery or in patients with known phlebitis. Otherwise differential diagnosis from myocardial infarction is necessary. In *anteroseptal infarction* there is an inverted complex (QS or QR) in $V_1 V_4$ while in *pulmonary infarction* there is an inverted T and no deep Q in $V_1 V_2$. If secondary coronary ischemia is followed by infarction this is seldom anteroseptal and may be recognized by the usual signs (page 421).

In rare cases differential diagnosis between acute cor pulmonale and *diaphragmatic hernia* is necessary (18).

TREATMENT

Prevention of the embolism in post operative patients is done by using *heparin* (13) (63) or *dicumarol* (64) (page 594) and by *early exercise* of the legs (9) with the intent to accelerate venous circulation.

Surgical exploration of the femoral veins may demonstrate the existence of thrombosis and may be followed by bilateral vein ligation. This has the purpose of preventing the mobilization of a large clot but cannot prevent the formation of small emboli through the collateral circulation.

Preventive ligation in patients with varicose veins and in elderly patients requiring perineal surgery or operations on the legs has been done but may be substituted by anticoagulant therapy. *Ligation of the iliac veins is necessary in some cases* (15).

Embolectomy (Trendelenburg operation (16)) has been performed in cases with occlusion of the main artery or one of the stems. It is successful only when the attack occurs in a hospital so that immediate intervention is possible.

Oxygen is helpful and will be given by mask or tent. *Venesection is contraindicated*. Anticoagulants (heparin followed by dicumarol) should be started at once and continued for several weeks. *Morphine*

atropine and *papaverine* are given in order to prevent vascular spasm and reflex changes in the pulmonary and coronary circulations (17). However care should be taken not to lower blood pressure to a shock level. A too severe drop of pressure may also favor myocardial ischemia and thus lead to heart failure or myocardial infarct.

If shock develops infusion of plasma containing nor epinephrine should be started at once.

Intravenous digitalis is given if heart failure develops.

Subacute and Chronic Pulmonary Heart Disease (Subacute and Chronic Cor Pulmonale)

CAUSE AND MECHANISM

There are three main types cases with pulmonary hypertension without obstruction cases with pulmonary hypertension secondary to obstruction and cases of pulmonary shunt.

1) *Pulmonary hypertension without obstruction*. These cases have no limitation to oxygen intake oxygen saturation of the arterial blood is normal if there is cyanosis this is a *peripheral cyanosis* (large Δ oxygen difference).

a) *Primary hypertension*. This is a group which can be accepted only temporarily. It includes a so called *idiopathic* or *essential hypertension* (28) found in young persons and *hypertension due to congenital hypoplasia of the pulmonary vessels with secondary thickening of their walls*.

b) *Secondary hypertension*. This may be due to either increased resistance beyond the lung (mitral stenosis) or to increased flow (septal defects patent ductus Lutembacher Eisenmenger transposition common trunk). The last conditions have a central cyanosis due to mixture of bloods from the greater and lesser circulation. All may have a late cyanosis due to secondary lesions of the pulmonary vessel with decreased oxygen intake.

2) *Pulmonary hypertension secondary to*

obstruction (33). In all these cases there is a deficient oxygen intake and a decreased oxygen saturation of the arterial blood while the Δ difference in oxygen is normal (*central cyanosis*).

a) *Cancer of the lung* (miliary carcinoma)

b) *Tuberculosis* (fibrotic type)

c) *Pulmonary emphysema* (due to bronchitis peribronchitis bronchial asthma senile emphysema)

d) *Bacterial* (chronic multiple abscesses, bronchiectasis chronic pneumonia)

e) *Thromboembolic* (multiple emboli multiple thromboses) (41)

f) *Arteriosclerotic* (acute, idiopathic)

g) *Parasitic* (bilharzia)

h) *Exposure to dusts* (pneumoconiosis anthracosis berilliosis silicosis siderosis exposure to radioactive dust)

i) *Deformity of the chest*

j) *Lesions of the pulmonary vessels which are part of a collagen disease* (scleroderma panarteritis nodosa reaction to sulfonamides or to serum)

3) *Arteriovenous fistula of the lungs*. These patients have a rapid circulation part of the blood flow bypasses the pulmonary capillaries so that the oxygen intake is deficient and there is a central cyanosis.

In many of the cases with obstruction inadequate ventilation reduced vital capacity and increased CO_2 content of the arterial blood are present. Hence anoxia is present a vasomotor constriction of the pulmonary arterioles may increase the obstruction.

LESIONS

The main structural changes consist of either of the two following possibilities:

a) *1 lesion of the lungs* (fibrosis silicosis anthracosis pneumoconiosis atelectasis bronchiectasis bronchitis and peribronchitis emphysema) or of their small vessels (arteriosclerosis endarteritis obliterans periarteritis)

b) *A primary lesion of the heart* (valvular defects heart malformations)

Secondary lesions are

- a) 1 secondary lesion of the pulmonary artery and stems (dilatation athero-sclerosis)
- b) 4 secondary lesion of the heart (dilatation and hypertrophy of the right ventricle possible dilatation of the right atrium) (fig 292)
- c) Distention of the venous system and liver (late stages)

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Some of the signs and symptoms are due to the primary disease and may therefore precede the establishment of pulmonary heart disease. Attacks of bronchial asthma, chronic obstinate cough, dyspnea and weakness are common episodes which may precede the cardiac changes by years or decades. They may mask the actual symptoms caused by the heart and make the diagnosis difficult.

General signs are *severe cyanosis* which may reach an extreme degree, *clubbing* of the fingers and toes, *polycythemia*, low oxygen saturation of the arterial blood, frequent signs of pulmonary emphysema and chronic bronchitis and prolonged and forceful expiration.

The heart rhythm is usually regular. The rate is frequently increased. Enlargement of the right heart is revealed by a forceful epigastric pulsation and by an extension of cardiac dullness to the right. There frequently is a *pulmonic systolic murmur*, the 2nd *pulmonic sound* is loud and occasionally split. It may be followed by a soft early diastolic pulmonic murmur. A soft systolic murmur over the tricuspid area may be

On account of the extremely dark color of the faces of some of these patients they have been called black cardiacs. The syndrome of arteriosclerosis of the pulmonary artery with chronic pulmonary heart disease is also called the *syndrome of Hyer and Little*.

* Right ventricular enlargement may be difficult to detect because of pulmonary emphysema and low level of the diaphragm. For the same reason sometimes the only site where the heart sound is clearly detected are the supra sternal and apical areas.



FIG 292 Transverse section of the heart in *cor pulmonale* A normal heart B heart of chronic *cor pulmonale* (Inspired by originals of I. D. White)

heard in a more advanced stage. Arterial blood pressure is usually somewhat low, venous pressure is high. The jugular veins and the liver may be engorged.

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Electrocardiogram

Right axis deviation is frequent. Right ventricular hypertrophy is usually noted (page 368) and there may be evidence of ischemia of the right ventricular wall (so called right ventricular strain) depressed ST and inverted T wave in leads 2, 3 and aVF as well as in the chest leads V₁, V₂ (fig 293). There may be a *P pulmonale* which is evidence of right atrial enlargement (page 369). This consists of high voltage and longer duration of P in leads 2, 3 and aVF. There is a positive phase of P followed by a brief and peaked negative phase in V₁, V₂; the duration of P is greater than 0.10 second.

Phonocardiogram

A diamond shaped systolic murmur is often recorded over the second left inter space. The second pulmonic sound is loud and occasionally split. It may be followed by a few vibrations in decrescendo caused by slight incompetence of the pulmonic valve.

A triple rhythm is frequently recorded (page 370) over the epigastrium and the tricuspid area (so called right ventricular gallop).

The murmurs of the aortic fistula of the lung

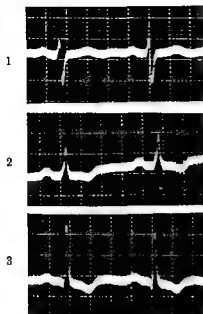


FIG 203 Electrocardiogram of chronic cor pulmonale

are the following a late systolic murmur frequently overshadowing the second sound or an early diastolic murmur

Low Frequency Vibrations of the Chest and Epigastrium

An apex cardiogram may reveal a systolic depression of the apex. On the contrary the epigastric tracing usually reveals a high early and forceful positive thrust due to the hypertrophy of the right ventricle (page 370). The atrial wave is high in the epigastric tracing (29)

Electrolytogram

The most notable findings are the following (30). High and rapidly expanding pulse of the pulmonary arch. High and rapidly expanding pulse over the hilar shadows. Small or absent pulsation over the lung fields. In cases with unilateral or lobar fibrosis lack of pulse is limited to the affected side or to the fibrotic lobes.

CARDIOMANOMETRY

Right ventricular systolic pressure is between 30 and 90 mm mercury (normal

22-23) right ventricular diastolic pressure is frequently 3 to 5 mm mercury (normal 0). If the right ventricle is in failure its diastolic pressure becomes higher. The systolic pressure of the pulmonary artery is about the same as that of the right ventricle e.g. 30 to 90 (normal 22-23) while the diastolic is frequently 10 to 30 (normal 7-9) (31).

The gradient of pressure between pulmonary artery and pulmonary capillaries is frequently increased indicating pulmonary arteriolar vasoconstriction. Oxygen inhalation or intravenous digitalis frequently reduce this gradient indicating its functional nature.

In cases with a fistula of the lungs the pulmonary artery has a high systolic and a low diastolic pressure.

CARDIAC OUTPUT—PERIPHERAL RESISTANCE

Cardiac output is often increased. This is a compensatory phenomenon due to the poor oxygenation of the blood (39). However, the output may be normal if there is no anoxia. pulmonary resistance is high or there is heart failure (39-40).

The data of catheterization correlated with cardiac output reveal the frequent existence of peripheral vasodilation which contrasts with pulmonary vasoconstriction. However this vasodilation is present only in a low percentage of cases.

X RAY

Both the right atrium and the right ventricle are enlarged. The conus of the right ventricle, the pulmonary artery and its stems are dilated and show strong pulsations. The hilar shadows are thick and may pulsate (fig 294).

Lesions of the lungs are revealed by x ray and even better by angiopneumography.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

The course of this syndrome is usually long lasting for many years.

In the most common forms these second



FIG. 294. Cardiac silhouette of chronic cor pulmonale. (From models of the American Heart Association.)

ary to bronchopulmonary lesions three main periods can be considered:

a) *Phase of bronchial and pulmonary lesions.* The lesion starts in the bronchi; then causes bronchiectasis, peribronchitis and emphysema. The sputum is often bloody. Periods of improvement alternate with periods of more severe symptoms.

b) *Phase of compensated cor pulmonale.* The pulmonary fibrosis acts as an obstacle to the lesser circulation. Hypertension in the pulmonary artery; enlargement of the right ventricle; hemoptysis and attacks of paroxysmal dyspnea (largely due to the heart) are frequent. The oxygen saturation of the arterial blood may be lower. Clubbing and cyanosis begin. Electrocardiographic x-ray and physical signs of right heart enlargement are apparent. The venous pressure is normal.

c) *Phase of decompensated cor pulmonale.* Cyanosis; a very severe polycythemia is constant. Chronic dyspnea, headache and somnolence are typical. The venous pressure is high; the liver is large; there may be peripheral edema. Congestion of the brain, kidneys and spleen may be present. There is evidence of chronic right ventricular failure. These patients may have superimposed episodes of acute cardiac failure.

VARIETIES

Bronchial asthma (22). Bronchial asthma with pulmonary emphysema is a common cause of cor pulmonale. The strain represented by the severe attacks of dyspnea is a contributory element. The diagnosis of the cardiac complication is often difficult because of the previous existence of dyspnea and distention of the lungs. Peripheral edema is not common and may be present for only a few days before death. A bronchospastic element is often present and should be relieved before evaluating the severity of the cardiac damage.

Chest deformities (23-36). Severe deformity of the chest, especially kyphoscoliosis, is a frequent and not widely known cause of cor pulmonale. Absolute and relative reduction of lung volume and vital capacity is present. The distortion and rigidity of the thoracic cage causes difficulty in breathing, resulting in a purely diaphragmatic type of respiration. This leads to habitual dyspnea which gradually increases after the arrest of growth. Dyspnea is relieved at times by hyperextension in the recumbent position. Exertion may cause attacks of dyspnea with weakness and fainting. Dyspnea and persistent tachycardia may be the only early signs of heart failure. The combined cardiac and pulmonary in

efficiency may lead to rapid development of symptoms and death within a short time. Mild or latent heart failure in cases with slight deformity has been described.

Multiple and silent pulmonary embolism followed by organization may cause chronic and intractable *cor pulmonale* (41).

Arteriovenous fistula of the lungs (24-34). This congenital lesion consists of the formation of vascular pockets connecting branches of the pulmonary artery with pulmonary veins. The resulting shunts cause increased cardiac output and decreased oxygen intake because part of the blood bypasses the pulmonary capillaries. Cardiac enlargement, polycythemia, and clubbing are the result. Weakness, faintness, dyspnea, chest pain, and hemoptysis are common. A continuous machinery murmur may be present on the surface of the chest above the fistula.

The diagnosis is simplified by using *angiopneumography* with the same technique which is employed for *angiocardiography*. This should be performed with caution because of the shunts.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis may be difficult because of the possible confusion with congenital heart disease or mitral stenosis. As both of them can be the cause of a *secondary cor pulmonale*, exclusion of pulmonary components is not always easy. Moreover, a *vascular fistula* of the lung has several points in common with congenital malformations of the heart.

Differential diagnosis from *mitral stenosis* may be necessary. A *phonocardiogram* may help by showing that no diastolic murmur is present in *cor pulmonale*. The ECC has a high notched and prolonged P wave in I and 2 in mitral stenosis; in leads 2 and 3 in *cor pulmonale* (27). No prolongation of P-P is present in *cor pulmonale*.

Once mitral stenosis and congenital shunts of the heart are excluded, three elements should be evaluated:

a) The part played by the basic lesion

(pulmonary disease, deformity, arteriovenous aneurysms), its cause and severity.

b) The part played by right ventricular strain.

c) The possible signs of heart failure.

As no valvular stenosis is present in these patients, the level of the venous pressure is inversely proportional to the efficiency of the right ventricle. On the contrary, cyanosis, polycythemia, oxygen saturation, and dyspnea are largely dependent upon the pulmonary conditions. Severe right ventricular enlargement is evidence of some degree of heart failure.

In most cases, *pulmonary function tests* may give evidence of the degree of impairment of the pulmonary respiratory function. Frequent determinations of the oxygen content of the arterial blood and blood counts are also necessary.

In certain cases, catheterization of the right heart reveals the degree of heart failure and may show the degree of increased resistance of the pulmonary vessels and whether or not there is a functional component.

TREATMENT

In many cases a careful study of the patient before *cor pulmonale* has set in may allow a causal treatment so that the cardiac condition is prevented. This prevention includes the entire medical and surgical possibilities of the chest physicians.

Surgical correction of the chest deformity, *lobectomy* in cases of *vascular aneurysms* may correct the condition if undertaken before it is too late.

Digitalis is helpful whenever there is right heart failure (32). It may be followed by increased pressure of the pulmonary artery. However, this is temporary and disappears with the improvement of the cardiac condition. *Digitalis* lowers right atrial and venous pressure, increases peripheral resistance, and decreases pulmonary arterial resistance.

Oxygen is useful. However care should be taken not to depress the respiratory center. Therefore 95 per cent oxygen with 5 per cent CO₂ is recommended. In emphysema and pulmonary fibrosis several mechanical procedures are helpful. They include an elastic girdle raising the foot of the bed and pneumoperitoneum in order to favor expiration.

Morphine may be dangerous in many of these conditions and particularly in those associated with chest deformity. Sudden death may result from respiratory insufficiency following depression of the respiratory center by morphine or oxygen.

ACTH or cortisone may be helpful in collagen diseases. Surgery should be resorted to in some of the congenital malformations of the heart.

Ephedrine (57) and isupral are useful in cases with bronchoconstriction. Even though there is no known specific vasodilator of the pulmonary vessels (except oxygen) amino phyllin (42), prisolone (54) or papaverine (43-44) can be tried.

Penicillin aerosol may be helpful in chronic pulmonary infection. Heparin should be used in repeated pulmonary embolization.

Intensection is indicated only if there is heart failure while pulmonary failure alone contraindicates this procedure.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 a) WHITE P D AND BRENNER O New England J Med 1933 209 1 61
- b) MCGINN S AND WHITE I D J A M A 1935 104 1473
- c) WHITE P D AND CO WORKER Arch Int Med 1934 39 and 1940 65 167
- d) WHITE I D Am J M Sci 1940 200 57
- 2 HOMAN J New England J Med 1931 211 931 and 1943 229 509
- 3 CHAIKMAN I M AND LINTON R R J A M A 1945 129 196
- 4 a) COHNHEIM J F Lectures on General Pathology London New Sydenham Soc 1899 1 54
- b) HAGGART G E AND WALKER A M Arch Surg 1923 6 764
- c) FINEBERG M H AND WIGGERS C J Am Heart J 1936 11 255
- 5 a) HOCHREIN M AND SCHNETZER K Arch exp lath 1937 187 265
- b) HOCHREIN M Akt Kreislauff 1938 14 24
- c) SCHLIER H AND SCHOENBRUNNER I Klin Woch 1937 15 340
- 6 a) EVANS W Brit Heart J 1943 5 73
- b) LEWIS D Brit Heart J 1944 6 161
- 7 DURANT T M In Stroud A Cardiovascular Diseases Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 8 a) WOOD I Brit Heart J 1941 3 21
- b) KONSCHIEG T Arch Arch 1930 278 639
- 9 ROBINSON C A New England J Med 1944 231 891
- 10 WHITE I D Heart Disease New York Macmillan 1944
- 11 SMITH K H Quart J Med 1935 7 5
- 12 CURREN J Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1942 17 507
- 13 MURRAY D W G AND HEST C H J A M A 1938 110 118
- 14 BARKER V W ALLEN I V AND WALCH J M Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1943 18 107
- 15 a) TILLET W S CAMBLER M H AND McCORMACK J L J Clin Investigation 1945 24 595
- b) FINE J Bull New England Med Center 1946 8 6
- 16 a) TRENDLENBURG F Arch klin Chir 1903 11 646
- b) SAUERBRUCH F Die Chirurgie der Brustorgane Berlin Springer 1920/3
- 17 BECKWITH J I Virginia Med Monthly 1944 71 270
- 18 MCGINN S AND SPEAR I M New England J Med 1941 224 1014
- 19 WILLIAMS F A Canad M A J 1946 54 49
- 20 a) AYERZA L Unpublished lecture 1901 Al o Semana Medica 1903 1 43
- b) ARRILLACA F C Esclerosis Secundaria de la Arteria Pulmonar y su Cuadro Clinico Thesis no 2336 Buenos Aires 1912 Arch Mal Coeur 1913 5 518 La Arteria Pulmonar Buenos Aires Garcia 1925
- 21 CASTEX M R AND CO WORKERS Jren a Med Arg 1932 19 1 and 1936 23 481
- 22 a) KOUNTZ W H ALEXANDER H L AND BRINZMETAL M Am Heart J 1936 11 163

- b) SCHILLER I W COLBES A AND DAVIS D New England J Med 1943 228 113
- 23 SCHAEFER G Zeit Kreislauff 1934 26 689
- 24 BISSON J H MURPHY G E AND NEWMAN E V Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1915 76 93
- 25 Sussman M I GRISHMAN A AND STEINBERG M F New England J Med 1943 228 177
- 26 LYANS W AND HUNTER A Brit Heart J 1943 5 73
- 27 SHLESER I H AND LANGENDORF R Am J M Sci 1942 204 725
- 28 a) DRESDALE D T et al Am J Med 1951 11 646
b) GRISWOLD H E Meet Am Heart Assoc 1951
- 29 LUISADA A A AND MACCHI G Am Heart J 1952 44 545
- 30 LUISADA A A AND FLEISCHNER F G Am J Med, 1949 6 756
- 31 a) BLOOMFIELD R A et al J Clin Investigation 1946 25 639
b) RICHARDS D W Am J Med 1947 3 434
- 32 FERRER I et al Circ, 1950 1 161
- 33 ALSTRIAN R et al Am J Med 1951 11 66
- 34 BAER S et al Circ 1950 1 602
- 35 CRAIG P et al Am J Roentgenol 1949 62 418
- 36 LYANS W Brit Heart J 1946 8 167
- 37 COMROE J H, et al Am J Physiol 193 173 379
ALANOW M R et al Am Heart J 1946 31 36 M702
- 39 COURVAND A Circ 1950 2 641
- 40 FOWLER N O et al Circ 1952 6 848
- 41 OWEN W R et al New Eng J Med 1953 249 919

Hypotension—Shock—Hyposphymia

The clinical syndromes caused by or connected with a lowering of the blood pressure deserve greater attention than usually thought. One of the reasons for their neglect is the erroneous belief that hypotension is good for the patient. (1) This belief is based on the arbitrary fixation of one level as a normal level of blood pressure or even worse on accepting as normal an increasing figure with the progression of years (page 63). This led to inclusion of a large number of normal people in the group of so-called hypotensive patients. On the other hand studies made by insurance companies deal only with mortality and are usually not interested in symptoms or working efficiency.

The normal level of blood pressure has as its lower limit figures of about 100 systolic and 60 diastolic. This somewhat arbitrary level may be further lowered if the patient is of the African or Mongolian races. Any condition associated with a blood pressure which is lower than the above figures and presents both a low systolic and a low diastolic pressure should be called *hypotension*. (2) On the contrary, a different syndrome is that of patients having a slightly lower systolic but a normal or even a high diastolic pressure. As the main characteristic of these patients is the small radial pulse the author proposed the name of *hyposphymia* for this syndrome. (2)

Hypotension

CAUSE

The causes are different in the acute and chronic types of hypotension.

Acute hypotension may be caused by

a) Hemorrhagic collapse due to severe

and sudden loss of blood (bleeding wounds, hemoptysis, gastrointestinal hemorrhage, metrorrhagia)

b) *Direct central effect of emotion or fear* in vasolabile individuals, invasion of cerebral vessels or vasomotor centers by tumors, sudden distention of cerebral veins caused by straining in patients with superior caval syndrome. (24)

c) *Reflex collapse* caused by severe and prolonged reflex stimulation which may or may not be felt as pain. Sensitive nerve stimulation (sciatic, ulnar, nerve testicles), distention of a hollow viscus (gall bladder, stomach), stimulation of a serosa (pleura, peritoneum), stimulation of the myocardium (coronary occlusion), the aorta (dissecting aneurysm) or the pulmonary artery (pulmonary embolism) or distention of the pressure receptors (carotid sinus in arteriosclerotic persons, pulmonary artery in patients with chronic cor pulmonale) are the most common causes.

d) *Allergic collapse*. Trauma, burns, serum injections, hay fever, intestinal occlusion, favism and bronchial asthma may be accompanied by a sudden vascular collapse.

e) *Cardiogenic collapse*. Temporary arrest of cardiac activity, extreme slowing of heart rate or on the contrary, extremely rapid cardiac action may cause low blood pressure.⁷⁷

f) *Insomnia* may cause a sudden hypotension through active vasodilation. It is more frequent in infants (but may take

⁷⁷ The *cardiogenic collapse* which follows coronary occlusion has not been included in this group because of its partly reflex mechanism. However, cases with extremely severe myocardial damage and cases with severe disturbance of the cardiac rate and rhythm should be included.

place also in older patients) with tetralogy of Fallot following exertion or crying (24)

All these conditions may lead to a state of shock which is usually irreversible. Shock will be discussed below.

Subacute or chronic hypotension is present in many clinical syndromes.

a) *Infectious and parasitic diseases* it is connected with fever and the action of bacterial toxins.

b) *Starvation, cachexia, vitamin deficiency, anemia, physical exhaustion, poisoning, and anesthesia* are accompanied by low blood pressure. Low blood pressure is also found in *lipoid nephrosis*.

c) A *mechanical obstacle to venous return* (liver cirrhosis, extensive varicose veins), *cardiac action* (pericarditis with effusion or constrictive pericarditis, amyloid heart, fibroelastosis) or *systolic discharge* (valvular stenosis) is a further cause of low blood pressure. It is apparent that a decrease of cardiac output due to *cardiac failure* may also cause hypotension.

d) *Endocrine disturbances* may determine hypotension; the most common causes are hypothyroidism and Addison's disease.

MECHANISM

Maintenance of blood pressure is based on a good cardiac output and an optimal peripheral resistance. Therefore any sudden decrease of either of them causes a drop in blood pressure. Deficiency in cardiac output can be due to heart failure or decreased venous return. The latter may be due to extreme venous dilatation.

Hemorrhagic collapse is easily explained because the sudden decrease of blood volume leads to decreased venous return and therefore to decreased cardiac output.

A *reflex collapse* is usually based on a double mechanism.

a) Efferent stimuli along the pathway of the vagus slow down the heart at times causing asystole.

b) Efferent stimuli along the sympathetic pathways dilate the peripheral vessels.

This double mechanism has been proven for the carotid sinus and aortic reflexes (page 53) and is probably true for other reflexes.

Both arterial and venous dilatation seem to occur (3, 4, 5) resulting in a sudden decrease of peripheral resistance and a decrease of venous return.

Different reactions have been demonstrated in man. At times reflex vagal slowing of the heart is the main factor of the blood pressure drop (*vasovagal collapse*); at other times on the contrary peripheral dilatation is of paramount importance (*vasosympathetic collapse*). It is apparent that atropine is useful in the first case but not in the second and that both types may be combined.

Allergic or anaphylactic collapse is attributed to a sudden drop in venous return. This is caused by *spasmodic dilatation of the peripheral capillaries* (6, 12) and probably by *contraction of the hepatic veins* (7).

Subacute and chronic hypotensions are caused by *arteriolar and venous dilatation* (fever, toxemia), *poor venous return*, or *mechanical hindrance to cardiac action*. Vascular dilatation may be favored by depression of the vasomotor center (bacterial toxins, poisoning) and may be connected with endocrine disturbances (Addison's disease).

The possibility that an abnormal function of the renal pressor system may be the cause of low blood pressure has been advocated but so far not proven.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

When a *vascular collapse* occurs poor cerebral circulation causes different phenomena: *dizziness, fainting, syncope, or convulsive attacks*. The severity and duration of the collapse is responsible for the severity of the cerebral symptoms.

Subacute hypotension may cause disturbances of vision and hearing and strange sensations in the throat, stomach, or chest.

Chronic hypotension is often accompanied

by *exertional dyspnea and palpitation* and also, at times by *precordial pain* during exertion. Weakness, lowered resistance to fatigue and headache are also common.

Physical examination may reveal that the *heart is small* (typical after hemorrhage or in Addison's disease). The apex thrust may be strong and the 1st sound loud. However, in vascular collapse and toxic states all manifestations of cardiac activity are weak. *Tachycardia, triple rhythm and various murmurs* are common. *Jenous pressure* is frequently low.

The *electrocardiogram* may reveal a marked respiratory arrhythmia, high T waves and occasional inversion of T₂ with slight raising of S T (8).

Orthostatic hypotension. This interesting clinical picture may vary considerably. In some cases *dizziness* is felt when the patient rises from the recumbent to the erect position. In other patients, on the contrary, the mere fact of raising the head above a certain level causes *syncope* so that some of these unfortunates even learn to walk in a crouching position (9)!

During the fainting attack different possibilities exist (5):

a) The heart slows down considerably and may even stop (cardiac type).

b) The blood pressure drops without bradycardia and usually with *tachycardia (vascular type)*.

c) Fainting occurs without cardiac or vascular changes because carotid stimuli reach the brain causing *syncope (cerebral type)*. An association of these types is possible.

In most of the cases an *abnormal sensitivity of the carotid sinuses* is present. In some patients the *carotid areas* have a low sensitivity and fail to compensate with adequate reflexes for the pooling of blood in the arterioles of the *vicera* and in the veins of the lower extremities (10). In others, the *carotid areas* are *extremely irritable* on external compression and cause severe bradycardia or cardiac arrest when stimulated

by *internal* (sudden change of position) or *external* (tight collar, sudden turning of head) pressure. Extreme bradycardia may occur in patients with faulty coronary flow. Extreme irritability of the carotid sinus may be favored by atheroma of the carotid arteries and is common in pheochromocytoma. The cerebral type of attacks is common in cases of *tubercle encephalitis* or other neuropathy including that of diabetes.

Either myocardial infarction (11) or cerebral infarction may be determined by a sudden drop in pressure if the vessels of that organ had been previously damaged (coronary or cerebral arteriosclerosis).

Orthostatic hypotension may be the result of surgical splanchnicectomy. It is more marked during the first months following surgery and may occasionally last a few years. It is due to inability of compensatory reflex vasoconstriction to offset the pooling of blood in the splanchnic area and the lower extremities. Eventually arterial tonus is regained and this type of hypotension is attenuated.

Permanent or orthostatic hypotension may be caused by drugs especially those inhibiting the sympathetic system (hydroxydibenzamine, benzodioxane) or blocking the ganglia (hexamethonium).

Left lateral hypotension. This unusual phenomenon has been attributed to obstruction of the pulmonary veins with decreased return to the left heart or to reflexes of unexplained origin (21).

Diagnosis is based on several tests of alternated recumbency and erect position with blood pressure readings, pulse counts and electrocardiograms.

Compression of either carotid sinus should test the sensitivity of the *carotid areas* and should be performed before and after an injection of *atropine*.

TREATMENT

In *acute hypotension* treatment varies according to the cause. When allergy is involved *adrenalin* (55) and *ephedrine* (57)

shall be used. When hemorrhage is the cause of the collapse either *rectal or venous infusion* with physiologic salt solution or plasma or *blood transfusion* are the best remedies. When reflexes are involved *morphine atropine* and *phenobarbital* should be used.

In some patients total inhibition of the autonomic system is indicated (35). In others *atropine* or *phenobarbital* alone should be preferred. The use of a *tight girdle* and of an *elastic bandage* over the lower extremities is useful in certain cases. Avoidance of tight collars is always necessary. In some cases if the carotid sinus fails to react promptly a prolonged sojourn in the tilted head up bed (10) may be tried in order to train the carotid pressoreceptors.

If the myocardium is responsible for the abnormal reaction *quinidine* (24) or *propranolol* (26, 27) are indicated.

Extreme reactivity of the carotid sinus may require *denervation of the sensitive area of one side*. This should be preceded by local infiltration with novocaine which would temporarily benefit the patient.

Chronic hypotension should be treated with *ephedrine* (57), *benzadrine* (58), *coramine* (61) and *strychnine* (69).

In patients with a tendency to venous dilatation *paredrinol* (59) should be used. *Ligation of the femoral veins* may be necessary in patients with varicose veins.

Shock

Any condition causing severe hypotension may degenerate into a spontaneously irreversible state called shock.

CAUSE

Primary shock may be caused by numerous conditions such as hemorrhage, allergy, injuries, burns, surgery, toxemia, gastrointestinal perforation or obstruction, exposure, freezing or dehydration. Pain and fear may be contributory factors. Sudden cardiac failure or acute disturbances of

cardiac rate and rhythm may be followed by *secondary shock* (*cardiogenic shock*).

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

The patient is pale or ashen gray but may be cyanotic and frequently has a cold clammy skin. *Pinous drawn appearance* is common. Restlessness, tremor, muscular twitchings and weakness may be observed. Sensitivity and reflexes are depressed. The tongue is dry and parched. Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea and oliguria may be present.

The superficial veins are small or invisible and fail to fill on compression. The heart sounds are weak. The heart rate is rapid and regular. The arterial pulse is small and thready. The respiration is superficial and rapid but not belabored. *The arterial pressure is very low with reduced pulse pressure. Figures of 80/60 are considered bordering the shock level; lower figures indicate shock.* When systolic blood pressure reaches the critical level of from 75 to 60 mm Hg, a relative slowing of the heart occurs. *The venous pressure is low, the temperature is subnormal, the metabolic rate is reduced.*

COURSE

Three main stages have been recognized: *initial compensatory* and *irreversible* (16). The initial stage is actually a stage of hypotension which is by no means typical. The development of the irreversible stage may occur with varying speed and may therefore cause either *delayed* or *acute forms of shock*.

VARIETIES—MECHANISM

Shock is a circulatory insufficiency due to disproportion between blood volume (decreased) and vascular capacity. It is caused by loss of fluid either outside or within the body.

Primary shock is due to a cardiac or vascular mechanism leading to extremely low blood pressure. *Secondary shock* is caused by a sudden loss of blood or a sudden increase of capillary permeability with escape of plasma into the interstitial space.

(12) In both cases a decrease of blood volume takes place

Primary shock may also be followed by increased capillary permeability following anoxia. Increased blood concentration and refractoriness to fluid replacement are typical

Recognition that *noxious principles* arise during hemorrhagic, traumatic and allergic shock and that they are the direct cause of the vascular disturbance represents an important step in understanding the syndrome (13)

It was shown later that different humoral phenomena occur during the two main stages of shock (14)

a) *Compensatory stage*: this is characterized by an increase of constrictor activity of the metarterioles and the precapillary sphincters

b) *Irreversible stage*: the precapillary control is lost and blood flows into the capillary bed; this causes a progressive stagnation in the small veins with eventual decrease and failure of the venous return to the heart

It was further recognized that these changes are due to humoral principles because they can be transferred from one animal to another (14)

It is known that the two stages represent the alternate phase of predominance of two substances: one is a stimulant and vasoconstrictor substance either *angiotonin* (hypertensine) or the *DEM* principle or both; the other is a depressant substance which paralyzes the arterioles and prevents their reaction to epinephrine (*DEM* or ferritin). This substance is manufactured in the liver (14) as further shown by the greater resistance of animals whose liver had an artificially maintained adequate blood supply (15). In the last stage a deficiency of the pressor substance is apparent

In conclusion, shock is a syndrome caused by disturbance of many functions but based on progressive impairment of the circulation and leading to irreversible failure and death (16). Circulatory impairment due to de-

creased venous return causes a secondary decrease of cardiac output and arterial pressure. The predominant action of a noxious substance causing arteriolar paralysis is apparent in the later stages. This leads to a vicious circle and an irreversible trend

TREATMENT

The well known formula that shock should be treated by means of reassurance, oxygen, rest, warmth, morphine, fluids and transfusion (17) is valid for most of the cases even if often inadequate

Transfusions and infusions (whole blood, plasma, plasma derivatives or substitutes) are definitely useful. *Arterial transfusion* (500 cc. in 10 minutes into the radial artery, then continued at a slower rate) is not more effective than venous transfusion

The use of *epinephrine* has been discussed and its utility questioned. Experimental proof that lack of response to epinephrine and dilatation of the small vessels occurs in the last stage of shock shows that its use in this stage is not contraindicated. Moreover, epinephrine is always useful in allergic shock where several peculiar vascular reactions initiate the vascular disturbance. *Nor epinephrine* (56) is widely used with fair results

Metraol, *coramine* and *pitressin* (18) have little value. *Paredrine* increases both the arterial and venous pressure but not cardiac output (18)

It is likely that *angiotonin* (*hypertensine*) would be the most effective remedy as experiments seem to indicate (19)

Hypophygmia (2)

Hypophygmia is the circulatory syndrome of patients with a low systolic pressure and a normal or high diastolic pressure. As a result, mean pressure is normal or slightly low while pulse pressure is small (2-20)

CAUSE

The most typical form is congenital or at least is favored by a congenital tendency

Hyposphygma is found most frequently in adolescents and young people but can be observed at any age. The patients frequently have evidence of poor function of either the thyroid or the adrenal glands.

Tuberculosis, malaria, lues, vitamin deficiency, or chronic alcohol intoxication may be present in these subjects. The question may be raised whether these conditions which frequently exert their influence during childhood and adolescence favored the circulatory syndrome.

Heart failure and extreme tachycardia may be the cause of a secondary hyposphygma.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The patients complain of *weakness* lack of *will power* and sometimes *somnolence*. They often dislike any kind of physical activity, have a *poor appetite* and an *extreme fear of cold*. *Fatigability*, lack of interest in the surroundings and poor memory are often present. In some cases there is a definite similarity with neurocirculatory asthenia (page 347).

Headache is common and is located mainly in the occipital region; it may be influenced by the position.

Vertigo may be present. *Exertional dyspnea* and *palpitation* are common but slight.

Cyanosis of the hands and feet is common and is increased by cold. The extremities are cold and clammy. The heart is frequently in a median position (*vertical* or *'drop' heart*). The apical thrust is often visible and forceful. The 1st sound is loud; the 2nd sound is loud over the pulmonary but weak over the aortic area.

Blood pressure at the arm gives figures of 100/90 or 95/85. Blood pressure at the forearm presents an extreme reduction of the pulse pressure with figures of 100/95/90 or 85/80; it may be impossible to measure it because of extreme reduction of pulsations. The difference in pulse pressure is far more marked at the forearm than at the arm and may be present only in the former (2) (fig. 29a).

Orthostatic tachycardia and *hypotension* are constantly present. *Orthostatic decrease of pulse pressure* is frequent.

The static blood pressure tests (page 167) give a paradoxical response: when the arm is raised, pulse pressure increases; when the arm is lowered, pulse pressure decreases.

The study of blood pressure in different

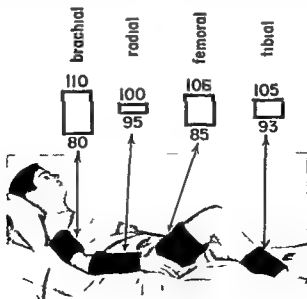


FIG. 29a. Blood pressure in hyposphygma.

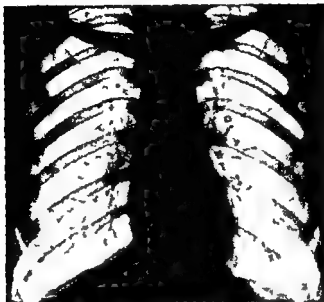


FIG. 206 Small vertical heart in a case of hypophygmia

arteries reveals the already mentioned change between arm and forearm. The tibial systolic pressure is frequently equal to that of the arm (fig. 295) but may be higher. The x-ray reveals frequently a small vertical heart (fig. 296).

Venous pressure is frequently high and may reach over 20 cm. of saline.

MECHANISM

While hypophygmia caused by tachycardia or heart failure is due to reduced systolic discharge, the most typical form has a peripheral mechanism.

Peripheral dilatation alone would not explain the observed changes. A tentative explanation has been advanced by the writer (2): the arterial wall of these patients has a poorly developed muscular tissue. Secondary changes due to toxic, infectious, allergic or deficiency factors further impair the contractility of the arteries. These behave like elastic tubes, as witness the reduction in pulse pressure at the periphery and upon lowering the arm. The relative increase of blood pressure in the leg of some patients may be explained by the larger caliber of those arteries and by reflected

waves. Secondary disturbances of the capillaries and veins are associated symptoms.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS

Patients with hypophygmia have poor resistance to effort or infections; this may be the cause of a somewhat higher mortality. In general the patients have a poor efficiency and a reduced capacity for work. Therefore even if their span of life is normal they may be a burden to their family and are not an asset to society.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of hypophygmia is based on the figures of blood pressure; this should be recorded not only at the arm but also at the lower part of the forearm by means of an oscilometer.

TREATMENT

Secondary hypophygmia of heart failure or tachycardia requires treatment of the cardiac disturbance.

Secondary hypophygmia of infectious and consumptive diseases may be treated with drugs stimulating the peripheral vessel, including *ephedrine* (57), *berberis*

(58), *paredrinol* (59) and *coramine* (61) *Physiotherapy* may be useful in certain cases

Congenital hyposphigmia, especially of children and adolescents, requires a) full diet containing the necessary amount of calories, b) large doses of vitamin B complex, c) *caffeine* (60) *strychnine* (69), *coramine* (61) or *paredrinol* (59) d) *physiotherapy* and *massage*, e) gradual open air *physical exercise* with sun therapy

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 ROBINSON S C New England J Med 1946 223 407
- 2 a) LUISADA A A Giorn Med Prat March 1924
- b) LUISADA A A *Ipotensione e Iposfigmia* Roma Pozzi 1929
- 3 HEYMANS C BOUCKAERT J J AND REGNIERS P *Le Sinus Carotidien* Paris Doin 1933
- 4 GOLLWITZER MEIER H AND SCHULTE H Pflueger Arch 1931 229 251 *Al o Arch exp Path Pharm* 1937 165 685
- 5 WEISS J Clin Investigation 1937 11 73 Also Proc Assoc Research Ment & Nerv Dis 1938 11 571
- 6 DALE H H AND CO WORKERS J Physiol 1910 41 318 1911 43 187 1918 62 110 1919 62 355
- 7 MAUTNER H AND PICK E P Muench med Woch 1915 40 1141 *Al o Bioch Zeitschr* 1922 127 72
- 8 BATTRO A AND LAVALLE COBO Rev Arg Cardiol 1936 3 215
- 9 a) LALBRY C *Seméiologie Cardio Vasculaire* Paris Doin 1924
- b) ACOTONI G Arch Mal Coeur 1937 30 101
- c) TRIPOLI M *Pohelin (ez prat)* 1932 39 797
- 10 McLEAN A R AND ALLEN H V J A M A 1940 115 2162
- 11 PRIEST W S Mo Cone Cardiovascular Dis 1942 11 2
- 12 a) MOON V H *Shock and Related Capillary Phenomena* Oxford Univ Press 1938
- b) BLALOCK A Physiol Rev 1940 20 159
- 13 a) CANNON W B *Traumatic Shock* New York Appleton Century Co 1943
- b) BATLISS W M Great Britain Nat Health Ins Com Med Res Com Spec Rep series No 26 1919
- d) RAPPORT D GUILD R AND CANZANELLI A Am J Physiol 1945 143 440
- 14 a) CHAMBERS R ZWEIFACH B W AND LOWENSTEIN H E Am J Physiol 1943 139 123
- b) ZWEIFACH B W LEE R F HEYMAN C AND CHAMBERS R Ann Surg 1944 120 232
- c) SHORR E ZWEIFACH B W AND FLUHR GOTT R F Science 1945 102 480
- d) SHORR E et al Trans Assoc Am Physicians 1947 50 28
- 15 a) FRANK H A SELIGMAN A M AND FINE J J Clin Investigation 1946 25 27
- b) DEXTER L FRANK H A HAYNES F W AND ALTSCHULE M D J Clin Investigation 1943 22 847
- 16 WIGGERS C J *Physiology in Health and Disease* Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1946
- 17 FREEMAN V E In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 18 a) FRANK H A ALTSCHULE M D AND ZAMCHECK V J Clin Investigation 1944 24 54
- b) FRANK H A SELIGMAN A M AND FINE J J Clin Investigation 1945 24 435
- 19 FINE J FRANK H A AND SELIGMAN A M Ann Surg 1945 122 607
- 20 FERRANNINI A Med Ital (Naples) 1903 1 374 410 441 463 1905 3 82 *Al o Giorn Int Sci Med (Naples)* 1904 26 579
- 21 STEIN P Arch Int Med 1902 90 234
- 22 a) LEAL J R et al South M J 1904 44 1096
- b) FRENCH W I Memphis M J 1951 28 5
- c) SILBER E V J A M A 1901 147 167
- 23 ARMSTRONG T AND JIMENEZ R I Arch Med de Cuba 1902 3 168
- 24 JUDSON W F Med Clin North America 1903 Sept 1337

Diseases of the Peripheral Arteries

Arteriosclerosis

CAUSE

Numerous factors have been mentioned in the past as causes of arteriosclerosis but there was insufficient evidence for them in spite of a great deal of speculation

Arteriosclerosis seemed to be a natural effect of aging and senescence was considered an important cause. However arteriosclerosis is not always associated with old age and may be found in middle aged and even young individuals. Moreover a definite difference between senile and arteriosclerotic changes has been described.

A connection between arteriosclerosis and *arterial pressure and flow* also was described. Arteriosclerosis of the brachial arteries in manual workers and of the cerebral arteries in professional people is common. A greater degree of sclerosis at the branching point of the vessels was further noted.

Once a connection between pressure and sclerosis was admitted the high incidence of arteriosclerosis in *hypertensive patients* was easily explained. As a consequence it was admitted that *strain and stress* as well as *abnormal tonus of the vascular wall* were responsible for the arteriosclerotic changes. Evidence has been found that either general or local hypertonus if sufficiently severe and lasting causes arteriosclerotic changes. Ischemic anoxemia of the arterial wall was thought to be the result of *hypertonus* by compression of the *vasa vasorum*. However hypotonus also may be associated with arteriosclerosis and therefore attention was paid to the reduction in mean and pulse pressures possibly causing ischemic anoxia of the *vasa vasorum*. Attention was further paid to the lymphatic circulation of the

wall and it was claimed that this may be disturbed by either hypo or hypertonus (2).

A *toxin theory* also has been advanced explaining arteriosclerosis as the result of a lesion of the intima caused by acute infections and other toxic states. The lesion would increase the permeability of the wall to cholesterol and fats.

Once the concept of anoxia of the arterial wall was accepted it was thought possible that *changes of the normal colloidal state of the blood* might cause the same result by impairing the oxygen and nutritive exchange and reducing the permeability of the wall. Various colloidal plasmatic disturbances have been considered: one type might be due to carbohydrates, one to lipoids and one to proteins.

Experimental arteriosclerosis was successfully induced in rabbits, dogs and chicks but much of the older work is vitiated by the fact that these animals are subject to spontaneous arteriosclerosis (3). Two methods however can stand the most critical tests:

a) *Adrenalin arteriosclerosis* (4) which causes lesions of the media of a type identical to Moenckeberg's arteriosclerosis.

b) *Cholesterol arteriosclerosis* (5, 28, 31) which reproduces most of the aspects of human arteriosclerosis.

It is likely that given a high and prolonged intravascular pressure the normal cholesterol of the blood is injected mechanically into the normal structure of the vessel. An excess of cholesterol would cause earlier and more severe lesions (3). Arteriosclerosis was produced in rabbits (5), chickens (28) and dogs (29) by feeding high cholesterol diets. It was proven that the *height of cholesterol level is not as important as the ratio of total cholesterol to serum*

phospholipids The latter seem to have a stabilizing effect upon the colloidal state of cholesterol in the blood. It was further proven that animals which develop arteriosclerosis have a high concentration of giant molecules of lipoproteins,²⁵ a fact which is similar to that occurring in arteriosclerotic patients (26). The concentration of these molecules is not related to high cholesterol level even though these giant molecules are more numerous in high cholesterolemia.

A significant decrease of plasma cholesterol was found in hyperthyroid animals and vice versa (27), a fact which coincides with clinical observation. Choline and other lipotropic agents seem to cause regression of experimental arteriosclerosis (32).

STRUCTURAL LESIONS

The arteriosclerotic process may be of three different types:

a) *Atherosclerosis (nodular sclerosis)* In the aorta and larger vessels the earliest gross evidence of atheroma occurs in the form of yellowish streaks in the intima. These are due to cholesterol, neutral fat, and fat-laden wandering cells. When these lesions increase in size they lead to the formation of excrescences which project into the lumen and undergo hyaline changes or necrosis. A rich network of blood vessels exists around these lesions (6). The *atheromatous plaque*, so called because of the soft material contained within the lesion, exhibits various degrees of calcium deposition and, occasionally, of bone formation. The main lesion is intimal but less conspicuous lesions of the media are also present. Ulceration of the surface of the plaque causes the formation of the *atheromatous ulcer* which favors thrombosis, especially in smaller vessels.

b) *Monckeberg's sclerosis (medial arterio-sclerosis)* This type is characterized by the

deposition of calcium in ring-like formations within the media of the arteries (trachea like radial artery). The bulging of these formations causes narrowing of the lumen while depressions are present in the intima between them. The calcareous deposits may undergo ossification. Atrophy of the muscular and elastic strata, fibrosis of the media and moderate thickening of the intima are present.

c) *Arterionecrosis* There may be 1) *cystic arterionecrosis* of unknown etiology with degeneration of the medial coat of the aorta; it frequently leads to rupture and dissecting aneurysm, or 2) *toxic arterionecrosis* with degenerative and necrotic lesions in various parts of all the arterial coats; it is due to exogenous or renal toxin or adrenal substances.

d) *Hyperplastic arteriosclerosis* It involves the small arteries and arterioles; there is hyperplasia of the media and partly, of the intima. It is associated with high blood pressure; it may be found in the pulmonary vessels of congenital heart patients.

Fibrosis of the aortic valves and sclerosis of the peripheral veins are usually present in patients having sclerosis of the arteries.

It should be noted that while arteriosclerosis is a diffuse process, no relationship exists between lesions of the large and small arteries. Moreover, the small arteries of one organ (heart, brain, kidney) may be attacked severely while those of the others are relatively or even absolutely untouched.

A lesion of the small arteries goes hand in hand with impairment of the blood supply of the respective organ, causing an increase of connective tissue called *fibrosis* which may cause clinical manifestations. It may be asked whether *capillary alterations* are not an important part of this process.

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

The clinical picture of arteriosclerosis is extremely variable and depends upon the severity and distribution of the lesion.

When arteriosclerosis is diffuse, the entire

²⁵ Utilizing the ultracentrifuge and a special flotation technique, several lipoprotein complexes containing cholesterol were separated. Those of the S₁ 10-20 class seem to be related to human atherosclerosis (28).

body acquires a *senile aspect*. This may occur with a certain rapidity even within a few months. The patient is usually pale and his movements are slow and rather stiff. There often is a rapid loss of weight and cachexia may be evident.

The skin is either finely wrinkled or flabby; the face may present rapid changes of color from pale to red because of vasomotor disturbances. Weakness, loss of appetite, extreme emotional reactions, headache, dizziness, amnesia, dysuria and disturbances of hearing and vision are common. Sensory disturbances of the hands and feet may occur.

The blood pressure usually presents increased pulse pressure and low diastolic because of increased rigidity of the large arteries. While hypertension is more common, hypotension may occur, the variation being due chiefly to the fact that participation of the renal arteries to the process is not always present.

Patients with Moenchleberg's sclerosis may have a blood pressure of difficult evaluation because of the resistance of the arterial wall to compression. Either increase or decrease of pressure in certain vascular areas is common. The latter is usually due to narrowing of the arterial mouths in the aortic wall, the former to rigidity and dilatation of the larger vessels.

Thrombosis and hemorrhage are possible in any organ.

The visible arteries are tortuous and present a forceful pulsation which increases their curvatures. They are hard and resistant or give the impression of being fleshy. The pulse is frequently *celer* but may be *thready*.

There is dulness of the manubrium and there may be evidence of left ventricular enlargement. The 2nd aortic sound is loud and ringing. There may be a triple rhythm.

The x-ray may reveal the signs of atherosclerosis of the aorta and beads of calcification along the aorta and the peripheral

arteries. It frequently shows an enlarged heart.

Serious disturbances are due to arterio-sclerosis of the heart and the kidney. The former is a cause of coronary heart disease (page 414); the latter of either benign or malignant renal sclerosis and possibly of essential hypertension (page 491).

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Pulse and Pressure Tracings

The most varied findings can be obtained. In certain cases no pulse tracing (and no indirect pressure tracing) can be obtained over certain arteries. This is usually due to occlusion of the vessels. However, extreme narrowing of an artery may still allow a thin, continuous flow of blood which cannot be recognized by the tracing on account of the lack of pulsation.

Senile arteriosclerosis is accompanied by changes in the configuration of both the radial and the digital pulse. In patients with this disease *crest time* is markedly increased in both the radial and the digital tracings. Younger persons with initial arteriosclerosis may present increased crest time of the digital pulse.

Ballistocardiogram

The ballistocardiogram of arterio-sclerotic patients frequently presents abnormal patterns. These are extremely variable and are similar to those described in coronary heart disease. They may have importance if found in relatively young persons.

VARIETIES

Cerebral arteriosclerosis may cause thrombosis or hemorrhage of the brain. When the hemorrhages are small, limited clinical pictures may occur.

Gastric or intestinal arteriosclerosis may cause dyspeptic, hemorrhagic and enteralgic episodes. Acute diarrhea may be caused by intestinal edema connected with the vascular disturbance.

Arteriosclerosis of the extremities (arterio-

TYPES OF DISTURBANCES OF THE PERIPHERAL ARTERIAL CIRCULATION

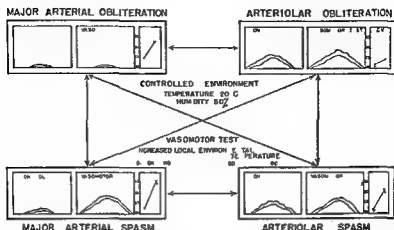


FIG. 29 Changes in the oscillometric and calorimetric readings which characterize the four main types of arterial disturbances responsible for deficiencies of the peripheral distribution of arterial blood. Any combination of these types may be met within clinical practice (From Herrmann J. A. M. A.)

sclerosis obliterans) may cause intermittent claudication (page 535) vascular occlusion and gangrene.

Coronary arteriosclerosis has been described previously and is the most common cause of coronary heart disease (page 414).

Renal arteriosclerosis is also common and is a frequent cause of arterial hypertension (page 491).

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of arteriosclerosis is essentially clinical. The general picture may be absent and rigidity of the peripheral arteries may be a late sign. Therefore only the signs of functional deficiency of an organ may require explanation. Differentiation between the signs and symptoms of hypertension and those of arteriosclerosis is often necessary. Oscillometry and calorimetry are of help in the differential diagnosis of arterial disturbances (fig. 297).

TREATMENT

Contrary to previous belief it has been proven that arteriosclerotic lesions of the aorta, large arteries and coronary arteries

may regress. Several trends are explored: they include a) the use of *estrogens* in the male and in the older female; b) the *restriction of caloric and fat intake* (diets VII and VIII) for obese patients or those having more than 220 mg per cent of cholesterol in their blood; c) the substitution of vegetable for animal fats; d) the stimulation of oxidations by diet, vitamin B complex or small amounts of thyroid extract; e) the decholesterolization of tissues by lipotropic factors (choline, etc.) and the stabilization of cholesterol by lecithin.

The patient should be reassured and it should be pointed out that arteriosclerosis is compatible with long survival. If the main organs do not show signs of deficiency, presence of arteriosclerosis should not be mentioned. If a severe lesion of an essential organ is not present, retirement from work should not be advised because it might cause loss of interest in the surroundings and rapid mental and physical decadence.

When arteriosclerosis of either the heart or the lower extremities is not present, *exercise* is useful.

Obese patients should try to reduce by an

adequate diet (high protein low fat and carbohydrate diet—III) If azotemia has developed a low protein diet is indicated (IV)

Alcohol coffee and tobacco may be restricted according to the clinical picture but they seem to have no effect on the arteriosclerosis

Potassium iodide (73) has a mild beneficial action it should be used with caution in order not to overstimulate the thyroid

Theophylline (78) and aminophylline (41-42) are useful as are the nitrites (from the rapid acting nitroglycerine (53) to the slow acting mannitol hexanitrate (51) and peritrate (50)

Bromides (32) and chloral (33-34) are useful in some cases The barbiturates are useful in most patients from the rapid nembutal to amylal (31) and to the slow barbital

Toxic and Infectious Polyarteritis

Severe arterial lesions may occur during a toxic process (lead poisoning) or a general infection (7) In the earliest stage the arteries present focal edema of the media later degeneration of the elastic and muscular structures occurs in the third stage atypical regeneration fibrosis and calcification may be observed The entire process which may be more or less diffuse is limited to the media and seems to be caused by a lesion of the vasa vasorum or the lymphatic vessels of the wall

Acute Arteritis

CAUSE

Acute arteritis may occur at any age when bacteria (or their toxins) damage the arterial wall The existence of toxic arteritis also has been proven Arteritis may be caused by the *Pneumococcus* *Fberthella typhi* and the *Streptococcus hemolyticus* or *viridans* Arteritis may also be caused by rheumatic disease typhus and malaria Among the different localizations that of the arteries of the lower extremities is most common

LESIONS

a) *Disseminated arteritis* This type is localized mainly on middle sized arteries like the iliac carotid and subclavian arteries and chiefly at their bifurcations The subendothelial layers present infiltration and dissociation of the elastic fibers

b) *Thromboarteritis* This is the most common type The artery is either completely (*obliterant thrombo arteritis*) or partially occluded (*parietal thromboarteritis*) The thrombus is a whitish adherent formation of secondary formation The thrombus consists of fibrin platelets and granular residua of both red and white cells Where the thrombus adheres to the arterial wall it is attached closely to the intima which is swollen and infiltrated having lost its endothelium Degenerative lesions and inflammatory reaction are present in the other arterial layers Subsequent organization and fibrosis of the thrombus is customary *Slowing of the circulation due to the arterial thrombosis is usually followed by venous thrombosis*

c) *Embotic septic arteritis* This type is caused by arterial embolism The embolus may reach and damage the artery either through the lumen or through the blood channels of the wall In a later stage differentiation between this type of arteritis and that mentioned in section (b) may become difficult

When the artery is not occluded and is not terminal more or less severe ischemia follows the arteritis On the other hand when the artery is occluded the collateral circulation is poor or both obliteration of a vascular area takes place causing the formation of an infarct this may be followed by gangrene

Gangrene is the complete necrosis of tissues caused by the absolute interruption of blood supply *Dry gangrene* consists of mummification of tissues and takes place when venous circulation is normal *Moist gangrene* consists of purulent and edematous softening of tissues and is caused by the

simultaneous occlusion of the arteries and veins and by the action of bacteria

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

The symptoms and signs vary with the type of lesion

Thromboarteritis Either during an acute disease (typhoid) or during convalescence the patient complains of *severe pain* in one of the legs this is oppressive crushing or tearing It is felt *within* the limb radiates toward the foot and is increased by pressure exertion and dependent position Various forms of *paresesthesias* are also present

The leg is *pale and cold* Upon palpation the artery is *hard like a rope* No pulsation is present below the seat of pain as revealed by palpation and by the oscillometer From 2 to 3 days after the onset the leg becomes bluish then black and gangrene occurs This may be more or less diffuse according to the severity of the lesion and to the extension of the collateral circulation The associated *phlebitis* may cause edema of the limb

From 10 to 15 days after the onset the gangrene has reached its greatest extension and the dry crust of dead tissue is sharply defined and deepens down to the bone If amputation is not performed suppuration of the border takes place followed by septicemia

When moist gangrene occurs the general conditions become dangerous and only an emergency operation may prevent coma and death

Arterial arteritis The clinical picture is similar to the above but is milder The artery may not be palpable the pain is less severe and no cyanosis occurs Gangrene is usually absent unless a diffuse and severe lesion of the peripheral arteries existed already

Embolie arteritis This type is again similar to the others but has a sudden onset and a more rapid evolution

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is usually not difficult The lack of pulsation and the lower tem-

perature are essential signs *Phlebitis* causes a softer edema more frequent cyanosis no impairment of the pulsations and frequently an increase in the local temperature However an associated phlebitis may cause confusion Differential diagnosis from functional disorders of the peripheral circulation is necessary

A *ray study* of the artery may be important in some cases in order to ascertain the upper limit of occlusion It is made by injecting a radio-opaque substance into the artery far above the site of pain *Sectional measurements of the amplitude of pulsations* (oscillometer) are also important for the same purpose

TREATMENT

During the initial stage treatment with vasodilators may improve the collateral circulation *Papaerine* (13 14) *priscoline* (54) or *mannitol hexanitrate* (51) should be given Treatment with *heparin* (63) (37) may prevent blood clotting as far as possible When gangrene is present *amputation* is necessary *Asepsis* of the gangrenous area should be maintained as far as possible Intra arterial injections of *penicillin* combined with *priscoline* (54) have proved effective in cases of gangrene (38)

In embolic arteritis *heparin* intermittent venous compression vasodilators or sympathetic block should be used as accessory treatments However *embolectomy* is most important and should be done as soon as possible (24) When the embolus is in one of the major arteries vasodilators and block should be started only after the intervention because progress of the embolus caused by vasodilation might make the removal more difficult

Chronic Arteritis

Chronic arteritis includes some clinical syndromes which have varying manifestations often of unknown or doubtful cause

Isletic Arteritis

This type of arteritis may occur in arteries of any size That of the extremities

is typical. The lesion may consist of progressive fibrous narrowing of the vessel causing *obliteration* or destruction of the muscular and elastic structures leading to dilatation and formation of one or more *aneurysms*.

The obliterant type first causes *intermittent claudication* and later the symptoms and signs of thromboarteritis. The aneurysmatic type causes compression of the nerves, veins and lymphatic vessels. Therefore pain, cyanosis and edema may follow. The artery may be felt as a *pulsating sac*; its compression first causes an increase of the pulse (obliteration of the sac) and then its disappearance (compression of the artery).

Diabetic Arteritis

It is more correct to call this arteritis of a diabetic patient. It is usually due to banal germs of low virulence on an arteriosclerotic ground. The lesion consists of a primary endoarteritis with thickening of the intima followed by thrombosis. Lipoid deposits and leucocyte infiltrations are present in the wall.

The course of this arteritis is usually long. For many years no symptoms are present but the amplitude of pulsations is decreased (oscillometer). Later on more or less severe pain starts. The last stage is represented by gangrene. The latter may be accompanied by little pain if the collateral circulation is impaired because of a systemic lesion of the small arteries.

Peripheral Arterial Embolism

Arterial emboli are usually caused by loose thrombi from the left side of the heart (rheumatic heart disease, subacute bacterial endocarditis, myocardial infarction) frequently in cases of atrial fibrillation (page 343). The embolus usually lodges at a bifurcation and then occludes both openings. Thrombosis of the vessels is the result and this may cause gangrene. The thrombus extends distally but only little proximally.

A severe localized pain follows emboliza-

tion and is possibly connected with the vascular spasm which takes place at the site of the embolus. Muscular weakness, paralysis, decrease of reflexes and of sensitivity, lower temperature and absence of pulse below the site of occlusion are typical.

Gangrene is rare in the upper extremity on account of good collateral circulation while it is more common in the lower extremities. *Secondary venous thrombosis may occur*.

Treatment consists of sedation, lowering of the limb and vasodilators. *Papaverine*, *priscoline* (51) or *khellin* (48, 49) may be used. I.v. *heparin* (63) in isotonic saline is given by the continuous drop method.

Embolectomy is the operation of choice.

Cerebrovascular Accidents

Cerebrovascular accidents are usually attributed to one of the following mechanisms: a) vascular spasm, b) vascular embolism, c) thrombosis of a cerebral artery or d) cerebral hemorrhage.

Arterial hypertension is present in a majority of cases, cerebral arteriosclerosis is extremely frequent. Cause of embolization may be found in the others. In some of the cases a tiny embolus to the brain or a minor thrombosis has widespread effects on account of *diffuse secondary arterial spasm* (34).

The symptomatology of the episode varies according to the localization of the lesion. It includes motor and sensory paralysis, sudden change of blood pressure (hypertension or hypotension), dyspnea and possibly *acute pulmonary edema*.

It has been proven that therapy cannot be based on the diagnosis because of the difficulty of an early differential diagnosis between the various types of lesion. More over both a white and a red area of softening can be produced by the same experimental techniques (35).

Therapy is based on the use of

a) Vascular dilators: *aminophyllin* (10-15 gm) (42), *papaverine* (13, 44) or *priscoline* (51).

b) Depressant of the sympathetic (*hyderg*

ine) (36) or of the entire autonomous system (*hexamethonium*) (39 40)

c) *Stellate block* (36) This is performed on the side of the cerebral lesion with 5 cc of 1 per cent novocaine and repeated every 12 or 24 hours for 5 to 6 days

d) Sedatives (*chloral hydrate amytal*)

e) Stimulants of the vascular system (in cases with vascular collapse)

f) *Alcohol-oxygen vapor by inhalation* (page 560) (in cases of pulmonary edema)

Thrombo Anguitis Obliterans (Buerger's Disease) (8 9 10)

CAUSE

The disease occurs in young or mature individuals usually in males Persons with a low metabolic rate have a greater percentage of incidence than others A racial background has been disproven

The role of *tobacco* in this disease has been emphasized We do not yet know whether tobacco causes the disease (1) possibly through an allergic mechanism or merely increases the severity of its manifestations through a functional disturbance There is no denying that complete abstinence from tobacco has a favorable influence on the clinical picture

The role of *infection* was suggested by the study of the lesion and by the success of one attempt at transplantation of the process (9) However no known germ was ever isolated and the extreme predilection for one sex is all against the infectious theory

LESIONS

Lesions are found in the arteries (*arteritis*) veins (*phlebitis*) and lymphatic vessels (*lymphangitis*) They consist of a chronic inflammation accompanied by proliferation of the intima and resulting in thrombosis Organization and canalization of the clots fibrosis of the adventitia and attempts at formation of collateral circulation have been observed The formation of miliary foci of inflammatory cells is typical of this lesion

The development of fibrotic tissue which binds together the artery, vein, and nerve explains some of the symptoms

The disease has a systemic diffusion but is more severe in the vessels of the limbs

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

In the early stage, *diffuse tenderness* due to *migrant phlebitis*, may occur short, raised areas of redness are visible along the smaller veins, especially over the foot, ankle, hand, and wrist There may be swelling and tenderness of some of the joints Tenderness of an artery, followed by thrombosis, is observed less often This acute stage may last only for a week and the color of the areas may then change to a faint brown

Intermittent claudication develops later and may be limited to one leg or one foot *Pain at rest* is usually a late symptom and may be accompanied by *ulceration*

As the disease progresses, the symptoms become more severe the popliteal and even the femoral pulses disappear the radial pulses become small *claudication* becomes constant and severe

Coronary occlusion is frequent *impotence* is not rare and both are caused by arterial lesions similar to those of the extremities (coronary and spermatic arteries) *Thrombosis of abdominal vessels* may simulate *appendicitis*

Fever is rare *leucocytosis* is uncommon (unless gangrene has occurred) *Hyperglycemia* and *hypercholesterolemia* have been described but are not constant A typical premature aging of the patient may take place

Coldness of one or both feet or hands lack of pulsation in the arteries of the extremities reduced amplitude of oscillation (*oscillometer*) and lack of reaction to a hot bath are typical of the disease before ulceration or gangrene appears

The *electrocardiogram* may not show typical changes but evidence of coronary heart disease is present in a high percentage of cases (12)

DIAGNOSIS

Several different conditions may be simulated and should be excluded in the initial stage arch strain Raynaud's disease peripheral arteriosclerosis peripheral embolism periarteritis nodosa coarctation of the aorta and tuberculous or syphilitic arteritis

TREATMENT

Abstinence from tobacco is imperative Precautions against trauma chilling or excessive heat (hot water bottle) shall be taken

If active vasodilatation is still possible vasodilator drugs should be prescribed Papaverine (13-44) thellin (18-49) and priscoline (54) as well as alcohol can be used Sympatholytic drugs like dibenamine (37) and ganglionic blocking agents like benzodioxane (38) have been used with good result Care should be taken not to lower excessively systemic pressure This might aggravate the local ischemia *Moderate heating* of the limb in alternated periods has a favorable action

Suction and pressure exercises from 15 minutes to 2 hours at a time may be useful

Sympathectomy may be useful if the capacity for vasodilatation still exists Whenever gangrene has occurred the treatment is surgical

Panarteritis Nodosa (Periarteritis Nodosa) (13)

Arteritis associated with perivascular reactions may occur in lupus erythematosus dermatomyositis typhus rheumatic disease and other conditions However periarteritis nodosa in a clinical sense is a chronic systemic disease which is independent from any other

CAUSE

The disease is not so rare as previously thought It is four times more common in the male and it may occur at any age Its cause is unknown Experimental studies

have suggested the possibility of an allergic mechanism in its production Clinical considerations and histological data led to inclusion of this condition among the so called collagen diseases

LESIONS

The lesions of periarteritis nodosa affect arteries of various size but chiefly the small arteries of different organs Kidney heart liver spleen and lungs are involved in this order

Gross examination reveals a series of milium nodules placed along the arterial walls (Aussmaul's nodules) The arteries show patchy inflammatory lesions involving all three coats Destruction of the elastic and muscular layers of the media is typical and small secondary aneurysms are a frequent result Leucocyte infiltration of the adventitia is associated with the formation of periaarterial thickenings Hemorrhages may occur within the arterial wall or in the surrounding tissues thrombi often form within the vessels Giant cells are present in some cases eosinophils may occur in the inflammatory tissue

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

The onset is usually gradual Remissions long intermissions and exacerbations are common The clinical picture varies greatly according to the distribution severity and persistence of the vascular lesions Any organ can be affected and therefore a wide variety of symptoms and signs have been recorded

Bizarre and unexplained symptoms suggesting infectious rheumatic or cachectic diseases may be due to periarteritis nodosa

Fever malaise weakness albumin casts in the urine leucocytosis anemia tachycardia abdominal pain ascites peripheral edema enlargement of the liver and retinitis are among the many signs and symptoms described Skin lesions of different types from erythema to nodules or pustules may occur Unexplained and rapidly pro

gressive hypertension may be caused by periarteritis of the renal arteries

A certain number of cases have bronchial asthma multiple involvement of the brain may simulate a brain tumor Diffuse pain may simulate polyneuritis

Panarteritis nodosa has been shown to be a cause of coronary occlusion

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of these cases is always difficult The findings of a biopsy may bring definite data In some cases the lesion may be visualized directly *in vivo* on sigmoidoscopy

TREATMENT

No specific treatment is available However if diagnosis is made early administration of ACTH or cortisone may be useful

Intermittent Claudication (14)

Intermittent claudication is a clinical syndrome which may be caused by different arterial lesions

CAUSE

One of the most common causes is *arteriosclerosis obliterans* of the lower extremities *Luetic or diabetic arteritis Buerger's disease* and *periarteritis nodosa* may cause the same clinical picture

Thrombosis of the abdominal aorta may show the same picture at first *coarctation of the aorta* may be the cause especially if the ischemia of the lower limbs is accentuated by heart failure

Functional elements may play an important role especially in cases with limited extension and severity of the arterial lesions

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

The patients feel well as long as they lie down sit or even walk for a few steps However, as soon as more prolonged exercise is undertaken *severe pain* is felt in the calf together with sensations of heaviness cold burning or tingling Resting causes disappearance of the disturbance A few minutes

later the patient may resume his walk only to be stopped again by the pain after proceeding a little farther

During the attack of pain the skin of the leg is cyanotic and cold and the pulse of the local arteries is small The oscillometer reveals a marked decrease of pulsations A ray may reveal calcified areas of the arterial walls

MECHANISM

It is apparent that the pain is caused by a *disproportion between blood demand and blood supply to the legs* This is usually due to a moderate narrowing of the arteries which moreover, cannot dilate in order to supply an increased amount of blood during exercise A functional disturbance of the arterial wall may be involved as shown by the fact that the amplitude of pulsations may be reduced during the attack

The pain has been attributed to abnormal metabolism of the muscles due to insufficient oxygen supply and resulting in the *accumulation of lactic acid* (15) A connection between potassium increase in the muscle and pain has also been advocated (17)

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of the clinical syndrome is usually simple However the cause nature extension and severity of the lesions should be ascertained

The *differential diagnosis* between *intermittent claudication of arterial origin* and *intermittent claudication of spinal origin* is made from the observation that signs of a lesion of the cortico motor neuron (*Babinski's sign* included) are usually present in the latter During the attack the arterial pulsations are normal in the spinal claudication while the muscles become hypertonic Spinal claudication is always *bilateral arterial claudication is frequently unilateral*

The pain of arthritis is articular or periarticular and is seldom completely absent at rest The pain of neuritis is di-

tributed along the course of a nerve it is not relieved by rest and often is not increased by exercise. The pain of orthopedic defects is more an ache than a real pain. The pain of an inflammatory process is usually steady.

TREATMENT

The treatment is that of the underlying vascular disease. Avoidance of tight garters, excessive cold or heat, and discontinuance of smoking are useful. Rest is helpful. Physiotherapy, postural exercises and intermittent venous occlusion are often helpful.

Vasodilators such as *papaverine* (13), *Akellin* (18) or *priscofine* (54) can be used.

Sympathectomy can be of aid whenever an important functional element is involved. Its usefulness may be tested by administration of sympatholytics (36). However it should be noted that the sympathetic fibers cause constriction of the skin arteries and dilatation of the arteries of the muscles. Therefore the beneficial action of sympathectomy is felt mostly in the skin. *Intra-venous diethylether* seems helpful in alleviating ischemia and pain (25 per cent ether in 5 per cent glucose—500 to 1000 cc).

Restoration of blood flow is extremely important in cases with acute thrombosis of an artery. This can be obtained by *thromboendarterectomy and resection* with replacement of the removed section by an arterial (33) or venous (39) graft.

Acrocyanosis

Acrocyanosis is the paroxysmal occurrence of a bluish color at the extremities. This is usually accompanied by decreased skin temperature and at times by trophic changes.

CAUSE AND MECHANISM

Acrocyanosis affects the female sex in the great majority of cases. This led to the belief that an endocrine disturbance connected with ovarian insufficiency might be responsible for it. The hormonal im-

balance would cause a disturbance in the regulation of the arterioles, capillaries and venules of the skin. The reactivity of the vasomotor nerves would be affected so that reaction to normal thermal stimuli would be increased. However a certain number of patients have acrocyanosis based on a different mechanism. Some of them have it only in the presence of cold. These have been said to be on the borderline between acrocyanosis and Raynaud's disease. Others have an organic lesion of the nervous system; patients with lesions of the midbrain, the sympathetic ganglia and the peripheral nerves may present this vasomotor disturbance. According to some the main disturbance is a capillary and venous dilatation not connected with a primary arterial disturbance (18).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The main sign is represented by *cyanosis*. This predominates in the hands, feet and lower part of the legs. It may be present on the nose, earlobes and occasionally the arms. Cyanosis is accompanied by low temperature of the skin in the affected areas; this is usually between 20°C and 30°C and may be as low as the room temperature. The skin of the extremities is often moist and clammy.

Systolic blood pressure is often somewhat low with a reduced pulse pressure (*hypophygemia*—page 521). *Venous pressure* is usually high, reaching figures ranging from 13 to 25 cm. water. The vasomotor reactions usually are exaggerated as shown by heat or cold tests.

TREATMENT

In some cases *estrogenic* treatment obtains good result. *Physiotherapy* is often useful. *Paredrinol* (59) seems to give good results.

Raynaud's Disease (18, 19)

Raynaud's disease is a syndrome revealed by paroxysmal attacks of pallor or

cyanosis of symmetrical areas of the extremities. Gangrene may follow.

CAUSE

In some of the cases, the vasomotor disturbance is a *purely functional phenomenon*, caused by exposure to cold. Prolonged work with vibratory engines definitely favors the disease.

In other patients the vasomotor disturbance is connected with the initial stage of an *organic lesion of the arteries* (Buerger's disease: arteriosclerosis; obliterans; luetic arteritis). Occasional occurrence in patients with cervical rib, pulmonary tuberculosis and chronic intoxications is possible. In this group of cases only the name *Raynaud's phenomenon* is correct while the basal disease is something else (20).

Raynaud's disease is more common in *females*. The relation of 80 to 20 approximately indicates the ratio for the two sexes.

Exposure to cold and emotional strain favor the occurrence of the attacks. The use of *tobacco* seems to have a slightly noxious influence but nothing decisive has been demonstrated.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Three successive stages may occur in the syndrome.

a) *Stage of ischemia*. During the attack the extremities become *cold and extremely pale* and lose their sensitivity. As a result, accurate movements become difficult. The ischemia may involve only one or two fingers (occasionally toes) but is usually symmetrical and extended to both hands. The attack lasts from a few minutes to a few hours and is followed by a phase of hyperemia of the affected areas.

b) *Stage of asphyria*. During the attack, the extremities become *cyanotic*; they are also somewhat cold but less so than in the previous stage. *Pain* is usually present and is transmitted toward the root of the limb. These attacks usually last some hours. Slight edema may be present during the attack.

c) *Stage of gangrene*. Following the previous stage, areas of dry gangrene may occur in the fingers or toes. Round ulcerations may be a manifestation of this stage.

MECHANISM

It is apparent that the three subsequent stages of Raynaud's disease are due to impairment of the arterial blood supply. This is transitory at first and then becomes more severe and persistent, up to the stage of gangrene.

Both a disturbance of innervation and a vascular lesion have been advocated. The symmetrical appearance favors the first; the gradual intensification with extension toward the root of the limb favors the second.

An *arteriolar spasm* is apparent but a *spasm of the veins* in the initial stage has also been demonstrated (20). The latter may even predominate over the former. Minor arterial lesions may favor the spasm while a repeated and prolonged spasm may impair the nourishment of the arterial wall and favor a secondary lesion. It seems likely that cold or prolonged vibrations stimulate the already excitable sympathetic system.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is not difficult if one can observe the patient during an attack. It is often possible to diagnose the disease merely on the history alone. The various causative and favoring elements should be further investigated so that treatment may be based on the cause and not merely on the symptoms.

TREATMENT

Prevention of chill and abolition of any manual work with vibratory engines are necessary. *Prostagmin* (72), *papaverine* (43, 44) and *priscoline* (54) are the vasodilators which give the best results.

Diathermy and other physiotherapeutic treatments are often useful.

Surgery gives good results in some cases. Either *periarterial sympathectomy* (23) or

preganglionic sympathectomy can be used. The intervention will be preceded by tests (warming of the body, spinal anesthesia, procainization of the sympathetic ganglia, action of drugs) in order to ascertain how important the reflex vasoconstriction actually is. A positive test prophesies a good outcome from surgery.

Erythromelalgia (21)

Erythromelalgia is a syndrome caused by paroxysmal attacks of congestion of the extremities.

CAUSE AND MECHANISM

This syndrome usually occurs in patients suffering from migraine or dizziness. It is more common in the male sex and usually is observed between the ages of 20 and 40.

While the syndrome may be observed as an associated phenomenon in patients with tabes or syringomyelia, the most typical picture is independent of any organic lesion.

Sometimes the area of congestion corresponds to the distribution of a nerve; at other times it includes the entire limb. Irritation of the vasomotor fibers of a nerve has been advocated in the first case, a spinal disturbance in the second.

SIGNS

The patients complain of attacks lasting many hours and occurring mostly at night. They start with severe pain which may be radiated to one of the hands or feet or to the entire limb. Together with this a sensation of heat or even a burning sensation, hyperalgesia and hyperesthesia occur in the same area. In some patients the disturbance involves either the nose or the earlobes.

The involved area is red, moist, slightly swollen and warm.

Some of the patients have polycythemia.

TREATMENT

Physiotherapy has been used in cases where a lesion of one of the peripheral nerves was the cause of the disturbance. *Adrenalin* (55), *ephedrine* (57), *calcium* and *pitressin* (62) seem to exert a beneficial effect.

Immersion Foot—Trench Foot (22)

These two names are equivalent and are applied to a vascular disease of the extremities caused by exposure. The lesion is caused by exposure to a temperature which is sufficient to chill but not to freeze the tissues. Such a temperature causes an increase in capillary permeability and an inflammatory exudate.

Shipwrecked sailors exposed to cold for a prolonged period develop swollen, discolored and even pulseless extremities. Dependency, immobility and constricting footwear add to the severity of the lesion. Anesthesia and occasionally gangrene may occur. Low grade fever is not uncommon but high fever is a serious sign.

After rescue and upon warming the limb becomes hyperemic and swollen and occasionally blebs are formed. Later desquamation of the skin takes place. The anesthesia disappears quickly but may persist for some time in the distal areas. Treatment should be directed toward avoidance of injury, asepsis and reduction of the edema and congestion. Body warmth should be restored but the limb should be kept elevated and cool (cold packs, spray).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 HUEFNER W. C. Arch. Path. 1944 38 167, 245 and 350 and 1945 39 117.
- 2 ARESU M. L. Arteriosclerosis. Milano: Cordanì, 1927.
- 3 MOCHOWITZ E. In Cyclopaedia of Medicine, Vol. 4. Philadelphia: Davis, 1947. Am. J. Med. Sci. 1927 174 388 and 1929 178 744. J. A. M. A. 1926 90 723 and 1926 90 724.
- 4 JOSÉ O. Pre. Méd. 1904 1 281.
- 5 a) AVITSCHKOW N. and CHALATOW S. Zentr. allg. Path. 1913 24 1.
b) AVITSCHKOW N. Beitr. path. Anat. 1913 56 379.
- 6 a) WINTERITZ M. C. THOMAS M. and LECOMPT P. M. The Biology of Arteriosclerosis. Baltimore: Thomas, 1938.
b) WINTERITZ M. C. and LECOMPT P. M. Am. J. Path. 1940 16 1.
- 7 WIESEL J. and LOEWY R. Wien. Arch. inn. Med. 1920 1 19.
- 8 VON WINNERTER F. Arch. Chir. 1879 23 907.

- 9 BUECHER I Surg (yn & Obs 1914 19 58) Also *The Circulatory Disturbances of the Extremities* Philadelphia Saunders 1924
- 10 BROWN G I ALLEN I V AND MAHORNER H R *Thrombo Angitis Obliterans* Philadelphia Saunders 1928
- 11 SILBERT S J A M A 1915 129 5
- 12 SAMUELS S S AND FEINBERG S Am Heart J 1930 6 225
- 13 a) KUSSMALL A AND MAIER R Deut Arch Klin Med 1966 2 484
b) GRANT R T Clin Sci 1910 4 245
c) FITZ R In *Strat's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1915
- 14 CHARCOT J M Progr Méd 1887 32/33
- 15 ELLIOTT A H AND EVANS R D Am Heart J 1936 11 674
- 16 ALLEN A W In *Nelson's Loose Leaf Medicine* New York Nelson 1916
- 17 HARPOLDER K AND STEIN I D Am Heart J 1943 25 479
- 18 a) LAYANI F *Les Arterioscléroses* Paris Masson 1929
b) VILARDET M AND COWORKER Arch Mal Coeur 1934 27 725 and 1935 28 1
c) LAROT J AND CORNILL I In *Nouvel Traité de Médecine* Paris Masson 1933
- 19 a) RAYNAUD M *On Local Asphyxia and Symmetrical Gangrene of the Extremities* London New Sidenham Soc 1888 1
b) FRICHEL R AND FONTAINE R *Les Spasmes Vasculaires* J Card Roux 1937
- 20 a) ALLEN I V AND BROWN G I Am J M Sci 1937 183 187
b) HINE I A AND CHRISTENSEN N A J A M A 1945 129 1
- 21 MITCHELL W Am J M Sci 1878 76 1
- 22 a) LACLEY C C AND BLACKWOOD W Lancet 1912 2 417
b) WEBSTER D R AND COWORKERS J Bone & Joint Surg 1912 21 78
c) WHITE J C New England J Med 1943 228 241
- 23 FRICHEL R AND HILTZ J Arch Mal Coeur 1917 10 79
- 24 REYNOLDS J T AND JIRKA F J Surg 1944 16 485
- 25 NAIDE M AND SAYEN A Arch Int Med 1946 77 16
- 26 GOFMAN J W et al Circ 1950 2 161 Also Science 1950 111 166
- 27 a) HORLICK I AND HAYAL I J Lab & Clin Med 1948 33 1
b) ROSENMAN R H et al Circ 1957 5 589
- 28 HORLICK I AND KATZ I N Am Heart J 1949 38 336
- 29 STEINER A et al Arch Path 1946 42 433 Also Am Heart J 1919 38 34
- 30 HORLICK I et al Am Heart J 1949 37 689
- 31 STAMLER J et al Am Heart J 1949 38 466
- 32 DAVIDSON J D Am J Med 1951 6 736
- 33 JULIAN O C DE TAKATS C AND DYE W S Angiology 1953 4 12
- 34 HICK S I AND BLACK B K Am Heart J 1949 38 578
- 35 SACCHI L Report XI Congress of Ital Soc Neurology 1957
- 36 a) RISTEEN W AND VOLPITTO I South M J 1946 39 431
b) GILBERT N C AND DE TAKATS C J A M A 1948 136 650
c) AMYES L W AND FERRY S M J A M A 1950 142 15
- 37 ALLEN I V J A M A 194 135 15
- 38 KAPPERT A Helv Med Acta (Basel) 1948 15 25
- 39 KUNLIN J Arch Med Coeur 1913 11 31

Diseases of the Veins

Phlebitis

Phlebitis is the inflammation of a vein *thrombophlebitis* is the same process complicated by thrombosis of the vessel with hindrance to or block of the blood flow

CAUSE

A phlebitis may be caused by local or general causes. A *local cause* exists when wound trauma or infection occurs. A *general cause* is present in infectious disease the phlebitis then may be caused by the germs of the disease or by associated bacteria. Propagation of an inflammatory process from artery to vein has been shown both in spontaneous diseases and in experimental animals.

Slowing of the circulation predisposes to phlebitis. This may be a local circulatory disturbance or may be due to heart failure. Causes which favor clotting of the blood all o fav or phlebitis (page 507)

LESIONS

Any vein may present a phlebitis. The most common localizations are however the veins of the pelvis and those of the lower extremities. Phlebitis of the veins of the arm is less common but not rare. The jugular veins may be affected in inflammatory conditions of the brain and meninges.

Gross examination shows *edema* of the area and a swollen rope like aspect of the vein. Opening of the vein reveals the *thrombus* which adheres to the wall with part of its surface. The thrombus is prolonged by a long red clot which is free from the wall. The subsequent evolution of the thrombus may lead to various possibilities:

a) *Detachment* causing embolism

b) *Purulent softening* with sloughing off of minute particles embolism does not occur in such cases because of the small size of the particles and the slow course of the process

c) *Organization* through connective tissue which starts from the intima of the vein and gradually becomes dense

d) *Vasculization* due to formation of new mural capillaries in the longitudinal direction and the subsequent opening of channels through the thrombus

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The venous thromboses of the lower extremities are divided into two different classes: *phlebothrombosis* and *thrombophlebitis*

Phlebothrombosis

This is a relatively quiet process which may be completely silent until a serious embolism occurs. It is localized in the venous plexuses among the muscles particularly in those of the calf but sometimes in those of the foot or thigh.

This process may cause lameness on walking pain in the calf tenderness of the muscles discomfort on forced dorsiflexion (*Homan's sign*) more or less apparent *edema* and local cyanosis. The process may remain local or progress into the femoral vein. In the latter case it may form a long loose embolus or progress further toward the center in a lightly adherent non-obstructive form. It may reach the external iliac vein causing the signs of thrombophlebitis. Diagnosis of deep phlebothrombosis may be aided by *venography* a method based on the injection of diodrast in a small vein

above the malleolus and on x-ray visualization of the venous system (24)

Thrombophlebitis (Phlegmasia ilba Dolens—Mill Leg)

This process may start in a thrombosis of the leg veins of the uterine veins or of the femoro-iliac veins. It is an obstructive process in which an inflammatory exudate often surrounds the veins and arteries causing local arterial spasm and possibly a diffuse peripheral vaso-spasm in the arterioles, venules or both.

The disease is revealed by *tingling heaviness muscular cramps and local pain*. This is elicited by palpation, exertion and by dependent position. The skin is *warm and edematous*. The surface may reveal superficial reddish strips (lymphangitis) but is typically *white* (milk leg). The edema is *hard*. The inflamed vein may be rope-like in consistency and is extremely tender.

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of deep phlebitis may be helped by *venography* (2). That of the superficial veins is usually easy. Bilateral phlebitis of the leg may be confused with the result of heart failure. Observation that venous pressure in the arm is normal in such cases while it is elevated in heart failure may assist the diagnosis.

TREATMENT

One of the main purposes of treatment is the prevention of pulmonary embolism. This has been discussed already (page 309) and is based on the use of *anticoagulants* (25) (63-64-65) and on *preventive ligation of the femoral veins* and occasionally of the iliac vein (8).

For conservative treatment, 6 inch elevation of the foot of the bed, freedom of movement and *no ice bag* are the best procedures (6). After from 10 to 14 days gradual resumption of activity in a semi-elastic bandage is recommended.

Observation that the edema is partly connected with arterial spasm (9) and is re-

duced by lumbar sympathetic block with procaine (10) indicate the use of the latter following one of the several techniques proposed (11).

Phleboscclerosis

Phleboscclerosis is a chronic lesion of the venous wall which is common in patients with arteriosclerosis (12). The lesion mainly consists of diffuse or focal thickening of the intima. Atherosclerotic lesions of the venous wall also have been described in medium and large veins of mature individuals whose histories show absence of chronic infection. This process called *phleboatherosclerosis* (13) is associated with rigidity and dilatation of the venous wall.

Varicose Veins

Dilatation, elongation and tortuosity of the veins may occur in any part of the body. However the most apparent type of varicose veins is that of the superficial network of the lower extremities.

CAUSE AND MECHANISM

Varicose veins of the legs are due to *valvular insufficiency or block of the femoral or iliac veins*. The former is frequently congenital but may be acquired as a result of trauma or inflammation.

The normal compensatory mechanism for maintaining blood pressure in the erect position is based on vascular reflexes acting mainly on the small vessels (carotid sinus and aortic arch reflexes) and on the action of the *venous valves*. These prevent a reversal of flow in the veins and support the hydrostatic pressure of the venous section which lies between one valve and the next.

Insufficiency of the valves results in stagnation of a large amount of blood with a marked rise of local venous pressure. This may cause an actual decrease of the circulating blood volume and a reduction of cardiac output which may reach 30 per cent of the previous figure on changing posture (14b-15).

The system of the saphenous veins is deprived of the supporting and milking action of the muscles; therefore it is easily exposed to the effect of increased venous pressure. If the femoral valve is congenitally absent the difficulty of venous return in the erect position becomes even greater.

As the left iliac vein has a longer course than the right, varicose veins are frequently longer on that side.

Heredit is important in the development of varicose veins.

The strain of prolonged immobile standing is responsible for the frequent formation of varicose veins in waiters, street-car conductors and policemen. Other causes are traumatic rupture of the valves, pressure of lymph nodes or pelvic organs straining at tools and pregnancy.

The effect of postpartum postoperative, and postinfectious thrombophlebitis is another cause of varicose veins through production of new collateral and dilated channels.

The actual venous pressure of the varicose veins in the standing position may reach 200 cm. of water and in exceptional cases may be above 300 (14a). However, contradictory evidence has been found in other cases.

LESIONS--COMPLICATIONS

Varicose veins are tortuous dilated blood vessels. These veins react to increased pressure first with *hypertrophy* and then with *dilatation* and *elongation*. An inflammatory reaction within and about the walls of varicose veins is frequent (14a). This is due to bacteria circulating in the blood and it may remain latent for many years. Sudden strain, severe trauma or the injection of sclerosing substances may reactivate this inflammation and cause a phlebitis. On the other hand, varicose veins may act as a focus of infection and disseminate the germs into the blood stream.

Insufficiency of the venous valves is usually progressive until nutritional disturbances of the skin and subcutaneous tis-

sues occur. The skin becomes dry, atrophic and pigmented and may present eczema. The small veins of the skin may be occluded by thrombi with periphlebitic induration which later may become ulcerated.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The early symptoms consist of a tired feeling and heavy sensation in the legs. Sometimes cramps of the calves at night or in cold water and swelling of the ankles may occur. Then blue markings appear along the calves and venous dilatations become apparent (fig. 298).

The visible extent of the varicosities is not proportional to the severity of the symptoms. This is partly due to the fact that the latter may be due to complications and not to the varicosities themselves. Traction on the saphenous nerve may cause a painful radiation when the dilatations are large.

Dizziness, fainting or precordial oppression may be due in rare cases to large varicose veins which pool a large amount of blood and suddenly decrease the cardiac output (15).



FIG. 298 Varicose veins



FIG. 299 Varicose veins. A elevation of the leg. B lowering of the leg, with compression at the groin. C release of compression.

DIAGNOSIS

Many conditions may simulate the symptoms of varicose veins. Flat foot, genu valgum, arthritis, and sciatica may cause similar pain. Femoral hernia and arterio-venous fistulae may cause swellings which often are mistaken for real varicose veins.

The conditions of the valves may be evaluated by means of different tests.

The *Trendelenburg test* gives information about the insufficiency of the saphenous

valves and the flow through the communicating veins (fig. 299).

The patency of the deep veins is then tested by *Perthes test*: a towel is placed around the thigh and twisted so as to compress the saphenous vein. Vigorous extension and flexion is then performed with the result that the blood of the superficial veins is aspirated into the deeper ones. When pressure is released from above the superficial veins fill again. No diminution of the varicosities takes place during the test if the deep veins are obstructed.

TREATMENT

Elastic stockings and elastic bandages give symptomatic relief. They should extend to the groin and often are disliked because of discomfort. They usually are indicated during pregnancy or in older patients.

Rest, elevation and hot dressings may be useful in cases of acute inflammation or ulcers. Ambulatory treatment is desirable in the great majority of cases.

Obliteration of the varicose veins may be obtained by *local injections* which cause a gradual sclerosis. The injections are started in the highest palpable varicosity or in that which is most apparent. Usually they are given twice a week until the desired result is obtained.

The most commonly used solutions are 10 per cent *quinine sulphate* with urethane, 20 to 40 per cent *sodium salicylate*, or 5 to 10 per cent *sodium morrhuate*.

A contraindication is represented by infection or any cause for immobility. The occurrence of embolism following the thrombosis caused by the injection is extremely rare.

Varicose veins without incompetence of the perforator vessels should be treated by *high saphenous ligation and stripping* (17). When phlebography reveals incompetent communicating or perforating vein these should be *interrupted* as they pass through the fascia (26). *Postphlebotic varices*

are treated by interrupting the deep venous channels at the upper limit of involvement and stripping the superficial dilatations (26). Postoperative treatment includes antibiotics, early ambulation and prolonged compression.

Healing of varicose ulcers depends on different factors but control of bacterial infection is very important. *Local penicillin* treatment has been found useful.

Arteriovenous Fistula

Arteriovenous fistula is a shunt between an artery and a vein which causes formation of a special type of aneurysm (a *vascular aneurysm*) and a typical clinical picture (fig. 300). A special type of a *vascular fistula* is that of pulmonary vessels (page 510).

CAUSE

Arteriovenous fistula is frequently caused by a *wound* or *trauma*. In rare cases it may be *congenital*. Rupture of a *juvenile aneurysm* into a vein may cause a fistula giving the same clinical picture.

The most important varieties are those which are due to communication:

- between the ascending aorta and superior vena cava
- between the abdominal aorta and inferior vena cava
- between the iliac or femoral artery and the iliac or femoral vein
- between the carotid artery and internal jugular vein

LESIONS AND MECHANISM

The artery is enlarged in its proximal section and is smaller than normal distal to the fistula. The vein is dilated and may present a large varicose enlargement. The arterial dilatation may extend as far back as the heart but the venous enlargement is most marked near the fistula.

The arterial enlargement is due to the increased speed of circulation to the eddies and to degenerative changes of the wall. The venous dilatation is due to the increase in pressure. The heart is enlarged.

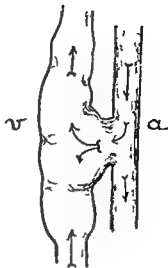


FIG. 300 Arteriovenous fistula a artery v vein

The shunt between arterial and venous circulation tends to cause depletion of the arterial system and venous congestion. The loss of blood occurs during the entire cardiac cycle but is greater toward the end of systole than in other phases. For this reason a vascular picture which resembles that of aortic regurgitation or patent ductus arteriosus may arise. The amount of blood passing through the shunt at times may reach one third of the total blood volume.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The pulse is rapid and *celer*. It becomes normal again as soon as the fistula is excluded. There is *tachycardia* which is interpreted as a compensatory reflex caused by the low arterial pressure. There is usually *hypotension* and this is accompanied by an increase in the pulse pressure. Low systolic and even lower diastolic pressure account for these facts.

The pulse wave has a great speed. A pulse tracing reveals that the notch which precedes the dicrotic wave is at a very low level (18). Increased pressure in the arteries which are more distant from the heart and pulsation of the small arteries of the subcapillary

plexus (so called *capillary pulse*) are present in some cases

Systemic venous pressure has been found normal (22) but increased pressure exists in the vein into which the fistula empties

The heart is enlarged both to the right and left. The locale of the fistula is frequently revealed by a *small pulsating mass* the superficial veins of the area are dilated and tortuous and may pulsate

A *thrill* and a *continuous machinery murmur* which increases in systole can be appreciated over the fistula. It may seem only systolic. If the fistula is large and in an extremity the *pulse distal to it may become weak or even disappear*

The *graphic tracing* (phonoarteriogram) reveals that the murmur is continuous but increases in systole at times considerably. The murmur extends over a long stretch of vein central to the fistula and sometimes reaches the heart. The proximal murmur is partly generated in the vein and has less systolic accentuation (23)

The *temperature* distal to the fistula is lower than that of the opposite side. Ulceration and even gangrene may result

The *electrocardiogram* fails to show any axis deviation (21)

Cardiac output is increased while the *arteriovenous difference* in the oxygen content is decreased (22)

DIAGNOSIS

In general diagnosis of this condition is not difficult. However an arterial aneurysm and a pulsating hematoma should be excluded. The arterial aneurysm may cause a similar murmur

TREATMENT

The fistula has so great an effect on the heart and circulation that its surgical elimination is required. The operation consists of *quadruple ligation* of the artery and vein with complete excision of the channel. This intervention prevents any recurrence

Obliteration of the fistula causes a sudden

increase in resistance. In order to prevent this sudden effect, venesection may be performed at the time of operation with the withdrawal of from 500 to 1000 cc of blood. The intervention is followed by a rapid return of the heart to a normal size and by a rapid normalization of the peripheral circulation

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 a) ALTSCHULE M D IGLALER A AND ZANCHER N Arch Int Med 1910 75 24
b) HILLET H H KATZ S AND YATER W M Am Heart J 1946 III 1
- 2 VELMANN R Virch Arch path Anat 1939 301 708
- 3 a) OCHSNER A AND DEBAKEY M New England J Med, 1940 222 870
b) OCHSNER A AND DIXON J I J Thoracic Surg 1936 5 641
- 4 HUNTER W C SNEEDEN D ROBERTSON T D AND SNYDER G A C Arch Int Med 1941 III 1
- 5 a) DOZ SANTOS J C J Int Chir 1938 3 670
b) BAKER G Acta Chir Scand 1940 84 1 Mo Acta Med Scand 1941 107 136
c) STARR A FRANK H A AND FINE J J A M A 1947 118 1102
- 6 HOWANS J New England J Med 1934 211 993 1941 224 170 and 1947 228 91
- 7 BARKER N W NYGAARD K K WALTERS W AND IRIESTEELLY J T Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1940 15 769 1941 16 1 1 and 33
- 8 a) FINE J AND SEARS J B Ann Surg 1941 114 501
b) SEARS J B New England J Med 1941 224 108
- 9 LEBICHE R AND JUNG A J Chir 1931 37 481
- 10 OCHSNER A AND DEBAKEY M Surg 1939 5 491
- 11 a) IABAT G Regional Anesthesia Philadelphia Saunders 1938
b) WHITE J C J A M A 1930 III 1307
c) OCHSNER A AND DEBAKEY M J A M A 1940 114 117
d) DETAKATS G Surg Clin North America 1942 22 199
e) HOWANS J Circulatory Diseases of the Extremities New York Macmillan 1939
- 12 SACK AND MENBERT Quoted by TEDECHI (13)

- 13 TEDESCHI C *Atti Acc Sci Med Nat Ferrara* 1937
- 14 a) DETAKATS G In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
b) BOCK H E *Zeit exp Med* 1934 92 78^o
- 15 CHAPMAN L M AND ASMUSSEN I J *Clin Investigation* 1942 21 39
- 16 WATERON G H LONG C H AND GILES E J *Surg* 1943 14 519
- 17 TRENDLENBURG F *Beitr klin Chir* 1891 7 193
- 18 a) LEWIS T AND DRURY A N *Heart* 1923 10 301
b) PRICE G H *Lancet* 1937 (1) 232 206
- 19 a) ELKIN D C *Mo Conc Cardio Dis* 1943 11 1^o
b) BARBER J M AND YATER W M M *Ann District of Columbia* 194^o 11 439
c) REID M R AND MCGUIRE J *Ann Surg* 1935 108 643
- 20 MICHELAZZI A M *Fisiopatologia e Clinica della Circolazione Venosa* Turin Rosenberg and Selher 1937
- 21 LAZZANE E D *Modificações de Forma do Electrocardiograma* Sao Paulo Gráfica da Imprensa 194^o
- 22 TAQUINI A AND SUÁREZ J R E *Medicina* 1945 5 109
- 23 EDWARDS H A AND LEVINE H D *Arch Int Med* 1952 90 1
- 24 a) STARR A *et al J A M A* 194^o 118 1192
b) BAKER E C *Am J Roentgenol* 1947 58 603
- 25 a) LOEW L AND HIRSCH E J A M A 1947 133 1263
b) ALLEN E V J A M A 1947 135 15
- 26 MASSELL T B AND KRAUS A R *Angiology* 1950 1 150

Borderline Syndromes of Cardiology

The Effort Syndrome and the Athletic Heart

The observation of cardiac failure after effort led to the description of a so-called effort syndrome which was attributed to the effect of severe strain on a normal cardiovascular apparatus. It was observed later that the heart feels the effect of muscular exercise only indirectly because of increased venous return or increased peripheral resistance. Therefore two possible mechanisms may cause heart failure:

a) An alteration of the normal regulation which prevents excessive increase of venous and arterial pressures and which increases the coronary flow in proportion to the work of the heart.

b) A latent myocardial or coronary insufficiency which is revealed by the strain.

The first possibility occurs mostly in cases of neurocirculatory asthenia (see below) and in people with endocrine and autonomic disturbances. The second possibility is a common event and is a symptomatic manifestation of heart disease.

Prolonged and excessive athletic strain may cause a *slight enlargement of the heart*. This fact is usually associated with sinus bradycardia and slight hypotension with low diastolic and large pulse pressures. These phenomena are found not only in athletes but also in animals trained for racing (race horses, race and hunting dogs) (1).

Previously impaired hearts may be further damaged by exercise and may fail. The paramount importance of myocardial and coronary efficiency is revealed by the not unusual observation of valvular lesions in athletes who do not complain of any symptoms (2).

A lesion of the myocardium may be due to infection. For this reason sore throats, cold or grippe should not be disregarded by athletes and above all by those who have valvular lesions.

The strain of *military life* can be compared to that of athletics. The same possibility of failing heart due to myocardial or coronary lesion and the same frequent episodes caused by neurocirculatory asthenia occur in both. It is apparent that when a soldier or an athlete becomes older the probability of coronary and myocardial lesions becomes greater.

Neurocirculatory Asthenia (3-6)

Neurocirculatory asthenia is a clinical syndrome which may occur alone or may complicate other diseases, including all other cardiovascular syndromes.

CAUSE AND MECHANISM

The syndrome is somewhat more common in females than in males in peacetime but the ratio is inverted in wartime because of combat strain. It may occur at any age but is more frequent in young adults. It is favored by occupations requiring prolonged concentrated and anxious attention or frequent physical strain, especially if an element of danger is involved. Tall, slender individuals are more prone than others to the syndrome.

The mechanism of origin is only incompletely understood. It has been suggested that an imbalance of the autonomic nervous system is responsible for the severe reactions which may follow slight provocation. Infections, physical exhaustion, nervous prostration or anxiety may be accompanied or followed by neurocirculatory asthenia.

with symptoms which seem out of proportion to the original cause.

Evidence has been obtained that the respiratory disturbances are not caused by disease or abnormality of the heart, lungs, or blood, that they influence cardiac dynamics and are of psychogenic or neurogenic origin (3c). The dull precordial pain seems to be caused by the particular type of respiration of these patients who predominantly use the intercostal muscles.

The possibility that most of the disturbances of neurocirculatory asthenia are caused by a *hypothalamic dysfunction* has been suggested (3f).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The most common symptoms are the following: *dyspnea*, often associated with *sighing respiration* and caused by effort, *palpitation*, *precordial pain or ache*, seldom radiating to the left arm, *dizziness*, and occasionally *syncope*. With these symptoms is associated a particular *sensation of exhaustion* which is more severe in the early morning and is increased both by effort and excitement. Nervousness, tremor, sweating, and headache may be present.

The sighing respiration may be so severe as to cause *hyperventilation* which is followed by dizziness or even by tetany. This may cause depression or inversion of the T wave in lead 3. Many electrocardiographic abnormalities have been described but none of them seems typical.

Changes of the T wave in precordial leads from the left side of the chest may be present. These have been attributed to increased tonus of either the sympathetic or the vagus nerve, a fact which can be ascertained by means of an *atropine* and an *ergotamine test* (3g, h).

Tachycardia is often present. There may be flushing of the face, cold moist hands, and at times a *slight increase of blood pressure*.

The basal metabolic rate, the x-ray, and the electrocardiogram usually give normal

findings with the possible exception of ECG changes due to hyperventilation. However, extreme prolongation of the P-R interval has been described in certain cases (10).

COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

The syndrome may last for a variable period and may recur when the conditions which favor it occur again. The symptoms may last for months, years, or the entire life span.

The average duration of life is long and prognosis is good.

DIAGNOSIS

Many of these patients are erroneously diagnosed as tubercular, thyroid, or cardiac patients. However, a correct diagnosis is reached sooner or later because of the clinical evolution.

The *hyperventilation index* is the ratio of breath holding ability after forced respiration to that before forced inspiration. This index is within normal limits in neurocirculatory asthenia (13 to 213). With cardiac dyspnea the ratio is always below 13 (8).

TREATMENT

Treatment is based on reassurance, physical and mental rest, and reeducation. The patient should adopt a program of useful activity not requiring a high amount of energy. Thus, complete inertia and the establishment of an irreversible trend may be prevented.

Symptomatic treatment may be useful in many cases: sedation for some patients, circulatory stimulation for others, and autonomic depression for most. *Bellergal* (35) seems particularly effective (13).

Anxiety Neurosis and Cardiac Neurosis (7)

Anxiety neurosis is an illness with peculiar symptoms of irritability, apprehension, and fear, and a *sense of tension*. The fear may be

directed toward one of the involved organs so that the patient fears 'choking', 'a stroke' or 'a heart attack'.

Cardiac neurosis is a term applied to a) noncardiac patients in whom cardiac symptoms predominate or b) cardiac patients with symptoms out of proportion to the disease.

In the first case there is an anxiety neurosis with additional psychic complications in the second an hysterical elaboration exaggerates the disturbances.

The patient may complain of the following subjective symptoms:

a) *Fullness, soreness, oppression, ache or pain in the precordial area.* This is usually located in the region of the cardiac apex; it is frequently of short duration and without radiation; it is seldom related to exercise.

b) *Tingling or painful sensations in the left arm.*

c) *Palpitation* frequently due to emotion at times not related to any apparent cause.

d) *Effort dyspnea* with or without sighing respiration. This frequently disappears after prolonged exertion.

c) *Vertigo or syncope*

The findings are usually limited to slight tachycardia (more seldom bradycardia), occasional premature beats and slight increase or decrease of blood pressure.

Studies made during World War II pointed out that cardiac neurosis is a syndrome which may accompany anxiety states, hysteria, neurotic depressions and (seldom) schizophrenia. It is now widely admitted that *neurocirculatory asthenia* is a special form of cardiac neurosis.

Diagnosis of these forms is sometimes difficult. As evident neurotic phenomena may mask real heart disease, summary exclusion of cardiac disease because the patient is a neurotic should be avoided. On the other hand a neurotic may simulate heart disease and only a careful study reveals that no such disease is present.

Treatment depends on the severity of the neurosis which can be determined by considering duration, crippling effect and acceptance by the patient. Treatment is psychiatric but can frequently be done by a general practitioner. Medical or physical therapy can be used if necessary for its suggestive influence. The physician must create the impression that he knows the diagnosis, understands the illness and may be able to cure it.

Dextrocardia (12)²

Dextrocardia consists of the complete inversion in the position of the heart within the thorax. The abnormality is congenital and may have three different types (fig 301).

1) There is a *situs inversus totalis* all organs of the body are on the opposite side in comparison with the usual position. All functions are developed in a perfectly normal way and no symptoms are present.

² The term *dextrocardia* has been used both in cases where the heart was displaced toward the right and in those having a congenital anomaly so that the longitudinal axis is toward the right. The term should be reserved for the latter.

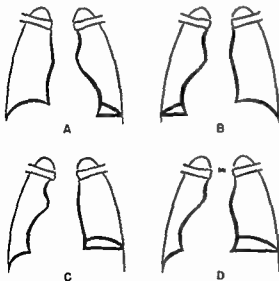


FIG 301 Different types of dextrocardia. A normal heart. B situs inversus totalis. C inverted heart, normal abdominal organs. D inverted heart, normal abdominal aorta, persistent left aortic arch.

X ray examination shows a mirror image picture of the heart with the apex situated to the right and the aortic arch also lying on the right side. The stomach is on the right, the cecum on the left, etc.

The electrocardiogram is typical; all waves are inverted in lead I, leads 2 and 3 change places. This picture is called a mirror image electrocardiogram (fig. 302). An upright ventricular complex or a positive P wave in lead I have been found in some cases.

2) The abdominal organs are in the normal position; on the contrary, the heart is in the opposite position from the norm and has an inversion of its chambers and vessels. In other words, the atrial and ventricular chambers placed on the right of the heart are the equivalent of a normal left atrium and left ventricle because they receive the blood from the lungs, are separated by a bicuspid valve, and send their blood into the aorta.

This type of abnormality is usually associated with other congenital malformations, but occasional cases without septal defects or stenosis are described. These patients seem to have a tendency toward rheumatic or arterio-sclerotic lesions of the heart and toward bronchiectasis.

Different varieties are determined by the association with various congenital malformations, including the tetralogy of Fallot, persistence of the right aortic arch, and transposition of the large vessels. In some cases, as the judgment of what is right and what is left is absolutely arbitrary, because no indication is given by either the abdominal organs or the large vessels, discussion may arise on the interpretation of the structural abnormality. Whenever a patient has an inversion of all organs except the heart, he should also be included in this type; it is apparent, however, that the term *situs inversus with levocardia* should be used. The x ray may show that the aorta is either on the right or on the left. The electrocardiogram may or may not have the mirror image type.

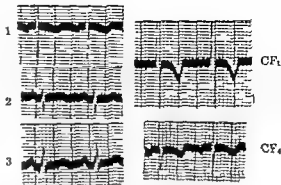


FIG. 302. Mirror image electrocardiogram (From Katz's *Electrocardiography*, Courtesy of the author and Lea & Febiger.)

3) There is a normal relationship of the cardiac chambers to each other and to the large vessels, but the cardiac apex is toward the right. These patients frequently have associated lesions like persistent bicuspid valve of the right AV opening, septal defects, pulmonary stenosis, or persistent right aortic arch. The abnormality mainly consists of the fact that the heart has rotated around its longitudinal axis so that the left ventricle is anterior and the right is posterior, forming the apex. While the x ray reveals the abnormality, the electrocardiogram has no mirror image type but only right axis deviation.

A physical sign presented by cases of dextrocardia is also found in cases of displacement of the heart toward the right. It consists of possible splitting of the 2nd sound at the right of the sternum (11).

Normal Pregnancy (5)

It has been known for a long time that pregnancy imposes a burden upon the circulatory apparatus of the mother. This is explained by the fact that all metabolic requirements of the fetus are met through functional changes of the maternal circulation.

It is important to know that this burden increases slowly in the early part of pregnancy, rapidly from the 5th to the 8th

month and *decreases* during the last month of pregnancy. This last phase is partly associated with changes of position of the uterus and partly with cessation of growth of the fetus but has not been completely explained.

The most important changes occurring during pregnancy are

a) *Increase of the circulating blood volume* from 10 to 100 per cent (average 50 per cent) in response to greater demands for nourishment and oxygen. The increase is greater than accounted for by increase in body mass. Plasma volume increases more than blood volume. Tendency to retain sodium and water is probably due to endocrine changes.⁸⁰

b) *Increased cardiac output* (from 40 to 50 per cent)

c) *Increased oxygen consumption* which is proportionately less than that in section b

d) *Normal or increased velocity of blood flow* (a shorter circulation time is frequently found)

e) *Normal or decreased arteriovenous oxygen difference*

f) *Increase of diastolic and pulse pressure* marked tibial hypertension

g) *Moderate increase of heart rate* (from 12 to 28 per minute)

h) *Normal venous pressure in the arm* but moderately increased venous pressure in the leg the latter may reach 30 cm water

i) *Normal vital capacity*

It is likely that pregnancy decreases cardiac reserve.

The increased work of the heart is responsible for a series of signs and symptoms.

Exertional dyspnea, palpitation and precordial pain are common. The pulse is *colder* and may be *irregular* because of premature beats. Attacks of paroxysmal atrial tachycardia are not unusual. There are active pulsations of the jugular veins. There may be vascular signs simulating those of

aortic insufficiency (page 238). The 2nd pulmonic sound is loud. There may be an *apical systolic murmur* or a *systolic murmur over the pulmonic or the aortic area*, or both. A *triple rhythm* (page 370) frequently occurs.

The systolic murmur may appear as early as the 2nd month and last through the puerperium. It is markedly influenced by changes of position.

The rise of the diaphragm places the heart in a more horizontal position, a fact which gives the impression of an enlargement on percussion and x-ray.

X-ray reveals an increase in the normal lung markings.

The electrocardiogram may present left axis deviation and frequently an inverted T₂. There may be a deep Q₁ and an inversion of P₂ is not unusual (fig. 303).

Special diets are advised in normal pregnancy. If the pregnant woman has congenital or rheumatic heart disease the danger of subacute bacterial endocarditis should be considered. Prevention of this complication is obtained by injecting penicillin before and after delivery. Repeated blood cultures should be made after delivery in order to avoid late diagnosis of this fearful complication.

The Normal Heart in Old Age (6)

It has been known for a long time that death from gradual decay of the organism is rare and may even be nonexistent. The main cause of death in the aged is represented by cardiovascular diseases.

The pulse rate of the aged increases slightly above 60. The carotid sinus reflex becomes more active with age.

Mean blood pressure tends to decrease and pulse pressure to increase with old age. However the frequent occurrence of benign renal arterio sclerosis results in a large percentage of cases having moderate hypertension with a systolic pressure between 150 and 170.

Cardiac output is usually normal in basal

* It is known that estrogenic and androgenic hormones are retained in the body. Estrogens, thyroid and a brain changes are probable.

conditions a fact which is no index of the cardiac ability to increase its work under stress

Vital capacity decreases rapidly in the aged *Venous pressure* is normal *circulation time* tends to increase but remains within the upper limits of normal The *velocity of the pulse wave* is increased

The *size of the heart* is not increased by the effect of age therefore any definite increase is a sign of heart disease

The *heart sounds* are decreased in intensity a fact which is often due to emphysema Variations of the heart sounds are possible and have the same meaning as in younger people

A *low grade systolic murmur* over the mitral or aortic area is a frequent occurrence and does not indicate an important lesion A *loud systolic murmur* is on the contrary a sign of dilatation of the left ventricle (apical murmur) or calcific aortic stenosis (aortic murmur)

The *heart rhythm* is usually normal However paroxysmal atrial fibrillation or flutter occur more frequently than in younger individuals *Chronic atrial fibrillation* even lasting for decades is possible

The *sedimentation rate* rises with the age so that values up to 57 mm per minute (Rourke-Frøstene method) may be normal above the age of 50

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM

The ECG may be entirely normal Left axis deviation is frequent and may be associated with *Q_r* and inverted *T_r* A slight increase in the duration of P R and QRS is normal in the aged so that it may slightly exceed the upper figures of normal (P R 0.20" QRS 0.10")

PHONOCARDIOGRAM

The heart sounds may seem absolutely normal in the aged A prolongation of both the 1st over the apex and the 2nd over the aorta is common The vibrations of a systolic murmur are frequently recorded

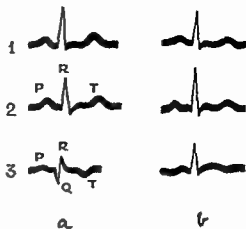


FIG. 303 Changes of the electrocardiogram in pregnancy and during pregnancy and after delivery (Courtesy of Dr. I. Chavez)

X RAY

The position of the heart tends to be more horizontal the contour of the left ventricle more prominent The aorta becomes more curved and may seem dilated Calcifications may be seen in the aorta the heart valves the valvular rings and the coronary arteries

It should be emphasized that rheumatic lesion may occur at any age resulting in valvular defects bacterial endocarditis is by no means rare in the aged and may be difficult to recognize (page 206)

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 a) LUISADA A A MALTNER H AND WEIZ L Arch Pediat 1941 58 562
- b) LUISADA A A WEISS L AND HANSMAN H W Cardiol 1944 8 63
- 2 WHITE I D Heart Disease New York Macmillan 1941 Also in Nelson L and Leaf Medicine New York Vol 10 1935
- 3 a) DeCOSTA J M Am J Med Sci 18 1 61 1"
- b) LEWIS T The Soldier's Heart and the Effort Syndrome New York Hoeber 1913
- c) WOOD I Brit M J 1941 1 "6"
- d) OPPENHEIMER B S Bull New York Acad Med 1941 17 1"
- e) WHITE I D Mo Clin Cardiovasc Dis 1941 11 1"
- f) FRIEDMAN M War Med 1944 8 221 Also Am Heart J 1945 30 3 4 5 and 50"

- g) WENDROS M H *Am Heart J* 1944 28 549
- h) LOGUE R B HANON J F AND KNIGHT W A *Am Heart J* 1944 28 574
- 4 a) ARDOTT M L In *Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine* New York Nelson 1945
- b) BROWN J W *Congenital Heart Disease* London J Bale Publ 1933
- 5 a) HAMILTON B I AND THOMSON K J *The Heart in Pregnancy and the Child bearing age* Boston Little Brown and Co 1941
- b) CHAVEZ I *Enfermedades del Coraon — Cirugia y Embaraon* Mexico Colegio Nacional 1945
- c) PAROLI G *Riv Ital Ginec* 1937 6 5
- 6 a) STIEGLITZ F J *New England J Med* 1941 225 247 *Am Geriatric Medicine* Philadelphia Stunder 1943
- b) MASTER A M MARAS H H AND DOCK S J A M A 1943 26 11
- c) LEVITT G *Am Heart J* 1939 18 692
- d) WHITE P D AND BLAND J F J A M A 1941 116 2001
- e) FREDERICK A S AND LEWIS H D *New England J Med* 1944 231 731
- 7 BADAL D W *Mo Conc Cardiovascular Dis* 1951 20 No 10
- 8 FRIEDMAN M I *Arch on Med* 1947 9 233
- 9 MILLS H H AND COBB S *New England J Med* 1951 245 711
- 10 SILVERMAN J J AND GOODMAN R D *Am Heart J* 1951 41 155
- 11 CONTRERAS VIDELA J *Rev Arch Card* 1949 16 306
- 12 a) PALTALF R *Wien Klin Woch* 1901 II 1032
- b) JONES H W *Brit M J* 1924 1 14
- c) ROELFF H *Wien Arch inn Med* 1940 19 505
- d) HELLMER H *Fortschr ad Geb Roentgenstr* 1935 III 591
- e) TALLSIEG H *Congenital Malformations of the Heart* New York Commonwealth Fund 1947
- f) BURCHELL H R AND ILCH H G *Am Heart J* 1952 44 196
- 13 SCHIMERT G *Am Heart J* 1953 46 176

Associated and Complex Heart Diseases

Most of the syndromes described in the previous chapters were due to relatively simple lesions of the heart. However several frequent associations have been already mentioned. They are:

a) *Rheumatic carditis*. This causes lesion of the endocardium, myocardium and pericardium; there may be lesion of the coronary arteries, the pleura and the peripheral arteries. Valvular defects, myocardial scars and sometimes pericardial adhesions result from the acute lesions.

b) *Luetic cardioaortitis*. The initial lesion starts in the aorta causing aortitis, possibly aortic aneurysm and narrowing of the coronary mouths. It spreads to the aortic valves and causes aortic insufficiency, sometimes followed by mitral insufficiency. Myocardial lesions are frequent, mediastinal and pericardial lesions are less common. The patient may present a complex syndrome where the signs of aortic aneurysm are complicated by those of cardiac and mediastinal lesions.

c) *Arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease*. There may be association of aortic atherosclerosis, calcification of the aortic valves resulting in stenosis and coronary heart disease. The latter may cause myocardial fibrosis, bundle branch block and more rarely AV block. Pericardial adhesions and renal sclerosis may also be present.

d) *Bacterial and rheumatic endocarditis*. The association of these two processes has been mentioned. When both occur in patients having either rheumatic valvular lesions or congenital malformations the clinical picture may become singularly complex.

e) *A tubercular or rheumatic polyserositis* may cause a lesion of the pleura, peri-

cardium and peritoneum which, in the first case may be associated with active tuberculosis of the lungs, the spleen or the liver; in the second it may be associated with valvular defects.

Even more complex associations are possible due to extension and superimposition of various diseases.

1) *patient with rheumatic heart disease and valvular defects* may suffer from the effects of various new lesions:

a) Hypertension and hypertensive heart disease.

b) Hyperthyroidism.

c) Aortic atherosclerosis.

d) Diffuse myocarditis due to bacterial or viral disease.

e) Coronary atherosclerosis (9, 10, 12).

f) Luetic aortitis.

Coronary arterio sclerosis is less dangerous than in nonrheumatic patients because of better-developed collateral circulation.

In spite of previous assertions that rheumatic lesions of the mitral valve are never associated with aortic insufficiency of luetic nature (1), such an association is possible and such cases were repeatedly observed (2, 7). However clinical recognition of the cause of each lesion may be impossible. Still a correct diagnosis may be reached.

a) If a patient with an aortic aneurysm and aortic insufficiency has a loud diastolic rumble over the mitral valve (and a relative stenosis can be excluded).

b) If a patient has a double mitral defect and aortic insufficiency but the aortic murmur appeared later and there is knowledge of lues.

c) If a patient has an aortic aneurysm and aortic insufficiency but there is a history of rheumatic disease.

1 patient with luetic aortitis with or without aortic insufficiency, may suffer from effects of different lesions

a) There may be atherosclerosis of the aorta fibrosis of the mitral valve or both. There may be incomplete rupture of the aorta favored by the sclerosis. There frequently is coronary arteriosclerosis.

b) Hypertension and hypertensive heart disease or, on the contrary, luetic nephrosis with hypotension may complicate the clinical picture.

c) Different myocardial lesions may favor heart failure.

d) Either rheumatic or bacterial endocarditis may complicate the picture; the former often results in mitral stenosis.

Differential criteria make diagnosis possible (11).

1 patient with a congenital heart disease may suffer because of different possibilities:

a) Rheumatic endocarditis may cause a Lutembacher's syndrome in a patient having only a patent foramen ovale; it may cause a syndrome of Fallot in a patient having an Eisenmenger complex.

b) A luetic or rheumatic lesion of the aortic valve may cause a singularly complex clinical picture in a patient with ventricular septal defect. Various associated valvular lesions may complicate the clinical picture of a patient with congenital heart disease (8).

c) Myocardial and pericardial lesions, resulting in complex disturbances of the cardiac rhythm and in pericardial adhesions may occur in patients with congenital heart diseases (3).

d) Bacterial endocarditis is a frequent complication.

1 patient with chronic cor pulmonale may have essential hypertension; the resulting picture is singularly complex.

There are numerous clinical cases where arterial hypertension, luetic aortitis, subacute myocarditis or myocardial fibrosis, coronary arteriosclerosis, hyperthyroidism and vitamin deficiency are associated. It is not possible in some of them to ascertain

which of the different etiological agents is responsible for each lesion.

Exceptional examples of complex heart disease were described at the Massachusetts General Hospital (4, 5, 8). The following lesions were found at autopsy in one case (4):

a) Congenital heart disease (interventricular septal defect and bicuspid aortic valve).

b) Rheumatic heart disease (aortic stenosis).

c) Luetic heart disease (aortitis).

d) Bacterial endocarditis implanted on both the congenital and the rheumatic lesions.

Another case from the same hospital showed (5):

a) Rheumatic heart disease (insufficiency of both the mitral and the aortic valves, mitral stenosis).

b) Atherosclerosis of the aorta and coronary arteries.

c) Thrombosis of the anterior descending branch of the left coronary artery (anterior myocardial infarction).

d) mural thrombus in the left atrium.

e) Embolism of the axillary artery (gangrene).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. GALLAVARDIN I. AND CO WORKERS
a) *Lancet Med* 1913/1914 15 170
b) *Lyon Med* 1915 139 727 1917 139 171 and 1930 145 341
c) *J Med Lyon* 1937 III 483
2. WEISS S. Personal communication.
3. BATTRO A. AND CO WORKERS. *Rev Arg Card* 1927 3 6 and 197 and 1931 11 33.
4. Case 27261. *New England J Med* 1911 274 1108.
5. Case 30431. *New England J Med* 1911 231 537.
6. SMITH J. R. *et al*. *Am J Med* 1901 10 3.
7. Case 34101. *New England J Med* 1918 239 331.
8. GARDNER F. I. AND WHITE I. D. *Ann Int Med* 1919 31 1003.
9. LAMB A. I. AND LYONS H. A. *Brooklyn Hosp J* 1900 7 16.
10. ACEVE D. *et al*. *Arch Int Card Mexico* 1919 III 497.
11. CHASOFF J. AND SILVER A. *Am Heart J* 1951 42 809.

Acute Cardiorespiratory Attacks

Cardiac patients may present attacks of respiratory distress which are connected with their cardiovascular disturbance. Three main types may occur

- a) Paroxysmal dyspnea (once called cardiac asthma)
 - b) Paroxysmal pulmonary edema
 - c) Paroxysmal periodic respiration
- Paroxysmal dyspnea and pulmonary edema differ in some clinical manifestations but have similar causes and a closely related mechanism

CAUSES

Both *paroxysmal dyspnea* and *paroxysmal pulmonary edema* may be caused by the following diseases

- A Diseases of heart and vessels
 - Luetic heart disease (aortic insufficiency, aortitis, aortic aneurysm)
 - Rheumatic heart disease (mitral insufficiency or stenosis, aortic insufficiency)
 - Coronary heart disease (especially coronary occlusion)
 - Hypertensive heart disease (essential or secondary hypertension, uremia)
 - Congenital heart disease (coarctation of aorta)
 - Shock
- B Diseases or lesions of central nervous system
 - Trauma to the skull
 - Subarachnoid hemorrhage
 - Cerebral hemorrhage
 - Emboli in thrombosis or alveolitis
 - Encephalitis
 - Meningitis
 - Poliomyelitis
 - Tetanus
- C Diseases or lesions of respiratory system
 - Pneumonia
 - Drowning
 - Strangulation
 - Inhalation of irritant or toxic gases
 - Pulmonary emboli (rare)
 - Thoracentesis
 - Trauma to the chest
- D Allergy
 - Angioneurotic edema and edema of the glottis
 - Serum sickness
 - Injections of gold preparations
- E Miscellaneous
 - Thyroid crises
 - Beriberi
 - Heart disease
- F Stimulation of following viscera or nerves
 - Dilatation of esophagus
 - Stomach or gall

bladder. Emptying of distended bladder or serous cavities

- G Surgical and obstetrical causes
 - Pregnancy especially in cases with mitral lesions or eclampsia
 - Following transfusions or infusion especially in surgical anemias or cardiac patients
 - Manipulation of splanchnic ganglia
- H Toxic phenomena
 - Thiourea
 - Iodine
 - Mercuric chloride
 - Chronic alcoholism
 - Morphine poisoning

It is apparent that paroxysmal dyspnea and pulmonary edema may or may not be connected with a cardiovascular disturbance

Periodic respiration may occur in the following cases: a) Malignant hypertension with or without coma; b) Essential hypertension; c) Aortitis and aortic insufficiency; (d) Coronary heart diseases; e) Congestive failure; f) Drug intoxication (chiefly morphine); g) After surgical interventions with deep anesthetics

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Paroxysmal Dyspnea

The patient usually suffers from these attacks during the night. He goes to bed in good spirits and sleeps well for some time; suddenly he is awakened by a nightmare and feels a terrifying oppression in the chest while respiration becomes difficult and strained. The patient sits up in bed (*orthopnea*) and may bend forward. The respiration is slightly accelerated but is deep, strained and may be *wheezing*. Profuse perspiration, congestion of the face and restlessness are common. Irritation of the throat, dry, nonproductive cough and precordial pain may be present (fig. 304).

The *pulse* is regular and somewhat rapid



FIG 304 Paroxysmal dyspnea

(90-110) The *blood pressure* is usually higher than before the attack.

Examination of the chest reveals a distention of the pulmonary margins and a high pitched sound on percussion (*functional emphysema*). The respiratory murmur is harsh and may be wheezing. *Dry crackling rales* may be present.

Some cases show a *respiratory tracing* with prolonged expiration. In others the tracing reveals periodic variations which represent the initial stage of a Cheyne Stokes respiration (see below).

Roentgen ray examination of the thorax shows moderate congestion of the hilar vessels.

Increased blood volume; decreased speed of

circulation of the blood in the lungs and decreased vital capacity have been demonstrated during the attack (10a).

Pulmonary Edema

An attack of pulmonary edema may occur at any time (10b). Precordial oppression and pain, restlessness, weakness, and dry non-productive cough may precede the attack. If this occurs at night a nightmare usually precedes it.

The initial manifestations are similar to those of paroxysmal dyspnea. However after a few minutes gurgling begins in the throat and the patient repeatedly emits a white, yellowish or pink foam. This may be scanty or abundant and in extreme cases

may attain a volume of 1000 cc within 30 to 60 minutes. Vomiting may occur. Extreme restlessness, profuse sweating, paroxysms of suffocation with cyanosis and loss of urine are frequent.

Except in the attacks which are connected with myocardial infarction (usually) and mitral stenosis (sometimes) the pulse is full and rapid and the blood pressure is normal or high; the latter is frequently higher than before the attack.

The physical findings are similar to those of paroxysmal dyspnea, with one important exception: there are *innumerable moist rales* of different size, from the minute alveolar rales to the gurgling caused by the foam in the trachea. The alveolar rales are frequently more abundant at the bases.

The temperature is normal during the attack but may be higher after it (read sorption of proteins from the lungs).

The sputum has a chemical composition which is different from that of a transudate.¹¹

The roentgen ray study of the thorax reveals string like or rounded shadows which predominate in that part of the lung which has the most active ventilation (12).

In general the attack of pulmonary edema lasts from 20 minutes to several hours. Occasionally the attack may last several days. When the duration and distribution of the edema is not typical the following names have been used:

a) *Abortive pulmonary edema*. The entire attack lasts only a few minutes and disappears spontaneously.

¹¹ The data found by two different authors are:

Total albumin (per mille) 2.5-3.0

Albumin 1.9-2.5

Globulin 3-8.6

Specific gravity 1.010-1.015

Water (per cent) 96.96.8

Urea (from $\frac{1}{5}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ that of the blood)

K, Cl, Na very similar to blood content

Ca about 20 per cent less than in the blood

The fluid is similar to that of angioneurotic edema, allergic coryza and the inflammatory effusions of large serosal cavities.

b) *Fulminating pulmonary edema*. The patient dies before the arrival of the physician or during transportation to the hospital.

c) *Protracted pulmonary edema*. This type is usually connected with myocardial infarction or a cerebrovascular accident. The attack may last from many hours to many days (17).

d) *Unilateral pulmonary edema*. This is extremely rare. It is usually associated with pathology of one lung or a unilateral lesion of the nervous system. One case observed by the writer occurred after a multiple brain embolism that involved the thalamus and the hypothalamus of one side (ipsilateral edema).

The end of the attack is marked by rapid improvement of the general condition and a decrease of the sputum. A certain number of rales in the chest may continue for some time even after relief of the dyspnea.

Periodic Breathing (Cheyne Stokes Respiration)

Periodic respiration consists of periodic variations in the amplitude of the respiratory movements. When the disturbance reaches its extreme degree the amplitude varies from complete *apnea* to *hyperpnea* with ample noisy and rapid respiratory acts. In one variety the transitions between the phases of apnea and dyspnea occur *gradually*; in another they occur *abruptly*. The disturbance is recognized by taking a graphic tracing or by applying the hand over the patient's chest.

In general periodic respiration occurs during coma, narcotic depression or spontaneous sleep. However, it may take place in the daytime during normal or seminormal consciousness. Myosis, bradycardia, slight hypertension, oppression and exceptionally heart block occur during the phase of apnea. Sometimes this is accompanied by loss of consciousness which may simulate normal sleep.

The respiration becomes noisy and may be

accompanied by moaning during the phase of dyspnea

MECHANISM

Paroxysmal Dyspnea

Paroxysmal dyspnea should not be confused with the chronic dyspnea of cardiac patients. It has a sudden onset and frequently a sudden end.

Sudden dyspnea may be elicited in experimental animals by the following procedures:

a) *Chemical stimulation* of the respiratory center or the carotid bodies. This may be obtained by asphyxia, anoxia, or acidosis.

b) *Mechanical stimulation* of the receptors of the pulmonary vessels (hypertension of the lesser circulation, embolism) and of those of the large veins (rapid infusion, increased venous return).

c) *Decreased pressure in the region of the carotid sinus and aortic arch* (sudden drop of arterial blood pressure as in vascular collapse or shock).

d) *Stimulation of various sensory nerves.*

e) *Changes of pressure in the bronchi and alveoli* and stimulation of the mucosa of the respiratory passages.

It is apparent that chemical and reflex stimulation of the respiratory center or stimulation of the carotid bodies may play a role in the mechanism of paroxysmal dyspnea of cardiac patients.

One theory attributed these attacks to acute left ventricular failure with accumulation of the blood in the pulmonary vessels (19). Another theory attributed them to increased venous return, this might be primary (merit drink (15), displacement of water from tissues to blood during the night (16), gravitational changes (17)) or secondary (initial hyperpnea due to dreams, reflexes, deficient pulmonary ventilation or fall of blood pressure). A third theory admits a purely reflex mechanism (18).

A vicious circle is admitted by Harrison (15b). The patient has when awake considerable pulmonary congestion with de-

creased vital capacity and reflex stimulation of the respiratory center. During sleep multiple unpleasant stimuli reach a high intensity and wake up the patient. Then ventilation is increased, a fact which favors a greater venous return and a greater pulmonary congestion. The subsequent course depends upon predominance of these elements over others which tend to relieve the attack or vice versa.

Acute dilatation of the pulmonary vessels often occurs, it is caused by increased flow and not by increased resistance.

Reflexes originating in the left ventricle in the pulmonary artery, in the large veins and in the aortic and carotid receptors seem to have a paramount importance. The primary cause of these reflexes is represented by severe distention of the large vessels and the heart.

The fact that during sleep the autonomic reflexes are very active may explain the frequent though not constant occurrence of these attacks during the night.

While distention of the carotid sinus receptors causes apnea, stimulation of the carotid body receptors causes dyspnea (22). This might indicate the involvement of chemical elements (anoxia, acidosis).

Pulmonary Edema

The classic theory of pulmonary edema explained this syndrome as caused by an acute failure of the left ventricle (19). However, an equally old theory tried to explain the occurrence of the edema as an acute vasomotor crisis of the pulmonary vessels followed by transudation into the alveoli (20).

Experimental pulmonary edema has been caused consistently by the following procedures:

Ligation of the aortic arch (19a, 21). Compression (19a) or suture of the left ventricle (22a), necrosis of either the left ventricle (22b) or the right (22c). Intra-venous injection of epinephrine (23). Intra-venous infusion of physiologic solutions.

after vagotomy (24) or rapid intracarotid injection of physiologic solutions (25-45) Intratracheal infusion of hypertonic solutions or inhalation of toxic gases (5-26) Lesions of the central nervous system (26b-24d e f 27) suboccipital injection of veratrin (30) or fibrinogen plus thrombin (36-37) Injection of ammonium chloride (38-36) Hypoglycemia (39) Left ventricular strain plus epinephrin or CNS stimulation (40)

Three main factors favor pulmonary edema: a) High pressure in the pulmonary vessels b) Increased permeability of the pulmonary vessels c) Decreased osmotic pressure of the blood

Among the conclusions reached by various authors (50) the following are particularly important

Extreme irritation of the brain or the carotid body leads to direct or reflex stimulation of the sympathetic system followed by severe peripheral vasoconstriction. This leads to increased peripheral resistance with increased load of the left ventricle displacement of a large mass of blood from the small vessel and blood reverts towards the veins, increased venous return and finally filling of the lungs with a large mass of blood. Thus neurological stimulation causes increased output of the right ventricle, high pressure in the pulmonary capillaries and at the same time left ventricular strain. This mechanism may lead to pulmonary edema only if the conditions are extremely severe; it may be an important factor in hypertensive patients with left ventricular strain and even more in coronary patients with left ventricular failure.

Mitral stenosis: The outflow of blood from the lungs is impeded even in the resting state. Sympathetic stimulation caused by excitement, exertion, exposure to cold, anger or fright is followed by two phenomena: on the one hand tachycardia which shortens diastole and impairs emptying of the left atrium; on the other vasoconstriction and

redistribution of the blood with accumulation in the lungs.

Pulmonary edema of patients with hyper-tension, aortic insufficiency or aortic stenosis or following minor coronary attacks and following transfusions in surgical, obstetrical or cardiac cases: There is left ventricular strain with increase of left atrial and pulmonary venous pressures. Excitement and exposure to cold or exertion in clinical cases causes redistribution of the blood with accumulation in the lungs and acute pulmonary edema. The increased peripheral resistance may transform ventricular strain into ventricular failure.

Pulmonary edema of massive myocardial infarction: The power of the left ventricle is decreased. This leads to marked increase of left atrial and pulmonary capillary pressure if adequate venous return is maintained. Therefore severe (but not too severe) lesions of the ventricle are the most effective. A peripheral mechanism caused by cerebral ischemia, carotid sinus hypotension or carotid body hypoxia may contribute to the disturbance by causing peripheral vasoconstriction. The accumulation of blood in the lungs seems to be due to both a cardiac and a vascular mechanism.

Pulmonary edema of phosgene inhalation, drowning, strangulation, pneumonia or chronic congestive failure: In these conditions direct damage to the capillary wall and action of hypoxia on the pulmonary capillaries are the most important factors, probably through liberation of histamine. The cerebral and carotid hypoxia may contribute by causing reflex vasoconstriction.

Periodic Respiration

This type of breathing is usually explained by an interaction of changes in oxygen and CO tensions. Deep breathing reduces the CO stimulus to a level below the threshold of excitability and therefore is followed by apnea. This causes a gradually increasing accumulation of CO until breathing is resumed. The existence of a high amount of

CO explains the deep and vigorous respiratory acts during the phase of dyspnea.

The fact that periodic breathing is easily produced in decerebrated animals lead to the belief that a loss of control of the cortical center over the medullary respiratory center may be responsible for the disturbance. This loss of control may be caused by anatomical (arteriosclerosis) or functional (spasm) disturbances of the cerebral vessels and is favored by drugs (morphine) and by other conditions (sleep) which depress the cortical function (29).

In cardiac failure periodic breathing has been considered as the result of pulmonary congestion stimulating the respiratory center through afferent impulses and higher ventilation subsequent to a stage of decreased chemical stimulation of the center. A depression of the cerebral centers caused by vascular disturbance, drug action or sleep is often involved and favors the onset of this abnormal type of respiration.

More complex disturbances of the respiration including *dissociated respiration* may complicate Cheyne-Stokes respiration in cases with lesions of the nervous system (28).

TREATMENT

Paroxysmal Dyspnea

A subcutaneous injection of *morphine sulfate* (10-15 mg) is the therapy of choice. Many other drugs and physical measures decreasing venous return (aminophyllin, venesection, tourniquets, pressure respiration) are also helpful. Prophylaxis is similar to that of pulmonary edema and includes digitalization, mercurials, low sodium diet and sedation.

Pulmonary Edema

a) *Cases where blood pressure is high or normal and there is no danger of shock*

Morphine subcutaneously or intravenously (15 mg) *Sa phenobarbital* or *chloral hydrate* iv (29) *mercurials* iv *digitoxin* iv, *venesection* (300-500 cc) *dibenzamine* or *hydergine* application of *tourniquets* to

the four limbs, *pressure respiration* (31) and *spinal anesthesia* (43) are indicated. All these procedures decrease venous return and thus the pressure of the pulmonary vessels. In extremely resistant cases removal of blood from the right atrium through a venous catheter has proved superior to other method.

b) *Cases where blood pressure tends to drop and there is danger of shock*

Small doses of *morphine* (5-8 mg) can be given. *Oxygen* should be administered. The other procedures or drugs should be avoided as dangerous. The main utility will be obtained by alcohol-oxygen vapor as described below.

Antifoaming therapy. Alcohol vapor-oxygen therapy which utilizes the antifoaming action of alcohol was first tried successfully in animal experiments by the author (44). It was then applied to clinical cases. Detailed reports including those on patients with severe pulmonary edema who did not receive other forms of treatment have proved the usefulness of this method (46-48).

Because a precise etiologic diagnosis is not always immediately possible the following plan of treatment should be used: a) *Alcohol vapor therapy* should be started as soon as possible (by nasal catheter using 90 per cent alcohol in conscious patients; by mask, using 40 per cent alcohol in unconscious patients). Oxygen bubbling through alcohol is started with the flow regulated at 3 liters per minute; the flow is increased gradually up to 10 liters within the first 10 to 15 minutes. In the meantime pulse, blood pressure, auscultation of the heart, a brief history and an electrocardiogram should give a better perspective of the case so that within the first 20 minutes an adequate and precise pharmacologic or physical therapy may be started. According to the etiology of the case atropine, morphine, phenobarbital, sympatholytic drugs, heparin or other procedures may be used without interference with or discontinuation of alcohol

inhalation. In many instances these drugs are not necessary because the attack is already decreasing in severity following alcohol therapy. However *protracted pulmonary edema* is not unusual. In such severe cases alcohol therapy is continued as long as necessary (even for 12 hours) with brief intervals of rest in addition to the other procedures.

Heart failure may follow a severe attack of pulmonary edema. Digitalization will then be made following the customary rules.

Periodic Respiration

Periodic respiration is ameliorated by the intravenous injection of *aminophyllin*. If large doses of this drug fail to dilate the cerebral vessels and to improve the condition *metra-ol* should be injected in order to stimulate the respiratory center.

PREVENTION OF PAROXYSMAL CARDIORESPIRATORY ATTACKS

This is essentially a prevention of severe left ventricular strain. It is obtained by digitalization, mercurials, salt poor diet, xanthines (page 595). In hypertensive patients, sympatholytics, vasodilators or sympathectomy (page 503) are of help.

Causes of increased venous return such as exposure to cold, excitement, strenuous exertion and excess of food or drink should be avoided. Sedation is helpful. It may be done by giving *chloral hydrate* (1 gm orally), *phenobarbital* or *nembutal* at bedtime. Supper should be a small meal and at least 3 hours should elapse thereafter before retiring. Excess of fluid intake is deleterious while moderate amounts of alcohol are advisable.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 a) GALLAVARDIN I J *MéI Ivon* 1934 15 609
- b) SALOZ AND FROMMEL F *Arch Mal Coeur* 1923 18 50
- c) RIBIERRE Quoted by DOLMER
- d) DOLMER F *Arch Mal Coeur* 1906 19 791
- e) HESS L *Wien klin Woch* 1931 44 503
- 2 a) ALTSCHULE M D Personal communication (unpublished case)
- b) CHAPMAN F M DILL D H AND GRAY BIEL A *Medicine* 1939 18 167
- 3 HOCHREIN M *Arch Kreislauff* 1938 14 24
- 4 LOGRE *Oedeme Pulmonaire Infectieux* Iari Steinhil 1913
- 5 a) BRONDI Te i Catania 1903
- b) MELLI G In Frugoni's book on Pulmonary Edema (6)
- 6 FRUGONI C *L'Edema Polmonare Acuto* Rome Pozzi 1931
- 7 a) MOUTIER F *Pres e Méd* 1918 26 109
- b) ANTONINI A AND BIANCALANI A *Arch Antrop Crimin* 1977 47 747
- c) MANCUSA P *Arch Antrop Crimin* 1933 1334 Also *Arch It Bioch It* (Milan) 1934 6 89
- d) ASTUNI A *Min Med* (Turin) 1934 (1) 380
- e) GERNEZ C AND MARCHANDISE C *Gaz Hôp* 1933 106 483
- f) WEI MAN S J *Surg* 1939 6 653
- g) B TEN O *Wien klin Woch* 1931 44 1396
- 8 a) MOUTIER F *Pres e Méd* 1918 26 108
- b) LANGERON L *Pres e Méd* 1906 33 60
- c) LACBRY C AND COLLET *Gaz Hôp* 1930 108 1580
- 9 a) JONASCO T *Zeit exp Med* 1906 48 516 Also *J A M A* 1906 85 1906
- b) DANIELOPOLU D *Brit M J* 1904 2 553
- 10 a) WEISS S AND ROBB G P *J A M A* 1933 100 1441
- b) WASSERMAN S *Wien klin Woch* 1903 41 190 Also *Wien Arch klin Med* 1934 24 387
- 11 a) MELLI G In Frugoni's Book (6)
- b) BLIX G *Uppsala Lakareförenings Förhandlingar* 1929 (quoted by Melli (11a))
- 12 ZDANSKY E *Wien Arch inn Med* 1909 18 461 Also *Röntgenpraxis* 1933 5 218
- 13 STOKES *Diseases of the Heart and Lungs* Dublin Hodges and Smith 1804
- 14 HARRISON T P AND CO WORKERS *Arch Int Med* 1931 48 377 and 49 151 1932 50 690 1934 53 911 and 53 724
- 15 a) GPFINGER H VON PAPP L AND SCHWARTZ H *Das Asthma Cardiale* Berlin Springer 1904
- b) HARRISON T R *Failure of the Circulation* Baltimore The Williams & Wilkins Co 1939
- 16 a) BRUNN F *Zentr inn Med* 1908 49 873

- b) GOLLWITZER MEIER K Klin Woch 1931 10 341
- 17 WOOD F C WOLFERTH C C AND TERRELL A W Am Heart J 1937 14 255
- 18 WASSERMANN S *Neue klinische Gesichtspunkte zur Lehre vom Isthma cardiale* Berlin Springer 1926
- 19 a) WALCH W H Virch Arch Path Anat 1872 72 375
b) LIAN C Pre e Méd 1910 10 49
c) VAQUEZ H 7th Intern Meet M Sci London 1913 (5th Section)
- 20 TEISSIER J *Rapport sur l'Oedème aigu du Poumon* Congr Int Sci Med Paris Masson 1900
- 21 a) SAHLI H Arch exp Path 1880 19 433
b) KOTOWITZ CHIKOW A M Zeit exp Path 1913 13 400
c) ANTONIAZZI L Arch Sci Med (Turin) 1930 54 818
- 22 a) MONTANARI A Pathologica (Milan) 1910/1911 3 450
b) COELHO I AND ROCHETA S Ann Méd 1933 34 91
c) CATALDI G Arch Mal Coeur 1935 28 604
- 23 a) HUTCHARD AND CLAUDE Quoted by MELLI (11a)
b) JOSÉ O AND BLOCH I Bull Mem Soc Hôp Paris 1908 25 50
c) CAVINA G Pathologica (Milan) 1911 3 452
d) AYER J AND GATES F L J Exp Med 1917 26 701
e) LUISADA A A Arch exp Path Pharm 1928 132 313
f) BOGGIAN B Min Med (Turin) 1922 9 964
- 24 a) CARRION AND HALLION Ctr Soc Biol 1897 104 6 156
b) MELLI G AND CO WORKERS Iohel (ez med) 1931 38 417 Min Med 1931 (2) 419 Rev Belge Sci Med 1930 2 209
c) WARTHEH H J Arch Surg 1930 30 199
d) KRATZ F Zeit exp Path 1931 14 402
e) BRUNN I Wien med Woch 1933 83 106 Also Wien klin Woch 1933 46 967
f) FARBER S J Exper Med 1937 66 397 and 405
- 25 LUISADA A A AND SARNOFF E J Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1944 57 273
- 26 a) WINTERITZ M C AND LAMBERT H A J Exper Med 1919 30 537
- b) MAYER A AND MOREL I Bull Soc Chimie Biol 3 520
- c) IAGOUR I AND DEVRIES REILINGH D Zentr inn Med 1920 11 81
- 27 a) IRBY O *Die pathologischen Lungenveränderungen nach Lähmung der Verr* Lagt Leipzig 1877
b) WEISER G Pfueg Arch 1932 231 68
- 28 CONDORELLI L AND RECHNITZER I Wien Arch inn Med 1927 14 43
- 29 a) LUISADA A A In Frugoni's book (6)
b) LUISADA A A Riv Ital Ter (Naples) 1928 4
c) LUISADA A A Medicina 1940 11 45
d) LUISADA A A Exper Med & Surg 1943 1 22
e) LUISADA A A AND SARNOFF S J Am Heart J 1946 31 282 and 293
- 30 WICFERS C J *Physiology in Health and Disease* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1944
- 31 BARACH A L MARTIN J AND LICKMAN M Ann Int Med 1938 12 704
- 32 DRINKER C K *Pulmonary Edema and Inflammation* Cambridge Harvard Univ Press 1946
- 33 MOON A *Shock and Related (capillary Phenomena)* Oxford Univ Press 1938
- 34 WEITZER S J Am Med 1904 8 191
- 35 JARISCH A et al Klin Woch 1940 11 1440
- 36 CAMERON G R et al J Path & Bact 1949 61 375 1951 55 609
- 37 SARNOFF S J et al Circ 1957 5 51
- 38 KOENIG H AND KOENIG R Am J Physiol 1949 158 1
- 39 McRAY E N et al Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1949 71 689 1949 78 471 1950 73 568 1950 74 690
- 40 LAIN R et al Circ 1957 5 757
- 41 HARRISON W AND IREBOW A Circ 1957 5 924
- 42 AYASO D M et al Federation Proc 1950 11 11 and Am J Phys 1950 169 460
- 43 SARNOFF S J AND FARR H W The role of 1944 11 69
- 44 LUISADA A A Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1950 74 215 Also Circ 1950 2 877
- 45 LUISADA A A AND FORTINO S Circ Research 1953 1 179
- 46 LUISADA A A GOLDMANN M A AND WEYL R Circ 1950 11 363
- 47 GOLDMANN M A AND LUISADA A A Ann Int Med 1950 37 1291
- 48 GOLDMANN M A AND PRIMIANO N I Am J Obst & Gyn 1953 65 314
- 49 LUISADA A A J Am Geriatr Soc 1953 1 331

Heart Failure

Circulatory failure occurs when the blood flow of the capillaries is not adequate for the needs of the tissues. It may be *absolute* (when there is an actual inadequacy) or *relative* (when the inadequacy exists only because the needs are increased).

Circulatory failure may occur either because there is a *reduction of the circulating blood* (hemorrhage shock) or because *the capacity of the circulatory system is increased* (peripheral vasodilation). In both cases reduced venous return is responsible for the failure. However circulatory failure may be of a different type if caused by heart failure.

Heart failure is absolute if the heart has actually reduced its work. It is *relative* if the heart maintains or even increases its work, but this is inadequate in the presence of increased requirements of the tissues. Heart failure may be *acute*, *subacute* or *chronic*.

Acute heart failure is due to sudden primary or secondary disturbance of the heart. The resulting clinical picture resembles that of *shock* being revealed by signs of arterial depletion and is called *cardiogenic shock*. (page 426)

Subacute or chronic heart failure on the contrary is mostly revealed by signs and symptoms of *congestion of the venous side of the cardiovascular system*.

The clinical picture of heart failure always occurs in persons with a usual myocardium. However its appearance may be hastened and its existence revealed at an earlier stage by severe vascular or valvular lesions.

CAUSES

Heart failure may occur as the result of any diffuse lesion of the heart and of the vessels. The following classification

permits a better understanding of its mechanism.

a) *Diseases causing strain of the left ventricle* frequently also of the large arteries and the coronaries. They include arterial hypertension; atherosclerosis of the aorta and aortitis; aortic insufficiency or stenosis; mitral insufficiency; coarctation of the aorta; some cases of constrictive pericarditis and patent ductus. In all these conditions the left ventricle is hypertrophied.

b) *Disease causing strain of the right ventricle* frequently also of the pulmonary artery and the vessels of the lesser circulation. Mitral stenosis; acute or chronic cor pulmonale; patent foramen ovale and pulmonary stenosis. In all these diseases the right ventricle is hypertrophied. In mitral stenosis the left atrium participates to the strain.

c) *Diseases where the strain is felt by both sections of the heart*. Combined valvular defects; ventricular septal defect; certain atypical cases of patent ductus; arteriovenous fistulas; thyroid heart; disturbances of the rate and rhythm; diffuse myocardial fibrosis; coronary heart disease; beriberi heart; and many cases of constrictive pericarditis.

Whatever the underlying cardiovascular disease various factors may precipitate congestive failure. Among them strenuous physical exertion; emotion; exposure to cold; and overabundance of food and drink are common. Others are coronary occlusion; acute infections; rheumatic carditis; pulmonary embolism; surgical intervention; acute gall bladder colic; pregnancy; and other less frequent conditions.

Chronic vitamin and protein deficiencies

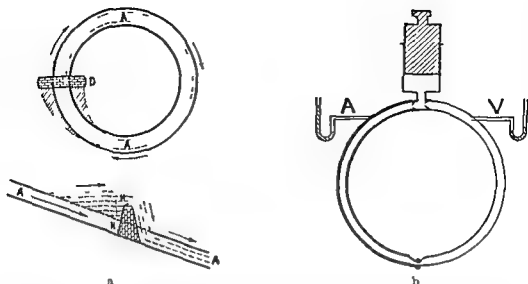


FIG 30 (a) Effect of a dam (upper) in a closed circuit (so called back pressure effect) and (lower) in a freely moving stream (HH increased level) (From Wenckebach) (b) A simple scheme of circulation. Before the pump is started a pressure of 10 mm exists throughout the system, the so called static pressure. When one pumps hard the pressure becomes 100 in A and 4 in V. Weakening of the pump increases venous pressure V and decreases arterial pressure A. Injection of fluid into the system increases venous pressure in the presence of normal arterial pressure. (From I Starr)

favor cardiac failure so does the action of several poisons. Excessive dosage or extremely prolonged action of digitalis may damage the myocardium thereby favoring failure. The extent and importance of this digitalis effect however are controversial.

MECHANISM AND TYPES OF HEART FAILURE

The circulatory apparatus is a closed system with many safety devices. The continuous motion of the blood is due to the action of four separate pumps (fig 9). As the atria have a weak action and act mainly as reservoirs two pumps actually maintain the circulation, the right and left ventricles.

A dam placed in the course of a river raises the level of the stream above the obstacle and lowers that below. In the same way, an obstacle placed in the course of a closed circuit (valvular stenosis, coarctation) raises the pressure above and decreases that in the section below (fig. 30a) (6). In such cases the increased pressure (or the larger caliber) of the chamber or vessel above the

obstacle is not due to heart failure. Thus distention of the left atrium and pulmonary vessels in mitral stenosis or of the right atrium venous system and liver in tricuspid stenosis is due to redistribution of blood and does not imply heart failure. Again the action of the obstacle on the section below is such that decreased pressure or lower output may be the result of valvular stenosis or vascular narrowing without implying that the heart is weak.

Another simple scheme of circulation includes the action of a pump and shows that when a weak action of the pump follows a stronger action a rise of venous pressure takes place (39-40) (fig. 30b).

Cardiac reserve is a clinical term which is applied to the difference between the actual work of the heart and the maximum work which it is able to perform. (1) Cardiac reserve is reduced by a) increase of cardiac work (ventricular strain) the figure of actual work is higher and nearer to the maximum possible work. b) decrease of efficiency (latent ventricular failure) the figure of

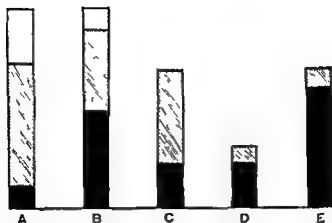


FIG 306 The concept of cardiac reserve Decrease of cardiac reserve because of exercise increased requirement or cardiac failure A normal B decrease of cardiac reserve from below in cases with valvular defects hypertension or hyperthyroidism in a stage of compensation C decrease of cardiac reserve from above in cases with myocardial or coronary disease D extremely reduced cardiac reserve in a coronary heart patient with low output failure E extremely reduced cardiac reserve in a hyperthyroid patient with high output failure Black area cardiac work at rest Stippled area cardiac reserve used during exercise White area further cardiac reserve

maximum possible work is lower and nearer to the actual work c) both (fig 306) Cardiac reserve is reduced when valvular defects vascular lesions or inefficient cardiac action require permanently increased cardiac work in the presence of latent failure

The decreased contractility of the heart may cause effects in two ways

a) In the arterial system this is revealed by reduced flow reduced pressure or both and has been called *forward failure* It corresponds to a state of arterial depletion (42)

b) In the pulmonary circulation and the venous system it is revealed by increased venous pressure and distention of the veins and liver and has been called *backward failure* It corresponds to a state of venous congestion (42)

It should be noted that these arterial and venous phenomena may be simulated by the mechanical results of valvular or vascular lesions without actual failure

The same differential concept which is implied in the definition of cardiac reserve may be applied to other cardiovascular phenomena Any cardiac lesion which causes congestion of the lungs reduces the reserve power of the lungs for accommodating a

greater amount of blood when heart failure occurs Any cardiac lesion which causes congestion of the liver reduces the reserve power of the liver for accommodating a greater amount of blood when heart failure occurs Any decreased output due to aortic stenosis reduces the reserve power of the aorta and the arterial system whenever the heart reduces its output Therefore any change in the distribution of the blood in the pressure of one of the vascular systems and in the volume of a cardiac chamber or of an artery or vein existing before heart failure sets in inevitably causes more severe results in that section system or organ because of reduced reserve power when heart failure occurs For this reason a basically similar process of cardiac failure may cause diverse clinical pictures in patients with different lesions of the heart and vessels

The observation that damage to the right heart may not be followed by increased venous congestion (7) led to admission that a long and complex chain of events connects heart failure with increased venous pressure Without changing the main concept that cardiac failure is the primary

and basic disturbance this resulted in a better evaluation of several important phenomena including, *high venous tonus* (44) and *renal retention of water and sodium* (45)

It is now admitted that *the increase of blood volume* is an important factor on the one hand in causing signs of congestion and, on the other in increasing the severity of cardiac failure. A vicious circle is created by the fact that increased blood volume is due to water and sodium retention because of renal dysfunction while this renal dysfunction is an indirect result of cardiac failure.

The retention of sodium is caused by either a) *low filtration rate* secondary to decreased renal blood flow with a normal or even subnormal tubular absorption (46) or b) *normal filtration rate with increased tubular absorption* (47). Low filtration rate seems to be related to initially *low cardiac output plus compensatory vasoconstriction of the renal arterioles*. High venous renal pressure related to the complex causes of venous hypertension in general may increase renal dysfunction.

The renal dysfunction however has a more complex mechanism because sodium and water retentions seem to be partly independent and caused by special endocrine disorders. *Excessive retention of water followed by retention of salt* is found in many clinical cases suggesting an *excessive amount of posterior pituitary hormone*. On the other hand *excessive retention of salt followed by retention of water* is found in other cases suggesting an *excessive amount of adrenal cortical hormone* (48). The problem is further complicated by the interrelation between the two hormones. Moreover excessive corticoadrenal secretion may be due to increased secretion of adrenocorticotrophic hormone. These disturbances may be explained by anoxia of either the anterior or the posterior pituitary or more likely *by insufficient destruction of either hormone by the congested liver* (49).

Studies dealing with circulation speed or

cardiac output have revealed two different types of cardiac failure. The first type is encountered chiefly in rheumatic, hypertensive and coronary heart diseases, it presents *increased circulation time and reduced cardiac output*. The second is found in anemic, thyroid and beriberi heart diseases in certain cases of chronic cor pulmonale, in patent ductus arteriosus, in arteriovenous fistula, and in some cases of Paget's disease. In such cases *decreased circulation time and normal or increased cardiac output* occur (42-44). It is apparent that rheumatic valvular disease, cardiovascular diseases or hypertensive heart disease may also be associated with anemia, vitamin B deficiency or hyperthyroidism causing therefore a *mixed type of cardiac failure with slightly increased or slightly decreased output and circulation time*. It should be emphasized that low output failure is associated with absolute decrease of cardiac reserve and therefore is an *absolute failure* on the other hand high output failure is usually associated with relative decrease of cardiac reserve because of increased requirements of the tissues and represents therefore *relative failure*.

The fact that the heart is composed of two main pumps, the right and left ventricles working under different conditions led to a brilliant and daring conception (2) that either of them might become insufficient without the other being affected. This theory tried to explain different clinical pictures as the result of isolated failure of one or the other ventricle. *Right ventricular failure* would be revealed by exertional dyspnea, right ventricular enlargement, hepatic enlargement and peripheral edema. *Left ventricular failure* would be revealed by anginal pain, paroxysmal dyspnea, and acute pulmonary edema. A confirmation of this theory was found in the frequent occurrence of the former syndrome in patients with right ventricular strain (mitral stenosis) and of the latter in patients with left ventricular strain (aortic insufficiency).

arterial hypertension) A reaction against excessive generalization of this theory was started by the author in 1932 (3) Experimental (5-7-40) and clinical (11) evidence seemed to confirm his view. Later studies by means of catheterization of the right heart (57-58) revealed *high diastolic pressure of the right ventricle* in cases with right ventricular failure and *high systolic pressure of the right ventricle (with normal diastolic)* in cases with left ventricular failure. Thus clinical evidence of isolated ventricular failures was obtained. Moreover it was proved that experimental compression of a coronary artery is followed by increased diastolic pressure of the left ventricle while right ventricular pressures and the filling pressure of the right atrium are still normal (40). This reveals the possibility of *isolated acute left ventricular failure following diffuse coronary insufficiency*. On the other hand *chronic failure of one ventricle is usually followed by failure of the other* on account of the multiple anatomical and functional connections between the two chambers.

Whenever long standing mechanical obstacles or structural changes have occurred striking differences between the pressures or capacities of two chambers or two vascular districts may occur. When failure affects predominantly or exclusively one ventricle the clinical manifestations appear first in that vascular district which is *behind the usual chamber* even if the equilibrium is reestablished by subsequent weakening of the other (1).

There is no doubt that a frequent connection exists between certain signs due to heart failure and some valvular or vascular lesion. As previously stated these signs are connected with a preexisting reduction of the reserve power of the affected organs. Therefore any further increase of the sign is detected more easily because the clinical threshold of observation is quickly reached.

Enlargement of the liver occurs as a result of dynamic changes in tricuspid stenosis

If the heart is weak a slight further increase of venous pressure is revealed immediately by palpation of the liver and by *hepatic dysfunction*.

Cerebral anemia often occurs in aortic stenosis. Weakening of the heart causes a decrease of cardiac output and this is revealed by signs of cerebral anemia because the cerebral circulation is already near the threshold of clinical disturbance.

Pulmonary congestion is frequent in arterial hypertension and may cause exertional dyspnea. Any weakening of the heart causes *severe dyspnea* because the power of dilatation of the pulmonary vessels is reduced.

Blood flow through the arteries of the legs is often reduced in cases with coarctation of the aorta or arteriosclerosis obliterans. The earliest sign of heart failure in such patients is *intermittent claudication* because the reduced cardiac output lowers the blood flow in the extremities below the threshold which permits exertion.

In conclusion congestion and depletion may be caused by the hemodynamic effects of the cardiac disease by cardiac failure or both.

The application of *Starling's law* (page 30) to the hearts of sick patients was resisted by clinicians. *Morris's law* (8) stated that 'while dilatation of a normal heart means greater power of contraction dilatation of a sick heart means lower power of contraction'. The contradiction between accepted clinical knowledge and physiological laws can be explained as follows: when the heart of a cardiac patient fails its efficiency is reduced an increase of work is obtained through dilatation therefore even if this dilatation is compensatory it implies that the heart is weak. Moreover excessive dilatation fails to increase the power of contraction.

The three mechanisms of adaptation of the heart are as already outlined: increase of rate (tachycardia), increase of volume (dilatation) and hypertrophy. Each has a

critical limit above which the heart decreases its efficiency instead of increasing it. For the heart rate the limit seems to be around 200 because higher rates do not permit a good diastolic filling. Dilatation ceases to be useful when the elastic limit of the fibers is overstrained and diastolic pressure begins to rise. Hypertrophy is not profitable if too severe because the capillary network becomes insufficient in relation to the blood supply necessary for muscle metabolism. Then a vicious circle takes place: the dilated and rapid heart contracts faster and faster, less and less effectively. The fact that an extremely dilated heart may be a mechanical obstacle to cardiorespiratory dynamics should also be taken into account.

Even if vascular, renal, hepatic, nervous and endocrine elements contribute to the development of the picture of chronic congestive failure, this is the result of impairment of the contractility of the myocardium. It is revealed by a change in the ratio between work performed and either cardiac size or venous pressure. Therefore, when heart failure is present, normal work will be possible only through dilatation, increased rate and venous engorgement.

Cardiac failure may manifest itself either by decrease of cardiac work without venous engorgement (predominant picture of depletion) or by venous engorgement without decreased work (predominant picture of congestion). Only the ratio between work and venous conditions is a sure evidence of failure because a normal heart may have decreased output (associated with decreased venous return) or venous engorgement (associated with increased output). In the first case there is reduced cardiac volume; in the second, increased cardiac volume.

Venous pressure is not an adequate element for evaluating cardiac conditions because the flow may increase without a rise in pressure and vice versa on account of changing conditions of the venous walls.

Two different mechanisms have been

discussed as possible causes for heart failure. The first consists of a decreased ability to release energy with a decreased oxygen consumption for a given diastolic size (9). The second consists of a smaller conversion of the energy into useful work, i.e. an impairment in the mechanical efficiency² of cardiac work (10). The second mechanism seems the most likely.

It should be kept in mind that different types of myocardial disturbances may occur. As already stated, increased requirements may cause relative cardiac failure. In such cases, the metabolism and the contractile power of the cardiac fiber may be preserved and the term *hemodynamic cardiac failure* could be used (21). On the contrary, in most cases with absolute cardiac failure, a primary deficiency of contractility takes place following severe changes of the metabolism of the cardiac muscle; this is revealed by prolongation of electrical systole (Q-T interval of the electrocardiogram) and abbreviation of mechanical systole (distance 1st to 2nd sound of the phonocardiogram). For these cases, the name of *energetic-dynamic insufficiency* has been suggested (21).

LESIONS

Examination of patients who died after chronic heart failure reveals a series of changes involving all organs as a result of chronic congestion.

The lungs are less elastic, heavier, and firmer because of engorgement of the vessels and transudation into the alveoli (edema). The lung of chronic edema has a light grayish color which is different from the gray pink color seen in acute edema. Section of the parenchyma elicits an outpour of foam. Serum and red cells penetrate the interstitial tissue; the cells are destroyed.

²² Mechanical efficiency is the ratio of mechanical work performed to the total energy released by chemical transformations. Oxygen consumption measures the total energy released by oxidation of the heart muscle.

and their hemoglobin is transformed into brown pigment which is taken in by the alveolar cells and by leucocytes. Some of the latter are found in the bronchial exudate (cardiac cells).

The bronchi present cyanosis of the mucosa and signs of congestive bronchitis. Bronchopneumonia, atelectasis, infarctions and pleurisy are common findings.

The liver is enlarged, cyanotic and firm. The high pressure of the hepatic veins causes a dilatation of the centrilobular veins; the hepatic cells are atrophied by the chronic compression. The typical nutmeg liver is due to the existence of large pink centers (veins) surrounded by yellow areas (fatty degenerated parenchyma). Cardiac fibrosis of the liver is common and an increase in connective tissue of the liver is present in the majority of cases. The fibrosis may be central, portal or both, but rarely reaches the severe stage which is necessary for clinical recognition (33).

The kidneys are increased in size, have a pink color and present a smooth tense capsule. Section reveals a deeper color of the pyramids and a lighter color of the cortex. The veins and capillaries are distended while serum and red cells are present within the capsular spaces and the tubules. In the latter fusion of the cells with degenerated epithelium causes the formation of casts. When congestive failure has lasted a long time, cyanotic atrophy and sclerosis of the kidneys occur, a process which is usually favored by arterial lesions.

The skin and mucosa present cyanosis and chronic edema; the serosal cavities contain a transudate (ascites, hydropericardium and hydrothorax).

The heart is enlarged and flaccid, presenting the basic lesions which caused failure. The heart muscle is frequently cyanotic; there is dilatation of the coronary sinus and of the smaller veins. Mural thrombi and clots are frequently present in the cardiac cavities, especially in the atria.

Chemical studies have shown that the failing heart has a subnormal content of

acid soluble purines (13), creatin (14), lipid (15a), phosphatid (15b) and potassium (16). The decrease of creatin and phosphorus content may be particularly significant (17).

The fluid of peripheral edema has a low specific gravity (from 1.005-1.010), a content of protein which is intermediate between exudates and transudates (from 0.2-0.5 per cent) and a higher concentration of chlorides than the blood (28).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

I Acute Cardiac Failure

Acute cardiac failure may be due to

a) Sudden weakness of the myocardium connected with structural lesions (myocardial infarction, myocarditis).

b) Sudden mechanical hindrance caused by occlusion of one of the valvular orifices (ball valve thrombus occluding the mitral hooking of the aortic cusps in aortic stenosis), massive pulmonary embolism or pericardial tamponade.

c) Severe ventricular tachycardia impairing the coronary blood supply; it may be associated with atrial flutter or fibrillation.

d) Ventricular arrest as a result of severe carotid sinus reflex or sudden complete A-V block (Stokes-Adams attack).

In these cases the main clinical picture is caused by depletion of the arterial system. Feebleness of mind and body, drowsiness or loss of consciousness, coldness of the skin and drop in arterial pressure are typical and resemble the clinical picture of shock.

In acute cardiac failure the peripheral veins may be engorged; the engorgement may be prevented by severe pulmonary congestion or reflex peripheral vasodilation. Dyspnea may be present. Rales may be heard over the lungs. The heart sounds may be relatively loud.

II Subacute or Chronic Cardiac Failure

The clinical picture of chronic heart failure mainly consists of signs of venous

engagement and of its effect upon the different organs. However, less apparent signs and symptoms caused by heart failure on the arterial system are also present.

Weakness is one of the early symptoms and is revealed by even slight exertion. *Dyspnea* frequently has different manifestations: first *exertional dyspnea*, then *orthopnea*, and then *continuous dyspnea*. *Periodic respiration* may occur and has serious significance (page 537). *Apnoeic respiration* may simulate bronchial asthma (*cardiac asthma*) (30). Sometimes dyspnea is absent in one recumbent posture but is present in another and starts only after the patient has been in such position for 10 seconds to 2 minutes (*trypnoea*) (17b).

Both the *vital capacity* and the *breath holding time* are reduced in congestive failure.

Anorexia, *nausea*, *eructations* and *flatulence* are frequent. *Cough* is not unusual and may be accompanied by rusty or bloody sputum.

Precordial oppression is common, so is a series of thoracic sensations varying from sticking pain to dull diffuse aching.

Cyanosis is frequent; it presents extreme variations between the dark color of chronic cor pulmonale (*black cardiacs*) and the grayish or lard color of patients with aortic insufficiency. It predominates on the lips, nostril, earlobes, and extremities. The skin is frequently dry and scaly. *Jaundice* may appear.

Peripheral edema is frequent. It predominates both in the most distant parts (feet, legs) and in the dependent areas (legs, perineum and sacral region) (fig. 307). Soft and easily compressible at first (*pitting edema*), it may reach a thickness of many centimeters and give a firm consistency to the skin.

The *visible veins* are swollen; those of the neck present active pulsations (18). The pulsations of the *carotid* and *subclavian arteries* are often apparent.

The *pulse* is small, irregular and frequently presents a *pulse deficit* because many cardiac contractions are not revealed by the radial pulse. An exception is represented by the full and often regular pulse of patients with aortic insufficiency or atherosclerosis of the aorta. When the pulse is regular, *alternation* may be detected.

The *heart* is enlarged both to the left and right. The precordial dullness is due not only to the heart itself but frequently also to *pericardial effusion*. The cardio-hepatic angle is obtuse because of this transudate plus enlargement of the right atrium. The manubrium of the sternum may become dull because of distention of the innominate veins.

While the *murmurs of organic valvular lesions* become less clear and may even disappear, *murmurs due to relative insufficiency or stenosis* may appear as an effect of heart failure. This is particularly true of a *soft systolic murmur* audible at the apex or the tricuspid area (page 225) but also occasionally of a *soft early diastolic murmur* over the aortic or pulmonic areas (pages 249 and 261) and of a *diastolic rumble* over the apex (page 237). A *triple rhythm* (page 370) may be an early sign and may be audible all through the duration of failure.

The *liver* is frequently enlarged. This enlargement may be an early sign and may be further increased in later stages by relative insufficiency of the tricuspid valve. Its border is regular; it is firm but not as much as in cases of cirrhosis of Laennec or frosted liver.

The *lungs* frequently have a functional *emphysema*, favored by the high level of the diaphragm and by congestion of the bases. The latter is revealed by small scattered rales; evidence of subacute or chronic edema. *Pleural friction* may also be present.

The occurrence of *pleural effusion* is frequent. This may be unilateral (more

often on the right side) or bilateral (more abundant on the right side) ascites may be present but unless constrictive pericarditis, perihepatitis or a trien-cipital lesion is present it is seldom abundant.

Renal changes are revealed by the urine which becomes scanty (200-300 cc in 24 hours) and has a high specific gravity (even 1.030 or more if there is no renal sclerosis). Albumin, indican and urobilin are present. Bile pigments may be found. Creatin is almost always present. A few red cells and many granular casts can be found in the sediment. Albumin may vary from a trace to 0.5 per cent.

Urobilinogen is generally increased in the stools during severe congestive failure, a fact which gives evidence of increased blood destruction.

Venous pressure is increased. Measurement should be made with the usual precautions (page 162). Abdominal compression produces a fall of venous pressure in normal people but a rise of pressure in heart failure (19). It is followed by visible engorgement of the jugular veins (so called hepato-jugular reflux).

Arterial pressure may vary. Some patients may present an increase of blood pressure due to stimulation of the vasomotor center by CO₂. Others may show a slight drop. Reduced pulse pressure and increased diastolic pressure are common.

Both *venous and right atrial pressure* are increased as revealed by direct measurement through catheterization. Right atrial pressure is often as high as 20 mm. Hg, and the gradient between venous and atrial pressures is reduced (42). *Right ventricular failure* is revealed by high diastolic pressure of the right ventricle. *Left ventricular failure* is revealed by high systolic and normal diastolic pressures of the right ventricle.

The direct observation of the capillaries shows distention of their venous ends, slow circulation and the presence of bead-like formations slowly moving from the arterial to the venous end. Fragmentation of the

stream and temporary arrest may be observed.

Basal metabolism is frequently increased and may be even 40 per cent above normal. This may be caused by the increased work of the respiratory muscles and by the increased oxygen consumption of the heart in element which tends to overshadow the increased metabolism is represented by the edema which adds to the weight of the patient. In certain patients the basal metabolic rate is very high on account of a primary disturbance and increased requirements of the tissues are an important cause of congestive failure (high output failure).

The temperature may be slightly elevated with greater difference between rectal and skin temperatures than in normal persons (32).

The volume of circulating blood is frequently increased (20) and may reach 50



FIG. 30. Congestive failure

per cent above norm *This is largely due to the blood contained in the dilated heart and in the engorged organs* It is likely that because of slow circulation in the capillaries of many areas and of massive edema and transudates the actual figures should be revised and might even reach 100 to 150 per cent above norm A redistribution of the blood also takes place in these patients so that more blood is present on the venous side of the cardiovascular system in the lungs and in the liver

The formation of edema and transudates may simulate polycythemia by leaving a relatively more abundant percentage of red cells It also increases blood viscosity

Red cell fragility is usually increased reticulocyte percentage elevated serum bilirubin concentration frequently increased (24b)

BLOOD GASES

The arterial blood has a slight diminution of oxygen content while its carbon dioxide content is normal (26) The venous blood has a low oxygen content and a variable content of carbon dioxide (26) The difference between arterial and venous oxygen contents is increased

GRAPHIC TRACINGS

Jugular tracings may reveal a progressive engorgement of the venous circulation the systolic collapse becomes less marked and terminates before the 2nd heart sound the *r* wave becomes smaller with the progress of failure (21) Atrial fibrillation causes disappearance of the *r* wave If relative tricuspid insufficiency is present a positive plateau takes place in systole followed by a diastolic collapse The hepatic tracing presents a similar aspect

Respiratory tracings reveal an increased rate and sometimes an oblique course of the graph during inspiration (22)

The cardiac waves of the pneumocardiogram are marked

Electrocardiogram The ECG reveals the existence of various disturbances of the

heart rate and rhythm The most frequent are sinus tachycardia atrial flutter, atrial fibrillation ventricular tachycardia, and ventricular premature contractions

Two abnormalities have been attributed to cardiac failure a) low voltage of QRS with prolonged PR and broadening of QRS and b) prolongation of QT (23a b) In the type of cardiac failure due to intrinsic changes of myocardial metabolism prolongation of electrical systole (QT interval) is associated with shortening of mechanical systole (1st to 2nd sound of the phonocardiogram) so that the 2nd sound takes place before the end of the T wave (31)

Experimental studies indicate that stasis in the coronary sinus is followed by low voltage especially marked for the T wave (53)

X RAY

The x ray reveals that the heart is enlarged and that its margins present small contractions The right atrium may be triangular and very large The pulmonary vessels are dilated (fig 308) Opacity of the lung fields may be caused by chronic edema vascular distention or pleural effusion These predominate in the dependent areas of the lungs and pleura The high level of the diaphragm contributes to poor visibility of the pulmonary bases The superior vena is distended and may present active pulsations Encapsulated pleural effusions are not unusual Evidence of pulmonary infarction may be found

Other data vary in the different types of cardiac failure and will be described below

VARIETIES

High output failure Cardiac output is increased, venous pressure is elevated blood volume is also increased there may be either polycythemia (chronic cor pulmonale) or oligocythemia (anemic heart) Circulation time may be normal or shorter

Low output failure Its initial stage is

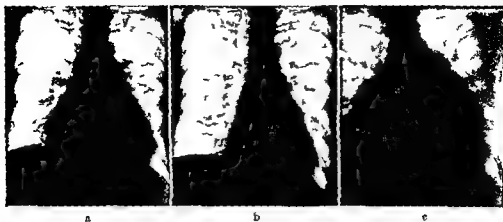


Fig. 308 Changes in the heart size because of failure in a case of rheumatic heart disease a First episode of failure b 12 years later good compensation c 3 years after b severe failure causing death

revealed by normal or low output and by increased pulmonary pressure following exercise exertional dyspnea is the accompanying symptom Decreased cardiac output is present later and is revealed by comparison with previous figures Circulation time is prolonged

Left ventricular failure There often is low cardiac output high pulmonary arterial pressure normal diastolic pressure of the right ventricle and normal blood volume Arm to lung circulation time is within normal limits while arm to tongue time is greatly increased Digitalis causes an increase of cardiac output and a decrease of pulmonary arterial pressure (32)

Right ventricular failure Arm to lung circulation time is increased Right ventricular diastolic pressure is elevated Right ventricular systolic pressure may be high because of preexisting cor pulmonale Right atrial filling pressure is increased the veno-atrial gradient of pressure is decreased Digitalis increases temporarily systolic pressure but decreases diastolic pressure of the right ventricle After a few days systolic pressure also drops

Bernheim's syndrome is the name given to a clinical picture of right-sided failure which occurs in patients with strain of the left ventricle The syndrome has been attributed to compression of the right ventricle

by the distended interventricular septum (37a b) an interpretation which has not been proven (37c d) and which is not accepted by the author It is better explained by total heart failure

Studies made with radioactive materials have revealed that the amount of residual blood of the atria and ventricles increases tremendously during heart failure (61) In failure of a single ventricle residual blood of that chamber is increased

MECHANISM OF ORIGIN OF THE SIGNS

Exertional dyspnea is produced by muscular effort and its ultimate cause is the inability of the heart to increase its output in proportion to the needs of the body A reflex stimulation of the respiratory center is the main cause of the dyspnea this is caused by a) the muscular movements themselves b) increased pressure in the venae cavae and c) increased pressure in the pulmonary artery

After severe exertion anoxemia develops and exerts a double action on the respiratory center a) direct and b) through the chemoreceptors of the carotid and aortic bodies

Orthopnea is caused by the fact that recumbency causes a shift of blood from the dependent regions this leads to increased venous return increased pulmonary flow and reduction of vital capacity A reflex

stimulation of the respiratory center is the result. The effect of increased venous pressure on the respiratory center caused by lowering the head (25) is another probable factor.

Trepnoea seems to have a mechanism which varies according to the position of the patient in which it occurs. Greater venous pressure may explain right decubitus dyspnea, greater emptying of the engorged hepatic venous or mechanical obstruction of the pulmonary veins by the heart itself may explain left decubitus dyspnea.

Continuous dyspnea is due to increased CO saturation, decreased O saturation (26) and acidosis. These are caused by a) *reduced ventilation* caused by numerous factors (high level of diaphragm, pulmonary engorgement, enlarged heart) and b) *increased requirements* of the body (increased dynamics of the heart, poor utilization of the oxygen in the periphery).

However, in addition to the chemical action on the respiratory center, reflexes from the distended venous cavity and pulmonary vessels and stimuli from the chemoreceptors of the carotid and aortic bodies are also important elements. Slow circulation through the respiratory center itself is another factor which may contribute to the dyspnea.

Cyanosis. Cyanosis is caused by an increase in concentration of the reduced hemoglobin in the venules and capillaries of the skin and mucosae. It becomes clinically apparent only when this increase is above a certain limit. The appearance of cyanosis is favored by *polycythemia* (either real or apparent because of the formation of edema) and by *distention* of the venules and capillaries.

The main causes of cyanosis are (27)

a) *Reduced ventilation in the lungs* caused by high position of the diaphragm (enlarged liver), dilatation of the pulmonary capillaries, chronic pulmonary edema, pleural effusion and enlargement of the heart. This leads to deficient oxygenation of the arterial blood (*central cyanosis*).

b) *Increased reduction in the capillaries*. This is due to slow capillary flow (*peripheral cyanosis*).

High venous pressure. It is now admitted that the increase of venous pressure is only an indirect result of cardiac failure. *Increased blood volume* and *increased venous tonus* are the two most important factors of venous hypertension. The increased tonus is probably due to the effects of anoxemia on the venomotor center (44b).

Idema. The edema of cardiac failure is the result of several factors. Among them one of the most important is the *increased hydrostatic pressure of the capillaries*. Capillary pressure has been measured in cardiac failure and found between 25 and 41 mm (normal 12-25) (29). A second cause is often present, namely a *low protein content* of the blood plasma due to malnutrition, albuminuria and hepatic and renal complications. A further cause is an increase of capillary permeability due to *anoxemia* and *slow circulation through the capillaries*.

Another important factor is the *retention of water and sodium* by the kidney. If this were the only factor, cardiac and renal edema would be similar. Additional venous capillary hypertension due to dependency explains dependent edema.

Serous effusions. Serous effusions may occur at an earlier stage than peripheral edema, especially in the pleural cavities. On the other hand, ascites is an early sign in tricuspid stenosis and adhesive pericarditis. The fluid of these effusions has a higher protein content (from 2-3 per cent) than subcutaneous edema fluid and a specific gravity which is also higher (1.013-1.019).

There is drainage of the pleura into both the superior cavity (via the azygos veins) and the pulmonary veins; therefore, engorgement of both systems is necessary in order to produce pleural effusion. The frequent predominance of effusion on the right side has been explained as the result of the fact that negative pressure predominates on that side on account of the enlargement of the heart. An inflammatory

component may be present if there is pulmonary infarction. When this occurs on the left side it may favor left-sided effusion. A further cause of left-sided effusion may be a right-sided adhesive pleuritis. (31) One important factor which explains the greater frequency of right-sided hydrothorax is *higher venous pressure* in the lateral and basal parts of the right lung whenever the patient lies in the right semirecumbent position. (32)

Jaundice is usually slight but is frequently observed. It is caused by two mechanisms: a) *an obstructive factor* due to chronic distention of the hepatic venules followed by biliary stasis; b) *a functional cellular deficiency* which is partly connected with destruction of Kupffer cells and is favored by anoxia. (33)

COMPLICATIONS

Cardiac failure is a complication in itself but it often impairs the coronary, renal, pulmonary and cerebral circulations to such an extent that it may interfere with the functions of these organs, the heart included.

Pulmonary engorgement favors the occurrence of *extensive hemorrhagic infarctions* after embolisms. It may cause infarctions through *phlebitis of the pulmonary veins*.

Chronic hepatic engorgement favors *insufficiency of the liver* and 'cardiac' cirrhosis of this organ.

Renal insufficiency may be the result of chronic renal stasis.

Sterility, miscarriages and menstrual disturbances may be caused by congestive failure.

Ulcerations of the skin which may be infected easily are common in cardiac patients with edema.

Cerebral edema and slow circulation may cause *mental torpor, delirium and coma*.

Wural thrombosis is common in the dilated heart and may be the cause of multiple embolisms.

Pneumonia is a frequent terminal com-

plication and may assume a particular type of edematous infiltration of the lungs so that it may be difficult to differentiate it from acute pulmonary edema.

Subacute bacterial endocarditis may complicate the failure and may be difficult to diagnose because of the tolerance of the patient due to his depressed condition.

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of heart failure is mainly clinical and should be based on the signs, symptoms and various tests. Each sign and symptom may be due to either the basic heart disease or the weakening of the heart and only a correct diagnosis of the basic heart lesion may avoid misunderstanding and confusion. However, it should be kept in mind that in each disease there is a limit to the possible severity of congestion. For example, engorgement of the pulmonary vessels and enlargement of the right ventricle are common in mitral stenosis; engorgement of the systemic veins and enlargement of the liver are common in tricuspid stenosis. When the former patients present pulmonary edema or enlarged liver when the latter present ascites or pitting edema, heart failure is present. It is apparent that a moderate pulmonary congestion may be explained by the dynamic elements of compensation in a patient with mitral stenosis but not in one with hypertension.

Initial heart failure may be detected by following the gradual changes of heart rate, weight of the patient and vital capacity. Increase of the first two and decrease of the last are evidence of failure if other causes can be excluded.

PROGNOSIS (34, 35, 36)

The immediate prognosis depends in varying degree upon the precipitating cause, the age of the patient, the degree of cardiac enlargement and the presence or absence of complications. It may evolve independently of the underlying basic type of heart disease. (35) However, the aso-

ciation of two or more heart lesions or disturbances increases the severity of the prognosis

Mitral lesions have a tendency to cause heart failure comparatively early in life however compensation can be often reestablished even after repeated episodes. On the contrary, aortic lesions of rheumatic or luetic origin cause heart failure relatively late in life but the maintenance of compensation is more difficult (36). Hypertensive and coronary heart diseases in general have a less set course.

The coexistence of pulmonary or renal diseases militates against recovery from cardiac failure.

Recurrence of failure must be anticipated. Treatment may prevent to a certain extent the occurrence of such episodes.

TREATMENT

Treatment of cardiac failure is one of the basic aims of cardiology. The multiplicity of problems involved, the number of drugs and other useful adjuvants and the variable reactions of the patients require an extensive discussion of the problem (chapters 32 and 35). Studies of recent years have led to description of a routine method of treatment of heart failure (57). This will be described with certain modifications and with the warning that it represents only a general guide often requiring modifications and adjustment to the individual case.

The patient is put at rest with a daily diet of 4 to 6 glasses of milk and a water intake of 200 cc in small frequent doses. If no digitalis was recently taken digitalization is started with initial large doses (page 558) and is followed by a daily maintenance dose. The patient is weighed daily. An initial dose of 1 cc of a mercurial diuretic is given if no unpleasant reactions occur and diuresis is insufficient the dose is increased to 1.5 or 2 cc and repeated at frequent intervals (every 2 or 3 days).

Digitalis, mercurials and diet are continued until edema disappears and the weight reaches

a low steady level. A few days later, the patient may become ambulant and treatment is changed as follows: diet will include most of the common foods except those with a high content of sodium (diets). No salt should be added in cooking or at the table. Salt substitutes (76) can be used. Carbo resins (78) may permit a more liberal use of sodium (their employment is still under experimentation). The mercurials are given at longer intervals but their frequency is again increased if the weight presents sharp changes connected with their administration.

Maintenance dose of digitalis, maintenance dose of mercurial diuretics and a regular low intake of sodium are at the base of this system. After several weeks the diet may become more liberal and the interval between the injections can be further prolonged.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 KATZ L & J Mt Sinai Hosp 1947 8 668
Also Am J Adv Sci Publ 13 1940 194
- 2 a) LIAN C Presse Méd 1910 11 49
b) VAQUEZ H 7th Intern Meet of Med Sci (5th Section) London 1913
- 3 LUBADA A A *Insufficienza Totale e Insufficienza Parziale di Cuore* Naples Idelson 1932
- 4 COLOMBI Atti 42 Congr Ital Med Int Rome Pozzi 1931
- 5 a) RUBINO A Cuore e Circ 1938 22 397
b) CATALDI G Policl (sez med) 1931 44
170 Arch Mal Coeur 1930 28 604
Cuore e Circ 1937 21 11
- 6 WENCKEBACH K E *Herz und Kreislauf insuffizienz* Dresden Steinkopff 1931
- 7 STARR I JEFFERS W A AND MEADE R H Am Heart J 1943 26 291
- 8 MURRI A Policl (sez med) 1919 26 1
- 9 a) RUEHL A Arch Exp Path Pharm 1931 187 22
b) KATZ L N AND MENDLOWITZ M Am J Physiol 1933 122 267
- 10 References quoted by VISSCHER KATZ AND STARR in *Blood Heart and Circulation* A A S I Press 1940
- 11 HARRISON T R *Failure of the Circulation* Baltimore The Williams & Wilkins Co 1939

- 19 WIGGERS C J *Physiology in Health and Disease* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1912
- 13 NYLIN C *Acta Med Scand Suppl* 93 1
Also J A M A 1934 109 133
- 14 a) COWAN D W *Am Heart J* 1933 9 38
b) HERMANN G DECHERD G M AND
SCHWAB F H *South M J* 1936 29 396
c) INECAR C R FROST T T AND MYERS
V C *Arch Int Med* 1938 61 430
d) BODANSKY M AND PITCHER J R *Arch
Int Med* 1934 59 232
- 15 a) CLARK A J J *Physiol* 1913/1914 47 66
b) KUTCHERA AICHBERGEN H *Wien Arch
inn Med* 1929 III 209
- 16 CALHOUN J A CULLEN G E AND HARRI-
SON T R J *Clin Investigation* 1931 9 405
- 17 a) FISHBERG A M *Heart Failure* Philadel-
phia Lea & Febiger 1940
b) WOOD F C AND WOLFERTH C C *Am J
M Sci* 1937 193 354
- 18 LANCISI G M *De Motu Cordis etc* Rome
Salvemi 1428
- 19 WINCOT T AND BURCH G E *Am Heart J*
1946 31 387
- 20 a) WOLLHEIM E *Zeit klin Med* 1931 116
263
b) UHLENBRUCK F AND VOGELS *Zeit klin
Med* 1931 118 149
c) GIBSON J G AND EVANS W A J *Clin
Investigation* 1934 16 301 and 851
d) HARRIS V W AND OISON J C *J Clin
Investigation* 1939 18 597
- 21 WEBER A *Die Elektrokardiographie etc* Ber-
lin Springer 1926
- 22 HOFBAUER K *Semiotologie und Differential
diagnostik der Kurzatmigkeiten* Jena
Fischer 1940
- 23 a) CLERC A AND LEVY R *Compt rend Soc
biol* 1910 II 44 459
b) CHLER S V AND DIEUDAIFF F R J *Clin
Investigation* 1931 III 889
- 24 a) BLUMGART H L *Medicine* 1931 10 1
b) WALLER J V BLUMGART H L AND
VOLK M C *Arch Int Med* 1940 66
1230
- 25 FRUSTE V C AND BLUMGART H L *Arch
Int Med* 1911 45 593
- 26 ALTSCHULE M D *Medicine* 1938 17 75
- 27 a) LUNDGAARD C AND VAN SLYKE D H
Medicine 1923 2 1
b) HENDERSON Y *Blood 1 Stly in General
Physiology* New Haven 1928
c) HARROR G A J *Exper Med* 1919 30
217
d) BARACH A L AND WOODWELL M *Arch
Int Med* 1921 28 46
e) COSSIO I AND BERCONSKY I *Am Heart
J* 1929 17 1
- 28 a) EPSTEIN A A J A M A 1917 69 44
Am J M Sci 1917 154 638 and 1922
163 167
b) BRAMKAMP R G J *Clin Investigation*
1933 III 34
c) REICHE F *Zeit klin Med* 1931 118 397
- 29 FAHR G AND ERSHLER I *Proc Soc Exper
Biol & Med* 1939 37 701
- 30 LOTZ M *Ann Int Med* 1939 III 151
- 31 a) RIGONI M *Cuore e Circ* 1937 21 15, 209
and 1938 22 237
b) FILLIS L B *New England J Med* 1943
228 284 and 311
- 32 KIN ET D AND WHITE P D *Arch Int
Med* 1940 65 163
- 33 KATZIN H M WALLER J V AND BLUM-
GART H L *Arch Int Med* 1939 III 457
- 34 a) WILLIAMS F A *Am Heart J* 1927 3
139
b) GRANT R T *Heart* 1933 6 275
- 35 BOYER H LEACH E AND WHITE I D
Ann Int Med 1941 14 2210
- 36 DRY T J J A M A 1942 118 963
- 37 a) BERNHEIM *Rev Méd* 1910 30 485
b) EAST T AND BAIN C *Brit Heart J*
1949 11 140
c) LUTSADA A A *Rass Int Clin Ter
(Naples)* 1937 13 1048
d) EVANS I R AND WHITE P H *Am J M
Sci* 1945 216 480
- 38 LEWIS T *The Mechanism and Graphic Repre-
sentation of the Heart Beat* London Shaw and
Sons 1920
- 39 STARLING E H *The Principles of Human
Physiology* (revised by C L Evans) Phila-
delphia Lea & Febiger 1930
- 40 STARR I *Ann Int Med* 1949 30 1
- 41 LEWIS T *Diseases of the Heart* New York
Macmillan 1937
- 42 RICHARDS D W *Am J Med* 1947 3 434
- 43 MANGUN G H AND MYERS V C *Arch Int
Med* 1946 78 411
- 44 a) McMICHAEL J AND SHARPEY SHAFER
E P *Brit Heart J* 1944 6 33
b) McMICHAEL J *Schweiz med Woch* 1946
6 41 Also *Am J Med* 1949 6 601
- 45 SCHROEDER H *Am Heart J* 1941 22 141
- 46 a) STEAD E M *Conc of Cardiovasc Dis*
1947 18 V 12 ALDWARREN J V AND
STEAD L *Arch Int Med* 1944 III 138
b) MERRILL A J J *Clin Investigation* 1946
25 359
c) MOKOTOFF R ROSS G AND LEITER L
J *Clin Investigation* 1948 VII 1
d) BRIGGS A P AND CO WORKERS *J Clin
Investigation* 1948 VII 810
- 47 WECRIA R AND CO WORKERS *Federation
Proc* 1949 8 16

- 48 SCHROEDER H A Am Heart Assoc June 1943
- 49 FEITER J Bull New York Acad Med 1948 24 202
- 50 STEAD E A WARREN J V AND BRANNON I S Am Heart J 1948 35 529
- 51 HECHEM R Cardiol 1943 7 142 Also Schweiz med Woch 1944 77 674
- 52 RICHARD D W Am J Med 1949 6 772
- 53 LACHARY J Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1949 88 140
- 54 WHITE F D AND MICHIE C R Am J M Sci 1947 214 243
- 55 DOCK W Am Heart J 1936 10 194; Also New England J Med 1947 236 13
- 56 MEAKIN J Mo Cone Cardiovasc Dis 1949 18 24
- 57 GOLI H *et al* Am J Med 1947 3 665
- 58 HARVEY H M *et al* Am J Med 1949 7 479
- 59 FERRER M I *et al* Circ 1950 1 161
- 60 SARNOFF S J AND BERGLUND I VII Intern Congr of Physiol Montreal 1953
- 61 NYLIN G Am Heart J 1943 25 509 and 1944 37 513

The Cardiac Patient as an Obstetrical and Surgical Risk

Obstetrics

Normal pregnancy has been discussed already (page 319) it was concluded that in this condition a burden is added to the cardiovascular function by an increase of blood volume

Evaluation of the risk to a cardiac patient when she undergoes pregnancy varies between the older view which considered it as exceedingly high and the extreme view which states that mothers with heart disease die early because of the natural evolution of their disease and not because they have borne children (8)

No extreme generalization should be made an accurate diagnosis of the existing condition and a proper evaluation of the functional ability of the heart permit judgment as to whether or not pregnancy is a severe danger in any given patient

A classification based on the reaction to effort before pregnancy divides the cardiac patients as follows (9)

- a) Patients without exertional dyspnea
- b) Patients with slight exertional dyspnea
- c) Patients with severe exertional dyspnea
- d) Patients with dyspnea at rest

Patients of group a represent no special risk patients of group b only a slight risk. Patients of group c should not be permitted to continue the pregnancy and the same is obviously true for the last group

According to another classification (10) the patients are divided into two classes

- a) *Favorable cases* those in whom there is a valvular defect but no heart failure atrial fibrillation or other additional disease
- b) *Unfavorable cases* those having or

having had heart failure or atrial fibrillation, and those with additional diseases (tuberculosis diabetes etc) Patients with high blood pressure and those undoubtedly rare having coronary heart disease should be added to this group

While recognition of atrial fibrillation is easy that of *initial heart failure* may be difficult once pregnancy has started This is due to the fact that a pregnant woman with a normal heart may complain of palpitation exertional dyspnea and even orthopnea or paroxysmal dyspnea she may suffer from fainting attacks and have various vasomotor disturbances (11) More over the heart may appear enlarged while a *triple rhythm* and *murmurs due to relative stenosis* are often present The best method for estimating the degree of cardiac failure is recording of vital capacity (11) of venous pressure and of circulation time and the observation of the patient before and after exertion

The incidence of cardiac failure is almost parallel to the curve of plasma volume in pregnant cardiacs (10) Therefore if the patients reach the 8th month without failure they are less exposed to it later Even the strain of delivery is not as severe as that represented by the increased blood volume of the 8th month

While this burden of pregnancy cannot be removed many secondary causes of failure may be corrected or prevented such as anemia emotional upsets respiratory infections and physical exercise *The weight gain should be limited to about 15 lbs during pregnancy* Salt salty foods and medications containing sodium should be restricted (diet

VI) If the patient does not cooperate with this plan fluid restriction and the use of diuretics are indicated

Digitalization in general should be started only when congestive failure occurs. However a preventive digitalization started at the beginning of the 7th month and continued until after delivery has been found useful by the writer. Regular digitalization during the first week of each month is also beneficial in preventing the occurrence of failure.

In conjunction with this treatment sedatives are usually helpful because high excitability of the nervous system favors *paroxysmal attacks of tachycardia dyspnea or pulmonary edema*. The latter is far more common in pregnant women with mitral stenosis than in mitral stenosis without pregnancy and has a high rate of mortality. Whereas the usual medical treatment of this complication can be used here (page 560) precedence should be given to *blood letting* this is now seldom used with the result that the mortality is now far higher than that of 60 years ago (12). Another useful procedure is *alcohol vapor inhalation* (14-16) which should be used before other procedures having no contraindications.

In general decisions concerning interruption of pregnancy should be made early in the 3rd month or at least before the 5th. If this term is passed pregnancy should be carried through to the end.

The possibility of subacute bacterial endocarditis should be kept in mind. Prophylactic penicillin injections before and after delivery may avoid such danger.

Normal delivery is preferable in cardiac patients without heart failure. The mortality is high when other methods are adopted whatever procedure is followed.

Judgment concerning the advisability of a second or third pregnancy and about possible sterilization of the patient should not be given without careful consideration. An extensive discussion of the problem has been made by Levine (13) and his conclusions are widely accepted.

Early marriage and early childbearing offer a minimum of hazards in patients with rheumatic heart disease (8).

Mild essential hypertension entails about the same risk as the favorable rheumatic heart disease. On the contrary, severe hypertension with hypertensive heart disease constitutes a bad risk (10). It seems probable that a high incidence of eclampsia and a more rapid evolution of hypertensive disease occur when a hypertensive woman is allowed to continue pregnancy without special precautions. Paroxysmal dyspnea and paroxysmal pulmonary edema are more frequent in such patients than in other pregnant women.

Surgery

Surgery on a cardiac patient is undoubtedly a cause of strain upon the heart and entails some risk for the patient. Reluctance to operate is frequently present but it must be emphasized that the ability of the heart to withstand an operation is greater than is usually thought and that often death is wrongly ascribed to the heart.

The factors to consider are

- a) Action of the anesthetic on the heart and circulatory apparatus
- b) Effect of possible reflexes from the operative field
- c) Effect of significant increase or decrease of blood pressure on the heart
- d) Decubitus of the patient on the surgical table
- e) Depth of anesthesia

Anesthesia is in itself a strain upon the heart. Poor oxygenation of the blood, dyspnea, muscular effort, cough and tachycardia are frequent during anesthesia especially during the early stages. The anesthetic may act on the myocardium depressing its function. Inhalant anesthetics frequently stimulate the vagus nerve both during the early stage and during recovery.

Abnormalities of the heart rate and rhythm including premature contractions, nodal rhythm, atrial tachycardia, flutter or fibril-

lation have been observed in noncardiac patients undergoing surgery (1) Ether and nitrous oxide were responsible for these changes. Preoperative administration of *atropine* and *quinidine* (or *pronestyl*) may limit the changes of rate and rhythm.

The risk to the cardiac patient is limited by intelligent action on the part of the anesthetist and by a correct choice of the anesthetic.

Inhalant anesthetics (especially *ether*) may be more dangerous in patients with mitral stenosis and hypertensive patients with pulmonary congestion than in others because they favor pulmonary edema and bronchopneumonia. In spite of the consideration *ether* is usually considered the anesthetic of choice. A copious supply of oxygen should be added to any inhalant anesthetic.

Intravenous and rectal anesthesia are the best for the most cardiac patients but have the common disadvantage that once started the anesthesia cannot be rapidly discontinued. The intravenous drip method combined with nitrous oxide oxygen (50:50) obviates this disadvantage. On the other hand the latter adds the burden of a certain volume of fluid.

Spinal anesthesia is excellent but may cause a significant fall in blood pressure a fact which is not devoid of danger in patients with coronary or hypertensive heart disease (page 418). *Procaine* in itself is not dangerous and may even be helpful in decreasing the excitability of the myocardium as shown by animal experimentation (2) and direct application to the human heart (3). For this reason *local anesthesia* as used in small operations and in dentistry is usually harmless. On the other hand many cardiac patients are sensitive to even small doses of *epinephrine* or *norepinephrine* and react with unpleasant manifestations to procaine plus epinephrine. This advises either limitation or avoidance of the latter.

Reflex onset of disturbances of the heart rhythm and reflex coronary ischemia have been demonstrated in experimental animals.

This advises avoidance of any prolonged manipulation of the viscera. Preoperative administration of *atropine*, *quinidine*, or both may limit the effect of such maneuvers.

Various changes in blood pressure may take place during anesthesia and surgery (4) a fact which may be associated with changes of cardiac output. The latter was found increased in animal experimentation (5a) decreased in human surgery (5b). *Extreme lowering of blood pressure* may favor coronary occlusion (page 418) and is therefore to be avoided. *Marked increase of blood pressure* on the other hand increases strain on the heart.

The ability of the heart to respond to strain may be judged by the existence of compensation or decompensation before surgery and by the evaluation of additional loads reducing cardiac reserve (valvular defects, congenital malformations, high blood pressure).

Sudden death during surgery (even cardiac surgery) is an infrequent event in cardiac patients unless unusual events take place (perforation of ventricular septum, cerebral embolism, ventricular fibrillation). Unexpected death is even more common in young people without heart disease than in elderly cardiac patients (6). On the other hand age is very important as two thirds of the deaths of cardiac patients occur when the 50 year age mark has been passed (6-7).

Atrial fibrillation slightly increases the dangers in arteriosclerotic patients while it nearly triples the risk in rheumatic heart disease (6). *Thyrocardiacs* with atrial fibrillation are an exception because they withstand intervention on the thyroid better than any other group and show favorable results within a short time.

Cardiac surgery is a most delicate procedure especially in patients with coronary heart disease. The excitability of the myocardium should be decreased by the preoperative use of *quinidine* or *pronestyl* and by local application of *procaine*.

In general when a cardiac patient needs

surgery all clinical elements must be taken into account. If a recent coronary occlusion has occurred time for healing of the scar and subsequent convalescence should be allowed before considering the intervention. If a patient presents the signs of congestive failure he should be treated by means of digitalis, mercurial diuretics, rest, and diet until compensation is attained and a stable equilibrium is reached.

Strict collaboration between the cardiologist, the surgeon and the anesthesiologist may permit surgery in patients who formerly were refused this benefit. This collaboration should start long before the operation (sometimes even months earlier) and should be continued in the postoperative stage. Whenever doubts about the resistance of the patient arise the operation will be performed under *local anesthesia*. The use of *curare* should be considered. The patient will be digitalized until the last day and prepared with *morphine* and *atropine*. Occasional additional preparation with *quinidine* or *procainyl* may be necessary.

The beneficial action of *oxygen* during the intervention and the prophylactic action of *penicillin* before and after it should be kept in mind. *Heparin* may be useful in some cases in order to prevent venous thrombosis and subsequent embolism.

Whenever a patient has even mild orthopnea and a minor surgical intervention becomes necessary this should be performed on an *oblique table* so that no increased load on the heart and no dyspnea is caused by the supine position.

Postoperative care of the cardiacs includes avoidance of any cause favoring bronchopneumonia or atelectasis (decubitus, tight bandage, drugs depressing respiration, etc.). Digitalization should be continued during

this stage. The advice of the cardiologist may be required in difficult cases.

It should be kept in mind that *saline infusions* and *exsanguis* or *plasma* may favor pulmonary edema in doses which are tolerated without difficulty by non cardiac

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 a) FENKEL W G GRAVE R C AND
LEVINE S A Arch Int Med 1927 90
57
b) LEVINE S A J A M A 1930 75 105
- 2 BURSTEIN C I AND MARANCONI B A
Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1940 43
210
- 3 FISH H AND ROSSMAN I J Mo Cone Car
diovase Dis 1940 9 1
- 4 MARVIN H M AND LANTOR R H Arch Int
Med 1925 35 768
- 5 a) BLATOCK A Arch Surg 1927 14 37 971
and 975
b) SANDER J C J Clin Investigation 1938
17 51
- 6 SPRAGUE H B Surg Gynec & Obst 19
49 51
- 7 MILLER A H Am J Surg Suppl 1919 33
117
- 8 FRANKMAN N Am J Obst & Gynec 1930 33
814
- 9 Criteria Committee of the New York Heart
Assoc Nomenclature and Criteria for Diag
nosis of Disease of the Heart New York
Heart Assoc 1952
- 10 HAMILTON B E AND THOMPSON R J The
Heart in Pregnancy and the Childbearing Age
Boston Little Brown and Co 1941
- 11 DEXTER I In Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine
New York Nelson and Sons 1944 Vol 1
New England Med Center 1945 7 101
- 12 CHAVEZ I Enfermedades del Cora on Cirugia
y Embarazo Mexico Ed de el Colegio Nac
1945
- 13 LEVINE S A The Cardiac Patient as a Surgical
or Obstetrical Risk In Strouss Cardiovascu
lar Disease Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 14 LELAND A A WEYL H AND GOLDMANN
M R Circ 1952 5 363 and Ann Int
Med 1952 37 1771
- 15 GOLDMANN M R Am J Obst & Gynec
1953 65 314

Action of Drugs Used in The Treatment of the Cardiac Patient

Digitalis

Various plants contain substances whose action on the myocardium is similar to that of digitalis. For this reason their active principles are called *digitalis bodies* in spite of their different origins. The most important plants and their principles are listed in tables 22 and 23. To these should be added *contallaria majalis*, *apocynum cannabinum*, *adonis vernalis*, *elliborus niger*, *theclia nerifolia* and *cerbera odollam* (27) which are less frequently used.

The active principles of these drugs are *glycosides*; each represents the combination of an *aglycone* with one or more molecules of sugar. While the main activity is in the glycone, the sugars control the utilization and potency of the principle.

Rapid advances in the chemistry of cardiac glycosides finally resulted in their isolation (1). Pure glycosides can be used with greater accuracy of dose and constancy of action.

MAJOR ACTIONS OF THE CARDIAC GLYCOSIDES (3, 4, 5)

The action of digitalis bodies has been studied on: a) isolated hearts or papillary muscle; b) heart-lung preparations; c) intact animal; d) normal human beings and e) cardiac patients.

The digitalis bodies act mainly upon the heart but also exert important action on the nervous system and the vessels. They have a *direct action* on the heart, one through the autonomic nervous system (*neurogenic effect*) the other directly on the myocardium (*myogenic effect*). The latter is the most important (Fig. 309).

Digitalis has the following cardiac effects: a) depresses the power of creating stimuli in the atria; b) depresses the conduction of stimuli; c) stimulates the irritability of the ventricles; and d) stimulates the force of contraction.

Digitalis has multiple vascular effects resulting in constriction of the veins, pooling of blood in the hepatic splanchnic reservoir and decrease of venous return (67). The vascular effects are prompt and may be useful in the first phase of treatment. However they represent only a component of the complex digitalis effect.

It has been stated that digitalis decreases the cholinesterase content of the tissue (71); therefore longer persistence of acetylcholine would be followed by parasympathetic effects in all tissues including the heart. However clinical determination of serum cholinesterase does not seem to confirm this theory (72).

Whatever the mechanism, digitalis stimulates various medullary centers including the center of the vagus nerve and moreover seems to stimulate the chemoreceptors of the carotid body. Thus a *triple vagal action* takes place: direct reflex from the carotid body and reflex from the heart itself (Fig. 310).

There is discussion concerning the role of therapeutic doses of digitalis in correcting the potassium losses associated with heart failure. On the whole it seems that digitalis increases the amount of K in the heart. However toxic doses of digitalis drive potassium from the heart muscle (73).

In animal experiment the effect of digitalis can be divided into three successive

TABLE 22

PLANT	PART	ACTIVE PRINCIPLES
<i>Digitalis purpurea</i>	Leaves	Digitoxin Gitoxin Gitalin
<i>Digitalis lanata</i>	Leaves	Digitoxin† Gitoxin† Digoxin†
<i>Strophanthus Kombe</i>	Seeds	Strophanthin
<i>Strophanthus gratus</i> (<i>acocanthera oua</i> <i>bata</i>)	Seeds	Oxbrain
<i>Urginea maritima</i> (<i>Scilla maritima</i>)	Bulb	Scillaren (uriginin)

† Acetylated

TABLE 23

DIGITALIS PURPUREA	DIGITALIS LANATA
Complex of purpurea glycosides	<div> <div> Digitoxin Gitoxin Gitalin </div> <div> ←→ ←→ ←→ </div> <div> Acetyl digitoxin = lanatoside A Acetyl gitoxin = lanatoside B Acetyl digoxin = lanatoside C </div> </div>
	Complex of lanatosides (digiland)

stages according to the intensity of action. The 2nd and 3rd stages should be considered as due to toxic effects.

1st stage There is increased force of ventricular contraction (increased ventricular excitability (occasional premature contractions) and decreased conduction (prolonged P R)).

2nd stage The ventricular rhythm becomes slow and irregular because of periodic A V block or periodic premature contractions (bigeminal rhythm). The ventricular systoles are powerful but cardiac output may not be increased on account of bradycardia.

3rd stage There is rapid heart action (sinus or ventricular tachycardia) or there may be multiple irregular, premature beats. Later on atrial fibrillation frequently occurs and ventricular flutter followed by fibrillation, terminates cardiac activity.

Microscopic studies of the heart after its

action is stopped, reveal severe myocardial damage (degenerative changes) (8, 21) ¹¹

Digitalis shortens myocardial fibers decreasing their diastolic length and contributing to decrease of cardiac volume (22)

Digitalis increases the force of systolic contractions in isolated mammalian heart, heart lung preparations and isolated papillary muscle. If the heart is failing the ventricles empty more completely after digitalis.

The simplest explanation of digitalis action in heart failure is the following: *digitalis increases the proportion of chemical energy which is converted into mechanical work*; this increases cardiac output and decreases venous pressure (9) ¹⁴ (fig. 309). The increased efficiency of work is revealed by reduced oxygen consumption.

The effect of digitalis on heart rate is not the principal action of this drug. Slowing of the heart in experimental animals and normal individuals is mostly due to a carotid body-vagal reflex (10) in patients with congestive failure it is mainly due to cardio-vagal and venous vagal reflexes because *digitalis removes the cause of tachycardia by restoring compensation* (5).

Digitalis has a limited action on the rate of the normal heart and on sinus tachycardia.

* It is interesting to note that prolonged stimulation of the vagus causes myocardial damage which is similar to that caused by digitalis.

* The early effect of digitalis consists of decreased amplitude of ventricular contractions and decreased cardiac output as revealed by electrokymograms and ballistocardiograms (26). This effect seems due to initial venoconstriction and decreased venous return. Later (from 1 to 3 hours following i.v. administration) the stimulating effect on the myocardium becomes evident.

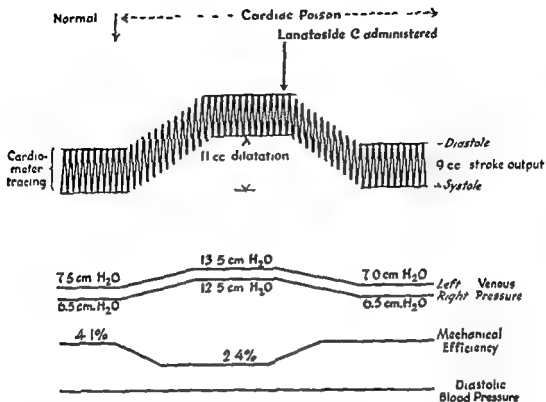


FIG. 309. Experimental heart failure in a heart lung preparation and the effect of digitalis (after Fahr)

However toxic doses of digitalis may affect the S A node and cause bradycardia.

Atrioventricular conduction is decreased by clinical doses of digitalis. Prolongation of the P R interval is partly due to vagal action and partly to direct effect on the conduction system. Toxic doses of digitalis may cause A V block.

The ventricular rates of patients with atrial fibrillation are slowed by digitalis. Both vagal and direct effects contribute to blocking atrial impulses thereby preventing them from reaching the ventricles (11). The vagal factor is not essential because this result is not prevented by atropine (11) (fig 310). Moreover digitalis effect in atrial fibrillation occurs only in the presence of heart failure, its useful action is due to improvement of the circulation and decrease of cardiac volume. The vagus stimulating action of digitalis is a deterrent because it favors

atrial fibrillation in the presence of anoxia or rapid atrial stimuli (64).

Heart size is reduced by digitalis by three mechanisms: a) decreased venous return b) reduced diastolic length of the fibers (55) and c) more powerful contractions. As a result residual blood is decreased (65).

Cardiac output is decreased by digitalis in normal hearts. It is increased in failing hearts (> 12-63) but only after initial decrease (56). Stroke volume is increased and systolic ejection is more complete following the initial stage. The increase in output is independent of cardiac rate and rhythm.

Venous pressure and right atrial pressure (23) are decreased by digitalis. This effect is due to both venoconstriction and improvement of cardiac function (13-23-56).

Circulating blood volume is decreased by digitalis partly through increased diuretic

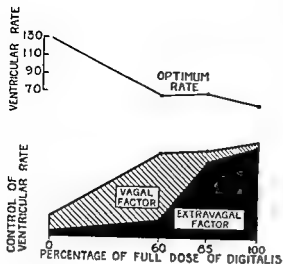


FIG 310 Schematic representation of the mechanism by which digitalis slows the ventricular rate in patients with atrial fibrillation and congestive failure (From Gold and Otto and Fox *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1939 Courtesy of the authors.)

and partly through other complex mechanisms.

Pulmonary arterial pressure is temporarily increased in cor pulmonale; it returns to below previous level as soon as a general improvement of circulation has taken place (57).

Diastolic pressure of the ventricles ruled by failure returns to zero after digitalis (57, 58). This fact is connected with a marked decrease of residual blood (65).

Blood pressure is increased in animals by toxic doses of digitalis. In human beings blood pressure is decreased if there has been stimulation of the vasomotor center (anoxemia); it is increased if there has been low blood pressure due to heart failure. Therefore no consistent effect can be noted and no possible danger of increasing hypertension is to be feared.

Small doses of digitalis dilate the coronary arteries (14). However large doses of digitalis may decrease the coronary circulation by stimulating the vagus nerve. Strophanthum seems to have less constricting action on the coronary vessels than digitalis (46).

Diuretic action. No diuresis is obtained by

the use of digitalis except in the presence of heart failure. Therefore digitalis is not a true diuretic. On the other hand one of the main actions of digitalis is mobilization of edema fluid and promotion of intense diuresis. The most important effect is obtained by decreasing the hydrostatic pressure in the capillaries (page 61), the main cause of peripheral edema. Cessation of renal stasis is an additional element. Dilatation of the renal vessels due to digitalis may increase glomerular filtration (15).

ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHIC CHANGES

These consist of modifications of rate and rhythm, and changes of the T wave. Depression of T may occur within a few hours. Later T may become flat and then inverted (16). However this is actually due to the fact that ST becomes depressed and makes a sharp angle with the basal line (fig 311). These typical digitalis changes may occur in all limb leads as well as in the precordial lead. Patients with myocardial damage frequently present ST and T changes in V_1 and V_4 , indicating anterolateral ischemia. A method of evaluation of the digitalis effect on the heart has been based upon the ECG changes observed in patients (11).

Digitalis shortens the QT interval; it may prolong PR. Toxicity is revealed by ventricular premature contraction (frequently bigeminal), ventricular tachycardia or in complete AV block (fig 311).

DISTRIBUTION AND EXCRETION OF DIGITALIS GLYCOSIDES

The various digitalis glycosides behave differently after absorption. About 10 per cent of a given dose of digitoxin is excreted in the bile while about 50 per cent is destroyed in the body with a combined maximum of about 60 micrograms in 24 hours (73). Normal subjects and compensated patients excrete in the urine about 30 to 40 per cent of the daily dose (usually less than 10 micrograms). Patients exhibiting toxic phenomena excrete over twice as much as the

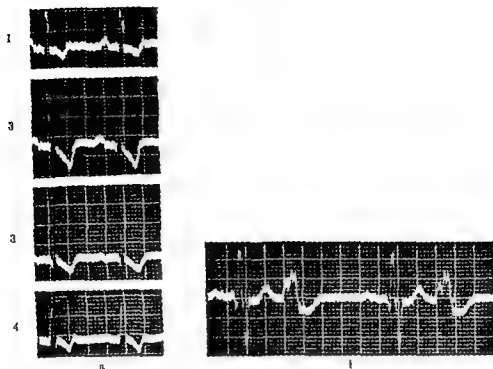


FIG. 311 Electrocardiographic effect of digitalis: a) depression of ST and inversion of T; short QT; b) toxic effect: long PR; bigeminal rhythm.

others (usually between 50 and 100 micrograms). Elderly patients have a poor excretion and seldom excrete more than 30 micrograms (74). Thus urinary bio assay may differentiate toxic phenomena due to overdosage from those due to poor excretion.

TOXIC EFFECTS OF DIGITALIS

The symptoms and signs of overdosage of digitalis are the following:

a) Signs of hyperactivity of the gastrointestinal tract (nausea, vomiting and occasionally diarrhea).

b) Early cardiac phenomena consisting of bradycardia and bigeminal rhythm (fig. 311).

c) Late cardiac phenomena consisting of sinus or ventricular tachycardia, atrial fibrillation or heart block.

d) Vision is often blurred (color vision may be disturbed so that colored objects appear white or yellowed; fluores frequently blue or red).

e) Terminal phenomena: ventricular fibrillation followed by death.

Toxic doses of digitalis affect conduction recovery as does quinidine; they decrease excitability and conductivity of the atria, node and ventricles (84). However, when the rate of discharge of stimuli is very rapid as in atrial flutter, toxic doses of digitalis increase the rate of discharge and thus favor atrial fibrillation.

Gastrointestinal disturbances are partly the result of vagal stimulation and partly the effect of direct irritant effect on the gastrointestinal tract. Therefore their cessation may be obtained in four ways: a) by carefully checking whether the patient is receiving too much digitalis and decreasing the dose; b) by switching to a glycoside with greater therapeutic ratio (gitalin, acetyl glycosides); c) by using the intravenous route; and d) by administering atropine.

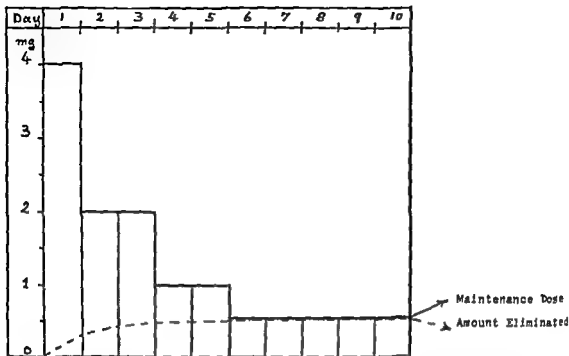


FIG 312 Digitalis administration. The rectangles indicate the dose of a digitalis glycoside given every day. The dotted line indicates the amount of the glycoside which is eliminated in 24 hours.

The other toxic phenomena and particularly the *ectopic rhythms* can be limited or offset by: a) daily oral administration of 5 to 10 gm of *potassium chloride* (68) b) i.v. injections of *magnesium sulfate* (10-20 cc of a 20 per cent solution) (69) and c) i.v. injections of *procaine amide* (70).

Digitalis favors thrombosis by shortening the clotting time (48). This is particularly important in elderly patients with coronary heart disease.

RULES OF DIGITALIS ADMINISTRATION

Digitalis administration is accomplished by keeping in mind the two following rules:

1) Digitalis and the digitalis bodies are eliminated slowly; therefore, if administered daily, they tend to accumulate in the body. Administration of daily doses which are harmless in themselves may cause toxic symptoms after a certain time.

2) Nevertheless, digitalis and the digitalis bodies are gradually excreted and destroyed. If, after reaching a satisfactory result, only

that dose is given which corresponds to the daily elimination, no further accumulation takes place.

Daily elimination varies (16b, c, 18). Slow excretion is usual in elderly patients or persons with impaired renal function; individual variations are common. Changes of the renal circulation cause changes in the excretion of digitalis. Moreover, the amount of digitalis excreted is a fraction of the amount existing in the blood. Therefore, its elimination rate increases at first, then becomes more or less constant.

The following rules are the result of the previous considerations:

a) Administration of a high dose during the first days until the blood level is sufficiently high and the first therapeutic results are obtained (*initial digitalization*).

b) Later on, administration of a daily dose which is theoretically equivalent to the dose destroyed or eliminated in 1 day (*maintenance dose*). The basis for these two principles is sketched in fig. 312.

BIO ASSAY AND UNITAGE

Standardization of digitalis and digitalis like drugs was first performed on frogs. The end point was the systolic arrest of the ventricle in 1 hour. One USP or International Unit is the equivalent of 0.1 gm. of the International Standard Digitalis Powder.

A second method is the intravenous cat method now official in the USP. Standardization is made by comparing the lethal dose of the digitalis preparation under assay with that of ouabain (original method) or a digitalis preparation of known potency (USP). One cat unit is equivalent to 0.1 gm. of the USP Digitalis Reference Standard.

It should be kept in mind that the original coincidence between 1 cat unit and 0.1 gm. of digitalis was fortuitous and that no conversion is possible between grams and cat units. On the other hand, the isolated cardiac glycosides are measured in milligrams and have constant action by a given weight. The best assay is after all made in patients and all rules concerning digitalis bodies are approximate.

The serum or urinary level of digitalis glycosides can be determined by means of a biological method based on the microscopic observation of embryonic duck hearts (66).

THE DIGITALIS LIKE BODIES

In spite of the fundamental similarity between the various digitalis bodies there are certain differences which have clinical interest.

a) The glycosides of *Digitalis lanata* are absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract less effectively than those of *Digitalis purpurea*. On the other hand they have a lower power of accumulation and are eliminated more rapidly.

b) *Gitalin* has an intermediate position between digoxin and strophanthin as far as accumulation and elimination are concerned (56, 59). It has a unique position because of its high therapeutic range (59).²⁶

²⁶ The therapeutic range is the ratio in terms of

c) acetylated preparations seem to have a greater therapeutic ratio. In this respect acetyl digoxin (lanatoside C) seems to be superior to digoxin (60) acetyl digitoxin (lanatoside A) superior to digitoxin (61).

d) *Strophanthin* and *ouabain* act more rapidly than *digitoxin*; their effect also disappears more rapidly because their power of accumulation is lower. They can be used only by intravenous injection.

e) The glycosides of *scilla* are active both by mouth and injection. They can be compared to those of *strophanthus* but have an even lower rate of accumulation and a higher rate of excretion. It has been stated that their diuretic action is greater because they also act directly on the renal epithelium (1b).

The use of pure glycosides has caused the marketing of different preparations. The following are the best known.

Digitoxin (purodigin Wyeth) *digitoxin* (Merck or Parke and Davis) *crystodigin* Lilly (2, 3) *digitaline* Natuelle).

Digoxin (digoxin Burroughs and Wellcome) (4) *acetyl digoxin* (cedilanid Sandoz) (5, 6).

Gitalin (gitaligin White Lab. Inc.) (7, 8).

Total glycosides of Digitalis lanata (digitaland Sandoz).

Total glycosides of Digitalis purpurea (digifoline Ciba) *digalen* Roche).

Strophanthin (K. strophanthin Abbott) (9) *strophosid* Sandoz (9) *ouabaine* Arnaud or Lilly).

Glycosides of scilla (*scillaren* Sandoz) (10) *urginin* Calco).

Digitalization can be not only initiated but also maintained by intravenous injections (see table 24). However, this method is usually adopted only for limited periods on account of practical disadvantages.

The maintenance dose consists of about 0.12 gm. of leaf (one pill) and of between 0.1 and 0.3 mg. of the different glycosides (one pill). This dose may have to be doubled

per cent between the amount of digitalis preparation required for therapeutic effect and the total dose required for toxicity (59).

TABLE 21

PREPARATION USED	INTERVAL BETWEEN DOSE EFFECT (1 YEAR 1 J)	SPEED OF ACTION (L.T.R.V INJECT)	DURATION OF ACTION	PERCENT AGE AB- SORBED (BY MOUTH)	RATE OF ACCUMU- LATION	SPEED OF ELIMINA- TION	DIGESTION	CORONARY CON- STRICTION (FOR LARGE DOSES ONLY)	TERA- PEUTIC RATIO
	<i>h</i>		<i>d ys</i>						
Digitoxin	6	+	19	100	++++	+	+	++	55
Digoxin	4	++	~	15-20	+++	++	++	++	81
Gitalin	2	+++	3	100 ?	++	+++	++	?	87
Quabain	1	++++	2	5 ?	+	+++	++	—	—
Scillaren	1	+++	2	15-20 ?	+	++++	+++	?	—

TABLE 22 Average oral digitalization

	DIGITALIS POW- ER (PILLS)	DIGITOXIN (7 PILLS)	LA-TOXIDE C (TABLETS)	GT LI (TABLETS)	TRONDI- (7 PILLS)
Maximum initial dose (1st 24 hrs)	6 = 0.6 gm	6 = 0.6 mg	6 = 3 mg	6 = 3 mg	6 = 3 m
Medium maintenance dose (2nd and 3rd day)	4 = 0.4 gm	4 = 0.4 mg	3 = 1.5 mg	3 = 1.5 mg	6 = 1.5 m
Total dose (3 days)	1.4 gm	1.4 mg	6 mg	6 mg	6 m
Maintenance daily dose (subsequent days)	2 = 0.2 gm	1-2 = 0.1-0.2 mg	1 = 0.5 mg	1 = 0.5 mg	1 = 0.5 m

(or more) in some cases or it may be too high. It should be emphasized that the optimal dose is usually far below the toxic level.

Maintenance with *gitalin* (89) offers the minimum danger of accumulation with secondary toxic symptoms.

Strophanthin may be employed with success in patients with toxic symptoms from digitalis. Switching from digitalis to *strophanthin* and giving one intravenous injection every 12 hours for 7 to 15 days gives the patient the benefits of digitalization with less discomfort. Returned to an oral maintenance dose of *digitalis*, he may then continue his improvement. A similar procedure can be used by switching from *digitoxin* to *gitalin* (after a 3 to 4 day interval of rest).

Table 22 gives the main differences between the various glycosides. It has been partly composed from data of others (20, 26), and partly from personal data (26).

ROUTES OF ADMINISTRATION

The oral route is used commonly except for *strophanthin* preparations. Intramuscular injections are used infrequently because of the pain caused by the drugs. Intravenous administration is imperative in the case of *strophanthin*, optional for the others. Rectal administration gives satisfactory results.

METHODS OF DIGITALIZATION

Digitalis is given in a large initial dose and then decreased in order to maintain the effects.

The rapid digitalization method (19) gives an average of 20 cat units per 150 pound of weight within 24 to 48 hours. A later study (20) described the dose as about 12 gm (USP VI) of the leaf, one third of which can be given immediately (4 tablets of 0.1 gm) and the rest within 36 to 48 hours. The dose is then dropped to 0.1 or 0.2 gm.

TABLE 26 Intravenous digitalization

	DIGITOXIN 0.4 mg = 4 cc	CE LA ID 0.8 mg = 4	GIT LIN 3 mg = 4	OGA MIN 0.5 mg = 1 cc	SCILL N 1 mg = 2 c
	A	A	A	A	A
Interval between 1st and 2nd iv injection	12	12	24	6	6
Interval between 2nd and 3rd iv injection	24	24	48	12	12
Intervals between injections (after the 3rd)	96	72	48	12	12

(U.S.P. XI) from two to three times daily. It should be emphasized that these doses may vary between one half and twice the indicated average dose.

Digitalization may be started by an intravenous injection of *strophanthin* (9) *ouabain* or *cedilanid* (6) followed by the oral administration of digitalis.

Slower digitalization can be obtained by an initial dose of 6 tablets of *digitoxin* (2) *digitalid* *cedilanid* (3) *digoxin* (1) *gitalin* (7) or *scillaren* (10). Four tablets are given in the second and third day (see table 26) so that full digitalization is obtained in 3 to 4 days.⁸⁶ This method entails smaller risk than with rapid digitalization (single dose or 2 day method).

Good results are obtained by diluting one

ampule of *strophanthin* or *gitalin* in 10 cc (0.24 gm) of *aminophyllin* solution. This decreases the possible dangers of the injection (24) which however have been observed in the past only because of excessive dosage or high rapidity of injection.

Gitalin is better tolerated than other glycosides and causes toxicity less frequently. *Lanatoside C* follows (24) while *digitoxin* causes the greatest incidence of paroxysmal tachycardia, premature contractions or atrial fibrillation.

Digitalis should be employed by following a few guiding suggestions:

a) The best use for digitalis is found in congestive failure.

b) The improvement of the patient may take place even if the ventricular rate is not decreased and if atrial fibrillation is still present.

c) The best result from digitalis is obtained in mitral patients with congestive failure and atrial fibrillation. Patients with aortic stenosis follow. Its administration in hypertensive and coronary heart disease with failure obtains only fair results. Heart failure in patients with cardiovascular syphilis yields poorly to digitalis.

d) Whenever acute myocarditis is present (rheumatic disease, diphtheria, etc.) digitalis administration is not followed by impressive results. Large doses of digitalis are contraindicated because the myocardium is excitable and easily damaged. *Gitalin* is well tolerated in children with carditis.

e) Large doses of digitalis are contraindicated in the first stage following coronary

Administration of digitalis to children should be governed by the following considerations:

a) Children require from 1.5 to 2 times larger doses than adults in comparison with their weight (24, 67). Adolescents require the same doses by weight.

b) Children have a very excitable vagus nerve (54).

c) Heart failure in children is often connected with myocardial lesions (rheumatic disease, diphtheria) which cause increased cardiac excitability.

For the reasons the following doses may be used in comparison with adults:

Nurslings	$\frac{1}{6}$ of adult dose
1 to 3 yr	$\frac{1}{4}$ of adult dose
3 to 6 yr	$\frac{1}{3}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ of adult dose
6 to 12 yr	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 adult dose

It should be kept in mind that these are merely approximate doses and that in children even more than in adults the dose should be adapted to the individual case.

occlusion. In later stages digitalis is better tolerated if it is given together with quinidine.

f) In heart failure of myxedema, hyperthyroidism, thiamine deficiency, pericarditis with effusion, and adhesive pericarditis, digitalis obtains only moderate results.

g) Digitalis can be given in partial heart block, but its dosage should be studied carefully in order not to overstimulate the vagus. It may be given safely in complete block. (21)

h) In most patients, digitalization may be more effective if given slowly than by the rapid method. After initial relief, there is no harm in waiting 4 or 5 days before complete relief from failure is obtained. Slower digitalization prevents the possible occurrence of myocardial lesions and allows a better evaluation of the sensitivity of the patient.

i) If the patient received digitalis within 10 days prior to a new treatment, smaller doses should be used.

j) Prophylactic use of digitalis in patients who might present heart failure at some future time has been advocated. The author recommends this only for cardiac patients who become pregnant (last 3 months) or cardiac patients who cannot avoid severe, although occasional, exertion. In patients leading a normal life, prophylactic use of digitalis for many years may not prevent heart failure while at the same time may deprive the physician of the full freedom of use of one of his most powerful weapons. Therefore, it should be advised against.

Quinidine (28-76)

Quinidine is one of the alkaloids found in the cinchona bark and is an optical isomer of quinine (24).

The action of quinidine on the cardiac muscle can be summarized as follows: a) It increases the refractory period. b) It decreases excitability. c) It slows conduction. d) It may slow the rate. e) It may depress contractility (large doses only). In addition,

quinidine depresses the vagus nerve. For this reason, tachycardia may result.

Quinidine is absorbed readily from the intestinal tract and is rapidly eliminated in the urine. As a rule, the peak of its action takes place from 2 to 8 hours after administration of one dose; the effect begins to subside in 4 hours and is half-dissipated in 8 hours. The frequency of administration is important. *Two 2 hour doses are the most effective; they obtain a cumulative effect which continues throughout the following 12 hours.* Thus, the following morning, a fair percentage of quinidine is still in the blood and blood concentration increases each day.

Determination of plasma level of quinidine has been used as a guide to treatment. Conversion to sinus rhythm was usually obtained with an average plasma level of 0.4 mg per liter. Toxicity is rare at levels below 6 to 8 mg per liter while it is not unusual at levels between 10 and 15 mg per liter.

The best average dosage is 0.4 gm (6 gr) four to six times a day (2 to 2.5 hour intervals) and no administration during the night.

Toxic reactions are usually caused by overdosage and include nausea, dizziness, vascular collapse, conduction disturbance, sinus tachycardia, or ventricular arrhythmias. However, *idiosyncrasy* to quinidine may occur. In such cases, even a small dose may cause cyanosis, dizziness, nausea, and vomiting.

Embolism caused by the dislodgement of mural thrombi is a possibility when the heart reverts to normal rhythm. However, this danger has been overemphasized and a similar possibility is present with digitalis or without therapy.

Quinidine may cause small deformation of the P waves and prolongation of P-R. Large doses may cause deformation of QRS and occasional changes of S-T and T similar to those caused by digitalis (33).

Ventricular standstill or fibrillation with fatal result has been described in a few cases. These, however, are rare occurrences.

Quinidine is said to be contraindicated in

thyroid patient (until after thyroidectomy) in elderly people in acute infections in subacute bacterial endocarditis and in patients with a history of emboli. However these are not absolute contraindications.

Because of the frequent need of employing digitalis and quinidine on the same patient either in alternate periods or in combination a comparison of the principal effects of them is useful.

Quinidine acts like digitalis in favoring A-V block. If digitalis and quinidine are given together they may obtain a greater effect in this direction. Quinidine decreases excitability and contractility (which are increased by digitalis). For this reason quinidine may counteract some of the unwanted effects of digitalis while digitalis can prevent an excessive depression of the contractility due to quinidine.

In general if a patient has *congestive failure and atrial fibrillation* it is advisable to digitalize him first. When the signs of congestion have subsided digitalis will be continued and quinidine given.

After myocardial infarction simultaneous use of quinidine and digitalis is necessary if congestive failure and atrial fibrillation are present (page 430).

Quinidine is the drug of choice in the treatment of *atrial fibrillation*. By increasing the refractory period of the atrial myocardium it blocks an increasing number of impulses until the atria become still. Then the sinus node again becomes the pacemaker and initiates a normal rhythm.

The use of quinidine in *atrial flutter* is advised against by many cardiologists. The slowing of the atrial rate may allow the conduction of all atrial impulses to the ventricles while before quinidine only one half of them were conducted. Doubling of the ventricular rate with severe disturbance to the patient may result. However in certain cases quinidine has been used with good results.

The use of quinidine in *ventricular tachycardia* is recommended. However in some

cases only intravenous administration is effective. Pronestyl seems superior to quinidine in the *r* cases.

Quinidine is often useful in the treatment of *premature beats*. It can be given alone or in combination with other drugs. After a normal rhythm is reestablished a maintenance dose of 0.2 to 0.6 gm daily can be given for long periods of time. Symptomatic administration with small doses can be prolonged for years without untoward effects.

Parenteral administration is possible but is necessary only in exceptional cases. Available preparations include 10 per cent quinidine in *urra antipyrine* (36), 20 per cent quinidine in *propylene glycol* and 8 per cent quinidine gluconate (23) (0.8 gm in 10 cc) (30).

Fagarine (77)

Fagarine extracted from a plant growing in Argentina has been recommended for depressing ectopic foci.

While intramuscular injections of between 0.05 and 0.12 gm are frequently effective there is a severe danger of causing ventricular fibrillation. Therefore fagarine cannot be recommended for routine clinical use.

Procaine Amide (78)

Procaine amide hydrochloride has been used by mouth or by vein in order to depress excessive excitability of the myocardium (26, 27).

Ectopic rhythms of ventricular origin including ventricular tachycardia, ventricular premature contractions, ventricular flutter and ventricular fibrillation can be successfully treated with this drug. Ectopic rhythms of atrial or nodal origin respond less well even though some favorable reports are available. Slowing of the atrial rate has been noted in atrial fibrillation.

The protective value of procaine amide during cardiac surgery, cardiac catheterization or surgery in general is well established.

No important toxic symptoms occur and there is no stimulation of the central nervous

system. Moderate hypotension occurs if there is no anesthesia. Contractility of the myocardium is not depressed even by large doses. However, the drug seems to present some danger if there are disturbances of conduction.

Oral administration (27) consists of 0.2 to 0.50 gm (1 to 2 capsules) every 4 to 6 hours.

Intravenous administration (26) of 100 to 500 mg (1-5 cc) is well tolerated. Decreased voltage of all waves and prolongation of the QRS and QT intervals were noted in some cases lasting not more than 30 minutes.

Anticoagulants

Observation that thromboembolic phenomena cause a terminal fatal episode in many patients suffering from myocardial infarction or thrombophlebitis has led to the use of anticoagulants in the course of several cardiovascular diseases.

HEPARIN (79)

Heparin is a physiologic anticoagulant (63). It is extracted from the liver and is active only if given by intravenous injection. *Heparin seems to act on prothrombin and is neutralized by thrombinase.*

Following determination of clotting time of the whole blood, 50 mg of heparin in 50 to 100 cc of physiologic saline are slowly injected into a vein. Clotting times are repeated 15 minutes and 2½ hours after administration. In general, 50 to 75 mg of heparin are given every 3 to 4 hours for 2 days. Clotting time is checked daily.

DICUMAROL (79-80)

Dicumarol is a hydroxicoumarin which inhibits formation of prothrombin in the liver if administered by mouth (64). The inhibition is temporary and there are other less important effects on coagulation. While determination of clotting time is an adequate test, that of *prothrombin time* (page 166) is more reliable. However, even this test is not a perfect guide for therapy and *some of the disadvantages which are currently noted should*

be avoided in the future if better tests are devised.

The effect of dicumarol is delayed for 12 to 72 hours after administration and may persist for a similar time after the last dose has been ingested.

While the effect of dicumarol may be increased (hepatic or renal insufficiency) or decreased (diseases of or surgery on the gastrointestinal tract) by several factors, other unpredictable elements vary the sensitivity of the patients to the drug.

Initial dose is 300 mg. Two hundred mg are given in one dose each of the subsequent days until prothrombin time drops below 20 per cent. On days when concentration of prothrombin is less than 20 per cent no drug should be given. Concentrations of prothrombin between 10 and 20 per cent are considered optimal for therapy. If prothrombin drops below 10 per cent, 30 mg of *menadione bisulfite* (66) should be given by vein and this usually brings the level to above 10 per cent.

Since heparin acts more rapidly than dicumarol, it is advisable to start administration of heparin and dicumarol at the same time. As soon as dicumarol becomes effective, heparin is discontinued.

OTHER ANTICOAGULANTS

Other anticoagulant drugs are less well known. Among them are the following:

Tromexan (65) is another hydroxicoumarin for oral use (81). It acts more rapidly than dicumarol. Initial dose is 1,500 to 1,800 mg. Subsequent daily doses are from 300 to 900 mg.

Treburon (82) can be administered subcutaneously or intravenously and prolongs the coagulation of the entire blood. It resembles heparin and is counteracted by *protamine sulfate* given by vein. Intravenous doses are in the range of 200 mg.

Diuretics

All substances appear in the glomerular filtrate because of *diffusion* while an active

readorption occurs later in the tubules. Therefore increased flow of urine may be due to increased filtration decreased readorption or both. As 99 per cent of the glomerular filtrate is readsorbed later *one per cent decrease in tubular adsorption doubles the amount of urine a result which is attained only by a 100 per cent increase of glomerular filtration*. For this reason the greatest importance is usually attributed to changes of tubular function.

A WATER—NEUTRAL SALTS

Water and neutral salts are considered to be diuretics. However their use may be harmful in cardiac patients.

B AMMONIUM CHLORIDE

This salt acts by splitting into ammonium and chloride ions. The former is converted into urea, the latter combines with the sodium liberated from the sodium bicarbonate of the blood and causes *acidosis* (30). While there is increased excretion of fixed base in the urine accompanied by water acidosis also results in diuresis (30).

This mechanism cannot be used too often as it requires a period of recovery. There fore ammonium chloride is given in a large dose (8–12 gm daily for 2–3 days) but at intervals of not less than 5 days. Ammonium chloride potentiates the action of mercurial diuretics and for this reason is frequently associated with them. It is usually given in enteric coated tablets (13). It should not be given in cases of nephritis. It may cause nausea, vomiting, or abdominal distress.

C XANTHINES (CAFFEINE THEOBROMINE THEOPHYLLINE AMINOPHYLLIN)

These drugs have a multiple diuretic action: they cause dilatation of the renal vessels (31) and increase the number of the functioning glomeruli (32); they also markedly *decrease the tubular readorption of fluid* (34). From studies in man the latter mechanism seems the most important (35).

The xanthines have various side effects.

They stimulate the central nervous system and the myocardium. They dilate both the peripheral and the coronary arteries. Peripheral dilatation is partly antagonized by stimulation of the vasoconstrictor center.

These different properties vary with each drug. Caffeine is the best nervous stimulant, theophylline the best diuretic and aminophyllin the best vasodilator.

The doses employed are:

Caffeine with sodium benzoate 0.3 gm by mouth 0.2 by injection (60).

Theobromine with sodium salicylate (diuretin) 1 gm by mouth.

Theophylline (or theocin) 0.25 gm.

Theophylline with ethylene diamine (aminophyllin) 0.10 to 0.25 gm by mouth 0.25 to 0.50 by iv injection (42). 0.5 gm by suppository (41).

D MERCURIAL DIURETICS

In spite of marked extrarenal action of these drugs the main site of action is renal (34–37). There is decreased tubular readorption which may represent an early stage of the toxic action that larger doses of mercury develop in the kidney. For this reason careful dosage and a sufficient interval between injections are advisable.

Intravenous injections of mercurial diuretics cause a sudden drop of pressure in the venous system, the right atrium and ventricle and the pulmonary artery (85). This drop which may reach 50 per cent was observed in rheumatic and hypertensive patients not in chronic cor pulmonale or constrictive pericarditis (85). This effect seems due to a peripheral action.

Minimal toxicity can be obtained by using thimerin (83) (12) or cumertin (84).

Oral, rectal, intramuscular or intravenous administration can be used. The latter however is the most effective.

Diuresis usually starts within 2 to 3 hours and continues for 12 to 24 hours. Untoward reactions consist of signs of mercurial poisoning (stomatitis, colitis, headache, nausea, albuminuria, hematuria). Mercurial di-

TABLE 27

NITRITE	ROUTE OF ADMINISTRATION	DOSE	TIME OF ONSET OF ACTION (MINUTES)	DURATION OF ACTION
Amyl nitrite	Inhalation	0.2 cc	½ to 1	4 to 8 minutes
Nitroglycerine	Perlingual	0.5 mg	1 to 2	25 to 40 minutes
Sodium nitrite	Oral	30 to 60 mg	5 to 20	1 to 2½ hours
Erythrityl tetranitrate	Oral	30 to 60 mg	15 to 30	3 to 5 hours
Mannitol hexanitrate	Oral	15 to 60 mg	15 to 30	4 to 6 hours

uretics should not be given if the renal function is severely impaired. The dose is from 0.5 to 2 cc.

Oral or rectal administration is far less effective but may still be useful in some cases (94-95).

Vasodilators and Hypotensive Drugs A. NITRITES

The term *nitrites* includes also the *nitrates* because of the fact that the latter owe their action to the fact that nitrite ions are liberated in the body. These drugs have a powerful relaxing action on the smooth muscles of the body. This action is maximal on the vessels (arteries, capillaries, veins) (38) and especially on the small arteries. A secondary fall in blood pressure occurs. The vasodilator action is independent of innervation and does not impair the ability of the vessels to contract in response to stimulation. This applies also to the coronary vessels (39).

The action on the smooth muscles of the bronchi, biliary passages, gastrointestinal and genitourinary tracts is to be considered of secondary importance but may become valuable in the combined diseases of different systems (gastric ulcer or cholecystitis plus coronary heart disease).

Table 27 gives the doses, times of onset and durations of action of various nitrites. As shown by the table, both amyl nitrite (52) and nitroglycerin (53) are useful only in the treatment of acute attacks (angina pectoris). The other drugs (like mannitol (51) or peritrate (50)) may be used both to prevent these attacks and to lower blood pressure. Mannitol hexanitrate is the longest

acting and may be given at a 1-hour interval to keep the vessels under a continuous even if mild vasodilator influence.

Amyl nitrite (52) has such a rapid hypotensive effect that it causes coronary insufficiency in patients with coronary sclerosis (86). This property has been used for testing the function of the coronary vessels (page 129).

B. PAPAVERINE

Papaverine is one of the alkaloids of opium but has no narcotic effects. Its actions on the central nervous system are negligible and the drug causes neither sleep nor analgesia in the usual doses.

Papaverine is used as *papaverine hydrochloride* in doses of 30 to 100 mg. from 2 to 5 times daily *per os*, and in doses of 30 to 60 mg. by intramuscular or intravenous injection (43-44).

Papaverine relaxes the smooth muscles of the body but mainly those of the blood vessels. This relaxation occurs chiefly when the muscles are contracted. The drug markedly increases the coronary flow (39d). Papaverine has been used in coronary heart disease, acute cor pulmonale and many diseases of the peripheral arteries. The drug increases the collateral circulation whenever one vessel is obstructed; it decreases mortality in experimental animals.

Papaverine has a moderate depressive effect on excitability and conductivity of the myocardium. This may be useful in arrhythmias of coronary patients.

Papaverine-like drugs are made synthetically and have similar action.

C KHELLIN

Khellin is the active principle of *Ammodramos* an Arabic plant called Khella. Experimental and clinical observations (89)

show that khellin can be used as a coronary dilator and causes relief of anginal pain. Its action seems to be four times more powerful than that of aminophyllin. Khellin does not lower blood pressure and has few side effects. Usual doses of the commercial preparations (48-49) are one 50 mg tablet daily for 1 week then one or two tablets daily.

D RAUWOLFIA (90)

Rauwolfia the active principle of the Indian plant *Rauwolfia serpentina* has moderate hypotensive and sedative effects (43). The drug is tolerated for long periods. It may cause bradycardia and in large doses diarrhea. Its mechanism of action is poorly understood. Tolerance to the drug does not develop and there seems to be synergism between this and other agents. Combination of rauwolfia with veratrum has given good results.

E ALKALOIDS OF VERATRUM (91)

The alkaloids of *Veratrum viride* include *germifrine*, *germifrine*, *neogermifrine* and *protoveratrine*. The latter has received extensive clinical trial which was compared with that of the total mixture of esters from the plant (46).

These alkaloids stimulate the afferent side of a reflex pathway which controls blood pressure. Nervous receptors of the left ventricle, the coronary arteries, the pulmonary arteries and the carotid and aortic bodies are sensitized so that they send increased stimuli to the vasomotor center. As a result bradycardia and a reflex vasodilation occur. There is no sympathetic paralysis and no postural hypotension.

Intravenous dose of protoveratrine is 1 microgram per minute for several hours or days. Oral protoveratrine (47) is given in a large dose after breakfast (0.1-0.5 mg)

followed by one or two smaller doses (0.25 mg) at 2-3 hour intervals. A fall in blood pressure lasting from 6 to 8 hours is customary. Some degree of nausea is not unusual, dizziness or weakness is possible.

F PRISCOLINE

Priscoline is a 2-benzyl-4,5-imidazoline hydrochloride (54). Intravenous injection of 10 to 50 mg of priscoline causes tachycardia, slight changes of blood pressure and a significant increase of cutaneous blood flow (87). Twenty-five to 75 mg administered orally definitely increase digital blood flow. Priscoline is particularly useful in peripheral vascular diseases.

In general oral doses of 20 to 50 mg are given several times a day.

G ALCOHOL

Ethyl alcohol is a moderate peripheral vasodilator. Its action on the coronary arteries is probably negligible. Most of the useful effect in coronary patients should be attributed to increased threshold of pain (sedation) and euphoria (see also page 430).

Ethanol vapor in oxygen has been advocated in paroxysmal pulmonary edema by the author (88). In such cases the effect is mostly local and based on the antifoaming action of alcohol. Adsorption is minimal and systemic effects extremely limited.

H AMINOPHYLLIN (THEOPHYLLINE WITH ETHYLENE DIAMINE)

The multiple actions of this drug have already been described (page 595). Among them a moderate dilatation of the peripheral arteries is obtained.

Aminophyllin is a stimulant of respiration (action on the carotid body) and is useful in Cheyne-Stokes respiration (page 597) possibly also because it is a vasodilator. Oral aminophyllin has a minor action. The best results are obtained by intravenous injection of 0.25 to 0.50 gm (42) or by suppository (41) (0.50 gm in cocoa butter).

I ACETYL β METHYLCHOLINE (MICHOLYL)

This drug may be useful as a vasodilator in patients with spasms of the peripheral arteries (40) (71). The drug causes a fall of blood pressure. Its action is similar to that of acetylcholine and to stimulation of the parasympathetic system. Therefore it should not be used in coronary heart disease where a coronary constriction may follow its administration. It may have important applications in atrial tachycardia.

J SULFOCYANATES (THIOCYANATES)

Thiocyanates have been used for their hypotensive action. Their efficacy is limited by the fact that the safe limit of serum level is between 11 and 14 mg. per cent while above 15 mg. per cent severe toxic manifestations may appear. For this reason frequent examinations of the serum level of the drug are necessary.

K OTHER VASODILATOR DRUGS

Many other drugs have been described and widely used as vasodilators. However their importance is limited. Among them *pancreas extracts* have had a certain notoriety. However their mild action seems due to the solvent and not to the extract itself.

It should be kept in mind that *sympatholytic drugs* (page 399) are powerful vasodilators.

VASOCONSTRICTORS

A EPINEPHRINE

Epinephrine is still one of the most powerful vasoconstrictors. However it is not the most frequently used because of the short duration of its action and the necessity of using it by injection. It is therefore limited to emergencies.

Epinephrine acts directly on the effector cells of the various organs with results which are similar to those of the adrenergic nerves.

Epinephrine accelerates the heart rate, stimulates the myocardium and increases

the cardiac output. The main action is on the arterioles: those of the skin, of the splanchnic bed, and of the brain are constricted, those of the muscles and the coronary arteries are dilated. The pulmonary arteries tend to constrict by direct effect but are dilated because of increased cardiac work.

A severe increase of systemic blood pressure occurs soon after the injection of epinephrine, followed by carotid sinus reactions which slow down the heart and somewhat lower the blood pressure, at least temporarily.

Clinical tests with epinephrine by subcutaneous and intravenous injection reveal a series of interesting and multiple reactions (41).

Epinephrine in peanut oil has a slower action which may last from 2 to 4 hours.

The usual dose of epinephrine (55) is from 0.5 to 2 mg.

B NOREPINEPHRINE

Norepinephrine differs from epinephrine because of the absence of a methyl group. It has hypertensive and constrictor effects similar to those of epinephrine but less marked stimulating effects on the myocardium. Intravenous dose is 0.03 mg. (56).

C EPHEDRINE

This is an alkaloid derived from various plants and is also prepared synthetically. Ephedrine has the quality of being active when taken by mouth. It has many properties which are identical to and others which differ from those of epinephrine. One of the main differences concerns the duration of action which is much greater than that of epinephrine (57).

D SYMPATHOMIMETIC AMINES

Various synthetic drugs have properties which resemble those of ephedrine. They are *amphetamine (benzedrine)* (58), *neo-synephrin*, *paredrine* and *paredrinol (tertol)* (59).

These drugs act mostly on the venules and

only mildly on the arterioles they do not cause a direct increase of the heart rate moreover the carotid sinus reflex caused by the increased blood pressure frequently lowers the heart rate (42)

Sympatholytics and Adrenolytics

DIBENAMINE (92)

Dibenzamine is an adrenolytic and not a sympatholytic agent. After administration of this drug epinephrine causes no rise and may cause a fall of blood pressure. Tachycardia is not inhibited and may be exaggerated by dibenzamine.

Dibenzamine should be given by slow intravenous infusion in great dilution. A dose of 1 mg per kg may cause orthostatic hypotension lasting 5 or 6 days while supine blood pressure may last for 20 to 24 hours (37).

HYDERGINE (93)

Isolation of the alkaloids of ergot made possible the association of three of them (*dihydroergocornine*, *dihydroergocryptine* and *dihydroergocristine*) having sympatholytic action and no direct vasoconstrictor effect. The compound is called *hydergine* (36). Intravenous injection of 0.2 to 1.0 mg causes a notable fall of supine blood pressure and orthostatic hypotension. Bradycardia is common. Nausea is frequent.

HEXAMETHONIUM (94)

This compound causes a specific paralysis of transmission at the ganglionic synapses. Thus blood pressure is lowered while the effector organs can still respond to direct stimulation. While blood pressure is lowered and orthostatic hypotension is severe several side effects occur including atropine-like effect. Hypotensive effects indicate the existence of neurogenic hypertension. Lack of them the presence of humoral hypertension.

Intravenous doses range from 2.5 to 20 mg (39). Tolerance develops rapidly. Oral administration (40) is effective only in some of the cases.

Hypnotics and Sedatives

A OPIUM AND DERIVATIVES

Opium contains several alkaloids the most active are *morphine*, *codeine* and *papaverine*.

Papaverine has no hypnotic action.

Codeine has a weak analgesic property (less than one sixth that of morphine) causes a slight excitement, no nausea and little euphoria. Its main action is that of depressing the cough reflex while respiration is slowed only slightly and secondary constipation is mild. Codeine is used as *codeine phosphate* in doses of 16 to 60 mg, two to three times a day.

Morphine is the most powerful natural alkaloid of opium. The latter owes its main properties to the fact that it contains an average of 10 per cent of morphine. Morphine exerts a narcotic action manifested by analgesia and sleep.

A selective depression of the respiratory center is one of its most important effects. Relief of pain is another outstanding result. Large doses of morphine cause narcosis but therapeutic doses may excite the patient. Morphine slows down the metabolism and decreases venous return. It may stimulate the vagus nerve.

It has been said that morphine depresses from above downward and stimulates from below upward (1) emphasizing that the maximum of stimulation is observed in the spinal cord while the maximum depression is in the brain. Nausea, vomiting, and bradycardia are some of the effects of the stimulation of the medullary centers.

Morphine is useful in paroxysmal dyspnea and pulmonary edema. It is also beneficial in the early treatment of myocardial infarction. Prevention of untoward effects may be obtained by association with atropine, piperidine or barbiturates.

The constipating effect of morphine may require the use of laxatives. The possibility of creating addiction to morphine makes it

advisable to limit the administration of this drug. Synthetic drugs like *dilaudid* offer little advantage in this respect.

Morphine is given as *morphine sulfate* in doses of 10 to 15 mg, one to three times in 24 hours. Morphine can be given by intravenous injection (43).

Demerol (22-23) has morphine-like and atropine-like properties. Its use in the treatment of cardiovascular diseases does not seem to prevent any particular advantage over that of morphine and atropine except possibly less tendency to addiction.

B. BARBITURATES

The barbiturates are valuable depressants of the central nervous system. They induce calmness, then sleep; they inhibit convulsions and cause partial anesthesia.

Barbiturates have little action on heart rate and blood pressure except by the effect of quieting the patient or inducing sleep. Intravenous injections should be given slowly because a sudden even though transitory drop of pressure may follow a rapid injection.

The action on the brain stem is more powerful and occurs earlier than that on the cortex (44).

C. CHLORAL HYDRATE

Chloral hydrate is a sedative and a soporific. Its ordinary dose is from 1 to 3 gm by mouth (31) or by rectum (33) and from 0.3 to 1 gm by intravenous injection (43a).

This drug causes a quiet sleep, a moderate fall of blood pressure, and does not depress the heart. Its action on the central nervous system is more widespread than that of the barbiturates. Its usefulness in paroxysmal pulmonary edema has been demonstrated both by clinical and experimental studies of the author (45).

D. BROMIDES

Bromides (32) exert a mild depression of the central nervous system through a somewhat obscure mechanism. The dose of *sodium bromide* is from 1 to 3 gm daily. Bromides

are excreted very slowly. It takes a month or longer to eliminate bromides after a full administration.

E. ALCOHOL

Alcohol exerts a depressant action on the central nervous system. The apparent stimulation results from a less restrained action of the lower centers when the higher centers are depressed.

Alcohol causes peripheral vasodilation and it has been stated that the coronary vessels are also dilated (49) but the experimental results are extremely variable (50) and clinical experience in angina pectoris seems to be negative (51).

While alcohol may exert a beneficial action on the mental state of the patient, it should be kept in mind that it may slightly increase pulse rate and blood pressure probably through a reflex mechanism (52).

The action on the heart is variable and is different if the patient is an habitual drinker. Increased heart rate and palpitation is experienced by some. In prescribing alcohol as a drug, the dangers of creating habituation should be considered.

The antifoaming action of alcohol has been used by the author and his coworkers for symptomatic therapy of paroxysmal pulmonary edema (page 560).

Drugs Stimulating the Central Nervous System

The drugs which are used on cardiovascular patients are *coramine* and *metraol*. They stimulate the respiratory and vasomotor centers and may be useful in cases of periodic respiration or vascular collapse. They may be given by mouth or by intramuscular or intravenous injection.

The dose of *metraol* (*cardinal*) is 100 mg, either by mouth or by injection.

Coramine (*nilethamide*) (61) is used in 2 per cent solution; the dose by any route is 1 to 3 cc.

Oxygen

Oxygen therapy has as its purpose the prevention of the harmful effects of tissue

anoxia To maintain a 50 per cent oxygen concentration in a tent a flow of 10 to 10 liters per minute is required Administration by mask under a positive pressure of 2 to 3 cm of water has favorable effects in acute pulmonary edema (47) Oxygen therapy is useful in congestive failure especially when there is continuous dyspnea and after coronary occlusion Its use for about 20 minutes every hour is usually sufficient to relieve dyspnea

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 a) JACOBS W A *Physiol Rev* 1935 13 729
b) STOLL A *The Cardiac Glycosides* London Pharmac Press 1937
c) FISHER I F *The Chemistry of Natural Products Related to Phenanthrene* New York Reinhold 1937
- 2 WITHERING W *An Account of the Fox glove etc* Birmingham McSwainey 1755 (reprinted in *Cardia Classics* St Louis Mosby 1941)
- 3 MEYER H H AND GOTTLIEB R *Experimentelle Pharmakologie* Berlin Urban and Schwarzenberg 1925
- 4 CLASHY A R *Pharmacology and Therapeutics* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1940
- 5 COEDMAN I AND GILMAN A *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* New York Macmillan 1941
- 6 CATTELL M AND GOLD H J *Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1938 62 116
- 7 a) LUNADA A A AND MALTNER H *New England Heart Assoc* May 1944 Also *Acta Pharm Toxic* 1946 2 275
b) RALL J F WELLS J A AND DRUMSTEDT C A *Federation Proc* 1943 2 93 Also *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1944 56 169
- 8 a) WEDEL *Digitalis* Leipzig 1936
b) BUCHNER F *Arch exp Path Pharm* 1931 176 59
c) LA DLY J A J *Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1947 76 1
d) KYSER F A AND CO WORKERS *Am Heart J* 1946 31 451
- 9 a) CREMEIER H *Arch exp Path Pharm* 1933 169 65
b) PETERF H C AND VISCCHER M B *Am Heart J* 1945 31 773
c) WIGGERS C J AND SIMPSON H J *Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1927 30 261
d) FAHR C Mo Conc Cardiovasc Dis 194 14 10
- 10 HEYMANS C AND CO WORKERS *Compt rend Soc Biol* 1937 110 572
- 11 GOLD H AND CO WORKERS *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1973 66 15 and 67 234 *Arch Int Med* 1940 66 263 *J Clin Investigation* 1970 6 613 and 1972 18 499 *J A M A* 1930 95 1237
- 12 STEWART H J AND COHN A F *J Clin Investigation* 1975 6 53 and 1972 19 917
- 13 a) DICK W AND TAINTER M L *J Clin Investigation* 1930 9 467 and 485
b) KATZ I N AND CO WORKERS *Am Heart J* 1939 18 149 Also *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1938 62 1
- 14 a) MICULICH M *Zentralbl Phys* 1910 24 523
b) MEYER F *Med Klin* 1912 8 869
c) SAKAI S AND SANFOSHI S *Arch exp Path Pharm* 1916 78 331
d) BODO R J *Physiol* 1928 66 369
e) FLY H *Munch med Woch* 1933 80 374
f) ESEK H E HERRICK J F AND VISCCHER M B *Am Heart J* 1938 16 143
- 15 JONESCU D AND LOEWI O *Arch exp Path Pharm* 1908 59 71
- 16 COHN A E AND CO WORKERS *Trans Int Congr Med* London 1913 6 263 Also *J Exper Med* 1913 21 593
- 17 a) LARSEN H E B *Clinical Aspects of the Electrocardiogram* New York Hoeber 1924
b) BROMER A W AND BLUMGART H L *J A M A* 1972 22 704
c) McMICHAEL T M AND BFILETT E IN *Stroud's Cardiovascular Disease* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 18 a) HATCHER R A AND WELLS H *Arch Int Med* 1972 29 690
b) DREFFBACH M *Am J Physiol* 1939 113 281
- 19 GOLD H AND DEGRAFF A C *J Clin Investigation* 1973 6 613 Also *J A M A* 1970 95 1237
- 20 EGGLESTON C *Arch Int Med* 1915 16 1 Also *J A M A* 1920 74 733
- 21 ROBINSON C C WHITE I D EGGLESTON C AND HATCHER R A *J A M A* 1974 83 401
- 22 BLUMGART H L AND ALTKHULF M D *Am J M Sci* 1939 198 455
- 23 KYSER F A CINCBERG H AND CLIBERT N C *Am Heart J* 1946 31 451
- 24 McMICHAEL J AND SHARPEY SCHAFFER F I *Quart J Med* 1941 11 123
- 25 BRALL I AND WOLSKA P H *Am Heart J* 191 29 761

- 2 G I H Mo Cone C rlov D y 1945 11
N 11
- 26 A L ACA I C ANI DeSol at I Rev
C r l 1915 12 158
- 27 B N G BAU H AND DIEN C Am
H t J 1915 30 191
- 28 W F AFIA I K I A W ANDERBERG H
D e l e g e t n e s s g e H e t e t p l e t L e i
z g I k l m a n 197
- 1 I R E V W K l Wo l 1918 55 849
- c K C M A I V E N S A Ann Int
M d 1 3 5 8 9 3
- 1) S T R U W D AN I A P L A F I B I
t r C l 193 1 13
- C f e r e n c e s Theraj Ne York I M l
1 15 45 6
- 3) C R L E J I B i A F A N K D ANI
H T H J C l n I v e s t g a t o n
19 1 3
- 1 I E L N M N W H A N M J C l
I e t g t n 1 3 6 3 199
- 31 S T ANI I J A D J I l a r m
I C I J T h e r j 1 9 1 3 19
- 3 R R A N A S T C I Am J
I l o l 10 7 71 18
- 33 C Y A R AND I A B E C G J I l s o l
10 1 55 6
- 4 W A K E R A M AN R K R Am J
I l o l 1 3 118 9
- 3 B i A R T H I A R A F I S A r e l
I n t M e l 1 3 4 5 1 4
- 36 C E R T I C o n r e l S o c i l 19 8
99 61
- 3 B R T R I A J C l I v e s t g a t i o n 1939
11 119
- 36 n W E S AND F L I S I B A r e l I t M e l
103 00 1 5
- 1 W S W I L A N S R W AND H A Y F
F W J C l I n v e s t i g a t i o n 1937 16 3
- c) I E T H C AND H A N S T G A r l I n t
M e d 1 3 8 62 9
- 39 S T F M A e l I t M e d 19 1 28 836
- I I T E L A A D C R A F I A r c h
I e r n l e I l a r m e 1938 309
- c) B O Y E R N H AN C O O R K E R Am J
I l s o l 1939 125 440
- d) I E X H I A D C O R K E R Am H e r t
J 1940 19 501
- 40 K J AND C O O R K E R S An H e r t
J 1936 11 53
- 1) I AN J G R E E N B E R G B AND M Y E R O N
A Ne I g l a n d J M e d 1938 219 6
- c) I A J I E E M F AN M Y E R O N
A A r e l I t M e d 19 3 1213
- 41 a) I L I A D A A G a z z O s p C l (M l a n)
M a r c h 19 1
- 1) L A I N E S A A D C O R K E R A r e l
I n t M e d 1930 45 191
- c) B L U S G A R T H L V o l u m e I o f c o n t b
i n h o n o r o f L I g m a n Ne Y o l
I n t e r I r e s s 1932
- d) K A T Z I N AND C O O R K E R S Am
H e r t J u r n 1937 7 3 1
- e) S T A R R I ANI C O O R K E R J o u r n C l n
I n v e s t 193 16 99
- 42 a) C E N K K AND S C H I D T C I J o u r n
I l a r m I n j T h e r 19 4 24 33) and
M e d e 1930 9 1
- 1) A T C H L E M D AND I G L A L L A
J u r C l I n v 1940 19 49 and
303
- c) D A M P S E K W L O S A N J A B M Y E R
S O N A Am J o u r n M e d S c 1938
195 88
- d) D A V I I I AND D A V I M S J o u n
Am M e l A s s 193 108 14
- e) R E I N H I l n W o l 193 00 00
a l A r e l e x p I t l I l r o 193
187 61
- f) S T R A D I A K U S A L I A D W E S
J o u r n C l I n v e t 1939 18 43) and
6 3
- 43 a) I I A A A R V I t l T e r (N a j e s
19 8 N 4
- b) D R I P R D ANI C O R O L J H
A n e s t h e s i o 1915 6 449
- c) S I T H A D S O T Z S J M A
M a b 1915 14 76
- 44 I I C K L I AND C O O R K E R A r e l I n t e n
I l a r m e 1939 61 44
- 45 I L A A I M e l S u g 1913 1
d A m e r H e r t J u r n 1946 31 793
(i t l S J S n o f f)
- 46 I S C I B L J M e d S k 1940 3 1 a l s o
S t o p l a n t n Ne York B r o o k l n M e l
P r e s s 1944
- 4 B R C I I L M A R T I N J AND F C A
M A n n I t M e d 1938 12 54
- 48 D E T A K A T G T R U P R A D G L B E R T
N C J o u r Am M e l A s s 1941 125
840
- 49 W H I T F P D ANI S A R K E R T J o u r n Am
M e l A s s 1931 102 6 5
- 50 a) D I X N W I J o u n l l s 1907 35 346
- 1) S U I Z E R R H e r t 1 3 1 11 141
- c) C E R T N C AND F L G K A r c h
I t M e d 19 9 44 118
- 51 S T A R N S S R I S P I A N J I F D G R Y
W Ne Eng J o u r n M e l 1946 234 5 8
- 52 G R O L L M N J o u r n I l a r m F P T h e r
1930 39 313 n l Q u a r t J u r n S t u l o n
A l c o l o l 1919 3 5
- 53 a) I A R F F H I B C c a l A s p e c t s o f
t h e E l e c t r o c a r d i o g r a m Ne Y o
H o e l e r 1941
- b) P A Z Z A N S R D M o d f r a q u e s d F o r m a
l o E l e t r o c I o g r a m S o I l o
G r a f i c a l e P r e f e t u r a 1949

- 51 MALTNER H AND LACHATZ 1941 157 63
- 52 LUISADA A A AND WEISS M Am J Physiol 1954 176 173
- 53 HARING O M AND LUISADA A A Am Heart J 1953 46 108 and 1953 46 26
- 54 LIPPER M AND COHNAND A et al Circ 1 161
- 55 a) HARVEY R M COHNAND A et al Am J Med 1949 7 439
b) STAD A et al Arch Int Med 1949 81 282
- 56 BATTERMAN R C DE GRAFF A C et al Am Heart J 1947 34 663 and 1951 42 297
- 57 GOLD H et al Am J Med 1950 13 174
- 58 JOEFFLER W et al Schweiz med Woch 1953 83 1
- 59 MATHIE H GOLD H et al J A M A 1957 150 131
- 60 LACERLOEF H AND WERKOE I Acta Card 1949 4 1
- 61 REINSMITZ M et al The Auricular Arrhythmias Springfield Ill Thomas 1952
- 62 NYLIN C Am Heart J 1949 37 543
- 63 FRIEDMAN R AND BINE R Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1947 64 167 and 1949 71 406 J Clin Investigation 1949 28 32 Circ 1950 1 1187
- 64 McMICHAEL J AND SHARPEY SCHAFER E 1 Quart J Med 1944 13 173 Also Clin Sci 1946 6 41 and 1947 6 147
- 65 a) SAMPSON J J et al Am Heart J 1913 28 184
b) BLUFF I L South M J 1949 42 1037
- 66 a) ZINDAHL W T Ann Int Med 1946 25 531
b) BORD L J AND SCHERF D Am J M Sci 1943 206 43
c) LA FLBERG C D et al Am Heart J 1950 39 103
d) SZENNELLY P Brit Heart J 1946 8 115
- 70 a) STEARNS N S et al J Clin Investigation 1951 30 66
b) McCORD M AND TACHIBANA J T Circ 4 384
- 71 DANIELOPOULOU C (Cardiol (Bale) 1947 11 66
- 72 PINCELLI C Cuore e Circ (Rome) 1947 31 155
- 73 ST GEORGE et al Circ 1957 6 661
- 74 FRIEDMAN M et al Circ 1950 11 853
- 75 FRIEDMAN M AND BINE R Am J M Sci 1941 214 633
- 76 SOKOLOV M Am Heart J 1951 42 111
77 SCHERF O et al Ann Int Med 1949 30 100
- 78 a) MARK I C et al J Pharmacol & Exper Therap 1950 98 71
b) KAYDEN H J et al Circ 1951 4 13
c) WEDD A M et al Am Heart J 1951 42 331
- 79 a) WRIGHT I S et al Am J Med 1947 3 18 Also J A M A 1948 138 104
b) IARKER R L AND BARKER N W Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1941 16 18 and 1945 23 367
- 80 BARKER N W Am J Med 1941 3 634
- 81 BRONSTEIN M R AND WITKIND F Am J M Sci 1951 222 647
- 82 a) HIRSCHOFFER J S et al Wisconsin M J 1951 50 863
b) SCHOLZ D A AND BARKER N W Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1957 27 337
- 83 FEINBERG A R AND LACAS J H Am J M S 1949 218 715
- 84 ROSE O A et al Am Heart J 1950 40 19
- 85 a) SECHAT L et al Arch Mal Coeur 1949 42 1149
b) KARTON I et al Arch Mal Coeur 1950 43 131
- 86 CONTRA S HARING O M AND GOLDSTEIN W Circ 1957 6 250
- 87 a) HENDRIX J I et al Federation Proc 1941 6 638
b) HORWITZ O et al Am J M Sci 1949 218 669
- 88 LUISADA A A et al Circ 1955 5 363 Also Ann Int Med 1957 37 1771
- 89 a) ANREP C V et al Brit Heart J 1948 8 171 Also Am Heart J 1949 37 531
b) ARMSTRIST C A AND LEVINE S A Am J Med 1950 220 127
- 90 WILLIAMS R W Ann Int Med 1957 37 1144 Also Ne England J Med 1953 248 45 (with JUDSON W J)
- 91 a) MEILMAN L AND KREYER O Circ 1950 1 704
b) TAYLOR R D AND LAGG I H Circ 1951 4 181
c) WILLIAMS R W Mo Conc Cardiov Dis 1951 20 89
- 92 a) HAIMOVICI H et al Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1948 67 163 and 1951 77 447
b) MOSER M et al Arch Int Med 1957 89 103
- 93 a) TANOWSKY R Circ 1950 1 687
b) CIBBS D F Brit Heart J 1957 11 7
- 94 PATON W D M AND ZAMIS E J Pharmacol Rev 1957 4 219
- 95 a) RESTALL P A AND SMIRK F H Brit Heart J 1952 11 1
c) SCHROEDER H A Arch Int Med 1957 89 233
- 96 TAMURA K KOBAYASHI Y AND TOKITA K Japan M J 1948 1 206

Social and Legal Aspects of Heart Disease

General improvement of health decrease of infantile mortality and decrease of the mortality caused by infections have prolonged the average life of our population. For these reasons heart disease is now the most frequent cause of death. The following figures easily prove the above statement (1). In 1945 in the United States deaths attributed to heart disease in persons from 5 to 19 years of age were *second* in frequency, in persons 20 to 34 years they were *third* and in persons above 35 they were *first*.

Approximately 10 million individuals suffer from cardiovascular diseases in this country. Many of them experience some limitation of activity.

Prevention of Heart Disease

The frequency of heart disease and the increase in popular knowledge have led to concerted efforts in an attempt to prevent hypertension, rheumatic fever and coronary heart disease (the three most common causes of death) as well as other less frequent causes of morbidity and mortality.

Prevention of rheumatic heart disease is based on the following program:

- a) Treatment of streptococcal sore throats and other upper respiratory infections by means of injections of penicillin.
 - b) Prevention of recurrences through prolonged (2 to 10 years) prophylaxis of upper respiratory infections by means of *sulfadiazine* or oral *penicillin* (page 198).
 - c) Limitation of dangers by means of a well considered plan including some restriction of physical activity and a careful program of occupation.
 - d) Prevention of heart failure by diet, drug therapy, and periodic check ups.
- Prevention of coronary heart disease* is

limited at present to

- a) Avoidance of high caloric, high fat diet throughout maturity.
- b) Thyroid or iodides treatment in special cases.
- c) Possible estrogen treatment in males.
- d) Occupational and dietary therapy (moderate restriction of salt, sharper reduction of fats and calories) after an attack.

Prevention of hypertension in predisposed individuals includes

- a) Special planning of life including sufficient relaxation and vacations.
- b) Same dietary rules as in coronary patients but with greater salt restriction.
- c) Drug therapy.
- d) Prevention or cure of renal infections.
- e) Possible sympathectomy or unilateral nephrectomy (page 503).

Prevention of subacute bacterial endocarditis is based on penicillin therapy in rheumatic arteriosclerotic or congenital heart patients in occasions of surgical dental or obstetrical interventions (page 211).

Prevention of syphilitic heart disease is based on adequate cure of syphilis. This includes widespread education and detection and common use of special clinics for initial cases (page 201).

Prevention of congenital heart disease is based on care of pregnant women including avoidance of viral infections, trauma and intoxications.

Many of the other heart diseases can be prevented by timely use of antibiotics, other drug therapy of acute or chronic infection, and adequate nourishment.

The Social Element in Heart Disease

Damage to the heart constitutes a threat which varies in its severity, not only with

the degree of the disease but also with the emotional make up of the patient (2) Sudden danger possible recurrence and progression and chronicity of many cardiac diseases all add up and may create severe social problems As heart disease may occur at any age different problems arise in children adolescents middle aged or elderly patients

Certain problems recur again and again There is the active child who yearns for physical exertion There is the ambitious adolescent who is removed from studies or active sports There is the young mother who cannot take care of her children the widow who supports small children on a marginal income the wage earner who hates to become dependent upon others the older man who has no adequate retirement funds or who still feels capable of creative work

The points of difference lie in the reaction of the patient to cardiac illness and in the possible emotional or financial gain derived in relation to other members of the family or associates Emotional reactions by the other members of the family also play a significant role

For this reason management of a cardiac patient carries with it several important implications and is of broader scope than drug therapy

Continuous thought should be given to prevention of recurrences and delay in the progress of the disease

Reduction of the disability of the patient alleviation of the distress and suffering and possible rehabilitation are some of the important objectives of the management

Children and adolescents Rheumatic heart disease accounts for about 80 per cent of organic heart disease in children of school age The general elements of crowding poor alimentation and lack of sunlight and exercise play a definite role Emotional influences may contribute to susceptibility to rheumatic fever Possibilities of home hospital or sanatorial treatment should be included in the careful consideration of all these

elements by physicians nurses and social workers

Aftercare of children and adolescents with rheumatic heart lesions is a composite of treatment and prevention The first 5 to 6 years following an attack of rheumatic fever represent the most important and difficult period If the young patient grows up without cardiac enlargement or recurrences he is likely to live a normal life span

Periodic medical check ups are important Avoidance of infections and their prompt treatment are also essential Physical exertion is allowed while strenuous exertion like that of competitive sports should be discouraged

The selection of work or profession should include consideration of the amount of physical exertion which is involved or the possible exposure to extremes of temperature Both should be avoided either of necessity or as a precautionary measure

For girls the problems connected with marriage and childbearing have a special importance and require individualized advice

Adults The integrating influence of and the economic losses caused by heart disease create a severe challenge in adults Prolonged financial or physical dependence on relatives or the community inability to develop personal aptitudes or to realize justified ambitions for patients or their families interruption of the usual human relationships and fear of impending dangers are the common results of heart disease

In many cases the cardiac patient can be rehabilitated by obtaining a different less exacting job which is within his physical abilities Rehabilitation was defined as the return of a person disabled by accident or disease to his greatest physical mental emotional social vocational and economic usefulness and if employable an opportunity for gainful employment Well selected work frequently helps cardiac patients Special institutions test the physical ability of cardiaces by gradually increasing

the number of hours of their work. Physical and electrocardiographic examinations are made at regular intervals.

For elderly patients and for those with advanced heart disease sedentary jobs should be advised (4).

Special kitchens have been devised for cardiac housewives so that their physical labor is reduced to the necessary minimum (3).

The emotional social and economic adjustments of the cardiac patient are part of the responsibility of the physician and the social worker. Together they can do much to obtain a *readjustment* and a *reeducation* of the cardiac. The development of *sedentary hobbies* may also contribute to a better mental and emotional balance.

Insurance and Cardiovascular Disease

Insurance companies reject applicants if they have cardiac murmurs, elevated blood pressure, rapid pulse rate, or (in the case of a large insurance) abnormal electrocardiogram. Unfortunately many applicants with no heart disease are thus refused the benefit of insurance. A systolic murmur may be innocent or indicative of harmful fibrosis of a valve, slightly elevated blood pressure or rapid pulse may be due to endocrine disturbances, high excitability, or neurocirculatory asthenia, minor abnormalities of the electrocardiogram may lead to distorted interpretations. Only the careful study by a competent cardiologist gives a definite and exact evaluation of these borderline cases.

Patients with heart disease or high blood pressure are usually refused life insurance. This may be justified by the excessive risk involved in certain groups of patients. However, a careful examination and evaluation should eliminate the most severe risks while the others should be allowed the benefit of insurance, even though with a higher rate of premium.

It is the opinion of the author that in the age group 20 to 40 minor rheumatic lesions of the mitral valve or uncomplicated septal defects should be considered for insurance

at a higher rate. The same applies for persons between 40 and 60 and a moderate hypertension unaccompanied by renal or retinal changes.

Legal Aspects of Heart Disease (5)

The physician is often asked to evaluate the role of physical strain or an accident in the predisposition to or causation of an episode of arrhythmia, a coronary attack or the onset of heart failure.

In any claim brought up for legal settlement which requires the professional advice of a cardiologist the following questions must be answered:

1) Does the individual have heart disease? if so, what kind and how severe?

2) If cardiac disease is present, could the alleged injury or strain have been the cause of, or have aggravated such condition?

The usual custom of requesting the expert to answer in the form of yes or no questions which are incomplete or too broad or definitely partial unfortunately impairs much of the reliability of medical opinions.

The physician should determine the exact nature and severity of disease after the accident or injury and compare it with the data which were present before. He should further evaluate the severity of the previous episode and the likelihood that it may have impaired the efficiency of the heart.

Trauma and strain *do not cause rheumatic fever or rheumatic heart disease or syphilitic heart disease* and are seldom responsible for recurrences of rheumatic fever. They do not cause additional damage unless they are extremely severe. If such is the case, eversion of the aortic leaflets, atrial fibrillation, pulmonary embolism or heart failure may result. On the other hand, cardiac neurosis is a common complication.

Trauma or strain *do not cause hypertension*. However, if advanced hypertensive heart disease is present, severe strain may precipitate acute pulmonary edema and determine the onset of heart failure.

The role of trauma and strain in coronary

heart disease is even more controversial. Even though most myocardial infarcts occur at rest a fair number follow strenuous exertion. The fact is obviously confirmed by reading the newspaper of the great northern cities following a heavy snowfall. Several deaths are usually the result of efforts to clear up the snow from the back alley.²⁷

Sudden death may be caused by a pulmonary embolus, rupture of an aortic aneurysm, severe and prolonged coronary insufficiency or acute dilatation of the left ventricle with ventricular fibrillation or paroxysmal pulmonary edema.

The pertinent data are:

- 1) A cardiovascular system with serious lesions
- 2) An adequate strain or exertion
- 3) A reasonable time between strain and acute episode

In all cases where disability is only partial the degree of disability sustained should be carefully determined and frequently a statement should be made concerning the possibility of return to employment and the possible date.

The relationship between the reaction to low grade stresses which are part of every day life and various symptoms and signs were studied in cardiac patients (6). The following results should be kept in mind:

1) Dyspnea associated with inefficient pulmonary ventilation may occur because of anxiety, anger, guilt, rage, frustration or tension.

2) Palpitation associated with increased

If death is due to myocardial infarction this may have been caused by either severe coronary insufficiency or subintimal hemorrhage, rupture of a coronary artery.

stroke volume may occur in the same conditions.

3) Precordial pain in the presence of narrowing of the coronary arteries may result from decreased cardiac output associated with deperation or defeat. On the other hand it may result from increased cardiac work due to increased blood pressure accompanying rage, resentment, anxiety, fear or tension.

4) Giddiness and fainting may result from cerebral anoxia due to either decreased venous return to the heart or hyperventilation. Both types may be the result of various stress producing conditions.

Sudden death may also be caused by extreme fright. This is not necessarily proportional to the severity of the event. There are a few well documented records including post mortem examinations where death of a normal young individual was caused by fear of an injection. It is likely that fright causes either ventricular fibrillation or cardiac arrest (page 393) through a reflex mechanism. The common vasovagal syndrome (page 317) is seldom cause of death because the heart continues its action even though severely slowed and most of the reflexes are received by the peripheral vessels.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 LUBER, S. H. In *Life's Disorders of the Circulation*. New York: Nelson, 1931.
- 2 COHEN, L. *Am Heart J* 1934 16: 47. Also *Am J Int Med* 1941 31: 819.
- 3 *The Heart of the Home*. New York: Heart Assoc. N. Y. 1911.
- 4 JOSEMAN, C. F. et al. *Circulation* 1917 3: 331.
- 5 WHITE, I. D. *Modern Med* 1946 14: 11.
- 6 WELSH, C. A. AND WOLFF, H. C. *Circulation* 1946 5: 273.

Prognosis of Cardiovascular Diseases

Every physician must have had the unpleasant experience of making an entirely wrong prognosis in cases with cardiovascular diseases even if his diagnosis was correct. This wrong prognosis may have been either in a favorable or in an unfavorable sense. In the first case, the patient unexpectedly took a turn for the worse or died suddenly. In the second a severely ill patient recovered with amazing rapidity.

Several data need to be considered and the following brief discussion of them may be of help.

1) If the patient develops heart failure and *his heart rate is rapid* the prognosis is better than otherwise because treatment may slow down his ventricular rate and bring about recovery. On the other hand if the patient develops the same symptoms while already digitalized, prognosis is worse.

2) In general *the larger the heart the worse the prognosis*. However remarkable exceptions to this rule should be kept in mind. One is represented by *acute rheumatic carditis in children*. An amazing enlargement of the heart accompanied by loud murmurs and a rapid and irregular pulse may be followed by complete recovery. Another exception is that of patients in their twenties with rheumatic heart disease and aortic and mitral involvement. As long as no evidence of heart failure is noted the tremendous size of their heart is well tolerated. Another exception is represented by the large hearts of anemic, vitamin-deficient or thyroid deficient patients. Treatment usually leads to rapid decrease of cardiac size.

3) When a patient presents signs of congestion including distention of the veins, ascites and edema a careful study of the structural lesions should be done. *If the*

patient has mitral valve lesions, the clinical picture indicates congestive failure, and prognosis is more guarded. If the patient has mitral plus tricuspid lesions the clinical picture of congestion is due to mechanical obstruction and prognosis is more favorable. Death of the patient may occur only 10 or 12 years later and surgery of the valves may increase the period of survival. Further *if the patient has a constrictive pericarditis surgery may completely relieve him of any evidence of congestion.*

4) An important factor is represented by an *acute infection*. While this may endanger life and may be the direct or indirect cause of heart failure it usually has a definite course. End of the infection is usually followed by recovery.

5) *Bronchopulmonary factors* may aggravate the picture of a cardiac patient and partly simulate signs of heart failure. These seem to aggravate prognosis while actually most of the patients recover. On the other hand *clear cut heart failure of chronic cor pulmonale has a poor prognosis.*

6) Obesity or neurocirculatory asthenia may aggravate or simulate cardiac dyspnea without increasing too much the severity of the prognosis.

7) *Nocturnal paroxysmal dyspnea* is usually a severe sign. However if it puts the physician on the alert and adequate measures are taken the patient may live many years after the first episode.

8) *Acute pulmonary edema* is a dramatic occurrence which seems to be infrequently fatal. The longer the patient survives the greater is the hope. Many procedures and drugs enable the physician to prolong life for several hours thus improving the prognosis.

9) *Triple rhythm at the apex and pulsus alternans* are ominous signs both in arterial hypertension and in coronary heart disease. However all clinical signs should be evaluated before formulating an unfavorable prognosis. Decreased blood pressure obtained through drug therapy or sympathectomy, digitalization or gradual recovery of a coronary patient may lead to disappearance of the above signs.

10) A patient with a *thyroid heart* has usually a much better prognosis than warranted by the initial impression.

11) *Chronic nephritis* invariably aggravates the prognosis of a cardiac patient including cases with hypertension.

12) In spite of the remarkable results of antibiotics *subacute bacterial endocarditis* still requires a guarded prognosis unless diagnosis is made early and therapy is started at once.

13) A *massive pulmonary embolism* has usually a poor prognosis. Even if the patient recovers further episodes may occur.

14) Prognosis is always difficult in patients with *angina pectoris*. Among the unpredictable elements one is represented

by the various parts that the right and left coronary arteries play in the blood supply to the left ventricle (page 25) a fact which cannot be ascertained during life.

15) *Following a myocardial infarct* prognosis should be guided by the presence or absence of acute pulmonary edema, shock, A V block, ventricular tachycardia, cerebral episodes, thromboembolic phenomena or evidence of congestive failure. Early therapy of shock and of pulmonary edema has somewhat improved the outlook of these fearful complications. Still prognosis is poor when shock or cerebral embolism occur.

Ultimate prognosis of a cardiac patient is always difficult. Among the various data to consider age and sex, duration of the disease, extent of structural damage, possible influence of therapy and possible future complications should be taken into consideration.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 LEVINE S A New England J Med 1936 207 113
- 2 WHITE I D J A M A 1939 112 2380

Management of the Cardiac Patient

How to Deal with a Cardiac Patient

The first problem is whether to tell the truth to cardiac patients and if so how to present the facts. This question cannot be answered in a simple manner because the personality of the patient and the severity of his disease impose various approaches.

The progress of common knowledge on the one hand and the importance of a full understanding between physician and patient on the other exclude cloaking of the truth in vague generalities as it was often done in the past. However not many severely ill patients are able to face naked truth and the dangers of a moral collapse should be taken into consideration. Therefore except for a few patients who actually want the truth this will be told with a certain attenuation for the sake of preventing a serious shock.

The duty of the physician imposes that whenever the full truth is not disclosed to the patient this is done to a close relative or to a close friend.

It should not be forgotten that too much concealing of the truth may prevent the patient from taking serious and needed precautionary measures thereby impairing recovery or a financial settlement.

In the relationship between physician and patient a friendly and cheerful approach can be as useful as the best drugs in improving the condition of the patient. The preoccupation of keeping medicine within the limits of science should not supersede the traditional bedside manner which is a necessary part of the treatment.

The progress of common knowledge is

such that some medical terms are feared by most people. Coronary occlusion, coronary thrombosis and high blood pressure are among the common ones. Others which were feared in the past such as angina pectoris and arterio sclerosis are now less known. Again others such as low blood pressure and extrasystoles are becoming increasingly fashionable and feared. Unnecessary mention of these terms may be the source of long lasting neuroses. On the other hand it is often useful that the patient knows the approximate level of his blood pressure or the nature of an acute illness for future reference.

The Life and Activity of a Cardiac Patient

The cardiac patient who wants to live long should rearrange his existence so that the maximum utilization of his energies is obtained with the minimum effort.

In cardiac or hypertensive patients with out heart failure the patient should avoid hurry. This requires a perfect mental timing the exclusion of activities of secondary importance and the avoidance of exacting social events.

A tremendous saving of energy is obtained by avoiding physical strain sitting whenever possible, climbing slowly and talking slowly. This does not mean that the patient should behave like an invalid. On the contrary moderate physical activity such as walking on flat ground and respiratory gymnastics should be advised.

In certain cases the cardiac patient should be instructed to quit his occupation and to look for one of a sedentary nature.

Professions involving severe responsibilities and emotions should also be excluded even if they do not require physical strain.

The avoidance of strong emotions should be attempted by patients. Some if properly instructed build a shell of emotional stability which is frequently useful especially in coronary heart disease.

Climates which are not subjected to sudden changes of temperature and humidity are the best for hypertensive rheumatic and coronary patients. Sojourns above 1500 feet of altitude are often poorly tolerated by cardiac patients (unless they are accustomed to them or were born at high levels) and should be forbidden.

Air travel in commercial planes with pressurized cabins is permitted (12). In certain cases a brief air trip is preferable to a long train or boat voyage even in severely ill patients. The patient should carry full written instructions and should avoid hustling or carrying heavy baggage.

Certain patients should not fly above 4500 feet without pressurization (128). They are the following:

- a) Patients with marked anoxia and hemoglobin saturation lower than 80 per cent
- b) Cases with reduced pulmonary ventilation (chronic cor pulmonale mitral lesions cardiac disorders with pulmonary changes)
- c) Coronary patients who suffered from an acute attack within 60 days prior to the flight
- d) Cardiac patients with anemia and an erythrocyte count below 3 000 000 or hemoglobin below 8 grams
- e) Patients who suffered recently from a cerebrovascular episode
- f) Subjects with severe heart failure

In all such cases the use of oxygen either by tube or by mask is recommended from the very start and during the whole flight if this becomes necessary.

Air sickness should be prevented. Intestinal distention should be treated before the flight.

Rest is an extremely useful part of treatment. Cardiac patients should stay in bed 12 hours out of 24 and if possible rest on a couch 1 or 2 hours in the afternoon.

When cardiac failure occurs an initial period of 8 to 10 days in bed is often useful. On the other hand the abuse of rest is liable to cause damage. It has been demonstrated that extreme restriction of body movements causes increased mortality in animals with experimental myocardial lesions (1). Too prolonged rest may result in various complications including phlebotrombosis hypostatic pneumonia bed sore pleural effusion and increased dyspnea (2). Therefore even if the activity of the patient should be limited so that no dyspnea occurs he will be allowed to sit in a comfortable chair for some hours every day.

Patients in failure after a coronary occlusion should be kept in bed for the prescribed period of 2 to 3 weeks like the others. They may need to be propped up in order to avoid orthopnea. The easy chair treatment of the patients (13) is not advisable for psychological and practical reasons.

Diet for Cardiac Patients

Initial dietary treatment of heart failure may be based on a purely fluid diet containing no salt. In such conditions free fluid intake may be permitted (6). It is the author's view that a limitation of fluid to between 1000 and 2000 cc is preferable to ingestion of large amounts. For this reason a fluid diet based on the ingestion of sweetened tea or fruit juice and water may be helpful for the first 24 to 48 hours (diet V).

After this initial period a modified Karel diet should be prescribed for a limited time usually from 3 to 7 days (diet VI). This diet accomplishes a certain limitation of fluid a severe limitation of salt and a limitation of proteins. At the same time it supplies about 900 calories.

The subsequent dietary treatment will be based on the following considerations

In cardiac failure the gastrointestinal functions are often severely impaired (3-4) When anorexia is present the hunger contractions are decreased tone is diminished, peristalsis is slow and the gastric emptying time is prolonged These disturbances are largely responsible for the lack of appetite and nausea which are so frequent Drug therapy often increases the nausea Elevation of portal venous pressure and impaired capillary circulation of the intestines further account for a poor absorption while hepatic congestion inhibits utilization of vitamin B (5) For these reasons protein and vitamin deficiencies are common

Self limitation often causes severe malnourishment and this is even more severe on account of elevated metabolic rate (4)

Restriction of sodium chloride favors reabsorption of edema (7) a reduction from 5 to 2 gm a day resulting in the elimination of about 0.5 liter (8) However the most important result is the prevention of further fluid retention after diuresis has been obtained It should be remembered that 45 gm of animal protein contain about 1 gm of salt unless this is removed by prolonged boiling

Extreme salt restriction may cause loss of appetite and some degree of malnutrition in regard to thiamin and nitrogen (8) It may further cause a more complex clinical picture called low salt syndrome Anorexia may be prevented by using salts not containing sodium (100)

Food intake increases cardiac output For this reason the patient fares better on a 5 meal than on a 3 meal regime (4) Therefore the following rules should be followed after the initial treatment

- a) Highly concentrated and easily digestible food
- b) Caloric intake between 1500 and 2000 calories daily
- c) About 200 gm of carbohydrates 40 to 50 of proteins and 100 of fats represent the optimum for these patients (9)

d) Foods rich in vitamin B₁ should be included These prolong the action of vitamin B₁ given by injection even if they might not be effective without the latter (10) An example of this is diet VII

Ambulatory cardiac patients and patients with arteriosclerosis arterial hypertension or coronary heart disease without severe renal impairment may follow diet VIII A low protein content is supplied by diet IV

Venesection and Other Procedures

Venesection is an old procedure which is too often neglected It consists of the removal of 200 to 500 cc of blood from one of the veins of the arm by use of a large bore needle When a larger quantity is desired as in exceptional cases a scalpel incision is necessary However, 800 cc represent a maximum which should not be surpassed Venesection often gives relief by interrupting a vicious circle

The indications for venesection are congestive failure with high venous pressure peripheral edema and dyspnea paroxysmal dyspnea or pulmonary edema severe arterial hypertension with acute cerebral manifestations Anemia is a contraindication

The application of tourniquets to the four limbs should be equivalent to venesection However it is usually less effective It may be done with four rubber tubes or pneumatic cuffs They are kept in place for 1 to 2 hours but every 15 minutes one of them is released in order to restore circulation in the limb

Paracentesis is indicated when effusion into serous cavities persists and causes disturbing symptoms after the action of digitalis and mercurial diuretics Removal of 500 to 1000 cc of pleural fluid may greatly attenuate dyspnea Removal should be slow and not more than 1500 cc should be removed on one occasion in order to prevent the dreaded occurrence of pulmonary edema

Paracentesis of the pericardium is indicated in pericarditis

Abdominal paracentesis may be necessary

in certain cases with tricuspid valve defects or constrictive pericarditis

Thyroidectomy has been advocated in congestive failure (11) considering that cardiac output might become adequate if the basal metabolic rate is reduced. The procedure is indicated only in a small percentage of cases while most of the others would not obtain appreciable benefits

Bedpan Versus Commode

It is customary to use the bedpan for cardiac patients. However defecation on the bedpan is difficult and sometimes dangerous. It is occasionally responsible for sudden death. Comparative studies have shown that oxygen consumption is significantly lower when the patients sit on a commode than when they strain on a bedpan (14). The commode should be preferred and the patient should be supported during the entire procedure.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 1 HARRISON T R J A M A 1944 125 10 6
- 2 LEVINE S A J A M A 1944 126 80 Also Mo Conc Cardio Dis 1945 14 3
- 3 VAN SIERE E J *Inertia Its Effect on the Body* Chicago Univ of Chicago Press 1917
- 4 HARRISON J V J Am Diet Assoc 1945 21 86
- 5 a) LOLLACK H AND CO WORKERS Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1940 28 44
- b) GRIEG M I AND GONIER W M J Pharmacol & Exper Therap 1943 169 79
- 6 a) NEWBLEIGH L H AND MACKINNON F *The Practice of Dietetics* New York Macmillan 1934
- b) SCHEM F R Ann Int Med 1942 17 97
- c) BRIDGES W C WHEELER F O AND WHITE I D New England J Med 1946 234 573
- 7 a) SCHROEDER H A Am Heart J 1941 22 141
- b) PROGER S GRASSBERG E AND MAGNAN Dantz H Am Heart J 1942 24 550
- 8 ALTMAN M D Bull New England Med Center 1945 7 245
- 9 BROWER A W AND STRAUD W D In *Stroud's Cardiovascular Diseases* Philadelphia Davis 1945
- 10 FREEBORN A S AND BILMANT H L New England J Med 1943 229 939
- 11 BILMANT H L LEVINE S A AND BERLIN M Arch Int Med 1933 51 866
- 12 a) WHITTINGHAM H *et al* Brit M J 1949 1 603
- b) MENDOZA F Rev Inv Clin (Mexico) 1949 1 80
- 13 LEVINE S A J A M A 1903 146 1305
- 14 BENTON J O J A M A 1940 144 1443

Medical Treatment of Common Cardiac Conditions

In each chapter on the various cardiac diseases the description of the clinical picture was followed by a brief paragraph of treatment. Later treatment of heart failure was discussed in the chapter dealing with digitalis and the cardiac glycosides (page 583). However treatment is the most important part of medicine and an outline of the main points which should be followed in the treatment of the most common cardiac conditions may be useful to the practitioner.

In doing this emphasis will be placed on some personal views which may differ from those of others. This should be kept in mind when reading the following paragraphs.

1 Rheumatic Fever

Treatment of the acute stage is based on a) *bedrest* and b) *cortisone* (or compound F) or *aspirin* (page 198).

Bedrest should be prolonged for many months. *Cortisone* or *aspirin* should be given for not less than 8 weeks. Their doses are larger at the beginning then gradually decreased. *Cortisone* should be supplemented by potassium salt by mouth and periodic injections of mercurial diuretics. The blood content of salicylates (*aspirin*) should be checked and maintained at an optimum level. *Aspirin* is effective only if large doses far higher than those used in symptomatic therapy are used.

Cortisone seems superior in severe cases with heart failure. *aspirin* is better in cases with polyarthritides. Occasionally a patient responds to one of the drugs better than to the other. An *aspirin* cycle may be useful following *cortisone* and small doses of

aspirin may be continued even during the gradual period of mobilization.

Whenever signs of heart failure occur the patient should be given *oxygen* and should be digitalized. The best glycoside for these patients is *gitalin* (page 589).

Pericarditis may require paracentesis (page 449).

The *prevention of recurrences* is extremely important and should be done by a long range (2 to 6 years) oral administration of *sulfadiazine* or *penicillin* (page 198).

Prophylaxis in nonrheumatic people may be attempted whenever the conditions of crowding, exposure to cold and humidity, and physical strain occur (camp, military life).

The importance of rest, suitable climate and tonsillectomy in rheumatic patients has been outlined (page 199).

2 Acute Bacterial Endocarditis

Acute bacterial endocarditis should be prevented in most cases by *penicillin* prophylaxis in cardiacs submitted to dental or surgical interventions and by an adequate antibiotic treatment of general infections (sore throats, pneumonia, meningitis, gonorrhea, etc.). Once the endocarditis has started, testing of the agent *in vitro* for possible resistance and adequate selection of the antibiotic should be done. In most cases *penicillin* is adequate (page 206). Doses vary in the different cases from 600,000 to 10 million units (or more) every 24 hours. The treatment should be continued until complete disappearance of the fever and normalization of the sedimentation rate are obtained. It should be kept in mind that early treat-

ment may not prevent the establishment of valvular defects. If the patient is severely anemic blood transfusions are necessary.

3 Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis

Whenever the diagnosis of subacute bacterial endocarditis is made treatment with high doses of penicillin should be started immediately. The doses to be used are larger than in acute endocarditis and may vary between 1 and 20 million units daily, the latter dose being reserved for the most resistant cases. Treatment will be continued for about 1 month then repeated with a higher dosage if blood sterility is not obtained.

If the active agent of the disease is unaffected by penicillin then streptomycin, aureomycin, chloromycetin, emelin or neoarsphenamine (higher organisms) can be tried. *In vitro* tests should precede the selection of the antibiotic (page 210).

Vitamin C, iron, blood transfusions and a high caloric diet may contribute to the recovery.

If cardiac failure occurs the patient will be treated as any other patient in failure.

The possibility of a combined rheumatic and bacterial endocarditis should be kept in mind in such cases penicillin treatment should be done first and followed by a pirin or cortisone.

Demonstration that surgical or dental interventions in cardiac patients may lead to the occurrence of subacute bacterial endocarditis (page 211) advises the systematic use of penicillin before and after such procedures. This will prevent a large percentage of infections even if some still seem beyond prophylaxis.

4 Cardiovascular Syphilis

Cardiovascular lesions caused by lues generally occur many years after the initial infection. Therefore adequate treatment of the initial infection prevents cardiovascu-

lar lesions. Once these lesions have appeared the general rules of antiluetic treatment should be followed (page 201). However the following considerations should be kept in mind. Whenever a luetic lesion of the myocardium is present intensive treatment may lead to congestion of the inflamed area or destruction and fluidification of the gummata. In both cases the repercussion on the myocardium may lead to severe and at times irreversible failure. Moreover the efficiency of the myocardium may be impaired by the toxicity of the antiluetic drug. For these reasons treatment should be careful and gradual at first. It will be started with iodides then continued with courses of bismuth alternated with mercurials. After some months of treatment neoarsphenamine or penicillin may be used. Even then only three fourths of the maximum dose will be reached in order to avoid a toxic lesion of the myocardium.

5 Rheumatic Valvular Defects

Well compensated patients with mitral lesions do not need digitalization. They should be advised against strenuous physical exertion and excess of food, drink or stimulants (pages 224 and 279). If the patient complains of palpitation or presents premature beats bromides, quinidine or phenobarbital may be indicated.

Digitalization is indicated whenever physical strain cannot be avoided and in the last stages of pregnancy even without apparent failure (page 279).

The first signs of failure indicate the need for digitalis, the use of the latter is outlined below (page 621).

Patients with aortic lesions and no symptoms do not need special treatment. They should be cautioned against strenuous exertion and against driving (possibility of dizziness). A mild sedation by means of phenobarbital, secobarbital, bromides, chloral hydrate and occasionally tincture of opium may help in preventing paroxysmal attacks. Aminophylline or thellin may be useful in

hypertensives *potassium iodide* in luetic and arteriosclerotic patients (page 529)

Whenever digitalization is started, extreme bradycardia and toxicity should be avoided. *Strophanthin* has no special indication *squill glycosides* may be used for mild and prolonged treatments *gitalin* is especially indicated in cases with rheumatic carditis. Pure glycosides should be preferred to total digitalis because they have a more constant action and may be given by weight.

Mercurial diuretics may be used in certain cases at not too frequent intervals in order to prevent fluid retention. The same purpose is accomplished by salt restriction.

Commissurotomy should be done only in cases of severe mitral stenosis with evidence of pulmonary congestion. Surgery of double and combined valvular defects is still under experimentation and several years must pass before a complete knowledge of the various indications and contraindications is required.

Patients with *tricuspid defects* present signs of congestion which are caused by the obstruction. For this reason *digitalis* may relieve only part of them (page 564). Even when heart failure is present *mercurial diuretics*, *ammonium chloride* and *periodic paracenteses* obtain results which are more striking than those of *digitalis* (page 275). *Squill glycosides* may be substituted for *digitalis* with advantage having a greater diuretic effect. Salt restriction is imperative. *Commissurotomy* can be attempted in severe *tricuspid stenosis*.

In *pulmonary stenosis* surgical dilatation of the pulmonic ostium should be considered. If *pulmonary tuberculosis* develops its treatment is imperative. *collapse therapy* is tolerated well. *thoracoplasty* is not contra-indicated. If heart failure occurs *oxygen inhalation* is particularly useful together with drug therapy.

6 Congenital Shunts and Complex Malformations

Patients with *atrial or ventricular septal defect* need no different treatment from patients with acquired valvular defects. The same rules concerning abstention from unnecessary medication, the use of mild sedatives and the rules concerning exertion, food, and drink, are valid for them. Whenever congestive failure occurs the patients will be *digitalized* with the customary method. This is also true for patients with a *patent ductus arteriosus*. However surgery is imperative in patent ductus and should be considered in atrial septal defects.

Patients with *complex malformations* of the heart should be treated like patients with acquired valvular defects. Their cyanosis is usually not caused by congestive failure and does not require special treatment. In the judgment of how much physical activity should be permitted one has to pay attention to the various symptoms. The severity of polycythemia, dyspnea and tachycardia are the best gauges. *Digitalization* when necessary is made with the customary rules. *Oxygen therapy* may be a useful adjuvant. *Surgical treatment* improves the outlook of patients with *tetralogy of Fallot* (page 317) and in other malformations with *pulmonic stenosis* and low *pulmonic pressure*.

Disturbances of the Heart Rate and Rhythm

Atrial flutter can be treated by a toxic dose of *digitalis* which increases the excitability of the myocardium and causes fibrillation (page 343). The latter will be treated as outlined below. If *digitalis* fails *quinidine* usually does not help but may be tried. Spontaneous recovery from the flutter is not unusual.

Attacks of *atrial tachycardia* are treated in a reflex way by *intravenous digoxin* or by *subcutaneous prostigmin* (page 333).

Both the reflex action and the drugs cause intense stimulation of the vagus nerve. If this is of no avail depression of the sympathetic or direct action on the myocardium (quinidine) can be tried. Prevention of the attacks requires consideration of all possible causes and their removal. Autonomic depression with *ergotamine plus atropine* may be tried. Prolonged treatment with *quinidine prosthigmin* or *digoxin* is useful in some cases.

No reflex stimulation should be tried in *ventricular tachycardia*. Intravenous or oral *pronestyl* or intravenous *magnesium sulfate* give the best results (page 339). Prevention of the attacks is based on the use (or exclusion) of *digitalis*, *quinidine*, *pronestyl* or *aminophyllin* according to the underlying lesions (page 339).

The treatment of *Stokes Adams attacks* requires a careful study of the conditions preceding them. If the attacks are due to vagal stimuli *atropine plus ephedrine* or *papaverine* are indicated. If on the contrary the attacks are due to sympathetic stimuli *digitalis* or *hydergine* should be used (page 363). In general cases with coronary heart disease improve with *vasodilators*.

Whenever a partial heart block is present recognition of the cause may permit a causal treatment. This is possible in *luetie*, *rheumatic*, *diphtheritic*, and *gonorrheal myocarditis*.

In cases presenting *premature beats* a careful study of the underlying conditions and of the favoring causes may permit the removal of many of them with the resulting disappearance of the arrhythmia (page 363). Among the different drugs used for this condition *quinidine* and *ergotamine plus atropine* are useful. The combination of *papaverine*, *quinidine* and *atropine* is useful in coronary heart disease (page 430).

Atrial fibrillation should be treated with *digitalis glycosides* if it occurs as a result of heart failure. If the sinus rhythm is not reestablished after disappearance of the

signs of congestive failure then fibrillation should be treated with *quinidine*. *Quinidine treatment* should be used in all cases where signs of congestive failure are not present or have disappeared. *Paroxysmal atrial fibrillation* should be treated with *atropine* and *oxygen*.

Atrial fibrillation after myocardial infarction should be treated with *quinidine* if there is no congestive failure and no block with *quinidine plus digitalis* if heart failure is also present. It should be kept in mind that vagus stimulation may favor atrial fibrillation. For this reason strongly digitalized patients frequently fibrillate and are more resistant to treatments which favor a reestablishment of the sinus rhythm.

8 Myocardial Lesions

Triple rhythm alternans, bundle branch block, and dilatation and hypertrophy of the heart are merely signs of a cardiac lesion and not clinical entities in themselves. Therefore no special treatment is required. When many signs indicate initial heart failure or strain *digitalization* is indicated. Rest and avoidance of excessive food and fluid intake are useful. In hypertensive patients a decrease of cardiac strain may be obtained by reducing blood pressure at least temporarily (page 501).

The myocardial lesions may be grouped under two headings: the acute and subacute on the one hand and the chronic on the other. In the *acute and subacute lesions* the physician should try to ascertain the cause. Recognition of *rheumatic*, *luetie*, *malarial*, *amebic*, *diphtheritic* or *streptococic myocarditis* may lead to cure of the lesion (page 339). In general the existence of lesions of the myocardium requires a careful and gradual treatment and the avoidance of massive doses which might increase damage to the heart muscle.

It should be kept in mind that the existence of acute myocardial lesions may cause increased excitability and abnormal reactions. Therefore if *digitalis* is needed

caution should be used in the dosage. Selection of a glycoside with a large *therapeutic ratio*, such as *gitalin* (page 589), may increase the safety of the treatment.

Chronic myocardial lesions are usually caused by coronary heart disease and will be considered below.

Treatment of *ventricular standstill* is based on the *intracardiac injection of epinephrine plus procaine* (page 393). *Resuscitation of the heart* may also be obtained by manual percussion of the precordium or by opening the chest and manual massage.

Defibrillation of the ventricles may be obtained by intracardiac injection of *procaine* followed by *electrical stimulation* of the heart (page 393). This causes a standstill and should be followed by intracardiac epinephrine and massage.

Treatment of heart disease caused by *vitamin B deficiency* is based upon the parenteral administration of the *vitamin B complex* and a high protein low carbohydrate diet (page 404).

Routine treatment of the *thyrocardiac syndrome* is medical at first and surgical later (page 406). However use of *propyl thiouracil* may avoid the need for surgery.

Treatment of the *myxedema heart* is effected by means of *thyroid extract*. The doses must be small at first then slowly increased.

9 Coronary Heart Disease

Coronary heart disease may lead to various clinical pictures. *Myocardial fibrosis* does not require special treatment unless accompanied by heart failure.

Myocardial infarction. The treatment should be as follows (page 429).

Large doses of *hypnotics* and *sedatives* in the first 2 to 4 days in order to relieve pain and to prevent dangerous reflexes. *Morphine*, *atropine* and *phenobarbital* should be used. *Oxygen* is given.

As soon as pain has disappeared and the first days have elapsed *papaverine* and smaller doses of *phenobarbital* are given.

Digitalis as a rule, should not be given in the initial stage. It may be given later if required by heart failure but preferably in combination with *quinidine* (pages 420 and 592).

Shock requires the customary remedies but treatment should be started very early. *Transfusions* and *infusions* should be of smaller volume and given at a slower rate than when myocardial infarction is not present. *Noradrenaline* is given together with plasma or plasma substitutes.

Initial immobility for 2 to 3 weeks and bedrest later are customary. They are useful but should not be unduly prolonged (page 623).

Anticoagulants should be given in a majority of cases with the exception of minor or 'benign' attacks and attacks in young persons without severe clinical picture (page 429). *Heparin* and *dicumarol* are given at first, then heparin is discontinued (page 594).

The treatment of *angina pectoris* should be based upon proper evaluation of the dynamic functional and psychic elements of the syndrome and on their possible exclusion (page 435). Patients with angina should not eat a heavy meal at night and should not go to bed with a full stomach. They should not drink much fluid with their meals and should be careful in the use of tobacco (page 435). Physical exercise should be limited but not abolished. Open air exercise and exposure to cold should be forbidden. Any cause for increased cardiac work, vagal reflexes or anoxemia should be prevented.

Treatment of the attack of angina pectoris is based on the use of rapid acting vasodilators (*nitroglycerine*). Between the attack slower acting vasodilators are best like *thellin*, *peritrate*, *rauwolfia* and *mannitol* (page 596). Different surgical interventions have been advocated but they should be used only in selected groups of patients (page 435).

10 Pericardial Lesions

Whenever possible causal treatment of *acute pericarditis* should be undertaken. *Progenic amebic and luetic pericarditis* should be treated with *specific drugs* or antibiotics. The intrapericardial injection of penicillin has proven helpful in addition to general treatment (page 449). *Salicylates* in full dose influence the course of *rheumatic pericarditis*. *Morphine* is necessary if severe pain or dyspnea is present. *Digitalis* is not contraindicated but is seldom useful. *Puncture* is contraindicated (page 449). *Paracentesis* of the pericardium is frequently necessary and is performed with the technique indicated on page 449. *Paracentesis* should not be performed too early unless severe cardiac embarrassment is present.

Constrictive pericarditis often requires the use of *mercurial diuretics* and *ammonium chloride*. *Digitalis* is not contraindicated but is seldom useful. *Paracentesis* of the abdominal cavity may be necessary. Surgery should be resorted to in the great majority of cases and the most radical intervention is the most beneficial (page 459). *Atropine*, *propanthyl* and *morphine* limit the excitability of the heart during the operation. If necessary the direct application of *procaine* may be of help.

11 Aortic Syndromes

Surgical treatment of coarctation of the aorta is the treatment of choice. It should be done as early as possible (page 473).

Aortitis aneurysm. The general treatment of cardiovascular syphilis has been outlined already (page 201). Rest is beneficial. *Morphine* or other sedatives may be necessary. *Paravertebral alcohol injections* may relieve pain. While an aneurysm of the extremities or the abdominal aorta may be excised successfully, resection of a thoracic aneurysm is seldom possible. However wrapping of the aneurysm or wrapping it in cellophane is frequently beneficial.

There is no treatment for a *dissecting aneurysm of the aorta* except bedrest and

edation. *Embolism of the abdominal aorta* on the other hand may be treated by surgical intervention within the first 12 hours. *Priscoline*, *papaverine*, application of unction and pressure and therapy for shock are useful coadjutants (page 487).

12 Arterial Hypertension

The drug treatment of hypertension is frequently disappointing. However the results are such that they justify drug therapy because this limits or delays the onset and severity of complications.

The combination of *rauwolfia* with *sera trum alkaloids* and the *sympatholytics* or *adrenolytics* (*hyderygine*, *dibenamine*, *hexamethonium*) are at the center of interest.

Barbiturates are often useful but should not be prescribed for use in daytime unless the patient is committed to bedrest. The use of *bromides* and *iodides* may be advocated.

Unilateral nephrectomy is a life saving procedure whenever a renal lesion is unilateral or sharply more severe on one side.

Sympathectomy may give good results in selected cases.

Diet therapy is again useful especially in the obese patients (page 501).

The use of *renal extracts* is still in the experimental stage but represents the greatest hope for the future.

13 Cor Pulmonale

Medical treatment of *pulmonary embolism* is based on injections of *morphine*, *atropine* and *papaverine* as well as oxygen administration (page 509). Care should be taken not to lower excessively systemic blood pressure. While shock is one of the dangers coronary insufficiency may increase the severity of the clinical picture.

Embolectomy is possible only in the first hours. Preventive measures are based on use of *heparin* or *dicumarol* and preventive venous ligation (page 509).

Patients with *chronic cor pulmonale* frequently respond poorly to treatment because

of the combination of mechanical, pulmonary and cardiac elements. Surgical correction of chest deformities lobectomy in cases of aortic aneurysms and antiluetic treatment should be used in different categories of patients. Oxygen is useful in most cases *ephedrine* or *isupral* in patients with bronchial asthma and emphysema (page 515)

Digitalis is useful whenever there is heart failure but care should be exercised not to stimulate the vagus nerve unduly thereby favoring asthmatic attacks. Cautious dosage and its combination with atropine may permit the use of digitalis without danger. *Aminophylline* is helpful in most cases. *Morphine* should be used with the greatest caution.

14 Hypotension—Shock

In acute hypotension treatment varies with the cause (page 519). *Adrenalin* or *noradrenalin* venous infusions blood transfusions and the occasional use of sedatives are indicated in the different cases.

Orthostatic hypotension may require various treatments which range from the use of a head up bed to that of a tight girdle and from the administration of atropine phenobarbital to that of *paredrinol* (page 520).

Chronic hypotension is influenced favorably by *ephedrine* *benedrine* *metrazol* and *strychnine* (page 520).

Shock is treated by reassurance oxygen rest warmth fluids and infusion with plasma or plasma substitutes. This program is still valid but often inadequate. Owing to the extreme difficulty of changing the conditions of the irreversible stage *angiotonin* seems to be the most effective remedy. Its use is not common as yet but it is expected that it will be in the future (page 521).

Hypophygmia. Drugs stimulating the peripheral vessels are useful in cases with acute or chronic infections. These are *ephedrine* *benedrine* *paredrinol* and *metrazol*. Congenital hypophygmia requires a full diet large doses of vitamin B-complex

caffeine *strychnine*, *coramine* or *paredrinol* physiotherapy and massage and open air physical exercise (page 523).

15 Arterial Diseases

Diffuse arteriosclerosis may be limited, and possibly decreased, by sharp limitation of fat and cholesterol intake and control of the caloric intake. A series of instructions and precautions may prevent a rapid mental and physical degeneration of the patient (page 528). *Potassium iodide* has a mild beneficial action. *theophyllin* and *aminophyllin* are frequently useful as are *bromides* *chloral* and *barbiturates* (page 529).

Acute arteritis may be treated by means of vasodilators and heparin in the initial stage. When gangrene is present amputation becomes necessary. In *embolic arteritis* heparin, intermittent venous compression vasodilators or sympathetic block can be used even if embolectomy represents the most important step (page 530).

In *Buerger's disease* abstention from tobacco is imperative. Vasodilators *mecholyl* and *papaierine* may be useful as well as suction and pressure exercises (page 533).

In *intermittent claudication* the treatment is that of the underlying vascular disease. A medical and physical treatment similar to that of Buerger's disease may be advocated (page 535).

Acrocyanosis may be treated with estrogens physiotherapy and *paredrinol*. *Raynaud's disease* should be treated with *mecholyl* *prostigmin* and *papaierine*. *Sympathectomy* may obtain good results (page 535). *Erythromelalgia* improves following the use of *adrenalin* *ephedrine* and *calcium*.

16 Diseases of the Veins

Phlebitis is treated by elevation of the part motion and no ice bag for 10 to 14 days (page 540). Prevention of embolism is based on surgical ligation or prolonged use of anticoagulants (page 509).

Varicose veins may be treated by local injections causing the obliteration of some

vessels (page 542) or by ligation (page 540) Elastic stockings and bandages give symptomatic relief *Local penicillin* treatment is useful in varicose ulcers (also tyrothricin and gentian violet) In arteriovenous aneurysm should be treated whenever possible by surgical elimination of the connection (page 544)

17 Paroxysmal Cardiorespiratory Attacks

The treatment of *paroxysmal dyspnea* is based on subcutaneous injection of morphine sulfate oxygen inhalation and venesection Atropine may be useful in cases of mixed mechanism if there is bronchospasm

In *paroxysmal pulmonary edema* alcohol vapor-oxygen inhalation should be used as an emergency measure which may be life saving by decreasing the amount of foam (page 560) During inhalation of the vapors drug therapy can be initiated In hypertensive or mitral patients morphine sulfate 1% sodium luminal 1% mercurial diuretics should be injected and venesection may be resorted to In cases of coronary occlusion or cerebrovascular accidents the danger of shock should be anticipated Therefore only moderate doses of morphine barbiturates or mercurials should be given and no venesection practiced Atropine should be given only if there is bradycardia or severe wheezing Metrol and coramine also should be avoided during the attack (page 560)

The prevention of these attacks may be obtained by the regular administration of chloral hydrate by mouth or rectum phenobarbital and aminophyllin Depression of the sympathetic system may be useful especially in hypertensive patients Digitalization may prevent recurrence of the attacks

Heart failure may follow a severe attack of pulmonary edema Digitalization should be effected following the customary rules

Periodic respiration is ameliorated by the intravenous injection of aminophyllin

If large doses of this drug fail to improve the condition metrol should be injected (page 561)

18 Heart Failure

Digitalis and the *digitalis* like plants (*strophanthus squill*) are still the most powerful remedies for heart failure The writer favors the use of the *digitalis* glycosides (page 589) in comparison with the preparations made with dried leaves This preference is based upon the conviction that similar results rarer occurrence of disturbances and easier handling of the patient are obtained with them

Gitalin has the largest therapeutic ratio and is especially indicated in heart failure caused by rheumatic carditis or myocardial infarct Lanatoside C is eliminated rapidly and is better tolerated than digitoxin Strophanthin is eliminated very rapidly Its use is limited to brief courses of therapy with one or two daily 1% injections

While the method of unitage (page 589) and the dosage of glycosides in milligrams permit a better judgment of the dose of active principles administered it should be kept in mind that the best assay is on the individual patient and that all rules concerning digitalis are approximate (page 576)

Different methods of digitalization have been described (page 590) The writer does not favor the employment of massive doses of digitalis If heart failure is severe and treatment is urgent an intravenous injection of either strophanthin or digitoxin and one or two more injections at 12 hour intervals permit a rapid action Otherwise a more gradual digitalization reaching the total dose in 3 to 4 days should be preferred

In most cases satisfactory digitalization may be obtained by using the following scheme

1st day 6 tablets of digitoxin (0.1 mg each) cedilamid (0.5 mg each) or gitalin (0.5 mg each)

2nd and 3rd day 4 tablets of digitoxin or 3 of cedilamid or gitalin

4th to 7th day 1 or 2 tablets of each

Maintenance dose is 1 to 2 tablets for any of these preparations (occasionally alternated daily doses of 1 and 2 for some time)

A few guiding suggestions will be repeated here

a) The best use for digitalis is found in heart failure

Adequate digitalization must precede the daily administration of the maintenance dose of digitalis. Merely giving a maintenance dose without a prior raising of the concentration of digitalis to an optimum level results in an insufficient dose (page 588)

b) The improvement of the patient may take place even if the ventricular rate is not lowered and if atrial fibrillation is still present

c) The best result from digitalis is obtained in mitral patients with heart failure and atrial fibrillation. Patients with aortic stenosis follow. Its administration in hypertensive and coronary heart disease with failure obtains a fair result. Heart failure in patients with cardiovascular syphilis yields poorly to digitalis.

d) Whenever acute myocarditis is present (rheumatic disease diphtheria etc.) digitalis administration is not followed by impressive results. The myocardium is overexcitable and easily damaged.

e) Large doses of digitalis are contra-indicated in the first stage following coronary occlusion. In later stages digitalis is better tolerated in association with quinidine.

f) Heart failure of myxedema, hyperthyroidism, thiamine deficiency, pericarditis with effusion and adhesive pericarditis is aided but little by digitalis.

g) Digitalis can be given in partial heart block but its dosage will be determined carefully in order not to overstimulate the vagus. It may be given safely in complete block.

h) *Prophylactic use of digitalis* in patients who might present heart failure at some future time is recommended for cardiac patients who become pregnant (last 3 months) or cannot avoid severe although occasional exertion.

In patients leading a normal life prophylactic use of digitalis for many years may not prevent heart failure while at the same time may deprive the physician of the full freedom of use of one of his most powerful weapons. Therefore, either the use of *squill glycosides* or *periodic digitalization* (1 week every month) will be used.

Digitalization should be supplemented by periodic administration of *mercurial diuretics* by *salt restriction* and a series of general rules of conduct including psychological, physical and social guidance.

Several procedures which tend to decrease the load placed on the heart may contribute to relief of heart failure. They include *venesection*, *oxygen administration*, *hypotensive drugs* (or *sympathectomy*) treatment of bronchial infections, *surgical correction* of valvular deformities or congenital anomalies and hormonal or *salicylate therapy* of myocarditis.

APPENDICES

Prescriptions

- (1) *Digitalis powder*
1-cat unit pills (about 0.1 gm) (gr ss)
Maintenance dose one tablet daily
- (2) *Crystodigin Lilly (digitoxin)*
Tablets 0.1 mg
Maintenance dose one to two tablets daily
- (3) *Crystodigin Lilly (digitoxin)*
Ampules for i v injections
1 cc = 0.2 mg
- (4) *Digoxin Burroughs Wellcome (digoxin)*
0.25 mg tablets
Maintenance dose one to two tablets daily
- (5) *Cedilanid Sando (acetyldigoxin)*
0.5 mg tablets
Maintenance dose one to two tablets daily
- (6) *Cedilanid Sando (acetyldigoxin)*
4 cc ampules (0.8 mg)
for i v injections
- (7) *Gitalign White Lab Inc (gitalin)*
0.5 mg tablets
Maintenance dose one to two tablets daily
- (8) *Gitalign White Lab Inc (gitalin)*
5 cc ampules (2.5 mg)
for i v injections
- (9) *K Strophanthin Abbott (strophanthin)*
Ampuls (0.33 mg)
Or *Strophosol Sando*
Ampules (0.25 mg)
For i v injections
- (10) *Scillaren Sando*
0.5 mg tablets
Maintenance dose one to three tablets daily
- (11) *Mercurhydrine Lakeside*
1 cc and 2 cc ampules
One every 3 to 5 days
By s m or i v injection
- (12) *Thiomersin Campbell Prod*
Rubber cap vials with 1.4 gm of powder—dissolve in 10 cc of distilled water (40 mg of Hg per cc)
0.5 to 2 cc by i m or i v injection
- (13) *Ammonium chloride*
0.5 gm enteric coated tablets (gr viii)
Five tablets every 6 hours = 10 gm
Repeat after 5 to 7 days
- (14) *Aspirin*
0.3 gm tablets (gr v)
Four tablets (1.2 gm) every 3 hours
Maintain plasma salicylate level at about 30 mg per cent
- (15) *Aminopyrine*
0.32 gm tablets (gr v)
One tablet t i d
- (16) *Salysal Re e Chem Inc*
0.37 gm tablets (gr v)
Three tablets every 4 hours
(Salysal is about twice as active as sodium salicylate)
- (17) *Sulfathiazine Lilly*
0.25 gm tablets
Two b i d
- (18) *Penicoral tablets Wyeth (infused penicillin)*
20,000 unit tablets
One b i d

- (19) *Procaine-G Penicillin* Abbott
(in aqueous suspension)
3 million units in 10 cc vial
(One dose = 300 000 units by
i m injection)
- (20) Morphine sulfate 15 mg (gr $\frac{1}{4}$)
Atropine sulfate 1 mg (gr $\frac{1}{65}$)
By s c injection
- (21) Atropine sulfate
0.75 mg tablets (gr $\frac{1}{250}$)
Three to eight in the 24 hours
- (22) *Demerol Hinthrop*
2 cc ampules (= 100 mg)
For i m injection
- (23) *Demerol Hinthrop*
50 mg tablets
One every 6 hours
- (24) Quinidine sulfate
0.6 gm tablets
One to three tablets every 4
hours (only in daytime)
- (25) *Quinine gluconate Lilly*
0.8 gm in 10 cc rubber cap
vials
Dilute with 50 cc of 5 per cent
glucose
Slow i v injection of 0.5 gm
- (26) *Pronestyl hydrochloride Squibb*
(procaine amide)
10 cc of a 10 per cent aqueous
solution in a rubber cap vial
(100 mg per cc)
100 to 500 mg i v
- (27) *Pronestyl hydrochloride Squibb*
(procaine amide)
0.25 gm capsules for oral use
Initial dose 1 to 2 gm within
2 hours
Maintenance dose 0.5 to 1 gm
every 4 hours
- (28) Phenobarbital
0.1 tablets (gr $\frac{1}{100}$)
One at bedtime
- (29) Phenobarbital
0.015 tablets (gr $\frac{1}{4}$)
one t i d
- (30) *Sodium luminal Merc* 150 mg (about gr
189) (51188)
Dissolve in 10 cc of distilled
water
Slow i v injection
- (31) Sodium amytal
0.2 gm capsules (gr $\frac{1}{10}$)
One at bedtime
- (32) Triple bromides 0.5 gm with (gr 1188)
phenobarbital 16 mg (gr $\frac{1}{4}$)
One tablet before retiring
- (33) Chloral hydrate 2 gm (gr 1111)
Glucose 25 gm (5111)
Water ad cc 500 by slow enema
- (34) Chloral hydrate 10 gm (5111)
Simple syrup 30 gm (31)
Water ad cc 240 (3111)
One tablespoonful at night in (gm 0.5 or
water gr 1111)
- (35) *Bellergal Sando*
Tablets -one t i d
(Each contains
Atropine 1 mg
Ergotamine 0.3 mg
Phenobarbital 20 mg)
- (36) *Hydalgine Sando*
1 cc ampules
(1 cc = 0.2 mg)
Average dose 1 to 2 cc daily
- (37) *Dibenamine Guvaulau Delavan*
na
5 per cent solution in 50 per
cent alcohol
I v injection of 5 mg /kilo by
the drip method over 60 to 15
minutes (total not above 500
mg)
- (38) *Etamon Parke Davis* (benzo
dioxane)
20 cc rubber cap vials
(1 cc = 100 mg)
I v or i m injections
(I v dose not above 7 mg /kilo
I m dose not above 20 mg /
kilo)
- (39) *Bistrium bromide Squibb* (hexa
methonium bromide)
10 cc vials (1 cc = 25 mg)
For i v or i m injections

- I v injection at rate of 1 mg /
min maximum 50 mg
I m initial dose 5 mg
Larger doses given every 8 to
12 hours increasing by 5 mg
each time
- (10) Methium Warner Chilcott (hexa
methonium chloride)
1% mg t i d or g i d
(Later daily doses of 2 to 6
gm)
- (11) Aminophyllin 0.5 gm (gr viiss)
Cocoa butter for a suppository
- (12) Aminophyllin Searle
20 cc ampules (0.5 gm) (gr viiss)
By i v injection
- (13) Papaverine hydrochloride Lilly
0.1 gm tablets (gr iss)
One t i d or g i d
- (14) Papaverine hydrochloride Lilly
80 mg ampules
One by i m or i v injection
- (15) Rauwolfia Riker (rauwolfia)
2 mg tablets
Initial dose two tablets daily
Maintenance dose one tablet
daily
- (16) Veriloid Piker Lab (veratrum
viride)
2 mg tablets
One to two tablets t i d
- (17) Veriloid Pitman Moore Co
(protopoveratrine)
0.2 mg tablets
Two tablets t i d after meals
- (18) Trimeth National Drug Co
(Ibellen)
10 mg enteric coated tablets
Initial dose 60 to 160 mg daily
Maintenance dose 70 to 100
mg daily
- (19) Trimeth National Drug Co
(Ibellen)
10 cc of aqueous solution in a
rubber cap vial (30 mg per
cc)
- (20) Peritrate Warner Chilcott (pen
taerythrol tetranitrate)
10 mg tablets
One tablet t i d or g i d
- (21) Mannitol hexanitrate
30 mg tablets (gr ss)
One every 6 hours
- (22) Amyl nitrite
0.2 cc ampules (Minj)
Break one and deeply inhale
- (23) Nitroglycerin
0.3 mg tablets (gr 1/100)
For perlingual use as needed
as a
- (24) Priscoline Ciba
20 mg tablets
One tablet t i d
- (25) Adrenalin hydrochloride Parke
Davis
10 cc of 1/1000 solution in a
rubber cap vial
(1 cc = 1 mg)
S c injection of 1 cc
- (26) Lenopred Winthrop Stearns
0.2 per cent solution—4 cc
ampules
(1 cc = 2 mg)
- (27) Ephedrine sulfate
25 mg tablets (gr 3/4)
One every 4 hours
- (28) Benzedrine sulfate
Tablets 10 mg (gr 1/4)
One t i d
- (29) Leitol (paredinol) Knoll
One bottle—70 drops (= 30
mg) t i d
- (30) Caffeine with sodium benzoate
Ampules 0.75 gm (gr iv)
One twice or three times a day
By s c injection
- (31) Cocaine Ciba
1-cc or 5-cc ampules
One t i d s c or s v or 20
drops t i d per os

- (62) *Pitressin Parke Davis*
1 cc ampules for i m injection
(1 cc = 10 pressor units)
- (63) *Liquaemin Roche* (heparin)
A rubber cap vial of 5 cc
(equiv. to 10 000 units)
Two to three vials i m every 4
hours or 20 cc i v in 1000 cc
of isotonic glucose by slow
drip method
- (64) *Dicumarol Abbott*
100 mg tablets
As directed
- (65) *Tromexan Geigy*
150 mg tablets
- (66) *Menadione Upjohn*
■ mg tablets
One every 4 hours
- (67) *Ascorbic acid Abbott*
100 mg tablets
One b i d
- (68) *Thiamine chloride* (vitamin
B₁)
One rubber cap vial
I v injection of 1 cc = 10 mg
Or *Solu B Upjohn*
One rubber cap vial
I v injection of 1 to 5 cc
5 cc contain
Thiamine 10 mg
Riboflavin 10 mg
Pyridoxin 5 mg
Ca pantothenate 80 mg
Nicotinamide 250 mg
- (69) *Strychnine sulfate*—1 mg (gr $\frac{1}{65}$)
Tablets one t i d
- (70) *Mecholyl chloride Merck*
Vials 0.1 gm
S c injection of 10 mg (gr $\frac{1}{6}$)
- (71) *Mecholyl bromide Merck*
Tablets 0.2 gm (gr $\frac{1}{11}$)
One t i d
- (72) *Prostigmin methylsulfate Hoff
mann La Roche* 1-4 000
1 cc ampules
One to four by i m or i v in
jection
Or *Prostigmin bromide Hoff
mann La Roche*
15 mg tablets
One t i d
- (73) *Potassium iodide*
saturated solution cc 30 in a (31)
dropper
From ■ to 30 drops for 10 day
periods separated by 4 day
periods of rest
- (74) *ACTHAR Gel Armour*
5 cc rubber cap vial
20 mg per cc (or 40 mg per
cc)
- (75) *Cortone Merck*
25 mg tablets
- (76) *Diazal Fougère Inc*
(A chloride and glutamic acid)
A 2 ounce shaker
- (77) *Potassium chloride*
5 ounces
A flat teaspoon b i d
- (78) *Carbo Resin Lilly* (unflavored)
(For incorporation into rec
ipes)

Diets

I Bland Diet for Acute Infections

- 8 A.M. Orange juice—one glass with water with added sugar to taste weak tea or coffee with sugar or lactose
- 10 A.M. Cooked farina type cereal with milk and water (salt should be added)
Eggnog milk cream and egg (either cooked or uncooked)
- 12 Noon Orange juice or grapefruit juice with water and added sugar
Iured vegetables potatoes peas carrots or string beans
Moderately salted crackers or zwieback
- 2 P.M. Eggnog malted milk or junket
- 4 P.M. Ice cream or salted crackers with butter and milk
- 6 P.M. Eggnog or chocolate milk drink
- 8 P.M. Cocoa chocolate milk or malted milk drink (warm) with crackers (salted) or zwieback
- 10 P.M. One glass of warm milk

II Diet in Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis

Meat Fish Eggs Cheese

Calf and beef liver duck broiled or roasted lean cuts (loin or rib) of beef or lamb Chicken turkey lamb chops
Fish broiled or baked
Cottage cheese
Oysters eggs

Vegetables

Lima beans kidney beans spinach celery carrots asparagus tips string beans beets peas (split or green) watercress chard mushrooms

Fruits

Fresh oranges or grapefruit Fresh or stewed apples pears peaches cherries plums raisins stewed rhubarb

Currents dates figs melons berries bananas

Cereals

Prepared cereals—especially whole wheat cereals cooked cereals with milk

Oatmeal Whole wheat or rye bread plain or toasted

Beverages

Milk lemonade orangeade buttermilk
Cocoa weak tea or weak coffee

Sundries

Butter Soups clear or veg table Small portions of plain desserts

Avoid

Meat fats fried foods gravies pork
All smoked salted spiced or canned meats or
b Seasoned cheese
Dried vegetables cabbage corn onions
All condiments as pepper spices vinegar cat
sup Worcestershire sauce

III Example of a 900 Calorie Diet for Obesity

Breakfast $\frac{1}{2}$ small grapefruit
 $\frac{1}{2}$ cup oatmeal
 $\frac{1}{4}$ teaspoonful of butter
1 slice rye bread
1 glass of skimmed milk
tea or coffee (no sugar)

Lunch $\frac{1}{4}$ head of lettuce
1 tomato
 $\frac{1}{2}$ cup canned tuna fish
 $\frac{1}{4}$ cup cottage cheese
1 slice rye bread
1 egg
1 small apple
tea or coffee (no sugar)

Supper 1 cup spinach soup
3 slices of lean roast beef
1 slice of rye bread
1 teaspoonful of butter
1 egg
2 biscuits
tea or coffee (no sugar)

The following foods must be avoided Nuts olives olive oil chocolate and cocoa gravy cream soups sauces ice cream candy pastry macaroni potatoes alcoholic beverages canned fruits in syrup and highly spiced and salted foods Do not use sugar unless you absolutely have to Saccharine may be substituted

Six glasses of water each day are allowed. Be sure that your daily menus include a fresh fruit, meat, fish or egg, milk, and three vegetables.

IV Low Protein Diet

Breakfast

Fruit	Choice of ¹ / ₂ grapefruit, orange, baked apple, or grapes
Cereal	Choice of oatmeal, farina
Breads	Toast, dry, old white bread, muffin with unsalted butter
Beverage	Light coffee with cream, cocoa, milk

Dinner

Soup	Vegetable soup made with milk, tomato, rice, corn, barley, pea soups
Vegetable	Spinach, watercress, cabbage, green beans, string beans, cauliflower, boiled onion, carrots, lettuce may be made into a salad and ¹ / ₂ table spoon of mayonnaise added
Bread	Toast, muffin or dry, old white bread
Beverage	Light coffee, milk, postum, cocoa
Desert	Baked banana, tapioca, or chocolate pudding, ice cream

Supper

Cereal	Oatmeal, farina, cream of wheat, macaroni, spaghetti without sauce or seasoned cheese
Salad	Lettuce and tomato salad, pineapple salad, or chopped vegetable salad with mayonnaise
Bread	Toast, dry, old white bread or muffin
Desert	Baked apple, custard, ice cream, sliced pineapple, pears, banana
Beverage	Milk, cocoa

V Fluid Diet

Prepare 2000 cc (2 quarts) of very light tea (1 tablespoonful of tea—short infusion). This will be sweetened with 150 grams of sugar. The juice of one lemon will be added. One large glass of this fluid is to be administered every 2 hours. The fluid contains only about 600 calories, no salts and little vitamin C.

VI Modified Karel Diet

8 A M	Milk	200 cc
	Sugar	10 gm
11 A M	Bread (toast)	10 gm
	Orange juice	100 gm
	Sugar	5 gm
	1 egg	
2 P M	Cream soup	150 gm

	Bread	10 gm
	Butter	5 gm
6 P M	1 egg	
	Bread	10 gm
	Butter	10 gm
	¹ / ₂ cup of light tea	100 cc
	Sugar	10 gm
9 P M	Milk	200 cc

This diet supplies about 900 calories, 750 cc of fluid, and about 1.7 grams of sodium chloride.

VII Example of a Diet for Patients in Congestive Failure (After the Initial Phase of Drug and Diet Treatment for Congestive Failure and Marked Improvement)

8 A M	Orange juice	100 cc
	Milk	200 cc
	Sugar	10 gm
	Whole wheat bread	1 slice
	Butter (unsalted)	5 gm
12 Noon	Meat or fish—1 small serving (100 gm meat or 120 gm fish)	
	Whole wheat bread	1 slice
	Butter	5 gm
	Light coffee or tea	150 cc
	Sugar	10 gm
	1 small apple	
4 P M	Milk	150 cc
	Sugar	5 gm
	Crackers (unsalted)	5
7 P M	Soup	150 gm
	Eggs	1
	Spinach	1 serving
	Whole wheat bread	1 slice
	Butter (unsalted)	10 gm
	1 small apple	
	Light tea	150 cc

This diet supplies about 1000 cc of fluid, 1600 calories, 190 gm of carbohydrates, 50 gm of proteins, 70 gm of fats.

VIII Diet for Ambulatory Coronary Patient (Coronary Heart Disease with Valvular Defect)

Breakfast

Fruit	Orange juice with added water
	Stewed prunes, pears, or apricots
Cereal	1 serving of cooked cereal (such as farina or cream of wheat)
Egg	1 soft boiled or coddled egg
Bread	1 slice of toast or white bread with butter
Beverage	1 glass of milk, Atul tea, coffee and cocoa

Lunch

Soup	Vegetable soups or clear broth
Bread	1 slice of white bread or toast with butter
Salad	Choice of grapefruit salad or lettuce and tomato salad
Dessert	Cooked fruit baked apple or apple sauce
Beverage	Light coffee or tea

Dinner

Meat or fish	Baked broiled or roasted cuts of beef veal chicken liver turkey or fresh fish as cod halibut or had dock
Vegetable	Choice of the following string beans peas carrots spinach lettuce tomatoes potato Choice of one or two vegetables
Bread	1 slice of white or whole wheat plain or toast
Dessert	Choice of cooked fruit or jello gelatin dessert tapioca or bread pudding custard
Beverage	1 glass of milk light coffee or tea

Only unsalted butter should be used

The following foods must be avoided Canned spiced salted or preserved meats or fish Strong cheese Avoid cabbage cucumbers corn onions peppers radishes turnips baked beans No raw fruits Avoid hot biscuits muffins waffles corn breads corn flakes

The patient should not eat too much at one meal and not unless 4 hours have elapsed from previous meal He should not eat while in an excited state he should chew food well and eat slowly He should not drink iced ginger ale or alcoholic drinks with the meal He should not eat too hot or too cold foods at any meal

*IX Diet for Hypertensive Patients**Breakfast*

Fruit	Choice of One half grapefruit or orange one peach one apple or any other fresh or stewed fruit
Cereal	Choice of cooked cereals
Egg	Soft boiled poached or scrambled
Beverage	Milk with light coffee or tea Strong coffee and cocoa should be avoided

Lunch

Soup	Choice of One cup of vegetable spinach or tomato soup (unsalted)
------	--

*Salad**Bread
Beverage*

Mixed vegetable salad or lettuce and tomato salad No condiments
White or whole wheat or toast
Milk or light coffee

Dinner

Soup	Choice of One cup of vegetable spinach or tomato soup (unsalted)
Meat or Fish or	Small serving of fresh beef mutton lamb chicken or turkey Fresh fish in small portion
Cheese	Cottage cheese is best
Vegetable	Serving of any of the following vegetables a paragon beets carrots squash string beans eggplant spinach lettuce tomatoes
Salad	Lettuce and tomato salad
Beverage	Milk or light coffee
Dessert	Fruit cup ice cream or plain cake

The following foods must be avoided Canned salted or seasoned meats and fish bacon pork and veal seasonings (salt pepper mustard chili sauce) and any kind of gravy Alcohol tea strong coffee or cocoa carbonated drinks (ginger ale coca cola) No salt is allowed at the table

X Salt Free Diet (Less than 10 Grams Na)

This diet is used when the sodium intake is to be reduced to the minimum to decrease fluid retention of tissues as in liver disease with ascites nephritis hypertension or congestive failure

Foods Allowed

Milk	1 pint only
Eggs	2 daily or equivalent
Cheese	salt free cottage cheese
Fat	unsalted butter cream
Meat	lean meat poultry fresh water fish
Bread	yeast bread made without salt or milk
Cereal	puffed wheat puffed rice shredded wheat or any cereal cooked without salt
Vegetable	fresh or frozen or canned without salt
Potato	one serving baked boiled or mashed without salt
Fruit	fresh or canned
Dessert	jello custard junket and plain puddings made without salt
Soup	cream soups made without salt
Beverage	tea coffee
Sugar	jelly jam honey molasses marmalade

Foods to be Avoided

1 Salt	
2 Green vegetables such as broccoli cabbage cauliflower dried beans onions brussels	

- sprouts turnips cucumbers radishes peppers
- 3 Meat extracts meat sauces catsup mustard
relishes chili sauce broths meat soups
- 4 Bacon smoked and prepared meats smoked
and canned tuna fish salmon
- 5 Fried foods potato chips pop corn
- 6 Cheese—except salt free cottage cheese
- 7 Pastries prepared with baking soda or bak-
ing powder such as biscuits muffins cakes
cookies
- 8 Canned foods which contain added salts such
as canned vegetables soups tomato juice
fish and meat
- 9 Salt water fish as oysters clams
- 10 Dressing French commercially made mayon-
naise

Sample Menu

- Breakfast** Orange juice
One egg
Salt free bread
Coffee
Sweet butter
Milk
- Lunch** Meat
Potato
Fresh carrots
Baked apple
Tea
- Supper** Milk soup without salt
Salt free cottage cheese and sour
cream
Sweet butter
Jello
Milk
Tea

VI Low Salt Diets

Sample Menus

MENU A

Breakfast

- Pineapple juice—1 glass
Two egg yolks fried in sweet butter
Oatmeal—1 cup
Milk—1 glass
Somagen—1 tablespoonful
Sugar
Coffee as desired
One multivitamin capsule

Lunch

- Lamb chop—1
Rice— $\frac{1}{2}$ cup

- Tomatoes and lettuce with vinegar and olive oil
dressing
Apricots—4 halves
Grapejuice— $\frac{1}{2}$ glass

Supper

- Chicken creamed with mushrooms—2 oz
Baked potato with sweet butter—1
Peas— $\frac{3}{4}$ cup
Peaches—2 halves
Lemonade (1 lemon)—1 glass

MENU B

Breakfast

- Grapefruit with sugar— $\frac{1}{2}$
Two egg yolks
Rice—1 cup
Milk—1 glass
Somagen—1 tablespoonful
Sugar
Coffee as desired
One multivitamin capsule

Lunch

- Beef patties—2 oz
 Lima beans— $\frac{3}{4}$ cup
Creamed cauliflower—1 cup
Lettuce and fruit salad
Pumpkin pie (crust made without salt)
Grapefruit juice— $\frac{1}{2}$ glass
Somagen—1 tablespoonful

Supper

- Vegetable plate made up of baked potato string
beans peas brussels sprouts (without salt)
Sliced pineapple—2 slices
Orange juice from 2 oranges

MENU C

Breakfast

- Orange juice from 2 oranges
Two egg yolks
Cream of wheat—1 cup with sliced peaches
Milk—1 glass
Sugar
Coffee as desired
One multivitamin capsule

Lunch

- Lean steak—2 oz
Candied sweet potato—1 medium size
Eggplant fried in oil or sweet butter—2 slices
Creamed carrots and peas— $\frac{1}{2}$ cup
Fresh grapes—1 cup
Lemonade (1 lemon)—1 glass

Supper

Veal chop—1
Rice—1 cup
Fresh asparagus tips— $\frac{1}{2}$ cup
Lettuce and orange salad
Baked apple
Grapejuice— $\frac{1}{2}$ glassful

Na Mg per 100 Grams

0.75

Banana
Barley pearled
Bean great northern dry
Beans in pods fresh
Beans lima
Beans navy dry
Beer
Blackberry
Blueberry
Brazil nut
Butter unsalted
Broccoli
Brussels sprouts
Cabbage leaves
Cantaloupe
Cashew nut
Cauliflower
Cereal instant salted
Cereal puffed
Cereal wheatena
Cherry frozen
Chocolate unsweetened
Cider sweet
Cocoa powder ordinary
Coffee
Coconut
Corn
Corn oil
Cornstarch
Cowpea fresh shelled
Cranberry fresh
Cucumber
Currant
Date
Eggplant
Endive leaves
Farina not enriched
Filbert raw
Flour enriched
Gelatin dry
Gingerale
Grape juice Concord
Grape Thompson seedless
Grapefruit juice
Grape juice
Grape jam
Honey

Lard
Lemon
Lettuce
Macaroni
Matsioth
Marmalade orange
Mushroom
Oats rolled
Okra pods
Orange juice
Onion
Parsnip
Peas fresh
Peach fresh
Peanut roasted in shell
Pear Bartlett
Pecan
Pepper green
Persimmon wild
Pineapple juice
Plum
Pomegranate
Potato sweet—no skin
Potato white—no skin
Prunes
Rumpkin
Quince
Radish
Raisin seedless
Raspberry red
Rhubarb
Rice puffed dry
Rice polished dry
Sorghum syrup
Sugar white
Sugar light brown
Squash acorn
Squash white Hubbard summer
Squash yellow summer
Strawberry
Tea
Tangerines
Tomato fresh
Turnip leaves
Turnip yellow
Watermelon
Wheat germ containing some bran and flour
Wheat winter
Water carbonated bottle
Yeast primary cultured dry
Yeast brewers dry
Walnut raw

75-50

Carrot
Egg yolks only
Figs dry

Mutard greens
Turkey breast meat
Turnip white
Veal
Milk goat
Beans dry split
Lentil dry
Potato sweet
Rabbit

50-100

Beef
Cocoa powder Dutch process
Chicken breast meat
Milk whole liquid
Oyster fresh
Pancetta pig
Pork
Turkey leg meat gizzard
Dandelion leaves
Chocolate milk
Tripes pickled turkey
Liver pig
Beef roast
Corn and cane tile wrap
Molasses cane
Cod fresh
Flour enriched

100-150

Buck leaves
Beet
Brussel sprouts
Buttermilk
Celery stalks
Chicken leg meat
Egg
Kale
Lamb
Liver calf
Cultured buttermilk
Ice cream butter

150-200

Almond in oil and salt
Brazil nut in oil and salt
Cashew nut roasted in oil and salt
Egg whites only
Kielbasa beef
Spinach
Yeast doughnut (dry-distributed)
Honey
Sausage Bologna

200-500

Potato chips
Bread whole wheat

Cheese cottage
Cheese cream
Cheese Swiss
Cod frozen
Milk dry
Lentil roasted in oil and salt (skins included)
Tomato juice canned
Zwieback
Canned soups

500-1000

Bacon uncooked
Bread rye and wheat
Bread semi whole wheat
Bread wheat white
Butter average salt
Butter lightly salted
Cheese cheddar
Corn flakes
Sauerkraut
Graham cracker
Mayonnaise
Salmon
Hash corned beef
Tuna canned

1000 or more

Bacon fried crisp
Cheese process
Ham less bone and excess fat
Oleomargarine
Olive green pickled kernel seed
Pickled dill
Pretzel
Soda baking
Soda crackers
Beef sliced
Cereal bran
Cod salted
Chewing tobacco
Cut up tomato
Sausage frankfort
Sausage pork

XII Low Cholesterol Diet

This diet is used to provide an adequate diet low in cholesterol for patients with gall stones and also in certain patients with tendency to high blood cholesterol or a significant family history of coronary disease. The cholesterol content is 122 mg.

Food Allowed

Milk skim milk or buttermilk
Cheese cottage cheese made with skim milk
Fat oleomargarine

Meats and fish all kinds except those listed below
 Breads all kinds
 Cereals all kinds
 Vegetables all kinds
 Fruits all kinds
 Desserts water ices cornstarch or tapioca pudding made with fruit juices
 Soups broth
 Beverages fruit juices fruitades ginger ale carbonated water coffee tea skimmed milk
 Sugar jelly jam molasses honey syrup

Foods to be avoided

- 1 Eggs
- 2 Butter cream fats gravies
- 3 Shellfish liver kidneys sweetbreads brains
- 4 All fried foods
- 5 All rich and highly seasoned foods prepared with butter cream or eggs
- 6 Oils such as olive oil salad dressings
- 7 Heavy cheese nuts olives chocolate cocoa
- 8 Candies cake pies pastries

Sample Menu

Breakfast	Orange juice Cream of wheat Cottage cheese Toast Marmalade Skim milk sugar Coffee Oleomargarine
Lunch	Broth Lean beef Mashed potato Beet Bread Jelly Peaches Sugar Tea
Supper	Crackers salmon tomato and lettuce salad Baked potato Bread Jelly Jello Sugar Skim milk Coffee Oleomargarine

VIII Low Fat Diet¹⁴

This diet provides foods which are high in protein and carbohydrates and low in fat. This diet contains approximately 3000 calories 500 carbohydrates 30 fat 150 protein

Foods Allowed

Milk skim milk or buttermilk (one quart daily)
 Eggs one daily
 Cheese cottage cheese made with skim milk
 Meat fish or poultry lean meat fowl fish low in fat such as cod halibut haddock
 Bread all kinds (whole wheat grain preferred)
 Cereal all kinds rice macaroni spaghetti noodles
 Vegetables all except those listed in Foods to Avoid
 Fruits all kinds
 Desserts fruit jello gelatine puddings made with skim milk sherbet angel cake fruit whips
 Soups fat free broth milk soup made with skim milk
 Beverages tea coffee
 Sugar jelly jam honey molasses

Foods to be avoided

- 1 Fried foods
- 2 Cream mayonnaise butter peanut butter
- 3 Gravies rich sauces
- 4 Ice cream pie cake cookies rich desserts
- 5 Muffin biscuits
- 6 Pickles and spices
- 7 Fatty cheese bacon smoked salmon frankfurters
- 8 Cassy vegetables such as onions broccoli cabbage turnip cauliflower brussels sprouts dried peas and beans corn cucumbers and dishes peppers
- 9 Dark chocolate cocoa oils

Sample Menu

Breakfast	Apple juice Cream of wheat Cottage cheese Toast Marmalade skim milk sugar Coffee
-----------	---

If the amount of fat restriction is not indicated on the order two teaspoons of butter and whole milk will be added daily this will provide a 50 gram intake

10 00 A M Fruit juice crackers jelly jello

Lunch Broth with rice without fat
 Lean chicken
 Mashed potato without fat
 Beets with sliced lemon
 Bread
 Peaches
 Tea

3 00 P M Same as at 10 00 A M

Supper Skim milk soup
 Poached egg on toast
 Tomato and lettuce salad
 Baked potato
 Skim milk
 Jello
 Sugar
 Tea

XIV Rice Diet

This experimental diet is used in arterial hypertension. Additional amounts of fruits and rice should be added relative to caloric needs of patient. It is inadequate and vitamin supplements should be added.

Cal	1873	
CHO	432	gm
Protein	14	gm
Fat	3	gm
Ca	3.38	gm
I	306	gm
Fe	17.8	mg
A	8.12	I U
B ₁	5.93	mg

Riboflavin	621 mg
Niacin	6.43 mg
C	24.4 mg

Foods Allowed

Rice 6 tablespoons—dry (rice may be cooked with allowed fruit juice sugar or allowed fruit for flavoring) brown converted polished puffed

Sugar honey maple syrup (sugar—6 table spoons)

Fluids only 1000 cc fluid allowed each day which may be made up from the following juices

- 240 grams—prune juice
- 240 grams—orange or grapefruit juice
- 240 grams—grape apple or pineapple
- 250 grams—water or above juice

Fruits 3 to 10 servings 20 per cent fruit (see list)

Absolutely no other foods are allowed without specific instructions

Sample Menu

Breakfast	Glass of orange juice Puffed rice with canned peaches Applesauce
	Between meals fruit
Dinner	Glass of pineapple juice Baked rice with honey and dates Fruit cup
Supper	Glass of apple juice Steamed rice with cherries bananas

Recommended Dietary Allowances
Food and Nutrition Board National Research Council

	CALORIE	PROTEIN	CALCIUM	IRON	VITAMIN A	THIAMINE	RIBOFLAVIN	NIACIN	ASCORBIC ACID	VITAMIN D
	kcal	gm	gm	mg	IU	mg	mg	mg	mg	IU
Man (70 kg)										
Sedentary	2500	70	0.8	10†	5000	1.2	1.6	17	75	400
Moderately active	3000	70	0.8	10†	5000	1.5	2.0	15	75	400
Very active	4500	90	0.8	10†	5000	2.0	2.6	20	75	400
Woman (56 kg)										
Sedentary	2100	60	0.8	10	5000	1.1	1.5	11	60	400
Moderately active	2500	60	0.8	10	5000	1.2	1.6	12	70	400
Very active	3000	60	0.8	12	5000	1.5	2.0	15	70	400
Pregnancy (latter half)	2500	60	1.5	15	6000	1.8	2.5	18	100	800
Lactation	3000‡	100	2.0	15	8000	2.0	3.0	20	150	800
Children up to 12 years§										
Under 1 year	1000/kg	3.5/kg	1.0	6	1500	0.4	0.6	4	30	400-800
1-3 years	1200	40	1.0	7	2000	0.6	0.9	6	30	400
4-6 years	1600	50	1.0	8	2400	0.8	1.2	8	30	400
7-9 years	2000	60	1.0	10	3000	1.0	1.5	10	60	400
10-12 years	2500	70	1.2	12	4500	1.2	1.8	12	75	400
Children over 12 years§										
Girls 13-15 years	2600	80	1.3	15	5000	1.3	2.0	13	80	400
16-20 years	2400	75	1.0	15	5000	1.2	1.8	12	80	400
Boys 13-15 years	3200	80	1.4	15	5000	1.5	2.0	15	90	400
16-20 years	3500	100	1.4	15	6000	1.8	2.5	18	100	400

Allowance depends on relative amounts of vitamin A and carotene. Values given are based on assumption that about two thirds of vitamin A value of average diet is contributed by carotene and that carotene has half or less than half the value of vitamin A.

† For adults (except pregnant and lactating women) on diets supplying 2000 calories or less the allowances of thiamine, riboflavin and niacin may be 1 mg, 1.5 mg and 10 mg respectively.

‡ There is evidence that the normal male adult needs little or no additional iron. The requirement will be provided if the diet is satisfactory in other respects.

§ During the latter part of pregnancy the allowance should increase approximately 70 per cent over the preceding level. The value of 2500 calories represents the allowance for pregnant sedentary women.

¶ Allowance for children is based on the needs for the middle year in each group (as 2, 5, 8, etc.) and for moderate activity and average weight at the middle year of the age group.

‡ Needs of infants increase from month to month with size and activity. The amounts given are for approximately 6 to 8 months. The dietary requirements for some of the nutrients such as protein and calcium are less if derived largely from human milk.

Summary of Treatment in Cardiovascular Emergencies

PROXIMAL LESION	TREATMENT	OTHER DRUGS	PHYSICAL PROCEDURES	TABLET
Adams Stokes attack	Atropine 1 mg plus aminophyllin 0.25 gm or ephedrine 50 mg	² i v adrenalin 0.1 mg or intracardiac adrenalin 0.1-0.5 mg		33
Angina pectoris	Aminophyllin 0.25-0.50 gm	Nitroglycerin perlingual or Khellin 50 mg i m	Oxygen	430
Atrial fibrillation	Morphine sulfate 5 mg plus atropine sulfate 1 mg (or demerol 50 mg)	Atropine sulfate 1 mg every 4 hours (four times) (per os) Quinidine gluconate i v 0.5 gm	Oxygen	345
Atrial flutter	Digitoxin 0.4 mg	Digitoxin 0.8 mg within 24 hours per os		343
Atrial tachycardia	i v edilanid 0.5 mg	Prostigmin 0.25 mg (1 cc) i m	Compression of eye balls or carotid sinus	330
Cardiac failure	Morphine sulfate 5-10 mg Strophanthin 0.25-0.50 mg or gitaligin 2.5 mg or edilanid 0.4 mg	I phenobarbital 50 mg per os or codeine or demerol	Oxygen ² Bloodletting	300
Cerebrovascular accidents	Sodium luminal 150 mg Aminophyllin 0.5 gm	Aminophyllin 0.5 rectal every 4 hours Hypertonic i v glucose (100 cc — 50 per cent) i v Mg sulfate (20 cc — 10 per cent) Chloral hydrate 1-3 gm i v enema	² Bloodletting Carbon dioxide 30 per cent in O ₂ (inhalation) 30 to 60 min ² Infiltration of 1 t cervical ganglion	531
Cheyne Stokes respiration	Aminophyllin 5-1 gm	Coramine i v 5 cc	Oxygen plus carbon dioxide (3.5 per cent)	361
Coronary occlusion	Morphine sulfate 10-15 mg, plus atropine sulfate 1 mg (or demerol 50-100 mg)	I phenobarbital (per os) 50-100 mg as often as needed Heparin 20 cc in 1000 of isotonic glucose	Oxygen Immobility	420

PHYSIOLOGICAL	THERAPEUTIC	THROMBOSIS	HEMOLYSED	DEATH
Dissection of aorta	Morphine sulfate 15 mg. or demerol 100 mg	Hebenthal (per os) as needed	Immobilized	48
Nocturnal dyspnea	Morphine sulfate 15 mg	Anaphyllin 0.25 gm iv	Bloodletting Oxygen	560
Peripheric embolism	Anaphyllin 0.25 gm or propanolol 1 gm	Isoline 100 mg	Suction and pressure apparatus Warmth Embolectomy	531
Pulmonary edema	Morphine sulfate 10 15 mg no atropine	Therapeutic Dilatation after attack	Oxygen with alcohol vapor Bloodletting Positive pressure respiration	560
Pulmonary embolism	Morphine sulfate 10 mg plus atropine sulfate 1 mg	Isopropyl hydro chloride per os	Propped up position Oxygen	509
Shock	Morphine sulfate 10 mg	Evoked 3.8 mg (with plasma) Angiotonin	Plasma plasma solutions Oxygen Warmth	511
Vascular collapse	Atropine 1 mg, Adrenaline 20 mg	Metrazol, oram phenone	Loose position Compression of dominant aorta	519
Ventricular flutter or fibrillation	Propranolol 100 mg (in intracardiac)		Electric defibrillation Then intracardiac adrenaline	39
Ventricular standstill	Adrenaline 1 mg plus procaine 100 mg intracardiac		Oxygen Artificial respiration Pericardial tamponade Electrical stimulation or surgery and cardiac massage	390
Ventricular tachycardia	Propranolol 100-200 mg or quinidine gluconate 0.5 gm	Mg sulfate 10-20 cc 10 per cent		339

Index

A

- Aalsmer W 411
 Abbott M I 5 185 216
 257 76 297 309 377
 43 48 552
 Abbott O A 489
 Abel M 18 501
 Aberrant pulmonary veins—
 see anomalous; venous
 return
 Abesbouse B M 50.
 Abscess 205
 Accelerans 47 59
 Accretio cordis 451—see also
 constrictive pericarditis
 Acetylcholine 48 53
 Acetyl digitoxin 589
 Acetyl digoxin 589
 Aches D 504
 Acidosis 8 595
 Acquapendente (di) F—see
 Fabrizio
 Acrocyanosis 180 227 592 535
 Acrosthenia 572
 ACTH 199 212 449 515
 ACTHAR 628
 Action currents
 arterial 36
 cardiac 53
 s carotid 53
 Activation
 early 331
 normal 53
 Activity of cardiac patient
 610
 Actomyosin 32
 Acute bacterial endocarditis
 cause 704
 clinical types 705
 diagnosis 206
 fulminating 205
 lesions 204
 prognosis 706
 pseudo typhoid type of 705
 pyohemic type of 205
 signs and symptoms of 706
 treatment of 206 614
 Acute emergencies—see emer-
 gencies
 Acute rheumatism—see rheu-
 matic disease
 Adams W 364 462
 Adams Stokes syndrome—see
 a v block
 Adaptation syndrome 174
 Addison's disease—see disease
 Adenosine triphosphate—see
 ATP
 Adhesive me diastino pericar-
 ditis—see constrictive
 pericarditis
 Adonis 583
 Adrenal glands
 innervation 503
 tumors 491 499
 501 507 615 617 618
 619 677 638 639
 Aminopyrine 109 625
 Ammin 677
 Ammi visnaga 597
 Ammonium chloride 236 275
 4.9 585 616 670
 Amnesia 577
 Amphibian heart 10
 Amputation 530
 Amys L W 538
 Amyl nitrite 331 506 627
 action 506
 first use of 3
 test 129 434
 Amyloid heart 389
 Amyloidosis 359
 Amytal 435 579 537 676
 Anacrotic
 depression 110
 notch 111 252
 pulse—see pulse
 slope 110
 Anarchy ventricular 395
 Andrews G W 5 462
 Anemia 175 104 208 372
 407 506
 acute 409
 chronic 409
 hemolytic 384 357 409
 hypochromic 409
 pernicious 410
 post hemorrhagic 409
 secondary 409
 Anesthesia 580 591
 inhalant 591
 intravenous 591
 local 591
 rectal 581
 Aneurysm 1 201 218
 aortic 478
 arterial 531
 arteriovenous—see arterio-
 venous fistula
 atherosclerotic 478
 atrial 303
 cardiac—see atrial and ven-
 tricular
 cause of 478
 changes of circulatory dy-
 namics in 480
 compression phenomena due
 to 480
 description of 1 2
 diagnosis of 473
 diffuse 393
 dissecting—see dissecting an-
 eurysm
 dynamic 47
 elongated 479
 first clinical diagnosis of 1 2
 funiform 479
 general signs of 479
 intrapericardial 481
 lesions of 479
 location of 479
 Adrenalectomy 503
 Adrenalin 48 363 519 537
 677 638 639
 intracardiac 639
 test—see functional tests
 Adrenergic fibers 48
 Adrenine 48
 Adrenolytics 599
 Adson A W 505
 Afferent fibers 48
 Agostoni I 328 574
 Air embolism—see embolism
 air
 Air travel 611
 Aitken 200
 Alarm reaction 174
 Alberti V A 171
 Albertini F I 1
 Albertini (von) A 1 437
 Albumin determination 165
 166
 Albuminuria 132 208
 Alcohol 34 430 579 597 600
 as vasodilator 435
 by inhalation 621
 intoxication 410 529
 vapor 470 532 560 580 621
 Alexander F 461
 Alexander H L 515
 Alexander J 364 489
 Alexander R S 58
 Alimurung M R 10 87 258
 461
 Allbutt C 6 499 504
 Allbutt's sign—see sign
 Allen A W 257 533
 Allen L V 69 440 515 574
 539 545
 Allen F M 505
 Allergic collapse—see hypo-
 tension allergic or al-
 lergi
 Allergy 169 517 518 533
 All or none law 29
 Altana G 363
 Alteration
 electrical 3 3 374
 mechanical 314
 of the pulse—see alternating
 pulse
 of the cardiac sounds 374
 of the x ray silhouette 374
 Alternating pulse 15 719 470
 479 510
 cause of 373
 detection of 3 5
 diagnosis of 375
 electrocardiogram in 374
 mechanism of 374
 prognosis of 3 5
 Altschule M D 776 365
 412 490 574 544 561
 576 601 607 613
 Alvarez W C 69
 Amin j hylin 58 157 363
 430 515 579 531 561

Aneurysm—Cont

- of the abdominal aorta 483
- of the aortic arch 481
- of the ascending aorta 481
- of the descending aorta 482
- of the pulmonary artery 484
- of the Valvula sinus 291

- parietal 391
- physical signs of 480
- prognosis of 483
- rheumatic 478
- saccular 470
- signs and symptoms of 479
- spurious 473
- siphilitic 478
- stencils of 480
- tracheal tug in 481
- treatment of 483
- valvular 405
- varieties of 480
- ventricular 391

Angina pectoris 2

- autonomic reflexes in 431
- cause of 431
- decubitus 431
- diagnosis of 433
- distribution of pain in 434
- effort 431
- electrocardiogram in 433
- 434
- exertional 431
- favoring elements of 432
- first description of 2
- functional tests in 434
- lesions in—see coronary heart disease
- mechanism of 431
- pain in 410 432
- prognosis of 434
- signs and symptoms of 432
- urgers in 435
- transmission of pain in 432
- treatment of 434 618 638
- varieties of 433

Angiocardiography 7 151 327

- 288 314 300 307 313
- 325 326 493 494 496

Angiopneumography 151**Angiotonin—see hypertensine****Ankush 419 437****Anisocoria 480****Antschkow N 6 537****Anulus fibrosus 18****Anomalous venous return**

- pulmonary 282 463
- systemic 463

Anorexia 52, 570**Anovemia test—see functional test****Anoxia 56 59 476 510 517****Anrep G V 69 504 603****Ansiform networks 76****Anthraxosis 510****Anticoagulants 430 509 540**

- 594 615 619 670—see also heparin and dicumarol

Antifoaming therapy 560 621**Antistreptolysin titer 191****Antoine T 364****Antonuzzi I 200 562****Antonini A 561****Anuria 486****Anxiety 419 420 429 433****Anxiety neurosis 517****Aorta**

- abdominal 18
- aneurysm of—see aneurysm
- angusta 474
- anomalies of—see aortic arch
- ascending 18
- atherosclerosis of—see atherosclerosis
- bulbus of 18
- calcified 472 482 498 577
- coarctation of—see coarctation of the aorta
- congenital dilatation 473
- descending 18
- development of 10 12
- dextroposition of 310
- dilatation of 472 473 496
- displaced toward the right 310

dissecting aneurysm of—see dissecting aneurysm**dorsal 10****double barrel 496****dynamic dilatation 474****dynamic hypoplasia 474****embolism 497****geographic map of 239****hypoplastic 474****incomplete rupture of 239****isthmus of 18****normal 18****riding—see Fallot's syndrome****rupture of the—see aortic rupture****thoracic 18****thrombosis of 497****Aortic****aneurysm—see aneurysm****anomalies—see aortic arch****arch—see aortic arch****atresia—see aortic atresia****body—see aortic body****bulbus 18****calcification of 476 477****cardiogram 109—see also aortogram****coarctation—see coarctation of the aorta****gallop—see snap aortic****hypoplasia—see aortic hypoplasia****insufficiency—see aortic insufficiency****isthmus 18****nervi 53****plaques 477****pressure 63****pulse 109****reservoir 63****root—see aortic root****rupture—see aortic rupture****tear—see aortic rupture****Aortic aneurysms—see aneurysm****Aortic arch****behind the esophagus 465****development of 10****dilated 474****double 465 467****normal 18****right sided 310 313 465****syndrome 477****Aortic atresia 307****Aortic body****function 52 54****structure 52****Aortic defect double 256 615****Aortic dulness 80****Aortic insufficiency 200 309****480 485****blood pressure in 217****cause of 238****complications of 247****course of 247****diagnosis of 248****functional 249****graphic records in 217****lesions of 239****mode of origin of the signs of 246****plus foramen ovale 373****relative 249****symptoms and signs of 240****traumatic 235****treatment of 241 245****x ray in 245****Aortic knob****calcified 476****large 320****normal 139****small 233 240****thin 323****Aortic root 465****Aortic rupture 47****complete 481****incomplete 485****spontaneous 485****traumatic 481****Aortic septal defect 200****Aortic stenosis****blood pressure in 251****calcific 213 240****cause of 250****complications of 251****course of 251****diagnosis of 251****functional 250****graphic records in 250****infundibular 250****lesions of 250****mode of origin of the signs of 251****plus coarctation 469****plus patent ductus 306****prognosis of 250****relative 255****rheumatic 250****subaortic 250****symptoms and signs of 251****treatment of 250 615****x ray in 253****Aortic valve****bicuspid 238****normal 17****quadracuspid 324****Aortitis 201 233****abdominal 477****acute 475****chronic 475**

- complications of 477
 course of 477
 diagnosis of 49
 graphic tracings in 416
 lesions 415
 lueric 201 475
 posterior 477
 prognosis of 418
 rheumatic 475
 signs and symptoms of 475
 treatment of 48
 varieties of 46
 x ray in 416
- Aortogram**
 pulse tracing 104 100
 x ray film 483
- Ape beat**—see apical thrust
- Apical thrill** 78
- Apical thrust**
 absent 77 451
 diastolic 480
 displaced 240
 double 480 451
 normal 40 77
 negative 451 512
 prolonged 316
- Appelrot S** 504
- Appendage atrial** 15 17
- Appetite poor** 527
- Apprehension** 547
- Arachnoidectly** 413
- Arantius**—see nodules Aran
- Arboration block**—see v
- Arend J** 716 462
- Areau M** 537
- Argy L B** 27
- Argyll Robertson s sign**—see
- sign**
- Arkin A** 458
- Armbrust C A** 603
- Armchair treatment** 429 611
- Armstrong T** 574
- Arnstein A** 231 300
- Arnaud A**
- Arrhythmia**
 due to atrial fibrillation—see
- atrial fibrillation
- due to block—see m v block
- due to interference dissociation—see interference
- dissociation
- due to premature beats—see
- premature beats
- paroxysmal—see arrhythmia
- premature beats and
- a v block
- respiratory 192 519
- sinus 193
- Arrillaga E C A J** 776 511
- Arrillaga and Verza s syndrome**—see disease
- Arteria d reata pelis** 469
- Arterial**
 arches 10
 blood 155
 disease—see disease
- embolism—see embolism
- graft 533
- hypertension—see hyperten
- mon
- hypotension—see hypoten
- sion
- lesions—see arteritis throm
- bo arteritis Buerger s
- disease and arterio
- sclerosis
- pressure—see blood pressure
- pulse—see arterial pulse
- thrill 240
- Arterial paralysis** 50
- Arterial pulse**
 central 66
 normal 66
 peripheral 66
- Arterial resistance** 51
- Arterial tonus**
 abnormal 50
 normal 50
- Arteries**
 contractility of 49
 coronary—see coronary ar
- teries
- development of 12
- elasticity of 50
- functions of 49
- of the brachial arches 10
- rhythmic contractions of 49
- structure of 49
- tunus of 48
- Arterio luminal connections** 25
- Arterionecrosis** 576
- Arterio sinusoidal connections**
- 25
- Arteriosclerosis** 175 525
 aortic—see atherosclerosis
- arterionecrosis 526
- blood pressure in 577
- cause of 575
- cerebral 577
- coronary—see coronary ar
- teriosclerosis
- diagnosis of 574
- excretion 515
- gastrointestinal 577
- graphic tracings 577
- hyperplastic 576
- lesions of 576
- Moenckeler s 576
- nodular 76
- pulmonary—see pulmonary
- arteriosclerosis
- senile 577
- signs and symptoms of 576
- theories of 575
- treatment of 575
- valvular 701
- Arteriovenous**
 anastomoses 61
- aneurysm—see arteriovenous
- fistula
- capillaries 61 67 491
- channels 61
- fistula—see arteriovenous fis
- tula
- oxygen difference—see oxy
- gen
- Arteriovenous aneurysm**—see
- arteriovenous fistula
- Arteriovenous fistula**
 peripheral 513
- pulmonary** 510 511 514
- Arteritis** 475
 acute 529
 cause of 579
 chronic 530
 diabetic 531
 diagnosis of 530
 disseminated 529
 embolic 579
 lesions of 579
 lueric 530
 obliterant 579
 of the leg 530
 of the pulmonary artery
- 193 47
- parietal 579
- septic 705 207 520
- signs and symptoms of 530
- subacute bacterial 207
- thromboarteritis 413 579
- toxic 529
- treatment of 530 670
- Arthritis**
 rheumatic 101
- rheumatoid 139
- Aschner Dagnini reflex**—see
- oculocardiac reflex
- Aschoff I** 383
- Aschoff bodies**—see nodules
- Aschoff s**
- Aschoff Tanara node**—see a v
- node
- Asciates** 17 23 445 571
- Ascorbic acid**—see vitamin C
- Asperis** 530 53
- Ash H S** 700 460
- Asher G H** 161
- Ashman R** 670 386 419
- Ashworth H S** 704 400
- Askey J M** 367 439
- Asmussen I** 439
- Aspirin** 56 535
- Atria** 118 711 614 615
- Atrial** 11 117 276 328 498
- Asciated heart diseases** 503
- Athensia** 72 727 300 453
- 469 415 439 577 577
- 533
- Astoria A** 561
- Atwood L B** 415
- Atthine** 397
- Atelectasis** 450
- Atheromatous**
 plaque 415 418 415
- ulcer 415
- Atherosclerosis**
 course of 477
- diagnosis of 48 576
- graphic tracings in 46
- lesions of 45
- of the abdominal aorta 47
- of the ascending aorta 416
- of the pulmonary artery 48
- prognosis of 48
- signs and symptoms of 415
- treatment of 478
- varieties of 46
- Athletic heart** 331 516
- ATP** 77
- Utric**
 capacity of 14

- Atrial—Cont**
 function of 39
 structure of 21
 vessels of 21
- Atrial**
 activation 37
 aneurysm 221 232 303
 appendages 15 17 34 45
 bull thrombus 214 215
 223
 capacity 14
 complex—see electrocardio-
 gram
 contraction 39 45
 diastole 41
 dilatation 11
 factor—see factor
 fibrillation 8 208 215 223
 343
 fibromyxomatoma 214 215
 fibrosis—see fibrosis atrial
 flutter—see atrial flutter
 function 45
 gallop—see gallop
 hypertrophy 280
 inactivation 37
 infarction 472
 migration 304
 paralysis 345 354
 polyps 215
 premature beats 349
 pressure 188
 rumble—see rumble atrial
 septal defect—see atrial sep-
 tal defect
 sound—see atrial sound
 standstill—see atrial stand-
 still
 stimulation 37
 systole 31 45
 tachycardia—see atrial tachy-
 cardia
 thrombosis—see atrial throm-
 bosis
- Atrial aneurysm** 221 232 303
Atrial fibrillation 103 223
 280 405 490 491 551
 587 593
 cause of 343
 chronic 313 345
 coarse 344
 complications of 345
 course of 345
 delirious 315
 diagnosis of 345
 electrocardiogram in 344
 fine 344
 graphic tracings in 344
 lesions of 343
 mechanism of 343
 paroxysmal 343 345
 partial 345
 prognosis of 345
 signs and symptoms of 344
 transient 345
 treatment of 346 617 638
 varieties of 345
- Atrial flutter** 223 339 386
 405 470
 blood pressure in 340
 cause of 339
 complications of 341
- course of 311
 diagnosis of 311
 electrocardiogram in 340
 graphic tracings in 340
 hypertrophy—see atrial hy-
 pertrophy
 mechanism of 339
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 341
 signs and symptoms of 339
 treatment of 343 616 638
 x ray in 341
- Atrial hypertrophy** electro-
 cardiogram in 369
Atrial septal defects
 catheterization in 281
 cause of 278
 circulation time in 281
 complications of 282
 course of 282
 diagnosis of 283
 graphic tracings in 280
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 281
 prognosis of 281
 signs and symptoms of 280
 treatment of 284 616
 x ray in 280
- Atrial septum**
 absent 278 279
 development of 9
 normal 9
- Atrial sound** cause of 92 93
Atrial standstill 345 351
Atrial tachycardia 303 339
 405 420 491 496
 attacks of 332
 cause of 332
 chronic 335
 critical rate in 333 334
 diagnosis of 334
 electrocardiogram in 333
 graphic tracings in 333
 mechanism of 334
 mode of origin of the signs of
 334
 prevention of 335
 prognosis of 335
 signs and symptoms of 333
 treatment of 335 616 638
 varieties of 334
- Atrial thrombosis** 214 235 345
Atroventricular
 block—see a v block
 conduction—see conduction
 groove 9
 interval 37
 junction 39 40
 node—see node A V
 opening 9
 rhythm—see nodal rhythm
 valves 9—see also tricuspid
 or mitral valve and a v
 valves
- Atroventricularis communis**—
 see persistent common
 atroventricular orifice
- Atrophy of the heart** 367
Atropine 58 86 331 339
 354 363 499 505 460
 590 514 581 592 617
 619 626 638 639
- Atropine test** 86—see also
 functional tests
- Attacks of**
 convulsions—see convulsive
 seizures
 dizziness—see dizziness
 precordial pain—see angina
 pectoris
 rheumatic fever—see rheu-
 matic disease course
 Stokes Adams—see a v block
 suffocation—see suffocation
 syncope—see syncope
 tachycardia—see paroxysmal
 tachycardia
 vertigo—see vertigo
- Attinger I** 276 295
Auenbrugger L 70 81 460
Auer J 567
Aureomycin 211 440 615
Auricular septal defects—see
 atrial septal defects
Auricular thrombosis—see
 atrial thrombosis
- Auscultation** 2 80
 areas of 81
 first description of 2 80
 laws of 80
 of the heart 80
 routine 80
Auscultatory
 gap 251 254 498
 method 160
 sounds 160
- Austrian R** 516
Automatic system
 function of 33
 structure of 27
- Automatism** 22 79
Autonomic nervous system
 45 48 51 57
- A v block** 48 103 194 208
 215 254 311 319 339
 340 357 470 563 581
 cause of 360
 complications of 361
 complete 357
 congenital 360 369
 course of 361
 description of 2
 diagnosis of 362
 electrocardiogram in 356
 graphic tracings in 356
 incomplete 355
 intermittent 357
 latent 356 361
 lesions of 360
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 361
 occasional 357
 paroxysmal 362
 partial 357
 periodic 356 357
 postural 367
 prognosis of 367
 signs and symptoms of 360
 treatment of 363 617
 types of 361
 varieties of 361
 x ray in 39
- A v capillaries** 26 61
A v node 45

- A V valve common 39 40
 A V valves 9 16 1 40
 Avidio D M 71 562
 Aus—see electric aus
 Aus deviation—see left aus
 Aus deviation and right aus
 deviation
 Axon reflexes 63
 Ayerza L 4 511 515
 Ayrevo Londé A 400

 B
 Baccelli G 488
 Backward failure—see heart
 failure
 Baer L M 69
 Bacteria 1 4
 Bacteria free stage—see sub
 acute bacterial endo
 carditis
 Bacterial endocarditis
 acute—see acute bacterial
 endocarditis
 subacute—see subacute bac
 terial endocarditis
 Badal D W 33
 Baehr G 216
 Baggenstoss A H 216 461
 Bagmareri G 308
 Bagmon H T 459
 Bailey G I 8 258 276 298
 379
 Bailey D T 216 250
 Bainbridge F A 68
 Bainbridge reflex 52
 Baker L C 545
 Bailhous G M 400
 Baldridge C 9
 Baldwin (de F) F 797
 Ballantyne A H 504
 Ballistocardiogram 292
 calibration 114
 causes of waves 114
 in arterio sclerosis 527
 in coarctation 469
 methods 114
 normal 113
 of coronary heart disease 437
 technique 113
 waves 114
 Ball thrombus—see atrial 1 ill
 thrombus
 Bandage elastic 570
 Banks B M 400
 Bant G 379 469
 Barach A L 478 54 5 7
 602
 Barclay R F 412
 Barbier J 257
 Barbitol 579
 Barbiturates 354 50 600
 Barclay A I
 Barcroft J 2 5 5 69
 Baril I 6
 Barium chloride 363
 Barium meal 15
 Barker J M 161 798 410
 54
 Barker N W 440 51 544
 603
 Barker I S 16 367 44
 Barnes A R 461 46.
 Baronofsky I D 459
 Barr D 412
 Barrus L 1 0
 Barreda (de la) I 71
 Barron D H 2
 Bartels I C 412
 Bartram I A 602
 Barzil metabolism 44 III
 decreased 407
 increased 251 405 409
 463 571
 normal 167
 Basch (von) S 4
 Bass V H 256
 Bassi G 256 412
 Bassi M 309
 Battermann R C 603
 Battistini F 5
 Batro A 8 1/1 298 363
 64 397 398 5 1 504
 Bauer (de I) D 309
 Bauer G 514
 Baum H 602
 Bayer C A 489
 Bayley H R 10 439
 Bayliss W M 574
 Bazett H C 141
 Bazzano J J 413
 Beamer R 216
 Beaudet S C 400
 Beck C 5 7 5 399 412 439
 440 461
 Beck D F 440
 Beckwith J R 516
 Bed
 head up 5 0
 rest 150 614 616
 Bedford D I 41 43 43 488
 Bedford I 9
 Bedpan 613
 Bedrens J 170
 Becson I B 395
 Bell 50
 Bell L T 504
 Belladonna 535
 Bellergal 517 6 6
 Bellit S 23 43 460 462 601
 Bénéral R 2 6
 Bénard's syndrome—see dis
 ease
 Bence I F 163
 Benckhuysen A B 395
 Benedetti 223
 Bengua endocarditis 99
 cause of 203
 lesions of 20.
 signs of 204
 symptoms of 204
 treatment of 204
 Bennett D W 363
 Bennigloff A 28
 Benton J C 613
 Benzedrine 531 40. 570 573
 598 670 677
 Benzohexane 498 533
 Bercon L G 185 363 364
 Beretta A 363 365
 Bergamo G 504
 Bergmann (von) G 479
 Beriberi heart 40.
 Berilhouse 510
 Berk I 170
 Berkonsky 256 460 57
 Berlin D 459 613
 Bernard C 3 51 68
 Berne R M 41
 Bernheim 57
 Bernheim's syndrome—see dis
 ease
 Bernstein C 141 257 400
 Berni H 200
 Best C H 6 515
 Bettman R B 461
 Beversbach G 200
 Bezold (von) A 41
 Bezold Jansch reflex 54
 Bincalini A 561
 Bichel G 438
 Bicuspid aortic valve—see
 aortic valve bicuspid
 Bidders ganglion 37
 Bidogga H 1 1
 Big minal rhythm 349—see
 also rhythm bigeminal
 Bilharzia 510
 Bilaric heart 245
 Biné R 603
 Bing R J 20 171 2 295
 3 8
 Biondi 561
 Burgo R F 2
 Birkhug L L 145 200
 Birth changes at 13
 Bishop L F 200
 Bismuth 201 615
 Bistrium 6 6
 Bistonal voice—see dysphonia
 Bittart A 205
 Bizzarri A 379
 Bizzozero R C 399
 Black B K 539
 Black cartilage 511
 Blackman H D 603
 Blackford L M 400
 Blackwood W 535
 Blackwell A R 328 488 504
 524 552
 Black Tausig operation 31,
 3 2
 Bland F F 200 274 400 412
 43 522
 Blankforton M A 411
 Blebs 511
 Blech F 360
 Blechmann 460
 Blechmann position—see posi
 tion
 Bliz G 571
 Block
 arterization—see a v block
 atrioventricular—see a v
 block
 bundle branch—see bundle
 branch block
 complete—see a v block
 congenital—see a v block
 emergence—see a v block
 focal 3 0
 intermittent—see a v block
 intraventricular—see a v
 block
 paroxysmal—see a v block
 partial—see a v block

Block—Cont

protection 347
 sino atrial—see s & block
 Blondheim S H 171
 Blood
 circulating 156
 culture 160 206 209
 depots 54 59
 flow 44 153
 gases 43 155
 normal 156
 technique of determina-
 tion 155
 pressure H 63
 age changes of 60
 average 60
 diastolic—see diastolic
 direct registration of 159
 factors of 53
 fluctuations 64
 graphic registration of 161
 high—see hypertension
 in animals 60
 in aortic insufficiency 242
 in a v block 360
 in children and adoles-
 cents 60
 in premature beats 351
 indirect registration of 159
 intracardiac 157
 low—see hypotension
 mean—see mean
 measurement of 160
 methods of 159
 normal 156
 physiological variations of
 64
 pulse—see pulse pressure
 registration 159
 systolic—see systolic pres-
 sure
 technique 159
 unstable 251
 quantity—see volume
 reservoirs 54 59
 transfusion 206 212 389
 410 521
 arterial 521
 venous 521
 volume 44 156 550
 determination of 156
 increased 550 572
 normal 156
 Bloodletting 449 484 509
 515 560 580 617 672
 638 639
 Bloody sputum—see hemopty-
 sis
 Bloomfield A L 216
 Bloomfield R A 20 211 258
 461 505 516
 Blumenfeldt F 328
 Blumer G 460
 Blumgart H L 14 211 6 7
 170 257 246 417 435
 437 438 439 440 488
 511 601 607 613
 Bluntschli H J 505
 Bobba P 70
 Boccardo C 488
 Bock H E 170 545
 Bodansky M 577

Bodo R 601
 Body
 aortic—see aortic body
 Aschoff—see nodule Asch-
 off's
 carotid—see carotid body
 hemivertebra 212
 McCallum's 190 203 276
 Boeckelman A J 168
 Bogner (van) A 168 171
 201 397 400
 Boggan B 567
 Bollini 223
 Bond G 602
 Bonds 178
 Bondy P D 5 460
 Bonsdorff (von) H 399
 Boone B R 144 170
 Borderline syndromes 546
 Bordet E 6 298
 Borison H L 70
 Bosco G A 438
 Botello L 1
 Bouchut L 4 412
 Bouckaert J J 7 69 574
 Boucmont H 10
 Bouillaud J H 2 363
 Bouillaud's disease—see rheu-
 matic disease
 Bouveret L 4
 Bouveret's diseases—see atrial
 tachycardia
 Boyet D 400
 Bowditch H P 3 67
 Boyd L J 361 398 412
 488 489 603
 Boyer N H 200 438 577 602
 Bozler E 67
 Bradley S E 60
 Bradley W H 69 200
 Bradyardia 407 476
 in aortic stenosis 251
 in myxedema 407
 in rheumatic fever 192
 pathological 354 355 366
 physiological 370
 sinus 330—see also sinus
 bradycardia
 Bramkamp R G 577
 Brams W A 417 440 462
 Bramwell C 88 109 489
 Branches—see bundle bran-
 ches of
 Brannon E H 297 412 578
 Brash J C 27
 Brauer L 4 6 21 461
 Braun L 411 504 601
 Braun Menéndez I 69 167
 168 364 397 398 504
 Breathlessness—see dyspnea
 Brekke V G 309
 Brenner O 515
 Bridges W C 613
 Briggs A P 577
 Briggs J F 459
 Bright R H 399
 Bright's disease—see disease
 Brin L 216 399
 Brindley P 400
 Bristowe J H 363
 Broadbent W H 4 461
 Broadbent's sign—see sign

Brock R C H 277 328
 Brock's operation 308 317
 Brodie B B 360
 Bromer A W 601 613
 Bromides 224 354 502 579
 600 615
 Bronchial
 arteries enlarged 10 310
 asthma 510 513
 catarrh 234
 veins varicose 277 234—see
 also varicose veins
 Bronchitis 277 304 307
 Bronchus
 compressed 480
 displaced 237 233
 pulsating 222
 Bronk D W 69
 Bronstein M R 603
 Brooks C M 69
 Bros T 257
 Brouha L 69
 Brown A F 490
 Brown C R 461
 Brown G E 171 505 538
 Brown H S 505
 Brown J W 27 257 291
 309 488 502
 Brown M G 439
 Brown N W 276
 Brown V K 439
 Brown W H 169
 Bruer M 70
 Bruck M 70
 Bruenn H G 200 439
 Brut
 de moulin—see murmur
 waterwheel
 du diable—see venous hum
 Brull Z 170
 Brumlik J 170 297 360
 Brunelli B 69
 Brunn F 561
 Brunn P 567
 Brunton T L 3
 Bryant J M 216 505
 Bateh O 561
 Buchbinder W C 216 399
 438
 Buchner F 601
 Buen (de) S 400
 Buerger L S 538
 Buerger's disease 5 16 414
 537 534
 cause of 532
 diagnosis of 533
 lesions of 532
 signs and symptoms of 53
 treatment of 533
 Buff I E 603
 Bulatao L 504
 Bulbospiral muscles 77
 Bulbus cordis 9
 Bullets 411
 Bullock 44
 Bundle
 abnormal 288 383
 branches of 23 34 383
 of Bachmann 23
 of His 4 22 23 25 31
 of Kent 383
 of Paladino 383

- of Wenckebach 23
 Bundle branch block
 alternating 351
 bilateral 3 6 3 5 340
 carotid tracing in 3 9
 cause of 376
 concordant 317
 congenital 376
 course of 351
 diagnosis of 351
 discordant 3 6
 electrocardiogram in 376
 electromyogram in 350
 graphic tracings in 3 6
 incomplete 351
 jugular tracing in 3 9
 left 243 292 316
 lesions of 3 6
 mechanism 3 6
 paroxysmal 351
 phonocardiography in 3 9
 physical data in 316
 precordial leads in 37 316
 prognosis of 351
 right 225 256 293 377
 unstable 351
 varieties of 351
 Wilson type of 3 8
 with short I R—see W P
 W syndrome
 x ray in 316
 Burch G E 35 70 171 399
 417 439 440 57
 Burell H B 461 579
 Burgess A M 207
 Burrell 299
 Burrell J B 707
 Burstein C L 382
 Burnell C S 170 297 419
 461
 Buttersworth S 365
 Buzzing of the ears 73 336
 Byron F A 489
- C
- Cabanne I A 169
 Cabot R C 6 185
 Cachexia 527
 Caeiro A 168
 Caffeine 331 574 595 670
 677
 Cahall L 200
 Calabresi M 160 363 364
 Calciferol 493
 Calcification 204
 of the aorta 4 8
 of the aortic valve 213
 of the coronary arteries 474
 of the ductus 293
 of the mitral valve 213
 of the pericardium 451 45
 Calcium 37 537
 Calcium rigor 37
 Calif 65
 Calhoun J A 577
 Calhoun William A 505
 Callebaut J 112
 Calo A 172 377 363 373
 Calodney M M 451
 Camilleri M H 515
 Cameron G H 45 37
- Campbell M 71 325 363
 364 365 459
 Campbell W 1 489
 Canali G 171
 Candel S 200
 Canella C 70 171
 Cannon sound 35 359
 Cannon W B 65 574
 Canzini A 571
 Capacci A 439
 Capillitatus 701
 Capillary
 circulation—see capillary cir
 culation
 contractility 6
 damage 187
 electrometer 118
 endothelium 37
 filtration 61 67 131 182
 functions 61
 hepatic 57
 loops 76
 networks 76
 peristalsis 62
 pressure—see capillary pres
 sure
 pulse 544
 reserve 55
 resistance 164
 reticulus 26 62
 tonus 67
 Capillary circulation
 description of 1
 in heart failure 5 1
 in the tetralogy of Fallot
 314
 microscopic observation of 67
 Capillary pressure 11 67 163
 181 187
 direct measurement 164
 indirect measurement 164
 normal 164
 Capsule Frank's 101 105
 Carbon dioxide 37 43 67 638
 Carbon monoxide 410
 Carbonoxia 507 5 6 628
 Cardarelli A 498
 Cardiac
 action 38
 amyloid 389
 aneurysm—see atrial aneu
 rysm and ventricular
 aneurysm
 apex 7
 arrest 32 47 477 569
 asthma—see cardiac asthma
 atrophy 181 367
 black 5 9
 bulge 77
 calcification 725 390
 catheterization—see cardiac
 catheterization
 cells 35 569
 chambers—see cardiac cham
 bers
 contraction 34
 contusion 410
 cripple 19
 death 397
 defibrillation—see defibrilla
 tion
 diameters—see diameters
 dilatation 181 411
 dulness—see cardiac dulness
 dynamics 88
 edema 331
 emergencies—see cardiac
 emergencies
 enlargement 181 367
 fibromyxosarcoma 714 215
 fibrosis 390
 ghosts 411
 herniation—see herniation
 hypertrophy 181 414
 injection—see adrenalin in
 tracardiac
 inspection 7
 kitchen 606
 manometry—see catheteriza
 tion of the heart
 massage 363 397
 metal olism 37
 nerves 45
 neurosis 54
 output—see output
 pacemaker 33
 pain—see precordial pain
 palpation 78
 percussion 9
 perfusion 31
 plexus 45
 polypos 214
 reserve 554
 resuscitation—see resuscita
 tion
 rigidity 391
 rupture 410 477
 sensitivity 48
 standstill—see atrial stand
 still and cardiac arrest
 strangulation—see strangu
 lation
 strength 117
 suture 4 410
 tamponade—see tamponade
 tetanus 30
 thrombosis 214
 tonus 31
 trauma—see traumatic le
 sions
 tube—see cardiac tube
 tumors 715
 valves—see a v valves and
 semilunar valves
 vein great 111
 veins small 75
 wounds—see wounds
- Cardiac aneurysm
 atrial—see atrial aneurysm
 of the Valvula sinus—see
 aortic aneurysm
 ventricular—see ventricular
 aneurysm
 Cardiac asthma 38 495 555
 5 9
 Cardiac chambers
 pressure in 45
 volume of 21
 Cardiac diameters 79
 Cardiac dulness
 absolute 79
 disappearance of 412
 description of 11

- Cardiac dulness—*Cont*
in the 2nd or 3rd inter pnce
80 227
enlarged to the right 277
normal 19
oblongue 218 210
relative 79
triangular 445
- Cardiac emergencies 638
- Cardiac neurosis 517
- Cardiac output
decreased 407, 454 512 566
in atrial fibrillation 345
in V block 360
increased 404 405 409
550 566
normal 43 155
- Cardiac pain—see precordial
pain and angina pectoris
- Cardiac patient
activity of 610
diet of—see diets
life of 610
procedures for 610
relationship with 610
rest for 611
- Cardiac pressures—see cathe-
terization of the heart
- Cardiac reserve—see reserve
- Cardiac tube
development of 9 10 11
incomplete torsion of 310
normal torsion of 10 11
- Cardiazol 600
- Cardiogram
apical 97 219
camel back type of 252
factors of 96
in aortic insufficiency 242
in aortic stenosis 252
in mitral stenosis 220
in myocardial infarction 421
in tricuspid insufficiency 260
normal 9
regional 98 220
staggered 75
technique of 95
- Cardiography
linear 95
minometric 95
- Cardiohepatic angle
normal 50
obtuse 768 273 445
square 80
- Cardiology history of 1
- Cardiomanometry—see cathe-
terization of the heart
- Cardiovascular diseases
causes of 143
classifications of 186
etiology of 143
mode of origin of 173
pathogenesis of 173
- Cardiovascular system
development of 9
outline of 13
- Carditis 197 203 443—see
also myocarditis endo-
carditis pericarditis
- Carlson L 216
- Carlotto J 325
- Carlyle H F 397
- Carotid
arteries linking of 486
body 52 51
nerve 53—see also Hering's
nerve
normal 6 96
shudder 252
sinus—see carotid sinus
tracing—see carotid tracing
- Carotid sinus
action currents of 53
anatomy of 20
compression of 96 335 340
denervation of 570
distention of 52
functions of 52
hypersensitive 330 519
hypersensitive 519
irritable 519
reflexes 86 550
- Carotid tracing 100 110
- Carral y De Teresa R 87
- Carrion 562
- Carroll D 325 440
- Carter E I 461
- Carvalho (de) Iopo 3
- Cassidy M 489
- Castellanos A 170 297 375
490
- Castellotti I 171
- Caster V H 364 439 515
- Castiglioni A 8
- Castleman B 461 459 501
505
- Cat 44 55
- Catacratic slope 110
- Cataldi G M 69 276 438
562 576
- Cataldo R J 216
- Catheterization of the heart
7 156 483 491
electrocardiography by 157
in atrial septal defect 251
in Eisenmenger's syndrome
319
in Lutembacher's syndrome
305
in mitral stenosis 231
in patent ductus arteriosus
293
in pulmonary stenosis 262
in tetralogy of Fallot 311
in tricuspid insufficiency 270
in ventricular septal defect
256
in tricuspid stenosis 274
left 159
normal 45
oximetry in 158
pressures in 157
procedure of 157
right 157
technique of 157
- Cattell McK 71 601
- Caval syndrome
inferior 464
superior 463
- Cavalli I A 700
- Cavini G 562
- Cedilund 335 591 621 675
638
- Celis A 298 459
- Cellophane wrapping 444 451
457 619
- Center
cardioinhibitor 53
hypothalamic 59
vasomotor 53
- Central terminal 170
- Cephalalgia—see headache
- Ceradini G 68
- Cerberi odollam 583
- Cerberin 583
- Cerebral
abscess 316
accidents—see cerebrovascu-
lar accidents
circulation 60
emboli in 316
hemorrhage 307 413
infarction 501
ischemia 567
occlusion 501
thrombosis 315 413
vasomotors 60
- Cerebrovascular accidents 531
638
- Cervino J M 412
- Cealino A 1
- Cesaris Demel A 27
- Chapais C 390
- Chapais disease—see disease
- Chalataw S 537
- Chamber
cardiac—see atria or ven-
tricles
inflow 16 17
outflow 16 17
- Chamberlain F I 419
- Chamberlain W E 10
- Chambers R 25 70 974
- Chandler G A 200
- Channels preferential—see ar-
teriovenous capillaries
- Chapin V J 112
- Chapman C B 565 561
- Chapman D W 363
- Chapman E M 365 439 515
545
- Charcot J M 4 535
- Charcot's syndrome—see in-
termittent claudication
- Charlotte C 201
- Charvet 216
- Chasnoff J 554
- Chauveau V 2
- Chavez I 211 708 565 460
565 552 587
- Cheer E N 577
- Cheeremann 168
- Chemoreceptors 52
- Chen K K 602
- Chest deformities 510 513
- Chest movement—see move-
ment
- Chest pain—see precordial pain
- Chene J 2
- Chayne Stokes respiration—
see periodic respiration
- Chiari's network 213
- Chiarugi G 27
- Chiche I 309
- Chill 705
- Chun Y 393 440

- Chisholm D R 1st 257
 Chloral hydrate 43rd 5th 532
 560 561 600 615 6th 658
 Chloromycetin 911 615
 Cholesterol
 excess of 415
 high 40; 490
 low 501 507
 normal 16th
 restriction of 501 507 578
 Cholinergic fibers 48
 Cholinesterase 48 584
 Chordæ ten linear
 anomalous 213
 function of 40
 normal 16 17
 rupture of 20; 714
 shortening of 217
 Chorea 191
 Christensen A A 538
 Chronaxia of the myocardium
 Churchill I D 461
 Cignolini I 1st 257
 Cinchona 477
 Cloer A 700
 Circulating blood—see blood
 volume
 Circulation
 arterial 66
 capillary 61
 cerebral 60
 coronary 61
 hepatic 57
 peripheral 112
 pulmonary 64
 regulation of 40
 renal 47
 splenic 59
 venous 60
 Circulation time
 arm to lung 157
 arm to tongue 157
 lung to ear 157
 methods 156
 normal 44 231
 prolonged 963 305 408
 404 66
 shortened 486 30 408 313
 319 404 40 400 46
 technique of 158
 Circulatory failure 563
 Circus movement 379 313
 Cirrhosis of the heart
 arterial type 390
 venous type 391
 Cirrhosis of the liver—see
 liver cirrhosis
 Cisneros F 278
 Cluffin P 19
 Clagett O T 483
 Clark A J 5
 Clark O 462
 Clark S I 2
 Claude H 11
 Clawson H J 716 504
 Cleer A 5
 Click—see also snap
 distal 4th
 prot. last toe 454
 aortic 31 441 450
 Clinical
 history 72
 stat. 72
 Cloetta M 5
 Closing snap of the mitral
 valve—see snap
 Clot
 red 579
 white 579
 Clubbing 4 163 299 760
 363 307 311 319 377
 34 375 511
 Clubfingers—see clubbing
 Coakley J B 401
 Coarctation of the aorta
 adult type 46
 blood pressure in 460
 cause of 464
 collateral circulation in 467
 complications of 473
 course of 472
 diagnosis of 472
 graphic tracings in 469
 infantile type 306 46
 ishm 304
 lesions of 467
 mechanism of 42
 plus patent ductus 306
 postductal 46
 preductal 467
 prognosis of 43
 reversed 477
 rib indentation in 468
 signs and symptoms of 469
 surgery of 473
 treatment of 473 619
 varieties of 479
 x ray in 470
 Cobb S 60
 Coburn A F 165 199 700
 Cochrin C 200
 Codeine 539 639
 Coelho F 438 564
 Coenzymes 33
 Coeur en sabot 27
 Coffey J 703
 Coffey W H 439
 Cog wheel respiration—see respiration
 Cohn L 607
 Cohn A B 601
 Cohn A I 498 601
 Cohn R 293
 Cohnheim J F 3 460 515
 Cold pressor test 161
 Collagen diseases 174 217 537
 Collaps
 diastolic 102
 systolic 104
 therapy 96
 vascular—see vascular col-
 lapse
 visovagal 518
 vasovagipathetic 518
 Collateral circulation
 arterial 30; 46;
 bronchial 234
 coronary 416
 venous 453 464
 Collet 461
 Colmes A 516
 Colman J 56
 Colombari R 4
 Color
 black—see black cardias
 bluish—see cyanosis
 grayish 249
 pale—see pallor
 yellowish—see jaundice
 Combined valvular defects
 aortic and pulmonary 301
 four valve defects 302
 mitral and aortic 234
 mitral and pulmonary 301
 mitral and tricuspid 300
 tri valve defects 307
 Comreau W J 10 364 398
 Commissurotomy
 aortic 45
 mitral 8 23 616
 pulmonary 76; 616
 tricuspid 275 616
 Commotio 613
 Common arterial trunk
 fetal 10
 persistent plus shunts 373
 valves of 374
 Common a. v opening 284
 Common pleuro pericardial cav-
 ity 441
 Compensatory pause 34 350
 Complex
 atrial 36 3
 ventricular 36 39
 Complex heart diseases 453
 Complex malformations of the
 heart 310
 Comploser F C 145
 Compression
 of the carotid sinus—see
 carotid sinus
 of the eyelids—see exophthalmos
 Comroe J H 69 440 516 602
 Conata 4 disease—see poly-
 scrosis
 Concretio cordis 471
 Condorelli L 27 68 10
 304 379 377 461 572
 Conducing system 77 373
 Conduction
 aberrant 340
 retrograde 33 350 35
 Conduction time—see I R in
 interval
 Conductivity 20
 Congenital dilatation
 aortic 43
 pulmonary 43
 Congenital heart diseases
 cause of 175
 combined defects 299
 complex malformations 310
 mechanism of 175 310
 pathogenesis of 175
 simple shunts 278
 Congestion chronic 270 569
 Congestive failure—see heart
 failure
 Connections
 arterio luminal 25
 arterio sinusoidal 25
 Constrictive pericarditis
 arterial pressure in 454

Constrictive pericarditis—*Cont*
 calcified—see pericardial cal-
 cification
 cardiac output in 434
 cardiac volume in 451
 catheterization in 436
 cause of 442
 complete 451
 diagnosis of 459
 diffuse 450
 electrocardiogram in 455
 electrokymogram in 455
 extensive 451
 external 451
 graphic tracings in 455
 internal 451
 lesions of 450
 mechanism of the signs of 457
 partial 451 452
 peri aortic 451
 pericaval 451
 signs and symptoms of 453 458
 prognosis of 459
 string like 451
 total 451
 treatment of 459 619
 varieties of 450 458
 venous pressure in 454
 & ray in 456
 Conix A 461
 Contractility 79 81
 of the arteries 49
 of the capillaries 61
 of the myocardium 29
 of the veins 60
 Contraction
 isometric 39
 of the atria—see atrial
 contraction
 of the papillary muscles 39
 of the ventricles—see ven-
 tricular contraction
 Contrast angiocardigraphy—
 see angiocardigraphy
 Contra 6 67 172 265 400
 440 562 603
 Contusion cardiac 410 411
 441
 Conus arteriosus 16
 Conus septate chamber 262
 312 317
 Convalescence 330
 Convallaria 583
 Convulsive seizures 311 360
 518
 Cooke W T 276 309
 Copeman W E C 185 200
 Cor
 biloculare 327
 biatriatum monoventricu-
 lare 322 323
 bovinum 299
 pulmonale—see pulmonary
 embolism—see also pul-
 monary heart disease
 renale 495
 trilobulare biatriatum 37
 trilobulare biventriculosum
 376
 triventriculare 377

villosum 443
 Coramine 58 330 449 520
 524 600 670 677 638
 Corcoran A C 405
 Cornu L 538
 Coronaritis 414
 acute 190
 allergic 190 196
 Buerger's 414
 luetic 201 414
 neoplastic 414
 pruritic 414
 rheumatic 190 196
 Coronary
 aneurysm 413
 arteries—see coronary ar-
 teries
 arteriosclerosis—see coro-
 nary arteriosclerosis
 circulation—see coronary
 circulation
 constriction 56 58
 dilatation 56 58
 embolism 413 417
 failure 416
 flow 55
 fistula 413
 hemorrhage 415
 infections of 414
 innervation of 56
 insufficiency 415—see also
 coronary insufficiency
 ischemia—see coronary in-
 sufficiency
 ligation—see coronary sinus
 neurectomy 436
 oculoion—see coronary oc-
 clusion
 pharmacology of 58
 pressure 55
 reflexes 54
 sclerosis 414
 sensitivity 54
 sinus—see coronary sinus
 thrombosis—see myocardial
 infarction
 valve 15
 Coronary arteries 10 414 418
 anastomoses of 25
 aneurysm of 413
 aortic fistula of 413 414
 calcified 494
 circulation—see coronary cir-
 culation
 congenital aneurysm of 413
 congenital anomalies of 413
 laceration of 411
 lesions—see coronary heart
 disease and myocardial
 infarction
 normal 23
 position of 23
 sphygmeter of 24
 vasomotors of 56
 Coronary arteriosclerosis 414
 417 431 436 495
 Coronary circulation
 chemical regulation of 56
 description of 1
 factors of 56
 normal 55
 Coronary heart disease 2 618

ballistocardiogram of 434
 causes of 414
 clinical pictures of 414 415
 431 436
 definition of 415
 electrocardiogram of 416
 433
 lesions of 414
 Coronary insufficiency 254
 415 416
 acute 415 416 431
 chemical 415
 dynamic 248 254 335 361
 415
 functional 415 431
 prolonged 416
 vasomotor 415
 Coronary occlusion
 acute 415 473—see also myo-
 cardial infarction
 embolic 417
 functional results of 419
 gradual 415
 hemorrhagic 415
 sudden 417
 thrombotic 415
 treatment of 638
 Coronary sinus 15 25 5
 arterialization of 436
 function of 57
 ligation of 436
 normal 24 25 51
 pressure of 57
 valve of 15
 Coronary thrombosis—
 myocardial infarction
 Cor pulmonale
 acute—see pulmonary em-
 bolism
 chronic—see pulmonary
 heart disease
 Corrigan D J 2 25
 Corrigan's
 disease 238
 pulse—see pulse
 Cortisone 63 198 211 217
 359 440 515 614
 Cortone 628
 Cor trilobulare biatriatum 255
 Corvisart J 2
 Cosby R 9 378
 Cossio P 7 90 165 185 255
 257 276 291 363 364
 365 399 411 460 490 514
 Cossio's sign—see sign
 Costa A A 216 291 485 490
 Costero I 400
 Cough 77 217 507 508
 dry 240 260 267 467 475
 485 510
 Counihan T B 87 12 565
 Courmand A 7 68 10 110
 266 298 516 613
 Cow 65
 Cowan D W 57
 Cowden F E 438
 Crafoord C 11
 Craig W M 505
 Cramps 473 510
 Crane I 516
 Crawford J H 439
 Crest time 111 577

- Crle G 505
 Crossed embolism 29 257
 286 505
 Crowden C P 87 169
 Cru ckshank E W 61
 Crunch—see stern l crunch
 Crynes S F 460
 Cr stol g n 541 6 5
 Culbertson J W 1
 Cullen G E 5
 Cumert l n 595
 Cumm n s B D 440
 Curare 58
 Currens J H 76 99 515
 Curr e C M 3 3
 Curschmann H 461
 Curschmann l ch s s ndrome
 453 459
 Curt n J Q 298
 Curt s Ba n C W 738 412
 5 7
 Cushing E H 438 504 505
 Cuhngs s ndrome l 4 495
 Cushman A R 601 607
 Cutler R C 155
 Cutler C C 439 481
 Cyann s 180 717 780 268
 30 311 377 3 4 370
 3 6 407 464 481 484
 508 511 5 0 574
 central 140
 extreme 307 08 311 377
 325 510 511
 in congenital heart d se se
 307 308 311 377 375
 n conges ve fa lure 570
 n cor pulmonale 510 511
 n mtral paten s 277 734
 late 79
 raved 181
 of the lo er extrem ties 30
 per ph ral 150 510
 threshold of 140
 Cyon (d) I 3 60
 Cyon s nerve 53
 Cys c med one ros s see me
 done ros s
 Cysts tydat l 441
- D
- Dack B 440
 Da Costa I M 551
 Dagn n G S 303
 Dahl n D C 401
 Da nes M C 6
 Dale H H 68 5 4
 Daly le B 63
 Dambros R G 460
 Dameshek W 10 60
 Dance
 arter al 740
 h lar—see h lar dance
 enous 768
 Dang Van Chung S
 Dan elopolu D S 439 603
 Darley W 799
 Dautrebande I 417
 Dav d J M 16
 Dav dson J D 538
 D v s C 505
 Dav s D 417 437 439 515
- Dav s M S 60
 Davi l I 607
 Dav on S J 2 S
 Da son M H 16
 Dawson W T 185
 De n A L 16
 Death
 agon c 397
 aort c 485
 card ac 397 497
 cl n cal 39
 slow 33
 sud len 74 1 6 47 581 606
 D Bake M 544
 De Castro O 364
 Decherd G M 363 400 5 7
 Dechol n 157
 Decompen al on—see heart
 fa lure
 Decort cat on of the heart 442
 460
 Decub tus 74 444 5 0
 Defect
 interaur cular see atr al
 septal defect
 ventr cular—see ventr ular
 sept l defect
 Defects
 atr al septal—see atr al
 septal defect
 eomb ned 799
 four valve 307
 tr valve 307
 ventr cular see ventr cular
 septal defect
 Defibr ll ton 639
 Deflect on
 snal 38
 in tal 35
 ntr ns e 125 1 6
 ntr ns co d 126
 Deform y of the chest see
 che t deform t
 De Graff A C 11 601 603
 De Heer J L 257
 De treck J E 75
 De la Chapelle C E 499
 Del ver 0
 Delorme L 4 461
 Delorme s operat on see de
 cori cat on of the heart
 Demerol 479 600 6 633
 D Musset s s gn see s gn
 Deneke Th 298
 Denol n H 17 365
 Densogram see electrokymo
 gram
 Dental in erven ons 707 614
 Depolar za on 35 35 177
 Depres or
 nerve 53
 reflex 5 53 54
 Derow H A 490 504
 De R sk C 171
 De Soldat I 298 601
 Desox cort co terone 493
 De Takats G 499 505 5 3
 545 607
 Detering R A 499
 Deutsch J 10
 Dév é F 399
 De Vecch B 27
- De Veer A J 25
 De Vres Rel ngh D 56
 Dexter L 10 11 276 79
 5 4 58
 Dextrocard a 548
 Dextropo ed aorta—see aort
 arel
 D za D 400
 D afetes 176 408 430
 D gnos s 188
 D ameters card ac and aort c
 aort c 143
 at percuss on 9
 at v ra 147
 broad 9 147
 long 117
 oblique 9
 tables of 14
 transv r e 14
 D aphragm
 adherent 457
 funct o s of 67
 mmole 45
 D aphragmat e hern a 509
 D arrhen 470 420 58
 Das E 400
 D asal 6 8
 D as ole
 early 40 92 0
 m d 40 9 97
 pass ve 9
 rap d 40 97 97 99
 slow 40 92
 D astole
 pressu s 59 65 160
 gh gh 496 571
 lo 42 570
 s rmal 6 160
 rumbl —see rumble d astol s
 sound—see s und
 D atherm 536
 D ben m ne 50 533 60 599
 6
 D croc ave 68 110 111
 D cum rol 430 509 594 613
 619 670 678
 D et
 t land 679
 flu d 611 630
 s ambulatory ps ents 630
 n conges ve fa lure 650
 n t perten on 631
 n hypo ens e pat ents 5 4
 n subacute tacter al endo
 card t s 679
 I arell 611 670
 Kempner s 636
 low calor s 40 5 679
 low cholesterol 674
 low fat 5 3 6 5
 low prote n 5 9 6 0
 lo sod um 617 637
 reduc ng 40 579 679
 r ce 6 6
 salt free 576 631
 D etar allowances 637
 D ethylether 535
 D etlen H 147 10 76
 D etrch S 433
 D ena de F R 461 5 7
 D gest ve
 d sturbances 768

Digestive—Cont

- tachycardia 323
 Digifoline 589
 Digiland 589 591
 Digitalis 2 5 57 58 199 236
 249 350 346 359 406
 430 449 459 514 546
 615 616 617 618 690
 621 622 670
 accumulation of 586
 action of 583
 bio assay of 589
 bodies 589
 description of 5
 diuretic effect of 586
 doses of 590 591
 duration of action of 585
 electrocardiogram after 586
 excretion of 583
 experiments with 583
 first use of 2
 glycosides 583
 gradual treatment with 590
 in atrial fibrillation 585
 in atrial flutter 343
 in A V block 580
 in children 531
 in coronary occlusion 430
 in heart block 363
 in heart failure 546 588 621
 in myocarditis 353
 initial dose of 588
 intramuscular 590
 intravenous 510 590
 isolation of glycosides of 583
 lanata 583
 maintenance dose of 590
 massive dose of 590
 medium dose of 591
 methods of administration
 of 588 590
 myogenic effect of 583
 neurogenic effect of 583
 on the coronary arteries 586
 parenteral 590
 principles of use of 590
 prophylactic use of 592
 purpura 584
 rectal 590
 routes of administration of
 590
 rules of administration of
 588
 standardization of 589
 tables on the use of 590
 toxic effects of 343 360
 treatment with 638 639
 Digitoxin 3 560 586 591 621
 638
 Digoxin 335 336 339 591
 616 617 670
 Dihydroxycholesterol 408
 Dilatation dynamic—see dy-
 namic dilatation
 Dill D B 561
 Dillon J B 179
 Dimond G 609
 Dionisio A 185 399
 Di Palma J R 70
 Diplopia 469
 Discharge systolic 43

Disease

- Adams Stokes—see a v block
 Addison's 176 408
 Arrillaga Ayerza's 511
 Bernard's 266
 Bernheim's 573
 blue 310
 Bouillaud's—see rheumatic
 disease
 Bouveret's—see atrial tachy-
 cardia
 Bristowe's—see atrial tachy-
 cardia
 Buerger's 532
 Chagas 357
 Charcot 534
 Concato's 448 453
 Corrigan's 798
 Curschmann-Lick's 459
 Cushing's 499
 Da Costa's 546
 Dejerine's 534
 Duroziez's 220
 Ebstein's 302
 Eisenmenger's 318
 endocrine cardiac 408
 Fallot's 310
 Friedreich's 387
 Graves 405
 Hodgson's 238
 Libman-Sacks 219 442
 Lutenbacher's 304
 Morgagni's—see a v block
 Osler-Libman's 206
 Paget's 408
 Pick's 453 459
 Raynaud's 535
 rheumatic—see rheumatic dis-
 ease
 Roger's 284
 Stokes-Adams—see a v block
 Traussig-Bing's 373
 Vaquez-Osler 410
 Von Gierke's 176 402
 W Mitchell's 537
 Wolff-Parkinson-White's 381
 Zerk's 362
 Dissecting aneurysm 249 477
 479 485
 cause of 485
 complications of 486
 course of 486
 diagnosis of 487
 lesions of 485
 signs and symptoms of 486
 treatment of 487 639
 Diuretics 594 595
 Diverticulum aortic—see aor-
 tic root
 Divry A 71
 Dixon J L 490 544
 Dixon W E 602
 Dizziness 240 260 762 291
 307 311 322 336 339
 348 360 396 445 496
 518 519 577 541 547
 Dock S 477 559
 Dock W 142 437 440 505
 506 577 601
 Dodel I 140
 Dog 44 45 65
 Dogliotti C C 363

- Dominguez C 399
 Dominguez P 489
 Domini G 238
 Donal J A Jr 140
 Donald T C 439
 Donaldson J K 469
 Donath F 438
 Donzelot I 188 412
 Dorbecker A 298 489
 Dorsal aortae 10
 Dos Santos J C 544
 Dotter Ch T 159 179
 Double
 aortic arch 465
 defect
 of the aortic valve 246
 of the mitral valve 237
 of the pulmonary valve
 267
 of the tricuspid valve 245
 murmur—see murmur
 rhythm
 by default 356 371
 by usurpation 336 339
 tone of Traube—see sign
 Douglas A H 439
 Douglas J M 239
 Doumer E 561
 Dow P 71 172
 Downing A C 60 169
 Drigstedt C A 601
 Dresbach M 601
 Dresdale D T 516
 Dressler W 7 8 168 706
 260 246 309 393 438
 446
 Drinker C H 567
 Driggs R D 60 609
 Drop heart—see heart
 Drowning 565
 Drowsiness 464 496
 Drugs 74 583
 Drummond D 458
 Drury A N 70 364 540
 Dry T J 298 398 331 437
 511
 Duane V 70 399
 Duchosal I 397
 Duckett Jones T 700
 Ducloux F 329
 Ductus
 arteriosus
 calcified 703
 closure of 13
 development of 11
 in the fetus 17 13
 ligation of 797
 patent—see patent ductus
 of Arantius 11 13 463
 of Cuvier 463
 venous 11 13 463
 Dukes H II 70 142
 Dulness
 aortic—see aortic dulness
 cardiac—see cardiac dulness
 in the third left inter space
 277
 of the area of Traube 445
 of the first sound—see first
 sound

- posterior 44a
 triangular 445
 Dungen (von) M 68
 Duodenal ulcer—see ulcer
 Dupuytren's syndrome 477
 Durant F M 515
 Duroziez P L 3 2 5 240 257
 Duroziez's
 disease—see disease
 double murmur—see murmur
 sign—see sign
 Dustin C C 363
 Dutra F R 440
 Dwarfism 276 279
 Dye W S 538
 Dynamic dilatation
 aortic 474
 congenital 443
 pulmonic 444
 Dysarthria 57
 Dyspepsia 496
 Dysphagia 217 220 234 443
 444 490
 lusoria 466
 Dysphonia 3 277 234 279
 291 301 322 444 475
 480 484
 Dyspnea 183 205 217 240
 260 322 388 402 403
 420 425 444 464 475
 495 508 513 542 550
 560 580 604
 acute—see paroxysmal dyspnea and pulmonary edema
 continuous 183 214
 exertional 72 183 251 262
 279 307 360 495 519
 217 510 512
 nocturnal—see paroxysmal dyspnea
 orthostatic 513
 paroxysmal—see paroxysmal dyspnea and pulmonary edema
 postural 183
 suffocating 51
 E
 Eagle G H 145 193
 Ear human
 laws of 81
 sensitivity of 91
 East T 57
 Ebert R V 438 46
 Ebstein W 200 303 460
 Ebstein's sign—see sign
 Ebstein's syndrome 267 307
 angiocardigraphy in 30
 cause of 30
 circulation time in 303
 diagnosis of 304
 lesions of 307
 symptoms and signs of 303
 x ray in 303
 Eckman M 67 604
 Eckstein R W 6
 Eclampsia 580
 Eddy currents 40
 Edlin J 201
 Edelstein I M 400
 Edema 181 464
 bilateral—see dependent
 cerebral 500
 dependent 13 181 214 407
 444 45 513 539
 gravitational—see dependent
 myocardial 391
 of the chest wall 445
 peripheral 181 513 533 541
 560 574
 pulmonary—see pulmonary edema
 renal 181
 Edens E 8 163
 Edholm O C 41
 Edmon on H A 440
 Edwards E A 545
 Edwards J I 400 401 467 489
 Effort
 angina—see angina pectoris
 dyspnea—see heart failure
 pain—see angina pectoris
 syncope 254
 syndrome—see neurocirculatory asthenia
 Effusion 181 458 570
 caseous 443
 exudate 449 453
 hemorrhagic 443
 pericardial 510
 peritoneal 571
 pleural 453 510
 pseudochylous 480
 purulent 443
 sero fibrinous 443
 serous 574
 transudative 443 444 453
 Eggleston C 601
 Eichlich W 490
 Eiman J 309
 Eindhoven W 4 118 167 169
 Eindhoven's
 law 130
 studies 4
 triangle 120
 Eisaman J L 363
 Eisenberger J L 67
 Eisenmenger V 4 323
 Eisenmenger's complex
 angiocardigraphy in 319
 circulation time in 319
 complications of 320
 course of 320
 diagnosis of 320
 lesions of 315
 mole of origin of the signs
 of 319
 prognosis of 321
 symptoms and signs of 313
 therapy in 321
 x ray in 319
 Ejection 39
 Elasticity 40
 Electric axis 126 131
 determination of 111
 deviator 131 see also right
 and left
 fix 145
 normal 130
 Electric potential 33
 Electric shock 410
 Electrocardiogram 34 36
 abnormal 126
 atrio ventricular interval
 123
 bedside 118
 calculations from 122
 chest 121
 chest leads 121 125
 continuous 118
 digitalis effect in 586
 direct vision of 118
 esophageal 128
 fetal 136
 functional tests 120
 high voltage 404 511
 in aortic insufficiency 242
 in tortic stenosis 252
 in arterial hypertension 497
 in atrial septal defect 280
 in A V block 356
 in coronary heart disease 415
 in cor pulmonale 511
 in different types 133
 in Forster's syndrome 63
 in heart failure 510
 in hypertension 497
 in infants 134
 in Lutenbacher's syndrome
 65
 in myocardial infarction 420
 in patent ductus arteriosus
 292
 in pericarditis 444
 in pulmonary embolism 400
 in tetralogy of Fallot 311
 in tricuspid atresia 26
 in tricuspid insufficiency 212
 in various positions 133
 in ventricular septal defect
 286
 intracardiac 128
 isoelectric periods of 123
 leads of 110
 low voltage of 407 408 409
 4 5 418 512
 mutter type of 322 549
 nomenclature of 122 124
 normal 126
 of sinus bradycardia 331
 of sinus tachycardia 329
 of the child 137
 of ventricular aneurysm 402
 P wave 36 31 122 124
 P Q interval 123
 P R interval 13
 physiological 122
 practical applications of 126
 precordial leads of 121
 Q wave 123
 QRs interval 123 124
 QT interval 123 124
 R wave 123
 S wave 37 123
 standard 110
 T wave 36 3 123
 Ta wave 123
 technique of 119
 unipolar 119 120 124
 ventricular complex 122
 waves of 122 123
 Electrocardiograph
 amplifier type 118
 direct writing 113

Electrocardiograph—*Cont*

- electronic 118
 - portable 118
 - string 118
- Electrode**
- central terminal 120
 - chest 121
 - exploring 120
 - indifferent 120
 - limb 119
- Electrocardiogram**
- in aortic aneurysm 453
 - in aortic coarctation 470
 - in aortic insufficiency 245
 - in aortic stenosis 233
 - in atrial aneurysm 394
 - in atrial flutter 351
 - in atrial septal defect 260
 - in A-V block 309
 - in chronic cor pulmonale 512
 - in constrictive pericarditis 450
 - in Ebstein's syndrome 303
 - in mediastinal tumors 483
 - in mitral insufficiency 219
 - in mitral stenosis 222
 - in myocardial infarction 420
 - in patent ductus 399
 - in pericarditis 446 450
 - in premature beats 302
 - in pulmonary stenosis 264
 - in rheumatic fever 190
 - in tetralogy of Fallot 311
 - in tricuspid insufficiency 200
 - in ventricular aneurysm 393
 - in ventricular septal defect 258
 - normal 144
 - patterns of 151
 - use of 151
 - waves of 144
- Elek S R** 170
- Ellis H B** 26 461
- Ellis D C** 545
- Ellis A H** 539
- Lilliot S A** 380
- Ellis L B** 301 276 412 506 511 607
- Embolectomy** 549 509 530
- Embolism**
- air 411
 - aortic—see aorta embolism
 - arterial—see arterial embolism
 - cerebral 230 279 316 427
 - coronary 417
 - crossed—see crossed embolism
 - paradoxical—see crossed embolism
 - peripheral 235 345 531 639
 - pulmonary—see pulmonary embolism
 - renal 477
 - septic 200 508
 - splenic 477
 - venous—see pulmonary embolism
- Emergency treatment of** 638
- Emerson H** 607

- Emetin** 207 615
- Emotion** 379 517 611
- Emphysema pulmonary**
- functional 500 510
 - organic 510
- Endocardial**
- anomalies 213
 - calcification 213
 - cushions 10
 - fibrosis 213
 - pockets 213
 - scelerosis 213
 - thrombi—see cardiac thrombosis
 - tumors 215
- Endocarditis**
- acute—see acute bacterial endocarditis
 - bacterial—see acute or subacute bacterial endocarditis
 - benign 202
 - chronic 212
 - fetal 200
 - lentic—see subacute bacterial endocarditis
 - malignant—see acute bacterial endocarditis
 - non rheumatic 202
 - polypose—see subacute bacterial endocarditis
 - rheumatic 190 229
 - subacute—see subacute bacterial endocarditis
 - splenic 204 212
 - tuberculous 204 213
 - ulcerative—see acute bacterial endocarditis
 - verruccose 190 203
- Endocardium** 23
- Endocrine disorders** 329 400
- Endocrine cardiac syndrome—** see disease
- Endothelial cells** 27 164
- Engel D** 69
- Engelmann T W** 4 67
- Engorgement of the jugular veins—** see jugular veins
- Enclberg C H** 366 462 603
- Enterococcus** 206
- Ephedrine** 58 331 363 515 519 570 523 537 598 670 677
- Epicardium** 19
- Epigastric**
- distress 73
 - pain 419
 - pulsation 260 511
 - tracing—see epigastric tracing
- Epigastric tracing**
- factors of 99
 - in cor pulmonale 512
 - in mitral stenosis 279
 - normal 98
 - technique 98
 - varieties of 99
- Epinephrine** 48 57 521 561 594
- intracardiac 363 396 397
- Eptastaxis—** see nosebleed
- Eppinger H** 68 498 561

- Epstein A A** 577
- Epstein B** 307
- Epstein L F** 309
- Epstein E Z** 43
- Ergotamine** 330 547 617
- Erlanger H** 398
- Erlbacher O** 339
- Ernstene A C** 207 439 577
- Ershler I** 577
- Eruptions** 570
- Erythema** 74
- butterfly 212
 - marginatum 197
- Erythritol tetranitrate** 596
- Erythromelalgia** 337
- Escapes** 300 304 396
- Esmerin C** 168
- Esophagocardiogram**
- in mitral insufficiency 271
 - normal 104
 - technique of 104
- Espinosa O H** 481
- Essey H E** 601 607
- Estes L H** 172
- Estrogen** 528 530
- Ethyl** 380
- Etiamon** 626
- Ether** 460
- Etiological classifications** 156
- Eustachian valve** 15
- Evans C L** 67
- Evans I R** 577
- Evans M E** 216
- Evans R D** 538
- Evans W** 257 293 309 400 515 516 577
- Evart W** 460
- Examination**
- cardiac 77
 - general 74
 - regional 76
- Excitability** 29
- Exercise test—** see functional tests
- Exhaustion** 200 547
- Extra sounds—** see triple rhythm snap click
- Extrasystoles—** see premature beats
- Extremities**
- blue—see acrocyanosis
 - edematous—see edema
 - exudates—see effusion exudate
- Eyeballs compression of** 330
- Evergrounds**
- normal 76
 - pathological 496
- Eyster J A** 61 169
- F**
- Fabre R** 170 171
- Fabrizio I**
- Facies** 74—see also color
- aortic 210
 - nutraceutical 227
- Falcatine** 316 593
- Fahr T** 504 505 57 601
- Failure**
- cardiac—see heart failure

- circulatory—see heart failure
heart—see heart failure
Fainting 215 240 291 311 316
331 336 333 336 485
518 541 601
Falkholt W 10
Falk M 9 201 46
Falling sensation 348
Fallot E L A 4 37
Fallot's pentalogy 318
Fallot's tetralogy 4 9 310
an iocardiography in 313
blood in 313
blood pressure in 311
catheterization of the heart
in 311
circulation time in 313
complications of 314
course of 315
diagnosis of 316
electrocardiogram in 311
graphic tracings in 311
lesions of 310
mechanism of 310
mode of origin of the signs
of 314
prognosis of 317
surgery of 317
symptoms and signs of 311
treatment of 317
varieties of 317
x ray in 313
Fallot's trilogy 308
False whitens—see sign Osler's
Farber E 67
Farr H W 567
Fasciolo J C 69 504
Fatigability—see asthenia
Fatty
degeneration 407
heart 407
infiltration 407
Fautoux M 8 430
Fear 547
Feil H 298 397 411 437 440
460 587
Feinberg A R 603
Feinberg S 54
Feletti P 448
Feiler A 6 27 379 461
Femoral pulse 66
absent 469
delayed 483
disappearance of 486
full 477
normal 47
weak 469 487 488
Femoral vein sound of 263
Fenschel N M 258
Fenn G K 70 438 602
Ferguson F C 27 257
Ferranini A 99 574
Ferrari E 393
Ferreira O 364
Ferrer I 516
Ferrer M I 578 603
Ferrero O 298
Ferrin A L 480
Fertman M H 716
Fetus
circulation of 11
electrocardiogram of 1 6
phonocardiogram of 93 257
sounds of 93 287
Fever 208 377 470 484
485 509 537 533 534
Fibers
accelerating 46
afferent 46
cholergic 51
efferent 46
preganglionic 46
postganglionic 46
sensory 48
sympathetic 46
vagal 46
vasoconstrictor 51
vasodilator 51
Fibrin 413
Fibroelastosis subendocardial
518
Fibromyxoma 214 215
Fibrosis
atrial 223
arterial—see arteriosclerosis
cardiac 576
coronary—see coronary ar
teriosclerosis
endocardial 213
myocardial—see myocardial
fibrosis
of the conduction system 360
subendocardial 213
valvular 204 13 497
venous 540
ventricular—see myocardial
fibrosis and myocardial
infarction
Fick 140
Fiedler J9
Fiedler's myocarditis—see
myocarditis
Fieser L F 601
Fifth sound 42
Filling 40—see also diastole
Filtration pressure 191
Findley J W 462
Fine J 515 524 544
Finetberg M H 515
Finger fracture—see commin
urotomy, nutral or tri
cuspid
Finnerty F A 406
Firt sound
causes of 47 31
full 376 410
factors of 91
large 294 407
loud 219 278
normal 81
prolonged 194
variable intensity of 36
weak 470
Fischer L 68
Fischer G 168
Fischer H 21 461
Fischer I 11
Fischer R 276 363 367
Fischgold H 460
Fishtberg A M 140 216 404
405 57
Fisher R L 379 440
Fish mouth pulmonic valve
262
Fistula
aortocaval 463
arteriovenous 94 543
arteriovenous of the lung
519 511 514
cardioaortic 480 481
pulmonary 510 511 514
Fitz P 518
Flack M 257
Flatulence 70
Flaxman N 587
Fleischner E G 6 71 144 140
221 227 401 440 459
516
Fleming R C 716
Fletcher C M 460
Fleury J 371
Flickinger D 461
Flint A 3 257
Flint's sign—see sign
Fluorescein 156
Fluorocardiography—see elec
trokymography
Fluoroscopy 137
Flushing 440
Flutter
atrial—see atrial flutter
auricular—see atrial flutter
ventricular—see ventricular
flutter
Flutter fibrillation 347
Foam
chemical composition of 577
pink 566
white 566
yellow 568
Focal block 373
Focal infections 207
Foci—see focal infections
Focus of stimulation 33 33
336 337 344 343 346
347 350 354 350 360
361
Folkow B 70 71
Fontaine R 439 54
Ford A C 440
Foramen
Botallo 9
ovale—see foramen ovale
primum 9
secundum 9
Foramen ovale 1 11 17
closure of 13
description of 1
development of 9
late opening of 278
patent—see atrial septal de
fect
plus aortic insufficiency 308
plus mitral stenosis 304
plus pulmonary stenosis 308
plus tricuspid insufficiency
302
valve of 13
Ford I V 401
Ford W T 201
Foreign body in the heart 411
Forssmann W 7 10
Forster F M 504

Forward failure—see heart failure
 Fourth sound
 normal 42 97
 pathological 193 219 337 370
 Four valve defects 302
 Fowler K 378
 Fowler \ O 516
 Fox R A 437
 Fraenkel A 4
 Franceschetti A 399
 François Frank 298 488
 Frank capsule of 6
 Frank H A 521 544
 Frank O H 67 167 168 169 206
 Franke H 401 488
 Franklin K J 27
 Frazer D H 401
 Frédéricq H H
 Freedberg A S 401 440 552 613
 Freeman J 199
 Freeman N I 524
 Freis I D 506
 French A J 399 437
 French W I 524
 Frenchell G 68
 Frenkel H 488
 Freundlich J 399
 Frey (von) M 169
 Frey O 567
 Frey W 602
 Friction rub 80 103
 aortic 4 6
 atrial 444
 diastolic 440
 pericardial 470 443 444 445 476 480 487 508 509
 phonocardiogram of 444
 pleural 444 509
 pleuropericardial 444
 presystolic 444
 pulmonic 508
 systolic 444
 ventricular 444
 Friedberg C K 70 216 277 411
 Friedman C L 40
 Friedman M 399 551 552 603
 Friedman R 603
 Friedman M 200 399 438
 Friedreich N 168 461
 Friedreich M 168 461
 Frog 48
 Froment R 363
 Frommel E 363 367 412 561
 Frost T T 57
 Frosted liver—see iced liver
 Frugoni C 87 277 561
 Fry F W 488
 Fuchs G 400
 Fuchner H 504
 Fukui N 168
 Fulton F T 400
 Functional capacity 187
 Functional classification 187
 Functional (relative) insufficiency
 aortic 249

 mitral 220
 pulmonic 261
 tricuspid 272
 Functional (relative) stenosis
 aortic 200
 mitral 237
 pulmonic 267
 tricuspid 275
 Functional tests 85 129 163
 adrenalin 86
 amyl nitrite 86 179 434
 anoxemia 129 434
 atropine 86 547
 Aschner Dagnini s—see oculocardiac reflex
 carotid sinus—see carotid sinus
 circulation time—see circulation time
 cold pressor—see cold pressor test
 ergotamine 547
 exercise 80
 liver function—see liver function tests
 methylol—see circulation time
 Muellers 80
 papaverine 156
 terthe s 542
 quinine 86
 renal function—see renal function tests
 static blood pressure—see static blood pressure test
 Trendelenburg s 542
 two step 85 179 434
 vagus stimulation 85
 Valsalva s 85
 venous filling—see venous filling test
 Furchgott H F 70 524
 Futcher I H 7

G

Gabril G 170
 Gallavardin L 6 161 170 188 216 20 363 364 360 366 399 461 488
 Gallenga 185
 Galis L 328
 Gallop rhythm—see triple rhythm
 Galvani I G 2 3 168 461
 Galvanometer
 amplifier type 118
 electronic type of 118
 first description of 118
 mirror type of 118
 oscillometer type of 118
 string 3 118
 Gamble J L 602
 Gama C 399
 Gansbeck (van) A 400
 Gargalion
 atrial 45
 Bidder s 33
 Ludwig s 33
 Remak s 33
 stellate 48

 sympathetic 45
 Gangrene 215 531 536
 dry 529
 moist 529
 Garb S 412
 Garcia A 170 297
 Gardner F 499 554
 Gargill S C 170
 Garland J 437
 Garret W L 364
 Garvin C F 20
 Garvin J S 365
 Gaskell W H 33 67
 Caspari F A 364 360 308
 Gaston E A 490
 Gastric ulcer—see ulcer
 Gastrointestinal disturbances 587
 Gasul H M 378 440
 Gates L M 328
 Gates F L 567
 Geckeler G D 399
 Geffer W I 400
 Geiger A J 363
 Geiter C J 365
 Geil T 258
 Gelfman B 716
 General examination 44
 Geographic map 239 40
 Geraghty J T 170
 Géraudel L 7 68 399
 Gerbi C 504
 Gerbode F 400
 Ceremia A F 798
 Gerhardt H 167 216 298
 Gerhardt s cap 760
 Gerharts H 167
 Gernex C 561
 Gevalt F 460
 Georgehu I 71
 Giannoni A 439
 Gibbon T B 506
 Gibbs D F 603
 Gibson A G 169
 Gibson J G 577
 Gibson S 378 365
 Giddiness 240 607
 Gilbert N C 70 438 538 601 602
 Giles I J 545
 Gillick I G 461
 Gilman A 601
 Ginsberg F 613
 Ginsberg H 601
 Giordano C 2 6
 Giraud G 707
 Girdle 570
 Giroax L 170 216 399
 Gilrout R 170
 Gitalgin 589 620
 Gitalin 199 389 430 589 590 591 614 616 618 671
 Givon 584
 Guffré 298
 Granti G 69
 Glendy M M 378
 Glendy R E 3 8 488
 Gley P 171
 Glomerular filtration—see filtration pressure
 glomerular nephritis — see nephritis

- Glomset D J 27
 Glover R P 258 77, 378
 Gluco = 37 381
 Glycogen 33
 (Glycosuria 420)
 Goat 41 63
 Goed I A 400
 Goethlin G F 1 1
 Goett Th 5
 Gortz H H 506
 Gorman J W 535
 Goshin V 338
 Gold H J 71 5, 601 607 607
 Goldberger I 7 161 1, 1 400
 401 4 J 20
 Goldblatt H 63 304
 Colibrits
 clump 493
 kidneys 50 493
 phenomenon 493
 Golden A 487
 Goldenberg M 437 506
 Goldfarb A R 1
 Goldmann M A 440 467 552
 Goldstein W 1, 2 607
 Goldwasser Meyer H 524 502
 Gomez V 364
 Gomez D M 1 1
 Gonzales M M 360
 Gonzales R 364
 Gonzales Silvestre L 363 398
 Gonzales Videla J 552
 Goodman L 601
 Gorman H D 502
 Gossol I J 716
 Goomaghtigh V 69
 Gordon G 412
 Gorder J W 3
 Gore I 216 400
 Gottlieb J 172
 Gottlieb H 601
 Gouley B A 2, 3 309
 Goyerts P 171 602
 Govier W M 613
 Gradient
 atrial 137
 pulmonary 64
 ventricular 137
 Graf W 298
 Graft
 aortic 4 3
 arterial 637
 valvular 449
 venous 74 5 5
 Graham G R 0
 Graham Steel murmur—see
 murmur and sign
 Grant J C B 18 1, 2 28
 Grant H J 17
 Grant H T 69 437 539 5
 Graves R C 557
 Graves disease—see disease
 Gravier L 3, 4 487
 Gray H 27
 Gray W 607
 Grayson A 765 400 461
 Greater circulation 1 17
 Gregeren M J 1
 Gregg D I 61 70 143 404
 Gregory J J 270 47
 Greisman H 471
 Grooms H 601
 Creppa I 505
 Craig M F 613
 (Creschaler H 378
 Cressinger W 461
 Cressith G C 200
 Cresson H S 304 506
 Cressler J H 67
 Grishman A 170 2, 7 2 6
 27 278 17 3, 8 458
 516
 (Cresswell M E 516
 Crocco I 5 8 458
 Crocco S sign—see sign
 Croedel F M 147 169 7 6
 460 458
 Grollman A 7 68 1, 0 237
 503 602
 Groove
 intraventricular 1 15
 interventricular 15
 Cross D 170
 Gros L 77 2 6 437
 Gros R F 7 9 278 458 459
 Groves L 497
 Grover R 70 161 478 49
 Guld R 574
 H
 Haggart G F 515
 Haimovics H 101 603
 Hales V 11
 Haller A 7
 Hallion 567
 Haller J 327
 Halperin M H 1
 Hamilton B 607
 Hamilton H F 417 2 3 5
 Hamilton J C 1 364 398
 Hamilton W F 1 172
 Handowski H S 404
 Hanks T G 60
 Hantow C R 378
 Hancock T 462
 Hanson J F 57
 Hantman H W 1 2 501
 Hanzal R 63
 Haring O M 17 410 607
 Harke D F 41
 Harp V C 462
 Harvater I 503
 Harris A W 2, 3 5
 Harris H A 81
 Harris H I 169
 Harris R 306
 Harris T 200
 Harrison J 613
 Harrison T R 69 400 404
 571 576 613
 Harrison W 180 46
 Harrison's reflex 5
 Harrop C 1 5
 Harvey R M 511 603
 Harvey W 1 68
 Harvey W I 363
 Harvey V 76 309
 Hat her P A 601
 Haub C F 700
 Haunz I A 307
 Haval J 538
 Haval J C 208
 Haxton H A 309 459
 Hax J 168
 Hayman A S 440
 Haynes F W 571 602
 Head H 410
 Headache 73 240 461 469
 490 519 577 521
 occipital 577
 pulsating 410
 Hearing disturbances 518
 Heart—see also cardiac
 amphibian 10
 amniotic 750 407
 anemic 407
 athletic 331 546
 auscultation of 89
 verru 402
 bilocular—see bilocular heart
 capacity of 14
 catheterization—see catheterization
 chaotic 335
 conducting system of 2
 congenital disease of—see
 congenital heart diseases
 contraction of 441
 deoxygenation of 442
 development of 9
 diameters of 9 142
 diseases
 causes of 173
 classification of 196
 diagnosis of 196
 incidence of 1
 insurance aspects of 606
 management of 610 614
 614
 possible 199
 prevention 604
 prognosis of 609
 special aspects of 604
 drop 527
 elongated 40
 enlarged 184 441
 examination of
 failure 103 2, 3 7 2 700
 310 479 436
 acute 463 509
 absolute 86 500
 backward 573
 causes of 563
 chronic 570
 complications of 5
 diagnosis of 5 5
 forward 513
 graphic tracings in 5
 high output 571 2
 left ventricular 561
 lesions of 579
 low output 512
 mechanism of 574
 mechanism of origin of the
 signs of 573
 precipitating factors of
 563
 prognosis of 574
 relative 562 576
 right ventricular 566
 signs and symptoms of 569
 subacute 577
 treatment of 5 6 671 633
 types of 564
 varieties of 577
 variation 5 2

- Heart—cont**
 fatty 402
 flabby 384 403 409
 function of 29
 globular 323 446
 herniation of 441
 horizontal 133
 hot water bag 323 324
 hyperthyroid 405
 hypothyroid 407
 in pecton of 77
 irregular—see arrhythmia
 isolated 31
 large 364
 laws—see laws of the heart
 malformations — see con
 genital heart disease
 mammalian 30
 mass-age of 390
 metabolism of 32
 myxedema 404
 nervous control of—see ner
 vous control
 oxygen consumption of 31
 palpitation of 78
 percussion of 79
 perfusion of 31
 physiological requirements
 of 31
 rapid—see tachycardia
 rate—see rate
 reptilian 10
 resuscitation of 397
 reticular 446
 rotation 133
 senile 436
 slow—see bradycardia
 small 364 519 522
 sounds—see sounds of the
 heart
 strangulation of 441
 tetanus of 30
 tiger 402
 tiger liv 402
 tonus—see cardiac tonus
 triangular 444
 trilobular — see trilobular
 heart
 vertical 133 522
 water bottle 446
 weight of 14
- Heart lung preparation** 6 29
 30
- Heberden W** 7 436
Hecht H H 10 171 363 366
 399 412
- Heckmann H** 170 460
Hedlund S 40
Hegglin R 517
Helmbecker R 40 506
Heim de Balzac R 297 400
 488
- Heitz J** 539
Helleborus 583
Heller H 504
Hellerstein H 185 400
 439 440
- Hellmer H** 537
Helwig F C 390
Hematemesis 324 482
Hematoma 208 486
Hemiplegia 487
- Hemopericardium** 393 410
 413 441 481
- Hemoptysis** 73 227 234 236
 260 261 279 286 291
 307 319 322 324 469
 487 484 509
- Hemorrhage** 496
 cerebral 473
 of the coronary arteries 418
 of the septum—see septum
 hemorrhage of
Hench I S 198 200
Henderson V 5 67 577
Hendrix J I 603
Henny C C 8 144 140
Henschel A 412
Henschen E F 488
Heparin 207 430 409 515
 530 531 531 594 618
 619 620 639
- Hepatic**
 artery 57
 circulation 57
 sinusoids 57
 sphincters 57
 tracing
 in tricuspid insufficiency
 269
 indications of 104
 normal 103
 technique 103
 veins 57
- Hepato jugular reflex** 571
Hepburn J 363
Heredity 175
- Hering H C** 4 6 69 504
Hennig's nerve 53
Hernia cardiac—see herniation
Herniation cardiac 441
Herrick J H 6 8 437
Herrick J F 69 601
Herrick W W 505
Herrmann G R 257 412
 460 461 488 489 517
- Hertz I** 27
Hertzman A H 141 172
Hersheimer flare up 201
Hess L 438 561
Hess O 168
Heuvel Heymans (van den) 70
Hexamethonium 507 532 599
Heyman C 524
Heymans C 7 69 70 504
 524 601
- Hecup** 444 480
Hickam J M 216
Hicks S P 538
Higgins 412
- Hilar**
 dance 141 260 261 280 293
 301 305 319
 shadows
 large 232
 normal 140
 pulsating 140 260 261
 280 293 305 319
 records of 150
 small 265 313
- Hill A V** 169
Hill H C 505
Hill I G W 396 437
Hill L 257
- Hillman C C** 506
Hines L A 171 539
Hines L F 365
- Hippocratic fingers—see club
 bing**
- Hirsch L** 545
Hirsch S 7
Hirschboeck J S 603
Hirschfelder A D 179
Hirt L 71
Hirtz E 461
Hirtz a sign—see sign
His W Jr 4
His bundle—see bundle
Histamine 57 58 63
History
 of cardiology 1
 of the cardiac patient 12
Hitzberger K 168 276
Hitzig W M 140 141 208
 328
- Hoarseness—see dysphonia**
Hoehren M 69 461 516 561
Hodges F J 169
Hodgson J 11 239
Hodgson's disease—see disease
Hoerber P B 15 157 153 154
Hoefler F 169
Hofbauer K 577
Hoff H J 68 70 366 394
Holman D V 504
Holman L 462
Holovsky M 254
Holsti O 200
Holtzman W 257
Holzloehner E 169
Holzmann M 125 141 363
 398
- Homans J M** 515 514
Hooker D R 69
Hope J 488
Hope a sign—see sign
Horlick I 539
Horse 44 45 60
Horwitz O 440 603
Hoskins J 489
Houssay B A 167 504
Houston W H 504
Howarth S 412
Howe H J 440
Hoyle A 400
Hubbard J P 298 367
Huchard H 567
Huebotter F H 8
Hueper W C 537
Huerthle K 4 68 69
Hufnagel C A 498
Hull E 70 365 417
Hunter A 398 516
Hunter T H 216
Hunter W C 460 441
Huntington R W 200
Hussey H H 490 544
Hutinel V 461
- Hyaluronidase determination**
 194
- Hydatid cysts—see cysts**
Hydargine 330 335 302 531
 560 599 617 676
- Hydropneumothorax — see per
 carditis with effusion**
Hydropneumopericardium 448

- Hyman A. 277 305
 Hyperalgesia 537
 Hypercapnia 67
 Hyperemia 53
 Hyperesthesia 537
 Hyperglycemia 4 0—see also
 dial etc.
 Hypertensinase 59
 Hypertensine 3 493 521
 Hypertension 115 278 408
 496
 anovemic 492
 arteriosclerosis in 407 493
 benign 499 501
 blood pressure in 496
 cardiovascular 497
 cause of 491
 cerebral 491 499
 complications of 500
 diagnosis of 500
 diet therapy of 501
 electrocardiogram in 497
 endocrine 497
 essential 492 498
 experimental 7 493
 factors of 412 493
 familial 493
 femoral 242, 417
 graphic tracings in 497
 heredity in 417
 in coarctation of the aorta
 46
 in pregnancy 500
 lesions of 493
 malignant 491 499 500
 mechanism of 492
 neurogenic 491 499
 of pheochromocytoma 491
 499
 orthostatic 500
 paroxysmal 499
 perinephric 491
 permanent 493
 prognosis of 501
 psychic factors of 492 494
 507
 pulmonary—see pulmonary
 heart disease
 pyelo urethral 491
 renal 491
 signs and symptoms of 493
 spinal fluid in 497
 surgery in 503
 systolic 497
 systemic 491
 tibial 4 6 477
 treatment of 501
 varieties of 498
 venous pressure in 497
 x ray in 498
 Hypertensive diencephalic
 syndrome 499
 Hypertensive heart disease
 491
 Hyperthyroidism 37 176 313
 37 405 469 566 618
 Hypertrophy
 cardiac 184
 concentric 184
 eccentric 184
 Hyperventilation index 547
 Hypoglycemia 408
 Hypoparathyroidism 408
 Hypopotassemia 408
 Hypoproteinemia 403 404
 Hypophyrmia 7 496 511
 cause of 521
 course of 573
 diagnosis of 523
 mechanism of 573
 signs and symptoms of 572
 treatment of 573 620
 Hypotension 7 278 407 408
 470 476 577 535 543
 absolute 517 547
 acute 517—see also vascular
 collapse
 allergic 517
 cardiac 517 519
 cause of 517
 chronic 519
 endocrine 518
 femoral 469
 general 517
 hemorrhagic 517
 in aortic stenosis 511
 infectious 518
 left lateral 519
 mechanism of 518
 orthostatic 518
 persistent 518 519
 radial 416
 reflex 518
 relative 251 356 397
 signs and symptoms of 518
 subacute 518
 tibial 307 467
 treatment of 519 670
 Hypothyroidism 3 0 407

 I
 Ibn an Nafis 1
 Ice bag 449
 Ice liver 451 457 458
 Icterus—see jaundice
 Iglaue A. 544 602
 Ikeda K. 498
 Ileus paralyticus 456
 Illece C. C. 364
 Immersion foot 537
 Immobility 429
 Impending death—see sensa-
 tion
 Impulse double—see apical
 thrust double
 Inactivation 36
 Incessant 66 110
 Incompetence—see insuf-
 ficiency
 Index oscillometric 160
 Infant 44
 Infantile 276 266 779 311
 Infarct 530
 Infarct pneumonia 508
 Infarction
 myocardial 417
 anterior 421
 anterolateral 471
 anteroposterior 423
 anteropical 471
 atrial 477
 high 411
 intramural 477 478
 large 418
 massive 418
 multiple 418 478
 posterior 411
 posterobasal 411 427
 posterolateral 411
 small 418
 subendocardial 477
 sul pericardial 427
 transmural 471
 peripheral 479
 pulmonary 507
 septic 20
 Infections 518
 focal 190
 Inferior caval syndrome 464
 Inflow
 chamber—see chamber inflow
 rapid 96
 stasis 458
 Influenza 38
 Infundibular stenosis
 aortic 250
 pulmonic 762
 Infundibulum—see chamber
 outflow
 Infusion 399
 Inhalation
 of alcohol vapor 560
 of toxic gases 565
 Initial
 deflection—see electrocardio-
 gram
 length 30
 Injury current 36 416 421
 Insomnia—see sleeplessness
 Inspection 7
 Insufficiency valvular
 absolute 81 87 17 17
 238 269 267 799 301
 304 308 319 511
 relative 82 83 118 250 219
 261 277
 Insulin 53 430
 deficiency 408
 Interatrial
 disturbances 383
 septal defects—see atrial
 septal defects
 septum
 absent 278 776
 development of 9
 normal 11
 perforated 718
 rupture of 71
 stimulation of 34
 with multiple defects 718
 Interostial arteries tortuous
 and pulsating 468
 Interference dissociation 357
 Intermittence
 false 318
 real 345 359
 Intermittent
 claudication 457 531 537
 531 567
 pulse—see pulse
 Interval normal
 A C 102
 A V 37
 P R 37 123
 Q R 113 114
 Q T 123 171

Interventricular
 foramen 9
 grooves, 9
 septal defects—see ventricu-
 lar septal defects
septum
 additional 377
 absent 284
 development of 11
 displaced 310 318
 excitation of 34
 incompletely closed 284
 normal 1,
 perforated 284—see also
 ventricular septal de-
 fect
 rupture of 205 284
 vessels of 24
Intestinal
 arterio sclerosis 57,
 edema 527
Intra atrial disturbances 383
Intra cranial pressure in-
 creased 330 493

Intraventricular
 block 311 319 379 469
 pressure 39 157
Introzzi A S 169
Iodides 406 615 616 620 625
Iron 712
Irregular pulse
 due to atrial fibrillation 343
 due to a v block 350
 due to premature beats 346
 due to a block 350
 due to sinus arrhythmia 332
Irritability 547
Irises J H 603
Ischemia 536 547
Isolated heart
 perfusion 29
 requirements 31
 Strauss 29
Isometric
 contraction 33
 relaxation 40
Isorhythmic dissociation 357

J

Jacobs W A 601
Jacobsen R P 508
Jacobson B M 439
Jacobson C 453
Jaffe H L 438 440
Jaleski C 364
Jandolo C 171
Janeway lesions 705 709
Jaquet 168
Jarisch A 69 71 506 567
Jaundice 73 48 509 575
Jeffers W A 576
Jetter W W 329 438
Jimenez R P 54
Jimenez Diaz C 71 105
Jirk F J 538
Jochum G 168
Johnson F R 440
John on J 483
John on J R 70
Johnston F D 169 171 177
 563 398 485 479

Joly F 325 488
Jones A M 400
Jones H W 552
Jones L P 437
Jones R S 401
Jones Duckett T 257
Jone eu D 601
Jonnesco T 439 561
Jo clevich M 485
Joseph N R 65
Josué O 537 567
Jud on W I 506 524
Jugular veins
 cultivation of 76
 dilated 73
 engorged 76 265 445
 normal 76
 pulsating 268
 tracing—see phlebogram
Julian O C 338
Junctional fibers 22
Jung A 544
Justin Bezançon I 171

K

Ki olm 493
Kapff (von) W 168
Kaplan I C 700
Kapport A 538
Karrun P 603
Katz L 7 25 67 68 69
 169 365 435 439 440
 460 533 516 601 602
Katz S 544
Katzkin H M 511
Kayden H J 603
Keeler C S 216
Keith A 5 298
Keith J D 700
Keith N M 140 461 607
Keith and Flick node—see a
 node
Keller C S 216
Keller C J 69
Kelson S H 216
Kempner W 505
Kempner diet 501 636
Kendall F C 200
Kennedy J A 7 28
Kent A F S 33 318
Kern F 185
Kernodle C L 505
Kerr W J 363 439
Kays A 412
Kays T E S
Khellin 58 435 531 533 534
 547 615 618
KI—see iodides
Kirer W 258
Kidney—see renal
Kinedensigraphy—see electro-
 kymography
King C L 364
King J T 170
Kingsley 10
Kinney T D 76 309 438
Kinsey D 577
Kirby W M 216
Kisch H 36 68 69 397 398
 478 607
Kiss A 400

Kustin A D 366
Kitchen cardiac 606
Klein H A 505
Klein O 439
Klemperer I 216
Klewitz F 168
Kline E M 365
Klinefelter H F 399
Klinge F 199 200
Klotz S D 438
Klump T G 28
Knight W A 552
Kobayashi Y 603
Kobilak P F 257
Koch E 504
Koeliker A 3
Koenig H S 438
Koenig H 567
Koenig R 562
Kohlsiedt K G 505
Kohn C M 602
Kohn K H 700
Komvaler B I 325
Kondo B 28 459
Kon chegg T 515
Korotkow N S 5 180 171
Korotkow method—see aus-
 cultatory method
Korth C 412
Ko smann C F 141 607
Ko ter H 170
Kotowt chikow A M 567
Kountz W B 515
Kovacs J 607
Kramer J 71
Kraus A R 545
Kraus F 567
Krayer O 506 603
Krehl L 169
Kreutzer R 169 295
Krogh A 7 69
Kronecker H 165
Kuelbs 399
Kugel M A 200 309 43
Kunkal P 602
Kunlin J 535
Kur chakoff 68
Ku smaul A 3 445 460 538
Ku smaul
 double phenomenon 445
 nodules 445 533
 pulse 445
 sign 445
Kut chera Archberger H 500
Kvale W F 555
Kylin E 164 141
Kyser F A 601

L

Lafat G 544
Lactic acid 32 33 534
La Due J A 601
Lacnec R T H 2 80 57
Lagerloef H 68 603
Lamb A F 554
Lamb A R 437
Lambert R A 567
Lambie C G 602
Lampen V H 459
Lamport H 70
Lanari A 169 141
Lancini G M 577

- Lantis E M 1/1 189 504
 Landouls L 4 168
 Landowne M 3/6
 Landsberg 160
 Lang G, 168 9 11
 Lange K 412
 Langendorf R 365 516
 Langendorff O 6
 Langeron L 399 5/1
 Langhans cells 100
 Laparotomy exploratory 483
 Laplace L H 171 461 602
 Laqueur I 562
 Laranja F S 400
 Larsen K 443
 Lascano E F 98
 Lasser M A 430
 Lasser R P 208
 Lateral views 1 J
 Lübbert C 6 201 2 6 997
 298 300 27 307 458
 460 574 561
 Laufer 287 364 308
 Lauson H D 10 461
 Lavallée Cobo 460 524
 Lavallée 460
 Lavretiev B W 10
 Lawrence J S 488
 Laws of the heart
 Murris 56
 Starlings 29 30 31 567
 Lajani F 534
 Leach C E 216
 Leads
 augmented unipolar leads
 1 1 1 4
 bipolar 119
 Cf 119 121
 CR 119 121
 chest 120 121 120
 esophageal 121 1 4
 in children 119
 intracardiac 1 4
 limb 120
 nomenclature of 119
 precordial 120 121 120
 semi unipolar 119
 standard 119 120
 unipolar 120
 V 120 124
 Leary T N 43 493
 LeCompte P M 537
 Lee R L 574
 Leede C 1/1
 Left anterior oblique 128
 Left atrium
 aneurysm of 231 234 294
 hypertrophic—see hyper-
 trophy
 systolic expansion of 219
 thrombosis of 214 235 315
 Left axis deviation 218 297
 308 296 469 481 497 550
 Left ventricle
 aneurysm of—see ventricular
 aneurysm
 capacity of 14
 enlarged—see left ventricular
 hypertrophy
 normal 17
 Left ventricular failure 558,
 5/3—see also paroxysmal
 dyspnea and pulmonary
 edema
 Left ventricular hypertrophy
 21, 239 201 469 495
 496 49,
 electrocardiogram in 267
 low frequency tracing in 370
 Left ventricular strain—see
 ventricular strain
 Legal aspects of heart disease
 604 606
 Leiter L 511
 Lelund J 200
 Lelour L F 60
 Lendrum B 28
 Lenègre J 8 68 1/1 459 505
 506
 Length
 diastolic 29
 initial 20
 resting 29
 Iennoy W C 447
 Lenzi I 366
 Lenzi S 64
 Legume J 1/0 172 365
 Leriche R 439 538 544
 Leroy C V 10 313 438
 Lesse S 462
 Leser circulation
 arteriosclerosis cf—see pul-
 monary heart disease
 description of 1
 function of 54
 Lesser M A 439
 Lessee M F 607
 Letulle 399
 Leucocytosis 133 208 470
 4 6 509 53
 Ieuwenhoek (van) A 1
 Lev M 327
 Levine H D 399 401 545
 Levine S A 7 87 169 187
 188 57 2/6 298 363
 360 378 411 438 439
 440 460 580 582 60
 603 603 613
 Levinson D C 298
 Levitt G 557
 Levocardiogram 151
 Lephoped 677 633
 Levy M N 11
 Levy R L 172 43 438 439
 440 462 501 517
 Lewes D 257 515
 Lewis I 10
 Lewis Tl 5 61 68 10 168
 364 433 545 551 517
 Lays D 63
 Lian C 11 81 168 10 2 6
 263 364 365 398 401
 461 488 505 567 516
 Libman L 200 206 216 408
 Libman Sacks disease—see dis-
 ease
 Lielerson A 169
 Lieberman F 169
 Liebow A 10 41 562
 Ligaments
 pericardial—see
 pericardium ligaments of
- Ligation
 of an arteriovenous aneurysm
 544
 of the coronary sinus 436
 of the femoral veins 540
 of the iliac veins 503 540
 of the inferior vena cava 464
 of the ductus 207
 of the saphenous veins 509
 542
 Likoff W H 81 160 409
 Lima A 170
 Linegar C R 517
 Linton R R 515
 Lipoproteins 576
 Lipsitch L S 255
 Lipson M 309
 Liquaemin 628
 Little R C 10 298
 Liver
 as a vascular organ 57 59
 cardiac cirrhosis of 569
 circulation 57
 cirrhosis of 206 569
 enlarged 2/3 561 569
 triced 403
 iced 453
 large 77 268 271 2/3 415
 453 570
 nutmeg 569
 pulsating 29 268 2 3
 sphincters of 57
 Lobectomy 514
 Locke F S 68
 Locke's solution 32
 Loeffler E 440
 Loeffler W 603
 Loehlein M 208 216
 Loewe L S 16 258 545
 Loewenberg S A 51
 Loewi O 11 6 49 51 68 601
 Loewy R 537
 Logre R B 561
 Logue R H 490 500
 Loman J 110 607
 Long G H 545
 Longuet A 412
 Lopo de Carvalho 1/0
 Lorenzoni H 259
 Low cholesterol diet—see diet
 Low voltage—see electrocar-
 diogram
 Lowe T L 27
 Lowenstein B E 574
 Lown B 440
 Luchman T 68 460
 Luciani L 2 87 169 364
 Ludlen T C 400
 Ludwig C F 2 33 67
 Ludwig H 373
 Ludwig's ganglion 33
 Lueg W 412
 Lueth H C 607
 Lussada A 7 8 68 69 10
 71 86 87 141 168 169
 170 171 177 185 200
 222 2 6 201 208 276
 298 307 363 64 375
 368 39 378 400 401
 412 422 438 440 461
 488 489 516 574 551

- Luisada—*cont*
502 576 577 582 601
602 603
- Lundsgaard C 577
- Lunedei A 439
- Lung
atelectasis 510
a v fistula 510
cancer 510
emphysema 510 513
infarct—see pulmonary em
boli m
- Lung to face time—see circula
tion time
- Lupus erythematosus 212
- Lutembacher R 6 257 309
399
- Lutembacher's syndrome 6
252 283 304
cause of 304
complications of 306
course of 306
diagnosis of 306
graphic records in 306
lesions of 304
mode of origin of the signs of
306
prognosis of 306
symptoms and signs of 304
varieties of 306
x ray in 306
- Lymphangitis 532
- Lymphatic system 2
- Lynch J 60
- Lions H A 504
- Lions R H 461
- M
- MacBryde C M 57
- Mach R S 399
- Machinery murmur—see ar
teriovenous aneurysm
patent ductus arteriosus
and murmur
- Mackenzie J 4 5 168 188
408 440
- Mackinnon F 613
- MacLeod A C 160 364 398
455
- Macwilliam J A 170 363
- Madden J I 412
- Magallanes Gomez I 200
- Magendanz H 613
- Magneum
chloride 39
sulfate 330 334 588 617 638
639
- Magn G 172 200 400 416
- Mahaim I 216 394 399
- Mahorner H R 538
- Majer R 534
- Malarie 533
- Malamani A 70
- Malaria 175 387 571
- Malformations of the heart
combined defects 299
complex 13 310
etiology of 13 175
pathogenesis of 175
simple shunts 276
- Malignant endocarditis—see
bacterial endocarditis
- Mahnow M H 516
- Mallory K N 438
- Mallory T B 486
- Malnutrition 403 404
- Malpighi M 1
- Maltby A B 257
- Mammary artery transplanta
tion of 436
- Management of cardiac dis
eases 610
- Mangun G H 517
- Mann H 171
- Mannheimer L 298 365
- Mannitol hexantrate 331 435
502 529 530 596 618
677
- Mantovan A 258
- Manunza I 561
- Mapharsen 201
- Marangoni B A 582
- Marceau M F 68
- Marchal M 8 144 170 271
461 485
- Marchandise C 61
- Mares F 68
- Maresch R 499
- Marey L J 4 50 68 168 488
- Marey
experiment of 50
law of 54
studies of 4
tambour of 4 90 100 103
108
- Marian A B 460
- Marfan's technique—see para
centric pericardial
- Margolies A 168 257 364
397 398 460 461 468
- Marguery I L 276
- Mark L C 603
- Marks H H 557
- Mariss I 459
- Marjole C D 440
- Marriage 580
- Marshall R 328
- Martin J 46 602
- Martinetti R 604
- Martini T 489
- Martland H B 25
- Marvin H M 257 582
- Mason M F 27
- Massage 591
- Massie J 298 438
- Massell B H 256
- Massell T B 545
- Massie I 438
- Massive movement—see move
ment
- Master A M 172 394 437
440 552
- Master test—see functional
tests two step
- Material
vasodepressor 58
vasoexcitatory 60
- Mathes E 171 603
- Matthes K 141
- Mauer I F 145
- Maunice P 68 171 406 506
- Mautner H 6 57 68 80 87
168 327 364 412 574
581 601 603
- Maycock W H 488
- Mayer A 562
- Maverson G B 545
- McCallum body of 190 203
276
- McCallum W G 200 216
- McCann W S 505
- McCord M 603
- McCormack J L 515
- McDonald J B 489
- McDonald R K 216
- McDonnell R J 8 68 69 208
- McDowall's reflex 52
- McLewen C 184 200
- McGavack T H 412 489
- McGinn S 297 309 328 515
- McGuire J 309 545
- McGuire Dole H 438
- McKay E N 562
- McKusick A A 462 489
- McLean A R 271
- McMichael J 70 258 417
505 577 601 603
- McMillan T M 366 438 460
462 601
- McNamara R J 309
- McNide R H 576
- Meikins J 186 578
- Mean pressure 63 150 160
- Meerns 185
- Mechanical events 38 60
- Mecholy 38 60 597 670 675
- Mediha L A 440
- Mediastinitis 458 463 464
- Medinets H L 406
- Medioneerosis 576
- Mednick M 401 440
- Meek W G 67
- Mekacava 463
- Meilman I 508 603
- Melik Cuelasarian E A 168
- Melli G 561 562
- Meltzer S J 168 467
- Melville K I 400
- Melvin G S 170
- Menadione 594 624
- Mendez L 506
- Mendlovitz M 185 56
- Mendoza F 70 8 141 400
613
- Menéndez de Oliveira R 216
421
- Menhart 544
- Menopausal syndrome 409
- Menchev W H 406
- Mercurhydrin 675
- Mercurial diuretics 276 279
436 449 560 516 593
615 616 622
- Mercury 201 410
- Meredith H C 461
- Merken P 216
- Merli A 439
- Merrill A J 417 517
- Messer A L 172 277 366
- Metallic disturbances 407
- Metabolism of the heart—see
cardiac

- Metarterioles 76
 Metcalfe J 469
 Methuam 67
 Method
 auscultatory 160
 Korotkow 160
 oscillatory 160
 Metrazol 449 571 561 600
 670 671
 Mettler b R 95
 Meyer D D 200
 Meyer F 601
 Meyer H H 601
 Meyers G B 171
 Michelazzi A M 545
 Micheli 276
 Microles 174
 Microphone
 crystal 88
 linear 90 106
 logarithmic 90
 piezo electric 88
 special—see logarithmic
 stethoscopic 82 95
 usual—see stethoscopic
 Miedelich M 601
 Miles H H 50
 Military gummata 239
 Milk leg 57 540
 Millen J W J 78
 Miller A H 188 582
 Miller H I 434
 Miller R 363
 Miller W C 438
 Milner A 200
 Minot G 170
 Mintz A A 365
 Minute volume 43
 Mirror type electrocardiogram
 372 540
 Mitchell W 538
 Mitral
 atresia 06 26
 calcification 275
 commisurotomy 8 234
 defect double 73 615
 dwarfism 226
 fibrosis 275
 insufficiency
 blood pressure in 218
 cause of 214
 complications of 223
 course of 273
 diagnosis of 274
 electrocardiogram of 218
 electrokymogram of 219
 esophagocardiogram in 271
 functional 275
 graphic records in 218
 lesions of 214
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 275
 phonocardiogram of 218
 relative 275
 symptoms and signs of 217
 treatment of 274 615
 varieties of 274
 x ray in 271
 stenosis 1
 blood pressure in 23
 cause of 275
 complications of 734
- congenital 275
 course of 734
 description of 275
 diagnosis of 275
 electrocardiogram in 275
 electrokymogram in 279
 functional 275
 graphic records in 738
 lesions of 275
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 273
 mute 275
 plus pulmonary insufficiency
 301
 plus tricuspid defects 300
 phonocardiogram in 278
 prognosis of 236
 pseudo 235
 pure 275 776
 relative 734 734 244
 surgery of 734
 symptoms and signs of 276
 treatment of 236 615
 x ray in 231
 valve
 calcified 275
 closing snap of 273
 function of 39 40
 funnel like 226
 opening snap of 728 279
 240 231
 opening sound of 97
 structure of 17
 Mizutani H 68
 Mobilization of a precordial
 plastron 460
 Molitz W 32 366
 Mueller T 228
 Moschekberg J G 6
 Moskeberg A scleritis—see
 arteriosclerosis
 Mohammedan prayer position
 —see position
 Mokotoff P 438 571
 Molina (de) A F 41
 Mongolian idiosyncrasy 94
 Monis F 170
 Monocystis 708
 Montanari A 569
 Montes L 172
 Montuori E 263
 Moon V 574 589
 Moore L V 700 797
 Morehead R L 459
 Morel J 56
 Moret F S 483
 Morgagn G B 2 61 498
 Morgagni syndrome—see dis
 ease
 Morgan Jones A 257
 Moritz F 142 169 171
 Morphine sulfate 58 39 429
 443 460 509 515 570
 560 585 579 6 6 638 639
 Morquio M L 4 798 361
 Morquio syndrome—see dis
 ease
 Murrenate sodium 542
 Morris on F T 364
 Moschowitz E 462 506 537
 Mosenthal H O 504
 Moser M 603
- Mosso A 168 169
 Mougeot A 488
 Moutier F 461
 Movement precordial
 massive 768 454
 see saw 77 268 454
 Mozer J J 39 438
 Much H 87
 Mucin clot prevention test 194
 Mueller J 87
 Mueller L 305
 Mueller O 169
 Mueller test 88 140 440
 Munoz J M 69 504
 Mural thrombi 345—see also
 thrombus an (thrombo is
 Murmur 81 87 83 93
 A Flint 87 247 247 299
 abnormal structural 83
 aortic 93 193 205 409 496
 apical 93 409 470 496
 apical systolic 194
 auscultation of 81 83
 basal 93
 bizarre 441
 flowing 177 717 247 268
 299 301 319
 buzzing 336
 cardiopulmonary 87
 classification of 87
 continuous 93 762 297 206
 24 480
 diamond shaped 93 178 763
 25 469
 diastolic 93 178 193 206
 278 799 241 743 760
 286 299 301 303 305
 319 372 379 32 407
 409 460 476 474 485
 476 479 570
 double 3 240 44 405 480
 early diastolic 193 469 511
 517
 early systolic 218
 extra cardiac 83
 functional 87 717
 grade of 83
 G Steell 4 78 299 234 307
 306
 harsh 247 251 283 311
 hematic 43
 in crescendo 178 718 219
 278
 in decrescendo 73 17 218
 219 769 219
 in the phonocardiogram 93
 innocuous 83
 intensity of 83
 irregular 287
 late systolic 512
 long 768
 loud 83 214 251 763 301
 311
 low pitched 260
 machinery 702 296 372 409
 464 480 481 544
 millwheel 411 444 448
 mitral 193
 musical 717 247 713 251
 471
 myocardial 82
 phase of 93

Murmur—cont

- presystolic 94 277 278 279
305
pulmonic 193 194 205 409
rough 83
rumble—see rumble
sea gull cry 194 242 251 466
septic 205
slight 83
soft 83 144 260 268 319 324
570
subsonic 279
systolic 93 177 193 194 204
205 278 229 242 243
251 252 260 263 268
269 279 286 287 299
300 303 305 307 308
311 319 322 359 392
402 403 409 420 426
441 444 469 476 484
485 496 498 511 550
551 570
table of 83
transmission of 83
tricuspid 268 269 273 274
valvular 82
vascular 93
venous 402 405 409
water wheel—see water wheel
Murphy G E 516
Murray D W G 515
Murray G 298 440
Murray J R 257
Murri A 6
Murray law 6 567
Muscles
bulbo spiral 22
sino spiral 22
smooth 49
Mushrooms 419
Mussirha A 498
Musser J H 461
Musso Fournier J C 412
Myers G B 439
Myers M M 188
Myers V C 399 577
Miverson A N 602
Myocardial
calcification 386 390
cysts 386
degeneration—myocardiosis
edema 181 391 403 407
fibrosis 330 390 403 495
atrial 226 394
cause of 390
diffuse 390 436
due to coronary heart dis-
ease 390
following myocardial in-
farction 390
following myocarditis or
myocardosis 390
localized 411 418
signs and symptoms of 391
432 436
traumatic 411
graft 436
infarction
anterior 421
anterolateral 421
anteroposterior 423
anteroseptal 509

- atrial 418 422
atypical 422
blood in 470
blood pressure in 470 426
causes of 417
complications of 427
course of 427
description of 5 6
diagnosis of 428
electrocardiogram in 420
factors of 414
functional changes in 419
graphic tracings in 420 424
high 421
intramural 427
lateral 421
lesions of 416 418
massive 418
mechanism of the signs of
425
multiple 418 423 428
pericarditis in 418 420 477
posterior 421
posterobasal 421 422
precipitating factors of 418
premonitory symptoms of
419
prevention of 430
prognosis of 428
signs and symptoms of 419
small 418
stages of 420
subendocardial 472
subepicardial 422
successive 474
treatment of 420 618 639
urine in 420
varieties of 421 427
x ray in 474
ischemia—see myocardial in-
farction angina pectoris
and coronary insuffi-
ciency
necrosis 403
ossification 310
petechiae 403
scarring 418
strain 367
trauma 410
tumors 215 391
wounds 410
Myocardie 384
Myocarditis 5
actinomycotic 386
acute 383
allergic 384 385
anemic 384 400
bacterial 384
calcified—see myocardial
calcification
cause of 384
Chagas disease 384 387
course of 388
degenerative 384
diagnosis of 388
diphtheritic 386
echinococcal 384 386
electrocardiogram of 387
eosinophilic—see allergic
fibrotic—see myocardial
fibrosis
Fiedler 384 385

- Friedreich's ataxia as cause
of 384 387
fulminating 388
graphic tracings in 387
inflammatory 384
influenzal 386
in pericarditis 443
interstitial 384
isolated 384
lesions of 384
luetic 201
malarial 386 387
myogenic 385
neurogenic 385 386
parasitic 384 386 387
parenchymatous 384
parotitic 384
patchy 384
pneumonic 385
prognosis of 389
purulent 384
rheumatic 384 387
scarlet fever as cause of 384
387
simple 384
subacute 383 388
symptoms and signs of 386
syphilitic 201 384 385
toxic 384
treatment of 389 617
tubercular 384 385
typhoid 384
varieties of 388
viral 384 386
x ray in 388
Myocardium
function of 29
oxygen consumption of 31
32
properties of 20
structure of 21
Myocardosis 384
Myofibrils
atrophic 451
degeneration of 384
normal 21 22
Myotonia atrophica 387
Myxedema
heart in 407
therapeutic 435

N
Nahum L H 68 365 394
Nade M 538
Natin Larrier 399
Nativelle 3 583
Nausea 208 419 470 475 50
587
Navasquez (de) S 399
Nelson W 327
Nembatal 58 435 579 561
Neo arphenamin 211 615
Neo synephrine 538
Nephritis 208 217 501
Nerve
cardiac 48
Gloss 49 53
depressor 48 53
fibers 51
Hering's 53
sympathetic 50

- Nervous control
of the arteries 49
of the blood pressure 52
of the heart 45
of the respiration 64
- Nehauser I B D 498 499
- Neumann R 544
- Neurasthenia—see neurocircu-
latory asthenia
- Neurath G 365 418
- Neurocirculatory asthenia 146
500
cause of 546
course of 547
diagnosis of 547
mechanism of 546
signs and symptoms of 54
prognosis of 547
treatment of 547
- Neurosis
anxiety 547
cardiac 547
- Nenburt I H 613
- Newman F V 516
- Niacin 404
- Niehe—see ventricular niche
- Nickerson J I 17^o 453
- Nicotin—see tobacco
- Niehaus F W 87
- Night cramps 443 567
- Nitrites 3 58 50^o 570 591
- Nitroglycerine 435 579 596
618 627 638
- Nitrous oxide 460
- Noble R I 297
- Nobrega G 400
- Node
auriculo ventricular—see a v
node
of Keith and Flack—see s a
node
of Tawara—see a v node
- Osler A 209
- sino auricular—see s a node
skin 4
- Nodal rhythm
cause of 354
diagnosis of 355
mechanism of 354
prognosis of 355
signs and symptoms of 355
treatment of 355
x ray in 355
- Nodule
Arantius 239
Aschoff's 5 190 703 38,
Keith and Flack—see s a node
Kussmaul's 33
Morgagni's 16
Osler 209
rheumatic 192
skin 4
subcutaneous 74
subclavicular 41^o
- Noll J 399
- Nomidez J F 85
- Nordenfeldt G 399
- Norepinephrine 51 510 571
581 595
- Normal heart
all or none law of 99
Starling's laws of 20 43
- Norris R F 460
- Noschleed 7^o 191 210 260
- Notching of the ribs—see
costochondritis
- Noth P H 412
- Novelo S 299
- Novocaine—see procaine
- Nowak S J 501
- Nutmeg liver—see liver
- Nutritional deficiency 175
- Nyboer J 364
- Nygard K K 544
- Nylin G 8 43 70 144 498
54 518 603
- O
- Obal F 85
- Oleary 40^o 492
- Obraztsov W I 5 437
- Oleostria cardiac patient in
579
- Ochener A 490 544
- Oculo cardiac reflex 86
- Oehnell R F 400
- Ogle C 461
- Ohm R 167 168
- Old age heart in 550
- Ohm C B 489
- Oliver T 498
- Oliver W S 3
- Olsen N S 50^o
- O'Neill T J 258 247
- Opdyke H F 295
- Opening snap (click)
of the aortic valve 476
of the mitral valve 4 85 278
279 231
of the pulmonary valve 763
- Operation—see surgery
- Opium 241 599 615
- Oppenheimer B b 171 490
504 551
- Oppenheimer E T 142 488
- Oral auscultation—see aus-
cultation
- Oral whiff—see sign Drum
mond's
- Organ I b 4
- Orias O 68 87 16 168
39^o 39^o
- Orsi A 400
- Orthodiagram 6 142
- Orthopnea 3 193 494 555 573
- Orthostatic
tachycardia 519
hypertension 500
hypotension 503 519 579
tachycardia 473 572
- Ortiz Ramirez T 8^o
- Oscillations 160
inframaximal 160
maximal 160
supramaximal 160
- Oscillatory method 575
- Oscillometer 47 160 531
- Oscillometric
capsule 161
index 160 530
- Oscillo cop 114 131
- O'Shaughnessy V I 7 439
- Osler W 4 706 709 716
- Osler's nodes—see nodes
- Osteoarthropathy 372
- Ouchan—see strophanthin
- Ouminsky V 412
- Outflow—see ejection 39
- Output cardiac 7 43 150
average 43
brutal 43
decreased 572
increased 512
normal 43
technique or determination
of 155
- Ovarian insufficiency 409
- Overy D C 172
- Owen W R 516
- Ox 45
- Oxygen 43 61 118 389 479
430 460 515 58^o 600
614 616 618 670 672
a v difference 156
capacity 156
concentration 156
consumption 155
debt 32
deficiency 306
intake 155
requirement 31 39
saturation
decreased 263 313
increased 291 296 293
412 319
low 294 511
normal 158 263 281
tension 156
treatment 638 639
- P
- Pace D 168
- Pacemaker 31
artificial 306
atrial 33^o
coronary sinus 355
nodal 332 354
normal 33
s a 33
shifting 346
ventricular 334 356
wandering 346
- Pachon M V 5 169 170
- Pachon apparatus—see oculi-
lometer
- Pachon Bouhite capsule—see
oculometric capsule
- Iadulla F 6
- Iagano G 4
- Iage I H 71 501 505 506
603
- Iaget's disease—see disease
- Pain
calf 531
limb 536
precordial—see precordial
pain
stabbing 484
striking 349 413 479
tearing 481
- Paine R 4
- Pail J 5 504
- Paladino 398
- Paley D H 440

Pallor 209 240 251 279—see also color
 Palmer J H 430
 Paimieri C G 87
 Palpation
 bimanual 78
 of a snap 78
 of the cardiac apex 78
 of the epigastrium 48
 of the gallop 371
 of the liver 79
 of the precordium 78
 of the thrills 73
 Palpitation 2 73 205 217 260
 268 291 303 322 329
 333 405 443 475 495
 519 522 550 607
 Paltauf R 552
 Pararteritis nodosa—see periarteritis nodosa
 Paracarditis—see carditis
 Paracress 51
 extracts 508
 Pánek J 365
 Pannier R 489
 Panzerherz—see pericardial calcification
 Papaverine 58 156 249 354
 363 397 429 435 502
 530 515 530 531 537
 535 537 596 599 617
 618 627 638 639
 Papillary muscles 16 23 29
 40
 contraction 39
 function 39 40
 position 16
 Papilledema 496
 Lupp C 201 327 398
 Papp (von) I 561
 Lappenheim A M 488
 Pappenheimer A M 200 309
 Paracentesis
 of the abdomen 459 612
 of the pericardium 449 614 615
 Paradoxical
 embolism—see crossed embolism
 pulsation of the left atrium 392
 pulsation of the left ventricle 480
 pulse—see pulse
 Parasitic diseases 14 517
 Parathyroids, 51
 Paravertebral injection 483 619
 Pardee H F II 6 328 438 460 601 607
 Piré A 1
 Iaredrine 521 598 639
 Iaredrinol 520 524 535 598 620 627
 Paresthesias 50 539
 Parin V V 69
 Iansot J 538
 Iark F A 488
 Parker F 440 405
 Parker R L 277 328 603
 Parkinson J 168 297 298 398 412 438 488

Paroli G 552
 Parotitis 397
 Iaroxysmal
 attacks—see attacks
 dizziness 72
 dyspnea 72 73 183 245
 235 248 311 481 555
 558 560 549 671 639
 fainting 72
 giddiness 72
 pulmonary edema—see pulmonary edema
 tachycardia 193 386 638
 atrial—see atrial tachycardia
 supranodal — see atrial tachycardia
 nodal—see atrial tachycardia
 supranodal — see atrial tachycardia
 ventricular—see ventricular tachycardia
 Pars membranacea 17
 Larsonnet A F 257
 Iasoli L 257 412
 last history 73
 Patent
 ductus arteriosus—see patent ductus
 ductus
 foramen ovale—see atrial septal defect
 Patent ductus arteriosus
 blood gases in 294
 catheterization of the heart in 293
 cause of 290
 circulation time in 294
 complications of 295
 course of 295
 diagnosis of 296
 electrocardiogram in 292
 graphic records in 297
 lesions in 290
 ligation of, 297
 mode of origin of the signs of 294
 plus aortic atresia 307
 plus aortic stenosis 306
 plus coarctation 306
 prognosis 297
 symptoms and signs of 291
 treatment of 297 616
 varieties of 295
 with pulmonary hypertension 296
 x ray in 293
 Paton W D M 603
 Pattern of
 injury 416 446 447
 ischemia 416 446 447
 necrosis 417 421 423
 Patterson M C 462
 Paul O 200 440 461
 Iauh R M 199
 Pause
 compensatory 347 349
 noncompensatory 347 349
 Pautrat J 416
 Pazzanese D 364 397 545 602
 Peacock Th II 3

Pecke E S 462
 Peery T M 489
 Peet M M 505
 Pellagra 404
 Penicillin 198 201 205 211 249 449 587 614 615
 aerosol 515
 by injection, 198 206 211
 in acute bacterial endocarditis 206 614
 in subacute bacterial endocarditis 211 615
 in surgery 582
 intrapercardial injection of 400
 local 543
 oral 108 614
 procaine G 626
 Penoral 605
 Pentology of Fallot 318
 Pepton 57
 Percussion
 description of 79
 methods of 79
 of cardiac dullness 79
 palpated 79
 precordial 396
 Pereiras R 297 328 398
 Perera G H 170 406
 Pérez Montés I 208 386
 Perianes J 490
 Periaortic hematoma 449
 Periarthritis nodosa 3 414 533 534
 Pericardial
 absence—see pericardium
 adhesions—see constrictive pericarditis
 calcification 451
 cavity 19
 clicks—see systolic clicks
 contusion 410
 cysts 442
 defects 441
 effusion 407
 exudate—see pericarditis
 fistula 4
 hemorrhage—see hemopericardium
 herniation 441
 injection 450
 irrigation 450
 ligaments 19 21
 ossification 451
 paracentesis—see paracentesis
 retraction 441
 rupture 441
 size 19 21
 sinuses 19 20
 strangulation 441
 synechia—see constrictive pericarditis
 tear 441
 transudate 50
 tumors 442
 Pericarditis 190 193 614 619
 acute 443
 adhesive—see adhesive pericarditis
 benign 442 449
 bread and butter 443

- calcuosa—see pericardial
 calcification
 caeous 448
 cause of 447
 circulation time 446
 complications 447
 constrictive—see constrictive
 pericarditis
 diagnosis of 448
 diffuse 443
 dry 443
 epitenocardica 5 418
 graphic tracings 444 445
 hemorrhagic 443 448
 lesions of 443
 limited 418
 mechanism of the signs of 446
 pneumococcal 443 448
 purulent 443 449
 putrid 445
 pyogenic 448
 rheumatic 447 447
 sero fibrinous 443
 streptococcal 447
 subacute 443
 symptoms and signs of 443
 taeniputic 449
 treatment of 449
 tubercular 442 447
 uremic 448
 varieties of 447
 viral 447
 with effusion 444
 x ray in 446
- Pericardium 19
 absence of 441
 air in—see pneumopericardium
 blood in see hemopericardium
 calcified—see pericardial calcification
 congenital anomalies of 441
 cysts of 447
 defect 441
 histula of 441
 flaccid 446
 function of 48
 hydatid cysts—see cysts
 inflammatory conditions of—
 see pericarditis
 ligaments of—see pericardial
 ligaments
 normal 19
 ossified—see pericardial ossification
 paracentesis of—see paracentesis
 parietal 19
 removal of 441
 respiratory actions on 60 67
 rupture of 441
 structure of 19
 tapping—see paracentesis
 tense 446
 traumatic rupture of 441
 tumors of 442
 visceral 19
- Pericoronary neurectomy 436
 Perihepatitis 451
 Periodic respiration 550 557
 559 561 560 633
- Periods
 Luciani's 357
 Wenckebach's 357
- Peripheral edema—see edema
 Peripheral resistance 63
- Peritonitis 451
- Peritrit 339 303 529 596
 618 627
- Perlman J S 363
 Perlman L 483
- Perony, P 364
- Perry J L 216
 Perry S M 533
 Perry T 180
- Persistent
 atrioventricular—see per
 sistent common a v ori
 fice
 common arterial trunk—see
 common arterial trunk
 common atrioventricular ori
 fice 234 37
 foramen ovale—see atrial
 septal defect
 right sided aortic arch—see
 aortic arch right sided
- Perspiration 495
- Peserico E 412
- Petechiae 161 107 705 209
- Peters H C 601
- Peters J H 399
- Peters J P 505
- Peterson L H 70
- Pitter J 169
- Pezzi C 6 160 246 399 377
 328 397 483
- Pfeifferberger M 506
- pH 43 67
- Pharmacological tests 86
- Phenobarbital 274 740 479
 430 507 570 560 561
 615 618 676 633 670
- Pheocromocytoma 405 491
 499
- Phlebitis 05 507 549 530 531
 cause of 539
 diagnosis of 540
 lesions of 540
 migrant 532
 phlebotlebitis 540
 signs and symptoms of 539
 thrombophlebitis 540 540
 treatment of 540 670
- Phlebogram
 indications of 103
 in heart failure 542
 in tricuspid insufficiency 269
 in tricuspid stenosis 274
 normal 99
 technique of 99
 types of 101
 waves of 101
- Phlebotlebitis 453 510
- Phlebotrombosis—see phle
 bitis
- Phlegmasia alba dolens—see
 milk leg
- Phonocardiogram 112 743 544
- Phonocardiograph 88
- Phonocardiography 5 7 88
- fetal 93 287
 first studies 4 5 88
- in aortic insufficiency 243
 in atrial tachycardia 33
 in Lutenbacher's syndrome
 305
 in mitral stenosis 708
 in myocardial infarction 474
 in patent ductus arteriosus
 292
 in pulmonary insufficiency 260
 in pulmonary stenosis 63
 in premature beats 351
 in tetralogy of Fallot 11
 in tricuspid insufficiency 769
 in ventricular septal defect
 51
 in ventricular tachycardia
 337
 methods 88
 normal tracings 91
 physiological 91
 routine 94
 special 94
 technique of 94
- I phosphoretin 33
- Phospholipis 527
- Photoelectric
 cell 109 118 140
 phlethysmography 118
- Physical examination 74
- Physiotherapy 303 574 530
- Pianese 379
- Picchini G 564 460
- Pichon A 21
- Pick L P 6 57 69 504
 574 602
- Pick F 4 461
- Pick P 440
- Pick's syndrome—see disease
- Pick ring G W 462 505
- Pielonephritis 439
- Piersol G A 27
- Pig 63
- Pilcher J P 576 607
- Juncell C 603
- Pines K L 506
- Pinniger J 450
- Pins L 460
- Pi tochi G 489
- Pistol shot sound 240 744 407
- Pittressin 58 521 37 678
- Pitting edema—see edema
- Pituitary 51
- Pituitrin 58
- Plaque atheromatous—see
 atherosclerosis
- Plasma 10 60
- derivates 571
 substitutes 571 670
- Plasma volume—see blood vol
 ume
- Plateau pattern
 of hepatic tracing 269
 of jugular tracing 769
 of left atrial electrokymo
 gram 197 219 709
 of left atrial esophagocardio
 gram 271
 of ventricular electrokymo
 gram 420
- Plukova E 10
- Plethysmogram 117
 of the finger 117

- Plethysmogram—*cont*
 of the forearm 117
 of the heart 29
 of the leg 117
 rules of 117
 Pleximeter 79
 Plotz M 70 577
 Pneumocardiogram
 first studies 106
 in tricuspid insufficiency 270
 normal 106
 respiratory variations of 107
 technique 106
 Pneumomonosis 110
 Pneumomediastinum diagnos-
 tic constrictive
 in pericarditis 457
 in normal subjects 152
 technique of 152
 Pneumonia 210 357
 Pneumopericardium
 diagnostic 152
 spontaneous 449
 technique of 449
 therapeutic 449
 Pneumoperitoneum diagnos-
 tic 152 457
 Pneumothorax diagnostic 152
 Poulet I 170
 Poindexter C A 365
 Poisoning 330 410
 Poli G 71
 Poliakov H 200
 Pollack A D 216
 Pollack H 613
 Pollay H F 700
 Polyarteritis
 infectious 529
 nodosa — *see* periaarteritis
 nodosa
 toxic 529
 Polyarthritides
 rheumatic — *see* rheumatic
 disease
 tubercular 196
 Polycythemia 176 263 307
 09 313 319 322 376
 410 511 572
 Polyps cardiac 214
 Polysperitis 442 448
 Pompe J C 411
 Pontet a tubercular polyarthri-
 tis 196
 Ponder I 70
 Poppe J K 489
 Portal circulation 57
 Porte D 460
 Porter R R 462
 Porter W B 460 467
 Position
 Belehmans 74
 Mohammedan prayer 74
 444
 orthopedic 74
 Posterior aortitis—*see* aortitis
 Posterior roots 48
 Poton M A 7
 Pott's tachycardial syndrome
 335 338
 Potain I C 3 4 168 256 397
 Potassium 37 334 383 588 678
 inhibition 32
 iodide 201 219 478 503 579
 sulphocyanate 502
 Potential electric 36
 Potts W J 217 378 401
 Potts Gibson operation 317
 326 413
 Poulmaux M 398
 P pulmonale—*see* I wave
 P R interval 37 228 497
 normal 37 123—*see* also
 electrocardiogram
 prolonged 194 209 212
 short 497
 short with bundle branch
 block 381
 Pratt F H 67
 Pratt Thomas H R 490
 Precapillaries 76
 Precordial 217
 ache 333 339 547
 bulge 77 218
 edema 77
 fullness 548
 oppression 717 740 262 333
 339 402 475 495 508
 541 548 570
 pain 72 205 234 240 260
 264 333 338 376 402
 405 413 419 421 441
 443 469 475 481 484
 547 548 550 601—*see*
 also angina pectoris
 retraction 268 454
 soreness 548
 tightness 405
 tingling 548
 Precordium
 areas of auscultation 81
 areas of cardiography 90
 Pre excitation 341
 Preferential channels—*see* ar-
 teriovenous capillaries
 Pregnancy 342 453
 cardiac patients in 59
 hypertension in 500 579
 normal 549
 toxemia 580
 valvular defects in 579
 Premature beats 240 396 406
 470 495
 allorhythmic 349 587
 apical 350
 atrial 349 481
 basal 350
 biventricular 349 587
 blocked 350
 blood pressure of 352
 cause of 349
 diagnosis of 353
 electrocardiogram of 349
 frequent 349
 graphic tracings of 349
 in sleep 376 380
 interpolated 349
 isolated 349
 lateral 350
 mechanism of 346
 mode of origin of the signs of
 352
 nodal 349 350
 occasional 349
 periodic 349
 phonocardiogram of 351
 polyfocal 386
 prognosis of 353
 signs and symptoms of 348
 sinus 349
 trigeminal 349
 treatment of 353 617
 varieties of 349
 ventricular 336 350
 x ray 352
 Premature contractions—*see*
 premature beats
 Premature systoles—*see* pre-
 mature beats
 Prescriptions 625
 Pre eclampsia 73
 Presso receptors 57 50 497
 493—*see* also receptors
 Pressor nerves 52
 Pressor reflex 52
 Pressure
 colloid osmotic 61 67 181
 182
 diastolic—*see* diastolic pres-
 sure
 filtration 11 67
 gradient of 40
 hydrostatic 61 82 181 187
 mean—*see* blood pressure
 of the arteries—*see* blood
 pressure
 of the capillaries—*see* capil-
 lary pressure
 of the heart chambers 45 157
 of the pulmonary artery 45
 157
 osmotic 61
 pulse—*see* pulse pressure
 systolic—*see* systolic pres-
 sure
 venous 61
 Pressor 30
 Prevention of heart disease
 606
 Price C H 70 545
 Richard M M L 21
 Priest W S 574
 Priestley J T 544
 Rimano N I 562
 Primitive cardiac tube—*see*
 cardiac tube
 Rimazetal M 8 75 70 177
 366 515 603
 Riscoline 515 530 531 537
 535 537 597 617 670
 677 639
 Rocaine 396 397 591 639
 unde—*see* pronestyl
 Roger S 613
 Prognosis 608
 Pronestyl 237 335 339 354
 363 377 479 490 460
 520 537 581 587 588
 591 617 618 619 676
 639 633
 Propylthiouracil 407 476 477
 619
 Prostigmin 376 616 617 678
 638
 Rotamine sulfate 574
 Protein 455 501
 Rothrombin level 165

Prothrombin time 166
 Protodiastole 40
 Protoelastic click—see click
 or snap
 Protoveratrine 50 50;
 Pruitt R D 461
 Psychotherapy 507
 Puberty early 4P
 Pulmonary
 arteriovenous fistula (or
 aneurysms)—see arterio-
 venous
 artery
 an aneurysm of 494
 arteritis 190 475
 atherosclerosis of 478
 circulation of 54
 dilatation of 260 278
 40 403 43 474
 hypoplasia of 310
 innervation of 57
 normal 11
 pressure in 4
 receptors 54
 reserve function 50
 veins 55
 venous pressure 55
 arterioarteriosclerosis 735
 atrophy 316 374
 capillaries 55
 circulation 54
 congestion 467
 consolidation—see pneu-
 monia
 edema paroxysmal 3 72
 15 115 248 490 497
 440 473 490 531
 asthmatic 55
 causes of 455
 chronic 468
 experimental 508
 fulminating 55;
 mechanism of 553
 prolonged 55; 561
 signs and symptoms of 556
 treatment of 560 11 67
 unilateral 557
 varieties of 557
 embolism 43 779 307 344
 47;
 cause of 50;
 complications of 509
 diagnosis of 509
 effects of 509
 electrocardiogram in 409
 mechanism of 508
 multiple 405
 predisposing factors of 407
 prevention of 509
 signs and symptoms of 509
 treatment of 509 633
 x ray in 409
 emphysema 510 513—see
 also pulmonary heart
 disease
 fibrosis—see pulmonary heart
 disease
 function tests 514
 heart disease
 cause of 510
 catheterization in 512

compensated 513
 complications of 512
 course of 512
 decompensated 513
 diagnosis of 514
 electrocardiogram in 511
 lesions of 510
 mechanism of 510
 signs and symptoms of 511
 treatment of 514
 varieties of 513
 x ray in 513
 hypoplasia 261
 infarction—see pulmonary
 embolism corpulmonale
 and infarct pneumonia
 knob 133
 obstruction 510
 stenosis—see pulmonary ste-
 nosis
 tuberculosis 230 766
 valve—see pulmonary valve
 veins anomalous 463
 Pulmonic
 defect double 77
 diastolic murmur—see mur-
 mur
 insufficient 294 01
 cause of 49
 complications of 761
 course of 281
 diagnosis of 761
 electrocardiogram in 760
 functional 261
 graphic tracings in 80
 lesions of 761
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 761
 relative 461
 symptoms and signs of 260
 x ray in 60
 stenosis 310
 blood in 763
 cause of 61
 complications of 66
 coronary hamlet 262
 course of 264
 diagnosis of 266
 diaphragmatic 26
 electrocardiogram in 63
 graphic tracings in 763
 infundibular 76
 lesions of 761
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 265
 plus patent foramen ovale
 05
 plus septal defect—see Fal-
 lot's syndrome
 relative 67 40
 symptoms and signs of 76
 treatment of 76; 616
 varieties of 765
 x ray in 264
 systolic murmur—see mur-
 mur
 valve
 tricuspid 318
 insufficient—see pulmonic
 insufficiency
 normal 16

Pulsation
 abdominal 483
 abnormal of the cardiac
 margin 474 47;
 apical—see apical thrust
 double 480
 epigastric 260
 expansive 77
 femoral—see femoral pul-
 sation
 inverted 268 490
 multiple of the chest
 of the cardiac margin
 decreased 457
 expansive 480
 increased 715 287
 nonexpansive 491
 see saw—see movement see
 saw
 tibial—see tibial pulse
 Pulsus (pulsus)
 absent—see impalpable
 arrhythmic 351
 alternans—see alternating
 pulse
 anacrotic 111 207 704
 aortic 740
 arrhythmic 344
 bifurcated 75 301
 capillary 240
 celer 70 740 797 476 577
 473
 central 60 110
 collapsing 40 245 761
 conception of 1
 Corrigenda 740 400
 deficit 570
 delayed 480
 diastolic 111
 disappearance of 486
 examination of 70
 fast—see tachycardia
 femoral 75 467 534
 full 70 476
 Galenus 344
 hard 70
 impalpable 480 57
 inequality of 70
 intermittent 75 349 360
 irregular—see arrhythmic
 Kussmaul's 445
 large 75
 mis ing 348
 normal 44 60 110
 paradoxical 3 111 445 454
 456
 pericardial 5
 peripheral 60 110
 pre-sure
 decreased 778 701
 increased 247 46
 normal 63
 Quincke's 3
 rapid—see tachycardia
 rare 2 75 201
 rate 44
 slow 760
 small 217 760 407 476 574
 soft 70
 solenus 360
 speed of 67
 tardus 70 701 771 480
 temporal 70

- Pulse (pulsus)—*cont*
 thready 57"
 variable 336 337
 water hammer 240
 wave
 normal 66 110
 shape of 110
 speed of 67
 weak 505
- Pulsus—*see* pulse
- Pupils
 constriction of—*see* sign
 Argyll Robertson's
- Purkinje 2
- Purkinje fibers 23 24
- Q wave 36
- absent—*see* atrial fibrillation
 and standstill atrial
- blocked 35/
 diphasic 228 511
 flat 481
 giant 303
 high 2.9 376 511
 inverted 340 350
 long 511
 normal 36 124
 notched 228
 polymorphous 344
 pulmonary 511
 small 498
- Pyelonephritis 491 500
- Pyrogens 502
- Lactic acid 32
- ### Q
- Q wave
 normal 36 122
 pathological 416 421
- QRS
 normal 30 122
 prolonged—*see* intraventricular block and Wolff
 I W S syndrome
- Q-T interval
 at various rates 124
 normal 124
 prolonged 104 367 403 404
 405 II 2
 shortened 556
- Quadruple rhythm 84 370 454
- Quinacrine—*see* atabrine
- Quincke H 3 207
- Quincke's pulse—*see* pulse
- Quinidine 5 23, 330 335 336
 339 343 346 354 406
 429 430 435 449 460
 570 581 582 592 615
 617 618 626
 action of 592
 dosage of 592
 first use of 5
 gluconate 618
 idiosyncrasy to 592
 injectable 615
 plasma level 592
 treatment with 593 638
- Quinine 5 86 224 541
- Quirno N 298 395
- ### R
- Raab A P 412 438
- Raab W 440 439 505
- Rabinowitz M A 171 438
- Rabbit 44
- Rachmilevitz M 411
- Radioactive iodine 406 407
 435 463
- Radiocardiography 153 154
- Radioelectrocardiography—*see*
 electrocardiography
- Radiology 137
- angiocardiology—*see* an
 giocardiography
- cardiac diameters 142
- complemental procedures 152
- fluorocardiography—*see* elec
 trocardiography
- fluoroscopy 137
- functional tests 140
- orthodiagraphy 141
- positions in 137
- roentgenkymography 143
- teleroentgenography 143
- Raisbeck M G 439
- Rules
 basal 570
 dry 556
 moist 557
 scattered 557 570
- Rall J L 601
- Ramu communicans 48
- Ramirez R 258
- Ramus
 limbi dextri 25
 septi fibrosi 25
- Rapid filling 40 41
- Rapid pulse—*see* pulse
- Rappaport M B 68 87 144
 167 169 170 171 172
 258 277 365 489
- Rapport D 554
- Rasario G M 364 366
- Rashkind W J 71
- Raussen Lt 400
- Rate
 average 44
 calculation of 176
 critical 334
 disturbances of 329
 in animals 45
 in children 44
 in the newborn 44
 normal 44
 of different centers 34
- Ratnoff O D 70
- Rattigan J P 365
- Rauwolfoid 627
- Rauwolfia 57 597 618 619
- Ravenna I 69 185 200
- Ravich R M 440
- Ravid J M 399
- Ravin A 298
- Rawson A J 68
- Ravnaud M 3 538
- Ravnaud's
 disease 535
 phenomenon 536
- Read F 700
- Reaser I 440
- Receptors 52
- aortic 52
- atrial 52
- carotid 52
- cerebral 52
- pulmonic 52
- venous 52
- ventricular 52
- Rechnitzer E 562
- Recklinghausen (von) H 5
 111
- Recurrent nerve 705
 left compression of 223 370
 450 481
 right compression of 450
 481
- Reed J C 400
- Re-entry 348
- Reflex
 Acher-Dagnini's—*see*
 oculo-cardiac
- axon 63
- Bainbridge 52
- cardiac 53 56
- carotid sinus—*see* carotid
 sinus
- coronary 56
- cutaneous visceral 51
- depressor 52
- extracardiac 56
- oculo-cardiac—*see* oculo-car
 diac
- vasomotor 53
- venopressor 52
- von Bezold-Jarisch 54
- Refractory period 30 45
 absolute 30
 normal 30
 relative 30
- Regional examination 76
- Regniers P 60 524
- Regurgitation valvular—*see*
 insufficiency
- Reiche F 577
- Reichert P 460
- Reid M R 545
- Rein H 7 602
- Reinhard E H 716
- Reinhardt J B 438
- Reinstein H 438
- Reiss R A 70
- Remak's ganglion 33
- Pennington J W 70
- Renal
 arteriosclerosis 495
 blood pressure 59
 capillaries 59 494
 circulation 59
 compression 59 493
 endocrine secretion of 59
 493
 function tests 167
 hypertension—*see* hyperten
 sion
- innervation 60
- ischemia 59
- lesions—*see* nephritis
- pressor system 59
- retention 566
- symptoms in hypertension—
see hypertension
- Remin 51 59 493
- Repolarization 35
- Reerve
 capillaries 59
 cardiac—*see* cardiac reserve
- Reservoirs

- capillary 59 61 67
 hepatic 57 53
 pulmonary 55 59
 splenic 51
 Residual blood 43
 Resnik W H 400
 Respiration
 action on venous system 60
 67
 action on the liver 60 67
 chemical regulation of 67
 Cleyne Stokes 184
 cog wheel 240 260 268 270
 crossed 453
 dissociated 560
 periodic 2 184
 positive pressure 560 639
 reflex regulation of 67
 regulation of 67
 sighing 547
 wheezing 505 510
 Respiratory
 arrhythmia—see arrhythmia
 respiratory
 center 67
 tracing 557
 Rest 340 503 611
 Restall P A 607
 Resting length 29
 Restlessness 419 420
 Resuscitation cardiac 306 39
 Retraction systolic 454
 Reynolds J T 459 558
 Reynolds W F 461
 Rhai domyoma cardiac 91
 Rheumatic disease 2 3 143
 active stage of 190
 blood in 193
 cause of 149
 course of 195
 description of 191
 description of 191
 diagnosis of 196
 differential diagnosis of 106
 favoring elements of 189
 inactive stage of 195
 lesions of 150
 nodules—see nodules
 prevention of recurrences
 195
 prognosis of 197
 prophylaxis 198
 signs of 191
 symptoms of 191
 therapy 198
 treatment of 198 614
 varieties of 196
 Rheumatic fever—see rheu-
 matic disease
 Rheumatic heart disease 174
 136 70 217 27 237
 238 240 76 77 78 79
 80 307
 Rheumatoid arthritis 199
 Phthym
 A V 34—see also nodal
 rhythm
 bigeminal 349 587
 coronary sinus 355
 disturbances of 379
 double 354 366 357
 ectopic 379 339 343 346
 gallop—see triple rhythm
 idioventricular 356
 irregular—see arrhythmia
 locomotive 443
 nodal—see nodal rhythm
 normal 33 34
 S A 33 34
 sinus 33
 septal 34 356
 train wheel—see train wheel
 rhythm
 trigeminal 349
 triple rhythm—see triple
 rhythm
 Rhythmicity 29
 Riberrie 561
 Riboflavin 33
 Ribs erosion of 469 472
 Rice diet 501
 Rich A H 200 378 393 447
 Richards A N 607
 Richards D W 68 417 516
 517 518
 Richardson F P 439
 Rickets 404
 Riding aorta—see Fallot's syn-
 drome
 Riegel G 461
 Right aorta—see aortic arch
 Right atrial hypertrophy 240
 311
 Right atrium
 aneurysm of 304—see also
 aneurysm
 expanding in systole 271
 normal 15 138
 Right axis deviation 725 268
 305 307 308 454 509
 511
 Right sided aorta 464—see also
 aortic arch
 Right ventricular failure—see
 ventricular failure
 Right ventricular hypertrophy
 276 253 761 67 765
 310 311 318 72 469
 electrocardiography in 368
 low frequency tracing in 510
 Pigeon M 577
 Ruhl Jr 168
 Ringer S 68
 Ringer's solution 32
 Rinzler S H 440
 Riseman J E F 417 439 602
 Riser M 60
 Risteen W 538
 Riva Rocci S 4 160 171
 Riva Rocci's apparatus—see
 sphygmomanometer
 Rivero Carvalho J M 87 776
 777
 Robb G P 27 68 561
 Robb J S 27 170
 Roberts J 461
 Roberts W C 399
 Robertson T D 544
 Robinson C A 515
 Robinson G C 601
 Robinson S C 70 417 574
 Robt S G J 700
 Rocheta J 478 562
 Rodbard S 69 71 360 440
 Roemheld L 49
 Roentgen W K 4
 Roentgen electrokymography—
 see electrokymography
 Roentgen kymography 5 7
 143 187
 in constrictive pericarditis
 451
 in alternating pulse 34
 in aortic coarctation 470
 in aortic regurgitation 246
 in cardiac aneurysms 393
 in ventricular septal defects
 784
 in mitral insufficiency 771
 in mitral stenosis 231
 in myocardial infarction 474
 in patent ductus 793
 in pulmonary insufficiency 760
 normal 143
 Roentgenology—see radiology
 Roessler H 7 10 206 776
 777 377 363 399 412
 440 160 567
 Roessle 437
 Roger H 3 208
 Rogers disease—see ventric-
 ular septal defect
 Rogers H M 378
 Roitman M 61 400
 Rojas F 398
 Rojas R 400 505
 Rokitsany C V 3 488
 Rolnick M H 377
 Romano F J 71 170 171 400
 Romansky M J 505
 Poe O A 603
 Posentbaum F F 365 438 439
 Rosenberg H F 700
 Rosenblatt P J 440
 Rosenblueth A 68 417
 Poenman R H 538
 Rosenthal J 5
 Ross J 440
 Ross P S 459
 Rossi C R 71
 Possman P L 587
 Roth G M 505
 Roth I R 365
 Roth M M 71
 Rothbard S 200
 Rothberger C J 5 61 68
 356 364 365 398
 Potky H 505
 Pouchet's cells 27
 Pourke M D 141
 Pourke Ernestine method 165
 Rouser D 163 297 798 397
 339 488 489
 Rouviere 21
 Rowntree L G 1,0
 Rub—see friction rub
 Rubella 175
 Rubin E 459
 Rubino A 69 141 257 364
 779 43 5 6
 Ruehl A 5 6
 Pumble
 atrial 333
 diastolic 193 194 777 244
 273 274 280 799 305
 340 366 405 570

- Rupture
of a chorda 203 224 427
of a papillary muscle 224 427
of the aorta—see aortic
rupture
of the cardiac wall 411 427
of the interatrial septum 224
of the interventricular
septum 203 427
of the pericardium—see peri-
cardial rupture
- Ru kin A 400 440
- Russek H I 71
- Ru ch J N 439 486
- R wave 36 124
- Rikert H E 363
- Ryland D A 258 363
- S
- S A
block 355
bundles 22
impulse 33
node 22 33 34 45
stimuli 34
- Sabathie L G 364
- Saccharine 156
- Sacchi L 535
- Sacconaghi G I 461
- Sachs J 216 391
- Sack 544
- Sacks H 200 216
- Saffian R 172
- Sahli H 5 362
- Sahli H 71
- Saint Girons F 141
- Sakai S 601
- Salicates 198 541 614 619
- Salles S M 460
- Saloiz 561
- Salt free diet 518 631
- Salt restriction 501 518 632
- Salvos—see premature beats
- Salsal 675
- Samaun I 170
- Samet I 401 440 504
- Sampson J J 200 603
- Samuel S S 338
- Sandoz 580 675 676
- Saneyoshi S 601
- Santillo Stevenson D 185
- Sapeika N 170
- Saphir O 216 38 399 400
- Sarnoff S J 140 567 518 602
- Sarsa K 68
- Sauerbruch F 515
- Sax S G 399
- Sax I 6
- Saven A 538
- Scarlet fever 387
- Scarring 415 418
- Scheat I 603
- Schaefer G 515
- Schall I 168
- Schelling D H 276
- Schellong 64 364
- Schemm F R 613
- Scherf D 6 8 7 68 70 364
365 366 398 399 401
412 438 488 503 603
- Schiller I W 516
- Schmert G 552
- Schleiter H G 171 503
- Schlesinger H 24 28 185 199
- Schlesinger M J 437
- Schliep 163
- Schlomka G 399
- Schmidt C I 602
- Schmidt L C H 399
- Schmiedeberg O 4
- Schmeden V 461
- Schmitz G 399
- Schnabel T C 71
- Schneyer K 257 515
- Schmitzer M A 216 297 377
489
- Schoenbrunner I 438
- Schoheld N D 489
- Scholander 156
- Scholz D A 603
- Schott I 503
- Schottmueller H 3
- Schotz S J 602
- Schroeder H A 68 506 517
518 613
- Schulte H 574
- Schultze B S 28
- Schur M 69 258 363 461
- Schwab L H 460 577
- Schwartz H 561
- Schwartz S P 216 401
- Schwedel J B 200 400 401
440 460 467
- Schweigger 2 118
- Schwenburg 185 193
- Schweitzer A 10
- Schwenker F F 185 199
- Schwiegel H 69 439
- Schwimmer D 412
- Schulzloff F 438
- Scilla 584
- Scillaren 589 591 625
- Seimone V 309
- Scleroderma heart 345 442
- Sclerosis—see fibrosis
- Scoliosis—see pulmonary heart
disease
- Scott D H 440
- Scott R W 160
- Scott V C 7 489
- Scroff muscle 22
- Scrub typhus 384
- Scurvy 404
- Sea gull cry—see murmur
- Sears J B 544
- Second 615
- Second sound 49
causes of 42
factors of 91
loud 219 260 280 454 416
496 495 508 527
normal 91
prolonged 496
split 194 219 228 232 280
287 386 454 519
tambour like 527
weak 251 260 263 311 349
- Sedatives 406 402
- Sedimentation rate 165 194
after myocardial infarction
470
in old age 551
- in pulmonary infarction 509
in rheumatic disease 191
increased 420 426 451
methods of determination of
165
normal 163
technique 165
- See saw movement—see move-
ment
- Segall H N 69
- Seghers M 365 398
- Segre R 399
- Segura R G 169
- Seligman A M 574
- Sellers T 467
- Selve H 300 506
- Selzer A 309
- Semilunar valves
closing of 91
cusps 10
development of 10
function of 39 40
opening of 91
- Sénac (de) J B 2
- Senile heart—see heart senile
- Senility 527 530
- Sensation
constricting—see precordial
pain
crushing—see precordial op-
pression
of ache—see precordial pain
of anguish 433
of cold 522 535 536
of dizziness—see dizziness
of exhaustion 547
of falling 348
of impending death 470 433
of movement 348
of pain—see precordial pain
of shock 348
of sliding 348
of tightness 348
strange 348 548
tearing—see precordial pain
- Sensory nerves of the heart 48
431
- Septal defects 2 5
- Septum
atrial 9 17
defects—see atrial septal de-
fect and ventricular
septal defect
hemorrhage of 9 410
intermedium 9
intraarterial 17
primum 9
rupture of 9
secundum 9
ventricular 9 17
- Serna (de la) A 295
- Serotonin 4 6 508
- Serra V 461
- Servede M 1
- Shaffer L I 461
- Shapiro M J 709
- Shirker T 607
- Sharpey Shifer I P 70 419
577 601 603
- Sheep 44 45 603
- Sheep no e profile 313
- Sheppard S 216

- Sherrill J W 206
 Shmazono J 411
 Shpley R I 69 0
 Sheleser I H 516
 Stock 509 510 500
 c rd ogen c 46
 causes of 500
 compensator at g of 500
 course of 500
 electr c—see electr c at neck
 reversible stage of 500
 mechanism of 500
 signs and symptoms of 500
 treatment of 500 639
 Shookoff C 395 435
 Shorr I H 500 51
 Shosh n heart 40
 Shoulter hant lavirome 477
 Shunts 228
 acquired 28 254 291 206
 477 480
 congenital 28 254 290
 direct aorto pulmonary 296
 fetal 11 13
 interauricular—see atrial
 septal defect
 interventricular—see ventric-
 ular septal defect
 pulmonary 314
 Shoon 460
 Shono I 4
 Shel L M 25
 Sheros 510
 Shedek H 64 399
 Shger t H I 8
 Shmund Me cr aves 61
 Shgn of
 A Flnt 210
 All utt 46
 Argyll Roltson 8 46
 Auenbrugger 44
 Babinski 534
 Bant 445
 Brooklet 453
 Capozzi 346
 Cardarelli 480 481
 Corrigan 40—see also pul m
 Coss 0 27
 De Musset 210
 Drealer 265
 Drummond 460
 Duroz ex 240
 Ffate m 445
 Fwart 445
 Fwart Teaser 445
 Feletti 480
 Fisher 451
 Franco s Frank 297
 Fraentzel 277
 Frederich 454
 Fragon 240
 Galenus 344
 Gallav d n 21
 Gerhardt 260
 Germe 445
 C Steell 28
 Grocco 445 480
 Hill Hick 219
 Hrtz 445
 Homans 539
 Hope 480
 Jackson 50
- Jane 25 200
 Ku smaul 445 453 454 456
 La es 50
 Lannolf 40
 Mueller 41
 Murr 21
 the leg 240
 Ogle 445
 Over 450—see also trachea
 tug
 Ortner 277
 Osler 09
 Larlee 471 see also T ve
 I tella 209
 Iezz 260
 I ng 445
 Iota n 445
 Qu neke 240
 Regel 453
 Rosefeld 484
 Roil 273
 S lso 454
 Skol 454
 Sokolo 09
 Teaser 445
 Traule 240 244
 Voll rd 453
 Wenkel a k 453
 Williams 454
 Sles C 191
 Sles H 399
 Slier I N 324
 Slier b 539
 S lco a 510
 S l ng r l b 6
 S lver A 554
 S lverman J J 55
 S ne h a cord s s e co str c
 t ve per card t s
 S gle ve r ele 283 34
 S no urcula n ole see node
 S no s r al muscles 27
 S nus
 arrhythmia 193 33
 use of 33
 lagnosis of 33
 graph c tracings in 332
 n echin am of 33
 m or rd al 33
 p ognos s of 339
 respiratory 339
 respirator 339
 signs of 33
 treatment of 33
 vagal 33
 I radycardia 193 25 330
 cause of 330
 diagnosis of 331
 graph c tracings in 331
 signs and symptoms of
 331
 treatment f 331
 carotid—see carotid sinus
 coronar 11
 of the venae cavae 15
 of Valsalva 15
 node—see a node
 premature beats see prema-
 ture beats
 rhythm—see rhythm
 tachycardia 193 329 410
 444 511 513 519
- cause of 329
 cerebral type 510
 diagnosis of 30
 graph tracings in 329
 orthostatic 11
 signs and symptoms of 329
 treatment of 330
 vascular type 519
 venous 11
 Sinusoidal veins 5
 Sison J H 516
 Situs inversus 518
 Sjostrom T 69
 Skin temperature measurement
 of 11
 Skola J 2
 skull fracture 505
 Sleeplessness 3 419 493
 Sleight 143 145
 Slocum C H 200
 Slope
 anacrotic 66 110
 c acrotic 66 110
 Stilling 40
 Stojulise
 due to a s illock 356
 due to noial rhythm 324
 due to s illock 355
 due to sinus irregularity 30
 Stuche mechanisms 5
 Smeta H 401
 S Meyer waves—see 11 gmund
 Meyer waves
 Smrk t H 003
 Smith A L 298
 Smith F M 400 437 607
 Smith H 25 60 440 401
 600
 Smith J A 20
 Smith J R 365 511
 Smith K 515
 Sn t 394
 Smithwick I H 439 504 505
 Smoking—see tobacco
 Smoo h muscles 40
 Smothering feeling see pro-
 corial oppression
 Smull H 200
 Soap
 cl s g n tral 219
 opening aortic 46
 opening mitral 219 228 229
 opening pulmonary 263
 palpitation of 8
 Sneed V D 511
 Snider C D 69
 Snyder C A C 511
 Snyder J C 206 58
 Soc al factors 604
 Sol Palleas D 0 11 36
 400
 Sodum
 amylal see amylal
 carbonate 37
 chloride see salt
 cyanide 156
 evaporate see evap-
 lument 696 638
 morrhuate—see morrhuate
 nitrate 596
 phenolal tal—see pheno-
 l tal

- Sodium—*cont*
 phosphate 32
 restriction of 275 436 501
 salicylate—see salicylate
- Sohval A R 411
- Sokoloff A 298
- Sokolow M 603
- Solari I A 398
- Solarz S D 170 365
- Soldati (de) L 169
- Soley M H 412
- Solis Cohen M 327
- Sollmann T 63 602
- Soloff L A 309
- Solu H 628
- Somnolence 260 513 522
- Sosman M C 171
- Sosnai A 257 364
- Sotomayor L 257
- Soule A B 439
- Soulie I 300
- Sound tracing—see phonocardiography
- Sounds of the heart
 atrial 92
 cannon—see cannon sound
 crunching 444
 diastolic 42 92 311
 distant 454
 dull 704
 extra 81
 fetal 93
 fifth 97
 first 41 91 263
 fourth 92
 infra sounds 90
 loud 263
 normal 41 81 84 90
 physical characteristics of 81
 pistol shot 240 744
 second 42 91
 systolic 41 91
 third 97
 weak 454
- Spice of Lirrey 70
- Spadolini L 70
- Spallanzani L 2
- Spasm
 arterial 536
 venous 536
- Sparr I M 515
- Specht H D 400
- Sphincters
 coronary 24
 hepatic 57
 precapillary 20
- Sphygmobolometry 5
- Sphygmogram
 absolute 111
 central 108 109
 first studies of 4
 in aortic insufficiency 215
 normal 108 252
 peripheral 109
 technique of recording of 108
 uses of 110
 water hammer type of 111
- Sphygmomanometer
 apparatus 160
 first description of 4
- Spinal anesthesia 503 560
- Spirometer 167
- Spitzer A G 27 185 319 371 327
- Spitzer's theory II 310
- Splanchnic section—see sympatheticotomy
- Spleen
 circulation of 58
 contraction of 58
 enlarged 205 207 209
- Splitting of the heart sounds—see sounds of the heart
- Sprague H H 87 167 171 172 188 258 277 327 365 398 400 437 489
- Sputum 167 557
- Squatting 74 183 263 311 322
- Squill 249 275 616 622
- ST
 depressed 126 368 369 370 416 417 421 422 424 433 434 455
 normal 126
 raised 126 416 417 471 472 474 446
- Stallmarth J A 412
- Stamer A 399
- Stamler J 440 533
- Standstill
 atrial 345 354 618
 ventricular 361 395 396 639
 total 395 396
- Stanley L L 69
- Stannius 33 67
- Stannius ligatures 33
- Stanton E J 438 440
- Stanton J R 505
- Starling F H 6 31 67 504 577
- Starling's laws 6 567
- Starr A 7 68 114 544 545
- Starr I 169 564 576 577 602
- Static blood pressure test 167 572
- Stauffer H M 309
- Stead F A 70 412 438 577 578 602 603
- Stearns N S 506 603
- Stearns S 602
- Steele J M 4 488
- Steell G 256 276—see also sign G Steell
- Stefani A 3 68
- Steiger H I 201
- Stein I D 365 538
- Stein I 524
- Steinberg I 7 140 172
- Steinberg M F 257 297 377 453 516
- Steinbrocker O 440
- Sterner A 538
- Stenlin J 400
- Stella G 69
- Stellate ganglion 48
 block of 531
 removal of 336
- Stemmerman M G 246
- Stems 23
- Stenosis
 aortic—see aortic stenosis
 functional 179 180
 mitral—see mitral stenosis
- pulmonic—see pulmonic stenosis
 relative 179 180
 subaortic—see aortic stenosis
 subpulmonic—see pulmonic stenosis
 tricuspid—see tricuspid stenosis
- Sterilization 580
- Sternal
 crunch 444
 manubrium 80
- Sternotomy median 460
- Steroids 51
- Sternberg I 152 153 154
- Sternberg M F 5 246 399 437
- Stethography—see phonocardiography
- Stethoscope 80
 amplifying 81
 first 80
 rules of 81
- Stewart G N 257
- Stewart H J 601
- Stewart J J 412
- St George 603
- STH 63
- Stieglitz E J 552
- Stimson B 601
- Stokes J H 201 364
- Stokes W 2 561
- Stokes Adams attacks 360 361 569 629—see also a v block
- Stoll A 7
- Stollbreiter H 365
- Strain
 left ventricular—see ventricular strain left
 mental 176 546
 physical 546
 right ventricular—see ventricular strain right
- Strangulation cardiac 441
- Straschewski N D 5 431
- Straub H 5 67 68 169
- Straub W 5
- Strauss heart 5
- Straus R 459
- Strayhorn W D 461
- Streptococcal sore throat 190 191
- Streptococcus
 beta 189
 gamma 206
 hemolyticus 189 204 709
 non hemolytic 704 206
 viridans 204 206
- Streptomycin 206 211 449 615
- Stress 176 546
- Stridor 465 480
- Stroke volume—see systolic discharge
- Strophanthin 4 249 534 559 590 591 615 616 675 635
- Strophanthus 584
- Strophosid 559
- Stroud M W 185 397 440
- Stroud W D 440 505 601 613

- Strychnine 570 524 670 678
 Stumpf P 7 1 0
 Stunted growth—see infant
 tilm
 Stupor 464
 Suarez J R F 54a
 Subacute bacterial endocarditis 8 187 473 5 a
 active stage of 210
 bacteria free stage of 210
 blood in 709
 cause of 706
 complications of 210
 course of 710
 diagnosis of 710
 in congenital heart disease 206
 electrocardiogram of 709
 laboratory findings of 709
 lesions of 207
 mode of origin of the signs of 706
 on et of 210
 prognosis of 710
 quiescent stage of 210
 signs of 706
 symptoms of 206
 treatment of 210 615
 varieties of 210
 Subaortic stenosis 250
 Subba Rau A 61
 Subclavian arteries 11
 Subendocardial fibrosis — see
 fibroelastosis
 Subicterus 73 773
 Subpulmonic stenosis 310
 Substernal oppression (or pain)
 —see precordial oppression (or pain)
 Suction and pressure exercises 503
 Suction cup 100
 Sudden death—see death
 Suffocation 715 260 767 708
 Sulfadiazine 108 614 875
 Sulfocyanates—see thiocyanates
 Sulfonamides 7 205 711
 Sullivan A G 757
 Sulzer R 602
 Summerville W W 210
 Sunderland S 460
 Superior cava
 circulation of 39
 development of 11 17
 normal 15 33
 Superior caval syndrome 463
 Supple G C 412
 Suprasternal notch
 auscultation of 87
 aortogram at 104
 pulsation of 18
 Surgery cardiac patient in 580
 surgery of
 acute cor pulmonale 509
 angina pectoris 435
 aortic aneurysms 483
 aortic coarctation 473
 aortic insufficiency 249
 aortic stenosis 25
 arteriovenous aneurysm 544
 atrial septal defects 284
 cardiac tumors 716
 chest deformities 514
 chronic cor pulmonale 514
 congenital malformations 74 317 461 413
 constrictive pericarditis 459
 coronary heart disease 435
 hypertension 503
 hyperthyroidism 407
 mitral insufficiency 724
 mitral stenosis 237
 patent ductus 707
 pulmonary embolism 509
 pulmonic stenosis 261
 tetralogy of Fallot 311
 transposition 323
 tricuspid stenosis 715
 valvular rings 467
 ventricular septal defect 290
 Surtshin A 305
 Susman M L 170 231 776
 297 377 440 488 516
 Suture cardiac 4 411
 Suzman S 779
 Swan C 145
 Swan H 705
 Swann H G 400
 b wave 6
 Sweating 19 203 425
 Sweet R H 440 461
 Sweetshin G I 459
 Swinson O 431
 Swift H F 145 199 700
 Sympathectomy 6 3 6 473
 503 519 533 618 619
 in angina pectoris 436
 in arterial diseases 550 547
 533 5 5 536
 in hypertension 503
 in paroxysmal tachycardia 336
 Sympathetic block 530
 Sympathetic fibers 45 46 47
 53
 Sympathin 45
 Sympatholytics 79
 Syncope 251 30 306 518
 54 415
 Syncytium 71
 Syndrome—see disease
 Syphilis 1 174 201 1 615
 Systems review 14
 Systole
 atrial 39
 ejection period of 39
 isometric period of—see tension period
 isotonic period of—see ejection period
 outflow period of—see ejection period
 prolonged 251
 tension period of 39
 ventricular 39
 Systolic
 click 454 455
 collapse—see jugular tracing
 discharge 43 112 114
 ejection—see ejection
 gallop 451 455
 impulse—see apical thrust
 murmur—see murmur
 plateau—see plateau
 pressure 65 159 160
 decreased — see hypotension
 increased — see hypertension
 normal 159 160
 pulsation of the jugular veins — see plateau
 snap 454 455
 sounds 41
 Szekely P 366 603
 Szent Gyorgyi A 70
 Szilagy N 200 709
 T
 Tabara D 111
 Tachycardia 192 396 403 405
 409 543 547 550
 auricular—see atrial tachycardia
 digestive 79
 due to flutter—see atrial flutter
 emotional 379
 evolutionary 379 570
 nodal 332 333
 orthostatic 619 592
 paroxysmal—see paroxysmal tachycardia and atrial flutter
 positional 519 522
 sinus—see sinus tachycardia
 toxic 379
 ventricular—see ventricular tachycardia
 Tachyastole auricular — see atrial flutter
 Taguchi J T 603
 Tainter M L 601
 Talbot J H 170 505
 Talley J H 3 8
 Tamour Mary — see Mary
 Tamponade 410 413 471 442
 448 481 493
 Tamura K 603
 Tandler J 21
 Tandowsky R M 363 365
 Tannenbaum W J 461
 Taquin A C 63 168 256
 365 504 545
 Taran L M 700 399
 Taubenhaus M 467
 Taubman F 170
 Tausag H B 8 87 185
 200 277 298 309 3 5
 323 333 458 489 557
 Tausag's syndrome 319 321
 Tawara S 5
 Tawara's node—see node
 Ta wave 37 173 35
 Taylor F A 171
 Taylor F R 489
 Taylor H L 412
 Taylor M B 67
 Taylor R D 11 505 603
 Technical study 88
 Tede chi A 799
 Tedeschi C 339 545
 Teisser J 478 46

- Teis ter a sign—see sign
 Teleroentgenogram 143
 Temperature
 of the leg 469
 of the skin—see skin temper-
 ature
 of the perfusion fluid 31
 Tennant R 440
 Tension 517
 of the myocardial fibers 31
 period 31 41
 Terminal central—see central
 terminal
 Terramycin 211
 Terranova R 70
 Terrell A W 562
 Tests—see functional tests
 lethargic 519
 pharmacological 86
 Mueller's—see Mueller's test
 Trendelenburg's—see Tren-
 delenburg's test
 Valsalva's—see Valsalva's
 test
 Tetanus
 of the skeletal muscle 30
 of the heart 30
 Tetraethylammonium chloride
 607
 Tetralogy of Fallot
 blood in 313
 catheterization in 311
 complications of 315
 course of 310 315
 diagnosis of 316
 electrocardiogram in 311
 graphic tracings in 315
 lesions of 310
 mechanism of the signs of
 310
 prognosis in 317
 surgery of 317
 treatment of 317 316
 varieties of 316
 Thebesian veins 20 57
 Theobromine 570
 Theophylline 58 527 590 670
 Thermostromuhr 57
 Thevetia 583
 Thevetin 583
 Thiamine chloride 33 404
 68
 deficiency 407 403
 Thiocyanates 505
 Thiomersin 570 670 639
 Thioauricil 336
 Third sound 47 194
 causes of 47 94
 loud 193 194 219 310
 normal 42 94
 Thomas A B 503
 Thomas C H 69 200 504
 Thomas H M 411
 Thomas M 309
 Thomas R M 537
 Thomas W D 71
 Thompson H W 438
 Thompson K I 507 582
 Thompson S A 439
 Thompson W I 504
 Thompson C F 503
 Thomson K J 502
 Thomson M I 309 459
 Thomson F 298
 Thomson W A 412
 Thomson W O 411
 Thrill 75 273 286 291 303
 307 311 374 400 411
 414 544
 aortic 251
 apical 227
 arterial 210
 basal 251
 continuous 544
 diastolic presystolic 78 277
 300
 median 256
 pulpation of 78
 presystolic 78
 pulmonic 78 263
 systolic 78 240 251 263
 suprasternal 78
 Thromboangitis obliterans—
 see Buerger's disease
 Thromboarthritis—see arteritis
 Thrombophlebitis—see phle-
 bitis
 Thrombosis 2 307
 abdominal aorta 534
 aortic 457
 arterial—see arteritis
 atrial 214 223 345
 caval 463 464
 cerebral 315
 coronary—see coronary
 thrombosis
 of the ductus 292
 mural 345
 pulmonic 510
 venous—see phlebitis
 ventricular 215
 Thrombus
 ball like—see ball thrombus
 pedunculated 214
 Thyrocardies—see hyperthy-
 roidism
 Thyroid 51
 Thyroid extract 402 407 430
 618
 Thyroidectomy
 in angina pectoris 7 436
 in congestive failure 613
 in hypertension 503
 in hyperthyroidism 406
 Thyrotoxicosis—see hyperthy-
 roidism
 Thyroxin 58
 Tigerstedt R B 68
 Tillet W S 515
 Tillman A J 500
 Tilting bed 570
 Tingling 540
 Tixer I 257
 Tin 473
 Tobacco 347 410 430 435 523
 537 533 530
 Tokita K 603
 Tone double—see sign
 Traube's
 Tones 90—see also sounds
 Tonic rigidity 50
 Tonsillectomy 199
 Tonsillitis 357
 Tonus
 arterial 49 50
 capillary 67
 cardiac 29, 31
 constrictor 51
 dilator 51
 of skeletal muscles 49
 of smooth muscles 31 49
 rigidity 50
 vascular 49
 venous 61
 Torre J M 171 400
 Torres U L 412
 Torsion of the cardiac tube—
 see cardiac tube
 Tourniquets 612
 Toxic gases—see inhalation
 Toxic states 410
 Toxins 202 212
 Trachea compression of 480
 Trachea like radial artery 576
 Tracheal tube 480 481
 Tracing
 aortic—see aortogram
 apical—see cardiogram
 arterial—see sphygmogram
 buccal—see pneumo-
 cardiogram
 carotid—see carotid tracing
 epigastric—see epigastric
 tracing
 esophageal—see esophu-
 gocardiogram
 fluoroscopic—see fluorocardi-
 ogram
 hepatic—see hepatic tracing
 jugular—see phlebogram
 low frequency 90
 pul e—see sphygmogram
 Train wheel rhythm—see
 quadruple rhythm
 Transfusion—see blood trans-
 fusion
 Transmission neurohumoral
 51
 Transposition of the great
 vessels
 angiocardiography in 373
 complete 321
 corrected 372
 course and complications
 323
 diagnosis of 323
 electrocardiogram in 3 2
 lesions of 371
 mechanism of 371
 mixed 321
 partial 321
 prognosis of 323
 symptoms and signs of 371
 therapy 323
 types of 371
 varieties 373
 vary in 373
 Train udetes 453
 Traube I 3 27
 Traube's area 445
 Traube-Hering waves 61
 Trauma cardiac 410
 Traumatic lesions 410
 Travell J 440
 Treatment
 acute emergencies 638

- armchair 470
 general discussion 614
 management of the patient 610
 of pregnant women 579
 of surgical cases 580
Treburon 594
Treig r I J 69
Tremonti I 68
Trench foot 534
Trendelenburg F 4 ■ 167
 515 545
Trendelenburg's operation
 in pulmonary embolism 509
 in varicose veins 510
Trendelenburg's test 41
Trepopney 50 574
Trichinosis 387
Tricuspid
 atresia 320
 defect double 270
 insufficiency 300
 arterial pressure in 771
 cardiomanometry 270
 cause of 267
 complications of 277
 course of 27
 diagnosis of 772
 electrocardiogram in 768
 functional 77
 graphic tracings in 269
 lesions of 761
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 711
 plus patent foramen ovale
 302
 relative 777
 signs and symptoms of 768
 treatment of 775 616
 venous pressure in 20
 x ray in 711
 stenosis
 cause of 273
 complications of 274
 course of 274
 diagnosis of 770
 graphic tracings in 274
 lesions of 273
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 271
 symptoms and signs of 773
 treatment of 275 616
 venous pressure in 274
 x ray in 774
 valve
 atresia of—see tricuspid
 atresia
 incomplete development
 of 7
 normal 16
Trigeminal rhythm — see
 rhythm
Trigonoidation 176
Trilocular heart 9 376 377
Trimani A 364
Triple rhythm 84 197 193
 194 719 279 241 763
 86 79 374 403 407
 113 470 445 454 455
 196 519 540 50 579
 atrial type 371
 low frequency tracing in 311
- meaning of 31
 mechanism of 31
 non le crypt type 371
 phonocardiogram in 31
 summation type 371
 systolic 311 46
 ventricular type 371
Tripoli M 574
Tri valve defects 307
Trometan 430 594 679
Trous eau A 2
Trueta J 500
Trump R A 602
Truncus arteriosus
 fetal 10
 persistent 323
Tschikkin I 276
Tsutsumamushi 387
Tube
 elastic 50
 Geiger Mueller 103
 photoelectric—see phototube
 rigid 50
Tubercle of Lower 12
Tuberculosis 571
Tumors
 cerebral 517
 endocardial — see endo-
 cardial tumors
 myocardial—see myocardial
 tumors
 pericardial 447
Turner K ■ 447
Turtle 49
T wave
 cove shaped 13 416 471
 high 400
 inverted 416 471 446
 low 40 446 450 579
 normal 36 123
Typhoid 35
Tyrod's solution 37
- U
- Uhlenrueck** P 57
Ulceration
 cutaneous — see varicose
 veins
 valvular 00 707
Umbilical vein 11
Underdahl L O 440
Ung rie der H E 70 147
 160 470 473 479
Ung hvarly L 68 578
Ung let C C 539
Ung lar leads
 chest 121
 limb 170
 see also—lead
Urginea 584
Urgin 584 589
Urine 166
 analysis 166
 concentration test 167
 dilution test 167
 normal 166
 scanty 51
Urrutia D M 700
Ur etel ■ L 460
- V
- Vacarezza** R F 141
Vagal sub tance 49
Vagotonia 531
Vagovagal reflexes 518 519
Vagus
 action of 46
 compression of 86
 grip 40
 stimulation of 86 330 46
 substance 49
 test 86
Vaisman S ■ 700
Valentine W ■ 485
Valvula
 sinus of 16 18 480
 test 80 140 449
Valvula A M 87
Valve
 aortic 17
 tricuspid 17
 coronary 10
 Eustachian 10
 mitral 17
 pulmonic 16
 tricuspid 15
Valves
 a v—see a v valves and
 valve
 function of 9
 semilunar—see valve aortic
 or pulmonic
 venous 77
Valvular
 aneurysms 200 207
 calcification 204 713
 defects 217 259 799
 combined—see combined
 defects
 double—see double defects
 simple—see each valvular
 defect
 ever ion 239
 fenestration 700 207
 fibrosis 704 490 ■ b
 fragmentation 200 207
 function 39
 incompetence — see insuf-
 ficiency
 insufficiency 217 238 709
 267
 narrowing—see valvular ste-
 nosis
 ossification 713
 perforation 200 7
 pockets — see endocardial
 pockets
 polyps — see endocardial
 polyps
 rupture 700 207
 scarring 204
 stenosis 725 200 761 272
 ulcerations 700 707
 vegetations 190 203
Van Dellen T R 180
Vanderleam W P 417
Van der Veer J B 180 460
Van Laere E J 613
Vannucci C 399
Van Slyke D D 100 7

- Vaquez H VI 5 6 8 68
 168 170 183 257 276
 297 364 398 438 562
 576
- Varicose veins 4 540
 bronchial 227 234
- Vascular
 collapse 333 426 485 496
 607 639
 rings 464 465
 tonus—see tonus
- Vasomotion 62
- Vasomotor
 center 51
 control 51
 nerves 51
 pulmonary 51
- Vasovaginal collapse 518 519
- VDM 58 434 571
- Veal J R 524
- Vector 130
- Vectorcardiogram 131
- Vedova R 363 365
- Vegetations 190
- Veins
 anomalies of 463
 cardiac 75
 contractility of 60 61
 pulmonary 14 17
 sinusoidal 60
 structure of 27
 tonus of 61
 valves of 21
 varicose—see varicose veins
- Vela VI 439
- Velazquez T 28
- VLM 60 494 571
- Vena cava
 inferior 20
 superior 20
- Venesection—see bloodletting
- Venography 464 539
- Venopressor reflex 52
- Venous
 compression 530
 congestion 490 565
 contractility 60 61
 dilatation 541
 elongation 54
 embolism—see embolism air
 engorgement 402 403 409
 453 464 481 569
 filling test 163
 function 60
 hum 76 297 407 408 409
 hypertonus 566
 hypertrophy 541
 insufficiency 540
 intermittent 530
 ligation 541
 pressure 61 162
 direct method 163
 elevated 454
 functional tests 163
 graphic recording 163
 high 403 407 409 464
 508 523 540 541 544
- indirect method of recording 163
 in varicose veins 541
 low 519 520 585
 normal 162
 technique, 162
 venous filling test 163
 return 31 51 60 463
 sluices 57
 stripping 541
 system 19
 tonus 60
 thrombosis—see phlebitis
 and milk leg
 valves 540
- Ventricles
 left 17
 primitive 9
 right 16
 single 284 327
 structure of 21
- Ventricular
 activation 35
 anarchy 335
 aneurysm 391 426
 cause of 392
 course of 393
 diagnosis of 393
 dynamic 419 425
 graphic tracings in 392
 lesions of 392
 permanent 424
 prognosis of 393
 signs of 392
 x ray in 392
 arrest 37 502 618
 asynchronism 319
 complex 36
 contraction 39
 defibrillation 397
 diastole 40
 dilatation 367
 enlargement 367
 escape 53 350
 failure—see heart failure
 left 563
 right 563
 fibrillation 32 361 396
 397 471 587 592 639
 filling 40
 flutter 361 396 639
 gradient 132 — see also
 gradient
 hypertrophy 239 242 367
 left—see left ventricular
 hypertrophy
 right—see right ventricular
 hypertrophy
 inactivation 35
 miche 392
 premature beats—see premature
 beats ventricular
 preponderance 367
 pressure 157
 rate—see rate ventricular
 rigidity 391
 rupture 291 295
 septal defect 310 321
 acquired 285
 angiocardiology in 288
 blood in 296
 blood gases in 296
- blood pressure in 286
 cause of 285
 catheterization of the
 heart in 286
 circulation time in 286
 complications of 289
 course of 299
 diagnosis of 289
 electrocardiogram in 286
 electrokymography in 288
 graphic tracings in 286
 in the fetus 287
 lesions of 275
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 288
 treatment of 618
 varieties of 288
 x ray in 287
- septum
 absent 284 285
 incomplete 284 285
 normal 9
 perforation of 284 285
 rupture of 284 285
 standstill—see standstill
 strain 367 564
 left 242 497
 right 228 511
 tachycardia 509 58
 cause of 336
 complications of 338
 course of 338
 diagnosis of 338
 electrocardiogram in 336
 graphic tracings in 336
 mechanism of 337
 mode of origin of the signs
 of 337
 prognosis of 338
 signs and symptoms of
 336
 treatment of 339 639
 thrombosis 215
 volume 14
- Veralba 677
- Veratrine 493 597
- Veratrum 597 619
- Venoid 677
- Veritol 598 627
- Verrucæ, 100 203 212
- Vertical heart 133 522
- Vertigo 72 469 577 548
- Vesalius A 1
- Vierordt H 3 8 27
- Vieussens R 1
- Viko J E 69
- Villa L 171 400
- Villaret M 505 538
- Vincberg A M 8 439
- Virchow R 2 488
- Visceral pain 330
- Viscosity—see blood viscosity
- Vision disturbance of 73
 402 518 587
- Visscher M B 67 516 601
- Visualization of the cardiac
 chambers — see angio-
 cardiology
- Vital capacity
 normal 167
 reduced 167 551
- Vitamin A requirement 33 637

- Vitamin B 33 528 618
deficiency 526 618—see also
thiamine and beriberi
heart
requirement 637
Vitamin C 33 193 212 6 S
deficiency 404
requirement 33 678
Vitamin D deficiency 33 522
Vitamin K 430 628
Voci G 528
Vogels 577
Volhard F 6 171 397 461 505
Volk M C 517
Volpitta P 538
Voltage of the cardiac waves
high 336 350 368 378 404
low 381 407 446 455
normal 122
Volterra M 29 63
Volume conductor 31
Vomitus 208 410 426 467
557
Von Bezold A 54 71
Von Gierke F 411
Von Gierke's disease—see dia-
sease
Von Glahn W C 200 09
437 498

W
Wadulla H 459
Waetjen J 488
Wagner J A 440
Wainwright C W 480
Watzkin L 438
Walford A T 400
Walker A M 515 607
Walker J V 4 439 577
Walser J 333
Walsh B J 256
Walters W 544
Wang C C 10
Ware P P 498
Warmuth 571 630
Warren J V 70 185 199 297
417 577
Warthen H G 489 567
Wartman W B 27 438 440
Wasserman S 5 561 562
Wassermann's test 09
Watch glass nails 183
Water
in the diet—see diet
restriction—see diet
Water bottle shaped heart 446
Water hammer pulse — see
pulse
Water wheel murmur — see
murmur
Watkins D W 506
Watson R F 200
Waugh J M 515
Wave
a 101
alpha 118
atrial—see a or P
beta 118
c 101
diastolic 112
dirotic 66
F 114
G 114
gamma 118
H 114
I 114
J 116
k 116
L 116
M 116
N—see P wave
percussion 110
pulse—see pulse wave
R—see electrocardiogram
S—see electrocardiogram
T—see T wave
Ta—see Ta wave
tidal 110
U—see electrocardiogram
v 101
x 101
y 101
Weakness—see asthma
Wearn J T 23 399
Weber A 168 169 571
Weber H II 110
Weber M J 440
Webster D P 5 S
Wedd A M 603
Weens H 297 489
Wees 601
Wegner R 200 504 517
Weight
increase 5 9
less 496
Weinberg H B 438 440
Weinstein A A 417
Weinstein L 200
Weintraub H J 200
Weintraub W 193
Weir Mitchell's syndrome—see
erythromelalgia
Weisberg R A 363
Weiser C 567
Weiss M 71 603
Weiss S XII b 110 99 400
411 439 489 505 524
554 561 601 602
Weissmann S J 561
Weiss L 68 112 551
Weitz W 168 256
Welch W H 3 567
Welfare C H 365
Welm G 440
Weller C V 393
Wells A H 391
Wells B G 172 38 489
Wells J A 601
Wells J J 776 363 365 401
Weltz G A 110
Wenckebach K F 5 6 168
357 363 398 411 460
564 516 602
Wenckebach's periods — see
periods
Wendkos M H 399 552
Werkoe L 68 603
Wesselhoeft C 200
Wessler S 28 401
Westergren 165
Weyl R 440 582
Weyler H 363 364
Wieland L O 613
Wheelock M C 200
Wheezing 565
Whelan M 602
White J C 433 538 544
White P D 31 6 8 87 168
169 170 171 185 187
188 216 226 257 2 6
297 309 377 378 361
366 398 399 400 412
437 438 439 440 461
488 504 505 511 515
516 517 518 519 578
601 602 60 607 613
White Book in lex 563
Whitehorn W V 71
Whitlows false 209
Whittingham H 613
Whittlesey P H 400
Wiesel J 537
Wiggers C J 6 25 34 40
61 107 169 185 204
256 267 437 438 504
515 524 567 517 601
Wilburne M 365 440
Wile B A 400
Wilkins P W 71 411 505
506 602 603
Willett F 46
William D H 4
Williams C J B 112 461
Williams N E 117
Williams R H 417
Willius F A 8 437 438 577
Wilson F V 7 10 169 171
363 364 391 398 399
400 411 438 439
Wilson K S 365
Wilson M G 200
Winawarter (von) F 537
Winston T 35 70 171 399
417 439 577
Winterberg H 363 364 365
378 607
Winteritz M C 110 437
537 562
Wintrobe M M 165 412
Wire loop lesion 212
Wise A W 461
Withering W 2 601
Withold E 603
Wolf M 216
Wolferth C C 167 168 169
201 257 264 347 379
400 438 460 461 488
562 517
Wolf G A 607
Wolf H G 601
Wolf I 309 363 398 460
Wolf Park on White
syndrome 332 351
Wollheim E 517
Wood F C 398 418 440 562
577
Wood P 169 309 515 551
Woodbury J W 462
Woodwell M 71
Wouka P H 601
Wounds cardiac 410
Wright F W 87
Wright G 399
Wright I S 440 603
Wright Smith R J 160

Wuhrmann F 401

Wynne N A 366

X-Y Z

Xanthines 38

Yater W M 216 309 440

544 545

Young D 199 200

Young L W 438

Zagari G 21

Zaimis I J 603

Zak E 69

Zamchek X 544

Zaslow J 327

Zatuchni J 309

Zehesche I J 28

Zdarsky E 7 398 461 561

Zeman F D 216

Zeri A 364

Zeri s syndrome—see disease

Zieman 185

Zimdahl W T 400 603

Zimmerman H A 258

Zinn a cap 293

Zoll P M 28 401 419 437

Zondek H 411 412

Zottermann Y 71

Zuckergussleber—see seed liver

Zuckerman M 440

Zuckermann R 298 306

Zweifach B W 28 70 71 505

594

